

INTERNATIONAL STANDARD

NORME INTERNATIONALE



**Industrial communication networks – Fieldbus specifications –
Part 2: Physical layer specification and service definition**

**Réseaux de communications industriels – Spécifications des bus de terrain –
Partie 2: Spécification de couche physique et définition des services**



THIS PUBLICATION IS COPYRIGHT PROTECTED

Copyright © 2007 IEC, Geneva, Switzerland

All rights reserved. Unless otherwise specified, no part of this publication may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and microfilm, without permission in writing from either IEC or IEC's member National Committee in the country of the requester. If you have any questions about IEC copyright or have an enquiry about obtaining additional rights to this publication, please contact the address below or your local IEC member National Committee for further information.

Droits de reproduction réservés. Sauf indication contraire, aucune partie de cette publication ne peut être reproduite ni utilisée sous quelque forme que ce soit et par aucun procédé, électronique ou mécanique, y compris la photocopie et les microfilms, sans l'accord écrit de l'IEC ou du Comité national de l'IEC du pays du demandeur. Si vous avez des questions sur le copyright de l'IEC ou si vous désirez obtenir des droits supplémentaires sur cette publication, utilisez les coordonnées ci-après ou contactez le Comité national de l'IEC de votre pays de résidence.

IEC Central Office
3, rue de Varembe
CH-1211 Geneva 20
Switzerland

Tel.: +41 22 919 02 11
Fax: +41 22 919 03 00
info@iec.ch
www.iec.ch

About the IEC

The International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) is the leading global organization that prepares and publishes International Standards for all electrical, electronic and related technologies.

About IEC publications

The technical content of IEC publications is kept under constant review by the IEC. Please make sure that you have the latest edition, a corrigenda or an amendment might have been published.

IEC Catalogue - webstore.iec.ch/catalogue

The stand-alone application for consulting the entire bibliographical information on IEC International Standards, Technical Specifications, Technical Reports and other documents. Available for PC, Mac OS, Android Tablets and iPad.

IEC publications search - www.iec.ch/searchpub

The advanced search enables to find IEC publications by a variety of criteria (reference number, text, technical committee,...). It also gives information on projects, replaced and withdrawn publications.

IEC Just Published - webstore.iec.ch/justpublished

Stay up to date on all new IEC publications. Just Published details all new publications released. Available online and also once a month by email.

Electropedia - www.electropedia.org

The world's leading online dictionary of electronic and electrical terms containing more than 30 000 terms and definitions in English and French, with equivalent terms in 14 additional languages. Also known as the International Electrotechnical Vocabulary (IEV) online.

IEC Glossary - std.iec.ch/glossary

More than 55 000 electrotechnical terminology entries in English and French extracted from the Terms and Definitions clause of IEC publications issued since 2002. Some entries have been collected from earlier publications of IEC TC 37, 77, 86 and CISPR.

IEC Customer Service Centre - webstore.iec.ch/csc

If you wish to give us your feedback on this publication or need further assistance, please contact the Customer Service Centre: csc@iec.ch.

A propos de l'IEC

La Commission Electrotechnique Internationale (IEC) est la première organisation mondiale qui élabore et publie des Normes internationales pour tout ce qui a trait à l'électricité, à l'électronique et aux technologies apparentées.

A propos des publications IEC

Le contenu technique des publications IEC est constamment revu. Veuillez vous assurer que vous possédez l'édition la plus récente, un corrigendum ou amendement peut avoir été publié.

Catalogue IEC - webstore.iec.ch/catalogue

Application autonome pour consulter tous les renseignements bibliographiques sur les Normes internationales, Spécifications techniques, Rapports techniques et autres documents de l'IEC. Disponible pour PC, Mac OS, tablettes Android et iPad.

Recherche de publications IEC - www.iec.ch/searchpub

La recherche avancée permet de trouver des publications IEC en utilisant différents critères (numéro de référence, texte, comité d'études,...). Elle donne aussi des informations sur les projets et les publications remplacées ou retirées.

IEC Just Published - webstore.iec.ch/justpublished

Restez informé sur les nouvelles publications IEC. Just Published détaille les nouvelles publications parues. Disponible en ligne et aussi une fois par mois par email.

Electropedia - www.electropedia.org

Le premier dictionnaire en ligne de termes électroniques et électriques. Il contient plus de 30 000 termes et définitions en anglais et en français, ainsi que les termes équivalents dans 14 langues additionnelles. Egalement appelé Vocabulaire Electrotechnique International (IEV) en ligne.

Glossaire IEC - std.iec.ch/glossary

Plus de 55 000 entrées terminologiques électrotechniques, en anglais et en français, extraites des articles Termes et Définitions des publications IEC parues depuis 2002. Plus certaines entrées antérieures extraites des publications des CE 37, 77, 86 et CISPR de l'IEC.

Service Clients - webstore.iec.ch/csc

Si vous désirez nous donner des commentaires sur cette publication ou si vous avez des questions contactez-nous: csc@iec.ch.

INTERNATIONAL STANDARD

NORME INTERNATIONALE



**Industrial communication networks – Fieldbus specifications –
Part 2: Physical layer specification and service definition**

**Réseaux de communications industriels – Spécifications des bus de terrain –
Partie 2: Spécification de couche physique et définition des services**

INTERNATIONAL
ELECTROTECHNICAL
COMMISSION

COMMISSION
ELECTROTECHNIQUE
INTERNATIONALE

PRICE CODE
CODE PRIX

XH

ICS 25.040, 35.100, 35.240.50

ISBN 978-2-8322-1342-1

**Warning! Make sure that you obtained this publication from an authorized distributor.
Attention! Veuillez vous assurer que vous avez obtenu cette publication via un distributeur agréé.**

CONTENTS

FOREWORD.....	19
0 Introduction	21
0.1 General	21
0.2 Physical layer overview	21
0.3 Document overview	21
0.4 Major physical layer variations specified in this standard	22
1 Scope	25
2 Normative references	25
3 Terms and definitions	28
3.1 Common terms and definitions	28
3.2 Type 1: Terms and definitions	32
3.3 Type 2: Terms and definitions	35
3.4 Type 3: Terms and definitions	38
3.5 Type 4: Terms and definitions	41
3.6 Type 6: <i>This subclause has been removed</i>	42
3.7 Type 8: Terms and definitions	42
3.8 Type 12: Terms and definitions	45
3.9 Type 16: Terms and definitions	46
3.10 Type 18: Terms and definitions	49
4 Symbols and abbreviations	51
4.1 Symbols	51
4.2 Abbreviations	55
5 DLL – PhL interface	62
5.1 General	62
5.2 Type 1: Required services	62
5.3 Type 2: Required services	64
5.4 Type 3: Required services	67
5.5 Type 4: Required services	68
5.6 Type 6: <i>This subclause has been removed</i>	70
5.7 Type 8: Required services	70
5.8 Type 12: Required services	78
5.9 Type 16: Required services	80
5.10 Type 18: Required services	81
6 Systems management – PhL interface	83
6.1 General	83
6.2 Type 1: Systems management – PhL interface	83
6.3 Type 3: Systems management – PhL interface	85
6.4 Type 4: Systems management – PhL interface	91
6.5 Type 6: <i>This subclause has been removed</i>	91
6.6 Type 8: Systems management – PhL interface	91
6.7 Type 12: Systems management – PhL interface	96
6.8 Type 18: Systems management – PhL interface	96
7 DCE independent sublayer (DIS)	97
7.1 General	97
7.2 Type 1: DIS	97
7.3 Type 3: DIS	97

7.4	Type 6: <i>This subclause has been removed</i>	97
7.5	Type 8: DIS	98
7.6	Type 12: DIS	99
8	DTE – DCE interface and MIS-specific functions	99
8.1	General	99
8.2	Type 1: DTE – DCE interface	100
8.3	Type 3: DTE – DCE interface	110
8.4	Type 8: MIS – MDS interface	111
8.5	Type 12: DTE – DCE interface	120
9	Medium dependent sublayer (MDS)	120
9.1	General	120
9.2	Type 1: MDS: Wire and optical media	120
9.3	Type 1: MDS: Radio media	123
9.4	Type 2: MDS: Wire and optical media	123
9.5	Type 3: MDS: Wire and optical media	125
9.6	Type 4: MDS: Wire medium	125
9.7	Type 6: <i>This subclause has been removed</i>	130
9.8	Type 8: MDS: Wire and optical media	130
9.9	Type 12: MDS: Wire media	137
9.10	Type 16: MDS: Optical media	139
9.11	Type 18: MDS: Wire media	140
10	MDS – MAU interface	141
10.1	General	141
10.2	Type 1: MDS – MAU interface: Wire and optical media	141
10.3	Type 1: MDS – MAU interface: Radio signaling	143
10.4	Type 2: MDS – MAU interface: Wire and optical media	143
10.5	Type 3: MDS – MAU interface: Wire and optical media	145
10.6	Type 8: MDS – MAU interface: Wire and optical media	145
10.7	Type 18: MDS – MAU interface: Wire media	147
11	Types 1 and 7: Medium attachment unit: voltage mode, linear-bus-topology 150 Ω twisted-pair wire medium	149
11.1	General	149
11.2	Bit-rate-dependent quantities	149
11.3	Network specifications	150
11.4	MAU transmit circuit specification	152
11.5	MAU receive circuit specification	156
11.6	Jabber inhibit	158
11.7	Power distribution	158
11.8	Medium specifications	161
12	Types 1 and 3: Medium attachment unit: 31,25 kbit/s, voltage-mode with low-power option, bus- and tree-topology, 100 Ω wire medium	164
12.1	General	164
12.2	Transmitted bit rate	164
12.3	Network specifications	164
12.4	MAU transmit circuit specification	167
12.5	MAU receive circuit specification	170
12.6	Jabber inhibit	171
12.7	Power distribution	171
12.8	Medium specifications	177

12.9	Intrinsic safety	180
12.10	Galvanic isolators	181
13	Type 1: Medium attachment unit: current mode, twisted-pair wire medium	181
13.1	General	181
13.2	Transmitted bit rate	181
13.3	Network specifications	181
13.4	MAU transmit circuit specification	183
13.5	MAU receive circuit specification	185
13.6	Jabber inhibit	187
13.7	Power distribution	188
13.8	Medium specifications	189
14	Type 1: Medium attachment unit: current mode (1 A), twisted-pair wire medium	191
14.1	General	191
14.2	Transmitted bit rate	191
14.3	Network specifications	191
14.4	MAU transmit circuit specification	193
14.5	MAU receive circuit specification	195
14.6	Jabber inhibit	196
14.7	Power distribution	196
14.8	Medium specifications	198
15	Types 1 and 7: Medium attachment unit: dual-fiber optical media	199
15.1	General	199
15.2	Bit-rate-dependent quantities	199
15.3	Network specifications	200
15.4	MAU transmit circuit specifications	201
15.5	MAU receive circuit specifications	202
15.6	Jabber inhibit	203
15.7	Medium specifications	204
16	Type 1: Medium attachment unit: 31,25 kbit/s, single-fiber optical medium	206
16.1	General	206
16.2	Transmitted bit rate	206
16.3	Network specifications	206
16.4	MAU transmit circuit specifications	206
16.5	MAU receive circuit specifications	207
16.6	Jabber inhibit	207
16.7	Medium specifications	208
17	Type 1: Medium attachment unit: radio signaling	210
17.1	General	210
17.2	Transmit signaling rate	210
17.3	Modulation	210
17.4	Network specification	212
17.5	Antennas	216
17.6	Jabber inhibit	216
17.7	Common air interface	217
18	Type 2: Medium attachment unit: 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire medium	221
18.1	General	221
18.2	Transceiver: 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire	221
18.3	Transformer 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire	226

18.4	Connector 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire medium	227
18.5	Topology 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire medium	227
18.6	Taps 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire medium	229
18.7	Trunk 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire medium	231
19	Type 2: Medium attachment unit: 5 Mbit/s, optical medium	232
19.1	General	232
19.2	Transceiver 5 Mbit/s, optical medium	232
19.3	Topology 5 Mbit/s, optical medium	233
19.4	Trunk fiber 5 Mbit/s, optical medium	233
19.5	Trunk connectors 5 Mbit/s, optical medium	234
19.6	Fiber specifications 5 Mbit/s, optical medium	234
20	Type 2: Medium attachment unit: network access port (NAP)	237
20.1	General	237
20.2	Signaling	238
20.3	Transceiver	239
20.4	Connector	239
20.5	Cable	239
21	Type 3: Medium attachment unit: synchronous transmission, 31,25 kbit/s, voltage mode, wire medium	241
21.1	General	241
21.2	Transmitted bit rate	241
21.3	Network specifications	241
21.4	Transmit circuit specification for 31,25 kbit/s voltage-mode MAU	244
21.5	Receive circuit specification for 31,25 kbit/s voltage-mode MAU	247
21.6	Jabber inhibit	247
21.7	Power distribution	248
21.8	Medium specifications	250
21.9	Intrinsic safety	252
21.10	Galvanic Isolators	252
21.11	Coupling elements	252
21.12	Power supply	254
22	Type 3: Medium attachment unit: asynchronous transmission, wire medium	259
22.1	Medium attachment unit for non intrinsic safety	259
22.2	Medium attachment unit for intrinsic safety	264
23	Type 3: Medium attachment unit: asynchronous transmission, optical medium	276
23.1	Characteristic features of optical data transmission	276
23.2	Basic characteristics of an optical data transmission medium	277
23.3	Optical network	277
23.4	Standard optical link	278
23.5	Network structures built from a combination of standard optical links	278
23.6	Bit coding	278
23.7	Optical signal level	278
23.8	Temporal signal distortion	281
23.9	Bit error rate	285
23.10	Connectors for fiber optic cable	285
23.11	Redundancy in optical transmission networks	285
24	Type 4: Medium attachment unit: RS-485	285
24.1	General	285

24.2	Overview of the services	285
24.3	Description of the services	286
24.4	Network.....	286
24.5	Electrical specification.....	286
24.6	Time response	286
24.7	Interface to the transmission medium	286
24.8	Specification of the transmission medium	287
25	Type 4: Medium attachment unit: RS-232	288
25.1	General.....	288
25.2	Overview of the services	288
25.3	Description of the services	288
26	Type 6: <i>This clause has been removed</i>	288
27	Type 8: Medium attachment unit: twisted-pair wire medium	289
27.1	MAU signals	289
27.2	Transmission bit rate dependent quantities.....	289
27.3	Network.....	290
27.4	Electrical specification.....	290
27.5	Time response	290
27.6	Interface to the transmission medium	290
27.7	Specification of the transmission medium	291
28	Type 8: Medium attachment unit: optical media	294
28.1	General.....	294
28.2	Transmission bit rate dependent quantities.....	294
28.3	Network topology.....	294
28.4	Transmit circuit specifications	295
28.5	Receive circuit specifications.....	296
28.6	Specification of the transmission medium	297
29	Type 12: Medium attachment unit: electrical medium.....	301
29.1	Electrical characteristics.....	301
29.2	Medium specifications	301
29.3	Transmission method	301
30	Type 16: Medium attachment unit: optical fiber medium at 2, 4, 8 and 16 Mbit/s	303
30.1	Structure of the transmission lines.....	303
30.2	Time performance of bit transmission	303
30.3	Connection to the optical fiber	310
31	Type 18: Medium attachment unit: basic medium.....	317
31.1	General.....	317
31.2	Data signal encoding	317
31.3	Signal loading	317
31.4	Signal conveyance requirements	317
31.5	Media	318
31.6	Endpoint and branch trunk cable connectors	320
31.7	Recommended type 18-PhL-B MAU circuitry	320
32	Type 18: Medium attachment unit: powered medium.....	321
32.1	General.....	321
32.2	Data signal encoding.....	321
32.3	Signal loading	321
32.4	Signal conveyance requirements	321

32.5 Media	322
32.6 Endpoint and branch trunk cable connectors	325
32.7 Embedded power distribution	325
32.8 Recommended type 18-PhL-P MAU circuitry	327
Annex A (normative) Type 1: Connector specification	329
A.1 Internal connector for wire medium.....	329
A.2 External connectors for wire medium.....	330
Annex B (informative) Types 1 and 3: Cable specifications and trunk and spur lengths for the 31,25 kbit/s voltage-mode MAU	337
B.1 Cable description and specifications.....	337
B.2 Typical trunk and spur lengths.....	337
Annex C (informative) Types 1 and 7: Optical passive stars.....	339
C.1 Definition.....	339
C.2 Example of attenuations	339
Annex D (informative) Types 1 and 7: Star topology	340
D.1 Examples of topology	340
D.2 Optical power budget	341
D.3 Mixed with wire media	342
Annex E (informative) Type 1: Alternate fibers	344
E.1 Alternate fibers for dual-fiber mode.....	344
E.2 Alternate fibers for single-fiber mode.....	344
Annex F (normative) Type 2: Connector specification	345
F.1 Connector for coaxial wire medium.....	345
F.2 Connector for optical medium.....	345
F.3 Connector for NAP medium.....	346
Annex G (normative) Type 2: Repeater machine sublayers (RM, RRM) and redundant PhLs.....	348
G.1 General.....	348
G.2 Repeater machine (RM) sublayer	348
G.3 Redundant PhL	350
G.4 Ring repeater machine (RRM) sublayer	352
Annex H (informative) Type 2: Reference design examples.....	359
H.1 MAU: 5 Mbit/s, voltage mode, coaxial wire	359
H.2 Network access port (NAP)	363
Annex I (normative) Type 3: Connector specification.....	365
I.1 Connector for synchronous transmission	365
I.2 Connector for asynchronous transmission	366
I.3 Connectors for fiber optic cable	371
Annex J (normative) Type 3: Redundancy of PhL and medium.....	372
Annex K (normative) Type 3: Optical network topology	373
K.1 Signal flow in an optical network	373
Annex L (informative) Type 3: Reference design examples for asynchronous transmission, wire medium, intrinsically safe	382
L.1 Bus termination in the communication device	382
L.2 Bus termination in the connector	382
L.3 External bus termination.....	383
Annex M (normative) Type 8: Connector specification.....	385
M.1 External connectors for wire medium.....	385

M.2 External connectors for fiber optic medium	386
M.3 External connectors for hybrid connectors for IP65 applications	386
Annex N (normative) Type 16: Connector specification	390
Annex O (normative) Type 16: Optical network topology	391
O.1 Topology	391
O.2 Optical power budget	392
Annex P (informative) Type 16: Reference design example.....	396
P.1 Functional principles of the repeater circuit	396
P.2 Attenuation on the transmission line	399
Annex Q (normative) Type 18: Connector specification	400
Q.1 Overview	400
Q.2 Device connector.....	400
Q.3 Flat-cable connector.....	401
Q.4 Round cable connector.....	402
Q.5 Round cable alternate connector	403
Annex R (normative) Type 18: Media cable specifications.....	405
R.1 Type 18-PhL-B cable.....	405
R.2 Type 18-PhL-P cable.....	406
Bibliography.....	409
Figure 1 – General model of physical layer	21
Figure 2 – Mapping between data units across the DLL – PhL interface.....	62
Figure 3 – Data service for asynchronous transmission.....	67
Figure 4 – Interactions for a data sequence of a master: identification cycle	72
Figure 5 – Interactions for a data sequence of a master: data cycle	73
Figure 6 – Interactions for a data sequence of a slave: identification cycle.....	74
Figure 7 – Interactions for a data sequence of a slave: data cycle	75
Figure 8 – Interactions for a check sequence of a master	76
Figure 9 – Interactions for a check sequence of a slave	77
Figure 10 – Reset, Set-value, Get-value	86
Figure 11 – Event service	87
Figure 12 – Interface between PhL and PNM1 in the layer model.....	92
Figure 13 – Reset, Set-value, Get-value PhL services	93
Figure 14 – Event PhL service	93
Figure 15 – Allocation of the interface number	94
Figure 16 – Configuration of a master	98
Figure 17 – Configuration of a slave with an alternative type of transmission	99
Figure 18 – Configuration of a bus coupler with an alternative type of transmission	99
Figure 19 – DTE/DCE sequencing machines.....	104
Figure 20 – State transitions with the ID cycle request service.....	113
Figure 21 – MIS-MDS interface: identification cycle request service.....	114
Figure 22 – MIS-MDS interface: identification cycle request service.....	115
Figure 23 – State transitions with the data cycle request service	115
Figure 24 – MIS-MDS interface: data cycle request service	116
Figure 25 – State transitions with the data sequence classification service	116

Figure 26 – Protocol machine for the message transmission service	117
Figure 27 – Protocol machine for the data sequence identification service	118
Figure 28 – Protocol machine for the message receipt service	119
Figure 29 – Protocol data unit (PhPDU)	120
Figure 30 – PhSDU encoding and decoding	121
Figure 31 – Manchester encoding rules	121
Figure 32 – Preamble and delimiters	123
Figure 33 – Manchester coded symbols	124
Figure 34 – PhPDU format, half duplex	125
Figure 35 – PhPDU format, full duplex	127
Figure 36 – Data sequence PhPDU	131
Figure 37 – Structure of the header in a data sequence PhPDU	131
Figure 38 – Check sequence PhPDU	132
Figure 39 – Structure of a headers in a check sequence PhPDU	132
Figure 40 – Structure of the status PhPDU	133
Figure 41 – Structure of the header in a status PhPDU	133
Figure 42 – Structure of the medium activity status PhPDU	134
Figure 43 – Structure of the header in a medium activity status PhPDU	134
Figure 44 – Reset PhPDU	135
Figure 45 – Configuration of a master	136
Figure 46 – Configuration of a slave	136
Figure 47 – Configuration of a bus coupler	136
Figure 48 – Protocol data unit	137
Figure 49 – PhSDU encoding and decoding	137
Figure 50 – Manchester encoding rules	137
Figure 51 – Example of an NRZI-coded signal	140
Figure 52 – Fill signal	140
Figure 53 – Jitter tolerance	147
Figure 54 – Transmit circuit test configuration	153
Figure 55 – Output waveform	153
Figure 56 – Transmitted and received bit cell jitter (zero crossing point deviation)	154
Figure 57 – Signal polarity	156
Figure 58 – Receiver sensitivity and noise rejection	157
Figure 59 – Power supply ripple and noise	160
Figure 60 – Fieldbus coupler	162
Figure 61 – Transition from receiving to transmitting	169
Figure 62 – Power supply ripple and noise	173
Figure 63 – Test circuit for single-output power supplies	174
Figure 64 – Test circuit for power distribution through an IS barrier	175
Figure 65 – Test circuit for multiple output supplies with signal coupling	176
Figure 66 – Fieldbus coupler	178
Figure 67 – Protection resistors	178
Figure 68 – Test configuration for current-mode MAU	184

Figure 69 – Transmitted and received bit cell jitter (zero crossing point deviation)	185
Figure 70 – Noise test circuit for current-mode MAU	187
Figure 71 – Transmitted and received bit cell jitter (zero crossing point deviation)	195
Figure 72 – Power supply harmonic distortion and noise	197
Figure 73 – Optical wave shape template	202
Figure 74 – Cellular radio topology and reuse of frequencies	214
Figure 75 – Radio segment between wired segments topology	215
Figure 76 – Mixed wired and radio medium fieldbus topology	216
Figure 77 – Components of 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire PhL variant	221
Figure 78 – Coaxial wire MAU block diagram	222
Figure 79 – Coaxial wire MAU transmitter	222
Figure 80 – Coaxial wire MAU receiver operation	223
Figure 81 – Coaxial wire MAU transmit mask	224
Figure 82 – Coaxial wire MAU receive mask	225
Figure 83 – Transformer symbol	226
Figure 84 – 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire topology example	228
Figure 85 – Coaxial wire medium topology limits	228
Figure 86 – Coaxial wire medium tap electrical characteristics	230
Figure 87 – MAU block diagram 5 Mbit/s, optical fiber medium	233
Figure 88 – NAP reference model	237
Figure 89 – Example of transient and permanent nodes	238
Figure 90 – NAP transceiver	239
Figure 91 – NAP cable	240
Figure 92 – Circuit diagram of the principle of measuring impedance	245
Figure 93 – Definition of CMRR	246
Figure 94 – Block circuit diagram of the principle of measuring CMRR	247
Figure 95 – Power supply ripple and noise	249
Figure 96 – Output characteristic curve of a power supply of the category EEx ib	257
Figure 97 – Output characteristic curve of a power supply of the category EEx ia	257
Figure 98 – Repeater in linear bus topology	260
Figure 99 – Repeater in tree topology	261
Figure 100 – Example for a connector with integrated inductance	262
Figure 101 – Interconnecting wiring	263
Figure 102 – Bus terminator	264
Figure 103 – Linear structure of an intrinsically safe segment	265
Figure 104 – Topology example extended by repeaters	266
Figure 105 – Bus terminator	268
Figure 106 – Waveform of the differential voltage	269
Figure 107 – Test set-up for the measurement of the idle level for devices with an integrated termination resistor	271
Figure 108 – Test set-up for the measurement of the idle level for devices with a connectable termination resistor	271
Figure 109 – Test set-up for measurement of the transmission levels	272
Figure 110 – Test set-up for the measurement of the receiving levels	272

Figure 111 – Fieldbus model for intrinsic safety	273
Figure 112 – Communication device model for intrinsic safety	273
Figure 113 – Connection to the optical network.....	276
Figure 114 – Principle structure of optical networking	277
Figure 115 – Definition of the standard optical link.....	278
Figure 116 – Signal template for the optical transmitter	283
Figure 117 – Recommended interface circuit	287
Figure 118 – MAU of an outgoing interface	289
Figure 119 – MAU of an incoming interface.....	289
Figure 120 – Remote bus link	290
Figure 121 – Interface to the transmission medium	290
Figure 122 – Wiring	293
Figure 123 – Terminal resistor network	293
Figure 124 – Fiber optic remote bus cable	294
Figure 125 – Optical fiber remote bus link.....	295
Figure 126 – Optical wave shape template optical MAU.....	296
Figure 127 – Optical transmission line	303
Figure 128 – Optical signal envelope	305
Figure 129 – Display of jitter (J_{noise}).....	306
Figure 130 – Input-output performance of a slave	308
Figure 131 – Functions of a master connection.....	311
Figure 132 – Valid transmitting signals during the transition from fill signal to telegram delimiters.....	313
Figure 133 – Valid transmitting signals during the transition from telegram delimiter to fill signal	314
Figure 134 – Functions of a slave connection	315
Figure 135 – Network with two slaves	316
Figure 136 – Minimum interconnecting wiring.....	317
Figure 137 – Dedicated cable topology	318
Figure 138 – T-branch topology	318
Figure 139 – Communication element isolation	320
Figure 140 – Communication element and I/O isolation.....	320
Figure 141 – Minimum interconnecting wiring.....	321
Figure 142 – Flat cable topology	322
Figure 143 – Dedicated cable topology	322
Figure 144 – T-branch topology	323
Figure 145 – Type 18-PhL-P power distribution.....	325
Figure 146 – Type 18-PhL-P power distribution.....	326
Figure 147 – Type 18-PhL-P power supply filtering and protection	327
Figure 148 – Communication element isolation	328
Figure 149 – Communication element and i/o isolation	328
Figure 150 – PhL-P power supply circuit.....	328
Figure A.1 – Internal fieldbus connector.....	329

Figure A.2 – Contact designations for the external connector for harsh industrial environments	331
Figure A.3 – External fieldbus connector keyways, keys, and bayonet pins and grooves	331
Figure A.4 – External fieldbus connector intermateability dimensions	332
Figure A.5 – External fieldbus connector contact arrangement	333
Figure A.6 – Contact designations for the external connector for typical industrial environments	334
Figure A.7 – External fixed (device) side connector for typical industrial environments: dimensions	334
Figure A.8 – External free (cable) side connector for typical industrial environments: dimensions	335
Figure A.9 – Optical connector for typical industrial environments (FC connector)	335
Figure A.10 – Optical connector for typical industrial environments (ST connector)	336
Figure C.1 – Example of an optical passive reflective star	339
Figure C.2 – Example of an optical passive transmissive star	339
Figure D.1 – Example of star topology with 31,25 kbit/s, single fiber mode, optical MAU	340
Figure D.2 – Multi-star topology with an optical MAU	341
Figure D.3 – Example of mixture between wire and optical media for a 31,25 kbit/s bit rate	343
Figure D.4 – Example of mixture between wire and optical media	343
Figure F.1 – Pin connector for short range optical medium	346
Figure F.2 – Crimp ring for short range optical medium	346
Figure G.1 – PhL repeater device reference model	348
Figure G.2 – Reference model for redundancy	351
Figure G.3 – Block diagram showing redundant coaxial medium and NAP	352
Figure G.4 – Block diagram showing ring repeaters	353
Figure G.5 – Segmentation query	354
Figure G.6 – Segmentation response	354
Figure G.7 – Main switch state machine	356
Figure G.8 – Port 1 sees network activity first	357
Figure G.9 – Port 2 sees network activity first	358
Figure H.1 – Coaxial wire MAU RXDATA detector	360
Figure H.2 – Coaxial wire MAU RXCARRIER detection	361
Figure H.3 – Redundant coaxial wire MAU transceiver	361
Figure H.4 – Single channel coaxial wire MAU transceiver	362
Figure H.5 – Coaxial wire medium tap	363
Figure H.6 – Non-isolated NAP transceiver	364
Figure H.7 – Isolated NAP transceiver	364
Figure I.1 – Schematic of the station coupler	365
Figure I.2 – Pin assignment of the male and female connectors IEC 947-5-2 (A coding)	366
Figure I.3 – Connector pinout, front view of male and back view of female respectively	367
Figure I.4 – Connector pinout, front view of female M12 connector	369
Figure I.5 – Connector pinout, front view of male M12 connector	369
Figure I.6 – M12 Tee	370

Figure I.7 – M12 Bus termination	371
Figure J.1 – Redundancy of PhL MAU and Medium	372
Figure K.1 – Optical MAU in a network with echo	373
Figure K.2 – Optical MAU in a network without echo	374
Figure K.3 – Optical MAU with echo via internal electrical feedback of the receive signal	374
Figure K.4 – Optical MAU without echo function	374
Figure K.5 – Optical network with star topology	375
Figure K.6 – Optical network with ring topology	376
Figure K.7 – Optical network with bus topology	376
Figure K.8 – Tree structure built from a combination of star structures	377
Figure K.9 – Application example for an ANSI TIA/EIA-485-A / fiber optic converter	377
Figure L.1 – Bus termination integrated in the communication device	382
Figure L.2 – Bus termination in the connector	383
Figure L.3 – External bus termination	383
Figure M.1 – Outgoing interface 9-position female subminiature D connector at the device	385
Figure M.2 – Incoming interface 9-position male subminiature D connector at the device	385
Figure M.3 – Terminal connector at the device	385
Figure M.4 – Ferrule of an optical F-SMA connector for polymer optical fiber (980/1 000 µm)	386
Figure M.5 – Type 8 fiber optic hybrid connector housing	387
Figure M.6 – Type 8 fiber optic hybrid connector assignment	388
Figure O.1 – Topology	391
Figure O.2 – Structure of a single-core cable (example)	394
Figure O.3 – Optical power levels	395
Figure P.1 – Example of an implemented DPLL	397
Figure P.2 – DPLL status diagram	398
Figure P.3 – DPLL timing	398
Figure Q.1 – PhL-P device connector r-a	400
Figure Q.2 – PhL-P device connector straight	401
Figure Q.3 – PhL-P flat cable connector and terminal cover – body and connector	401
Figure Q.4 – PhL-P flat cable connector and terminal cover – terminal cover	402
Figure Q.5 – Type 18-PhL-P round cable connector body	402
Figure Q.6 – Type 18-PhL-P round cable connector terminal cover	403
Figure Q.7 – Type 18-PhL-P round cable alternate connector and body	403
Figure Q.8 – Type 18-PhL-P round cable alternate connector terminal cover	404
Figure R.1 – PhL-B cable cross section twisted drain	405
Figure R.2 – PhL-B cable cross section non-twisted drain	406
Figure R.3 – PhL-P flat cable cross section - with key	407
Figure R.4 – PhL-P flat cable cross section - without key	407
Figure R.5 – PhL-P flat cable polarity marking	407
Figure R.6 – Round cable – preferred; cross section	408

Figure R.7 – Round cable – alternate; cross-section	408

Table 1 – Data encoding rules	65
Table 2 – Ph-STATUS indication truth table	66
Table 3 – Jabber indications	66
Table 4 – Parameter names and values for Ph-SET-VALUE request	84
Table 5 – Parameter names for Ph-EVENT indication	85
Table 6 – Summary of Ph-management services and primitives	86
Table 7 – Reset primitives and parameters	87
Table 8 – Values of PhM-Status for the Reset service	87
Table 9 – Set value primitives and parameters	88
Table 10 – Mandatory PhE-variables	88
Table 11 – Permissible values of PhE-variables	88
Table 12 – Values of PhM-Status for the set-value service	89
Table 13 – Get value primitives and parameters	89
Table 14 – Current values of PhE-variables	89
Table 15 – Values of PhM-Status for the get value service	90
Table 16 – Event primitive and parameters	90
Table 17 – New values of PhE-variables	90
Table 18 – Parameter names and values for management	91
Table 19 – PH-RESET	93
Table 20 – Ph-SET-VALUE	93
Table 21 – PhL variables	94
Table 22 – Ph-GET-VALUE	95
Table 23 – Ph-EVENT	95
Table 24 – PhL events	96
Table 25 – Parameter names and values for Ph-SET-VALUE request	97
Table 26 – Signals at DTE – DCE interface	101
Table 27 – Signal levels for an exposed DTE – DCE interface	102
Table 28 – MDS bus reset	112
Table 29 – Signals at the MIS-MDS interface	112
Table 30 – Manchester encoding rules	121
Table 31 – MDS timing characteristics	124
Table 32 – MDS data encoding rules	124
Table 33 – SL bit and TxSL signal assignment	131
Table 34 – SL bit and RxSL signal assignment	131
Table 35 – SL bit and TxSL signal assignment	132
Table 36 – SL bit and RxSL signal assignment	133
Table 37 – SL bit and TxSL signal assignment	133
Table 38 – SL bit and RxSL signal assignment	133
Table 39 – Coding and decoding rules	134
Table 40 – Decoding rules for the idle states	135
Table 41 – Coding rules for the reset PhPDU	135

Table 42 – Decoding rules of the reset PhPDU	135
Table 43 – Manchester encoding rules	138
Table 44 – Minimum services at MDS – MAU interface	141
Table 45 – Signal levels for an exposed MDS – MAU interface	142
Table 46 – MDS-MAU interface definitions: 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire	143
Table 47 – MDS-MAU interface 5 Mbit/s, optical fiber medium	144
Table 48 – Services of the MDS-MAU interface.....	146
Table 49 – Minimum services at MAU interface.....	147
Table 50 – Signal levels for an exposed MAU interface.....	148
Table 51 – Bit-rate-dependent quantities of voltage-mode networks.....	149
Table 52 – MAU transmit level specification summary.....	152
Table 53 – MAU transmit timing specification summary for 31,25 kbit/s operation.....	152
Table 54 – MAU transmit timing specification summary for ≥ 1 Mbit/s operation.....	152
Table 55 – MAU receive circuit specification summary.....	156
Table 56 – Network powered device characteristics	159
Table 57 – Network power supply requirements	159
Table 58 – Test cable attenuation limits.....	161
Table 59 – Recommended color coding of cables in North America.....	163
Table 60 – MAU transmit level specification summary.....	167
Table 61 – MAU transmit timing specification summary.....	167
Table 62 – MAU receive circuit specification summary.....	170
Table 63 – Network powered device characteristics	172
Table 64 – Network power supply requirements.....	172
Table 65 – Type 3 cable color specification.....	180
Table 66 – MAU transmit level specification summary.....	183
Table 67 – MAU transmit timing specification summary.....	184
Table 68 – Receive circuit specification summary	186
Table 69 – Network power supply requirements	188
Table 70 – Transmit level specification summary for current-mode MAU.....	194
Table 71 – Transmit timing specification summary for current-mode MAU.....	194
Table 72 – Receive circuit specification summary for current-mode MAU.....	196
Table 73 – Network power supply requirements	197
Table 74 – Bit-rate-dependent quantities of high-speed (≥ 1 Mbit/s) dual-fiber networks	200
Table 75 – Transmit level and spectral specification summary	201
Table 76 – Transmit timing specification summary	201
Table 77 – Receive circuit specification summary	202
Table 78 – Transmit and receive level and spectral specifications for an optical active star 205	
Table 79 – Timing characteristics of an optical active star.....	206
Table 80 – Transmit level and spectral specification summary	207
Table 81 – Transmit and receive level and spectral specifications for an optical active star.....	209
Table 82 – Interfering frequencies for testing receiver performance	219
Table 83 – Transmit control line definitions 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire	222

Table 84 – Receiver data output definitions: 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire.....	223
Table 85 – Receiver carrier output definitions: 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire.....	223
Table 86 – Coaxial wire medium interface – transmit specifications	224
Table 87 – Coaxial wire medium interface – receive.....	225
Table 88 – Coaxial wire medium interface – general	226
Table 89 – 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire transformer electrical specifications	227
Table 90 – Coaxial spur cable specifications.....	231
Table 91 – Coaxial trunk cable specifications.....	231
Table 92 – Transmit control line definitions 5 Mbit/s, optical fiber medium	233
Table 93 – Fiber medium interface 5,0 Mbit/s, optical	233
Table 94 – Fiber signal specification 5 Mbit/s, optical medium, short range.....	234
Table 95 – Fiber signal specification 5 Mbit/s, optical medium, medium range.....	235
Table 96 – Fiber signal specification 5 Mbit/s, optical medium, long range.....	236
Table 97 – NAP requirements	238
Table 98 – Mixing devices from different categories.....	242
Table 99 – Input Impedances of bus interfaces and power supplies.....	245
Table 100 – Required CMRR	247
Table 101 – Network powered device characteristics for the 31,25 kbit/s voltage-mode MAU	248
Table 102 – Network power supply requirements for the 31,25 kbit/s voltage-mode MAU	248
Table 103 – Electrical characteristics of fieldbus interfaces	253
Table 104 – Electrical characteristics of power supplies.....	255
Figure 96 – Output characteristic curve of a power supply of the category EEx ib	257
Figure 97 – Output characteristic curve of a power supply of the category EEx ia	257
Table 105 – Characteristics for non intrinsic safety	259
Table 106 – Characteristics using repeaters	260
Table 107 – Cable specifications	262
Table 108 – Maximum cable length for the different transmission speeds	262
Table 109 – Characteristics for intrinsic safety.....	265
Table 110 – Cable specification (function- and safety-related)	267
Table 111 – Maximum cable length for the different transmission speeds	267
Table 112 – Electrical characteristics of the intrinsically safe interface	270
Table 113 – Maximum safety values	275
Table 114 – Characteristic features	276
Table 115 – Characteristics of optical transmitters for multi-mode glass fiber.....	279
Table 116 – Characteristics of optical transmitters for single-mode glass fiber.....	279
Table 117 – Characteristics of optical transmitters for plastic fiber	280
Table 118 – Characteristics of optical transmitters for 200/230 µm glass fiber	280
Table 119 – Characteristics of optical receivers for multi-mode glass fiber.....	281
Table 120 – Characteristics of optical receivers for single-mode glass fiber	281
Table 121 – Characteristics of optical receivers for plastic fiber	281
Table 122 – Characteristics of optical receivers for 200/230 µm glass fiber.....	281

Table 123 – Permissible signal distortion at the electrical input of the optical transmitter	282
Table 124 – Permissible signal distortion due to the optical transmitter	283
Table 125 – Permissible signal distortion due to the optical receiver	284
Table 126 – Permissible signal influence due to internal electronic circuits of a coupling component	284
Table 127 – Maximum chaining of standard optical links without retiming	285
Table 128 – Services of the MDS-MAU interface, RS-485, Type 4	286
Table 129 – Services of the MDS-MAU interface, RS-232, Type 4	288
Table 130 – Bit rate dependent quantities twisted pair wire medium MAU	289
Table 131 – Incoming interface signals	291
Table 132 – Outgoing interface signals	291
Table 133 – Remote bus cable characteristics	292
Table 134 – Bit rate dependent quantities optical MAU	294
Table 135 – Remote bus fiber optic cable length	295
Table 136 – Encoding rules	295
Table 137 – Transmit level and spectral specification summary for an optical MAU	296
Table 138 – Optical MAU receive circuit specification summary	297
Table 139 – Specification of the fiber optic waveguide	297
Table 140 – Specification of the single fiber	298
Table 141 – Specification of the cable sheath and mechanical properties of the cable	298
Table 142 – Recommended further material properties of the cable	298
Table 143 – Specification of the fiber optic waveguide	299
Table 144 – Specification of the single fiber	299
Table 145 – Specification of the cable sheath and mechanical properties of the cable	300
Table 146 – Specification of the standard test fiber for an optical MAU	300
Table 147 – Transmission rate support	306
Table 148 – Transmission data parameters	307
Table 149 – Possible slave input signals	309
Table 150 – Possible slave output signals	309
Table 151 – Valid slave output signals	310
Table 152 – Specifications of the clock adjustment times	310
Table 153 – Optical signal delay in a slave	310
Table 154 – Basic functions of the connection	311
Table 155 – Pass-through topology limits	319
Table 156 – T-branch topology limits	319
Table 157 – Terminating resistor requirements	319
Table 158 – Pass-through topology limits	323
Table 159 – T-branch topology limits	324
Table 160 – Terminating resistor requirements – flat cable	324
Table 161 – Terminating resistor requirements – round cable	324
Table 162 – 24 V Power supply specifications	326
Table 163 – 24V Power consumption specifications	326
Table A.1 – Internal connector dimensions	329

Table A.2 – Contact assignments for the external connector for harsh industrial environments	330
Table A.3 – Contact assignments for the external connector for typical industrial environments	334
Table A.4 – Fixed (device) side connector dimensions	334
Table A.5 – Free (cable) side connector dimensions	335
Table A.6 – Connector dimensions	336
Table B.1 – Typical cable specifications	337
Table B.2 – Recommended maximum spur lengths versus number of communication elements	338
Table C.1 – Optical passive star specification summary: example	339
Table D.1 – Passive star topology	342
Table D.2 – Active star topology	342
Table E.1 – Alternate fibers for dual-fiber mode	344
Table E.2 – Alternate fibers for single-fiber mode	344
Table F.1 – Connector requirements	345
Table F.2 – NAP connector pin definition	347
Table H.1 – 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire receiver output definitions	360
Table H.2 – Coaxial wire medium toroid specification	363
Table I.1 – Contact assignments for the external connector for harsh industrial environments	365
Table I.2 – Contact designations	367
Table I.3 – Contact designations	368
Table I.4 – Contact designations	368
Table K.1 – Example of a link budget calculation for 62,5/125 μm multi-mode glass fiber	380
Table K.2 – Example of a link budget calculation for 9/125 μm single mode glass fiber	380
Table K.3 – Example of a link budget calculation for 980/1 000 μm multi-mode plastic fiber	381
Table K.4 – Example of a level budget calculation for 200/230 μm multi-mode glass fiber	381
Table M.1 – Pin assignment of the 9-position subminiature D connector	385
Table M.2 – Pin assignment of the terminal connector	386
Table M.3 – Type 8 fiber optic hybrid connector dimensions	389
Table O.1 – Transmitter specifications	393
Table O.2 – Receiver specifications	393
Table O.3 – Cable specifications (example)	394
Table O.4 – System data of the optical transmission line at 650 nm	395
Table R.1 – PhL-B cable specifications	405
Table R.2 – PhL-P flat cable specifications	406
Table R.3 – PhL-P round cable specifications - preferred	407
Table R.4 – PhL-P round cable specifications – alternate	408

INTERNATIONAL ELECTROTECHNICAL COMMISSION

**INDUSTRIAL COMMUNICATION NETWORKS –
FIELDBUS SPECIFICATIONS –****Part 2: Physical layer specification and service definition**

FOREWORD

- 1) The International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) is a worldwide organization for standardization comprising all national electrotechnical committees (IEC National Committees). The object of IEC is to promote international co-operation on all questions concerning standardization in the electrical and electronic fields. To this end and in addition to other activities, IEC publishes International Standards, Technical Specifications, Technical Reports, Publicly Available Specifications (PAS) and Guides (hereafter referred to as "IEC Publication(s)"). Their preparation is entrusted to technical committees; any IEC National Committee interested in the subject dealt with may participate in this preparatory work. International, governmental and non-governmental organizations liaising with the IEC also participate in this preparation. IEC collaborates closely with the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) in accordance with conditions determined by agreement between the two organizations.
- 2) The formal decisions or agreements of IEC on technical matters express, as nearly as possible, an international consensus of opinion on the relevant subjects since each technical committee has representation from all interested IEC National Committees.
- 3) IEC Publications have the form of recommendations for international use and are accepted by IEC National Committees in that sense. While all reasonable efforts are made to ensure that the technical content of IEC Publications is accurate, IEC cannot be held responsible for the way in which they are used or for any misinterpretation by any end user.
- 4) In order to promote international uniformity, IEC National Committees undertake to apply IEC Publications transparently to the maximum extent possible in their national and regional publications. Any divergence between any IEC Publication and the corresponding national or regional publication shall be clearly indicated in the latter.
- 5) IEC provides no marking procedure to indicate its approval and cannot be rendered responsible for any equipment declared to be in conformity with an IEC Publication.
- 6) All users should ensure that they have the latest edition of this publication.
- 7) No liability shall attach to IEC or its directors, employees, servants or agents including individual experts and members of its technical committees and IEC National Committees for any personal injury, property damage or other damage of any nature whatsoever, whether direct or indirect, or for costs (including legal fees) and expenses arising out of the publication, use of, or reliance upon, this IEC Publication or any other IEC Publications.
- 8) Attention is drawn to the Normative references cited in this publication. Use of the referenced publications is indispensable for the correct application of this publication.

NOTE Use of some of the associated protocol types is restricted by their intellectual-property-right holders. In all cases, the commitment to limited release of intellectual-property-rights made by the holders of those rights permits a particular data-link layer protocol type to be used with physical layer and application layer protocols in type combinations as specified explicitly in the IEC 61784 series. Use of the various protocol types in other combinations may require permission of their respective intellectual-property-right holders.

IEC draws attention to the fact that it is claimed that compliance with this standard may involve the use of patents as follows, where the [xx] notation indicates the holder of the patent right:

Type 2 (subclauses 5.3, 9.3, 10.3, Clauses 17 through 20, Annex F through Annex H):

5,396,197 [AB] Network Node TAP

IEC takes no position concerning the evidence, validity and scope of these patent rights.

The holders of these patent rights have assured IEC that they are willing to negotiate licences under reasonable and non-discriminatory terms and conditions with applicants throughout the world. In this respect, the statement of the holders of these patent rights are registered with IEC. Information may be obtained from:

[AB]: Rockwell Technologies, LLC
Allen-Bradley Co, LLC
1201 So. Second Street
Milwaukee, WI 53204
USA
Attention: Intellectual Property Dept.

Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this standard may be the subject of patent rights other than those identified above. IEC shall not be held responsible for identifying any or all such patent rights.

International Standard IEC 61158-2 has been prepared by subcommittee 65C: Industrial networks, of IEC technical committee 65: Industrial-process measurement, control and automation.

This fourth edition cancels and replaces IEC 61158-2:2003. This edition of this part constitutes a minor revision. This publication, together with its companion parts for Type 16, also partially replaces IEC 61491:2002 which is at present being revised. IEC 61491 will be issued as a technical report.

This edition includes the following significant technical changes with respect to the previous edition:

- a) deletion of the former Type 6 fieldbus for lack of market relevance;
- b) addition of new fieldbus types;
- c) generalization of the seldom-used Type 1 radio to a more useful form.

This bilingual version (2014-04) corresponds to the monolingual English version, published in 2007-12.

The text of this standard is based on the following documents:

FDIS	Report on voting
65C/472/FDIS	65C/483/RVD

Full information on the voting for the approval of this standard can be found in the report on voting indicated in the above table.

The French version of this standard has not been voted upon. This publication has been drafted in accordance with ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2.

NOTE Slight variances from the directives have been allowed by the IEC Central Office to provide continuity of subclause numbering with prior editions.

The committee has decided that the contents of this publication will remain unchanged until the maintenance result date indicated on the IEC web site under <http://webstore.iec.ch> in the data related to the specific publication. At this date, the publication will be:

- reconfirmed;
- withdrawn;
- replaced by a revised edition, or
- amended.

The list of all the parts of the IEC 61158 series, under the general title *Industrial communication networks – Fieldbus specifications*, can be found on the IEC website.

IMPORTANT – The 'colour inside' logo on the cover page of this publication indicates that it contains colours which are considered to be useful for the correct understanding of its contents. Users should therefore print this document using a colour printer.

0 Introduction

0.1 General

This part of IEC 61158 is one of a series produced to facilitate the interconnection of automation system components. It is related to other standards in the set as defined by the “three-layer” fieldbus reference model described in IEC/TR 61158-1.

0.2 Physical layer overview

The primary aim of this standard is to provide a set of rules for communication expressed in terms of the procedures to be carried out by peer Ph-entities at the time of communication.

The physical layer receives data units from the data-link Layer, encodes them, if necessary by adding communications framing information, and transmits the resulting physical signals to the transmission medium at one node. Signals are then received at one or more other node(s), decoded, if necessary by removing the communications framing information, before the data units are passed to the data-link Layer of the receiving device.

0.3 Document overview

This standard comprises physical layer specifications corresponding to many of the different DL-Layer protocol Types specified in IEC 61158-4-1 to IEC 61158-4-18.

NOTE 1 The protocol Type numbers used are consistent throughout the IEC 61158 series.

NOTE 2 Specifications for Types 1, 2, 3, 4, 8 and 16 are included. Type 7 uses Type 1 specifications. The other Types do not use any of the specifications given in this standard.

NOTE 3 For ease of reference, Type numbers are given in clause names. This means that the specification given therein applies to this Type, but does not exclude its use for other Types.

NOTE 4 It is up to the user of this standard to select interoperating sets of provisions. Refer to the IEC 61784 series for standardized communication profiles based on the IEC 61158 series.

A general model of the physical layer is shown in Figure 1.

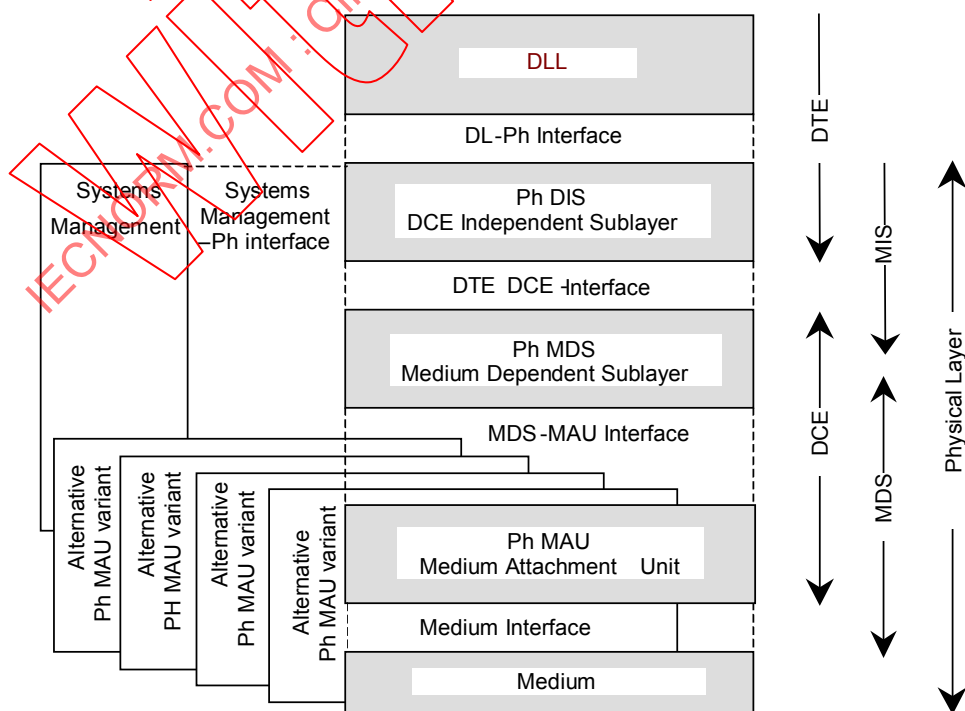


Figure 1 – General model of physical layer

NOTE 5 The protocol types use a subset of the structure elements.

NOTE 6 Since Type 8 uses a more complex DIS than the other types, it uses the term MIS to differentiate.

The common characteristics for all variants and types are as follows:

- digital data transmission;
- no separate clock transmission;
- either half-duplex communication (bi-directional but in only one direction at a time) or full-duplex communication.

0.4 Major physical layer variations specified in this standard

0.4.1 Type 1 media

0.4.1.1 Type 1: Wire media

For twisted-pair wire media, Type 1 specifies two modes of coupling and different signaling speeds as follows:

- a) voltage mode (parallel coupling), 150 Ω , data rates from 31,25 kbit/s to 25 Mbit/s;
- b) voltage mode (parallel coupling), 100 Ω , 31,25 kbit/s;
- c) current mode (serial coupling), 1,0 Mbit/s including two current options.

The voltage mode variations may be implemented with inductive coupling using transformers. This is not mandatory if the isolation requirements of this standard are met by other means.

The Type 1 twisted-pair (or untwisted-pair) wire medium physical layer provides the options:

- no power via the bus conductors; not intrinsically safe;
- power via the bus conductors; not intrinsically safe;
- no power via the bus conductors; intrinsically safe;
- power via the bus conductors; intrinsically safe.

0.4.1.2 Type 1: Optical media

The major variations of the Type 1 optic fiber media are as follows:

- dual fiber mode, data rates from 31,25 kbit/s to 25 Mbit/s;
- single fiber mode, 31,25 kbit/s.

0.4.1.3 Type 1: Radio media

The Type 1 radio medium specification provides a generalized FSK/PSK radio capability at arbitrary bit rates.

0.4.2 Type 2: Coaxial wire and optical media

Type 2 specifies the following variants:

- coaxial copper wire medium, 5 Mbit/s;
- optical fiber medium, 5 Mbit/s;
- network access port (NAP), a point-to-point temporary attachment mechanism that can be used for programming, configuration, diagnostics or other purposes;
- repeater machine sublayers (RM, RRM) and redundant physical layers.

0.4.3 Type 3: Twisted-pair wire and optical media

Type 3 specifies the following synchronous transmission:

a) twisted-pair wire medium, 31,25 kbit/s, voltage mode (parallel coupling) with the options:

- power via the bus conductors: not intrinsically safe;
- power via the bus conductors: intrinsically safe;

and the following asynchronous transmission variants:

b) twisted-pair wire medium, up to 12 Mbit/s, ANSI TIA/EIA-485-A;

c) optical fiber medium, up to 12 Mbit/s.

0.4.4 Type 4: Wire medium

Type 4 specifies wire media with the following characteristics:

- RS-485 wire medium up to 76,8 kbit/s;
- RS-232 wire medium up to 230,4 kbit/s.

0.4.5 Type 8: Twisted-pair wire and optical media

The physical layer also allows transmitting data units that have been received through a medium access by the transmission medium directly through another medium access and its transmission protocol to another device.

Type 8 specifies the following variants:

- twisted-pair wire medium, up to 16 Mbit/s;
- optical fiber medium, up to 16 Mbit/s.

The general characteristics of these transmission media are as follows:

- full-duplex transmission;
- non-return-to-zero (NRZ) coding.

The wire media type provides the following options:

- no power supply via the bus cable, not intrinsically safe;
- power supply via the bus cable and on additional conductors, not intrinsically safe.

0.4.6 Type 12: Wire medium

Type 12 specifies wire media with the following characteristics:

- LVDS wire medium up 100 Mbit/s.

0.4.7 Type 16: optical media

Type 16 specifies a synchronous transmission using optical fiber medium, at 2 Mbit/s, 4 Mbit/s, 8 Mbit/s and 16 Mbit/s.

0.4.8 Type 18: Media

0.4.8.1 Type 18: Basic media

The Type 18-PhL-B specifies a balanced transmission signal over a shielded 3-core twisted cable. Communication data rates as high as 10 Mbit/s and transmission distances as great as 1,2 km are specified.

0.4.8.2 Type 18: Powered media

The Type 18-PhL-P specifies a balanced transmission signal over a 4-core unshielded cable in both flat and round configurations with conductors specified for communications signal and network-embedded power distribution. Communication data rates as high as 2,5 Mbit/s and transmission distances as great as 500 m are specified.

Withdrawing
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61158-2:2007

INDUSTRIAL COMMUNICATION NETWORKS – FIELDBUS SPECIFICATIONS –

Part 2: Physical layer specification and service definition

1 Scope

This part of IEC 61158 specifies the requirements for fieldbus component parts. It also specifies the media and network configuration requirements necessary to ensure agreed levels of

- a) data integrity before data-link Layer error checking;
- b) interoperability between devices at the physical layer.

The fieldbus physical layer conforms to layer 1 of the OSI 7-layer model as defined by ISO 7498 with the exception that, for some types, frame delimiters are in the physical layer while for other types they are in the data-link Layer.

2 Normative references

The following referenced documents are indispensable for the application of this document. For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

IEC 60050-731, *International Electrotechnical Vocabulary – Chapter 731: Optical fibre communication*

IEC 60079-11, *Explosive atmospheres – Part 11: Equipment protection by intrinsic safety “i”*

IEC 60079-14, *Electrical apparatus for explosive gas atmospheres – Part 14: Electrical installations in hazardous areas (other than mines)*

IEC 60079-25, *Electrical apparatus for explosive gas atmospheres – Part 25: Intrinsically safe systems*

IEC 60096-1, *Radio-frequency cables – Part 1: General requirements and measuring methods*

IEC 60169-8, *Radio-frequency connectors – Part 8: RF coaxial connectors with inner diameter of outer conductor 6,5 mm (0,256 in) with bayonet lock – Characteristic impedance 50 ohms (Type BNC)*

IEC 60169-17, *Radio-frequency connectors – Part 17: RF coaxial connectors with inner diameter of outer conductor 6,5 mm (0,256 in) with screw coupling – Characteristic impedance 50 ohms (Type TNC)*

IEC 60189-1:1986, *Low-frequency cables and wires with PVC insulation and PVC sheath – Part 1: General test and measuring methods*¹

¹ There exists a new edition of this publication (2007).

IEC 60255-22-1:1988, *Electrical relays – Part 22-1: Electrical disturbance tests for measuring relays and protection equipment – 1 MHz burst disturbance tests*²

IEC 60364-4-41, *Low-voltage electrical installations of buildings – Part 4-41: Protection for safety – Protection against electric shock*

IEC 60364-5-54, *Electrical installations of buildings – Part 5-54: Selection and erection of electrical equipment – Earthing arrangements, protective conductors and protective bonding conductors*

IEC 60529, *Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP Code)*

IEC 60603-7, *Connectors for frequencies below 3 MHz for use with printed boards – Part 7: Detail specification for connectors, 8-way, including fixed and free connectors with common mating features, with assessed quality*

IEC 60760, *Flat, quick-connect terminations*

IEC 60793 (all parts), *Optical fibres*

IEC 60794-1-2, *Optical fibre cables – Part 1-2: Generic specification – Basic optical cable test procedures*

IEC 60807-3, *Rectangular connectors for frequencies below 3 MHz – Part 3: Detail specification for a range of connectors with trapezoidal shaped metal shells and round contacts – Removable crimp contact types with closed crimp barrels, rear insertion/rear extraction*

IEC 60874-10-1, *Connectors for optical fibres and cables – Part 10-1: Detail specification for fiber optic connector type BFOC/2,5 terminated to multimode fibre type A1*

IEC 61000-4-2, *Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) – Part 4-2: Testing and measurement techniques – Electrostatic discharge immunity test (Basic EMC Publication)*

IEC 61000-4-3, *Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) – Part 4-3: Testing and measurement techniques – Radiated, radio-frequency, electromagnetic field immunity test (Basic EMC Publication)*

IEC 61000-4-4, *Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) – Part 4-4: Testing and measurement techniques – Electrical fast transient/burst immunity test (Basic EMC Publication)*

IEC 61131-2, *Programmable controllers – Part 2: Equipment requirements and tests*

IEC 61156-1, *Multicore and symmetrical pair/quad cables for digital communications – Part 1: Generic specification*

IEC 61158-4-2, *Industrial communication network – Fieldbus specifications – Part 4-2: Data-link protocol specification – Type 2 elements*

IEC 61158-4-3, *Industrial communication network – Fieldbus specifications – Part 4-3: Data-link protocol specification – Type 3 elements*

IEC 61754-2, *Fibre optic connector interfaces – Part 2: Type BFOC/2,5 connector family*

IEC 61754-13, *Fibre optic connector interfaces – Part 13: Type FC-PC connector*

IEC 61754-22, *Fibre optic connector interfaces – Part 22: Type F-SMA connector family*

² There exists a new edition of this publication (2007).

ISO/IEC 7498 (all parts), *Information technology – Open Systems Interconnection – Basic Reference Model: The Basic Model*

ISO/IEC 8482, *Information technology – Telecommunications and information exchange between systems – Twisted pair multipoint interconnections*

ISO/IEC 8802-3, *Information technology – Telecommunications and information exchange between systems – Local and metropolitan area networks – Specific requirements – Part 3: Carrier sense multiple access with collision detection (CSMA/CD) access method and physical layer specifications*

ISO/IEC 9314-1, *Information processing systems – Fibre distributed data interface (FDDI) Part 1: Token ring physical layer protocol (PHY)*

ISO/IEC 10731, *Information technology – Open Systems Interconnection – Basic reference model – Conventions for the definition of OSI services*

ANSI TIA/EIA-232-F, *Interface Between Data Terminal Equipment and Data Circuit – Terminating Equipment Employing Serial Binary Data Interchange*

ANSI TIA/EIA-422-B, *Electrical Characteristics of Balanced Voltage Digital Interface Circuits*

ANSI TIA/EIA-485-A, *Electrical Characteristics of Generators and Receivers for Use in Balanced Digital Multipoint Systems*

ANSI TIA/EIA-644-A, *Electrical Characteristics of Low Voltage Differential Signaling (LVDS) Interface Circuits*

3 Terms and definitions

For the purposes of this document, the terms and definitions of ISO/IEC 7498, and the following definitions apply.

3.1 Common terms and definitions

NOTE Many definitions are common to more than one protocol type; they are not necessarily used by all protocol types.

3.1.1 activity

presence of a signal or noise at the input terminals of a fieldbus device that is of a level that is above the receiver signal level threshold of that device

3.1.2 barrier

physical entity that limits current and voltage into a hazardous area in order to satisfy intrinsic safety requirements

3.1.3 bit

unit of data consisting of a 1 or a 0

NOTE A bit is the smallest data unit that can be transmitted.

3.1.4 bus

trunk and all devices connected to it

3.1.5 cable plant interface connector CPIC

point at which test and conformance measurements are made and that the interface between the network device and the cable plant

3.1.6 communication element

part of a fieldbus device that communicates with other elements via the bus

3.1.7 connector

coupling device employed to connect the medium of one circuit or communication element with that of another circuit or communication element
[IEEE Std 100-1996, modified]

3.1.8 coupler

physical interface between trunk and spur or trunk and device

3.1.9 Data Communications Equipment DCE

embodiment of the media, modulation and coding-dependent portion of a fieldbus-connected device, comprising the lower portions of the physical layer within the device

3.1.10**Data Terminal Equipment****DTE**

embodiment of the media, modulation and coding-independent portion of a fieldbus-connected device, comprising the uppermost portion of the physical layer and all higher layers within the device

3.1.11**decibel(milliwatt)****dB(mW)**

logarithmic unit of power, referenced to 1 mW. (Also written **dBm**.)

$$P_{\text{dBm}} = 10 \log (P_{\text{mW}})$$

NOTE If P_{mW} is the measured power in mW, then P_{dBm} is the power expressed logarithmically in dB(mW), or equivalently, dBm.

3.1.12**delimiter**

flag that separates and organizes items of data

3.1.13**device**

physical entity connected to the fieldbus composed of at least one communication element (the network element) and which may have a control element and/or a final element (transducer, actuator, etc.)

NOTE A device may contain more than one node.

3.1.14**effective launch power**

effective power coupled into the core of a fiber optic waveguide by the transmitter. This power is measured with a standard test fiber connected to the CPIC

3.1.15**effective power**

the difference, expressed in dBm, between the absolute optical power measured in milliwatt at the midpoint in time of the Hi level to the absolute optical power measured in milliwatt at the midpoint of the Lo level

NOTE Effective power is believed to give a more accurate measurement of the conditions that affect the receivers than traditional measurements, such as peak and average power. methods for measuring effective power are for further study.

3.1.16**error**

discrepancy between a computed, observed or measured value or condition and the specified or theoretically correct value or condition

3.1.17**extinction ratio**

ratio of the absolute optical power measured in milliwatt at the midpoint in time of the Hi level to the absolute optical power measured in milliwatt at the midpoint in time of the Lo level.

NOTE The following gives an example of the computation of effective power and extinction ratio. If the midpoint of Hi level is measured as 105 μW , and if the midpoint of Lo level is measured as 5 μW , then the difference is 100 μW . Therefore, the effective power is $10 \log ((100 \mu\text{W}) / 1 \text{ mW})$, which equals $-10,0 \text{ dBm}$. The extinction ratio is $(105/5)$, which equals 21:1.

3.1.18**fiber optic cable**

cable containing one or more fiber optic waveguides with jacketing material provided to facilitate handling and to protect the fiber

3.1.19

fiber optic receiver

combined optics and electronics in the communicating device that accept the optical signal received by the communicating device through the CPIC

3.1.20

fiber optic receiver operating range

range of optical power that must be present at the CPIC to ensure that the bit error rate specifications are met

3.1.21

fiber optic transmitter

device that emits optical signals for propagation into a fiber optic waveguide through the CPIC

3.1.22

fiber optic waveguide

flexible, optically transparent strand that is used to transport optical signals from one geographic point to another geographic point

3.1.23

frame

set of consecutive digit time slots in which the position of each digit time slot can be identified by reference to a framing signal
[IEEE Std 100-1996]

3.1.24

intrinsic safety

design methodology for a circuit or an assembly of circuits in which any spark or thermal effect produced under normal operating and specified fault conditions is not capable under prescribed test conditions of causing ignition of a given explosive atmosphere
[IEC 60079-11]

3.1.25

isolation

physical and electrical arrangement of the parts of a signal transmission system to prevent electrical interference currents within or between the parts
[IEEE Std 100-1996]

3.1.26

jabber

continuous transmission on the medium due to a faulty device

3.1.27

jitter

offset of the 50 % transition points of pulse edges from their ideal position as the result of all causes

3.1.28

Manchester encoding

means by which separate data and clock signals can be combined into a single, self-synchronizing data stream, suitable for transmission on a serial channel

3.1.29

medium

cable, optical fiber, or other means by which communication signals are transmitted between two or more points

NOTE In this standard "media" is used only as the plural of medium.

3.1.30**network**

all of the media, connectors, repeaters, routers, gateways and associated node communication elements by which a given set of communicating devices are interconnected

3.1.31**node**

end-point of a branch in a network or a point at which one or more branches meet
[IEV 131-02-04]

3.1.32**optical active star**

active device in which a signal from an input fiber is received, amplified and retransmitted to a larger number of output optical fibers. Retiming of the received signal is optional.

3.1.33**optical fall time**

time it takes for a pulse to go from 90 % effective power to 10 % effective power, specified as a per cent of the nominal bit time

3.1.34**optical passive star**

passive device in which signals from input fibers are combined and then distributed among output optical fibers

3.1.35**optical rise time**

time it takes for a pulse to go from 10 % effective power to 90 % effective power, specified as a per cent of the nominal bit time

3.1.36**peak emission wavelength**

λ_p

wavelength at which radiant intensity is maximized

3.1.37**receiver**

receive circuitry of a communication element

3.1.38**repeater**

two-port active physical layer device that receives and retransmits all signals to increase the distance and number of devices for which signals can be correctly transferred for a given medium

3.1.39**segment**

trunk-cable section of a fieldbus that is terminated in its characteristic impedance

NOTE Segments are linked by repeaters within a logical link and by bridges to form a fieldbus network.

3.1.40**separately powered device**

device that does not receive its operating power via the fieldbus signal conductors

3.1.41**shield**

surrounding earthed metallic layer to confine the electric field within the cable and to protect the cable from external electrical influence

NOTE Metallic sheaths, armours and earthed concentric conductors may also serve as a shield.

3.1.42

spur

branch-line (i.e. a link connected to a larger one at a point on its route) that is a final circuit

NOTE The alternative term 'drop cable' is used in this standard.

3.1.43

terminator

resistor connecting conductor pairs at both ends of a wire medium segment to prevent reflections from occurring at the ends of cables

NOTE For Type 2 the terminator is mounted in a BNC or TNC plug.

3.1.44

transceiver

combination of receiving and transmitting equipment in a common housing employing common circuit components for both transmitting and receiving [IEEE Std 100-1996 modified for non-radio use]

NOTE A medium attachment unit can be the transceiver or can contain the transceiver, depending on Type and implementation.

3.1.45

transmitter

transmit circuitry of a communication element

3.1.46

trunk

main communication highway acting as a source of main supply to a number of other lines (spurs)

3.1.47

typical half-intensity wavelength

$\Delta\lambda$

range of wavelength of spectral distribution in which the radiant intensity is no less than one-half of the maximum intensity

3.2 Type 1: Terms and definitions

3.2.1

activity

[see 3.1.1]

3.2.2

barrier

[see 3.1.2]

3.2.3

bus

[see 3.1.4]

3.2.4

cable plant interface connector

CPIC

[see 3.1.5]

3.2.5

communication element

[see 3.1.6]

3.2.6**connector**

[see 3.1.7]

3.2.7**coupler**

[see 3.1.8]

3.2.8**Data Communications Equipment****DCE**

[see 3.1.9]

3.2.9**Data Terminal Equipment****DTE**

[see 3.1.10]

3.2.10**dBm**

[see 3.1.11]

3.2.11**delimiter**

[see 3.1.12]

3.2.12**device**

[see 3.1.13]

3.2.13**effective launch power**

[see 3.1.14]

3.2.14**effective power**

[see 3.1.15]

3.2.15**fiber optic cable**

[see 3.1.17]

3.2.16**fiber optic receiver**

[see 3.1.19]

3.2.17**fiber optic receiver operating range**

[see 3.1.20]

3.2.18**fiber optic transmitter**

[see 3.1.21]

3.2.19**fiber optic waveguide**

[see 3.1.22]

3.2.20

frame

[see 3.1.23]

3.2.21

Gaussian minimum shift keying

form of frequency modulation where a 1 is represented by a frequency of $F_c + f$ and a 0 is represented by $F_c - f$ where f is equal to the bit rate divided by 4 and where the modulating frequency is first passed through a Gaussian filter before being imposed on the carrier

3.2.22

intrinsic safety

[see 3.1.24]

3.2.23

isolation

[see 3.1.25]

3.2.24

jabber

[see 3.1.26]

3.2.25

Manchester encoding

[see 3.1.27]

3.2.26

medium

[see 3.1.29]

3.2.27

network

[see 3.1.30]

3.2.28

node

[see 3.1.31]

3.2.29

optical fall time

[see 3.1.32]

3.2.30

optical rise time

[see 3.1.34]

3.2.31

peak emission wavelength

λ_p

[see 3.1.36]

3.2.32

repeater

[see 3.1.38]

3.2.33

segment

[see 3.1.39]

3.2.34**separately powered device**

[see 3.1.40]

3.2.35**shield**

[see 3.1.41]

3.2.36**spur**

[see 3.1.42]

3.2.37**terminator**

[see 3.1.43]

3.2.38**transceiver**

[see 3.1.43]

3.2.39**transmitter**

[see 3.1.45]

3.2.40**trunk**

[see 3.1.46]

3.3 Type 2: Terms and definitions**3.3.1****activity**

[see 3.1.1]

3.3.2**bit**

[see 3.1.3]

3.3.3**blanking or blanking time**

length of time required after transmitting before a node is allowed to receive

3.3.4**bus**

[see 3.1.4]

3.3.5**communication element**

[see 3.1.6]

3.3.6**connector**

[see 3.1.7]

3.3.7**Data Communications Equipment (DCE)**

[see 3.1.9]

3.3.8

dBm

[see 3.1.11]

3.3.9

delimiter

[see 3.1.12]

3.3.10

device

[see 3.1.13]

3.3.11

end delimiter

unique sequence of symbols that identifies the end of a frame

3.3.12

end node

producing or consuming node

3.3.13

error

[see 3.1.16]

3.3.14

frame

[see 3.1.23]

3.3.15

isolation

[see 3.1.25]

3.3.16

jabber

[see 3.1.26]

3.3.17

Manchester encoding

[see 3.1.27]

3.3.18

medium

[see 3.1.29]

3.3.19

M_symbol

representation of the MAC data bits to be encoded and transmitted by the physical layer

3.3.20

MAC frame

collection of M_symbols transmitted on the medium that contains a preamble, start delimiter, data, CRC and end delimiter

3.3.21

network

[see 3.1.30]

3.3.22**network access port**

physical layer variant that allows a temporary node to be connected to the link by connection to the NAP of a permanent node

3.3.23**node**

[see 3.1.31]

NOTE A node is additionally a connection to a link that requires a single M_ID.

3.3.24**non-data symbol**

physical layer Manchester coded signal, used for delimiters, carrying no data

3.3.25**optical isolators, optos**

components located within the physical layer transceiver of a node that converts current into light, and then back to an electrical signal

3.3.26**permanent node**

node whose connection to the network does not utilize the network access port (NAP) physical layer variant

NOTE This node may optionally support a NAP physical layer variant to allow temporary nodes to connect to the network.

3.3.27**redundant media**

more than one medium to minimize communication failures

3.3.28**repeater**

[see 3.1.38]

3.3.29**segment**

[see 3.1.39]

3.3.30**shield**

[see 3.1.41]

3.3.31**slot time**

maximum time required for detecting an expected transmission

NOTE Each node waits a slot time for each missing node during the implied token pass.

3.3.32**spur**

[see 3.1.42]

NOTE This is an integral part of network taps.

3.3.33**start delimiter**

unique sequence of symbols that identifies the beginning of a frame

3.3.34

tap

point of attachment from a node or spur to the trunk cable

NOTE A tap provides easy removal of a node without disrupting the link.

3.3.35

terminator

[see 3.1.43]

3.3.36

tool

executable software program that interacts with the user to perform some function

3.3.37

transceiver

[see 3.1.43]

3.3.38

transient node

node that is only intended to be connected to the network on a temporary basis using the NAP physical layer medium connected to the NAP of a permanent node

3.3.39

transmitter

[see 3.1.45]

3.3.40

trunk

[see 3.1.46]

3.3.41

trunk cable

bus or central part of a cable system

3.3.42

trunk-cable section

length of trunk cable between any two taps

3.4 Type 3: Terms and definitions

3.4.1

activity

[see 3.1.1]

3.4.2

barrier

[see 3.1.2]

3.4.3

bit time

time to transmit one bit

3.4.4

bus

[see 3.1.4]

3.4.5
communication element
[see 3.1.6]

3.4.6
confirmation (primitive)
[ISO/IEC 10731]

3.4.7
connector
[see 3.1.7]

3.4.8
coupler
[see 3.1.8]

3.4.9
Data Communications Equipment (DCE)
[see 3.1.9]

3.4.10
Data Terminal Equipment (DTE)
[see 3.1.10]

3.4.11
dBm
[see 3.1.11]

3.4.12
device
[see 3.1.13]

3.4.13
DL-entity
[ISO/IEC 7498-1]

3.4.14
fiber optic cable (FOC)
[see 3.1.17]

3.4.15
frame
[see 3.1.23]

3.4.16
indication (primitive)
[ISO/IEC 10731]

3.4.17
intrinsic safety
[see 3.1.24]

3.4.18
isolation
[see 3.1.25]

3.4.19

jabber

[see 3.1.26]

3.4.20

medium

[see 3.1.29]

3.4.21

(N)-entity

[ISO/IEC 7498-1]

3.4.22

(N)-service

[ISO/IEC 7498-1]

3.4.23

network

[see 3.1.30]

3.4.24

node

[see 3.1.31]

3.4.25

Ph-entity

[ISO/IEC 7498-1]

3.4.26

Ph-service

[ISO/IEC 7498-1]

3.4.27

repeater

[see 3.1.38]

3.4.28

request (primitive)

[ISO/IEC 10731]

3.4.29

reset

[ISO/IEC 7498-1]

3.4.30

segment

[see 3.1.39]

3.4.31

separately powered device

[see 3.1.40]

3.4.32

shield

[see 3.1.41]

3.4.33**spur**

[see 3.1.42]

3.4.34**station**

node

3.4.35**terminator**

[see 3.1.43]

3.4.36**transceiver**

[see 3.1.43]

3.4.37**transmitter**

[see 3.1.45]

3.4.38**trunk**

[see 3.1.46]

3.5 Type 4: Terms and definitions**3.5.1****activity**

[see 3.1.1]

3.5.2**bus**

[see 3.1.4]

3.5.3**connector**

[see 3.1.7]

3.5.4**Data Communications Equipment (DCE)**

[see 3.1.9]

3.5.5**Data Terminal Equipment (DTE)**

[see 3.1.10]

3.5.6**device**

[see 3.1.13]

3.5.7**idle counter**

counter to measure the number of bit periods for which the signal level on the physical link has been high for normal class and simple class devices in half duplex mode

3.5.8**isolation**

[see 3.1.25]

3.5.9

medium

[see 3.1.29]

3.5.10

network

[see 3.1.30]

3.5.11

normal class device

a device that initiates transmission and replies to requests and that can act as a server (responder) and as a client (requestor) - this is also called a peer

3.5.12

shield

[see 3.1.41]

3.5.13

simple class device

a device that replies to requests from Normal Class Devices and acts as a server or responder only

3.5.14

transmitter

[see 3.1.45]

3.6 Type 6: *This subclause has been removed*

NOTE This subclause is a placeholder in this edition to minimize the disruption to existing national and multi-national standards and consortia documents that reference the subclause numbering of the prior edition.

3.7 Type 8: Terms and definitions

3.7.1

activity

[see 3.1.1]

3.7.2

bus coupler

a device that divides the ring into segments by opening the ring and integrating another ring at this point

3.7.3

cable plant interface connector (CPIC)

[see 3.1.5]

3.7.4

communication element

[see 3.1.6]

3.7.5

connector

[see 3.1.7]

3.7.6

dBm

[see 3.1.11]

3.7.7**effective launch power**

[see 3.1.14]

3.7.8**effective power**

[see 3.1.15]

3.7.9**fiber optic cable**

[see 3.1.17]

3.7.10**fiber optic receiver**

[see 3.1.19]

3.7.11**fiber optic receiver operating range**

[see 3.1.20]

3.7.12**fiber optic transmitter**

[see 3.1.21]

3.7.13**fiber optic waveguide**

[see 3.1.22]

3.7.14**frame**

[see 3.1.23]

3.7.15**incoming interface**

interface to receive data from the previous device and to send data, which are received via an outgoing interface, to the previous device

3.7.16**isolation**

[see 3.1.25]

3.7.17**local bus**

a ring segment of a network with alternate media specifications, which is coupled to a remote bus via the bus coupler

3.7.18**local bus device**

a device that operates as a slave on a local bus

3.7.19**master**

a device that controls the data transfer on the network and initiates the media access of the slaves by sending messages and that constitutes the interface to the control system

3.7.20**medium**

[see 3.1.29]

3.7.21

minimum optical receiver sensitivity

minimum optical power at the optical receiver input required to achieve a bit error rate of less than 10^{-9} for the optical transmission system

3.7.22

network

[see 3.1.30]

3.7.23

optical fall time

[see 3.1.32]

3.7.24

optical rise time

[see 3.1.34]

3.7.25

outgoing interface

interface to send data to the next slave in a way, that data that is received through this interface is sent via another outgoing interface to the next slave or via an incoming interface to the previous slave and back to the master

3.7.26

peak emission wavelength (λ_p)

[see 3.1.36]

3.7.27

polymer optical fiber

POF

plastic fiber optic waveguide whose nominal characteristics are compatible with IEC 60793 [fiber type: A4a (980/1000)]

3.7.28

plastic clad silica fiber

PCS

fiber optic waveguide consisting of a glass core and a plastic cladding and whose nominal characteristics are compatible with IEC 60793 [fiber type: A3c (200/230 μm)]

3.7.29

remote bus

a ring segment of a network

3.7.30

remote bus device

device operating as a slave on a remote bus

3.7.31

remote bus link

connection of two remote bus devices

3.7.32

ring segment

one section of a network

NOTE The master constitutes the first ring segment, further ring segments may be linked by bus couplers

3.7.33**shield**

[see 3.1.41]

3.7.34**slave**

a device that accesses the medium only after it has been initiated by the preceding slave or master

3.7.35**spectral full width half maximum ($\Delta\lambda$)**

range of wavelength of spectral distribution in which the radiant intensity is no less than one-half of the maximum intensity

3.7.36**terminator**

[see 3.1.43]

3.8 Type 12: Terms and definitions**3.8.1****activity**

[see 3.1.1]

3.8.2**bit**

[see 3.1.3]

3.8.3**connector**

[see 3.1.7]

3.8.4**coupler**

[see 3.1.8]

3.8.5**Data Communications Equipment (DCE)**

[see 3.1.9]

3.8.6**Data Terminal Equipment (DTE)**

[see 3.1.10]

3.8.7**delimiter**

[see 3.1.12]

3.8.8**device**

[see 3.1.13]

3.8.9**error**

[see 3.1.16]

3.8.10

frame

[see 3.1.23]

3.8.11

idle

symbol at the media between EOF and SOF

3.8.12

isolation

[see 3.1.25]

3.8.13

jitter

[see 3.1.27]

3.8.14

Manchester encoding

[see 3.1.28]

3.8.15

medium

[see 3.1.29]

3.8.16

network

[see 3.1.30]

3.8.17

receiver

[see 3.1.37]

3.8.18

shield

[see 3.1.41]

3.8.19

terminator

[see 3.1.43]

3.9 Type 16: Terms and definitions

3.9.1

attenuation

fact that the optical power at the receiver is less than at the transmitter

3.9.2

barrier

[see 3.1.2]

3.9.3

bit

[see 3.1.3]

3.9.4**bit stuffing**

procedure, by which after five logical 1's, the transmitter automatically inserts a zero which is then removed again by the receiver. This zero causes a change in signal edges which makes it possible for the receiver to retrieve a receiving clock

3.9.5**connector**

[see 3.1.7]

3.9.6**Data Communications Equipment (DCE)**

[see 3.1.9]

3.9.7**Data Terminal Equipment (DTE)**

[see 3.1.10]

3.9.8**dBm**

[see 3.1.11]

3.9.9**delimiter**

[see 3.1.12]

3.9.10**device**

[see 3.1.13]

3.9.11**error**

[see 3.1.16]

3.9.12**fiber optic cable**

[see 3.1.18]

3.9.13**frame**

[see 3.1.23]

3.9.14**F-SMA connector**

connector meeting the F-SMA standard in accordance with IEC 61754-22

3.9.15**fill signals**

sequence of seven 1's followed by a 0

3.9.16**jitter**

[see 3.1.27]

3.9.17**medium**

[see 3.1.29]

3.9.18

network

[see 3.1.30]

3.9.19

node

[see 3.1.31]

3.9.20

non-return-to-zero-inverted

NRZI

signal exchanges taking place only at regular, fixed points in time in synchronization with the transmitting clock pulse of the bit rate; a signal edge change is assigned to a logical 0 only

3.9.21

optical fall time

[see 3.1.33]

3.9.22

optical rise time

[see 3.1.35]

3.9.23

pad

a sequence of octets added to assure that the telegram is long enough for proper operation

3.9.24

peak emission wavelength (λ_p)

[see 3.1.36]

3.9.25

receiver

[see 3.1.37]

3.9.26

repeater

[see 3.1.38]

3.9.27

repeater function

feature, by which a telegram that has been received by a node is passed on and reclocked to the next node on the network, while being logically

3.9.28

transmitter

[see 3.1.45]

3.9.29

typical half-intensity wavelength ($\Delta\lambda$)

[see 3.1.47]

3.9.30

zero bit stream

sequence of logical zeros which, in NRZI coding, results in a regular signal edge change on the transmission line (only used in test mode)

3.10 Type 18: Terms and definitions

3.10.1

activity

[see 3.1.1]

3.10.2

bit

[see 3.1.3]

3.10.3

bus

[see 3.1.4]

3.10.4

communication element

[see 3.1.6]

3.10.5

connector

[see 3.1.7]

3.10.6

Data Communications Equipment (DCE)

[see 3.1.9]

3.10.7

Data Terminal Equipment (DTE)

[see 3.1.10]

3.10.8

device

[see 3.1.13]

3.10.9

error

[see 3.1.16]

3.10.10

isolation

[see 3.1.25]

3.10.11

medium

[see 3.1.29]

3.10.12

network

[see 3.1.30]

3.10.13

node

[see 3.1.31]

3.10.14

receiver

[see 3.1.37]

3.10.15

segment

[see 3.1.39]

3.10.16

shield

[see 3.1.41]

3.10.17

spur

[see 3.1.42]

3.10.18

station

network device embodying one node

3.10.19

terminator

[see 3.1.43]

3.10.20

transceiver

[see 3.1.44]

3.10.21

transmitter

[see 3.1.45]

3.10.22

trunk

[see 3.1.46]

4 Symbols and abbreviations

4.1 Symbols

4.1.1 Type 1: Symbols

Symbol	Definition	Unit
$A_{\max}$	Maximum inter-device attenuation	dB
$AD_{\max}$	Maximum inter-device attenuation distortion	dB
BR	Nominal bit rate	Mbit/s
ΔBR	Maximum deviation from BR	–
$CS_{\max}$	Maximum coupler spacing to form a cluster	m
$D_{\min}$	Minimum device input impedance	k Ω
dBm	Logarithmic unit of power referenced to 1 mW	dB(mW)
F_C	Center carrier frequency used in frequency shift keying	kHz
F_{C+f}	Frequency that corresponds to logical 1 in frequency shift keying	kHz
F_{C-f}	Frequency that corresponds to logical 0 in frequency shift keying	kHz
f_r	Frequency corresponding to the nominal bit rate	MHz
$f_{\min}$	Nominal minimum frequency for the nominal bit rate	MHz
$f_{\max}$	Nominal maximum frequency for the nominal bit rate	MHz
$f_{QTO_{\max}}$	Maximum frequency for $QTO_{\max}$ measurement	MHz
$L_{\max}$	Maximum inter-device distance	m
$MD_{\max}$	Maximum inter-device mismatching distortion	dB
N+	Non-data symbol – positive; Manchester coded signal with a high level for one bit time, used for delimiters, carrying no data	–
N–	Non-data symbol – negative; Manchester coded signal with a low level for one bit time, used for delimiters, carrying no data	–
$N_{\max}$	Maximum number of devices	–
P	Nominal period of octet transmission	s
PICS	Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement	–
$QTO_{\max}$	Maximum quiescent transmitter output	mV
T_{bit}	Nominal bit duration	μs
ΔT_{bit}	Maximum deviation from T_{bit}	–
T_{rf}	Maximum signal rise or fall time	ns
V_{DD}	The most positive (or least negative) supply level	V
V_{IH}	Minimum high-level input voltage	V
V_{IL}	Maximum low-level input voltage	V
V_{OH}	Minimum high-level output voltage	V
V_{OL}	Maximum low-level output voltage	V
Z	Impedance; vector sum of resistance and reactance (inductive or capacitive)	Ω
Z_{f_r}	Characteristic impedance ; impedance of a cable, and of its terminators, at frequency f_r	Ω
Z_O	Characteristic impedance ; impedance of a cable, and of its terminators, over the defined frequency range	Ω

4.1.2 Type 2: Symbols

Symbol	Definition	Unit
dBm	Logarithmic unit of power referenced to 1 mW	dB (mW)
f_r	Frequency corresponding to the bit rate	Hz
GND	Ground supply level	V
H	Physical symbol – high level	–
L	Physical symbol – low level	–
M_0	Medium Access Control – data symbol – “zero”; Symbol at the DL-Ph interface, representing the transmitted and received Manchester coded signal with a high level for half a bit time, and a low level for half a bit time, carrying data “zero”	–
M_1	Medium Access Control – data symbol – “one”; Symbol at the DL-Ph interface, representing the transmitted and received Manchester coded signal with a low level for half a bit time, and a high level for half a bit time, carrying data “one”	–
M_ND+	Medium Access Control – non-data symbol – positive; Symbol at the DL-Ph interface, representing the transmitted and received Manchester coded signal with a high level for one complete bit time, used for delimiters, carrying no data	–
M_ND–	Medium Access Control – non-data symbol – negative; Symbol at the DL-Ph interface, representing the transmitted and received Manchester coded signal with a low level for one complete bit time, used for delimiters, carrying no data	–
Rx_H	Receive – high level (NAP interface)	V
Rx_L	Receive – low level (NAP interface)	V
Tx_H	Transmit – high level (NAP interface)	V
Tx_L	Transmit – low level (NAP interface)	V
V_{in}	Voltage on the coaxial cable center conductor (V_{in+} or V_{in-}) as referenced to the coaxial shield	V
V_{sense+}	Positive data sensitivity limit	V
V_{sense-}	Negative data sensitivity limit	V
V_{senseH}	High carrier sensitivity limit	V
V_{senseL}	Low carrier sensitivity limit	V

4.1.3 Type 3: Symbols

Symbol	Definition	Unit
dBm	Logarithmic unit of power referenced to 1 mW	dB (mW)
f_r	Frequency corresponding to the bit rate	Hz, kHz, MHz
N–	Non-data symbol – negative; Manchester coded signal with a low level for one bit time, used for delimiters, carrying no data	–
N+	Non-data symbol – positive; Manchester coded signal with a high level for one bit time, used for delimiters, carrying no data	–
P	Nominal period of octet transmission	s
R_d	Pull-down resistor	Ω
R_t	Bus terminator	Ω
R_u	Pull-up resistor	Ω
SYN	Synchronizing bits of a frame (period of idle)	s
t_{BIT}	The bit time t_{BIT} is the time, which elapses during the transmission of one bit	s
T_{SBIT}	Extended tolerance (only for stop bit)	s
T_{SYN}	Synchronization time	s
T_{SYNI}	Synchronization interval time	s
V_{DD}	The most positive (or least negative) supply level	V
V_{IH}	Minimum high-level input voltage	V
V_{IL}	Maximum low-level input voltage	V
V_{OH}	Minimum high-level output voltage	V
V_{OL}	Maximum low-level output voltage	V
VP	Voltage-Plus	V
Z	Impedance; vector sum of resistance and reactance (inductive or capacitive)	Ω
Z_O	Characteristic impedance ; impedance of a cable, and of its terminators, over the defined frequency range	Ω

4.1.4 Type 4: Symbols

Symbol	Definition	Unit
Vcc	The most positive (or least negative) supply level	V
GND	Ground supply level	V

4.1.5 Type 6: This subclause has been removed

NOTE This subclause is a placeholder in this edition to minimize the disruption to existing national and multi-national standards and consortia documents that reference the subclause numbering of the prior edition.

4.1.6 Type 8: Symbols

Symbol	Definition	Unit
dBm	Logarithmic unit of power referenced to 1 mW	dB (mW)
f_r	Frequency corresponding to the bit rate	Hz
Vdd	The most positive (or least negative) supply level	V
GND	Ground supply level	V

4.1.7 Type 12: Symbols

Symbol	Definition	Unit
fr	Frequency corresponding to the nominal bit rate	MHz
N+	Non-data symbol – positive; Manchester coded signal with a high level for one bit time, used for delimiters, carrying no data	–
N–	Non-data symbol – negative; Manchester coded signal with a low level for one bit time, used for delimiters, carrying no data	–
T _{bit}	Nominal bit duration	μs
Z	Impedance; vector sum of resistance and reactance (inductive or capacitive)	Ω
Z _O	Characteristic impedance ; impedance of a cable, and of its terminators, over the defined frequency range	Ω

4.1.8 Type 16: Symbols

Symbol	Definition	Unit
j	Jitter	μs
J _{noise}	Jitter of the optical signal	μs
J _{t2}	Jitter in t ₂	μs
J _{tscyc}	Jitter in t _{Scyc}	μs
P	Power	dBm or μW
P _{RmaxH}	Maximum received power at optical high level	dBm or μW
P _{RmaxL}	Maximum received power at optical low level	dBm or μW
P _{RminH}	Minimum received power at optical high level	dBm or μW
P _{TmaxH}	Maximum transmission power at optical high level	dBm or μW
P _{TmaxL}	Maximum transmission power at optical low level	dBm or μW
P _{TminH}	Minimum transmission power at optical high level	dBm or μW
P _x	Power threshold	dBm or μW
t _{cable}	Time, by which the transmitted signal is delayed by the cable, for each unit of length (approx. 5 ns/m)	ns
t _{fri}	Time for the optical low level at the input of a slave	ns
t _{fro}	Time for the optical low level at the output of a slave	ns
t _{rep}	Time, by which the received signal is delayed by a forwarding slave (input-output)	ns
t _{ring}	Time, which a master telegram needs, until it has passed through the network and reached the master again	μs
t _{RPAT}	Maximum transition time in a slave to switch from the repeater function to the transmitter function for the AT	μs
t _{RPAT.2}	Maximum transition time in slave 2 to switch from the repeater function to the transmitter function for the AT	μs

4.1.9 Type 18: Symbols

Symbol	Definition	Unit
V _{DD}	Voltage potential supplied to power digital logic components	V
V _{OL}	Output voltage, low level	V
V _{OH}	Output voltage, high level	V
V _{IL}	Input voltage, low level	V
V _{IH}	Input voltage, high level	V

4.2 Abbreviations

4.2.1 Type 1: Abbreviations

CTS	Clear-to-send signal (from DCE)	
DCE	Data communication equipment	
DIS	DCE independent sublayer	
DL	Data-link (as a prefix)	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
DLE	Data-link entity	
DLL	Data-link layer	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
DTE	Data terminal equipment	
EMI	Electro-magnetic interference	
IDU	Interface data unit	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
IS	Intrinsic safety	
LbE	Loopback-enable signal (to MAU)	
MAU	Medium attachment unit (for wire media, MAU = transceiver)	
MDS	Medium dependent sublayer	
min o/p	Minimum output voltage peak-to-peak	
MIS	Media independent sublayer	
NRZ	Non-return-to-zero code	
NOTE	High level = logic 1, Low level = logic 0	
Ph	Physical (as a prefix)	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhE	Physical layer entity	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhL	Physical layer	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhICI	Physical layer interface control information	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhID	Physical layer interface data	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhIDU	Physical layer interface data unit	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhPCI	Physical layer protocol control information	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhPDU	Physical layer protocol data unit	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhS	Physical layer service	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhSAP	Physical layer service access point	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhSDU	Physical layer service data unit	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
pk	Peak	
pk-pk	Peak-to-peak	
RDF	Receive-data-and-framing signal (from DCE)	
RFI	Radio frequency interference	
RTS	Request-to-send signal (to DCE)	
RxA	Receive-activity signal (from DCE)	
RxC	Receive-clock signal (from DCE)	
RxS	Receive signal (from MAU)	
SDU	Service data unit	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
TxC	Transmit-clock signal (from DCE)	

TxD	Transmit -data signal (to DCE)
TxE	Transmit -enable signal (to MAU)
TxS	Transmit signal (to MAU)

4.2.2 Type 2: Abbreviations

BNC	Bayonet Neill Concelman (connector for coaxial cable having a bayonet-type shell with two small knobs on the female connector, which lock into spiral slots in the male connector when it is twisted)	[IEC 60169–8]
DCE	Data communication equipment	
DL	Data-link (as a prefix)	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
DLL	Data-link layer	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
MAC	Medium access control (lower section of the data-link layer, interfacing with the physical layer)	
MAC ID	Medium access control identification - address of a node	
MAU	Medium attachment unit (for wire media, MAU = transceiver)	
MDS	Medium dependent sublayer	
MIS	Media independent sublayer	
NAP	Network access port (local access to a device, i.e. not via the bus)	
NetEnable	Transmit-enable signal	
NUT	Network update time	[IEC 61158-4-2]
Ph	Physical (as a prefix)	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhL	Physical layer	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
pk	Peak	
Rcv	Receive	
Rx	Receive	
RxCARRIER	Receive-carrier signal	
RxDATA	Receive-data signal	
RxPTC	Receive-data signal (NAP interface)	
RM	Repeater machine (mechanism for extending bus length, providing multiple medium interfaces, and allowing medium redundancy)	
RRM	Ring repeater machine (mechanism for providing a ring topology on optical medium)	
SMAX	Scheduled maximum address	[IEC 61158-4-2]
TNC	Threaded Neill Concelman (threaded version of the BNC connector)	[IEC 60169–17]
Tx	Transmit	
TxDATABAR	Transmit-data signal (inverted)	
TxDATAOUT	Transmit-data signal	
TxPTC	Transmit-data signal (NAP interface)	
Xmit	Transmit	

4.2.3 Type 3: Abbreviations

ASC	Active star coupler	
BER	Bit error rate	
CO	Converter	
CTS	Clear-to-send signal (from DCE)	
DCE	Data communication equipment	
DGND	Data ground	
DIS	DCE independent sublayer	
DL	Data-link (as a prefix)	
DLE	Data-link entity	
DLL	Data-link layer	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
DLPDU	Data-link protocol data unit	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
DTE	Data terminal equipment	
DUT	Device under test	
EMC	Electro-magnetic-compatibility	
EMI	Electro-magnetic interference	
FEC	Forward error correction	
FISCO	Fieldbus intrinsically safe concept [7]	
FO	Fiber optic	
FOC	Fiber optic cable	
IS	Intrinsic safety	
LbE	Loopback enable signal (to MAU)	
LSS	Line selector switch	
M/S	Master / slave station	
MAU	Medium attachment unit (for wire media, MAU = transceiver)	
MDS	Medium dependent sublayer	
MIS	Media independent sublayer	
n	Number of a station	
NRZ	Non-return-to-zero code	
NOTE High level = logic 1, Low level = logic 0		
OST	Overshot of transition	
PC	Physical contact	
Ph	Physical (as a prefix)	
Ph-ASYN-DATA	Physical data service for asynchronous transmission	
PhE	Physical layer entity	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhICI	Physical layer interface control information	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhID	Physical layer interface data	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhIDU	Physical layer interface data unit	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhL	Physical layer	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhM	Ph-management	

PhMS	Ph-management service	
PhPCI	Physical layer protocol control information	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhPDU	Physical layer protocol data unit	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhS	Physical layer service	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhSAP	Physical layer service access point	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhSDU	Physical layer service data unit	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
pk-pk	Peak-to-peak	
RDF	Receive-data-and-framing signal (from DCE)	
REP	Repeater	
RFI	Radio frequency interference	
RTS	Request-to-send signal (to DCE)	
RxA	Receive-activity signal (from DCE)	
RxC	Receive-clock signal (from DCE)	
RxS	Receive Signal (from MAU)	
Stn	Stations (master or slave)	
TPC	Twisted-pair cable	
TxC	Transmit-clock signal (from DCE)	
TxD	Transmit-data signal (to DCE)	
TxE	Transmit-enable signal (to MAU)	
TxS	Transmit Signal (to MAU)	
UART	Universal asynchronous receiver/transmitter	

4.2.4 Type 4: Abbreviations

CTS	Clear-to-send signal (from DCE)	
DCE	Data communication Equipment	
DL	Data-link (as a prefix)	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
DLE	Data-link entity	
DLL	Data-link layer	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
DTE	Data terminal equipment	
MAU	Medium attachment unit (for wire media, MAU = transceiver)	
MDS	Medium dependent sublayer	
MIS	Media independent sublayer	
NRZ	Non-return-to-zero code	
NOTE High level = logic 1, Low level = logic 0		
Ph	Physical (as a prefix)	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhE	Physical layer entity	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhL	Physical layer	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhID	Physical layer interface data	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhPDU	Physical layer protocol data unit	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
RTS	Request-to-send signal (to DCE)	

RxS	Receive Signal (from MAU)
TxE	Transmit-enable signal (to MAU)
TxS	Transmit Signal (to MAU)

4.2.5 Type 6: *This subclause has been removed*

NOTE This subclause is a placeholder in this edition to minimize the disruption to existing national and multi-national standards and consortia documents that reference the subclause numbering of the prior edition.

4.2.6 Type 8: Abbreviations

BC	Bus connector	
BLL	Basic link layer	
BSY	Busy	
CPIC	Cable plant interface connector	
CRC	Cyclic redundancy check	
CTS	Clear-to-send	
DL	Data-link (as a prefix)	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
DLL	Data-link layer	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
DI	Data In	
DLPDU	Data-link process data unit	
DO	Data out	
DS	Data select	
GND	Ground	
ICI	Interface control information	
ID	Identifier	
LbE	Loopback enable	
LSB	Least significant byte (octet)	
MA	Medium activity	
MAC	Medium access control	
MAU	Medium attachment unit	
MDS	Medium dependent sublayer	
MIS	Media independent sublayer	
MSB	Most significant bit	
NRZ	Non-return-to-zero	
PCS	Plastic-clad silica fiber	
Ph	Physical (as a prefix)	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhE	Physical layer entity	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhICI	Physical interface control information	
PhIDU	Physical interface data unit	
PhL	Physical layer	[ISO/IEC 7498-1]
PhPDU	Physical protocol data unit	
PhSDU	Physical service data unit	
PNM1	Peripherals network management of layer 1	

POF	Polymer optical fiber
RI	Reset-in
RO	Reset-out
RqDly1	Request delay 1
RqDly2	Request delay 2
RTS	Request-to-send
RxA	Receive-activity
RxC	Receive-clock
RxCR	Receive control line
RxD	Receive data
RxS	Receive sequence
RxSL	Receive select line
SL	Select line
TRst	Coding and decoding (of the Reset PhPDU)
TxC	Transmit clock
TxCR	Transmit control line
TxD	Transmit data
TxS	Transmit sequence
TxSL	Transmit select line

4.2.7 Type 12: Abbreviations

EBUS	A Type 12 physical layer as described in this international standard
EOF	End of Frame
LVDS	Low Voltage Differential Signaling
PCB	Printed Circuit Board
RxS	Receive Signal
SOF	Start of Frame
TxS	Transmit Signal

4.2.8 Type 16: Abbreviations

DPLL	digital phase locked loop
HCS	hard clad silica (glass fiber)
IC	Integrated circuit
LED	light emitting diode
LSB	least significant bit
MSB	most significant bit
NRZI	non-return-to-zero-inverted
POF	polymer optical fiber (plastic fiber)
RxCLK	receiving clock
RxD	received data

TxCLK	transmitting clock
TxD	transmitted data

4.2.9 Type 18: Abbreviations

CMOS	Complimentary Metal Oxide Silicon – a class of digital logic interface specifications
DA / DB	Data A and Data B – the communications signal pair
DG	Data Ground – zero potential communications signal reference
FG	Field Ground – the zero potential device reference
NRZI	Non-Return to Zero Inverted
PhL-B	Physical layer – Basic type
PhL-P	Physical layer – Powered type
RxS	Receive Signal
SLD	Shield – linear Faraday cage
TTL	Transistor-Transistor Logic – a class of digital logic interface specifications
TxE	Transmit Enable
TxS	Transmit Signal
UL	Unit Load

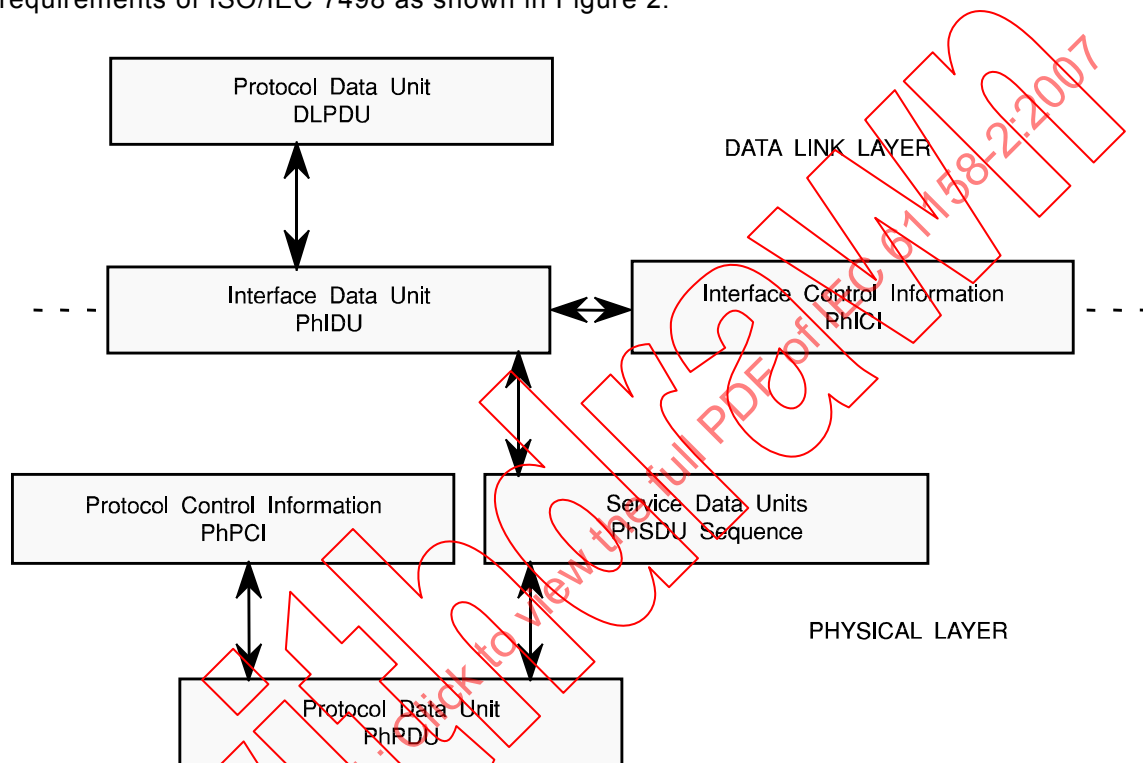
5 DLL – PhL interface

5.1 General

This clause defines the required physical service (PhS) primitives and constraints on their use.

NOTE 1 The data-link – Physical interface is a virtual service interface between virtual machines; there are no requirements for physical signal lines as the standard does not require this interface to be exposed.

PhIDUs shall be transferred between the DLL and the PhL in accordance with the requirements of ISO/IEC 7498 as shown in Figure 2.



NOTE PhPCI and PhICI support are type specific.

Figure 2 – Mapping between data units across the DLL – PhL interface

NOTE 2 These services provide for the interchange of PhIDUs between a DLL entity and its associated PhL entity. Such a transfer is part of a transaction between cooperating DLL entities. The services listed in this section are the minimum that can jointly provide the means by which cooperating DLL entities can coordinate their transmission and their exchange of data on the shared communication medium. Synchronization of data exchange and related actions is also provided if needed.

NOTE 3 Proper layering requires that an (N+1)-layer entity be not concerned with, and that an (N)-service interface not overly constrain, the means by which an (N)-layer provides its (N)-services. Thus, the Ph-service interface does not require DLEs to be aware of internal details of the PhE (e.g. preamble, postamble and frame delimiter signal patterns, number of bits per baud), and should not prevent the PhE from using appropriate evolving technologies.

NOTE 4 A number of different DLL – PhL interfaces are specified, based on industry practice.

5.2 Type 1: Required services

5.2.1 Primitives of the PhS

5.2.1.1 General

The granularity of PhS-user data exchanged at the PhL – DLL interface is one octet.

5.2.1.2 Ph-CHARACTERISTICS Indication

The PhS shall provide the following service primitive to report essential PhS characteristics (which may be used in DLL transmission, reception, and scheduling activities):

Ph-CHARACTERISTICS indication (minimum-data-rate, framing-overhead)

where

minimum-data-rate – shall specify the effective minimum rate of data conveyance in bits/s, including any timing tolerances

NOTE 1 A PhE with a nominal data rate of 1 Mbit/s $\pm$ 0,01 % would specify a minimum data rate of 0,999 9 Mbit/s.

framing overhead – shall specify the maximum number of bit periods (where the period is the inverse of the data rate) used in any transmission for PhPDUs that do not directly convey data (e.g. PhPDUs conveying preamble, frame delimiters, postamble, inter-frame "silence", etc.).

NOTE 2 If the framing overhead is F and two DL message lengths are L_1 and L_2 , then the time to send one message of length $L_1 + F + L_2$ will be at least as great as the time required to send two immediately consecutive messages of lengths L_1 and L_2 .

5.2.1.3 PhS transmission and reception services

The PhS shall provide the following service primitives for transmission and reception:

PH-DATA request (class, data)

PH-DATA indication (class, data)

PH-DATA confirm (status)

where

class – shall specify the PhICI component of the PhIDU.

For a PH-DATA request, its possible values shall be:

START-OF-ACTIVITY – transmission of the PhPDUs which precede Ph-user data shall commence;

DATA – the single-octet value of the associated data parameter shall be transmitted as part of a continuous correctly formed transmission; and

END-OF-DATA-AND-ACTIVITY – the PhPDUs that terminate Ph-user data shall be transmitted after the last preceding octet of Ph-user data, culminating in the cessation of active transmission.

For a PH-DATA indication, its possible values shall be:

START-OF-ACTIVITY – reception of an apparent transmission from one or more PhEs has commenced;

DATA – the associated data parameter was received as part of a continuous correctly formed reception;

END-OF-DATA – the ongoing continuous correctly formed reception of Ph-user data has concluded with correct reception of PhPDUs implying END-OF-DATA;

END-OF-ACTIVITY – the ongoing reception (of an apparent transmission from one or more PhEs) has concluded, with no further evidence of PhE transmission; and

END-OF-DATA-AND-ACTIVITY – simultaneous occurrence of END-OF-DATA and END-OF-ACTIVITY.

data – shall specify the PhID component of the PhIDU. It consists of one octet of Ph-user-data to be transmitted (PH-DATA request) or which was received successfully (PH-DATA indication).

status – shall specify either success or the locally detected reason for inferring failure.

The PH-DATA confirm primitive shall provide the critical physical timing feedback necessary to inhibit the DLE from starting a second transmission before the first is complete. The final PH-DATA confirm of a transmission shall not be issued until the PhE has completed the transmission.

5.2.2 Notification of PhS characteristics

The PhE has the responsibility for notifying the DLE of those characteristics of the PhS that may be relevant to DLE operation. The PhE shall do this by issuing a single Ph-CHARACTERISTICS indication primitive at each of the PhEs PhSAPs at PhE start-up.

5.2.3 Transmission of Ph-user-data

The PhE shall determine the timing of all transmissions. When a DLE transmits a sequence of PhSDUs, the DLE shall send the sequence of PhSDUs by making a well-formed sequence of PH-DATA requests, consisting of a single request specifying START-OF-ACTIVITY, followed by 3 to 300 consecutive requests, inclusive, specifying DATA, each conveying a PhSDU, and concluded by a single request specifying END-OF-DATA-AND-ACTIVITY.

The PhE shall signal its completion of each PH-DATA request, and its readiness to accept a new PH-DATA request, by issuing a PH-DATA confirm primitive; the status parameter of the PH-DATA confirm primitive shall convey the success or failure of the associated PH-DATA request. A second PH-DATA request shall not be issued by the DLE until after the PH-DATA confirm corresponding to the first request has been issued by the PhE.

5.2.4 Reception of Ph-user-data

The PhE shall report a received transmission with a well-formed sequence of PH-DATA indications, which shall consist of

- a) a single indication specifying START-OF-ACTIVITY; followed by consecutive indications specifying DATA, each conveying a PhSDU; followed by a single indication specifying END-OF-DATA; and concluded by a single indication specifying END-OF-ACTIVITY; or
- b) a single indication specifying START-OF-ACTIVITY; followed by consecutive indications specifying DATA, each conveying a PhSDU; followed by a single indication specifying END-OF-DATA-AND-ACTIVITY; or
- c) a single indication specifying START-OF-ACTIVITY; optionally followed by one or more consecutive indications specifying DATA, each conveying a PhSDU; and concluded by a single indication specifying END-OF-ACTIVITY.

This last sequence is indicative of an incomplete or incorrect reception. Detection of an error in the sequence of received PhPDUs, or in the PhEs reception process, shall disable further PH-DATA indications with a class parameter specifying DATA, END-OF-DATA, or END-OF-DATA-AND-ACTIVITY until after both the end of the current period of activity and the start of a subsequent period of activity have been reported by PH-DATA indications specifying END-OF-ACTIVITY and START-OF-ACTIVITY, respectively.

5.3 Type 2: Required services

5.3.1 General

Subclause 5.3 defines the required physical service (PhS) primitives and constraints on their use.

The DLL-PhL interface need not be exposed in the implementation of any PhL variant. This interface may be internal to the node and may be implemented as internal to a semiconductor device. If, however, conformance to the DLL-PhL interface is claimed, it shall conform to the requirements of 5.3.

5.3.2 M_symbols

The PhL Interface Data Units present at the DLL-PhL interface shall be M_symbols, as shown in Table 1. The M_ND symbols shall be used to create unique data patterns used for start and end delimiters.

Table 1 – Data encoding rules

Data bits (common name)	M_symbol representation
data "zero"	M_0 or {0}
data "one"	M_1 or {1}
"non_data+"	M_ND+ or {+}
"non_data–"	M_ND– or {–}

5.3.3 PH-LOCK indication

PH-LOCK indication shall provide an indication of either data lock or Ph-symbol synchronization by the MDS. Valid states for PH-LOCK indication shall be true and false. PH-LOCK indication shall be true whenever valid Ph symbols are present at the MDS-MAU interface and the DLL-PhL interface timing of M_symbols conform to the requirements for clock accuracy. It shall be false between frames (when no Ph-symbols are present on the medium) or whenever data synchronization is lost or the timing fails to conform to the requirements for clock accuracy. PH-LOCK indication shall be true prior to the beginning of the start delimiter.

5.3.4 PH-FRAME indication

PH-FRAME indication shall provide an indication of a valid data frame from the MAU. Valid states for PH-FRAME indication shall be true and false. PH-FRAME indication shall be true upon PH-LOCK indication = true and reception of the first valid start delimiter. PH-FRAME indication shall be false at reception of next M_ND symbol (following the start delimiter) or PH-LOCK indication = false.

NOTE This signal provides octet synchronization to the DLL.

5.3.5 PH-CARRIER indication

PH-CARRIER indication shall represent the presence of a signal carrier on the medium. PH-CARRIER indication shall be true if RXCARRIER at the MDS-MAU interface has been true during any of the last 4 M_symbol times and it shall be false otherwise.

5.3.6 PH-DATA indication

PH-DATA indication shall represent the M_symbols shown in Table 1. Valid symbols shall be M_0, M_1, M_ND+ or M_ND– (or M_symbols). The PH-DATA indication shall represent the M_Symbols as decoded from the MAU whenever PH-LOCK indication is true.

5.3.7 PH-STATUS indication

PH-STATUS indication shall represent the status of the frame that was received from the MAU as shown in Table 2. Valid symbols shall be Normal, Abort, and Invalid. PH-STATUS indication shall indicate Normal after reception of a frame (PH-FRAME indication = true) composed of a start delimiter, valid Manchester encoded data (no M_ND symbols) and an end delimiter. PH-STATUS indication shall indicate Abort after reception of a frame (PH-FRAME indication = true) composed of a start delimiter, valid Manchester encoded data, and a second start delimiter. PH-STATUS indication shall indicate Invalid after reception of a frame (PH-FRAME indication = true) composed of a start delimiter and the detection of any M_ND symbol that was not part of a start or end delimiter.

Table 2 – Ph-STATUS indication truth table

Ph-STATUS indication	Ph-FRAME indication	Start delimiters in a single frame	End delimiter detection	Any non-delimiter Manchester violations
Normal	true	1	true	false
Abort	true	2	don't care	false
Invalid	true	1	don't care	true

5.3.8 PH-DATA request

PH-DATA request shall represent the M_symbols to be transmitted. Valid symbols shall be M_0, M_1, M_ND+ or M_ND– as shown in Table 1. PH-DATA request shall indicate M_0 when no data is to be transmitted (and PH-FRAME request = false).

5.3.9 PH-FRAME request

PH-FRAME request shall be true when PH-DATA request represents M_symbols to be encoded to the appropriate Ph-symbols and transferred to the MAU, and shall be false when no valid M_symbols are to be transferred to the MAU.

5.3.10 PH-JABBER indication

PH-JABBER indication shall be true if the MDS-MAU interface detects a single frame (PH-FRAME indication = true) that equals or exceeds 1 024 octets (8 192 M_symbols) and PH-JABBER-TYPE request is true. PH-JABBER indication shall be true if the MDS-MAU interface detects a single frame (PH-FRAME indication = true) that equals or exceeds 2 048 octets (16 384 M_symbols) and PH-JABBER-TYPE request is false. PH-JABBER indication shall be false otherwise. If PH-JABBER indication goes true, it shall be latched in this state by the MDS until the Ph-JABBER-CLEAR request is true or power to the node is removed and restored or the node is initialised.

5.3.11 Ph-JABBER-CLEAR request

Ph-JABBER-CLEAR request (optional) shall be false under normal operating conditions and shall be true to reset a PH-JABBER indication that has been latched in a true state.

5.3.12 Ph-JABBER-TYPE request

PH-JABBER-TYPE request shall be true if the node is the source of transmit data ("NODE") and shall be false if the node is retransmitting data received from another node (e.g. acting as a "REPEATER" of data from another node, see Annex G).

The combinations for PH-JABBER indication and PH-JABBER-TYPE request shall be as shown in Table 3.

Table 3 – Jabber indications

Ph-JABBER indication	Ph-JABBER-TYPE request	Frame length
true	true = "NODE"	≥ 1 024 octets
true	false = "REPEATER"	≥ 2 048 octets
false	true = "NODE"	< 1 024 octets
false	false = "REPEATER"	< 2 048 octets

5.4 Type 3: Required services

5.4.1 Synchronous transmission

The services specified for Type 1 shall be used (see 5.2).

5.4.2 Asynchronous transmission

5.4.2.1 PhS transmission and reception services

The data service for asynchronous transmission (Ph-ASYN-DATA) includes two service primitives. A request primitive is used to request a service by the DLE; an indication primitive is used to indicate a reception to the DLE. The names of the respective primitives are as follows:

Ph-ASYN-DATA request

Ph-ASYN-DATA indication

The temporal relationship of the primitives is shown in Figure 3.

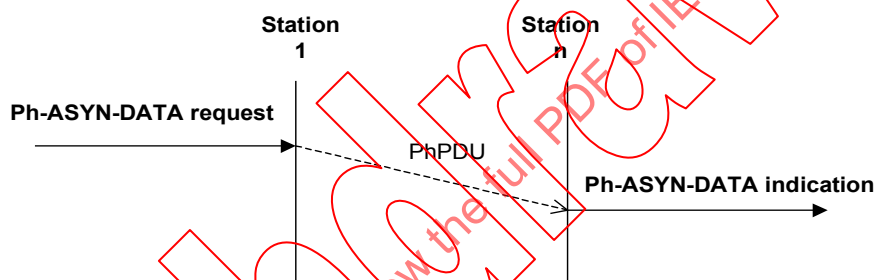


Figure 3 – Data service for asynchronous transmission

5.4.2.2 Detailed specification of the service and interaction

This subclause describes in detail the service primitives and the related parameter in an abstract way. The parameter contains the PhS-user data exchanged at the PhL – DLL interface with the granularity of one bit.

Parameters of the primitives:

Ph-ASYN-DATA request (DL_symbol)

The parameter DL_symbol shall have one of the following values specifying the PhID component of the PhIDU. Its possible values shall be:

- a) ZERO corresponds to a binary "0";
- b) ONE corresponds to a binary "1";
- c) SILENCE disables the transmitter when no DL_symbol is to be transmitted.

The Ph-ASYN-DATA request primitive is passed from the DLE to the PhE to request that the given symbol shall be sent to the fieldbus medium.

The reception of this primitive shall cause the PhE to attempt encoding and transmission of the DL-symbol.

The Ph-ASYN-DATA request is a primitive, which shall only be generated once per DL-symbol period (t_{BIT}). The PhE may confirm this primitive with a locally defined confirmation primitive.

Ph-ASYN-DATA indication (DL_symbol).

The parameter DL_symbol shall have one of the following values:

- a) ZERO corresponds to a binary "0";
- b) ONE corresponds to a binary "1".

The Ph-ASYN-DATA indication primitive is passed from the PhE to the DLE to indicate that a DL-symbol was received from the fieldbus medium. The effect of receipt of this primitive by the DLE is not specified.

The Ph-ASYN-DATA indication is a primitive, which shall only be generated once per received DL-symbol period (t_{BIT}).

5.5 Type 4: Required services

5.5.1 General

PhIDUs shall be transferred between the DLL and the PhL in accordance with the requirements of ISO 7498.

5.5.2 Primitives of the PhS

5.5.2.1 General

The granularity of transmission in the fieldbus protocol is one octet. This is the granularity of PhS-user data exchanged at the PhL - DLL interface.

5.5.2.2 PhS Transmission and reception services

The PhS shall provide the following service primitives for transmission and reception:

- PH-DATA request (class, data)
- PH-DATA indication (class, data, status)
- PH-DATA confirm (status)

where

class - specifies the Ph-interface-control-information (PhICI) component of the Ph-interface-data-unit (PhIDU).

For a PH-DATA request, its possible values are

START-OF-ACTIVITY-11 - the PhE shall initiate transmission by transmitting the associated data parameter as an "Address character". The PhE shall do this immediately, though not until the value of the PhEs idle counter has reached 11. This class only applies to half duplex mode.

START-OF-ACTIVITY-2 - the PhE shall enable its driver, and initiate transmission by transmitting the associated data parameter as an "Address character". The PhE shall do this immediately, though not until the value of the PhEs idle counter modulus 10 has reached 2 if in half duplex mode.

DATA - the PhE shall transmit the associated data parameter as a "Data character".

END-OF-ACTIVITY – the PhE shall wait until transmission of all formerly received data from the DLE has finished, and then terminate transmission. The associated data parameter shall not be transmitted.

For a PH-DATA indication, its possible values are

START-OF-ACTIVITY – the PhE has received an “Address character”, the value of which is reported in the associated data parameter. The associated status parameter specifies success or the locally detected reason for failure.

DATA – the PhE has received a “Data character”, the value of which is reported in the associated data parameter. The associated status parameter specifies success or the locally detected reason for failure.

LINK-IDLE – the PhE has detected, that the signal level on the Link has been “Idle” for 30, 35, 40, 50, 60... bit periods. The associated status parameter specifies if the Link has been idle for 30 bit periods, for 35 bit periods, or for 40 or more bit periods. This class only applies to half duplex mode.

data – specifies the Ph-interface-data (PhID) component of the PhIDU. It consists of one octet of Ph-user data to be transmitted (PH-DATA request), or one octet of Ph-user data that was received (PH-DATA indication).

status – specifies either success or the locally detected reason for failure, or specifies if the associated LINK-IDLE indication indicates "30", "35" or "40 or more" bit periods of idle after Link activity.

The PH-DATA confirm primitive provides the feedback necessary to enable the DLE to report failures such as Link short-circuit or noise resulting in framing error to the DLS-user, and provides the critical physical timing necessary to prevent the DLE from starting a second transmission before the first is complete.

5.5.3 Transmission of Ph-user data

5.5.3.1 General

When a DLE has a DLPDU to transmit, and the Link-access system gives that DLE the right to transmit, then the DLE should send the DLPDU, including a concatenated FCS. Making a sequence of PH-DATA requests as follows does this:

- a) In half duplex mode, the first request should specify START-OF-ACTIVITY-11 if the DLPDU to transmit is an Acknowledge or Immediate-reply DLPDU, or if the transmission is an immediate re-transmission of a Confirmed or Unconfirmed DLPDU. The first request should specify START-OF-ACTIVITY-2 if transmission of a Confirmed or Unconfirmed DLPDU from the queue is commenced. In full duplex mode, the first request should always specify START-OF-ACTIVITY-2.
- b) This first request should be followed by consecutive requests specifying DATA, and concluded by a single request specifying END-OF-ACTIVITY.

The PhE signals its completion of each PH-DATA request, and its readiness to accept a new PH-DATA request, with a PH-DATA confirm primitive. The status parameter of the PH-DATA confirm primitive conveys the success or failure of the associated PH-DATA request.

5.5.3.2 Reception of Ph-user data

The PhE reports a received transmission with PH-DATA indications, which shall consist of either

- a single indication specifying START-OF-ACTIVITY, or
- a single indication specifying START-OF-ACTIVITY; followed by consecutive indications specifying DATA.

Each indication has an associated status parameter, specifying successful reception of the associated data, or the locally detected reason for failure.

5.6 Type 6: *This subclause has been removed*

NOTE This subclause is a placeholder in this edition to minimize the disruption to existing national and multi-national standards and consortia documents that reference the subclause numbering of the prior edition.

5.7 Type 8: Required services

5.7.1 General

PhIDUs are exchanged between the DLL (DLL) and the PhL (PhL). For the data transfer, the DL-Ph interface (MAC-MIS interface) shall make the following service primitives available:

- PH-DATA request
- PH-DATA confirm
- PH-DATA indication

5.7.2 Primitives of the PhS

5.7.2.1 PH-DATA request (PhICI, PhIDU)

This service primitive is used to transfer a data unit from the MAC sublayer to the MIS. The **PhICI** parameter determines the interface components of the interface data unit (PhIDU) to be transmitted and can contain the following values:

ID_transfer

The beginning of a data sequence for the transmission of identification/control data is requested.

data_transfer

The beginning of a data sequence for the transmission of user data is requested.

start_ID_cycle

The beginning of an identification cycle for the transmission of identification/control data is requested by the master.

start_data_cycle

The beginning of a data cycle for the transmission of user data is requested by the master.

user_data

The transmission of the data unit of user data defined by the PhIDU parameter (identification/control data or user data) is requested.

CRC_data

The transmission of the data unit of checksum data defined by the PhIDU parameter is requested.

CRC_status

The transmission of the data unit for the checksum status defined by the PhIDU parameter is requested.

user_data_idle

The transmission of user_data_idle messages is requested.

CRC_data_idle

The transmission of CRC_data_idle messages is requested.

CRC_status_idle

The transmission of CRC_status_idle messages is requested.

NOTE The start_data_cycle and start_ID_cycle parameters are supported by the MAC sublayer of a master only.

The **PhIDU** parameter defines the data component of the interface data unit to be transmitted. It consists of one bit, only if **PhICI** = **user_data**, **CRC_data** or **CRC_status**

5.7.2.2 PH-DATA confirm (status)

This service primitive is the acknowledgement to a PH-DATA request primitive and is used for synchronisation. The **status** parameter indicates whether the associated PH-DATA request primitive was executed successfully or not.

5.7.2.3 PH-DATA indication (PhICI, PhIDU)

This service primitive is used to transfer a data unit from the MIS to the MAC sublayer. The **PhICI** parameter defines the interface component of the interface data unit (PhIDU) to be transmitted and can assume the following values:

ID_transfer

Indicates the beginning of a data sequence for the transmission of identification/control data.

data_transfer

Indicates the beginning of a data sequence for the transmission of user data.

user_data

The correct receipt of the data unit for the transmission of user data (identification/control data or user data) defined by the **PhIDU** parameter is indicated.

CRC_data

The correct receipt of the data unit for transmission of the checksum defined by the **PhIDU** parameter is indicated.

CRC_status

The correct receipt of the data unit for the transmission of the checksum status defined by the **PhIDU** parameter is indicated.

user_data_idle

The receipt of **user_data_idle** messages is indicated.

CRC_data_idle

The receipt of **CRC_data_idle** messages is indicated.

CRC_status_idle

The receipt of **CRC_status_idle** messages is indicated.

The **PhIDU** parameter defines the data components of the received interface data unit. It consists of one bit.

5.7.3 Overview of the Interactions

NOTE For the data transfer via the DL-Ph interface, a difference is made between the data sequence (transmission of user or identification data) and the check sequence (transmission of checksum data).

The following apply to Figure 4 through Figure 7.

- If a data sequence of a data cycle is followed by a data sequence of an identification cycle, the interactions marked with (+) are omitted for an identification cycle.
- If a data sequence of an identification cycle is followed by a data sequence of a data cycle, the interactions marked with (+) are omitted for a data cycle.

5.7.3.1 Data Sequence

5.7.3.1.1 Master

Figure 4 and Figure 5 show the interactions for a data sequence (identification cycle and data cycle) at the DL-Ph interface of a master (controller board).

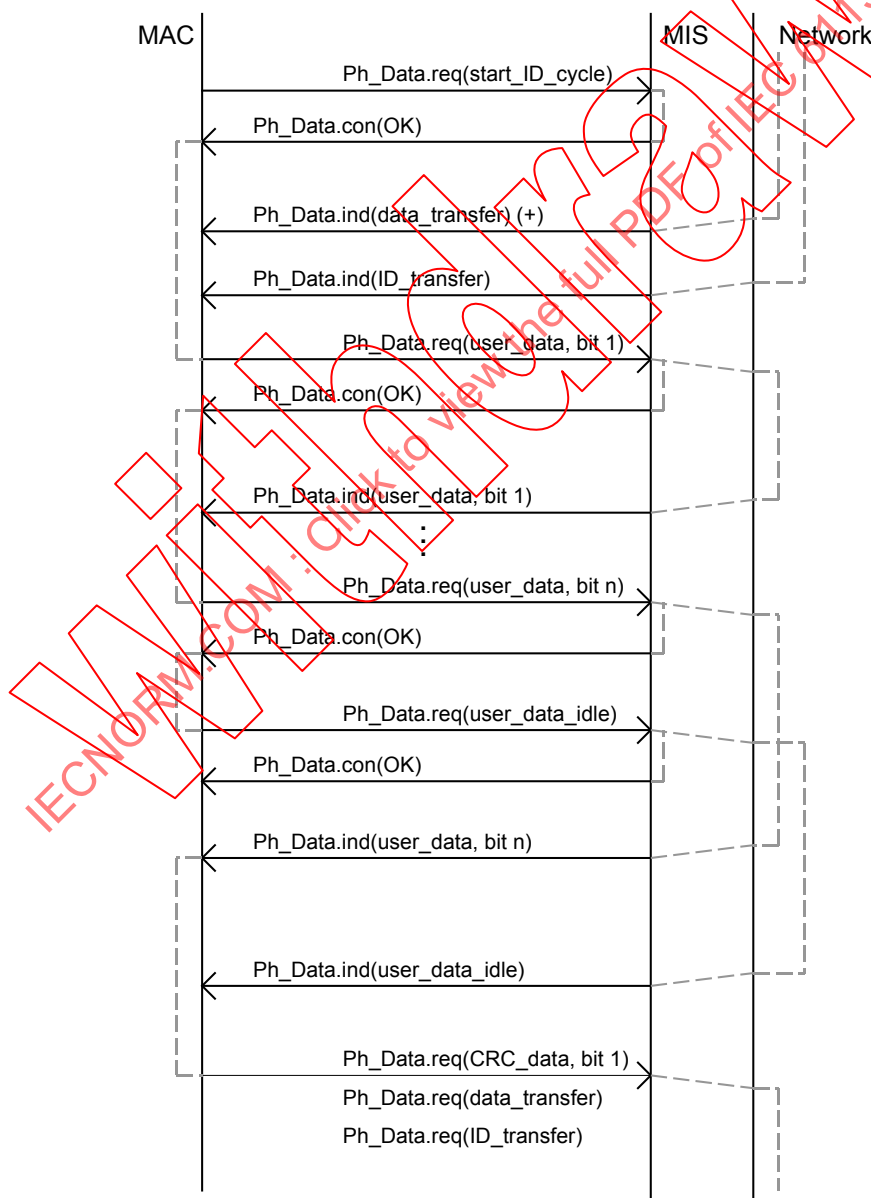


Figure 4 – Interactions for a data sequence of a master: identification cycle

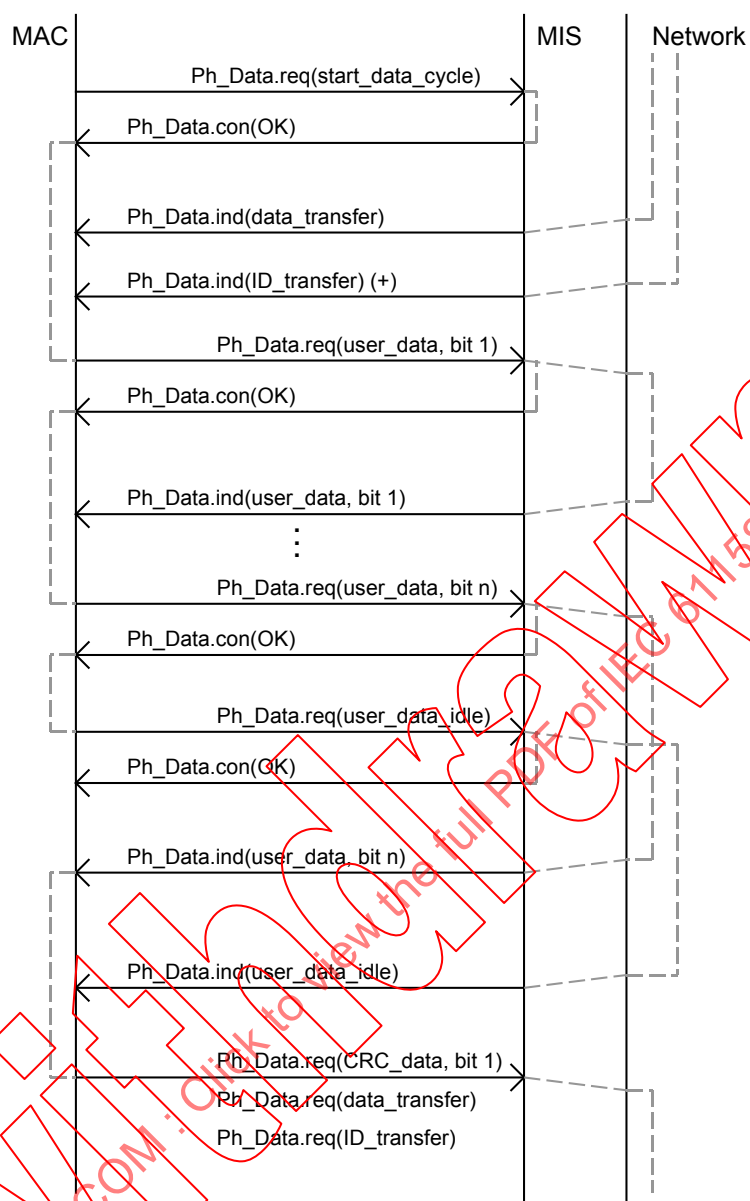


Figure 5 – Interactions for a data sequence of a master: data cycle

5.7.3.1.2 Slave

Figure 6 and Figure 7 show the interactions for a data sequence (identification cycle and data cycle) at the DL-Ph interface of a slave (remote bus device, local bus device or bus coupler).

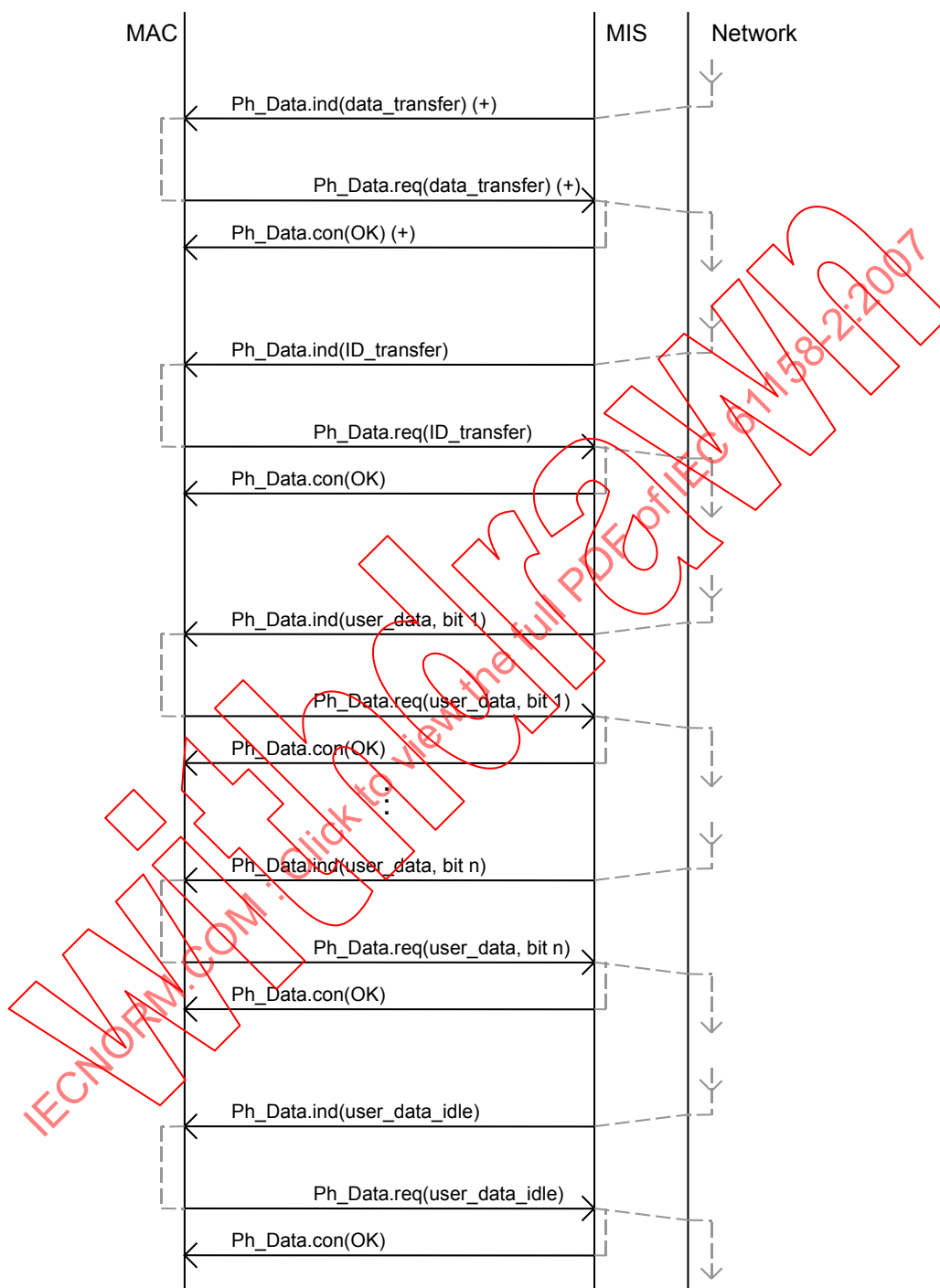


Figure 6 – Interactions for a data sequence of a slave: identification cycle

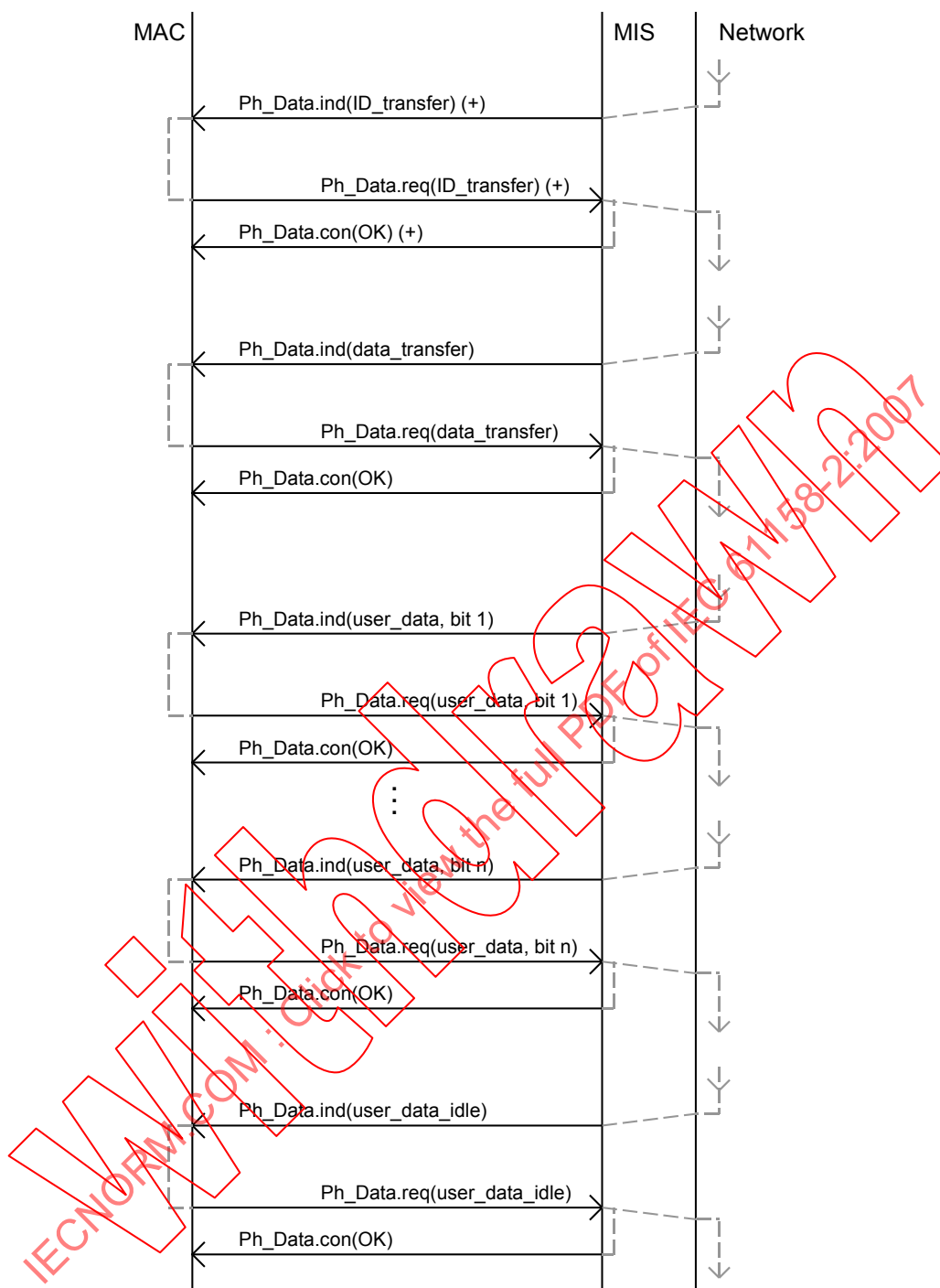


Figure 7 – Interactions for a data sequence of a slave: data cycle

5.7.3.2 Check sequence

5.7.3.2.1 Master

Figure 8 shows the interactions for a check sequence at the DL-Ph interface of a master.

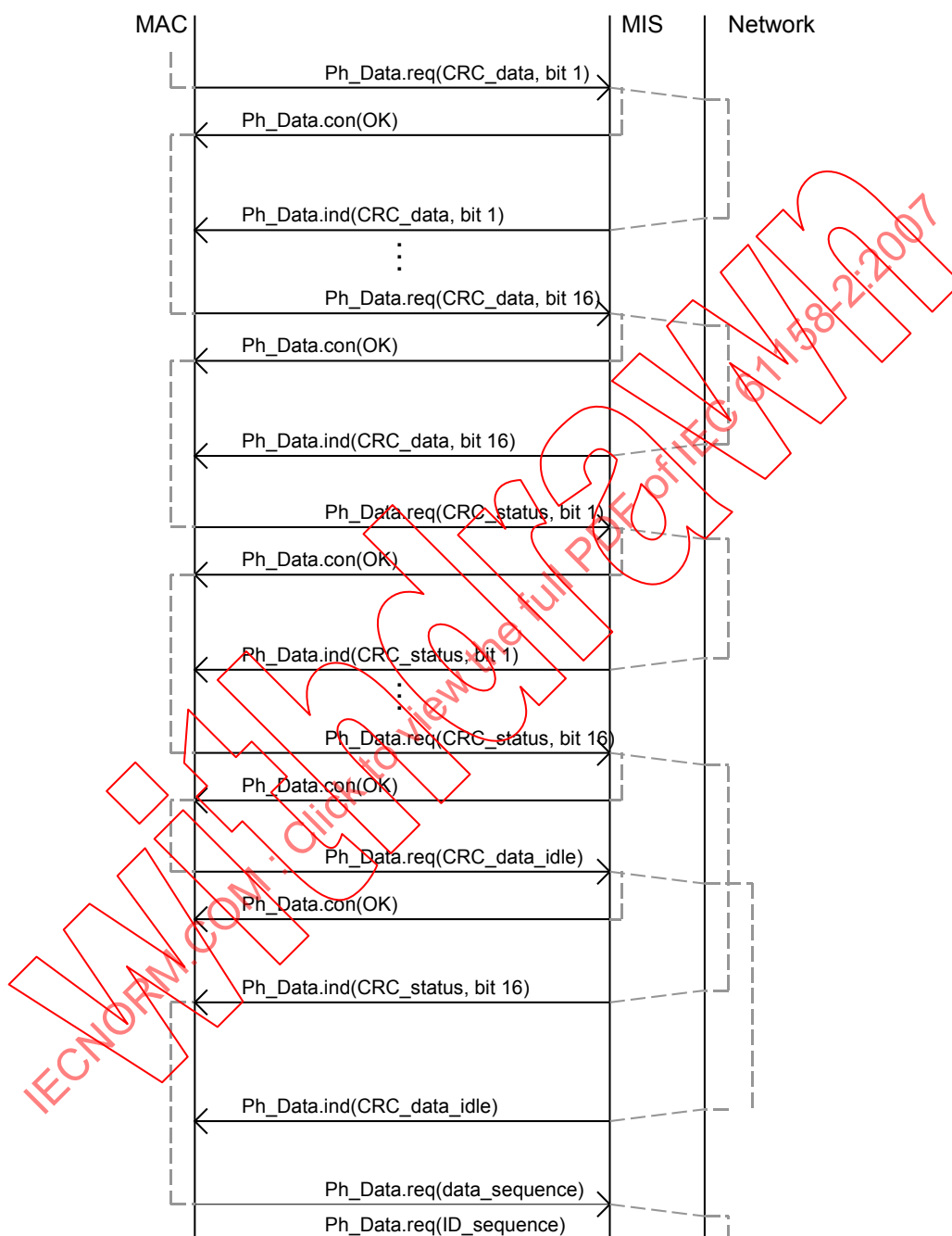


Figure 8 – Interactions for a check sequence of a master

5.7.3.3 Slave

Figure 9 shows the interactions for a check sequence at the DL-Ph interface of a slave.

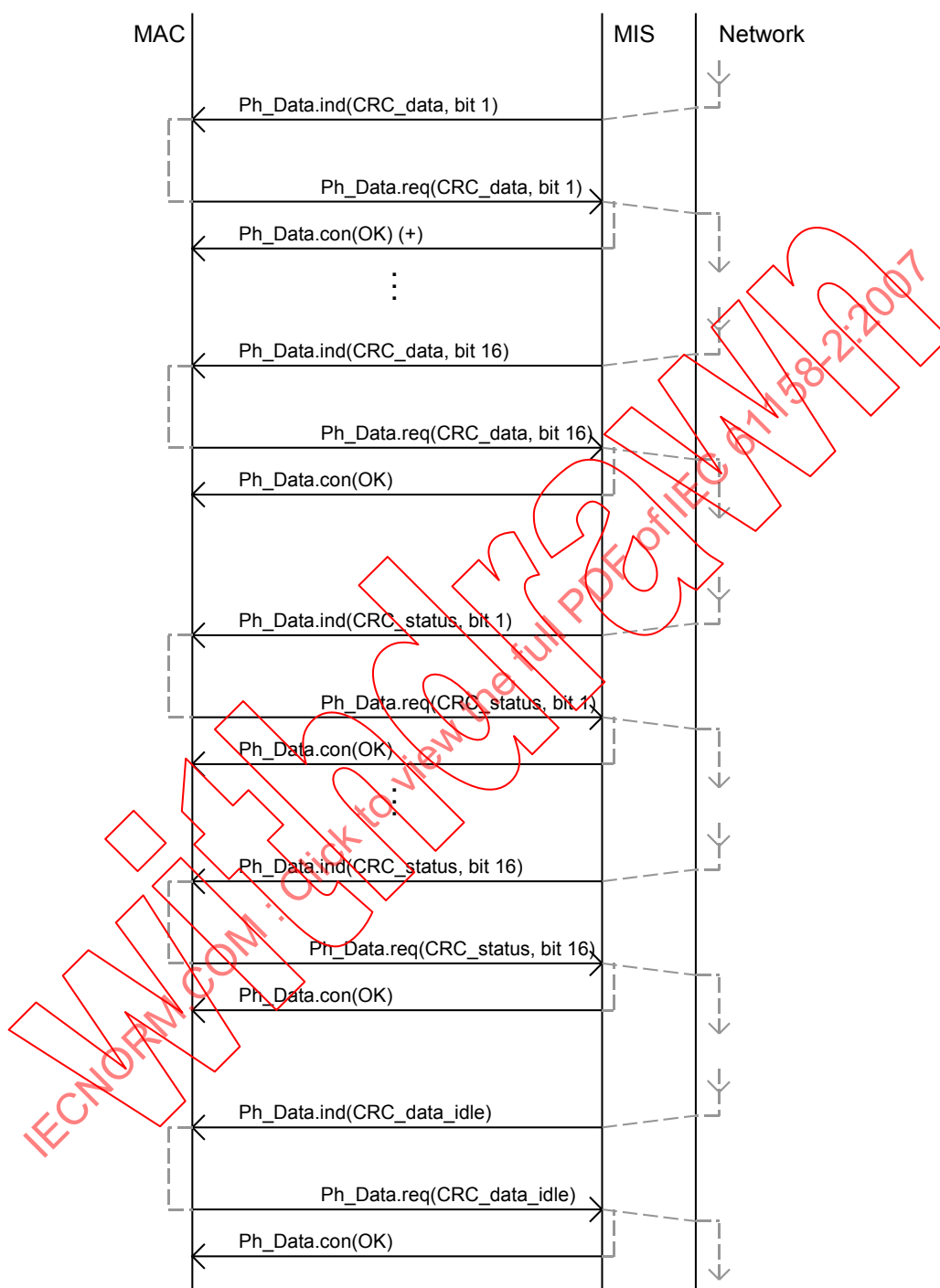


Figure 9 – Interactions for a check sequence of a slave

5.8 Type 12: Required services

5.8.1 Primitives of the PhS

5.8.1.1 General

The granularity of PhS-user data exchanged at the PhL – DLL interface is one octet.

5.8.1.2 Ph-CHARACTERISTICS Indication

The PhS shall provide the following service primitive to report essential PhS characteristics (which may be used in DLL transmission, reception, and scheduling activities):

- Ph-CHARACTERISTICS indication (minimum-data-rate, framing-overhead)

where

- minimum-data-rate – shall specify the effective minimum rate of data conveyance in bits per second, including any timing tolerances;

NOTE 1 A PhE with a nominal data rate of 100 Mbit/s $\pm$ 0,01 % would specify a minimum data rate of 99,99 Mbit/s.

- framing overhead – shall specify the maximum number of bit periods (where the period is the inverse of the data rate) used in any transmission for PhPDUs that do not directly convey data (e.g. PhPDUs conveying frame delimiters, inter-frame "silence", etc.).

NOTE 2 If the framing overhead is F and two DL message lengths are L_1 and L_2 , then the time to send one message of length $L_1 + F + L_2$ will be at least as great as the time required to send two immediately consecutive messages of lengths L_1 and L_2 .

5.8.1.3 PhS transmission and reception services

The PhS shall provide the following service primitives for transmission and reception:

- PH-DATA request (class, data);
- PH-DATA indication (class, data);
- PH-DATA confirm (status)

where

- class – shall specify the PhCI component of the PhIDU.

For a PH-DATA request, its possible values shall be:

- START-OF-FRAME – transmission of the PhPDUs which precede Ph-user data shall commence;
- DATA – the single-octet value of the associated data parameter shall be transmitted as part of a continuous correctly formed transmission; and
- END-OF-FRAME – the PhPDUs that terminate Ph-user data shall be transmitted after the last preceding octet of Ph-user data.

For a PH-DATA indication, its possible values shall be:

- START-OF-FRAME – reception of an apparent transmission from one or more PhEs has commenced;
- DATA – the associated data parameter was received as part of a continuous correctly formed reception;
- END-OF-FRAME – the ongoing continuous correctly formed reception of Ph-user data has concluded with correct reception of PhPDUs;
- END-W-EERROR – the ongoing continuous correctly formed reception of Ph-user data was disrupted with not correct formed reception implying END-OF-FRAME WITH ERROR;

- data – shall specify the PhID component of the PhIDU. It consists of one octet of Ph-user-data to be transmitted (PH-DATA request) or which was received successfully (PH-DATA indication);
- status – shall specify either success or the locally detected reason for inferring failure.

The PH-DATA confirm primitive shall provide the critical physical timing feedback necessary to inhibit the DLE from starting a second transmission before the first is complete. The final PH-DATA confirm of a transmission shall not be issued until the PhE has completed the transmission.

5.8.2 Notification of PhS characteristics

The PhE has the responsibility for notifying the DLE of those characteristics of the PhS that may be relevant to DLE operation. The PhE shall do this by issuing a single Ph-CHARACTERISTICS indication primitive at each of the PhEs at PhE start-up.

5.8.3 Transmission of Ph-user-data

The PhE shall determine the timing of all transmissions. When a DLE transmits a sequence of PhSDUs, the DLE shall send the sequence of PhSDUs by making a well-formed sequence of PH-DATA requests, consisting of a single request specifying START-OF-FRAME, followed by 72 to 1535 consecutive requests, inclusive, specifying DATA, each conveying a PhSDU, and concluded by a single request specifying END-OF-FRAME.

The PhE shall signal its completion of each PH-DATA request, and its readiness to accept a new PH-DATA request, by issuing a PH-DATA confirm primitive; the status parameter of the PH-DATA confirm primitive shall convey the success or failure of the associated PH-DATA request. A second PH-DATA request shall not be issued by the DLE until after the PH-DATA confirm corresponding to the first request has been issued by the PhE.

5.8.4 Reception of Ph-user-data

The PhE shall report a received transmission with a well-formed sequence of PH-DATA indications, which shall consist of

- a) a single indication specifying START-OF-FRAME; followed by consecutive indications specifying DATA, each conveying a PhSDU; and concluded by a single indication specifying END-OF-FRAME; or
- b) a single indication specifying START-OF-FRAME; optionally followed by one or more consecutive indications specifying DATA, each conveying a PhSDU; and concluded by a single indication specifying END-W-EERROR.

This last sequence is indicative of an incomplete or incorrect reception. Detection of an error in the sequence of received PhPDUs, or in the PhEs reception process, shall disable further PH-DATA indications with a class parameter specifying DATA, or END-OF-FRAME until after both the end of the current period of activity and the start of a subsequent period of activity have been reported by PH-DATA indications specifying START-OF-FRAME.

5.9 Type 16: Required services

5.9.1 Primitives of the PhS

5.9.1.1 General

The granularity of PhS-user data exchanged at the PhL – DLL interface shall be one octet.

5.9.1.2 PhS transmission and reception services

The PhS shall provide the following service primitives for transmission and reception:

- Ph-Data request (class, data);
- Ph-Data indication (class, data);
- Ph-Data confirm (status)

where

- class – shall specify the PhICI component of the PhIDU.

For a Ph-Data request, its possible values shall be:

- start-of-activity – transmission of the PhPDUs which precede Ph-user data shall commence;
- data – the single-octet value of the associated data parameter shall be transmitted as part of a continuous correctly formed transmission; and
- end-of-data-and-activity – the PhPDUs that terminate Ph-user data shall be transmitted after the last preceding octet of Ph-user data, culminating in the cessation of active transmission.

For a Ph-Data indication, its possible values shall be:

- start-of-activity – reception of an apparent transmission from the PhE has commenced;
- data – the associated data parameter was received as part of a continuous correctly formed reception;
- end-of-data – the ongoing continuous correctly formed reception of Ph-user data has concluded with correct reception of PhPDUs implying end-of-data;
- data – shall specify the PhID component of the PhIDU. It consists of one octet of Ph-user-data to be transmitted (Ph-Data request) or which was received successfully (Ph-Data indication);
- status – shall specify either success or the locally detected reason for inferring failure.

The Ph-Data confirm primitive shall provide the critical physical timing feedback necessary to inhibit the DLE from starting a second transmission before the first is complete. The final Ph-Data confirm of a transmission shall not be issued until the PhE has completed the transmission.

5.9.2 Transmission of Ph-user-data

The PhE shall determine the timing of all transmissions. When the DLE transmits a sequence of PhSDUs, it shall send the sequence of PhSDUs by making a well-formed sequence of Ph-Data requests, consisting of a single request specifying start-of-activity, followed by the required number of consecutive requests, inclusive, specifying data, each conveying a PhSDU, and concluded by a single request specifying end-of-data-and-activity.

The PhE shall signal its completion of each Ph-Data request, and its readiness to accept a new Ph-Data request, by issuing a Ph-Data confirm primitive; the status parameter of the Ph-Data confirm primitive shall convey the success or failure of the associated Ph-Data

request. A second Ph-Data request shall not be issued by the DLE until after the Ph-Data confirm corresponding to the first request has been issued by the PhE.

5.9.3 Reception of Ph-user-data

The PhE shall report a received transmission with a well-formed sequence of Ph-Data indications, which shall consist of

- a) a single indication specifying start-of-activity; followed by consecutive indications specifying data, each conveying a PhSDU; followed by a single indication specifying end-of-data; and concluded by a single indication specifying end-of-activity; or
- b) a single indication specifying start-of-activity; followed by consecutive indications specifying data, each conveying a PhSDU; followed by a single indication specifying end-of-data-and-activity; or
- c) a single indication specifying start-of-activity; optionally followed by one or more consecutive indications specifying data, each conveying a PhSDU; and concluded by a single indication specifying end-of-activity.

This last sequence is indicative of an incomplete or incorrect reception. Detection of an error in the sequence of received PhPDUs, or in the PhEs reception process, shall disable further Ph-Data indications with a class parameter specifying data, end-of-data, or end-of-data-and-activity until after both the end of the current period of activity and the start of a subsequent period of activity have been reported by Ph-Data indications specifying end-of-activity and start-of-activity, respectively.

5.10 Type 18: Required services

5.10.1 General

The DLL-PhL interface need not be exposed in the implementation of a Type 18 PhE. This interface may be internal to the node and may be implemented as internal to a semiconductor device.

5.10.2 Primitives of the PhS

5.10.2.1 General

The granularity of PhS-user data exchanged at the DLL – PhL interface is one bit.

5.10.2.2 PhS transmission and reception services

The PhS shall provide the following service primitives for transmission and reception:

- PH-DATA request (class, data);
- PH-DATA indication (class, data);
- PH-DATA confirm (status).

where:

- **class** - specifies the Ph-interface-control-information (PhICI) component of the Ph-interface-data-unit (PhIDU).

For a PH-DATA request, possible values of class are:

- START-OF-ACTIVITY – transmission of the PhPDUs which precede Ph-user data shall commence;
- DATA – the single-bit value of the associated data parameter shall be transmitted as part of a continuous correctly formed transmission; and

- END-OF-ACTIVITY – the PhPDUs that terminate Ph-user data shall be transmitted after the last preceding bit of Ph-user data, culminating in the cessation of active transmission.

For a PH-DATA indication, possible values of class are:

- START-OF-ACTIVITY – reception of an apparent transmission from one or more PhEs has commenced;
 - DATA – the associated data parameter was received as part of a continuous correctly formed reception;
 - END-OF-ACTIVITY – the ongoing reception (of an apparent transmission from one or more PhEs) has concluded, with no further evidence of PhE transmission; and
 - **data** – shall specify the PhID component of the PhIDU. It consists of one bit of Ph-user-data to be transmitted (PH-DATA request) or which was received successfully (PH-DATA indication).
- and
- **status** – shall specify either success or the locally detected reason for inferring failure.

The PH-DATA confirm primitive shall provide the critical physical timing feedback necessary to inhibit the DL-user from starting a second transmission before the first is complete. The final PH-DATA confirm of a transmission shall not be issued until the PhE has completed the transmission.

5.10.3 Transmission of Ph-user-data

The PhE shall determine the timing of all transmissions. When a DLE transmits a sequence of PhSDUs, the DLE shall send the sequence of PhSDUs by making a well-formed sequence of PH-DATA requests, consisting of a single request specifying START-OF-ACTIVITY, followed by a series of consecutive requests specifying DATA, each conveying a PhSDU, and concluded by a single request specifying END-OF-ACTIVITY.

The PhE shall signal its completion of each PH-DATA request, and its readiness to accept a new PH-DATA request, by issuing a PH-DATA confirm primitive; the status parameter of the PH-DATA confirm primitive shall convey the success or failure of the associated PH-DATA request. A second PH-DATA request shall not be issued by the DLE until after the PH-DATA confirm corresponding to the first request has been issued by the PhE.

5.10.4 Reception of Ph-user-data

The PhE shall report a received transmission with a well-formed sequence of PH-DATA indications, which shall consist of a single indication specifying START-OF-ACTIVITY; followed by consecutive indications specifying DATA, each conveying a PhSDU; followed by a single indication specifying END-OF-ACTIVITY.

6 Systems management – PhL interface

6.1 General

This interface provides services to the PhL, which are required for initialisation and selection of options.

One of the objectives of the PhL is to allow for future variations such as radio, fiber optics, redundant channels (e.g. cables), different modulation techniques, etc. A general form of Systems management – PhL Interface is specified which provides the services required by implementations of these variations. Services provided by this interface are specified in 6.2 through 6.5. The standard does not require this interface to be exposed.

The complete set of management services can only be used when the device is directly coupled to the medium. In the case of actively coupled equipment (e.g. active coupler, repeater, radio/telephone modem, opto-electronics, etc.) some of the services can be implicit to the active coupler. Moreover, each device can use a subset of the described primitives.

NOTE A number of different Systems management – PhL interfaces are specified, based on industry practice.

6.2 Type 1: Systems management – PhL interface

6.2.1 Required services

The minimum service primitive for PhL (PhL) management shall be:

- a) PH-RESET request – reset of the Ph-Layer.

The following additional services may be provided:

- b) Ph-SET-VALUE request/Ph-SET-VALUE confirm – set parameters;
- c) Ph-GET-VALUE request/Ph-GET-VALUE confirm – read parameters;
- d) Ph-EVENT indication – report Ph-Layer events.

6.2.2 Service primitive requirements

6.2.2.1 PH-RESET request

This primitive has no parameter. Upon reception of this primitive the PhL shall reset all its functions.

6.2.2.2 Ph SET-VALUE request (parameter name, new value)

If this primitive is used it shall allow Systems management to modify the parameters of the PhL. Standard parameter names and value ranges are given in Table 4. The value assumed for each parameter at reset shall be the first of those shown for the parameter.

Table 4 – Parameter names and values for Ph-SET-VALUE request

Parameter name	Range of values
Interface mode	• FULL_DUPLEX • HALF_DUPLEX
Loop-back mode	• DISABLED • in MDS at DTE – DCE interface • in MAU near line connection
Preamble extension	• 0..7 (preamble extension sequences)
Post-transmission gap extension	• 0..7 (gap extension sequences)
Maximum inter-channel signal skew	• 0..7 (gap extension sequences)
Transmitter output channel N ($1 \leq N \leq 8$)	• ENABLED • DISABLED
Receiver input channel N ($1 \leq N \leq 8$)	• ENABLED • DISABLED
Preferred receive channel	• NONE • 1..8

NOTE 1 Not all implementations require every parameter, and some may need more.

NOTE 2 Each DCE standard specifies both the basic and extension sequences of PhPDUs to be sent as preamble. These extension sequences are always prefixed to the basic sequence.

NOTE 3 Each DCE standard specifies the lengths of both the basic and extension sequences of post-transmission gap during which the transmitter should be silent.

NOTE 4 From the above, the default value at reset is minimum preamble (no extension), minimum post-transmission gap (no extension), full-duplex interface mode, not in loopback, with all transmit and receive channels enabled, and with no preferred receive channel.

6.2.2.3 Ph-SET-VALUE confirm (status)

This primitive has a single parameter indicating the status of the request: Success or Failure. If this primitive is used it shall acknowledge completion of the Ph-SET-VALUE request in the PhL.

6.2.2.4 Ph-GET-VALUE request (parameter name)

If this primitive is used it shall allow the Systems management to read the parameters of the PhL. The parameter shall have one of the names given in Table 4.

6.2.2.5 Ph-GET-VALUE confirm (current value)

This primitive is the response of the PhL to the Ph-GET-VALUE request. If this primitive is used it shall have a single parameter reporting either the failure of the request – Failure – or the present value of the requested parameter. The current value shall be one of those permitted by 6.2.2.2.

6.2.2.6 Ph-EVENT indication (parameter name)

If this primitive is used it shall notify the Systems management of a PhL parameter modification which has not been requested by the Systems management. The parameter shall have one of the names given in Table 5, based on names specified in 8.2.

Table 5 – Parameter names for Ph-EVENT indication

Parameter name
DTE fault
DCE fault

NOTE Additions to Table 5 are possible if required by specific implementations.

6.3 Type 3: Systems management – PhL interface

6.3.1 Synchronous transmission

The services and the service primitive requirements specified for Type 1 shall be used (see 6.2).

6.3.2 Asynchronous transmission

6.3.2.1 General

This and the following subclauses describe the interface between the PhL asynchronous transmission and a PhMS-user and the associated service primitives and parameters.

The service model, service primitives, and time-sequence diagrams used are entirely abstract descriptions; they do not represent a specification for implementation.

Service primitives, used to represent service user/service provider interactions (see ISO/IEC 10731), convey parameters that indicate information available in the user/provider interaction.

This Type of this standard uses a tabular format to describe the component parameters of the PhMS primitives. Each table consists of up to three columns, containing the name of the service parameter, and a column each for those primitives and parameter-transfer directions used by the PhMS:

- the request primitive's input parameters;
- the indication primitive's output parameters; and
- the confirm primitive's output parameters.

One parameter (or part of it) is listed in each row of each table. Under the appropriate service primitive columns, a code is used to specify the type of usage of the parameter on the primitive and parameter direction specified in the column:

- M** – parameter is mandatory for the primitive.
- (blank)** – parameter is never present.

6.3.2.2 Facilities of the PhMS

Ph-management organizes the initialisation and the configuration of the PhE, and the event and error handling between the PhMS-user and the logical functions in the PhE. The following functions are provided to the PhMS-user.

- a) Reset of the local PhE
- b) Request for and modification of the actual operating parameters of the local PhE
- c) Notification of unexpected events and status changes of the local PhE

6.3.2.3 Overview of services

Ph-management provides the following services to the PhMS-user:

a) Reset

The PhMS-user employs this service to cause Ph-management to reset the PhE. A reset is equivalent to power on. The PhMS-user receives a confirmation thereof.

b) Set Value

The PhMS-user employs this service to assign a new value to the variables of the PhE. The PhMS-user receives a confirmation whether the specified variables have been set to the new value.

c) Get Value

This service enables Ph-management to read the variables of the PhE. The response of the Ph-management returns the actual value of the specified variables.

d) Event

Ph-management employs this service to inform the PhMS-user about certain events or errors in the PhL.

The services Reset and Event are mandatory. The services Set Value and Get Value are optional.

6.3.2.4 Overview of interactions

Ph-management services and their primitives are summarized in Table 6.

Table 6 – Summary of Ph-management services and primitives

Service	Primitive	Possible for the following stations
Reset	PhM-RESET request PhM-RESET confirm	Master and slave
Set Value	PhM-SET-VALUE request PhM-SET-VALUE confirm	Master and slave
Get Value	PhM-GET-VALUE request PhM-GET-VALUE confirm	Master and slave
Event	PhM-EVENT indication	Master and slave

The temporal relationships of the Ph-management primitives are shown in Figure 10 and Figure 11.

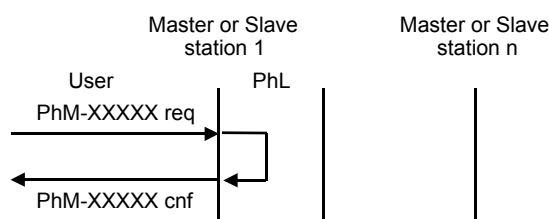


Figure 10 – Reset, Set-value, Get-value

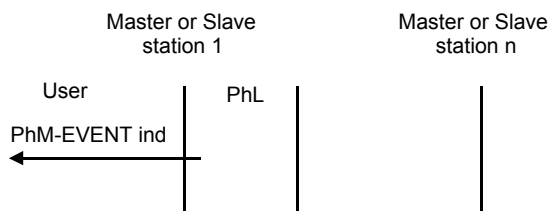


Figure 11 – Event service

6.3.2.5 Detailed specification of services and interactions

6.3.2.5.1 Reset

6.3.2.5.1.1 Function

The PhMS-user passes a PhM-RESET request primitive to Ph-management causing it to reset the PhE. This is carried out in the same manner as at a Power On (Transmitter_output: enabled; Receiver_signal_source: primary; Loop: disabled). As a result, Ph-management passes a PhM-RESET confirm primitive to the PhMS-user to indicate the success or failure of the corresponding service request.

6.3.2.5.1.2 Types of primitives and parameters

Table 7 indicates the primitives and parameters of the Reset service.

Table 7 – Reset primitives and parameters

	PhM-RESET	Request	Confirm
Parameter name		input	output
PhM-STATUS			M
NOTE The method by which a confirm primitive is correlated with its corresponding preceding request primitive is a local matter.			

PhM-Status

This parameter specifies the status of the execution of the associated service request. Permitted values for this parameter are specified in Table 8.

Table 8 – Values of PhM-Status for the Reset service

Short name	Status	Definition	Temporary (t) or permanent (p)
OK	success	The Reset function was carried out successfully	--
NO	failure	The Reset function was not carried out successfully	t/p
IV	failure	Invalid parameters in request	--

6.3.2.5.2 Set Value

6.3.2.5.2.1 Function

The PhMS-user passes a PhM-SET-VALUE request primitive to Ph-management to assign a desired value to one or more specified variables of the PhE. After receiving this primitive Ph-management tries to select these variables and to set the new values. If the requested service was executed Ph-management passes a PhM-SET-VALUE confirm primitive to the PhMS-user to indicate the success or failure of the corresponding service request.

6.3.2.5.2.2 Types of primitives and parameters

Table 9 indicates the primitives and parameters of the Set Value service.

Table 9 – Set value primitives and parameters

PhM-SET-VALUE	Request	Confirm
Parameter name	input	output
Variable_name (1 to 3)	M	
Desired_value (1 to 3)	M	
PhM-STATUS (1 to 3)		M
NOTE The method by which a confirm primitive is correlated with its corresponding preceding request primitive is a local matter.		

Variable_name

This array parameter specifies one or more variables (1 to 3) that are to be assigned values from the corresponding elements of the Desired_value parameter. The selectable variables are operating parameters; they are specified in Table 10.

Table 10 – Mandatory PhE-variables

Operating parameters	
Name	Definition
Transmitter_output	Transmitter output
Receiver_signal_source	Receiver input
Loop	The transmitter output is directed to the receiver input and not to the medium

Desired_value

This array parameter specifies the actual value to be written to the variables (1 to 3) that are specified by the Variable_name parameter. This parameter specifies a list of one or more (1 to 3) new values for the specified PhE-variables. The permissible value or range of values for each of these variables is specified in Table 11.

Table 11 – Permissible values of PhE-variables

Operating parameters	
Variable	Range of values
Transmitter_output	enabled or disabled
Receiver_signal_source	primary: bus cable "a" (standard source) alternative: bus cable "b" (alternative source) random: either "a" or "b"
Loop	disabled or enabled

PhM-Status

This array parameter specifies, for each variable in the corresponding request, the status of that component of the requested service. Permitted values for the individual components of this array parameter are specified in Table 12.

Table 12 – Values of PhM-Status for the set-value service

Short name	Status	Definition	Temporary (t) or permanent (p)
OK	success	The variable has been set to the new value	--
NO	failure	The variable does not exist or could not be set to the new value	t/p
IV	failure	Invalid parameters in request	--

6.3.2.5.3 Get Value

6.3.2.5.3.1 Function

The PhMS-user passes a PhM-GET-VALUE request primitive to Ph-management to read the current value of one or more variables of the PhE. After receipt of this primitive Ph-management tries to select the specified variables and to deliver their current values and passes a PhM-GET-VALUE confirm primitive to the PhMS-user to indicate the success or failure of the corresponding service request. This primitive returns as a parameter one or more of the requested variable values.

6.3.2.5.3.2 Types of primitives and parameters

Table 13 indicates the primitives and parameters of the Get Value service.

Table 13 – Get value primitives and parameters

	PhM-GET-VALUE	Request	Confirm
Parameter name		input	output
Variable_name (1 to 3)		M	
Current_value (1 to 3)			M
PhM-STATUS			M
NOTE The method by which a confirm primitive is correlated with its corresponding preceding request primitive is a local matter.			

Variable_name

This array parameter specifies one or more variables (1 to 3) whose values are to be read. The variables that may be selected are specified in Table 10.

Current_value

This array parameter specifies the actual value of the (1 to 3) variables that were specified by the Variable_name parameter of the corresponding request. The permissible value, or range of values, for each of these variables is specified in Table 14.

Table 14 – Current values of PhE-variables

Operating parameters	
Variable	Range of values
Transmitter_output	enabled or disabled
Receiver_signal_source	primary or alternative
Loop	disabled or enabled

PhM-Status

This array parameter specifies for each variable in the corresponding request a confirmation about the execution of the service. Permitted values for this parameter are specified in Table 15.

Table 15 – Values of PhM-Status for the get value service

Short name	Status	Definition	Temporary (t) or permanent (p)
OK	success	The variable could be read	--
NO	failure	The variable does not exist or could not be read. The corresponding value of Current_value is not defined	t/p
IV	failure	Invalid parameters in request	--

6.3.2.5.4 Event

6.3.2.5.4.1 Function

The PhE informs Ph-management that it has detected an event. After that, Ph-management passes a Ph-EVENT indication primitive to the PhMS-user to inform it about important events in the PhL.

6.3.2.5.4.2 Types of primitives and parameters

Table 16 indicates the primitive and parameters of the Event service.

Table 16 – Event primitive and parameters

PhM-EVENT	Indication
Parameter name	output
Variable_name (1 to 2)	M
New_value (1 to 2)	M

Variable_name

This array parameter specifies one or more variables (1 to 2) whose values were changed. The variables that may be present are specified in Table 10.

New_value

This parameter specifies the new value of the variable. The various values are shown in Table 17.

Table 17 – New values of PhE-variables

Variable	Range of values
Transmitter_output	enabled or disabled
Receiver_signal_source	primary or alternative

6.4 Type 4: Systems management – PhL interface

6.4.1 Required Services

The services specified in 6.2 are used.

6.4.2 Service primitive requirements

The service primitive requirements are specified in 6.2.2 with the following restriction:

The parameters specified in Table 4 are not supported.

The parameters that can be modified and read by the PhL management services are shown in Table 18. Supported values and default value for each parameter depend on the actual medium and implementation.

Table 18 – Parameter names and values for management

Parameter name	Range of values
Interface mode	HALF_DUPLEX FULL_DUPLEX_RS232 FULL_DUPLEX_UDP
Baud rate (kbaud/s)	230 400 76 800 38 400 19 200 9 600

6.5 Type 6: *This subclause has been removed*

NOTE This subclause is a placeholder in this edition to minimize the disruption to existing national and multi-national standards and consortia documents that reference the subclause numbering of the prior edition.

6.6 Type 8: Systems management – PhL interface

6.6.1 Functionality of the PhL Management

The management of the PhL is the part of the PhL that produces the management functionality of the PhL that are demanded by the PNM1. The management of the PhL handles the initialisation, the monitoring, and the error recovery in the PhL.

6.6.2 PhL-PNM1 Interface

6.6.2.1 General

This subclause defines the administrative PhL management services that are available to the PNM1, together with their service primitives and associated parameters. Figure 12 shows the interface between PhL and PNM1 in the layer model.

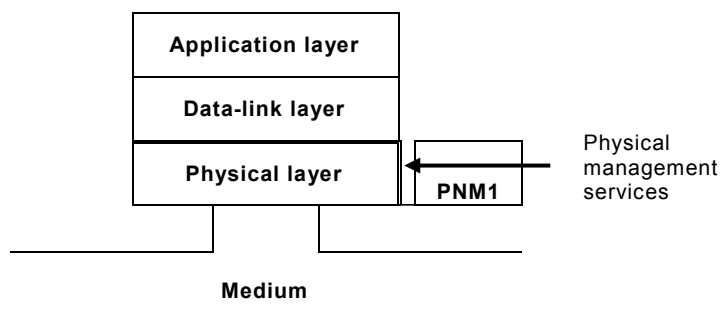


Figure 12 – Interface between PhL and PNM1 in the layer model

The service interface between PhL and PNM1 provides the following functions:

- Reset of the PhL
- Request and change of the current operating parameters of the PhL
- Indication of unexpected events, errors and status changes, which occurred or were detected in the PhL

6.6.2.2 Overview of the Services

The PhL makes the following services available to the PNM1:

- Reset PhL
- Set Value PhL or Get Value PhL
- Event PhL

Reset PhL (mandatory)

The PNM1 uses this service to reset the PhL. The reset is equivalent to power on. Upon execution of the service, the PNM1 receives a confirmation.

Set Value PhL (optional)

The PNM1 uses this service to set new values to the PhL variables. Upon completion, the PNM1 of the PhL receives a confirmation whether the defined variables assumed the new values.

Get Value PhL (optional)

The PNM1 uses this service to read out variables of the PhL. The current value of the defined variable is returned in the response of the PhL.

Event PhL (mandatory)

The PhL uses this service to inform the PNM1 user about certain events or errors in the PhL.

6.6.2.3 Overview of the Interactions

The PhL services are described by the following primitives (beginning with Ph-...):

Reset PhL

PH-RESET request
PH-RESET confirm

Set Value PhL

Ph-SET-VALUE request
Ph-SET-VALUE confirm

Get Value PhL

Ph-GET-VALUE request
Ph-GET-VALUE confirm

Event PhL

Ph-Event indication

Figure 13 and Figure 14 show the time relations of the service primitives.

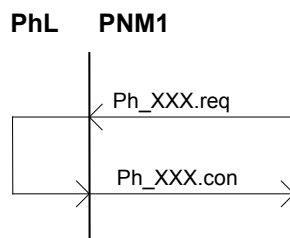


Figure 13 – Reset, Set-value, Get-value PhL services

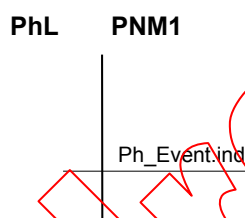


Figure 14 – Event PhL service

6.6.2.4 Detailed definitions of the services and Interactions

6.6.2.4.1 PH-RESET

The PH-RESET service is mandatory. The PNM1 transfers a PH-RESET request primitive to the PhL to reset it (see Table 19).

Table 19 – PH-RESET

Parameter name	Request	Confirm
Argument	M	
Result(+)		M

6.6.2.4.2 Ph-SET-VALUE

The Ph-SET-VALUE service is optional. The PNM1 transfers a Ph-SET-VALUE request primitive to the PhL, to set a defined Ph variable to a desired value. After receipt of this primitive, the PhL tries to select the variable and to set the new value. Upon completion, the PhL transfers a Ph-SET-VALUE confirm primitive to the PNM1 (see Table 20).

Table 20 – Ph-SET-VALUE

Parameter name	Request	Confirm
Argument	M	
variable_name	M	
desired_value	M	
Result(+)		M

variable_name:

This parameter defines the PhL variable that is set to a new value.

desired_value:

This parameter declares the new value for the PhL variable.

Table 21 provides information on which PhL variable may be set to which new value.

Table 21 – PhL variables

Name of PhL variable
loopback_mode
medium_attachment
bus_interfaces
short_bus_reset_time
long_bus_reset_time
data_select

loopback_mode:

This parameter defines whether the receive circuit of the MAU is connected to the send circuit or to the medium.

Parameter structure:

- interface number
Defines the number of the incoming and outgoing interface (see Figure 15).
- status
This parameter defines whether the receive circuit of the MAU is connected (enabled) or not (disabled). After power on this value is equivalent to "enabled".

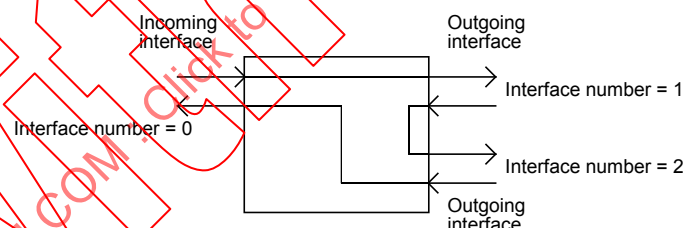


Figure 15 – Allocation of the interface number

NOTE A master has always the interface number = 2.

medium_attachment:

This parameter indicates whether the MAU is coupled to the transmission medium. This is done by detecting whether a connector is plugged to the outgoing interface.

Parameter structure:

- interface number
Declares the number of the bus interface (see Figure 15).
- attachment
This parameter defines whether the interface is connected to the transmission medium.

bus_interfaces:

- interface number
Declares the number of the bus interface (see Figure 15).
- interface type
Defines the type of the physical interface and the transmission medium:

- Incoming interface, 2-wire
- Outgoing interface, 2-wire

short_bus_reset_time:

This parameter defines the duration of the short reset. The value after power on is 5 ms.

long_bus_reset_time:

This parameter defines the duration of the long reset. The value after power on is 100 ms.

data_select:

This parameter indicates a Reset_PhPDU or a medium_activity_status_PhPDU is sent on the transmission medium for a passive outgoing MAU (loopback mode= disable)

Parameter structure

- interface number
Defines the number of the bus interface (see Figure 15). Value range (1 to 2)
- coupling
Disable: A reset PHPDU is transmitted on the transmission medium;
Enable: The medium activity status PHPDU is transmitted on the transmission medium after "power on" this value is "disable".

6.6.2.4.3 Ph-GET-VALUE

The Ph-GET-VALUE service is optional. The PNM1 transfers a Ph-GET-VALUE request primitive to the PhL to read out the current value of a defined PhL variable. After the PhL has received this primitive it tries to select the defined variable and to transfer the present value to the PNM1 by means of a Ph-GET-VALUE confirm primitive (see Table 22).

Table 22 – Ph-GET-VALUE

Parameter name	Request	Confirm
Argument variable_name	M M	
Result(+) current_value		M M

variable_name:

This parameter defines the PhL variable the value of which is to be read out.

current_value:

This parameter contains the read-out value of the PhL variable. The PhL variables to be read are those variables that can be written to with the Ph-SET-VALUE.

6.6.2.4.4 Ph-EVENT

The Ph-EVENT service is mandatory. The PhL transfers a Ph-EVENT indication primitive to the PNM1, to inform it about important events or errors in the PhL (see Table 23).

Table 23 – Ph-EVENT

Parameter name	Indication
Argument event	M M

event:

This parameter defines the event that occurred or the error source in the PhL and may according to Table 24 have the following values:

Table 24 – PhL events

Name	Meaning
stop_bit_error	Stop bit error detected in the MDS sublayer
medium_attachment	The medium attachment changed at an outgoing MAU

6.7 Type 12: Systems management – PhL interface

6.7.1 Required service

The minimum service primitive for PhL (PhL) management shall be:

PH-RESET request – reset of the Ph-Layer.

6.7.2 Service primitive PH-RESET request

This primitive has no parameter. Upon reception of this primitive the PhL shall reset all its functions.

6.8 Type 18: Systems management – PhL interface

6.8.1 General

The Systems management – PhL interface need not be exposed in the implementation of a Type 18 PhE. This interface may be internal to the node and may be implemented as internal to a semiconductor device.

6.8.2 Required services

The minimum service primitive for PhL management shall be:

- PH-RESET request – reset of the Ph-Layer;
- Ph-SET-VALUE request – set parameters.

6.8.3 Service primitive requirements

6.8.3.1 PH-RESET request

This primitive has no parameter. Upon reception of this primitive the PhL shall reset all its functions.

6.8.3.2 Ph-SET-VALUE request (parameter name, new value)

This primitive shall allow Systems management to modify the parameters of the PhL. Standard parameter names and value ranges are given in Table 4.

Not all values are supported by all Type 18 PhE variants. Baud rate limitations are associated with the Type 18 MAU variant implemented.

Table 25 – Parameter names and values for Ph-SET-VALUE request

Parameter name	Range of values
Baud rate (kbaud/s)	10 000
	5 000
	2 500
	625
	156

7 DCE independent sublayer (DIS)

7.1 General

The PhL entity is partitioned into a Data Terminal Equipment (DTE) component and a Data Communication Equipment (DCE) component. The DTE component interfaces with the DLL entity, and forms the DCE Independent Sublayer (DIS). It exchanges Interface Data Units across the DL – Ph interface defined in Clause 5, and provides the basic conversions between the PhIDU "at-a-time" viewpoint of the DL – Ph interface and the bit serial viewpoint required for physical transmission and reception.

This sublayer is independent of all the PhL variations, including encoding and/or modulation, speed, voltage/current/optical mode, medium etc. All these variations are grouped under the designation Data Communication Equipment (DCE).

NOTE A number of different DIS entities are specified, based on industry practice.

7.2 Type 1: DIS

The DIS shall sequence the transmission of the PhID as a sequence of serial PhSDUs. Similarly, the DIS shall form the PhID to be reported to the DLL from the sequence of received serial PhSDUs.

The PhID shall be converted to a sequence of PhSDUs for serial transmission in octets up to a maximum of 300 octets. A PhSDU representing more significant octets of the PhID shall be sent before or at the same time as a PhSDU representing less significant octets and such that within each octet, a PhSDU representing a more significant bit will be transmitted before or at the same time as a PhSDU representing a less significant bit. On reception, each sequence of PhSDUs shall be converted to PhID such that, in the absence of errors, the PhIDU indicated to the receiving DLL entity shall be unchanged from the PhIDU whose transmission was requested by the originating DLL entity.

NOTE This is a guarantee of transparency.

7.3 Type 3: DIS

7.3.1 Synchronous transmission

The DCE Independent Sublayer (DIS) specified for Type 1 shall be used (see 7.2).

7.3.2 Asynchronous transmission

There is no DCE Independent Sublayer (DIS) for asynchronous transmission.

7.4 Type 6: *This subclause has been removed*

NOTE This subclause is a placeholder in this edition to minimize the disruption to existing national and multi-national standards and consortia documents that reference the subclause numbering of the prior edition.

7.5 Type 8: DIS

7.5.1 General

The PhL is subdivided into a medium-independent sublayer (MIS), a medium-dependent sublayer (MDS) and the medium attachment unit (MAU). The MIS is independent of all characteristics of the PhL, such as coding, transmission method, transmission speed, and the type of transmission medium. All these instances are described by the sublayers MDS and MAU.

7.5.2 Function

On the one hand, the MIS has to transmit the PhSDU which was received by the MAC sublayer through the DL-Ph-interface in the form of a PhIDU via the MIS-MDS interface to the MDS. On the other hand, it forms the PhIDU of a PhSDU, which has been received through the MIS-MDS interface, and transfers it via the DL-Ph interface to the MAC sublayer.

In addition, the MIS allows transmitting a PhSDU between two MDSs through the MIS-MDS interface (MDS coupling).

The MIS may consist of several channels that are configured correspondingly. One channel is used to transmit the PhSDU to the MDS and to transmit one PhSDU through a PhIDU to the MAC sublayer. All other channels are used to transmit a PhSDU between two MDS sublayers.

7.5.3 Serial transmission

For the serial transmission a sequence of PhIDUs shall be converted into a sequence of PhSDUs. A PhSDU that represents a more significant bit is transferred after a PhSDU that represents a less significant bit.

When it is received each sequence of PhSDUs shall be converted into a sequence of PhIDUs so that the sequence of PhIDUs formed in such a way corresponds to the one that is transmitted from the MAC sublayer to the PhL.

7.5.4 MDS coupling

When MDSs are coupled in pairs and have the same or different characteristics (alternative type of transmission) each PhSDU that is received from a MDS through the MIS-MDS interface is sent unchanged via the MIS-MDS interface to another MDS.

In this case, it is allowed to buffer a received PhSDU.

Figure 16, Figure 17 and Figure 18 show possible configurations for the bus master and slaves using the 2-wire medium and an alternative type of transmission.

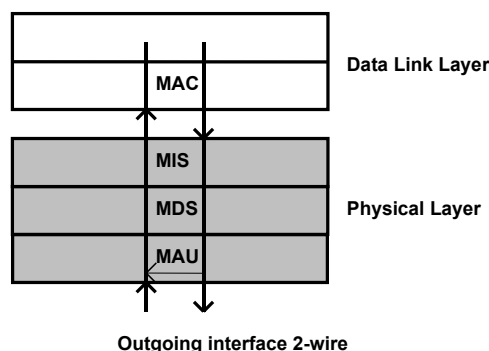


Figure 16 – Configuration of a master

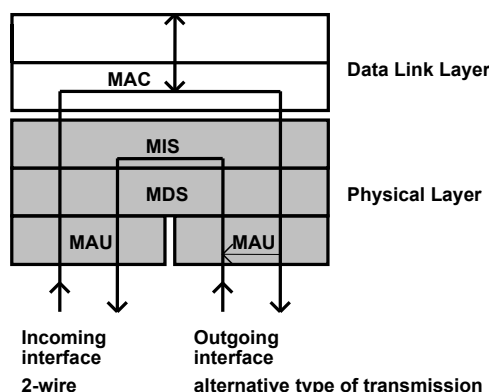


Figure 17 – Configuration of a slave with an alternative type of transmission

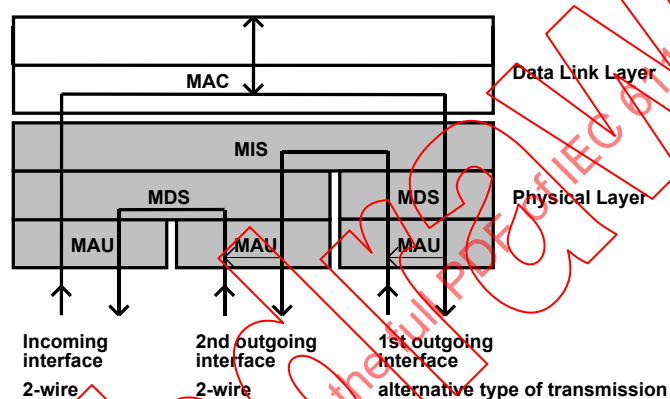


Figure 18 – Configuration of a bus coupler with an alternative type of transmission

7.6 Type 12: DIS

The DIS shall sequence the transmission of the PhID as a sequence of serial PhSDUs. Similarly, the DIS shall form the PhID to be reported to the DLL from the sequence of received serial PhSDUs.

The PhID shall be converted to a sequence of PhSDUs for serial transmission in octets from a minimum of 72 octets up to a maximum of 1 535 octets.

For the serial transmission a sequence of PhIDUs shall be converted into a sequence of PhSDUs. A PhSDU that represents a more significant bit is transferred after a PhSDU that represents a less significant bit.

When it is received each sequence of PhSDUs shall be converted into a sequence of PhIDUs so that the sequence of PhIDUs formed in such a way corresponds to the one that is transmitted from the MAC sublayer to the PhL.

8 DTE – DCE interface and MIS-specific functions

8.1 General

The PhL entity is partitioned into a Data Terminal Equipment (DTE) component containing the DIS, and a Data Communication Equipment (DCE) component containing the MDS and lower sublayers. The DTE – DCE interface connects these two physical components, and is itself within the MIS. (See Figure 1.)

NOTE A number of different DTE – DCE interfaces are specified, based on industry practice.

It is not mandatory for the DTE – DCE interface, or any other interface, to be exposed.

For Type 3 synchronous transmission mode, Type 1 and Type 7, the DTE – DCE interface is a functional and electrical, but not mechanical, interface that supports a set of services. Each of these services is implemented by a sequence of defined signaling interactions at the interface.

8.2 Type 1: DTE – DCE interface

8.2.1 Services

8.2.1.1 Overview

The following services, defined in this subclause, shall be supported by the DTE – DCE interface:

- a) DTE to DCE reset service;
- b) DTE to DCE configuration service;
- c) DTE to DCE message-transmission service;
- d) DCE to DTE fault notification service;
- e) DCE to DTE media-activity indication service;
- f) DCE to DTE message-reporting service.

8.2.1.2 DTE to DCE reset service

This service shall provide a means by which the DTE, at any time, can reset the DCE to its initial (power-on) state.

8.2.1.3 DTE to DCE configuration service

This service shall provide a means by which the DTE can configure various characteristics of the DCE, including those characteristics which systems management can adjust via Ph-SET-VALUE requests (see Table 4). It shall also provide a DCE-optional means by which the DTE can initiate reporting of DCE status by pre-emptive use of the DCE to DTE message-reporting service.

8.2.1.4 DTE to DCE message-transmission service

This service shall provide a means by which the DTE can transmit a message through the DCE to either the connected medium (media), or back to the DTE, or both, as determined by the current operational values of the parameters specified in Table 4. The DCE shall provide the pacing for this service.

This service is invoked upon receipt of a PH-DATA request specifying START-OF-ACTIVITY at the PhL service interface, and runs until receipt of and completion of the PH-DATA request specifying END-OF-DATA-AND-ACTIVITY.

8.2.1.5 DCE to DTE fault notification service

This service shall provide a means by which the DCE, at any time, can report a fault. The specific nature of the fault is not reported by this service, but may be determinable by use of the DTE to DCE configuration service to initiate a DCE-optional DCE status report.

8.2.1.6 DCE to DTE media-activity indication service

This service shall provide a means by which the DCE reports the inferred detection, on any of its connected media for which receiving is enabled (see Table 4), of signaling from itself or

other Ph-Layer entities. While loopback is enabled, this service reports only the signaling of the DCE itself.

When the DTE – DCE interface is in half-duplex mode and loopback is not enabled, this service need not report media activity resulting directly from the DTE to DCE message-transmission service.

8.2.1.7 DCE to DTE message-reporting service

This service shall provide a means by which the DCE reports the receipt of a sequence of PhPDUs from any one of the connected media for which receiving is enabled. This service terminates with an indication of whether the sequence of received PhPDUs was well formed. Errors in the sequence, including number of PhPDUs such that they could not have been a correct transmission resulting from an invocation of the DCE to DTE message-transmission service shall be reported as a malformed (erroneous) sequence.

NOTE Errors in the octet alignment of a received end delimiter with respect to the preceding start delimiter (i.e., not separated by an integral number of octets of data bits) must be reported as a malformed sequence.

When the DTE – DCE interface is in half-duplex mode and loopback is not enabled, this service need not report the message transmitted by the DCE to DTE message-transmission service.

8.2.2 Signaling interfaces

8.2.2.1 Overview

Two signaling interfaces are defined for Type 1 PhLs. The first interface existed in prior editions of this standard and is retained for compatibility, although there are no known implementations. It is defined in 8.2.2.2 through 8.2.2.4.

The second interface uses the well-known serial peripheral interface (SPI) protocol and signals, or equivalent, in which octet registers and FIFOs in the DCE are read and written by the DTE and in which the DCE can interrupt the DTE.

NOTE There is no formal standard for the SPI protocol, although it is used by many electronics vendors.

8.2.2.2 Interface signals (historic version from prior editions)

8.2.2.2.1 Overview

If the DTE – DCE interface is exposed it shall provide the signals specified in Table 26.

Table 26 – Signals at DTE – DCE interface

Signal	Abbreviation	Source
Transmit Clock	TxC	DCE
Request-to-send	RTS	DTE
Clear-to-send	CTS	DCE
Transmit Data	TxD	DTE
Receive Clock	RxC	DCE
Receive Activity	RxA	DCE
Receive Data and Framing	RDF	DCE

The signal levels shall be as shown in Table 27. In general, both sides of the interface shall operate with the same approximate value of V_{DD} . However, it is recognized that a DTE and a DCE with separate power supplies may not both reach operational V_{DD} simultaneously. It is desirable, but not mandatory, that the DTE to DCE reset service be operational when the DCE

has not yet reached operational V_{DD} . It is also desirable that the DTE invoke this service whenever its own V_{DD} is below operational margins.

Table 27 – Signal levels for an exposed DTE – DCE interface

Symbol	Parameter	Condition	Limit	Unit	Remark
V_{OL}	Maximum low-level output voltage	$I_{out} = \pm 100 \mu A$	0,1	V	see Note 1
		$I_{out} = +1,6 \text{ mA}$	0,4	V	
V_{OH}	Min. high-level output voltage	$I_{out} = \pm 100 \mu A$	$V_{DD} - 0,1$	V	see Note 1
		$I_{out} = -0,8 \text{ mA}$	$V_{DD} - 0,8$	V	see Note 2
V_{IL}	Max. low-level input voltage		$0,2 V_{DD}$	V	
V_{IH}	Min. high-level input voltage		$0,7 V_{DD}$	V	see Note 3
NOTE 1 Provides the capability to drive two typical CMOS loads.					
NOTE 2 CMOS input compatibility with TTL output requires a "pull-up" resistor from signal input to V_{DD} .					
NOTE 3 Compatible with CMOS output for $3,0 \text{ V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5,5 \text{ V}$. Compatibility with TTL output ($4,75 \text{ V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5,25 \text{ V}$) requires a "pull-up" resistor from signal input to V_{DD} .					

The timing characteristics of these signals shall be at least equal to those specified for the relevant DCE in the requirements of this standard. However, in no case shall the transition time between $0,3 V_{DD}$ and $0,6 V_{DD}$ be greater than either 100 ns or $0,025 P$, whichever is smaller. P is defined as the nominal period of octet transmission – the inverse of the nominal PhSDU rate.

An implementation of the DTE – DCE interface shall function correctly with transmit and receive (TxC and RxC) clock frequencies between 1 kHz and 8,8 times the highest supported PhSDU rate of the DTE or DCE implementation.

NOTE The PhSDU and equivalent bit data rates available in an implementation are stated in the Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS).

8.2.2.2.2 Transmit clock (TxC)

The Transmit Clock signal (TxC) shall provide the DTE with a continuous timing signal, such that any eight consecutive full cycles of this signal shall have the same octet period as the nominal transmit period for one data octet. The DCE shall source this nominally two-phase signal such that each phase has duration of at least $0,04 P$.

NOTE This specification permits TxC to be a continuous, constant-period clock at the nominal bit rate (8 times the nominal octet rate) with a duty cycle of 32 % to 68 %, or for TxC to be a higher-frequency clock with some cycles omitted and with a duty cycle closer to 50 %. This permits, for example, simple clocking in a DCE that recodes each 4 bits into 5 bauds; the DCE could have a clock 10 times the nominal octet rate, with a duty cycle of between 40 % and 60 %, and would omit (the same) two cycles every octet.

TxC supports the DTE to DCE configuration and message-transmission services.

8.2.2.2.3 Request-to-send (RTS)

The request-to-send (RTS) signal supports the DTE to DCE reset, configuration, and message-transmission services. The DTE shall source this signal. The initial (power-on) and idle (no DTE to DCE service active) state of this signal shall be low.

When referenced to TxC at the DTE – DCE interface, this signal shall have a minimum setup time of the smaller of either 100 ns or $0,025 P$; the hold time shall be zero or greater.

8.2.2.2.4 Clear-to-send (CTS)

The clear-to-send (CTS) signal supports the DTE to DCE configuration and message-transmission services. The DCE shall source this signal. The initial (power-on) and idle (no DTE to DCE service active) state of this signal shall be low.

When referenced to Tx_C at the DTE – DCE interface, this signal shall have a minimum setup time of the smaller of either 100 ns or 0,025 *P*; the hold time shall be zero or greater.

8.2.2.2.5 Transmit Data (Tx_D)

The Transmit Data (Tx_D) signal supports the DTE to DCE reset, configuration, and message-transmission services. Binary data is transmitted from DTE to DCE during one phase of the latter two services, and during this phase a binary 0 is represented by a low level on Tx_D and a binary 1 by a high level on Tx_D, both sampled at the falling edge of Tx_C.

The DTE shall source this signal. The initial (power-on) and idle (no DTE to DCE service active) state of this signal shall be high.

When referenced to Tx_C at the DTE – DCE interface, this signal shall have a minimum setup time of the smaller of either 100 ns or 0,025 *P*; the hold time shall be zero or greater.

8.2.2.2.6 Receive Clock (Rx_C)

The Receive Clock signal (Rx_C) shall provide the DTE with an intermittent (semi-continuous) nominally two-phase timing signal that defines the timing of information being reported via the RDF signal. The DCE shall source this signal such that, where Rx_C is defined to be meaningful (see 8.2.2.3.7), each phase has duration of at least 0,04 *P*.

NOTE This specification permits Rx_C to be a recovered clock at the nominal bit rate (8 times the nominal octet rate) with a duty cycle of 32 % to 68 %, or to be a higher-frequency clock with some cycles omitted and with a duty cycle closer to 50 %. This permits, for example, simple clocking in a DCE that decodes 4 bits from each received 5 bauds; the DCE could have a clock 10 times the nominal octet rate, with a duty cycle of between 40 % and 60 %, and would omit two cycles every octet.

This specification also permits the DCE to omit cycles of Rx_C during recognition of long end-delimiter sequences of PhPDUs, so that the delimiter can be reported in real time using 8 or fewer cycles of Rx_C (see 8.2.2.3.7).

Rx_C shall support the DCE to DTE message-reporting service.

8.2.2.2.7 Receive Activity (Rx_A)

The Receive Activity (Rx_A) signal shall support the DCE to DTE fault notification, media-activity indication, and message-reporting services. The DCE shall source this signal. The initial (power-on) and idle (no DCE to DTE service active) state of this signal shall be low.

8.2.2.2.8 Receive Data and Framing (RDF)

The Receive Data and Framing (RDF) signal shall support the DCE to DTE fault notification and message-reporting services. Binary data is transmitted from DCE to DTE during some phases of the latter service, and during these phases a binary 0 is represented by a low level on RDF and a binary 1 by a high level on RDF, both sampled at the falling edge of Rx_C.

The DCE shall source this signal. The initial (power-on) and idle (no DCE to DTE service active) state of this signal shall be high.

When referenced to Rx_C at the DTE – DCE interface, this signal shall have a minimum setup time of the smaller of either 100 ns or 0,025 *P*; the hold time shall be zero or greater.

8.2.2.3 Encoding of services in signals

8.2.2.3.1 Summary

The services of 8.1 shall be implemented by the following sequences and combinations of the signals of 8.2.

NOTE Typical transmit and receive sequencing machines are shown in Figure 19, which is included in this standard for explanatory purposes and does not imply a specific implementation.

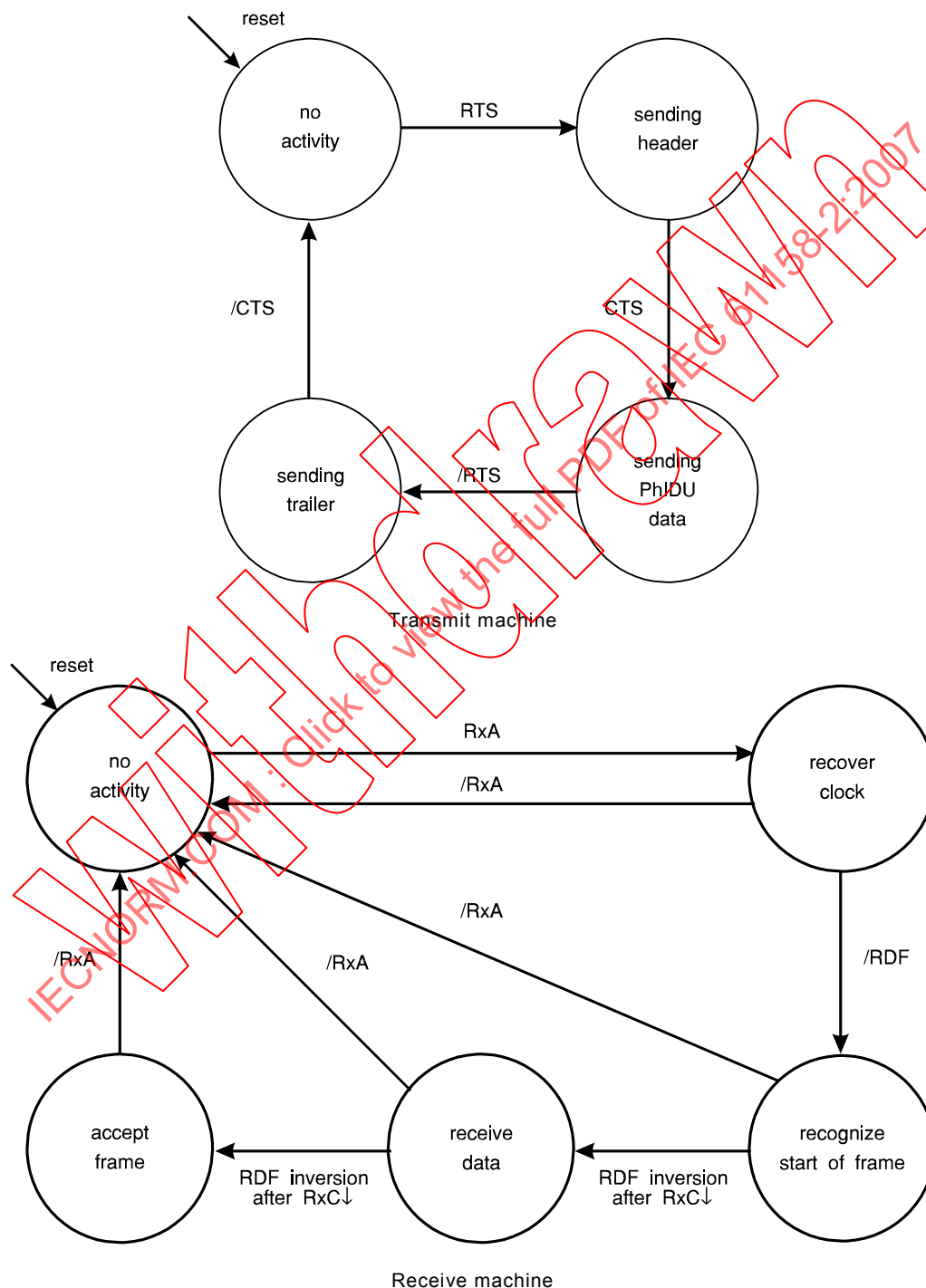


Figure 19 – DTE/DCE sequencing machines

8.2.2.3.2 DTE to DCE reset service

This service shall be mutually exclusive with the DTE to DCE configuration and message-transmission services; at most one of them may be active at any given time. This service may pre-empt the DTE to DCE configuration and message-transmission services at any time.

This service shall be encoded as a simultaneous low level on both RTS and TxD. When asserted by the DTE, this simultaneous low level shall be held for at least the nominal transmission period of two PhSDUs (octets).

NOTE 1 This is an asynchronous service, and is not referenced to TxC.

NOTE 2 When a DTE is itself being reset, possibly during power-up, it should attempt to reset the DCE even when the DTE's own V_{DD} is below normal operational limits.

NOTE 3 This reset is under the control of the DTE. It does not preclude the existence of a separate reset pin on the DCE.

If the DTE concurrently changes both RTS and TxD during the implementation of either the DTE to DCE configuration or message-transmission services, then the DTE shall ensure that an interval of at least the minimum required setup time exists between changing the one signal to a high level, and subsequently changing the other signal to a low level, to eliminate potential logic hazards in the DCE's implementation of the DTE to DCE reset service.

8.2.2.3.3 DTE to DCE configuration service

This service is mutually exclusive with the DTE to DCE reset and message-transmission services; at most one of them may be active at any given time. This service may initiate the DCE to DTE message-reporting service to report DCE-internal status. The DTE to DCE reset service may pre-empt this service at any time.

This service shall be implemented in three phases; each of the latter two phases shall follow immediately upon completion of the prior phase.

NOTE 1 These phases can be implemented as a minor variation on the three phases specified for the DTE to DCE message-transmission service. As a result, the DTE to DCE configuration service induces very little added complexity on the DTE and DCE.

- 1) The DTE shall assert (raise) RTS after the falling edge, and before the rising edge, of TxC. The DCE shall respond by anticipating configuration data.
- 2) When it is ready for configuration data from the DTE, the DCE shall raise CTS before the falling edge of TxC. The DTE shall respond by encoding the first bit of configuration data (1 as high, 0 as low) on TxD before the falling edge of the next TxC, and shall continue this process without interruption until between 2 and 200 bits of data (see 8.2.2.4) have been so encoded. The DTE shall then assert (raise) TxD and negate (lower) RTS before the falling edge of the next TxC.

NOTE 2 The DTE should ensure that TxD is raised at least one setup time before RTS is lowered, to avoid potential logic hazards in the DCE implementation of the DTE to DCE reset service.

- 3) The DCE shall conclude any necessary reconfiguration before negating (lowering) CTS, which shall occur between two consecutive falling edges of TxC.

Both standardized and extendible configuration messages are defined in 8.2.2.4. Standardized messages cover the ranges of application of this interface that are anticipated to be most cost sensitive. Extendible messages permit differing forms of DCE configuration where required, and can serve to initiate the DCE to DTE message-reporting service to report DCE-internal status (a DCE option further described in 8.2.2.4).

8.2.2.3.4 DTE to DCE message-transmission service

This service is mutually exclusive with the DTE to DCE reset and configuration services; at most one of them may be active at any given time. The DTE to DCE reset service may pre-empt this service at any time.

This service shall be implemented in three phases; each of the latter two phases shall follow immediately upon completion of the prior phase.

- a) The DTE shall assert (raise) RTS after the rising edge, and before the falling edge, of TxC. The DCE shall respond by generating and transmitting the appropriate-length sequence of preamble and start delimiter PhPDUs.
- b) When it is ready for transparent data from the DTE, the DCE shall raise CTS before the falling edge of TxC. The DTE shall respond by encoding the first bit of transparent data (1 as high, 0 as low) on TxD before the next falling edge of TxC, and shall continue this process without interruption until between 3 and 300 integral octets of data have been so encoded. The DTE shall then assert (raise) TxD and negate (lower) RTS before the next falling edge of TxC.

NOTE The DTE shall ensure that TxD is raised at least one setup time before RTS is lowered, to avoid potential logic hazards in the DCE implementation of the DTE to DCE reset service.

- c) The DCE shall conclude transmission of all of the encoded transparent data received from the DTE, shall then generate and transmit the appropriate-length sequence of end delimiter PhPDUs, and shall then cease transmission. The DCE shall then wait an amount of time equal to the configured minimum post-transmission gap (see Table 4) before negating (lowering) CTS, which shall occur after a falling edge, and before the next falling edge, of TxC.

8.2.2.3.5 DCE to DTE fault notification service

This service shall be mutually exclusive with the DCE to DTE media-activity indication and message-reporting services; at most one of them may be active at any given time. This service may pre-empt the DCE to DTE media-activity indication and message-reporting services at any time.

This service shall be encoded as a simultaneous low level on both RxA and RDF. Once asserted by the DCE, this simultaneous low level shall be held until activation of either the DTE to DCE reset or configuration services.

NOTE This is an asynchronous service, and is not referenced to RxC.

The DCE may concurrently change both RxA and RDF during the concurrent termination of the DCE to DTE media-activity indication and message-reporting services. The DTE is responsible for avoiding any logic hazards induced by this concurrent change.

8.2.2.3.6 DCE to DTE media-activity indication service

This service is mutually exclusive with the DCE to DTE fault notification service; at most one of them may be active at any given time. The DCE to DTE fault notification service may pre-empt this service at any time.

This service shall be encoded as a high level on RxA. Once asserted by the DCE, this high level enables recognition of a high-to-low transition on RDF to initiate the DCE to DTE message-reporting service. Any subsequent high-to-low transition on RxA terminates that DCE to DTE message-reporting service.

NOTE The DCE to DTE media-activity indication service is an asynchronous service, and is not referenced to RxC.

8.2.2.3.7 DCE to DTE message-reporting service

This service is mutually exclusive with the DCE to DTE fault notification service; at most one of them may be active at any given time. This service can only occur while the DCE to DTE media-activity indication service is active. The DCE to DTE fault notification service may pre-empt this service at any time.

8.2.2.3.7.1 Non-erroneous reception

This service shall be implemented in four phases when reporting a well-formed message, each of which shall follow immediately upon completion of the prior phase.

The following description applies to DCEs which have end delimiter sequences of eight PhPDUs or less, and which do not require any extra decoding delay for an FEC (forward error correcting) code. DCEs that do not meet these conditions may introduce extra delay into their decoding and reporting processes so that, with respect to signaling on RxC and RDF, they do meet these conditions.

- a) After detecting received signaling, training on that signaling, and recovering a data clock from that signaling whose nominal octet frequency is the same as TxC, the DCE shall initiate the DCE to DTE message-reporting service by sourcing that recovered clock on RxC and then negating (lowering) RDF after the rising edge, and before the next falling edge, of RxC.

NOTE 1 RxA is already asserted at this time.

- b) The DCE shall continue training and attempting to match the received signaling against its expected preamble and start delimiter PhPDUs.

If the DCE supports N channels of redundant media, then it may report on RDF the identity of the channel from which the signaling is being received by encoding that channel number, in the range 0 to $N-1$, as a binary number which is reported most significant bit first during reception of the last three of those start delimiter PhPDUs. The bits reported on RDF shall be presented in series after successive rising edges of RxC, each before the immediately subsequent falling edge of RxC.

Upon detecting an exact match between the received signaling and the expected start delimiter, the DCE shall invert RDF after the falling edge, and before the next rising edge, of RxC.

NOTE 2 If the identity of the receiving channel was being reported on RDF, then this inversion will occur during the low phase of \1,\2 which immediately follows the high phase (of \1,\2) during which the last (low-order) bit of the channel number was reported.

- c) The DCE shall continue reception and attempting to match the received signaling against potential data and expected end delimiter PhPDUs.

The DCE shall report each data bit decoded from the received signaling on RDF. The bits reported on RDF shall be presented in series after successive rising edges of \1,\2, each before the immediately subsequent falling edge of RxC. In the absence of errors these bits shall be reported in the same order and with the same values as they were transmitted by a peer PhL entity.

NOTE 3 This is a guarantee of transparency.

An end delimiter may be composed of both data and non-data PhPDUs. The DCE may report similarly on RDF each data bit decoded from an end delimiter, and may report also on RDF an appropriate number of data values for the non-data PhPDUs decoded from an end delimiter, except that

- 1) the total number of "bits" so reported shall be seven or less, and
- 2) upon detecting an exact match between the received signaling and the expected end delimiter, the DCE shall not report on RDF another bit corresponding to the end delimiter's last "bit", but rather shall first assert (raise) RDF after the rising edge, and before the next falling edge, of RxC, and then shall negate (lower) RDF after the falling edge, and before the next rising edge, of RxC.

NOTE 4 Most implementations will decode, and report on RDF as data, any initial data PhPDUs in a received end-delimiter sequence. The first non-data PhPDU, and subsequent PhPDUs, need not be reported. However, a final report will be made on RDF, indicating correct end-delimiter recognition.

NOTE 5 Each reported bit, except the last, is maintained on RDF for a full cycle of RxC. The last bit is replaced by a high-low sequence, each of which is maintained for just one phase of RxC.

NOTE 6 This terminating high-low sequence will occur during the first eight "bit" reports which occur after the last (pre-delimiter) data bit was reported. That last (pre-delimiter) data bit will have been the $8N$ 'th data bit so reported in this phase, where N should be at least three and no greater than 300.

- d) The DCE shall assert (raise) RDF before the next falling edge of RxC and shall not initiate another instance of the DCE to DTE message-reporting service until after the conclusion of the current DCE to DTE media-activity indication service.

8.2.2.3.7.2 Erroneous reception

An error may be detected during any phase of the reception process described in 8.2.2.3.7.1. When that occurs, the DCE shall modify its sequencing of those phases as follows.

If the DCE should detect invalid PhPDUs, or an invalid sequence of PhPDUs, or a valid end delimiter sequence of PhPDUs which is not separated from the start delimiter PhPDUs by an integral number of data-octets of PhPDUs; and if the DCE can establish a valid signal on RxC (for example, by substituting TxC or some other local signal for the recovered clock source, if necessary); then

- a) if phase 2 has not already been initiated, the DCE shall immediately initiate phase 2;
- b) if phase 2 has not already been concluded, the DCE shall immediately conclude phase 2 as rapidly as possible, ignoring the requirement for matching of the start delimiter PhPDU sequence;
- c) otherwise, the DCE shall immediately negate (lower) RDF after the rising edge, and before the next falling edge, of RxC, and then shall assert (raise) RDF after the falling edge, and before the next rising edge, of RxC.

NOTE This sequence permits the DCE to

- enable DTE use of RxC;
- identify the channel with the erroneous signaling; and
- indicate a reception error.

When the DCE has completed as many of the above steps a), b) and c) as appropriate and possible, the DCE shall immediately initiate phase 4.

8.2.2.4 DCE configuration messages

8.2.2.4.1 Summary

This subclause defines both standardized configuration messages, and the standardized portion of extendible configuration messages. Standardized messages cover the ranges of application of this interface that are anticipated to be most commonly used. Extendible messages permit differing forms of DCE configuration where required, and can serve to initiate the DCE to DTE message-reporting service to report DCE-internal status (a DCE option).

Two standardized messages, and two classes of extendible messages, are defined. All messages are transmitted across the interface in the order in which the bits are defined. Integers are transmitted most significant bit (MSB) first.

The two standardized messages and two classes of extendible messages are distinguished by the first two data bits of the configuration message, as follows:

- 00 – basic configuration message;
- 01 – path-diversity control message;
- 10 – extendible configuration message;
- 11 – extendible status-report invocation message.

8.2.2.4.2 Basic configuration message

Following its initial two bits of (00), the basic configuration message specifies operational aspects common to most DCEs. The defined components of this message are, in order of transmission:

- a) the operational mode of the DCE, encoded in one data bit as shown. The value for this parameter after activation of the DTE to DCE reset service is 0;
 - 0 Two-way simultaneous (full-duplex), where each invocation of the DTE to DCE message-transmission service automatically activates the DCE to DTE media-activity indication and message-reporting services;

NOTE 1 This mode is desirable for dual-channel media such as fiber-optic-pair cabling. Some DTEs may only be able to operate in this mode.

- 1 Two-way alternate (half-duplex), where an invocation of the DTE to DCE message-transmission service does not automatically activate the DCE to DTE media-activity indication and message-reporting services;

NOTE 2 This mode minimizes DCE and DTE – DCE interface power consumption. Some DTEs may only be able to operate in this mode.

- b) the selection of the DCE-internal data source for the message-reporting service, encoded in two data bits as shown (see Table 4). The value for this parameter after activation of the DTE to DCE reset service is 00. When this selection is non-zero, transmission on all attached media shall be disabled and the DTE – DCE interface shall operate in two-way simultaneous (full-duplex) mode;

00 decoded signaling, received from one of the attached media as specified in 8.2.2.4.3 b) and c). The interface mode is as specified in 8.2.2.4.2 a);

01 internal-status reporting, see 8.2.2.5.1 and 8.2.2.6;

10 loopback as close as possible to the DTE – DCE interface, with no transmission to connected media, where each invocation of the DTE to DCE message-transmission service automatically activates the DCE to DTE media-activity indication and message-reporting services;

NOTE 3 This mode is desirable for DCE vs. DTE vs. inter-connect fault localization.

11 loopback as close as possible to the media interface(s), with no transmission to connected media, where each invocation of the DTE to DCE message-transmission service automatically activates the DCE to DTE media-activity indication and message-reporting services.

NOTE 4 This mode is desirable for self-assessment before entry to an operating network.

- c) the amount by which the preamble, which is the initial sequence of PhPDUs in each transmission, should be extended. Its range is zero to seven units of extension, encoded in three data bits as 0 (000) to 7 (111). The value for this parameter after activation of the DTE to DCE reset service is 0 (000) (see note 2 of 6.2.2.2);
- d) the amount by which the mandatory post-transmission gap, which is the period of non-transmission between successive sequences of PhPDUs, should be extended. Its range is zero to seven units of extension, encoded in three data bits as 0 (000) to 7 (111). The value for this parameter after activation of the DTE to DCE reset service is 0 (000) (see note 3 of 6.2.2.2).

8.2.2.4.3 Path-diversity control message

Following its initial two bits of (01), the path-diversity control message specifies additional configuration data commonly required for management and fault-assessment of redundant paths: separate transmission and reception controls for each of the attached redundant media (channels and paths). The defined components of this message are, in order of transmission:

- a) two bits of zero (00), which provide quartet and octet alignment within the message for the following fields;

- b) the algorithm for choosing between redundant media as the source of received signaling when more than one of the media is enabled for reception, coded in four bits as shown. The value for this parameter after activation of the DTE to DCE reset service is 0000;
 0000 – The medium selected for reception should be the first medium on which signaling which is suitable for receiver-training is detected;
 1000 to 1111 ($= 7 + N$, $1 \leq N \leq 8$) – The N th medium should be selected, except when signaling suitable for receiver-training has been detected on another medium for a period of time equal to the extra period of inter-frame-gap extension specified in 8.2.2.4.2 d), in which case that other medium should be selected;
- c) the selection of whether reception is enabled (0) or inhibited (1) on each of eight or fewer redundant media, coded in eight consecutive bits for channels 1 through 8, respectively (see Table 4). The value for this parameter after activation of the DTE to DCE reset service is 0000 0000;
- d) the selection of whether transmission is enabled (0) or inhibited (1) on each of eight or fewer redundant media, coded in eight consecutive bits for channels 1 through 8, respectively (see Table 4). The value for this parameter after activation of the DTE to DCE reset service is 0000 0000;
- e) the amount of post-transmission gap extension due to potential signal skew between redundant media. Its range is zero to seven units of extension, encoded in three data bits as 0 (000) to 7 (111). The value for this parameter after activation of the DTE to DCE reset service is 0 (000) (see 8.2.2.4.2 d), 8.2.2.4.3 b), and note 3 of 6.2.2.2).

8.2.2.5 Extendible configuration messages

Following its initial two bits of (10), the coding of extendible configuration messages may be implementation dependent. The structure and form of extendible configuration messages shall be the same as the basic configuration message specified in 8.2.2.4.2.

8.2.2.5.1 Extendible status-report invocation messages

Following its initial two bits of (11), the coding of extendible status-report invocation messages may be implementation dependent. The structure and form of extendible status-report invocation messages shall be the same as the basic configuration message specified in 8.2.2.4.2. The information specified shall select some DCE-internal source of received signaling, and if the DCE-internal-data-source mode is status-reporting (see 8.2.2.4.2 b)), then the DCE shall generate a multi-data-octet message, padded as necessary to an octet multiple, and shall report it using the DCE to DTE media-activity indication and message-reporting services.

8.2.2.6 DCE-generated status reports

These reports are generated within the DCE upon request, and reported when the DCE-internal-data-source is internal-status report (see 8.2.2.4.2 b)).

8.3 Type 3: DTE – DCE interface

8.3.1 Synchronous transmission

The DTE – DCE interface specified for Type 1 shall be used (see 8.2).

8.3.2 Asynchronous transmission

The DTE – DCE interface is not exposed for asynchronous transmission.

8.4 Type 8: MIS – MDS interface

8.4.1 General

The PhL is subdivided into a medium-independent sublayer (MIS) and a medium-dependent sublayer (MDS). The MIS-MDS interface connects these two sublayers.

The MIS-MDS interface is a functional interface that supports certain services; it is not mandatory to implement this interface electrically. Each of these services is implemented through a sequence of interactions of the interface signals.

8.4.2 Services

8.4.2.1 General

The MIS-MDS interface supports the services listed below:

- ID cycle request service
- Data cycle request service
- Data sequence classification service
- Data sequence identification service
- Message transmission service
- Message receipt service
- Bus reset

8.4.2.2 ID cycle request service

With this service the MIS starts a data sequence to transmit identification and control data (identification cycle).

NOTE This service is used by a master only.

8.4.2.3 Data cycle request service

With this service, the MIS starts a data sequence for the transmission of user data (data cycle).

NOTE This service is used by a master only.

8.4.2.4 Data sequence classification service

With this service the MIS starts an identification or data cycle.

NOTE This service is used by a bus coupler or a slave only.

8.4.2.5 Data sequence identification service

With this service the MDS indicates the beginning of an identification or data cycle.

8.4.2.6 Message transmission service

With this service the MIS sends a message via the MDS either to the connected medium or via the MDS back to another MDS. The MDS determines how fast this service is executed.

NOTE 1 This service transmits the PhIDUs that were passed on to the PhL.

NOTE 2 This service runs simultaneously with the message receipt service.

8.4.2.7 Message receipt service

With this service the MDS indicates receipt of a message to the MIS or another connected MDS. The service ends with the indication whether the received PhPDU was correctly formed.

NOTE This service shall be preceded by a data sequence identification service.

8.4.2.8 Bus reset

A reset is sent to and received from all slaves with this service. Table 28 shows the parameter of the MDS bus reset.

Table 28 – MDS bus reset

Service parameter	Request	Indication
reset_type	M	M

reset_type:

This service parameter defines whether the reset is short or long.

Value range: short, long

NOTE This service is used by a master only.

8.4.3 Interface signals

The MIS-MDS interface makes signals available that are listed in Table 29.

Table 29 – Signals at the MIS-MDS interface

Interface signal	Mnemonic	Source
Transmit Clock	TxC	MIS
Request-to-send	RTS	MIS
Clear-to-send	CTS	MDS
Transmit Sequence	TxS	MIS
Transmit Select Line	TxSL	MIS
Transmit Control Line	TxCR	MIS
Transmit Data	TxD	MIS
Request Delay 1	RqDly1	MIS
Request Delay 2	RqDly2	MIS
Busy	BSY	MDS
Receive Clock	RxC	MDS
Receive Activity	RxA	MDS
Receive Sequence	RxS	MDS
Receive Select Line	RxSL	MDS
Receive Control Line	RxCR	MDS
Receive Data	RxD	MDS
Reset Out	RO	MIS
Reset In	RI	MDS

8.4.4 Converting the services to the interface signals

8.4.4.1 General

The services of the MIS-MDS interface are represented by the protocol machines and signal sequences described in 8.4.4.1 through 8.4.4.8.

NOTE The following applies to the state diagrams shown in Figure 20 to Figure 28:
The symbol "*" corresponds to "logically and", the symbol "/" corresponds to "negated".

8.4.4.2 Identification cycle request service

Figure 20 describes this service with the four services marked in grey and their transitions.

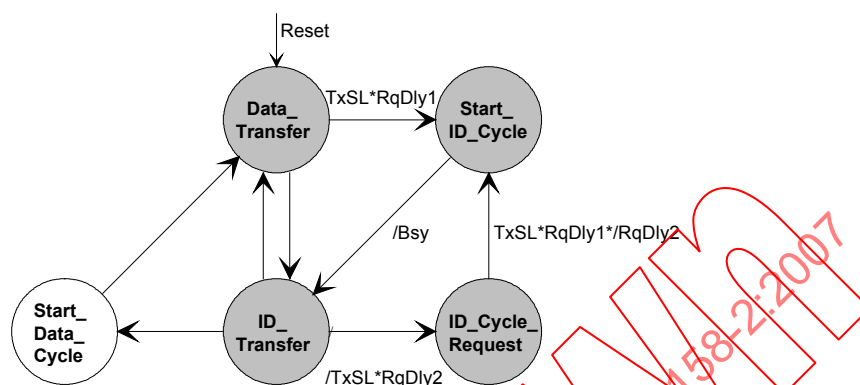


Figure 20 – State transitions with the ID cycle request service

NOTE 1 Transitions not shown in Figure 20 are used for other services see Figure 23 and Figure 25 for the states and transitions.

The identification cycle was preceded by a data cycle or a reset:

Data_Transfer state:

The MIS initiates an identification cycle request service by changing the TxSL signal from logical 0 to logical 1 and at the same time the RqDly1 signal from logical 0 to logical 1.

Start_ID_Cycle state:

After that, the MDS transmits the corresponding status PhPDU, starts a timer with the duration t_1 and sets the BSY signal from logical 0 to logical 1. The MIS resets the RqDly1 signal to logical 0.

After the time t_1 has elapsed, the MDS sets the BSY signal to logical 0 and terminates the identification cycle request service. The MIS communicates this to the DLL through a PH-DATA confirm primitive and assumes the ID_Transfer state.

The minimum time for t_1 is 5 bit times.

Figure 21 shows the corresponding signal forms at the MIS-MDS interface for an identification cycle request service after a preceding data cycle.

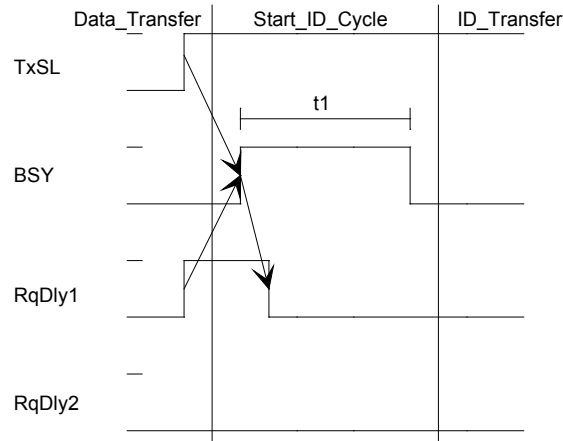


Figure 21 – MIS-MDS interface: identification cycle request service

The identification cycle was preceded by an identification cycle:

ID_Transfer state:

The MIS initiates an identification cycle request service by changing the TxSL signal from logical 1 to logical 0 and at the same time the RqDly2 signal from logical 0 to logical 1.

ID_Cycle_Request state:

After that, the MDS transmits the corresponding status PhPDU, starts a timer with the duration t2 and sets the BSY signal from logical 0 to logical 1. The MIS resets the RqDly2 signal to logical 0.

After the time t2 has elapsed, the MDS sets the BSY signal to logical 0. The MIS sublayer then changes the TxSL signal from logical 0 to logical 1 and at the same time the RqDly1 signal from logical 0 to logical 1.

The minimum time for t2 is 25 bit times.

Start_ID_Cycle state:

After that, the MDS transfers the corresponding status PhPDU, starts a timer with the duration T1 and sets the BSY signal from logical 0 to logical 1. The MIS then resets the RqDly1 signal to logical 0.

After the time t1 has elapsed, the MDS sets the BSY signal to logical 0 and terminates the identification cycle request service. The MIS communicates this to the DLL by means of a PH-DATA confirm primitive and assumes the ID_Transfer state.

Figure 22 shows the corresponding signal forms at the MIS-MDS interface for an identification cycle request service after a preceding identification cycle.

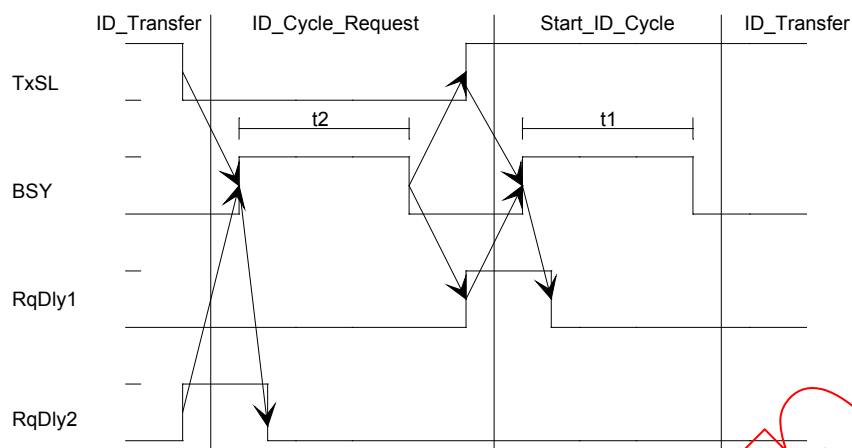


Figure 22 – MIS-MDS interface: identification cycle request service

NOTE 2 The identification cycle request service is an asynchronous service and is not related to TxC.

8.4.4.3 Data cycle request service

Figure 23 describes this service with the three states marked in grey and their transitions.

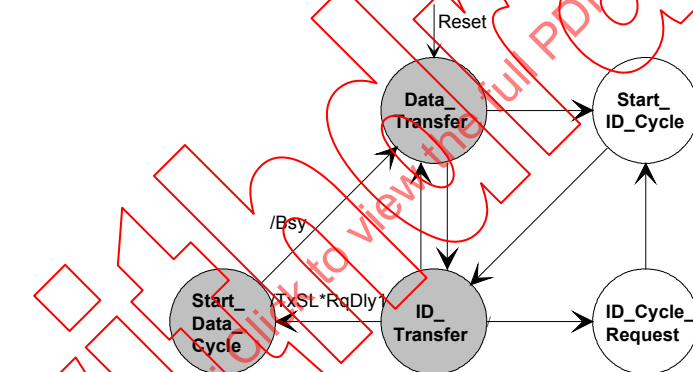


Figure 23 – State transitions with the data cycle request service

NOTE 1 Transitions not shown in Figure 23 are used for other services see Figure 20 and Figure 25 for the states and transitions.

The data cycle was preceded by an identification cycle:

ID_Transfer state:

The MIS initiates a data cycle request service by changing the TxSL signal from logical 1 to logical 0 and at the same time the RqDly1 signal from logical 0 to logical 1.

Start_Data_Cycle state:

After that, the MDS transmits the corresponding status PhPDU, starts a timer with the duration t_1 and sets the BSY signal from logical 0 to logical 1. The MIS resets the RqDly1 signal to logical 0.

After the time t_1 has elapsed, the MDS sets the BSY signal to logical 0 and terminates the data cycle request service. The MIS communicates this to the DLL by means of a PH-DATA confirm primitive and assumes the Data_Transfer state.

Figure 24 shows the corresponding signal forms at the MIS-MDS interface for a data cycle request service after a preceding identification cycle.

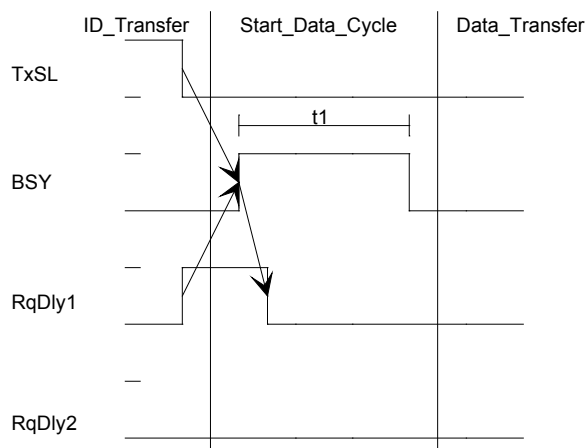


Figure 24 – MIS-MDS interface: data cycle request service

The data cycle was preceded by a data cycle:

If the DLL requests the beginning of a data cycle with a PH-DATA request primitive (PhICl=start_data_cycle), and the DLL did not request the beginning of an identification cycle by means of an PH-DATA request primitive (PhICl=start_ID_cycle) before, the MIS communicates to the DLL the end of the data cycle request service with a PH-DATA confirm primitive. The status of the signals TxSL, RqDly1 and RqDly2 remains unchanged.

NOTE 2 The data cycle request service is an asynchronous service and is not related to TxC.

8.4.4.4 Data sequence classification service

Figure 25 describes this service with the two states marked in grey and their transitions.

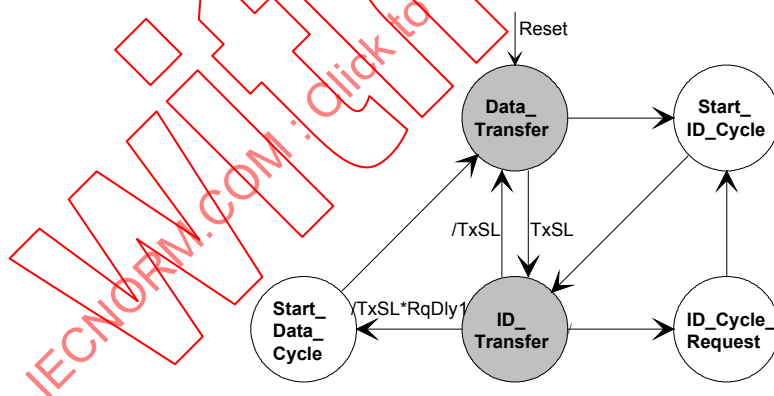


Figure 25 – State transitions with the data sequence classification service

NOTE 1 Transitions not shown in Figure 25 are used for other services see Figure 20 and Figure 23 for the states and transitions.

Data_Transfer state:

The MIS initiates an identification cycle (transmission of identification and control data in the PhpDU) by changing the TxSL signal from logical 0 to logical 1.

ID_Transfer state

The MIS initiates a data cycle (transmission of user data in PhpDU) by changing the signal from logical 1 to logical 0.

NOTE 2 The data sequence classification service is an asynchronous service and is not related to TxC.

8.4.4.5 Message transmission service

Figure 26 describes this service with the six states and their transitions.

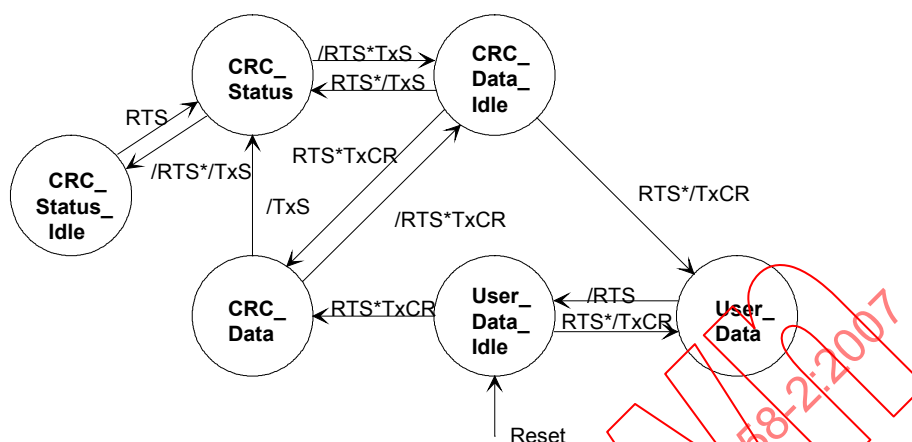


Figure 26 – Protocol machine for the message transmission service

NOTE 1 A data bit sequence is transmitted in multiples of octets. After the MIS has set its RTS interface signal from logical 1 to logical 0, it waits for a falling edge of the active low CTS signal from the MDS. The MIS communicates this to the DLL by means of a PH-DATA confirm primitive (mandatory for the master only).

CRC_Data_Idle state:

The MIS initiates a message transmission service by setting the RTS signal to logical 1 during the rising edge of TxC, at the same time setting the TxCR signal to logical 0, and transmitting with the TxD signal the first data bit within an octet to the MDS.

NOTE 2 Instead of initiating a message transmission service the MIS can start to transmit the checksum status by setting the RTS signal to logical 1 during the following rising edge of TxC, at the same time setting the TxS signal to logical 0 and transmitting the first bit of the checksum status with the TxD signal to the MDS.

User_Data state:

The MIS shall continue data transmission by transmitting the next data bit within an octet with the TxD signal to the MDS during each rising edge of TxC. The MIS completes the data transmission by setting the RTS signal to logical 0 after the last bit has been transmitted and before the next falling edge of TxC.

NOTE 3 The MIS continues data transmission by setting the RTS signal to logical 1 during the rising edge of TxC and at the same time transmitting with the TxD signal the first bit within an octet to the MDS.

User_Data_Idle state:

The MIS starts the check sequence by setting the RTS signal to logical 1 during the rising edge of TxC, at the same time setting the TxCR signal to logical 1, and transmitting the first bit of the checksum (CRC data) with the TxD signal to the MDS.

NOTE 4 Instead of the check sequence the MIS can initiate a new message transmission service by setting the RTS signal to logical 1 during the rising edge of TxC, and at the same time transmitting with the TxD signal the first data bit to the MDS. This is equivalent to a continuation of the message transmission service.

CRC_Data state:

The MIS shall continue to transmit the checksum data by transmitting the next data bit within an octet with the TxD signal to the MDS during each rising edge of TxC.

After the transmission of checksum data has been completed, the MIS starts the transmission of the checksum status (CRC status) by transmitting the TxS signal to logical 0 during the rising edge of TxC and at the same time transmitting with the TxD signal the first bit of the checksum status to the MDS.

NOTE 5 The MIS continues the transmission of the checksum by setting the RTS signal to logical 1 before the falling edge of TxC and at the same time transmitting with the TxD signal the first bit of the next octet of the checksum to the MDS.

NOTE 6 The MIS starts with the transmission of the checksum status by setting the RTS signal to logical 1 during the rising edge of TxC, at the same time setting the TxS signal to logical 0, and transmitting the first bit of the checksum status to the MDS.

CRC_Status state:

The MIS shall continue checksum status transmission by transmitting the next bit within an octet with the TxD signal to the MDS during each rising edge of TxC. The MIS terminates the transmission of the checksum status by setting the RTS signal to logical 0 and the TxS signal to logical 1 before the falling edge of TxC and after the last bit of the octet to be transmitted.

CRC_Status_Idle state:

The MIS continues the transmission of the checksum status by setting the RTS signal to logical 1 during the rising edge of TxC, and at the same time transmitting with the TxD signal the first bit of the next octet to the MDS.

8.4.4.6 Data sequence identification service

Figure 27 describes this service with the two states and their transitions.

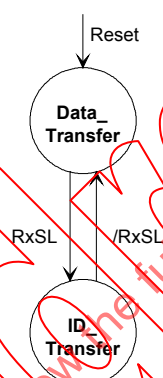


Figure 27 – Protocol machine for the data sequence identification service

Data_Transfer state:

The beginning of an identification cycle (transmission of identification data or control data in the received PhPDU) is indicated to the MIS by a change of the RxSL signal from logical 1 to logical 0.

ID_Transfer state:

The beginning of a data cycle (transmission of user data in the received PhPDU) is indicated to the MIS by a change of the RxSL signal from logical 1 to logical 0.

NOTE The data sequence identification service is an asynchronous service and not related to RxC.

8.4.4.7 Message receipt service

Figure 28 describes this service with the six states and their transitions.

NOTE 1 Data is received in multiples of octets.

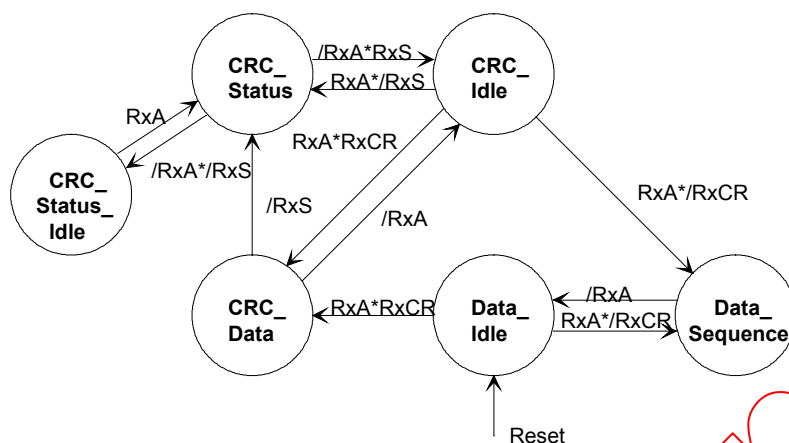


Figure 28 – Protocol machine for the message receipt service

CRC Idle state:

If the MDS recognises the beginning of a data sequence PhPDU, it initiates the message receipt service by adapting the time pulses transmitted with the RxCR signal to the received ones and at the same time during the rising edge of the RxCR signal setting the RxA signal to logical 1, the RxCR signal to logical 0, as well as transmitting the first decoded data bit of an octet with the RxD signal to the MIS.

NOTE 2 If the MDS recognises the beginning of a checksum status in a check sequence PhPDU instead of the beginning of a data sequence PhPDU, it sets the RxA signal to logical 1, at the same time the RxS signal to logical 0, and transmits the first decoded bit with the RxD signal to the MIS.

NOTE 3 As long as the MDS recognises the CRC_Idle state it shall retain the RxA signal at logical 0 and the RxCR signal at logical 1.

Data Sequence state:

The MDS shall continue to transmit the received and decoded data with the Rx_D signal to the MIS, and at the same time adapt the transmitted time pulses to the received ones with the Rx_C signal. If the MDS recognises the Data_Idle state after it has received the last data bit within an octet, it shall set the Rx_A signal to logical 0 during the falling edge of Rx_C.

Data_Idle state:

As long as the MDS recognises the Data_Idle state, it shall retain the RxA signal at logical 0 and the RxCR signal at logical 0.

If the MDS recognises the beginning of a check sequence PhPDU, it adapts the time pulses transmitted with the RxC signal to the received ones, sets the RxA signal to logical 1 during the rising edge of RxC, at the same time sets the RxCR signal to logical 1 and transmits with the RxD signal the decoded first received bit of the checksum (CRC data) to the MIS.

If the MDS recognises the first bit within an octet of a data sequence PhPDU instead of the beginning of a check sequence, it continues to receive the data sequence by adapting the transmitted time pulses to the received ones with the RxC signal and at the same time setting the RxA signal to logical 1 during the rising edge of RxC and transmitting the received and decoded data bit with the RxD signal to the MIS.

CRC Data state:

The MDS shall continue to transmit the received and decoded checksum data with the RxD signal to the MIS and to adapt with the RxC signal the transmitted time pulses to the received ones.

If the MDS recognises the first bit of the checksum status after it has received the checksum data completely, it shall adapt the time pulses transmitted with the RxC signal, set the RxS

signal during the rising edge of RxC to logical 0, and at the same time transmit the received and decoded bit of the checksum status with the RxD signal to the MIS.

NOTE 4 If the MDS recognises the CRC_Idle state after it has received the last bit within an octet it shall set the RxA signal to logical 0 during the falling edge of RxC.

NOTE 5 If the MDS recognises the first bit within an octet of the checksum data, it shall continue to receive the checksum data by adapting the time transmitted pulses to the received ones with the RxC signal, setting the RxA signal during the rising edge of RxC to logical 1 and at the same time transmitting with the RxD signal the received and decoded checksum bit to the MIS.

CRC_Status state:

The MDS shall continue to transmit the received and decoded checksum status with the RxD signal to the MIS and, at the same time adapt the transmitted time pulses to the received ones with the RxC signal. After it has completely received the checksum status, the MDS sets the RxA signal to logical 0 during the falling edge of RxC and at the same time sets the RxD signal to logical 1.

NOTE 6 If the MDS recognises the CRC_Idle state after it has received the last bit within an octet it shall set the RxA signal to logical 0 during the falling edge of RxC.

CRC_Status_Idle state:

If the MDS recognises the first bit within an octet of the checksum data, it shall continue to receive the checksum status by adapting the time pulses transmitted with the RxC signal to the received ones, setting the RxA signal during the rising edge of RxC to logical 1 and at the same time transmitting with the RxD signal the received and decoded bit of the checksum status to the MIS.

8.4.4.8 Reset service

This service is sent from the MIS to the MDS by setting the RO signal. The receipt of a reset is passed from the MDS to the MIS with the RI signal. Value ranges: short, long

8.5 Type 12: DTE – DCE interface

The DTE – DCE interface is not exposed for Type 12 transmission.

9 Medium dependent sublayer (MDS)

9.1 General

The medium dependent sublayer (MDS) is part of the data communication equipment (DCE). (See Figure 1.) It exchanges information across the DTE – DCE interface specified in clause 8 and it communicates encoded Ph-symbols across the MDS – MAU interface specified in clause 10. The MDS functions are logical encoding and decoding for transmission and reception respectively and the addition/removal of preamble and delimiters together with timing and synchronization functions.

NOTE A number of different MDS sublayer entities are specified, based on industry practice.

9.2 Type 1: MDS: Wire and optical media

9.2.1 PhPDU

The MDS shall produce the PhPDU shown in Figure 29 by adding preamble and delimiters to frame the serial sequence of PhSDUs (bits) transferred from the DIS across the DTE – DCE interface. Transmission sequence shall be from left to right as shown in Figure 29, i.e. preamble first, followed by start delimiter, PhSDU sequence and finally end delimiter.

PREAMBLE	START DELIMITER	PhSDU SEQUENCE	END DELIMITER

Figure 29 – Protocol data unit (PhPDU)

Conversely, the MDS shall remove preamble and delimiters from a received PhPDU to produce a corresponding serial sequence of PhSDUs. If a non-binary data unit is detected in the received PhSDU sequence, the MDS shall immediately stop transferring PhSDUs to the DIS, the MDS shall report an error, and the MDS shall indicate the end of activity to the DIS when it happens.

9.2.2 Encoding and decoding

Data units shall be encoded by the MDS for application to the MAU using the code shown in Figure 30 (Manchester Biphase L). The encoding rules are formally given in Figure 31 and Table 30.

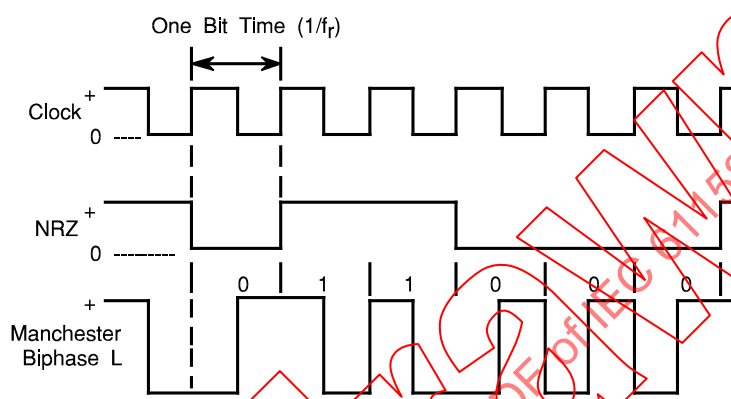


Figure 30 – PhSDU encoding and decoding

NOTE Figure 30 is included for explanatory purposes and does not imply a specific implementation.

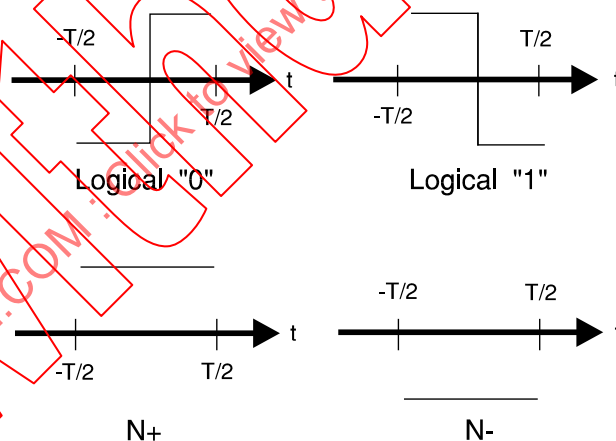


Figure 31 – Manchester encoding rules

IEC 1456/2000

Table 30 – Manchester encoding rules

Symbols	Encoding
1 (ONE)	Hi–Lo transition (mid-bit)
0 (ZERO)	Lo–Hi transition (mid-bit)
N+ (NON-DATA PLUS)	Hi (No transition)
N– (NON-DATA MINUS)	Lo (No transition)

NOTE It may be seen that data symbols (1 and 0, conveyed by PhSDUs) are encoded to always contain a mid-bit transition. Non-data symbols (N+ and N–) are encoded so that they never have a mid-bit transition. Frame delimiters (see 9.2.4 and 9.2.5) are constructed so that non-data symbols are conveyed in pairs of opposite polarity.

Decoding shall normally be the opposite of encoding. At reception, the MDS shall verify that each symbol is encoded in accordance with Figure 31 and Table 30 and shall detect the following errors:

- a) invalid Manchester code;
- b) half-bit-slip errors.

Any of these errors shall be reported as PH-DATA indication (PhIDU, error).

9.2.3 Polarity detection

The option of automatic polarity detection of the received Manchester encoded signal shall be required where it is specified in the relevant MAU.

9.2.4 Start of frame delimiter

The following sequence of symbols, shown from left to right in order of transmission, shall immediately precede the PhSDU sequence to delimit the start of a frame:

1, N+, N–, 1, 0, N–, N+, 0.

(shown as a waveform in Figure 32)

The MDS shall only accept a received signal burst as a PhPDU after verifying this sequence and shall remove this sequence before transferring the PhSDU sequence to the DIS.

9.2.5 End of frame delimiter

The following sequence of symbols, shown from left to right in order of transmission, shall immediately follow the PhSDU sequence to delimit the end of a frame:

1, N+, N–, N+, N–, 1, 0, 1.

(shown as a waveform in Figure 32)

The MDS shall remove this sequence from the PhPDU before transferring the PhSDU sequence to the DIS. The MDS shall report to the corresponding DLL entity any frames received via the medium which do not include this sequence within 300 octets of start of frame (from beginning of start delimiter) as PH-DATA indication (PhIDU, frame_too_long). The MDS shall report to the corresponding DLL entity, via the corresponding DIS, any frames received via the medium that have an end delimiter which is not located at an octet boundary as PH-DATA indication (PhIDU, received_timing_error).

9.2.6 Preamble

In order to synchronize bit times a preamble shall be transmitted at the beginning of each PhPDU consisting of the following sequence of bits, shown from left to right in order of transmission:

1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0.

(shown as a waveform in Figure 32)

NOTE 1 Received preamble can contain as few as four bits due to loss of one bit through each of four repeaters (as specified in the MAU Network Configuration Rules).

The period may be extended, but not reduced, by Systems management as given in Table 4. A preamble extension sequence as listed in Table 4 shall be defined as the following sequence of bits, shown from left to right in order of transmission:

1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0.

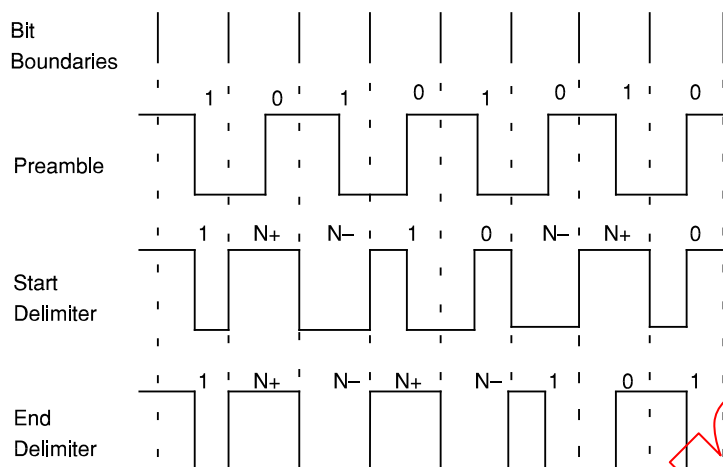


Figure 32 – Preamble and delimiters

NOTE 2 These waveforms do not extend the frequency range outside the band required for transmission of binary PhSDUs (conveying data symbols) in accordance with Figure 31 and Table 30.

9.2.7 Synchronization

After the reception of the fourth bit of the frame and until end of frame or frame termination the receiver shall detect and report half-bit-slip errors.

NOTE 1 This synchronization specification allows the loss of 4 bits of the preamble.

After the preamble, half-bit-slip errors shall be reported as PH-DATA indication (PhIDU, error).

NOTE 2 Half-bit-slip errors can be detected as excessive bit cell jitter and/or excessive variation in bit period.

9.2.8 Post-transmission gap

After transmission of a PhPDU there shall be a minimum period during which a subsequent transmission shall not commence. For the same minimum period after reception of a PhPDU the receiving PhL entity shall ignore all received signaling. An MDS entity shall set a minimum post transmission period of four nominal bit times. The period may be extended, but not reduced, by Systems management as given in Table 4 or by an associated MAU entity. A gap extension sequence as listed in Table 4 shall be defined as four nominal bit times.

NOTE The MAU transmit enable/disable time may reduce the duration of silence between frames.

9.2.9 Inter-channel signal skew

If the device is configured (by Systems management) to receive concurrently on more than one channel, then the maximum accepted differential delay between any two active channels, as measured from the first PhPDU of a start delimiter, shall not exceed five nominal bit times. This period may be extended, but not reduced, by Systems management as given in Table 4. A gap extension sequence as listed in Table 4 shall be defined as four nominal bit times. The value of post-transmission gap shall be greater than the value of inter-channel skew.

9.3 Type 1: MDS: Radio media

NOTE This subclause is a placeholder in this edition to minimize the disruption to existing national and multi-national standards and consortia documents that reference the subclause numbering of the prior edition. The internal structure and method of operation of a Type 1 radio DCE is not specified by this standard.

9.4 Type 2: MDS: Wire and optical media

NOTE The Medium Dependent Sublayer (MDS) is part of the Data Communication Equipment (DCE). It communicates encoded bits across the MDS - MAU interface specified in 10.3.

9.4.1 Clock accuracy

The timing specifications for PhL Signaling shall be as defined in Table 31.

Table 31 – MDS timing characteristics

Specification	Limits / characteristics	Comments
Bit Rate	5 Mbit/s $\pm$ CA	Also called M-symbol rate, data 'zero' or 'one'
Bit Time	200 ns $\pm$ CA	Also called M-symbol time, data 'zero' or 'one'
PhL symbol time	100 ns $\pm$ CA	Also called Ph-symbol time, see data encoding rules
Clock Accuracy (CA)	$\pm$ 150 ppm max.	Including temperature, long term and short term stability

9.4.2 Data recovery

The signals at the DLL to PhL interface shall be synchronized to the local bit rate as shown in Table 31. Each PhL implementation shall provide a data recovery mechanism that recovers or reconstructs the data received from the appropriate medium to meet the timing requirements shown in Table 31. When data synchronization has been attained by the MDS, PH-LOCK indication shall be true.

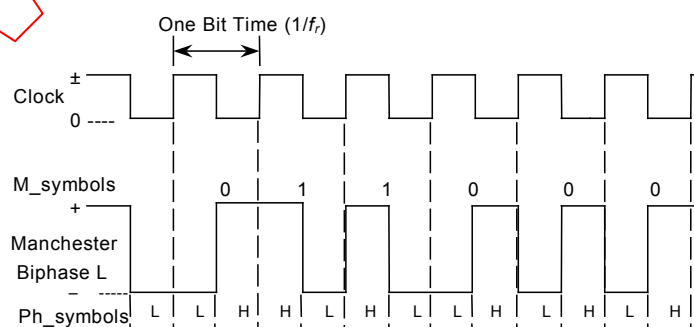
A portion of the received data frame may be lost or discarded in the process of attaining data synchronization. The specification for data timing shown in Table 31 shall be achieved prior to the beginning of the start delimiter (see IEC 61158-4-2).

9.4.3 Data encoding rules

The M_symbols present at the DLL to PhL interface shall be encoded into the appropriate Ph-symbols as shown in Table 32 and Figure 33. The M_0 and M_1 symbols shall be encoded into Ph-symbols that represent Manchester Biphase L data encoding rules as shown in Table 32. The M_ND symbols shall be used to create unique data patterns used for start and end delimiters. The signal voltage waveform (from the MAU) is shown in an idealized form in Figure 33 to provide an example of the data encoding rules shown in Table 32.

Table 32 – MDS data encoding rules

Data bits (common name)	M_symbol representation	Ph-symbol encoding	Manchester encoded
data 'zero'	M_0 or {0}	{L,H}	0
data 'one'	M_1 or {1}	{H,L}	1
'non_data+'	M_ND+ or {+}	{H,H}	no data
'non_data-'	M_ND- or {-}	{L,L}	no data

**Figure 33 – Manchester coded symbols**

9.5 Type 3: MDS: Wire and optical media

9.5.1 Synchronous transmission

The Medium Dependent Sublayer (MDS) specified for Type 1 shall be used (see 9.2).

9.5.2 Asynchronous transmission

There is no Medium Dependent Sublayer (MDS) for asynchronous transmission.

9.6 Type 4: MDS: Wire medium

9.6.1 Half-duplex

9.6.1.1 Overview

NOTE 1 The PhL entity is partitioned into a Data Terminal Equipment (DTE) component containing the MDS, and a Data Communication Equipment (DCE) component containing the MAU.

NOTE 2 The functionality of the MDS is similar to the functionality of what is commonly known as a UART. In addition the half duplex MDS has some timing functionality. The functionality of the MAU is similar to the functionality of what is commonly known as a driver circuitry.

The half-duplex MDS shall sequence the transmission of the PhID as a sequence of bits. Similarly, the MDS shall form the PhID to be reported to the DLL from the sequence of received bits. Bits are sent and received in NRZ code (non-return-to-zero).

The PhID shall be converted to a sequence of bits for serial transmission in PhPDUs. Within each PhPDU, a bit representing a more significant bit shall be transmitted before a bit representing a less significant bit. On reception, each sequence of bits shall be converted to PhID such that, in the absence of errors, the PhID indicated to the receiving DLL entity is unchanged from the PhID whose transmission was requested by the originating DLL entity.

The MDS receives a single PhID or a sequence of PhID octets from the DLE. The first octet is received from the DLE by one of the services **START-OF-ACTIVITY-11** or **START-OF-ACTIVITY-2**. The remaining octets are received from the DLE by the service **DATA**. End of transmission is indicated by the service **END-OF-ACTIVITY**. From each PhID octet the MDS shall form a PhPDU and transmit the formed PhPDU as a sequence of bits to the MAU. Each PhPDU shall consist of 1 start bit, 8 data bit, 1 address/data bit, and finally 1 stop-bit. This is indicated in Figure 34.

Start	Data8 ... Data1	Address/data	Stop
0	X...X	1 for first octet, 0 for remaining	1

Figure 34 – PhPDU format, half duplex

The MDS shall report when the signal level on the attached medium has been idle for 30, 35 and 40 or more bit periods, by **LINK-IDLE** indications to the DLE.

The transmitted bit rate shall be that of the selected baud rate, $\pm 0,2$ %.

9.6.1.2 Transmission

9.6.1.2.1 START-OF-ACTIVITY-11

The following shall be performed as a result of the DLE issuing a **START-OF-ACTIVITY-11** PH-DATA request:

- wait for Idle counter equal to or higher than 11;
- form first PhPDU with Address/data bit = "1" and data = data parameter of **START-OF-ACTIVITY-11** request;
- confirm reception to DLE to enable the DLE to issue the next transmission request;
- activate Transmit Enable (TxE);
- start transmitting the PhPDU to the MAU.

9.6.1.2.2 START-OF-ACTIVITY-2

The following shall be performed as a result of the DLE issuing a **START-OF-ACTIVITY-2** PH-DATA request:

- a) wait for Idle counter modulus 10 equal to or higher than 2;
- b) form first PhPDU with Address/data bit = “1” and data = data parameter of **START-OF-ACTIVITY-2** request;
- c) confirm reception to DLE to enable the DLE to issue the next transmission request;
- d) activate Transmit Enable (TxE);
- e) start transmitting the PhPDU to the MAU.

9.6.1.2.3 DATA

The following shall be performed as a result of the DLE issuing a **DATA** PH-DATA request:

- a) wait till transmission of former PhPDUs has finished;
- b) form a new PhPDU with Address/data bit = “0” and data = data parameter of **DATA** request;
- c) confirm reception to DLE to enable the DLE to issue the next transmission request;
- d) start transmitting the PhPDU to the MAU.

It shall be ensured, that there are no idle periods between transmissions of PhPDUs. The DLE should issue the next transmission request within 11 bit periods after confirmation of the former.

9.6.1.2.4 END-OF-ACTIVITY

The following shall be performed as a result of the DLE issuing an **END-OF-ACTIVITY** PH-DATA request:

- a) wait till transmission of former PhPDU has finished;
- b) wait for minimum 3, maximum 10 bit periods;
- c) deactivate Transmit Enable (TxE).

9.6.1.3 Reception

9.6.1.3.1 START-OF-ACTIVITY

As a result of receiving a frame from the MAU with address/data bit = “1”, or receiving a frame when the value of the Idle counter is higher than or equal to 11, the MDS shall issue a PH-DATA indication of class **START-OF-ACTIVITY**. The associated data parameter shall hold the received data. The value of the associated status parameter shall be set according to the following:

- a) receiving a frame with address/data bit = “1” and stop bit = “1”, when the value of the Idle counter is higher than or equal to 11 shall result in an associated status parameter indicating **SUCCESS**;
- b) receiving a frame with stop bit = “0”, shall result in an associated status parameter indicating **FRAMING_ERROR**;
- c) receiving a frame with address/data bit = “1”, but when the value of the Idle counter is lower than 11 shall result in an associated status parameter indicating **IDLE_ERROR**;
- d) receiving a frame with address/data bit = “0”, but when the value of the Idle counter is higher than or equal to 11 shall result in an associated status parameter indicating **ADDRESS_DATA_ERROR**.

9.6.1.3.2 DATA

As a result of receiving a frame from the MAU with address/data bit = “0”, when the value of the Idle counter is lower than 11, the MDS shall issue a PH-DATA indication of class **DATA**. The

associated data parameter shall hold the received data. The value of the associated status parameter shall be set according to the following:

- a) receiving a frame with stop bit = “1” from the MAU shall result in an associated status parameter indicating SUCCESS;
- b) receiving a frame with stop bit = “0”, shall result in an associated status parameter indicating FRAMING_ERROR.

9.6.1.4 Idle counter

The MDS holds an idle counter. This counter is incremented by one for each bit period, and is cleared each time a bit with value “0” is sent to or received from the MAU. When the Idle counter reaches 30, the MDS shall report this with a PH-DATA indication of class LINK-IDLE, and associated status indicating 30 bit periods. 5 bit periods later, if the Link is still idle, the PhE reports this with another PH-DATA indication of class LINK-IDLE, and associated status indicating 35 bit periods. 5 bit periods later, if the Link is still idle, the PhE reports this with another PH-DATA indication of class LINK-IDLE, and associated status indicating 40 or more bit periods. This goes on for each 10 bit periods with indications specifying 40 or more bit periods. The speed of the idle counter shall be that of the selected baud rate, $\pm 0.2\%$.

9.6.2 Full-duplex

9.6.2.1 Overview

NOTE 1 The PhL entity is partitioned into a Data Terminal Equipment (DTE) component containing the MDS, and a Data Communication Equipment (DCE) component containing the MAU.

NOTE 2 The functionality of the MDS is similar to the functionality of what is commonly known as a UART. In addition the full duplex MDS has some “byte stuffing” functionality. The functionality of the MAU is similar to the functionality of what is commonly known as a driver circuitry.

The full duplex MDS shall sequence the transmission of the PhID as a sequence of bits. Similarly, the MDS shall form the PhID to be reported to the DLL from the sequence of received bits. Bits are sent and received in NRZ code (non-return-to-zero).

The PhID shall be converted to a sequence of bits for serial transmission in PhPDUs. Within each PhPDU, a bit representing a more significant bit shall be transmitted before a bit representing a less significant bit. On reception, each sequence of bits shall be converted to PhID such that, in the absence of errors, the PhID indicated to the receiving DLL entity is unchanged from the PhID whose transmission was requested by the originating DLL entity.

The MDS receives a single PhID or a sequence of PhID octets from the DLE. The first octet is received from the DLE by the service **START-OF-ACTIVITY-2**. The remaining octets are received from the DLE by the service **DATA**. End of transmission is indicated by the service **END-OF-ACTIVITY**. From each PhID octet the MDS shall form a PhPDU and transmit the formed PhPDU as a sequence of bits to the MAU. Each PhPDU shall consist of 1 start bit, 8 data bit, and finally 1 stop-bit. This is indicated in Figure 35.

Start	Data8 ... Data1	Stop
0	X....X	1

Figure 35 – PhPDU format, full duplex

9.6.2.2 Transmission

9.6.2.2.1 START-OF-ACTIVITY-2

The following shall be performed as a result of the DLE issuing a **START-OF-ACTIVITY-2** PH-DATA request:

- a) form first PhPDU with data = \$D7 (hex);
- b) form second PhPDU with data = data parameter of **START-OF-ACTIVITY-2** request;

- c) confirm reception to DLE to enable the DLE to issue the next transmission request;
- d) activate request-to-send signal (RTS);
- e) wait for clear-to-send signal (CTS) to be activated;
- f) start transmitting the formed PhPDUs to the MAU.

9.6.2.2.2 DATA

The following shall be performed as a result of the DLE issuing a **DATA** PH-DATA request:

- a) wait till transmission of former PhPDUs is finished;
- b) wait for clear-to-send signal (CTS) to be active;
- c) form new PhPDU(s) with data according to the following:
 - d) if the value of data parameter of **DATA** request = \$D7 (hex), form a PhPDU with the data value \$D9 (hex), followed by an additional PhPDU with the data value \$00;
 - e) if the value of data parameter of **DATA** request = \$D9 (hex), form a PhPDU with the data value \$D9 (hex), followed by an additional PhPDU with the data value \$01;
 - f) if the value of data parameter of **DATA** request is different from \$D7 (hex) and \$D9 (hex), form a PhPDU with the data value = data parameter of **DATA** request;
- g) confirm reception to DLE to enable the DLE to issue the next transmission service;
- h) start transmitting the PhPDU(s) to the MAU.

9.6.2.2.3 END-OF-ACTIVITY

The following shall be performed as a result of the DLE issuing an **END-OF-ACTIVITY** PH-DATA request:

- a) wait till transmission of former PhPDUs has finished;
- b) deactivate request-to-send (RTS) signal.

9.6.2.3 Reception

9.6.2.3.1 START-OF-ACTIVITY

As a result of receiving a PhPDU from the MAU with a data value of \$D7 (hex), the MDS shall wait for the following PhPDU, and when this PhPDU is received issue a PH-DATA indication of class **START-OF-ACTIVITY**. The associated data parameter shall hold the received data from the PhPDU following \$D7 (hex). The value of the associated status parameter shall be set according to the following:

- a) receiving a PhPDU with stop bit = "1" shall result in an associated status parameter indicating **SUCCESS**;
- b) receiving a PhPDU with stop bit = "0", shall result in an associated status parameter indicating **FRAMING_ERROR**.

9.6.2.3.2 DATA

Receiving a PhPDU from the MAU with a data value different from \$D7 (hex) shall result in the following:

receiving a PhPDU with stop bit = "1" and a data value = \$D9 (hex), shall result in the MDS waiting for the following PhPDU from the MAU. The result of receiving the following PhPDU shall be:

- a) if the data value of the following PhPDU is \$00 (hex), and the stop bit is = "1", issue a PH-DATA indication of class **DATA**. The associated data parameter shall hold the value \$D7. The value of the associated status parameter shall indicate **SUCCESS**.

- b) if the data value of the following PhPDU is \$01 (hex), and the stop bit is = “1”, issue a PH-DATA indication of class **DATA**. The associated data parameter shall hold the value \$D9. The value of the associated status parameter shall indicate **SUCCESS**.
- c) if the data value of the following PhPDU is different from \$00 (hex) and from \$01 (hex), and the stop bit is = “1”, issue a PH-DATA indication of class **DATA**. The associated data parameter shall hold the received data value. The value of the associated status parameter shall indicate **BYTE_STUFFING_ERROR**.
- d) if the stop bit is “0”, issue a PH-DATA indication of class **DATA**. The associated data parameter shall hold the received value. The value of the associated status parameter shall indicate **FRAMING_ERROR**.
- e) receiving a PhPDU with stop bit = “1” and a data value different from \$D9 (hex), shall result in the MDS issuing a PH-DATA indication of class **DATA**. The associated data parameter shall hold the received value. The value of the associated status parameter shall indicate **SUCCESS**;
- f) receiving a PhPDU with stop bit = “0” shall result in the MIS issuing a PH-DATA indication of class **DATA**. The associated data parameter shall hold the received value. The value of the associated status parameter shall indicate **FRAMING_ERROR**.

9.6.3 Full-duplex UDP

9.6.3.1 Overview

The PhID shall be sent in accordance with ISO/IEC 8802-3.

The MDS receives a single PhID or a sequence of PhID octets from the DLE. The first octet is received from the DLE by the service **START-OF-ACTIVITY-2**. The remaining octets are received from the DLE by the service **DATA**. End of transmission is indicated by the service **END-OF-ACTIVITY**.

9.6.3.2 Transmission

9.6.3.2.1 START-OF-ACTIVITY-2

The following shall be performed as a result of the DLE issuing a **START-OF-ACTIVITY-2** PH-DATA request:

- a) reserve MAC sublayer packet;
- b) form PhPDU with data = data parameter of **START-OF-ACTIVITY-2** request;
- c) insert the formed PhPDU at the first location in the reserved packet;
- d) confirm reception to DLE to enable the DLE to issue the next transmission request;

The following shall be performed as a result of the DLE issuing a **DATA** PH-DATA request:

- a) form PhPDU with data = data parameter of the **DATA** request;
- b) insert the formed PhPDU at the next location in the reserved packet;
- c) confirm reception to DLE to enable the DLE to issue the next transmission service;

9.6.3.2.2 END-OF-ACTIVITY

The following shall be performed as a result of the DLE issuing an **END-OF-ACTIVITY** PH-DATA request:

- a) transfer the reserved packet to the MAC sublayer.

9.6.3.3 Reception

9.6.3.3.1 START-OF-ACTIVITY

As a result of receiving a packet from the MAC sublayer, issue a PH-DATA indication of class **START-OF-ACTIVITY**. The associated data parameter shall hold the first octet of the received packet. The value of the associated status parameter shall be set to SUCCESS.

9.6.3.3.2 DATA

The following data in the received packet shall result in the MDS issuing PH-DATA indications of class **DATA**. The associated data parameters shall hold the received values. The value of the associated status parameters shall indicate SUCCESS.

9.7 Type 6: *This subclause has been removed*

NOTE This subclause is a placeholder in this edition to minimize the disruption to existing national and multi-national standards and consortia documents that reference the subclause numbering of the prior edition.

9.8 Type 8: MDS: Wire and optical media

9.8.1 Function

The medium-dependent sublayer (MDS) exchanges PhSDU sequences via the MIS-MDS interface, as described in 6.5, and transmits the PhPDU via the MDS-MAU interface as described in Clause 9. The MDS encodes and decodes the PhSDU, adds and removes the transmission frame (header and stop bit) for the PhSDU subsequences to be transmitted and received, synchronises the MIS-MDS interface and the MDS-MAU interface and the PhPDUs, time functions, and directly transmits a PhPDU between MAUs via the MDS-MAU interface (MAU coupling).

The MDS may consist of several channels. The PhPDU shall generate one channel of the MDS corresponding to the PhSDU sequences transmitted via the MIS-MDS interface and encode the PhSDU sequence accordingly. Conversely, this channel shall recognise the format of the received PhPDU and transmit the decoded PhSDU sequence via the MIS-MDS interface to the MIS. All other channels are used to directly transfer a PhPDU between two MAUs.

The channel of the MDS of a slave, which has an interface to the MIS shall have the following relation between the send and receive direction: If the MIS-MDS interface signal RTS is 0, the contents of DI is transmitted on the MDS-MAU interface signal DO with a delay time of exactly one bit time. If RTS is 1, DO is coupled to TxD (only applicable when there is no MDS coupling).

In the MDS of a master it is possible that a sequence of 8 PhSDUs is first buffered and then a corresponding data sequence or check sequence PhPDU is generated.

9.8.2 PhPDU formats

The MDS can recognise and generate the following PhPDU formats: **data sequence PhPDU**, **check sequence PhPDU**, **status PhPDU** and **reset PhPDU**.

9.8.2.1 Data sequence PhPDU

The MDS generates data sequence PhPDU by adding a start bit, header, and stop bit to the data unit. The data unit itself consists of eight PhSDUs that, as a PhSDU sequence, have been transmitted as a part of the data sequence DLPDU via the MIS-MDS interface with the message transmission service. Figure 36 shows the structure of the data sequence PhPDU.

**Figure 36 – Data sequence PhPDU**

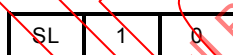
The data sequence PhPDU thus generated is transmitted from left to right via the MDS-MAU interface in the following order: start bit, header, data unit, stop bit. The PhSDUs of the data unit are transmitted via the MDS-MAU interface in the order in which they have been transmitted through the MIS-MDS interface.

According to Figure 36, a data sequence PhPDU is received from left to right and in the order: start bit, header, data unit, stop bit. The MDS removes start bit, stop bit and header and transmits the PhSDU sequence contained in the data unit with the message receipt service as a part of a data sequence DLPDU through the MIS-MDS interface to the MIS. The transmission begins with the first PhSDU that follows the header and ends with the last PhSDU before the stop bit.

NOTE 1 Each data sequence PhPDU begins with a start bit and ends with a stop bit.

NOTE 2 A data sequence DLPDU is transmitted by a sequence of data sequence PhPDUs.

The header in a data sequence PhPDU is structured as shown in Figure 37.

**Figure 37 – Structure of the header in a data sequence PhPDU**

The header of the data sequence PhPDU is transmitted and received from left to right via the MDS-MAU interface, beginning with the SL bit.

For a data sequence PhPDU to be sent, the logical symbol which is transferred in the SL bit is equivalent to the negated logical state of the TxSL signal of the MIS-MDS interface at the time at which the data sequence PhPDU is to be transmitted via the MDS-MAU interface to the MAU (see Table 33):

Table 33 – SL bit and TxSL signal assignment

TxSL signal	SL bit
Logical 1	0
Logical 0	1

For a received data sequence PhPDU the logical state of the RxSL signal of the MIS-MDS interface is equivalent to the negated logical symbol that is transmitted in the SL bit (see Table 34).

Table 34 – SL bit and RxSL signal assignment

SL bit	RxSL signal
0	Logical 1
1	Logical 0

9.8.2.2 Check sequence PhPDU

The MDS generates the check sequence PhPDU by adding a start bit, header and stop bit to the data unit. The data unit itself consists of eight PhSDUs that have been transmitted as a PhSDU sequence with a message transmission service as a part of a check sequence DLPDU via the MIS-MDS interface. Figure 38 shows the structure of the check sequence PhPDU.

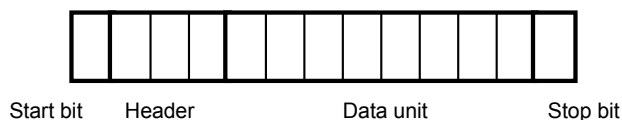


Figure 38 – Check sequence PhPDU

A check sequence PhPDU thus generated is transmitted from left to right via the MDS-MAU interface in the following order: start bit, header, data unit, stop bit. The PhSDUs of the data unit are transmitted via the MDS-MAU interface in the order in which they have been transmitted through the MIS-MDS interface.

A check sequence PhPDU is received, according to Figure 38, from left to right and in the order: start bit, header, data unit, stop bit. The MDS removes start bit, stop bit and header and transmits the PhSDU sequence contained in the data unit with the message receipt service as a part of a check sequence DLPDU via the MIS-MDS interface to the MIS. The transmission starts with the first PhSDU that follows the header and ends with the last PhSDU before the stop bit.

NOTE 1 Each check sequence PhPDU begins with a start bit and ends with a stop bit.

NOTE 2 A check sequence DLPDU is transmitted with a series of four check sequence PhPDUs.

The header in a check sequence PhPDU is structured according to Figure 39.

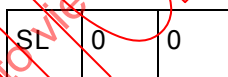


Figure 39 – Structure of a headers in a check sequence PhPDU

The header of the check sequence PhPDU is transmitted and received from left to right via the MDS-MAU interface, beginning with the SL bit.

For a check sequence PhPDU to be sent, the logical symbol to be transferred in the SL bit is equivalent to the negated logical state of the TxSL signal of the MIS-MDS interface at the time at which the check sequence PhPDU is to be transmitted via the MDS-MAU interface to the MAU (see Table 35).

Table 35 – SL bit and TxSL signal assignment

TxSL signal	SL bit
Logical 1	0
Logical 0	1

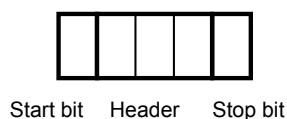
For a received check sequence PhPDU the logical state of the RxSL signal of the MIS-MDS interface is equivalent to the negated logical symbol that is transmitted in the SL bit (see Table 36).

Table 36 – SL bit and RxSL signal assignment

SL bit	RxSL signal
0	Logical 1
1	Logical 0

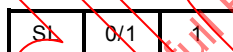
9.8.2.3 Status PhPDU

The status PhPDU which is formed by the MDS consists of a start bit, the header, and a stop bit. The status PhPDU is structured as shown in Figure 40.

**Figure 40 – Structure of the status PhPDU**

The status PhPDU is transmitted and received via the MDS-MAU interface from left to right beginning with the stop bit, followed by the header and ending with the stop bit.

The header in a status PhPDU is structured according to Figure 41.

**Figure 41 – Structure of the header in a status PhPDU**

According to Figure 41 the header is transmitted and received from left to right via the MDS-MAU interface, starting with the SL bit. The state of the bit which comes after the SL bit is not defined and can assume the values "0" or "1".

For a status PhPDU to be sent the logical symbol to be transmitted in the SL bit is equivalent to the negated logical state of the TxSL signals of the MIS-MDS interface at the time at which the status PhPDU is to be transmitted through the MDS-MAU interface to the MAU (see Table 37).

Table 37 – SL bit and TxSL signal assignment

TxSL signal	SL bit
Logical 1	0
Logical 0	1

For a received status PhPDU the logical state of the RxSL signal of the MIS-MDS interface is equivalent to the negated logical symbol that is transmitted in the SL bit (see Table 38).

Table 38 – SL bit and RxSL signal assignment

SL bit	RxSL signal
0	Logical 1
1	Logical 0

NOTE 1 Each status PhPDU begins with a start bit and ends with a stop bit.

NOTE 2 If no sequences of PhSDUs are transmitted to the MDS via the MIS-MDS interface, the MDS automatically begins to transmit successive status PhPDUs. Idle states may be generated between two successive

status PhPDUs. The transmission of status PhPDUs is terminated synchronously to the message as soon as the first PhSDU of a data sequence or check sequence PhPDU was transmitted from MIS to the MDS.

NOTE 3 The status PhPDUs are transmitted after a reset PhPDU, if no check sequence PhPDU or data sequence PhPDU is to be transmitted.

NOTE 4 Receipt of a status PhPDU does not change the logical state of the RxCR signal of the MIS-MDS interface.

9.8.2.4 Medium activity status PhPDU

The medium activity status PhPDU that is formed by the MDS consists of a start bit, the header, and a stop bit. The medium activity status PhPDU is structured as shown in Figure 42.

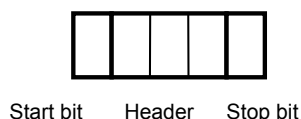


Figure 42 – Structure of the medium activity status PhPDU

The header in a medium activity status PhPDU is structured according to Figure 43.

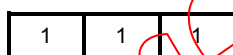


Figure 43 – Structure of the header in a medium activity status PhPDU

According to Figure 43 the header is transmitted and received from left to right via the MDS-MAU interface. The medium activity status PhPDU is only transmitted via an outgoing passive MAU (loopback mode = disable) when the systems management set the variable data select = enable.

9.8.2.5 Coding and decoding

Coding and decoding is done in accordance with the rules in Table 39.

Table 39 – Coding and decoding rules

Logical symbol bit	Coding DO, DI
1	High level
0	Low level

NOTE 1 The high and low levels shall each be taken from the beginning of a bit for the duration of one bit time.

NOTE 2 For the coding the logical symbols are converted to the corresponding state of the DO signal of the MDS-MAU interface.

NOTE 3 For the decoding the status of the DI signal of the MDS-MAU interface is converted to the corresponding logical symbol.

9.8.2.6 Start bit

The start bit corresponds to the logical symbol "1".

NOTE The MDS shall synchronise its receive clock with the beginning of the start bits (low-high transitions).

9.8.2.7 Stop bit

The stop bit corresponds to the logical symbol "0".

NOTE The MDS may synchronise its receive clock to a newly arriving start bit only after a stop bit (low-high transition).

9.8.3 Idle states

The sender of the bus master may generate idle states during the transitions of status PhPDUs to data sequence PhPDUs or check sequence PhPDUs. Idle states have always a low level on DO. The maximum length of the idle states shall not exceed 26 bit times. The decoding rules for idle states recognised on the medium are given in Table 40.

Table 40 – Decoding rules for the idle states

Idle state	State RxCR	Decoding DI
Data_Idle	Logical 0	Low level
CRC_Idle	Logical 1	Low level
CRC_Status_Idle	Logical 1	Low level

9.8.4 Reset PhPDU

9.8.4.1 Structure of the Reset PhPDU

The reset PhPDU transmits the logical symbols "short reset" or "long reset". Figure 44 shows the structure of the reset PhPDU.

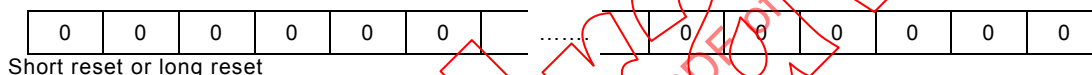


Figure 44 – Reset PhPDU

NOTE The symbols "short reset" and "long reset" only differ in the time during which the signals DO or DI of the MDS-MAU interface transmit a low level.

9.8.4.2 Coding and decoding

The coding rules for the reset PhPDU are given in Table 41 and Table 42.

Table 41 – Coding rules for the reset PhPDU

Logical symbol	Time interval	Coding DO
Short bus reset	$2 \text{ ms} \leq T_{Rst} < 25,6 \text{ ms}$	Low level
Long bus reset	$T_{Rst} \geq 25,6 \text{ ms}$	Low level

Table 42 – Decoding rules of the reset PhPDU

DI	Time interval	Logical symbol
Low level	$2 \text{ ms} \leq T_{Rst} < 25,6 \text{ ms}$	Short bus reset
Low level	$T_{Rst} \geq 25,6 \text{ ms}$	Long bus reset

NOTE 1 A reset PhPDU is terminated with the start bit of a data sequence PhPDU, a check sequence PhPDU or a status PhPDU.

NOTE 2 During the coding, the logical symbols are converted to the corresponding state of the DO signal of the MDS-MAU interface during the time T_{Rst} .

NOTE 3 During the decoding, in the time T_{Rst} the state of the DI signal of the MDS-MAU interface is converted to the corresponding logical symbol.

NOTE 4 The times given in Table 41 and Table 42 do not apply to the sender of the master. For the sender of the bus master the corresponding reset PhPDU shall be generated upon request of the RO service in accordance with the definitions specified in the PhL variables *short bus reset time* and *long bus reset time*.

NOTE 5 The encoding rules for the reset PhPDU apply only to a MDS coupling in the MIS.

9.8.5 MAU coupling

When MAUs of the same type are coupled pairs, each PhPDU and all idle states are transmitted unchanged between two MAUs. Figure 45, Figure 46 and Figure 47 show possible configurations for the bus devices when the 2-wire medium is used.

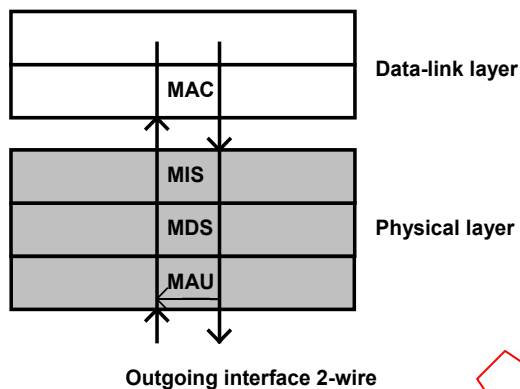


Figure 45 – Configuration of a master

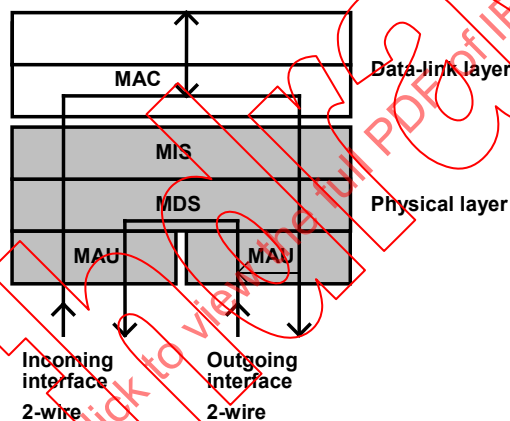


Figure 46 – Configuration of a slave

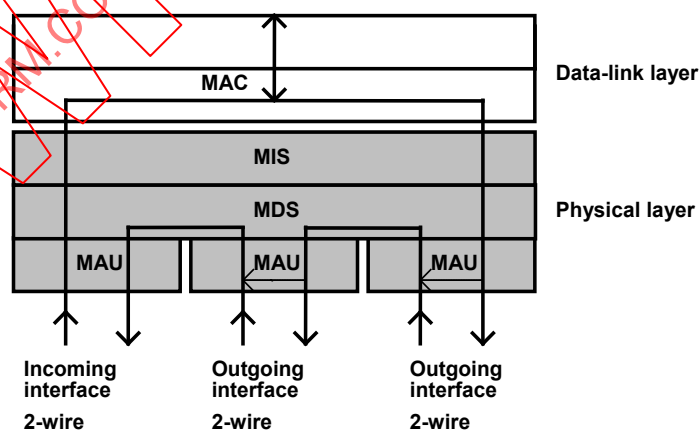


Figure 47 – Configuration of a bus coupler

NOTE When two MAUs are directly coupled, code-transparent repeaters may be used for the time regeneration.

9.9 Type 12: MDS: Wire media

9.9.1 PhPDU

The MDS shall produce the PhPDU shown in Figure 29 by adding delimiters and minimal idle sequences to frame the serial sequence of PhSDUs (bits) transferred from the DIS across the DTE – DCE interface. Transmission sequence shall be from left to right as shown in Figure 29, i.e. SOF first, followed by PhSDU sequence and finally EOF.



Figure 48 – Protocol data unit

Conversely, the MDS shall remove idle, SOF and EOF from a received PhPDU to produce a corresponding serial sequence of PhSDUs. If a non-binary data unit is detected in the received PhSDU sequence, the MDS shall immediately stop transferring PhSDUs to the DIS, the MDS shall report an error, and the MDS shall indicate the end of activity to the DIS when it happens.

9.9.2 Encoding and decoding

Data units shall be encoded by the MDS for application to the MAU using the code shown in Figure 49 (Manchester Biphase L). The encoding rules are given formally in Figure 50 and Table 43.

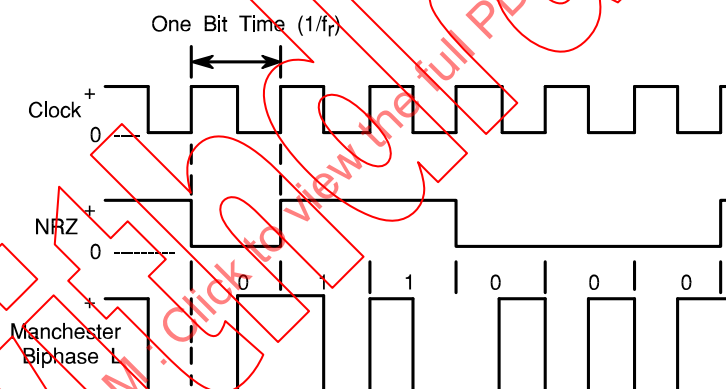
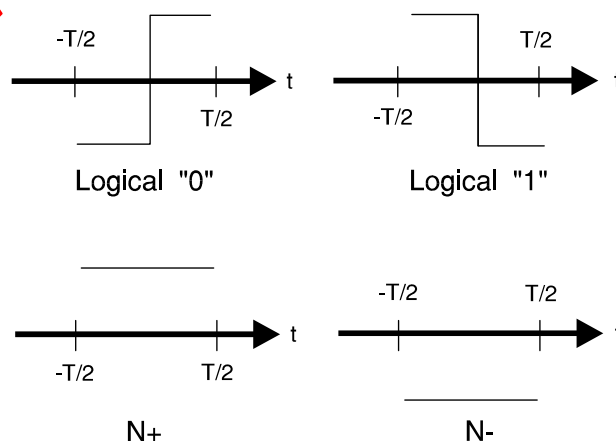


Figure 49 – PhSDU encoding and decoding

NOTE Figure 49 is included for explanatory purposes and does not imply a specific implementation.



IEC 1456/2000

Figure 50 – Manchester encoding rules

Table 43 – Manchester encoding rules

Symbols	Encoding
1 (ONE)	Hi–Lo transition (mid-bit)
0 (ZERO)	Lo–Hi transition (mid-bit)
N+ (NON-DATA PLUS)	Hi (No transition)
N– (NON-DATA MINUS)	Lo (No transition)
NOTE It may be seen that data symbols (1 and 0, conveyed by PhSDUs) are encoded to always contain a mid-bit transition. Non-data symbols (N+ and N–) are encoded so that they never have a mid-bit transition.	

Decoding shall normally be the opposite of encoding. At reception, the MDS shall verify that each symbol is encoded in accordance with Figure 50 and Table 43 and shall detect the following errors:

- a) invalid Manchester code;
- b) half-bit-slip errors;
- c) misalignment of EOF (number of bits is not a multiple of 8).

Any of these errors shall be reported as:

PH-DATA indication (class=END-W-ERROR, data=error).

9.9.3 Polarity detection

There is no automatic polarity detection of the received Manchester Biphasic L encoded signal.

9.9.4 SOF

The following sequence of symbols, shown from left to right in order of transmission, shall immediately precede the PhSDU sequence to delimit the start of a frame:

0, N+

The MDS shall only accept a received signal burst as a PhPDU after verifying this sequence and shall remove this sequence before transferring the PhSDU sequence to the DIS.

9.9.5 EOF

The following sequence of symbols, shown from left to right in order of transmission, shall immediately follow the PhSDU sequence to delimit the end of a frame:

N–, 0

The MDS shall remove this sequence from the PhPDU before transferring the PhSDU sequence to the DIS. The MDS shall report to the corresponding DLL entity any frames received via the medium which do not include this sequence within 1 535 octets of start of frame (from end of SOF) as:

PH-DATA indication (class=END-W-ERROR, data=frame_too_long).

The MDS shall report to the corresponding DLL entity, via the corresponding DIS, any frames received via the medium that have an end delimiter which is not located at an octet boundary as:

PH-DATA indication (class=END-W-ERROR, data=alignment_error).

9.9.6 Idle

In order to synchronize bit times an idle sequence shall be send out if no PhSDU or SOF/EOF are transmitted:

0

An idle sequence is always bit aligned.

NOTE A series of 1 in a PhSDU can be interpreted as idle. Following 0-symbols or EOF will readjust bit cell detection.

9.9.7 Synchronization

After activation and reception of a sufficient number of signals the receiver shall detect and report half-bit-slip errors.

NOTE 1 This synchronization specification allows the loss of 4 bits of the preamble.

After SOF, half-bit-slip errors shall be reported as:

PH-DATA indication (class=END-W-ERROR, data=half_bit_slip_error).

NOTE 2 Half-bit-slip errors can be detected as excessive bit cell jitter and/or excessive variation in bit period.

9.9.8 Inter frame gap

After transmission of a PhPDU there shall be a minimum period during which a subsequent transmission shall not commence. For the same minimum period after reception of a PhPDU the receiving PhL entity shall ignore all received signaling. An MDS entity shall set a minimum post transmission period of 92 nominal bit times (96 with SOF, EOF). The period may be extended, but not reduced, by systems management.

9.10 Type 16: MDS: Optical media

9.10.1 Data encoding rules

Signals on the transmission lines shall be NRZI-coded. Signal changes are only allowed to take place in synchronization with the transmitting clock. Every time a 0 is transmitted, the signal shall change its status in synchronization with the transmitting clock, whereas the signal shall remain unchanged when a 1 is transmitted.

By a suitable method (i.e., bit-stuffing), the transmitter shall ensure that enough zeros occur in the transmitted bit stream. This generates additional signal changes. In this way, conditions are created which make it possible to retrieve a receiving clock from the received signal. The retrieved receiving clock shall also have a fixed phase position with respect to the clock of the transmitter. The clock shall be retrievable by means of a digital phase locked loop (DPLL) which shall be synchronized to the signal change of the received signal transformed to an electrical signal. Figure 51d) is an example of a NRZI-coded signal. Therefore, the transmitting clock provides the pattern for the system timing via the signal transitions.

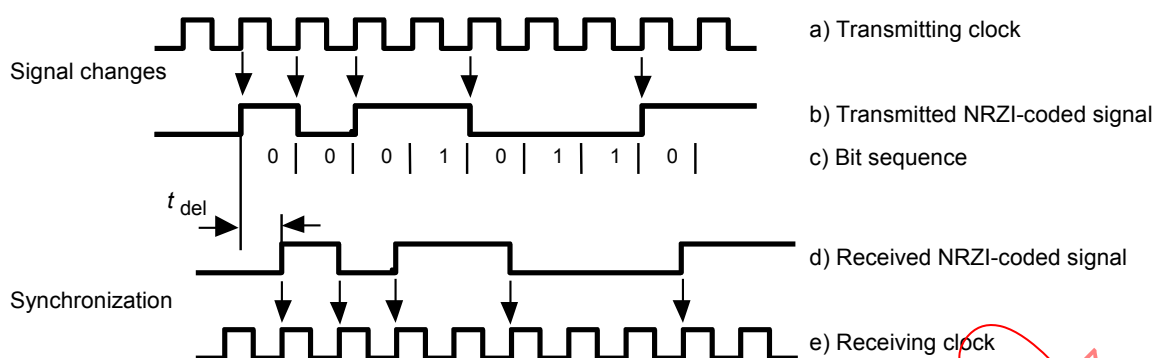


Figure 51 – Example of an NRZI-coded signal

9.10.2 Telegrams and fill characters

On the physical level, it is sufficient to know that a telegram shall start and end with the bit sequence 0111 1110. This bit sequence is also known as a delimiter. Due to bit-stuffing, this bit sequence is prevented from occurring inside the telegram.

Other fields of the telegram belong to higher protocol layers and are discussed elsewhere.

If a unit does not place its own telegram on the network, two possibilities arise:

- the master shall transmit a so-called fill signal (fill bits) between its own telegrams. It shall consist of a sequence of one binary 0 and seven binary 1's (i.e., 0111 1111). This generates a symmetric fill signal with 16 times the period of the transmitting clock, due to NRZI-coding (see Figure 52).
- between its own telegrams, a slave shall transmit with its synchronized local clock the physically regenerated, received signals (repeater mode).

During the transition from telegram to fill signal (master) or from telegram to repeater mode (slave), signal changes shall follow the pattern of the current clock.

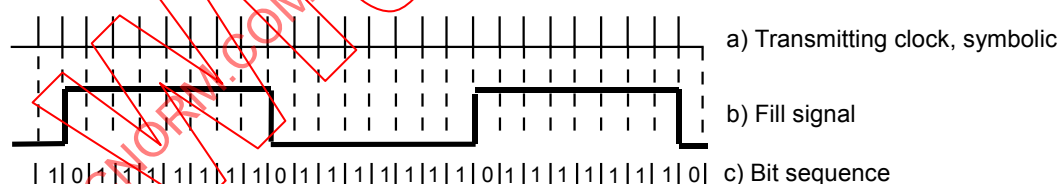


Figure 52 – Fill signal

NOTE Due to bit-stuffing and a), the slave physically located first in the network can derive its local clock from its received signal at any time. Because of b), this is also the case for all subsequent units, all the way to the receiver of the master. In this way, digital phase locked loops, which are eventually used to obtain the local clock, remain locked on, preventing time-consuming synchronization before the start of the actual telegram.

9.11 Type 18: MDS: Wire media

9.11.1 Overview

The type 18 MDS shall be able to sense the initiation and subsequent termination of data reception, the means of which are beyond the scope of this specification.

9.11.2 Transmission

Data transmission is started upon receipt of a PH-DATA (START-OF-ACTIVITY) request from the DL-user. This is translated by the MDS into a TRANSMIT-ENABLE signal assertion with the value specified in the DATA field being transmitted on the TRANSMIT-SIGNAL.

The MDS shall issue a PH-DATA (SUCCESS) confirmation and must receive the next PH-DATA (DATA) request before the expiration of the MDS baud rate bit timer. It is not until this request is acted upon that the subsequent PH-DATA (SUCCESS) confirmation is produced. In this way, the MDS baud rate timer regulates the flow rate of data.

Upon receipt of a PH-DATA (END-OF-ACTIVITY) request from the DL-user, the MDS completes the transmission in process and concludes with a TRANSMIT-ENABLE signal deassertion.

9.11.3 Reception

Upon receipt of data activity, the MDS issues a PH-DATA (START-OF-ACTIVITY) indication with the DATA value received. Each subsequent datum received results in a PH-DATA (DATA) indication with the DATA value received. Upon completion of the data reception, the MDS issues a PH-DATA (END-OF-ACTIVITY) indication to the DL-user.

10 MDS – MAU interface

10.1 General

The medium attachment unit (MAU) is an optionally separate part of a communication element that connects to the medium directly or via passive components. (See Figure 1.) For electrical signaling variants the MAU is the transceiver, which provides level shifting and wave shaping for transmitted and received signals. The MDS – MAU interface links the MAU to the MDS. The services are defined as physical signals to facilitate this interface optionally being exposed. The following subclauses list for each Type specifies the minimum set of required services at the MDS – MAU interface. See Clause 6 for management services.

NOTE A number of different MDS – MAU interfaces are specified, based on industry practice.

10.2 Type 1: MDS – MAU interface: Wire and optical media

10.2.1 Services

If the MDS – MAU interface is exposed it shall support at least the set of required services given in Table 44 and specified in 10.2.2.

Table 44 – Minimum services at MDS – MAU interface

Service	Abbreviation	Direction
Required:		
Transmit Signal	TxS	To MAU
Receive Signal	RxS	From MAU
Transmit Enable	TxE	To MAU
Optional:		
Loopback enable	LbE	To MAU

10.2.2 Service specifications

10.2.2.1 Transmit signal (TxS)

The Transmit Signal service (TxS) shall transfer the encoded PhPDU signal sequence across the MDS – MAU interface to the MAU, where the sequence shall be transmitted on to the medium if the Transmit Enable (TxE) is set to logic 1 (high level).

10.2.2.2 Receive signal (RxS)

The Receive Signal service (RxS) shall transfer the encoded PhPDU signal sequence or silence across the MAU – MDS interface to the MDS. The RxS shall echo the signal transmitted via TxS by simultaneously receiving the transmissions from the medium.

10.2.2.3 Transmit enable (TxE)

The Transmit Enable service (TxE) shall provide the MDS with the facility to enable the MAU to transmit. The TxE shall be set to logic 1 (high level) at the commencement of preamble transmission and then set to logic 0 (low level) after the last bit of the end delimiter has been transmitted.

If redundant media are in use and the method of implementing redundancy is to receive on all channels but transmit on only one then the channel (cable) that is currently used for transmission shall be selected by setting its TxE to logic 1 (high level). All channels that are not currently in use for transmission shall be disabled by setting the TxE to logic 0 (low level).

10.2.2.4 Loopback enable (LbE)

If the optional Loopback Enable (LbE) service shown in Table 44 is used it shall disable the final output stage of the MAU transmit circuit, connect the output of the previous stage of the MAU transmit circuit to the MAU receive circuit and disconnect the MAU receive circuit from the medium. The state of the Loopback Enable shall not change while the MAU is transmitting or receiving.

NOTE This confirmation service is of local significance only and provides a device with the facility to test the integrity and functionality of the PhL circuitry, excluding the medium.

10.2.3 Signal characteristics

Timing characteristics shall be compatible with those specified in the requirements of this standard for the relevant MDS.

If the MDS – MAU interface is exposed it shall operate with digital signal levels as shown in Table 45. Both sides of the interface shall operate with the same value of V_{DD} .

Table 45 – Signal levels for an exposed MDS – MAU interface

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Limits	Units	Remarks
V_{OL}	Maximum low-level output voltage	$I_{out} = \pm 100 \mu A$	0,1	V	See Note 1
		$I_{out} = +1,6 \text{ mA}$	0,4	V	
V_{OH}	Min.high-level output voltage	$I_{out} = \pm 100 \mu A$	$V_{DD} - 0,1$	V	See Note 1
		$I_{out} = -0,8 \text{ mA}$	$V_{DD} - 0,8$	V	See Note 2
V_{IL}	Max.low-level input voltage		$0,2 V_{DD}$	V	
V_{IH}	Min.high-level input voltage		$0,7 V_{DD}$	V	See Note 3

NOTE 1 Provides the capability to drive two typical CMOS loads.

NOTE 2 CMOS input compatibility with TTL output requires a "pull-up" resistor from signal input to V_{DD} .

NOTE 3 Compatible with CMOS output for $3,0 \text{ V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5,5 \text{ V}$. Compatibility with TTL output ($4,75 \text{ V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5,25 \text{ V}$) requires a "pull-up" resistor from signal input to V_{DD} .

10.2.4 Communication mode

The communication mode at this interface shall allow simultaneous transmission and reception.

10.2.5 Timing characteristics

The MDS – MAU interface shall function correctly with a PhSDU bit rate of between 1 kbit/s and 1,1 times the highest stated MAU bit rate.

NOTE The bit rates available in an implementation are stated in the Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS).

10.3 Type 1: MDS – MAU interface: Radio signaling

When exposed, this interface should use the industry standard SPI protocol and signals, or equivalent, in which octet registers and FIFOs in the MAU are read and written by the MDS and in which the MAU can interrupt the MDS.

10.4 Type 2: MDS – MAU interface: Wire and optical media

10.4.1 MDS-MAU interface: general

10.4.1.1 Conformance

A node may include any (or more than one) PhL variant but the appropriate medium interface shall be provided for each PhL variant implemented.

The MDS-MAU interface need not be exposed in the implementation of any PhL variant. This interface may be internal to the node and may be internal to a semiconductor device. If, however, conformance to the MDS-MAU interface is claimed, the implementation shall conform to the requirements of this subclause.

10.4.1.2 Delay from medium to MDS-MAU interface

For all implementations conformant to the MDS-MAU interface, the receive delay from the medium to the MDS-MAU interface shall be less than 200 ns and the transmit delay from the MDS-MAU interface to the medium shall be less than 200 ns.

10.4.2 MDS-MAU interface: 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire

10.4.2.1 Signal definitions

This subclause defines the signals defined for the 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire medium MDS-MAU interface, as shown in Table 46.

Table 46 – MDS-MAU interface definitions: 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire

TxDATAOUT	TxDATABAR	NETENABLE	RxDATA	RxCARRIER	Ph-symbol
x	x	0	undefined	0	No transmission MAU_FRAME_REQUEST = false
0	0	1	undefined	0	No transmission MAU_FRAME_REQUEST = false
1	0	1	1	1	H
0	1	1	0	0	L
1	1	1	-	-	Not allowed, transmitter damage may occur

10.4.2.2 TxDataOut

TxDATAOUT shall be true to represent H from the MAU, and shall be false to represent L as shown in Table 46. TxDATAOUT shall be false when no Ph-symbol data is to be transmitted (MAU_FRAME_REQUEST = false)

10.4.2.3 TxDataBar

TxDATABAR shall be true to represent L from the MAU, and shall be false to represent H as shown in Table 46. TxDATABAR shall be false when no Ph-symbol data is to be transmitted (MAU_FRAME_REQUEST = false)

10.4.2.4 NetEnable

NETENABLE shall be true to enable the MAU for transmission of TxDATAOUT and TxDATABAR Ph-symbol data on the coaxial wire medium. NETENABLE false shall prevent transmission of TxDATAOUT and TxDATABAR Ph-symbol data as shown in Table 46.

10.4.2.5 RxData

RxData shall represent the raw, distorted, unsynchronised Ph-symbols (H or L) as recovered from the coaxial wire medium. This signal shall be true or false based on the requirements shown in Table 84. After data recovery and resynchronisation to meet the MDS timing requirements (from Table 31), these Ph-symbols shall be decoded into the appropriate MDS M-symbols as shown in Table 32.

10.4.2.6 RxCarrier

RxCARRIER shall be true when the signal level on the coaxial wire medium exceeds the carrier detection threshold voltage as shown in Table 85; otherwise, it shall be false. This signal shall be used to create the Ph-CARRIER indication at the DLL-PhL interface as defined in 5.3.5.

10.4.3 MDS-MAU interface 5 Mbit/s, optical medium

10.4.3.1 Signal definitions

This subclause lists the signals defined for the 5 Mbit/s, optical fiber medium MDS-MAU interface, as shown in Table 47.

Table 47 – MDS-MAU interface 5 Mbit/s, optical fiber medium

TxDATAOUT	NETENABLE	RxDATA	RxCARRIER	Ph-symbol
Don't care	0	0	0	L or 'light off'
1	1	1	1	H or 'light on'
0	1	0	0	L or 'light off'

10.4.3.2 TxDataOut

TxDATAOUT shall be true to represent H from the MAU, and shall be false to represent L as shown in Table 92. A true signal shall be represented on the fiber medium as 'light on'. A false signal shall be represented on the fiber medium as 'light off'. The fiber transmit level requirements that define 'light on' (or Coupled Power, PT on) and 'light off' (or Coupled Power, PT off) shall be as defined in 19.6.

10.4.3.3 NetEnable

NETENABLE shall be true to indicate the MDS sublayer has valid Ph-symbols to be transmitted onto the fiber medium. NETENABLE shall enable the MAU for transmission of TxDATAOUT light

levels on the fiber medium. NETENABLE false shall prevent transmission of TxDATAOUT signals, as shown in Table 47.

10.4.3.4 RxData

RxDATA shall represent the raw, distorted, unsynchronised Ph-symbols (H or L) as recovered from the fiber medium. This signal shall be true when the light level on the medium meets the 'light on' requirements defined in 19.6, otherwise this signal shall be false. After data recovery and resynchronisation to meet the MDS timing requirements (from Table 31), these Ph-symbols shall be decoded into the appropriate PLS_DATA_INDICATION M_symbols as shown in Table 32. RxDATA shall report false if the medium is broken, missing or power is removed from the transmitting end of the fiber.

10.4.3.5 RxCarrier

RxCARRIER shall be true when the light level on the medium meets the 'light on' requirements defined in 19.6, otherwise this signal shall be false. This signal shall be used directly to create the PLS_CARRIER_INDICATION at the DLL-PhL interface. If the fiber transceiver does not support a carrier indication mechanism, this interface signal shall be connected to the RxDATA interface signal. The RxCARRIER shall report false if the medium is broken, missing or power removed from the transmitting end of the fiber.

10.4.4 MDS-MAU interface Network Access Port (NAP)

The following signals shall be required for the NAP MDS-MAU interface:

- a) /TxPTC shall be false to represent H transmit data from the MAU, and shall be true to represent L;
- b) /RxPTC shall be false to represent H receive data from the MDS, and shall be true to represent L. This signal shall be true if the NAP medium is removed, broken, short-circuited or the source transmitter is disabled.

10.5 Type 3: MDS – MAU interface: Wire and optical media

10.5.1 Synchronous transmission

The MDS – MAU interface specified for Type 1 shall be used (see 10.2).

10.5.2 Asynchronous transmission

Instead of the MDS – MAU interface as described in 10.2 the DL – Ph interface for asynchronous transmission shall be used (see 5.1 and 5.4.2).

10.6 Type 8: MDS – MAU interface: Wire and optical media

10.6.1 Overview of the services

The MDS-MAU interface makes services available to connect the MDS with a corresponding MAU. The services are defined as logical signals that the MAU sublayer directly converts into physical signals (see Table 48).

Table 48 – Services of the MDS-MAU interface

Service	Mnemonic	Direction
Data Out	DO	From MDS
Data In	DI	From MAU
Bus Connector	BC	From MAU
Loopback Enable	LbE	From MDS
Data Select	DS	From MDS
Medium Activity	MA	From MDS
NOTE The Bus Connector, Loopback Enable, Data Select and Medium Activity services are only supported by the MAU of an outgoing interface.		

10.6.2 Description of the services

10.6.2.1 Data-out (DO)

This service transmits the PhPDU from the MDS to the MAU.

10.6.2.2 Data-in (DI)

This service transmits the PhPDU from the MAU to the MDS.

10.6.2.3 Bus connector (BC)

This service indicates to a MDS whether the transmission medium is connected to the MAU of an outgoing interface. If the transmission medium is not connected to the MAU of an outgoing interface, the systems management shall, for this MAU, disconnect the receive circuit from the medium with the Loopback Enable (LbE) service and connect the send circuit with the receive circuit.

NOTE 1 The Bus Connector service is only supported by the MAU of an outgoing interface. It is not related to the other services of the MDS-MAU interface.

NOTE 2 This service is a local management service that indicates whether another bus device is connected to the outgoing interface of the MAU, which allows the systems management to close or open the transmission ring with the Loopback Enable service.

NOTE 3 The detection of another connected bus device is caused by a signal that is led through a bridge in the connector of the outgoing cable (see cable definition).

10.6.2.4 Loopback enable (LbE)

This service allows the systems management to decouple the receive circuit from the transmission medium for a MAU of an outgoing interface, and to connect the send circuit with the input circuit.

NOTE 1 The Loopback Enable service is only supported by the MAU of an outgoing interface and is not related to the other services of the MDS-MAU interface.

NOTE 2 This service is a local management service that allows the systems management to close the transmission ring if no other bus slave is connected to the MAU of an outgoing interface.

10.6.2.5 Medium activity (MA)

This service transmits a special status PhPDU from the MDS to the MAU if the active ring was decoupled from the medium and the send and receive circuit were connected but controlled activity is to be generated on the medium.

NOTE 1 This service is used by a slave only.

NOTE 2 The Medium Activity service is only supported by MAU of an outgoing interface and has no time relation to the other services of the MDS-MAU interface.

10.6.2.6 Data select (DS)

The systems management uses this service to transmit on the decoupled medium of an outgoing MAU either a reset PhPDU or with the Medium Activity service certain status PhPDUs.

NOTE 1 This service is used by a slave only.

NOTE 2 The Data Select service is only supported by MAU of an outgoing interface and is not related to the other services of the MDS-MAU interface.

10.6.3 Time response

The MDS shall be able to correctly decode a bit with bit jitter specified in Figure 53. The variation for the sample clock shall be within the range of $\pm 0,1 \%$.

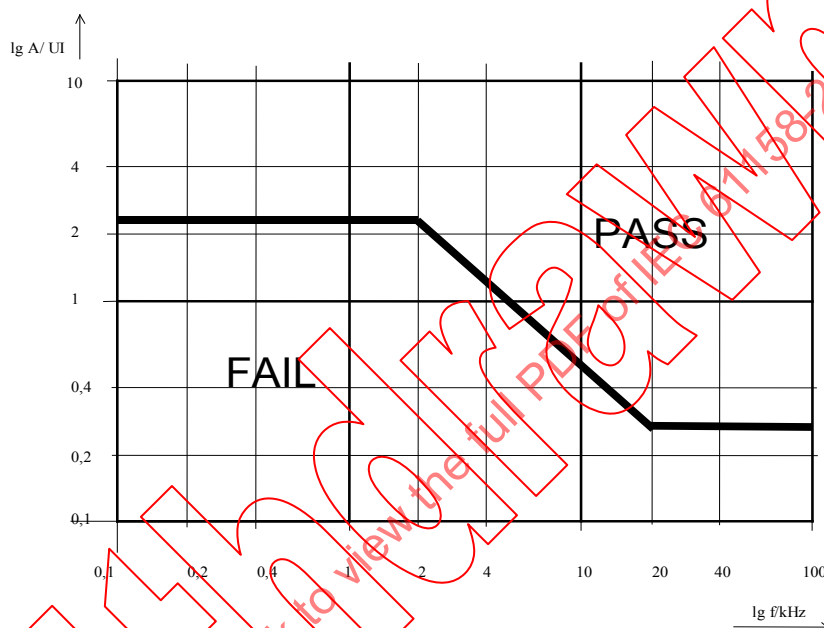


Figure 53 – Jitter tolerance

10.6.4 Transmission mode

The MDS-MAU interface shall allow a simultaneous, independent sending and receiving.

10.7 Type 18: MDS – MAU interface: Wire media

10.7.1 General

The granularity of PhPDU exchanged at the MAU interface is one bit.

10.7.2 Services

If the MAU interface is exposed it shall support at least the set of required services given in Table 49 and specified in 10.2.2.

Table 49 – Minimum services at MAU interface

Service	Abbreviation	Direction
Transmit Signal	TxS	To MAU
Receive Signal	RxS	From MAU
Transmit Enable	TxE	To MAU

10.7.3 Service specifications

10.7.3.1 Transmit Signal (TxS)

The Transmit Signal service (TxS) shall transfer the encoded PhPDU signal sequence across the interface to the MAU, where the sequence shall be transmitted on to the medium if the Transmit Enable (TxE) is set to logic one (high level).

10.7.3.2 Receive Signal (RxS)

The Receive Signal service (RxS) shall transfer the encoded PhPDU signal sequence or silence across the interface to the MDS. The RxS shall echo the signal transmitted via TxS by simultaneously receiving the transmissions from the medium.

10.7.3.3 Transmit Enable (TxE)

The Transmit Enable service (TxE) shall provide the facility to enable the MAU to transmit. The TxE shall be set to logic one (high level) at the commencement of preamble transmission and then set to logic zero (low level) after the last bit of the end delimiter has been transmitted.

10.7.4 Signal characteristics

If the MAU interface is exposed it shall operate with digital signal levels as shown in Table 50. Both sides of the interface shall operate with the same value of V_{DD} .

Table 50 – Signal levels for an exposed MAU interface

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Limits	Units	Remarks
V_{OL}	Maximum low-level output voltage	$I_{out} = \pm 100 \mu A$	0,1	V	See Note 1
		$I_{out} = +1,6 \text{ mA}$	0,4	V	
V_{OH}	Minimum high-level output voltage	$I_{out} = \pm 100 \mu A$	$V_{DD} - 0,1$	V	See Note 1
		$I_{out} = -0,8 \text{ mA}$	$V_{DD} - 0,8$	V	See Note 2
V_{IL}	Maximum low-level input voltage		$0,2 V_{DD}$	V	
V_{IH}	Minimum high-level input voltage		$0,7 V_{DD}$	V	See Note 3

NOTE 1 Provides the capability to drive two typical CMOS loads.

NOTE 2 CMOS input compatibility with TTL output requires a "pull-up" resistor from signal input to V_{DD} .

NOTE 3 Compatible with CMOS output for $3,0 \text{ V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5,5 \text{ V}$. Compatibility with TTL output ($4,75 \text{ V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5,25 \text{ V}$) requires a "pull-up" resistor from signal input to V_{DD} .

10.7.5 Communication mode

The communication mode at this interface shall allow simultaneous transmission and reception.

10.7.6 Timing characteristics

The MAU shall function correctly with a PhSDU bit rate of between 1 kbit/s and 1,1 times the highest stated MAU bit rate. The clocking frequency shall be implemented accurate to within 150 ppm of the specified rate.

11 Types 1 and 7: Medium attachment unit: voltage mode, linear-bus-topology 150 Ω twisted-pair wire medium

11.1 General

These MAU requirements are not specifically intended to facilitate the options of

- power distribution via the signal conductors;
- suitability for intrinsic safety certification.

The network medium consists of shielded twisted-pair cable. Independent of topology, all attached devices, other than possibly the transmitting device, present a high impedance to prevent significant network loading. Trapezoidal waveforms are used to reduce electromagnetic emissions and signal distortion.

A linear bus topology is supported, as are some branched acyclic topologies. A network contains one trunk cable, terminated at its ends.

11.2 Bit-rate-dependent quantities

Six bit rates are defined for the voltage-mode twisted-pair medium attachment unit (MAU). A given MAU shall support at least one of these bit rates.

Table 51 specifies the supported bit rates, and defines symbols for bit-rate-dependent quantities used throughout the remainder of this clause.

Table 51 – Bit-rate-dependent quantities of voltage-mode networks

Quantity		Symbol	Unit	Value					
Nominal bit rate		BR	Mbit/s	0,031 25	1	2,5	5	10	25
Maximum deviation from BR		Δ BR		0,2 %	0,01 %				
Nominal bit duration		T_{bit}	μ s	32	1,0	0,4	0,2	0,1	0,04
Maximum deviation from T_{bit}		ΔT_{bit}	–	0,9 μ s	0,025 %				
Signaling frequencies	Nominal for a repeated bit	f_r	MHz	0,031 25	1	2,5	5	10	25
	Nominal minimum = 0,25 f_r	f_{min}	MHz	0,007 8	0,25	0,625	1,25	2,5	6,25
	Nominal maximum = 1,25 f_r	f_{max}	MHz	0,039	1,25	3,125	6,25	12,5	31,25
Maximum number of devices		N_{max}		32				16	
Maximum inter-device distance		L_{max}	m	4 000	750	500	400	200	100
Maximum inter-device attenuation		A_{max}	dB	15	17	18			
Maximum inter-device attenuation distortion		AD_{max}	dB	8		10			
Maximum inter-device mismatching distortion		MD_{max}	dB	0,2			0,4	0,6	
Maximum signal rise or fall time		T_{rf}	ns	8 000	200	80	40	20	8
Maximum coupler spacing to form a cluster		CS_{max}	m	4		2	1	0,5	0,25
Minimum device input impedance		$D_{\text{in min}}$	k Ω	8			4	2	1
Maximum quiescent transmitter output		QTO_{max}	mV rms	1	5	10	20	40	80
Maximum frequency for QTO_{max} measurement		$f_{QTO_{\text{max}}}$	MHz	0,1	4 f_r				

The average bit rate shall be $BR \pm \Delta BR$, averaged over a frame having a minimum length of 16 octets. The instantaneous bit time shall be $T_{\text{bit}} \pm \Delta T_{\text{bit}}$.

11.3 Network specifications

11.3.1 Components

A voltage-mode MAU operates in a network composed of the following components:

- a) twisted-pair wire cable;
- b) devices (containing at least one communication element);
- c) connectors;
- d) couplers;
- e) terminators.

11.3.2 Topologies

A wire MAU shall operate in a network with an acyclic nominally linear bus topology, consisting of a trunk, terminated at each end as specified in 11.8.5, to which communication elements are connected via couplers. Each communication element shall be connected in parallel with the trunk cable.

NOTE 1 The coupler and communication element are generally integrated in one device.

NOTE 2 Active repeaters may be used to establish branches or to extend the length of the trunk beyond that of a single segment as permitted by the network configuration rules. Branches must be considered as segments, and may make the bus non-linear. Cycles (closed loops) are never permitted.

11.3.3 Network configuration rules

An MAU that claims conformance to this clause of this standard shall meet the requirements of this clause when used in a network that complies with these rules.

Rule 1: A fieldbus shall be capable of communication between two and $N_{\max}$ devices, all operating at the same bit rate.

NOTE 1 This rule does not preclude the use of more than $N_{\max}$ devices in an installed system.

Rule 2: A fully loaded (maximum number of connected devices) fieldbus segment shall have a total cable length, including branches, between any two devices, of up to $L_{\max}$.

NOTE 2 Support of this maximum cable length is a requirement for MAU conformance to this clause of this standard, but this does not preclude the use of longer lengths in an installed system.

Rule 3: The total number of waveform regenerations by repeaters and active couplers between any two devices is repeater implementation dependent.

NOTE 3 Prior editions of this standard limited this total number to four.

Rule 4: The maximum propagation delay between any two devices shall not exceed $40 T_{\text{bit}}$.

NOTE 4 For efficiency of the network, that part of the turn-around time of any device on the network caused by a PhE between the end of a received frame and the beginning of the transmitted frame containing an associated immediate response should not exceed 30 bit times, no more than 2 bit times of which should be due to the MAU. As it is not mandatory to expose either the DLL – PhL interface or the MDS – MAU interface, that part of the turn-around time of a fieldbus device caused by the PhL or the MAU cannot be specified or conformance tested.

Rule 5: The fieldbus shall be capable of continued operation while a device is being connected or disconnected. Data errors induced during connection or disconnection shall be detected.

Rule 6: For a fieldbus that is not powered via the signal conductors, a single failure in any one communication element (including a short circuit but excluding jabber) shall not interfere with transactions between other communication elements for more than 1 ms.

Rule 7: In polarity sensitive systems, the medium wire pairs shall have distinctly marked conductors that uniquely identify individual conductors. Consistent polarization shall be maintained at all connection points.

Rule 8: The degradation of the electrical characteristics of the signal, between any two devices, due to attenuation, attenuation distortion and mismatching distortion shall be limited to the values indicated below.

a) Signal attenuation: The configuration of the bus (trunk length, number of devices, and possible matching devices) shall be such that the attenuation between any two devices at frequency f_r shall not exceed $A_{\max}$;

b) Attenuation distortion: The configuration of the bus (trunk and spur lengths and number of devices) shall be such that between any two devices:

$$0 \leq [\text{Attenuation}(f_{\max}) - \text{Attenuation}(f_{\min})] \leq AD_{\max}$$

Attenuation shall be monotonic non-decreasing for all frequencies from $f_{\min}$ to $f_{\max}$;

c) Mismatching Distortion: Mismatching (due to any effect) on the bus shall be such that, at any point along the trunk, in the frequency band $f_{\min}$ to $f_{\max}$:

$$|Z - Z_{fr}| / |Z + Z_{fr}| \leq MD_{\max}$$

where Z_{fr} is the characteristic impedance of the trunk cable at frequency f_r and Z is the parallel combination of Z_{fr} and the load impedance at the coupler.

NOTE 5 This rule minimizes restrictions on trunk and spur length, number of devices etc. by specifying only the transmission limitations imposed by combinations of these factors. Different combinations may be used depending on the needs of the application.

NOTE 6 The usual cause of a large mismatch is the concentration of several couplers on a short length of the trunk.

If the distance between two consecutive couplers is less than $CS_{\max}$, then the propagation delay between them is smaller than T_{ff} and the concentration appears as a single mismatched element inducing large reflections of the signal transitions.

A concentration of couplers where the distance between two consecutive couplers is less than $CS_{\max}$ is defined as a cluster. In order to comply with Rule 8c using devices with an input impedance of minimum value $Din_{\min}$ and zero-length spurs, it is recommended that a cluster not include more than 4 couplers.

Using devices with input impedance significantly higher than the minimum value $Din_{\min}$ allows clusters with more couplers. Using non-zero-length spurs could require clusters to have fewer than 4 couplers.

NOTE 7 It is possible to reduce the mismatching due to a cluster by the following means:

- using active multipoint couplers
- inserting matching devices (passive attenuators) on each side of the cluster while satisfying Rule 8.

Rule 9: The following rules shall apply to systems implemented with redundant media:

- a) each channel (cable) shall comply with the network configuration rules;
- b) there shall not be a non-redundant segment between two redundant segments;
- c) repeaters shall also be redundant;
- d) if the devices of the system are configured (by Systems management) to transmit on more than one channel simultaneously then the propagation time difference between any two devices on any two channels shall not exceed five bit times;

NOTE 8 This period may be extended, but not reduced, by Systems management as given in Table 4 (see 6.2.2.2 and 9.2.9).

- e) channel numbers and association with the physical transmission media shall be maintained consistently throughout the fieldbus, i.e. channels 1, 2, 3... from Systems management shall always connect to physical channels 1, 2, 3...;

11.3.4 Power distribution rules for network configuration

The cable shield shall not be used as a power conductor.

11.4 MAU transmit circuit specification

11.4.1 Summary

Table 52 through Table 54 summarise the requirements of the MAU.

Table 52 – MAU transmit level specification summary

Transmit level characteristics, values referred to trunk (but measured using test load as shown in Figure 54)	Limits
Output level (peak-to-peak, see Figure 55) With test load (0,5 nominal Z_o of the trunk cable at f_r)	5,5 V to 9,0 V $75 \Omega \pm 1 \%$
Maximum positive and negative amplitude difference (signaling bias) as shown in Figure 56	$\pm 0,45$ V
Output level with one terminator removed (peak-to-peak) with test load (nominal impedance of the trunk cable at f_r)	5,5 V to 11,0 V $150 \Omega \pm 1 \%$
Maximum output level; open circuit (peak-to-peak)	5,5 V to 30,0 V
Maximum output signal distortion; i.e., overvoltage, ringing and droop (see Figure 55)	$\pm 10 \%$
Quiescent transmitter output; i.e. transmitter noise (measured over the frequency band 1 kHz to f_{QTOmax})	$\leq QTO_{max}$ (r.m.s.)

Table 53 – MAU transmit timing specification summary for 31,25 kbit/s operation

Transmit timing characteristics, values referred to trunk (but measured using test load as shown in Figure 54)	Limits
Transmitted bit rate	$BR \pm \Delta BR$
Instantaneous bit time	$T_{bit} \pm \Delta T_{bit}$
Rise and fall times (10 % to 90 % of peak-to-peak signal, see Figure 55)	$\leq 25 \% T_{bit}$
Slew rate (at any point from 10 % to 90 % of peak-to-peak signal)	$\leq 0,2$ V/ μ s
Maximum transmitted bit cell jitter (zero-crossing point deviation, see Figure 56)	$\pm 2,5 \% T_{bit}$
Transmit enable/disable time (i.e. time during which the output waveform may not meet the transmit requirements)	$\leq 2,0 T_{bit}$

Table 54 – MAU transmit timing specification summary for ≥ 1 Mbit/s operation

Transmit timing characteristics, values referred to trunk (but measured using test load as shown in Figure 54)	Limits
Transmitted bit rate	$BR \pm \Delta BR$
Instantaneous bit time	$T_{bit} \pm \Delta T_{bit}$
Rise and fall times (10 % to 90 % of peak-to-peak signal, see Figure 55)	$\leq 20 \% T_{bit}$
Slew rate (at any point from 10 % to 90 % of peak-to-peak signal)	≤ 100 V/ μ s $\times (f_r/\text{MHz})$
Maximum transmitted bit cell jitter (zero-crossing point deviation, see Figure 56)	$\pm 2,5 \% T_{bit}$
Transmit enable/disable time (i.e. time during which the output waveform may not meet the transmit requirements)	$\leq 2,0 T_{bit}$

11.4.2 MAU test configuration

Figure 54 shows the configuration that shall be used for testing MAUs, as follows.

- Differential signal voltage: $V_d = V_a - V_b$
- Test load resistance $R = 75 \Omega$ (0,5 nominal impedance of the trunk cable at f_r) and $C = 0,15 \mu\text{F}$ except where otherwise stated in a specific requirement.

- Data "+" terminal connected to the power "+" terminal and data "-" terminal connected to the power "-" terminal.

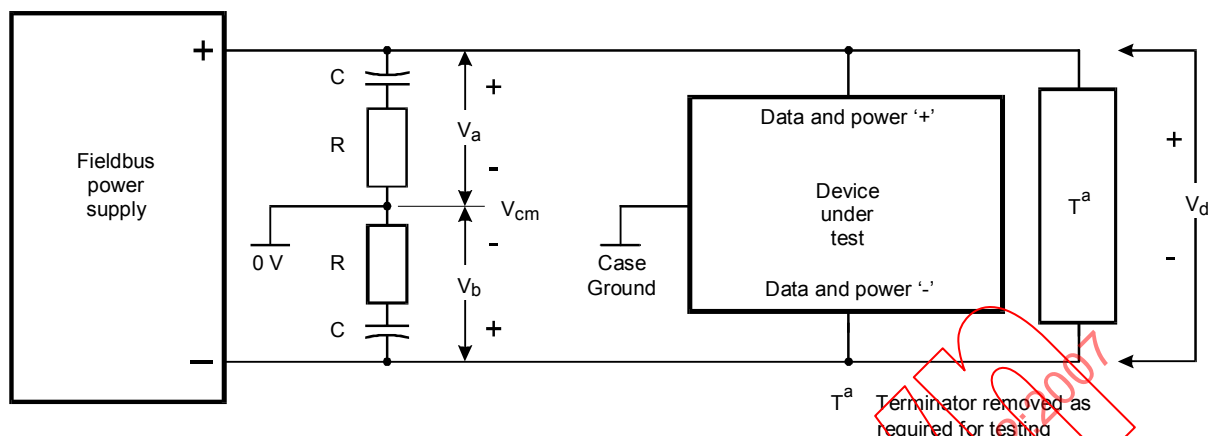


Figure 54 – Transmit circuit test configuration

11.4.3 MAU output level requirements

Figure 55 describes the output form of the signal for the twisted-pair voltage output level requirements.

NOTE Figure 55 shows an example of the a.c. component of one cycle of a fieldbus waveform, illustrating some key items from the transmit circuit specification. Only signal voltages are shown; this diagram takes no account of power supply voltages.

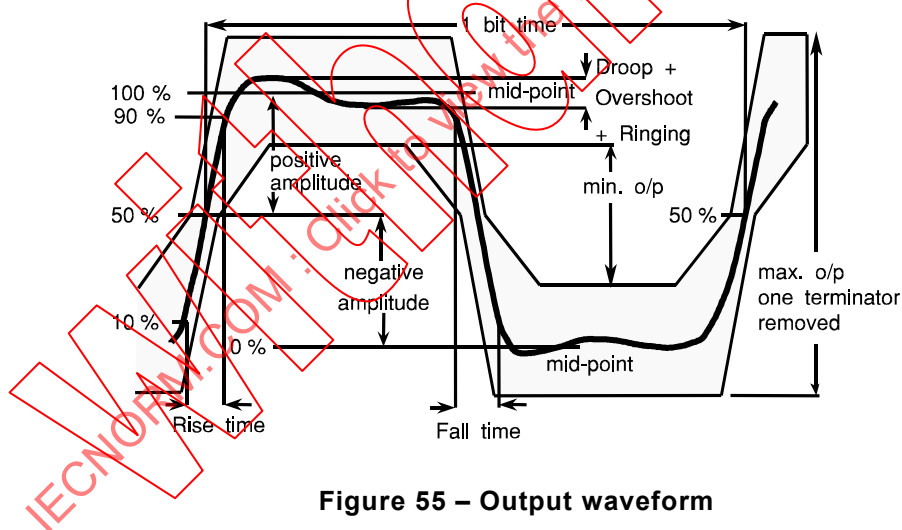


Figure 55 – Output waveform

The MAU transmit circuit shall conform to the following output level requirements, all amplitudes being measured at the estimated mid-point between any peaks or troughs in the top and bottom of the waveform ("mid-point" in Figure 55):

- the output voltage across the test load after transformer step up/down (if applicable) shall be between 5,5 V and 9,0 V peak-to-peak with a load resistance of $75 \Omega \pm 1 \%$ ("min. o/p" in Figure 55);
- the output voltage at the trunk, or at the transmit terminals, with a load resistance of $150 \Omega \pm 1 \%$ (i.e. with one trunk terminator removed) shall be between 5,5 V and 11,0 V peak-to-peak ("max. o/p one terminator removed" in Figure 55);
- the output voltage at the trunk, or at the transmit terminals, with any load including an open circuit shall be between 5,5 V and 30,0 V peak-to-peak. For test purposes open circuit shall be defined as a load of $100 \text{ k}\Omega$ resistance in parallel with 15 pF capacitance;

- d) during transmission a device shall not suffer permanent failure when a load resistance of $\leq 1 \Omega$ is applied for 1 s;
- e) the difference between positive amplitude and negative amplitude, measured as shown in Figure 55, shall not exceed $\pm 0,45$ V peak;
- f) the output noise from an MAU which is receiving or not powered shall not exceed QTO_{max} r.m.s., measured differentially over the frequency band 1 kHz to $f_{QTO_{max}}$, referred to the trunk;
- g) the differential voltage across the test load shall be such that the voltage monotonically changes between 10 % and 90 % of peak-to-peak value. Thereafter, the signal voltage shall not vary more than ± 10 % of peak-to-peak value until the next transition occurs. This permitted variation shall include all forms of output signal distortion, i.e. overvoltage, ringing and droop.

11.4.4 MAU output timing requirements

11.4.4.1 Common output timing requirements for all data rates

An MAU transmit circuit shall conform to the following output timing requirements:

- a) transmitted bit cell jitter shall not exceed ΔT_{bit} from the ideal zero crossing point, measured with respect to the previous zero crossing (see Figure 56);

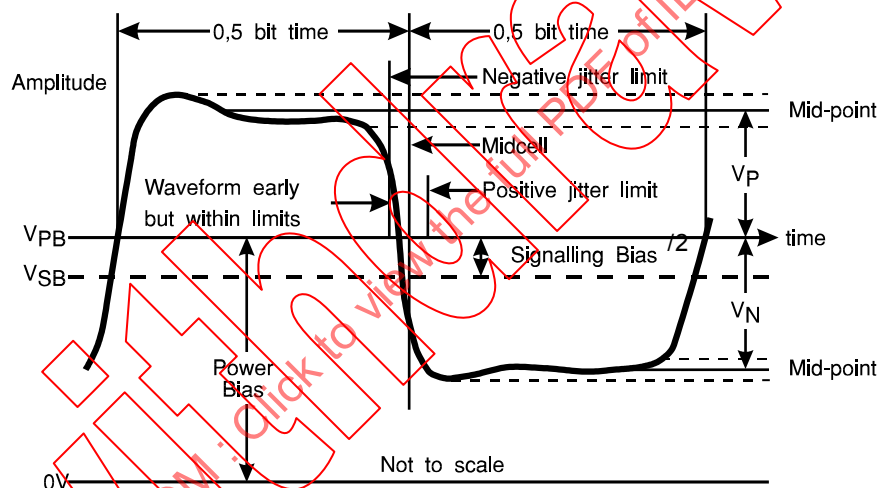


Figure 56 – Transmitted and received bit cell jitter (zero crossing point deviation)

- b) the transmit circuit shall turn on, i.e. the signal shall rise from below the transmit circuit maximum output noise level as specified in 11.4.3f) to full output level, in less than $2,0 T_{bit}$. The waveform corresponding to the third and later bit times shall be as specified in Figure 55;
- c) the transmit circuit shall turn off, i.e. the signal shall fall from full output level to below the transmit circuit maximum output noise level as specified in 11.4.3 f), in less than $2,0 T_{bit}$. The time for the transmit circuit to return to its off-state impedance shall not exceed $4,0 T_{bit}$. For the purposes of testing, this requirement shall be met with the transmit circuit test configuration of Figure 54 with the equivalent capacitance of a maximum length cable across the DUT terminals.

NOTE This requirement is to ensure that the transition of the transmit circuit from active to passive leaves the line capacitance fully discharged.

11.4.4.2 Additional output timing requirements for 31,25 kbit/s operation

The MAU transmit circuit shall conform to the following additional output timing requirements:

- a) rise and fall times, measured from 10 % to 90 % of the peak-to-peak signal amplitude shall not exceed $0,25 T_{bit}$ (see Figure 55);
- b) slew rate shall not exceed $0,2 \text{ V}/\mu\text{s}$ measured at any point in the range 10 % to 90 % of the peak-to-peak signal amplitude (see Figure 55).

NOTE Requirements a) and b) produce a trapezoidal waveform at the transmit circuit output. Requirement b) limits the level of interference emissions that may be coupled to adjacent circuits etc. Requirement b) is calculated from the formula:

max. slew rate = $2 \times \text{min. slew rate} = 2 \times 0,8 V_o / 0,25 T_{bit} = 6,4 \times V_o / T_{bit}$,
where V_o is the maximum peak-to-peak output voltage (9,0 V) with a standard load.

11.4.4.3 Additional output timing requirements for $\geq 1 \text{ Mbit/s}$ operation

The MAU transmit circuit shall conform to the following additional output timing requirements:

- a) rise and fall times, measured from 10 % to 90 % of the peak-to-peak signal amplitude shall not exceed $0,2 T_{bit}$ (see Figure 55);
- b) slew rate shall not exceed $100 \text{ V}/\mu\text{s} \times (f_r/\text{MHz})$ measured at any point in the range 10 % to 90 % of the peak-to-peak signal amplitude (see Figure 55).

NOTE Requirements a) and b) produce a trapezoidal waveform at the transmit circuit output. Requirement b) limits the level of interference emissions that may be coupled to adjacent circuits etc. Requirement b) is calculated from the formula:

max. slew rate = $36 \times \text{min. slew rate} = 3 \times 0,8 V_o / 0,2 T_{bit} = 12 \times V_o / T_{bit}$,
where V_o is the maximum peak-to-peak output voltage (9,0 V) with a standard load.

11.4.5 Signal polarity

For a bus-powered device, the data “+” terminal shall be connected to the power “+” terminal, and the data “–” terminal shall be connected to the power “–” terminal. See Figure 54.

When transmission is enabled, a high to low transition of the Manchester encoded signal shall result in a high to low transition in V_d on the bus. A low to high transition of the Manchester encoded signal shall result in a low to high transition in V_d on the bus. The signal polarity is defined in Figure 57.

During reception, a high to low transition in V_d on the bus shall result in a high to low transition of the Manchester encoded signal. A low to high transition in V_d on the bus shall result in a low to high transition of the Manchester encoded signal.

NOTE 1 Manchester encoding is defined in 9.2.2.

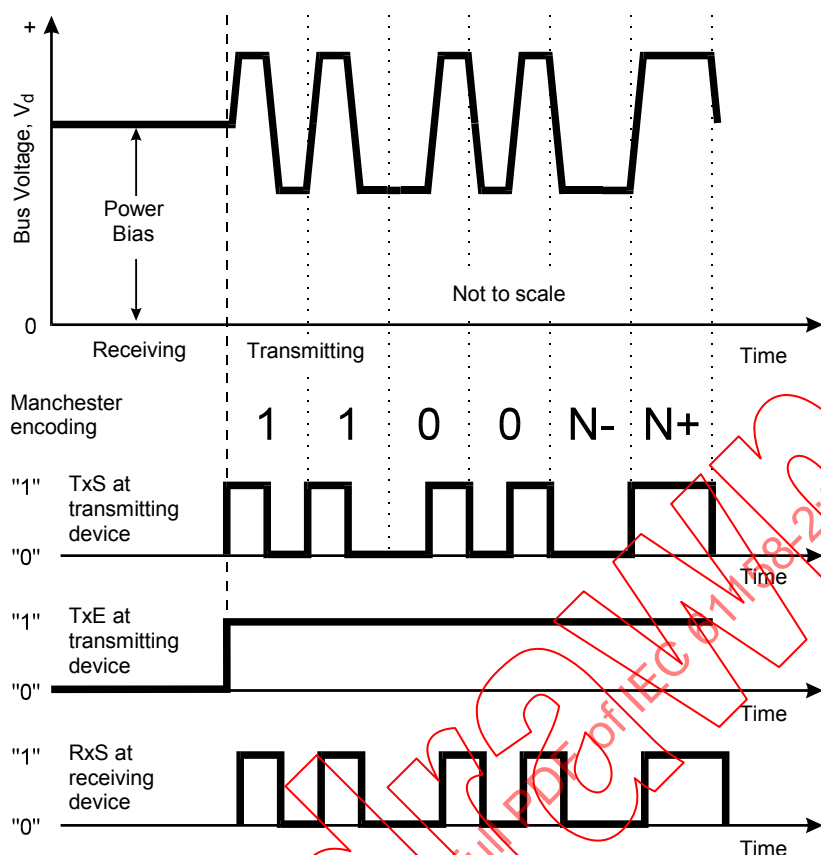


Figure 57 – Signal polarity

NOTE 2 The waveform in Figure 57 is shown to provide an example of the “1”, “0”, “N+”, and “N–” symbols. This waveform does not represent an actual PhPDU. See 9.2.2 for the encoding rules.

NOTE 3 The TxS and RxS waveforms in Figure 57 are indeterminate in the time period marked “Receiving”.

NOTE 4 The signals at the MDS-MAU interface are defined in Clause 10. The TxS, TxE, and RxS signals shown in Figure 57 are only accessible if the MDS-MAU interface is exposed.

11.5 MAU receive circuit specification

11.5.1 Summary

Table 55 summarises the specification.

Table 55 – MAU receive circuit specification summary

Receive circuit characteristics (values referred to trunk)	Limits
Input impedance, measured over the frequency range $f_{\min}$ to $f_{\max}$	$\geq 8 \text{ k}\Omega$
Sensitivity; min. peak-to-peak signal required to be accepted (see Figure 58)	700 mV
Noise rejection; max. peak-to-peak noise required to be rejected (see Figure 58)	280 mV
Maximum received bit cell jitter (zero crossing-point deviation, see Figure 55)	$\pm 0,10 \text{ T}_{\text{bit}}$

11.5.2 Input impedance

The differential input impedance of an MAU receive circuit shall be no less than D_{inmin} over the frequency range $f_{\min}$ to $f_{\max}$. This requirement shall be met in the power-off and power-on (not transmitting) states and in transition between these states. This impedance shall be measured at the communication element terminals using a sine wave with a signal amplitude greater than the receiver sensitivity threshold and lower than 9,0 V peak-to-peak.

NOTE The requirement for $\geq D_{in\_min}$ input impedance during power-up and power-down may be met by automatic disabling of the transmitter during these periods.

11.5.3 Receiver sensitivity and noise rejection

An MAU receive circuit shall be capable of accepting an input signal of amplitude no less than 700 mV peak-to-peak, including overvoltage and oscillation (see "signal level" together with "positive amplitude" and "negative amplitude", all in Figure 58).

An MAU receive circuit shall not respond to an input signal with a peak-to-peak amplitude which does not exceed 280 mV (see "noise rejection" in Figure 58).

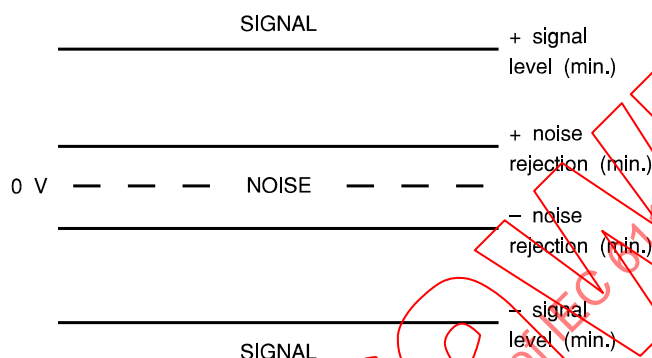


Figure 58 – Receiver sensitivity and noise rejection

11.5.4 Received bit cell jitter

The receive circuit shall accept a Manchester encoded signal transmitted in accordance with 11.2 and 11.4. In addition, the receiver shall work properly with signals with the time variation between any two adjacent signal transition points (zero crossing) of $\pm 0,10 T_{bit}$ or less. See Figure 56.

NOTE 1 This specification does not preclude the use of receivers that perform better than this specification.

NOTE 2 Depending on the symbol pattern, the nominal time between zero crossings may be $0,5 T_{bit}$ or $1,0 T_{bit}$.

NOTE 3 There is no requirement to reject a signal with a specified time variation value. The receiver reports an error when the received bit cell jitter exceeds the receiver's ability to reliably decode signaling.

11.5.5 Interference susceptibility and error rates

NOTE 1 When a fieldbus is operating in a variety of standard noise environments the probability that an Application Layer User Data Unit contains an undetected error, due to operation of the conveying Physical and DLL entities, should be less than 1 in 10^{12} (1 error in 20 years at 1 600 messages/s). A communication element is regarded as conforming to this theoretical requirement when it meets the following interference susceptibility requirements. These are specified by a detected frame error rate which is derived by using a ratio of detected to undetected errors of 10^6 . This should be readily achievable with a 16 bit Frame Check Sequence at the DLL.

A communication element which includes an MAU, operating with frames containing 64 random user data bits, with maximum frame rate and with signals of 1,4 V pk-pk amplitude, shall produce no more than three detected frame errors in 3×10^6 frames during operation in the presence of common-mode voltage or Gaussian noise as follows:

- a common-mode sinusoidal signal of any frequency from 63 Hz to $2 f_r$, with an amplitude of 4 V r.m.s. and from 47 Hz to 63 Hz with an amplitude of 250 V r.m.s.;
- a common-mode d.c. signal of ± 10 V;
- white Gaussian additive differential noise in the frequency band 1 kHz to $4 f_r$, with a noise density of 30 $\mu V/\sqrt{Hz}$ r.m.s.

NOTE 2 The common-mode voltage and Gaussian noise specifications are for receive circuit conformance testing with balanced loads and are not indicative of system installation practice.

A communication element which includes an MAU, operating with frames containing 64 random user data bits, at an average of 1 600 messages/s, with signals of 1,4 V peak-to-peak

amplitude, shall produce no more than six detected frame errors in 100 000 frames during operation in the presence of electromagnetic or electrical interference environments as follows:

- 1) 10 V/m electromagnetic field as specified in IEC 61000-4-3 at severity level 3;
- 2) electrical fast transient as specified in IEC 61000-4-4 at severity level 3.

The above error rate specification shall also be satisfied after but not during operation in the following noise environments:

- i) 8 kV electrostatic discharge to exposed metalwork as specified in IEC 61000-4-2 at severity level 3. If the device suffers temporary loss of function or performance as a result of this test it shall recover from any such loss without operator intervention within 3 s after the end of the test;
- ii) high-frequency disturbance tests as specified in IEC 60255-22-1:1988, Test voltage class III (2,5 kV and 1 kV peak values of first half-cycle in longitudinal and transverse mode respectively). If the device suffers temporary loss of function or performance because of this test, it shall recover from any such loss without operator intervention within 3 s after the end of the test.

11.6 Jabber inhibit

The MAU shall contain a self-interrupt capability to inhibit transmitted signals from reaching the medium. Hardware within the MAU (with no external message other than the detection of output signals or leakage via the transmit function) shall provide a window of between 5 000 T_{bit} and 15 000 T_{bit} during which time a normal frame may be transmitted. If the frame length exceeds this duration, the jabber inhibit function shall inhibit further output signals from reaching the medium and shall disable echo on the RxS line (see 10.2.2.2) to indicate jabber detection to the MDS.

For a data rate of 31,25 kbit/s, the MAU shall reset the self-interrupt function after a period of $3 \text{ s} \pm 50 \%$.

NOTE 1 This inhibits bus traffic for no more than 8 % ($\approx 1/12,5$) of the available time.

For a data rate of 1 Mbit/s or greater, the MAU shall reset the self-interrupt function after a period of $500\,000 T_{bit} \pm 50 \%$.

NOTE 2 This inhibits bus traffic for no more than 3 % ($\approx 1/32$) of the available time.

11.7 Power distribution

11.7.1 Overview

Voltage mode MAUs operating at a data rate of $\leq 2,5$ Mbit/s can optionally receive power via the signal conductors or be separately powered. Voltage mode MAUs operating at a data rate of $> 2,5$ Mbit/s are separately powered. A separately powered device can be connected to a powered fieldbus.

For ease of reference, the requirements of 11.7 for network-powered devices and network power supplies are summarized in Table 56 and Table 57, respectively.

Table 56 – Network powered device characteristics

Network powered device characteristics	Limits		
	31,25 kbit/s	1 Mbit/s	> 1 Mbit/s
Maximum rate of change of quiescent current (non-transmitting)	1 mA/μs	0,05 mA/μs	0,1 mA/μs
Operating voltage	9,0 V to 32,0 V d.c.		
Minimum withstand voltage, either polarity, for no damage	35 V		

Table 57 – Network power supply requirements

Network power supply requirements	Limits
Output voltage	≤ 32 V d.c.
Output ripple and noise	See Figure 59
Output impedance, measured over the frequency range $f_{\min}$ to $f_{\max}$	≥ $Z_{\min}$

11.7.2 Supply voltage

A fieldbus device claiming conformance to this clause shall be capable of operating within a voltage range of 9 V to 32 V d.c. between the two conductors including ripple. The device shall withstand a minimum voltage of ±35 V d.c. without damage.

A fieldbus device claiming conformance to this clause shall conform to the requirements of this clause of this standard when powered by a supply with the following specifications:

- a) The output voltage of the power supply shall be 32 V d.c. maximum including ripple.

NOTE 1 The voltage of the power supply added to the open circuit transmitter output voltage should be less than the limit specified by the local regulatory agency for the particular implementation.

- b) The output impedance of the power supply shall be ≥8 kΩ over the frequency range $f_{\min}$ to $f_{\max}$.
- c) The breakdown requirements of the isolation of the signal circuit and the power distribution circuit from ground and from each other shall be in accordance with IEC 61131-2.

NOTE 2 The equivalent test voltage is to be applied between independent isolated circuits or between isolated circuits and accessible conducting parts. For circuits with a nominal voltage ≤50 V d.c. or r.m.s., the equivalent test voltages at sea level are 444 V r.m.s., 635 V d.c. and 635 V peak impulse test. For circuits with a nominal voltage between 150 V and 300 V r.m.s., the equivalent test voltages at sea level are 2 260 V r.m.s., 3 175 V d.c. and 3 175 V peak impulse test.

- d) When a power supply powers two or more segments, the isolation impedance to each segment shall be split ±10 % between the two signal conductors of the segment.

11.7.3 Powered via signal conductors

A fieldbus device claiming conformance to this clause that is powered via the signal conductors shall conform to the requirements of this clause when operating with maximum levels of power supply ripple and noise as follows:

- a) 30 mV peak-to-peak over the frequency range $f_{\min}$ to $f_{\max}$;
- b) 2 V peak-to-peak over the frequency range 47 Hz to 63 Hz;
- c) 300 mV peak-to-peak at frequencies greater than 12,5 f_r , up to a maximum of 50 MHz;
- d) levels at intermediate frequencies generally in accordance with Figure 59, which gives the level and the frequencies for power via signal conductors.

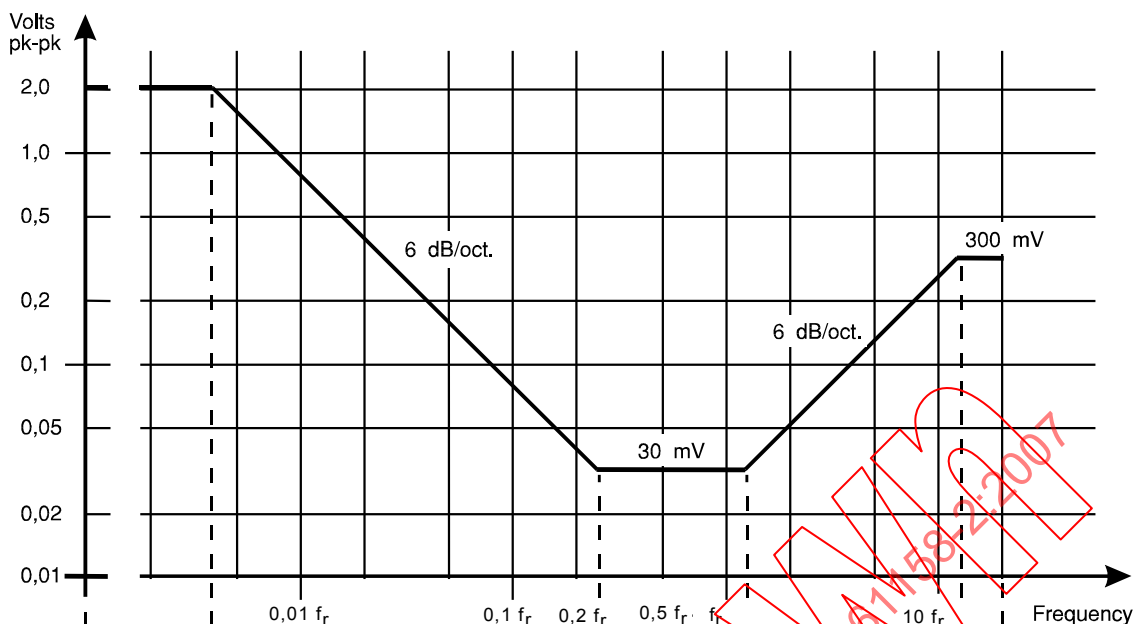


Figure 59 – Power supply ripple and noise

The device shall have a maximum rate of change of quiescent current in the non-transmitting condition of 0,1 mA/μs.

NOTE This requirement limits the effect of power transients on the signals.

11.7.4 Powered separately from signal conductors

NOTE Power distribution to non-bus-powered fieldbus devices is by separate conductors feeding local power supplies or regulators. These conductors can be in a separate cable or in the same cable as the signal conductors.

A separately powered fieldbus device claiming conformance to this clause shall draw no more than 100 μA direct current from the signal conductors, nor shall it supply more than 100 μA direct current to the signal conductors when not transmitting.

11.7.5 Electrical isolation

All fieldbus devices, whether separately powered or powered via the signal conductors, shall provide low-frequency isolation between ground and the fieldbus trunk cable.

NOTE 1 This may be by isolation of the entire device from ground or by use of a transformer, opto-coupler or some other isolating component between trunk cable and device.

A combined power supply and communication element shall not require electrical isolation.

For electrical installations providing different grounds, the isolation impedance measured between the shield of the fieldbus cable and the fieldbus device ground shall be greater than 250 kΩ at all frequencies below 63 Hz.

The isolation shall be bypassed at high frequencies by capacitance, such that the impedance measured between the shield of the fieldbus cable and the fieldbus device ground shall be less than 15 Ω between 3 MHz and 100 MHz.

NOTE 2 The capacitance between ground and trunk cable shield necessary to meet both these requirements can be any value between 3,5 nF and 10,6 nF.

For electrical installations providing a common ground in conformance with IEC 60364-4-41 and IEC 60364-5-54, the shield of the fieldbus cable and the fieldbus device ground may be directly connected.

The maximum unbalanced capacitance to ground from either input terminal of a device shall not exceed 250 pF.

The breakdown requirements of the isolation of the signal circuit and the power distribution circuit from ground and from each other shall be in accordance with IEC 61131-2.

NOTE 3 The equivalent test voltage is applied between independent isolated circuits or between isolated circuits and accessible conducting parts. For circuits which is powered from a supply with rated voltage ≤ 50 V d.c. or r.m.s., the equivalent test voltages at sea-level are 444 V r.m.s., 635 V d.c. and 635 V peak impulse test. For a device which is powered from a supply with rated voltage between 150 V and 300 V r.m.s., the equivalent test voltages at sea-level are 2 260 V r.m.s., 3 175 V d.c. and 3 175 V peak impulse test.

11.8 Medium specifications

11.8.1 Connector

Cable connectors, if used, shall be in accordance with this standard (see Annex A). Field termination techniques such as screw or blade terminals and permanent terminations (splices) may also be used.

11.8.2 Standard test cable

The cable used for testing fieldbus devices with a 150 Ω voltage-mode MAU for conformance to the requirements of this clause of this standard, shall be a single twisted-pair cable with overall shield meeting the following minimum requirements at 25 °C:

- a) $Z_0 = 150 \Omega \pm 10 \%$ over the range $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$;
- b) maximum attenuation at $,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$, as specified in Table 58;
- c) maximum capacitive unbalance to shield = 1,5 nF/km
- d) maximum d.c. resistance (per conductor) = 57,1 Ω /km;
- e) conductor cross-sectional area (wire size) = nominal 0,33 mm²;
- f) minimum resistivity between either conductor and shield = 16 G Ω km;
- g) minimum shield coverage shall be 95 %

Table 58 – Test cable attenuation limits

Bit rate	Maximum attenuation at	
	0,25 f_r	1,25 f_r
31,25 kbit/s	1,5 dB	3 dB
1 Mbit/s	6,5 dB	13 dB
2,5 Mbit/s	10 dB	20 dB
5 Mbit/s	13 dB	26 dB
10 Mbit/s	17 dB	37 dB
25 Mbit/s	26 dB	60 dB

NOTE The preceding specification is for conformance testing an MAU. Other types of cable may be used in real installations (see Annex B.) Cables with improved specifications may enable increased trunk length or superior interference immunity or may be required to meet environmental or installation conditions. Conversely, cables with inferior specifications may be used subject to length limitations for both trunk and spurs, plus possible non-conformance to the RFI/EMI susceptibility requirements.

11.8.3 Coupler

The coupler, as shown in Figure 60, shall provide one or several point(s) of connection to the trunk. It is generally integrated with a fieldbus device.

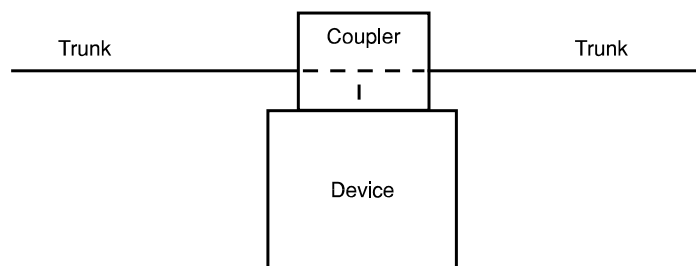


Figure 60 – Fieldbus coupler

A passive coupler may contain any or all of the optional elements as described below:

- a) a transformer, to provide galvanic isolation and impedance transformation between trunk and device;
- b) connectors, to provide easy connection to trunk.

Active couplers, which require external power supplies, contain components for signal amplification and re-transmission. The transmit level and timing requirements shall conform to 11.4.

11.8.4 Splices

NOTE A splice is any part of the network in which the characteristic impedance of the network cable is not preserved. This is possibly due to separation of the cable conductors, removal of the cable shield, change of wire gauge or type, attachment to terminal strips, etc. A practical definition of a splice is therefore any part of the network that is not a continuous length of the specified medium.

The continuity of all conductors of the cable shall be maintained in a splice.

11.8.5 Terminator

A terminator shall be located at both ends of the trunk cable, connected from one signal conductor to the other. No connection shall be made between terminator and cable shield.

For test purposes, using the cable specified in 11.8.2, the terminator shall have an impedance value of $150\ \Omega \pm 2\%$ over the overall frequency range 625 kHz to 31,25 MHz.

NOTE In practical implementations this value would be selected to be approximately equal to the average cable characteristic impedance value at the relevant frequencies to minimize transmission line reflections.

The direct current leakage through the terminator shall not exceed 100 μ A. The terminator shall be non-polarized.

11.8.6 Shielding rules

For full conformance to the noise immunity requirements of 11.5.3 it is necessary to ensure the integrity of shielding throughout the cabling, connectors and couplers by the following means:

- a) the coverage of the cable shield shall be greater than 95 % of the full cable length;
- b) shielding shall completely cover the electrical circuits in connectors, couplers, and splices.

NOTE Deviation from these shielding rules may degrade noise immunity

11.8.7 Grounding (earthing) rules

NOTE 1 Grounding (earthing) means permanently connected to earth through sufficiently low impedance and with sufficient current-carrying capability to prevent voltage build-up which might result in undue hazard to connected equipment or persons. Zero volts (common) lines may be connected to ground where they are galvanically isolated from the fieldbus trunk.

Fieldbus devices shall be required to function to the requirements of this clause with the mid-point of one terminator or one inductive coupler connected directly to ground.

Fieldbus devices shall not connect either conductor of the twisted pair to ground at any point in the network. Signals shall be applied and preserved differentially throughout the network.

NOTE 2 It is standard practice for the shield of the fieldbus trunk cable (if applicable) to be effectively grounded at one point along the length of the cable. For this reason fieldbus devices should allow d.c. isolation of the cable shield from ground. It is also standard practice to connect the signal conductors to ground in a balanced manner at the same point, e.g. by using the center tap of a terminator or coupling transformer. For bus-powered systems the grounding of the shield and balanced signal conductors should be close to the power supply unit. Capacitive coupling between the shield or the balanced signal conductors and device local ground for EMI control is permitted.

11.8.8 Color coding of cables

NOTE Regional practice should be considered in the choice of cable colors.

Within North America, colors of inner cable conductors and outer cable sheath (jacket) should be assigned as specified in Table 59.

Table 59 – Recommended color coding of cables in North America

Color for inner conductors	
'+' (positive voltage) inner conductor	Orange, or red/orange/brown end of the spectrum
'–' (negative voltage) inner conductor	Blue, or blue/violet end of the spectrum
Shield conductor (which may be earthed)	Bare, clear, or green
Color for outer sheath (jacket)	
General purpose construction rules	Orange
Non-incendive construction rules	Orange/blue stripe
IS construction rules	Blue or blue/orange stripe or blue/black stripe

12 Types 1 and 3: Medium attachment unit: 31,25 kbit/s, voltage-mode with low-power option, bus- and tree-topology, 100 Ω wire medium

NOTE Type 3 uses this MAU only for synchronous transmission.

12.1 General

The 31,25 kbit/s 100 Ω voltage-mode MAU simultaneously provides access to a communication network and to an optional power distribution network. Devices attached to the network communicate via the medium and may or may not be powered from it. If bus powered, power is distributed as direct voltage and current, and communication signals are superimposed on the d.c. power. In Intrinsically Safe applications, available power may limit the number of devices.

The network medium consists of a one pair cable, usually, but not always, a twisted pair. Independent of topology, all attached devices, other than possibly the transmitting device, present a high impedance to prevent significant network loading. Trapezoidal waveforms are used to reduce electromagnetic emissions.

Bus and tree topologies are supported. In either topology, a network contains one trunk cable, terminated at its ends. In the bus topology, spurs are distributed along the length of the trunk. In the tree topology, spurs are concentrated at one end of the trunk. A spur may connect more than one device to the network, with the maximum number of devices on a spur depending on spur length.

At the power frequency (d.c.), devices appear to the network as current sinks, with a limited rate of change of the supply current drawn from the medium. This prevents transient changes in load current from interfering with communication signals.

This clause specifies a low-power option that allows devices to reduce their current draw from the network when not transmitting.

To minimize oscillations and ringing on the network, the power supply impedance is specified as a function of the bus terminator impedance such that the total network reactance is minimized over the frequency range 50 Hz to 39 kHz.

12.2 Transmitted bit rate

The average bit rate, BR, shall be 31,25 kbit/s $\pm$ 0,2 %, averaged over a frame having a minimum length of 16 octets. The instantaneous bit time, T_{bit} , shall be 32 μs $\pm$ 0,9 μs .

12.3 Network specifications

12.3.1 Components

An MAU operates in a network composed of the following components:

- a) wire cable;
- b) devices (containing at least one communication element);
- c) couplers;
- d) terminators.

The network may optionally include the following components:

- e) connectors;
- f) power supplies;
- g) devices which include power supplies;

- h) intrinsic safety barriers.

12.3.2 Topologies

A wire MAU shall operate in a network with an acyclic nominally linear or tree-like bus topology, consisting of a trunk, terminated at each end as specified in 12.8.5, to which communication elements are connected via couplers and spurs. A tree topology with all the communication elements located at the ends of the trunk is regarded as a special case of a bus for the purpose of this clause. Each communication element shall be connected in parallel with the trunk cable.

The coupler and communication element may be integrated in one device (i.e. a zero length spur). Several communication elements may be connected to the trunk at one point using a multi-port coupler. An active coupler may be used to extend a spur to a length that requires termination to avoid reflections and distortions. Active repeaters may be used to extend the length of the trunk beyond that of a single segment as permitted by the network configuration rules. Branches must be considered as segments, and may make the bus non-linear. Cycles (closed loops) are never permitted.

12.3.3 Network configuration rules

An MAU that claims conformance to this clause shall meet the requirements of this clause when used in a network that complies with these rules.

Rule 1: A fieldbus shall be capable of communication between the following numbers of devices, all operating at the same bit rate:

- a) for a non IS fieldbus without power supplied via the signal conductors: between two and 32 devices;
- b) for a non IS fieldbus with power supplied via the signal conductors: between two and the number of devices which can be powered via the signal conductors, assuming that a minimum of 120 mA (aggregate) shall be available to devices at the remote end from the power supply, communicating with one device at the power supply end drawing 10 mA;
- c) for an IS fieldbus: between two and the number of devices which can be powered via the signal conductors, assuming that a minimum of 40 mA (aggregate) shall be available to devices in the hazardous area.

NOTE 1 This rule does not preclude the use of more than the specified number of devices in an installed system. Since the device power consumption is not specified, the number of bus-powered devices cannot be specified.
Item b) assumes that the minimum power supply voltage is 20 V d.c.
Item c) assumes that the IS barrier operates with a 19 V d.c. output.

Rule 2: A fully loaded (maximum number of connected devices) fieldbus segment shall have a total cable length, including spurs, between any two devices, of up to 1 900 m.

NOTE 2 Support of this maximum cable length is a requirement for conformance to this clause, but this does not preclude the use of longer lengths in an installed system.

Rule 3: The total number of waveform regenerations by repeaters and active couplers between any two devices is repeater implementation dependent.

NOTE 3 Prior editions of this standard limited this total number to four.

Rule 4: The maximum propagation delay between any two devices shall not exceed $20 T_{\text{bit}}$.

NOTE 4 For efficiency of the network, that part of the turnaround time of any device on the network caused by a PhE between the end of a received frame and the beginning of the transmitted frame containing an associated immediate response should not exceed five bit times, of which no more than two bit times should be due to the MAU. As it is not mandatory to expose the DLL – PhL interface or the MDS – MAU interface, that part of the turnaround time of a fieldbus device caused by the PhL or the MAU cannot be specified or conformance tested.

Rule 5: The fieldbus shall be capable of continued operation while a device is being connected or disconnected. Data errors induced during connection or disconnection shall be detected.

Rule 6: Failure of any communication element or spur (with the exception of a short circuit, low impedance, or jabber) shall not interfere with transactions between other communication elements for more than 1 ms.

Rule 7: In polarity sensitive systems, the medium wire pairs shall have distinctly marked conductors that uniquely identify individual conductors. Consistent polarization shall be maintained at all connection points.

Rule 8: The degradation of the electrical characteristics of the signal, between any two devices, due to attenuation, attenuation distortion and mismatching distortion shall be limited to the values indicated below.

a) Signal attenuation: The configuration of the bus (trunk and spur lengths, number of devices, IS barriers, galvanic isolators, and possible matching devices) shall be such that the attenuation between any two devices at f_r (31,25 kHz) shall not exceed 10,5 dB.

b) Attenuation distortion: The configuration of the bus (trunk and spur lengths and number of devices, IS barriers, and galvanic isolators) shall be such that between any two devices:

$$0 \leq [\text{Attenuation}(1,25 f_r) - \text{Attenuation}(0,25 f_r)] \leq 6 \text{ dB}$$

Attenuation shall be monotonic non-decreasing for all frequencies from $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz to 39 kHz).

c) Mismatching distortion: Mismatching (due to any effect, including one open circuit spur of maximum length) on the bus shall be such that, at any point along the trunk, in the frequency band $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz to 39 kHz):

$$|Z - Z_{fr}| / |Z + Z_{fr}| \leq 0,2$$

where Z_{fr} is the impedance of the trunk cable at frequency f_r (31,25 kHz) and Z is the parallel combination of Z_{fr} and the load impedance at the coupler.

The concentration of couplers shall be less than 15 per 250 m.

NOTE 5 This rule minimizes restrictions on trunk and spur length, number of devices etc. by specifying only the transmission limitations imposed by combinations of these factors. Different combinations may be used depending on the needs of the application.

Rule 9: The following rules shall apply to systems implemented with redundant media:

- a) each channel (cable) shall comply with the network configuration rules;
- b) there shall not be a non-redundant segment between two redundant segments;
- c) repeaters shall also be redundant;
- d) if the devices of the system are configured (by Systems management) to transmit on more than one channel simultaneously then the propagation time difference between any two devices on any two channels shall not exceed five bit times;

NOTE 6 This period may be extended, but not reduced, by Systems management as given in Table 4 (see 6.2.2.2 and 9.2.9).

- e) channel numbers and association with the physical transmission media shall be maintained consistently throughout the fieldbus, i.e. channels 1, 2, 3... from Systems management shall always connect to physical channels 1, 2, 3...;

Rule 10: For a bus-powered fieldbus segment, the voltage available to all devices, including ripple and the d.c. component of the voltage drop caused by signaling, shall be within the range of 9,0 V to 32,0 V d.c.

NOTE 7 The d.c. component of the voltage drop caused by signaling is dependent upon the configuration of the network. The d.c. component is caused by the step change in device current through the network resistance (cable resistance, IS barrier resistance, etc.).

12.3.4 Power distribution rules for network configuration

See 11.3.4.

12.4 MAU transmit circuit specification

12.4.1 Summary

For ease of reference, the requirements of 12.2 and 12.4 are summarized in Table 60 and Table 61.

Table 60 – MAU transmit level specification summary

Transmit level characteristics, values referred to trunk (but measured using test load as shown in Figure 54)	Limits
Output level (peak-to-peak, see Figure 55) With test load (0,5 nominal impedance of the trunk cable at f_r (31,25 kHz))	0,75 V to 1 V $50 \Omega \pm 1 \%$
Maximum positive and negative amplitude difference (signaling bias) as shown in Figure 56	± 50 mV
Output level; with one terminator removed (peak-to-peak) with test load (nominal impedance of the trunk cable at f_r (31,25 kHz))	0,75 V to 2,0 V $100 \Omega \pm 1 \%$
Maximum output level; open circuit (peak-to-peak)	35 V
Maximum output signal distortion; i.e. overvoltage, ringing and droop (see Figure 55)	$\pm 10 \%$
Quiescent transmitter output; i.e. transmitter noise (measured over the frequency band 1 kHz to 100 kHz)	≤ 1 mV (r.m.s.)

Table 61 – MAU transmit timing specification summary

Transmit timing characteristics, values referred to trunk (but measured using test load as shown in Figure 54)	Limits for 31,25 kbit/s (bus powered and/or IS)
Transmitted bit rate	31,25 kbit/s $\pm 0,2 \%$
Instantaneous bit time	$32 \mu\text{s} \pm 0,9 \mu\text{s}$
Rise and fall times (10 % to 90 % of peak-to-peak signal, see Figure 55)	$\leq 25 \%$ T_{bit}
Slew rate (at any point from 10 % to 90 % of peak-to-peak signal)	$\leq 0,2$ V/ μs
Maximum transmitted bit cell jitter (zero-crossing point deviation, see Figure 56)	$\pm 2,5 \%$ T_{bit}
Transmit enable/disable time (i.e. time during which the output waveform may not meet the transmit requirements)	$\leq 2,0$ T_{bit}

12.4.2 MAU test configuration

Figure 54 shows the configuration that shall be used for testing MAUs.

Differential signal voltage: $V_d = V_a - V_b$.

Except where otherwise stated in a specific requirement, test load resistance $R = 50 \Omega$ (0,5 nominal impedance of the trunk cable at f_r (31,25 kHz)) and $C = 2 \mu\text{F}$ ($2 \times$ the capacitance of one terminator).

Data "+" terminal connected to the power "+" terminal and data "-" terminal connected to the power "-" terminal.

NOTE See 12.7 for the power supply specification and 12.8.5 for the terminator specification.

12.4.3 MAU output level requirements

Figure 55 describes the output form of the signal for the twisted-pair voltage output level requirements.

NOTE 1 Figure 55 shows an example of the a.c. component of one cycle of a fieldbus waveform, illustrating some key items from the transmit circuit specification. Only signal voltages are shown; this diagram takes no account of power supply voltages.

The MAU transmit circuit shall conform to the following output level requirements, all amplitudes being measured at the estimated mid-point between any peaks or troughs in the top and bottom of the waveform ("mid-point" in Figure 55):

- a) the output voltage across the test load after transformer step up/down (if applicable) shall be between 0,75 V and 1,0 V peak-to-peak, with a load resistance of $50 \Omega \pm 1 \%$ ("min o/p" in Figure 55);
- b) the output voltage at the trunk, or at the transmit terminals, with a load resistance of $100 \Omega \pm 1 \%$ (i.e. with one trunk terminator removed) shall be between 0,75 V and 2,0 V peak-to-peak ("max. o/p one terminator removed" in Figure 55);
- c) the output voltage at the trunk, or at the transmit terminals, with any load including an open circuit shall not exceed 35 V in either polarity. For test purposes, open circuit shall be defined as a load of 100 k Ω resistance in parallel with 15 pF capacitance;
- d) during transmission a device shall not suffer permanent failure when a load resistance of $\leq 1 \Omega$ is applied for 1 s;
- e) the difference between positive amplitude and negative amplitude, measured as shown in Figure 55, shall not exceed ± 50 mV peak;
- f) the output noise from an MAU which is receiving or not powered shall not exceed 1 mV r.m.s., measured differentially over a frequency band of 1 kHz to 100 kHz, referred to the trunk;
- g) the differential voltage across the test load shall be such that the voltage monotonically changes between 10 % and 90 % of peak-to-peak value. Thereafter, the signal voltage shall not vary more than $\pm 10 \%$ of peak-to-peak value until the next transition occurs. This permitted variation shall include all forms of output signal distortion, i.e. overvoltage, ringing and droop.

NOTE 2 During transmission, the output voltage developed at the device terminals may increase substantially over that specified in this subclause, but within the limit specified by 12.4.3 c), due to the affects of the combined series impedance of the device, the spur cable, and any bus protective device such as that described in 12.8.3 c).

12.4.4 Output timing requirements

An MAU transmit circuit shall conform to the following output timing requirements:

- a) transmitted bit cell jitter shall not exceed $\pm 0,025 T_{\text{bit}}$ from the ideal zero crossing point, measured with respect to the previous zero crossing (see Figure 56);
- b) the transmit circuit shall turn on, i.e. the signal shall rise from below the transmit circuit maximum output noise level as specified in 12.4.3 f) to full output level, in less than $2,0 T_{\text{bit}}$. The waveform corresponding to the third and later bit times shall be as specified in Figure 55;
- c) the transmit circuit shall turn off, i.e. the signal shall fall from full output level to below the transmit circuit maximum output noise level as specified in 12.4.3 f), in less than $2,0 T_{\text{bit}}$. The time for the transmit circuit to return to its off state impedance shall not exceed $4 T_{\text{bit}}$. For the purposes of testing, this requirement shall be met with the transmit circuit test configuration of 12.4.2 with the equivalent capacitance of a maximum length cable across the DUT terminals.

NOTE 1 This requirement is to ensure that the transition of the transmit circuit from active to passive leaves the line capacitance fully discharged.

- d) rise and fall times, measured from 10 % to 90 % of the peak-to-peak signal amplitude shall not exceed $0,25 T_{\text{bit}}$ (see Figure 55);
- e) slew rate shall not exceed 0,2 V/ μ s measured at any point in the range 10 % to 90 % of the peak-to-peak signal amplitude (see Figure 55).

NOTE 2 Requirements d) and e) produce a trapezoidal waveform at the transmit circuit output. Requirement d) limits the level of interference emissions that may be coupled to adjacent circuits, etc. Requirement d) is calculated from the formula:

max. slew rate = $2 \times \text{min. slew rate} = 2 \times 0,8 V_o / 0,25 T_{\text{bit}} = 6,4 \times V_o / T_{\text{bit}}$,
 where V_o is the maximum peak-to-peak output voltage (1,0 V) with a standard load.

12.4.5 Signal polarity

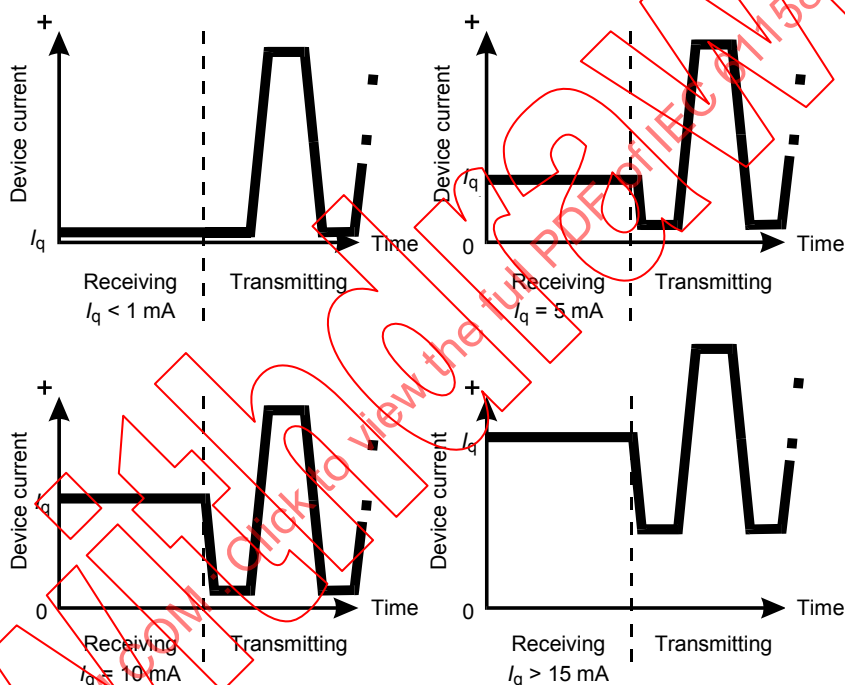
See 11.4.5.

12.4.6 Transition from receive to transmit

When a device starts to transmit, the output waveform shall immediately comply with the requirements of 12.4.3.

NOTE There is no requirement to ramp the device current from its receive value to the transmit value.

Figure 61 shows four examples of different values of device quiescent current.



NOTE This figure is included in this standard for explanatory purposes and does not imply a specific implementation.

Figure 61 – Transition from receiving to transmitting

12.5 MAU receive circuit specification

12.5.1 Summary

Table 62 summarises the specification.

Table 62 – MAU receive circuit specification summary

Receive circuit characteristics (values referred to trunk)	Limits (bus powered and/or IS)
Input impedance, measured over the frequency range $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$	$\geq 3 \text{ k}\Omega$
Sensitivity; min. peak-to-peak signal required to be accepted (see Figure 58)	150 mV
Noise rejection; max. peak-to-peak noise required to be rejected (see Figure 58)	75 mV
Maximum received bit cell jitter (zero crossing-point deviation, see Figure 55)	$\pm 0,10 \text{ T}_{\text{bit}}$

12.5.2 Input impedance

The differential input impedance of an MAU receive circuit shall be no less than $3 \text{ k}\Omega$ over the frequency range $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz to 39 kHz). This requirement shall apply after a 20 ms startup time following connection to the network or application of power to the network. Independently powered devices, and network-powered devices capable of being turned off while connected to the network, shall meet this requirement in the power-on and power-off states, and in transition between those states. This impedance shall be measured at the communication element terminals using a sine wave with a signal amplitude greater than the receiver sensitivity threshold and lower than 2,0 V peak-to-peak.

NOTE 1 The requirement for $\geq 3 \text{ k}\Omega$ input impedance during power-up and power-down may be met by automatic disabling of the transmitter during these periods.

NOTE 2 Devices with fault disconnection electronic circuits can have impedances less than the specified amount under fault conditions.

12.5.3 Receiver sensitivity and noise rejection

An MAU receive circuit shall be capable of accepting an input signal of amplitude no less than 150 mV peak-to-peak, including overvoltage and oscillation (see "signal level" together with "positive amplitude" and "negative amplitude", all in Figure 58).

An MAU receive circuit shall not respond to an input signal with a peak-to-peak amplitude which does not exceed 75 mV (see "noise rejection" in Figure 58).

12.5.4 Received bit cell jitter

The receive circuit shall accept a Manchester encoded signal transmitted in accordance with 12.2 and 12.4. In addition, the receiver shall work properly with signals with the time variation between any two adjacent signal transition points (zero crossing) of $\pm 0,10 \text{ T}_{\text{bit}}$ or less. See Figure 56.

NOTE 1 This does not preclude the use of receivers that perform better than this specification.

NOTE 2 Depending on the symbol pattern, the nominal time between zero crossings may be one-half or one bit time.

NOTE 3 There is no requirement to reject a signal with a specified time variation value. The receiver reports an error when the received bit cell jitter exceeds the receiver's ability to reliably decode signaling.

12.5.5 Interference susceptibility and error rates

NOTE 1 When a fieldbus is operating in a variety of standard noise environments, the probability that an Application Layer User Data Unit contains an undetected error, due to operation of the conveying Physical and DLL entities, should be less than $1 \text{ in } 6 \times 10^9$ (1 error in 20 years at 10 messages/s). A communication element is regarded as conforming to this theoretical requirement when it meets the following interference susceptibility requirements. These are specified by a detected frame error rate which is derived by using a ratio of detected to undetected errors of 10^6 . This should be readily achievable with a 16 bit Frame Check Sequence at the DLL.

A communication element which includes an MAU, operating with frames containing 32 random user data bits, with maximum frame rate and with signals of 375 mV peak-to-peak amplitude, shall produce no more than 10 detected frame errors in 60 000 frames during operation in the presence of common mode voltage or Gaussian noise as follows:

- a) a common mode sinusoidal signal of any frequency from 63 Hz to 2 MHz, with an amplitude of 4 V r.m.s. and from 47 Hz to 63 Hz with an amplitude of 250 V r.m.s.;
- b) a common mode d.c. signal of ± 10 V;
- c) white Gaussian additive differential noise in the frequency band 1 kHz to 100 kHz, with a noise density of 70 $\mu\text{V}/\sqrt{\text{Hz}}$ r.m.s.

NOTE 2 The common mode voltage and Gaussian noise specifications are for receive circuit conformance testing with balanced loads and are not indicative of system installation practice.

A communication element which includes an MAU, operating with frames containing 32 random user data bits, at an average of 10 messages per second, with signals of 375 mV peak-to-peak amplitude, shall produce no more than 10 detected frame errors in 1 000 frames during operation in the presence of electromagnetic or electrical interference environments as follows:

- 1) 10 V/m electromagnetic field as specified in IEC 61000-4-3 at severity level 3;
- 2) electrical fast transient as specified in IEC 61000-4-4 at severity level 3.

The noise above error rate specification shall also be satisfied after but not during operation in the following noise environments:

- i) 8 kV electrostatic discharge to exposed metalwork as specified in IEC 61000-4-2 at severity level 3. If the device suffers temporary loss of function or performance as a result of this test it shall recover from any such loss without operator intervention within 3 s after the end of the test;
- ii) high frequency disturbance tests as specified in IEC 60255-22-1:1988, appendix E, Test voltage class III (2,5 kV and 1 kV peak values of first half-cycle in longitudinal and transverse mode respectively). If the device suffers temporary loss of function or performance because of this test, it shall recover from any such loss without operator intervention within 3 s after the end of the test.

12.6 Jabber inhibit

The MAU shall contain a self-interrupt capability to inhibit transmitted signals from reaching the medium. Hardware within the MAU (with no external message other than the detection of output signals or leakage via the transmit function) shall provide a window of between 120 ms and 240 ms during which time a normal frame may be transmitted. If the frame length exceeds this duration, the jabber inhibit function shall inhibit further output signals from reaching the medium and shall disable echo on the RxS line (see 10.2.2.2) to indicate jabber detection to the MDS.

The MAU shall reset the self-interrupt function after a period of 3,0 s $\pm$ 50 %.

NOTE This inhibits bus traffic for no more than 16 % ($\approx$ 240 ms / 1,5 s) of the available time.

12.7 Power distribution

12.7.1 General

A device can receive power via the signal conductors or can be separately powered.

A device can be certified as Intrinsically Safe with either method of receiving power.

NOTE 1 This standard does not include requirements for IS certification but seeks to exclude conditions or situations that would prevent IS certification.

NOTE 2 A separately powered device can be connected to a powered fieldbus.

For ease of reference, the requirements of 12.7 for network-powered devices and network power supplies are summarized in Table 63 and Table 64.

Table 63 – Network powered device characteristics

Network powered device characteristics	Limits for 31,25 kbit/s
Operating voltage	9,0 V to 32,0 V d.c.
Minimum withstand voltage, either polarity, for no damage	35 V
Maximum rate of change of quiescent current (non-transmitting); this requirement does not apply within the first 20 ms after the connection of the device to an operating network or within the first 20 ms after the application of power to the network.	1,0 mA/ms
Maximum current; this requirement applies during the time interval of 500 μ s to 20 ms after the connection of the device to an operating network or 500 μ s to 20 ms after the application of power to the network (see note)	Rated quiescent current plus 20 mA
NOTE 1 The first 500 μs is excluded to allow for the charging of RFI filters and other capacitance in the device. The rate of change specification applies after 20 ms. NOTE 2 The maximum current during that first 500 μs should be no more than twice the maximum current specified above, to minimize effects of the current inrush on the rest of the connected fieldbus network. NOTE 3 These exclusions have the potential to cause a "brown out" at devices powered from the same power supply during the exclusion interval. NOTE 4 These exclusions can substantially increase the current requirements of the power supply during the exclusion interval which occurs immediately after power is applied to the PHL segment.	

Table 64 – Network power supply requirements

Network power supply requirements	Limits for 31,25 kbit/s
Output voltage, non-IS	≤ 32 V d.c.
Output voltage, IS	Depends on barrier rating
Output ripple and noise	See Figure 62
Output impedance	See 12.7.4
NOTE Power supply designs should take into account the current surge at device connection or power-up permitted by Table 63.	

12.7.2 Supply voltage

A fieldbus device claiming conformance to this clause shall be capable of operating within a voltage range of 9 V to 32 V d.c. between the two conductors including ripple. The device shall withstand a minimum voltage of ± 35 V d.c. without damage.

12.7.3 Powered via signal conductors

A fieldbus device claiming conformance to this clause shall conform to the requirements of this clause when powered by a supply with the following specifications:

- The output voltage of the power supply for non IS networks shall be 32 V d.c. maximum including ripple.

NOTE 1 For IS systems the operating voltage may be limited by the certification requirements. In this case, the power supply will be located in the safe area and its output voltage will be attenuated by a safety barrier or equivalent component.

- The breakdown requirements of the isolation of the signal circuit and the power distribution circuit from ground and from each other shall be in accordance with IEC 61131-2.

NOTE 2 See 11.7.5, note 3.

- c) When a power supply powers two or more segments, the isolation impedance to each segment shall be split $\pm 10\%$ between the two signal conductors of the segment.

A fieldbus device claiming conformance to this clause that is powered via the signal conductors shall conform to the requirements of this clause when operating with maximum levels of power supply ripple and noise as follows:

- d) 16 mV peak-to-peak over the frequency range $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz to 39 kHz);
 e) 2,0 V peak-to-peak over the frequency range 47 Hz to 63 Hz for non-IS applications;
 f) 0,2 V peak-to-peak over the frequency range 47 Hz to 625 Hz for IS applications;
 g) 1,6 V peak-to-peak at frequencies greater than $125 f_r$, up to a maximum of 25 MHz;
 h) levels at intermediate frequencies generally in accordance with Figure 62.

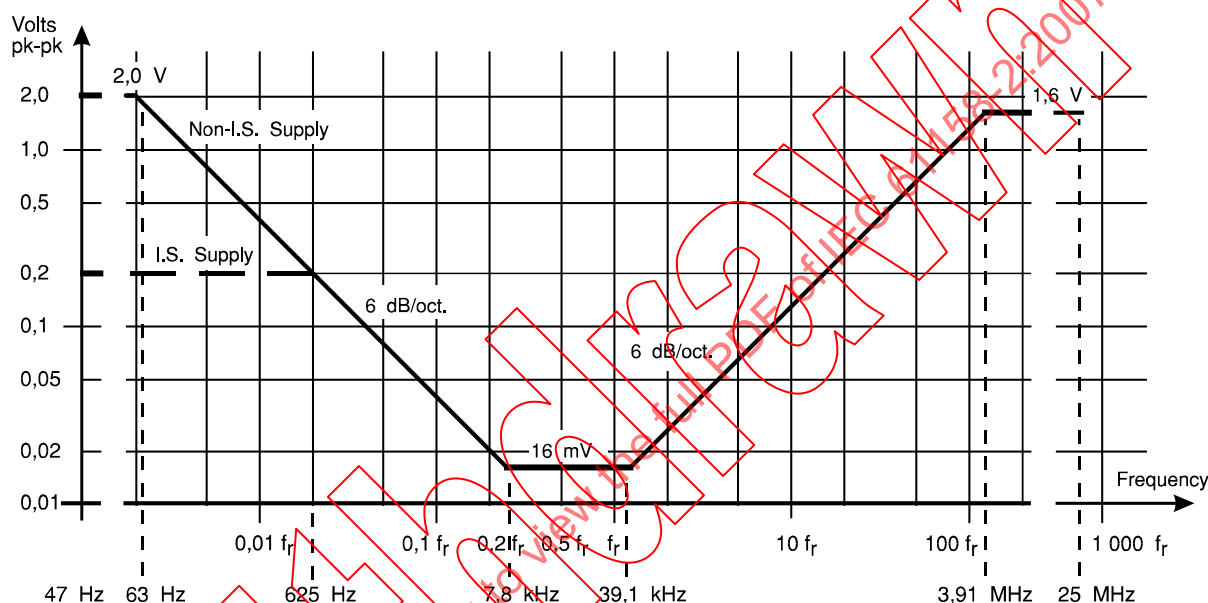


Figure 62 – Power supply ripple and noise

A fieldbus device claiming conformance to this clause which is powered via the signal conductors shall exhibit a maximum rate of change of current drawn from the network of 1 mA/ms. This requirement does not apply:

- 1) when transmitting,
- 2) within the first 20 ms after the connection of the device to an operating network,
- 3) within the first 20 ms after the application of power to the network, or
- 4) upon disconnection from the network or removal of power to the network.

A device shall be marked with its rated quiescent current. A device shall draw no more than 20 mA above its rated current from the network during the time interval of 500 μ s to 20 ms after the connection of the device to an operating network or 500 μ s to 20 ms after the application of power to the network.

NOTE 3 The first 500 μ s are excluded to allow for the charging of RFI filters and other capacitance in the device. The rate of change specification applies after 20 ms.

NOTE 4 The maximum current during that initial 500 μ s should be no more than twice the maximum current specified above, to minimize affects of the current inrush on the rest of the connected fieldbus network.

NOTE 5 These exclusions have the potential to cause a "brown out" at devices powered from the same power supply during the exclusion interval.

NOTE 6 These exclusions can substantially increase the current requirements of the power supply during the exclusion interval which occurs immediately after power is applied to the PhL segment.

12.7.4 Power supply impedance

The power supply used to provide power on the signal conductors shall comply with the impedance specification in 12.7.4.1, 12.7.4.2, or 12.7.4.3.

NOTE Power supply designs should take into account the current surge at device connection or power-up permitted by 12.7.3.

12.7.4.1 Power supply impedance for single output power supplies

For power supplies having a single output, power supply impedance shall be measured using the test circuit of Figure 63.

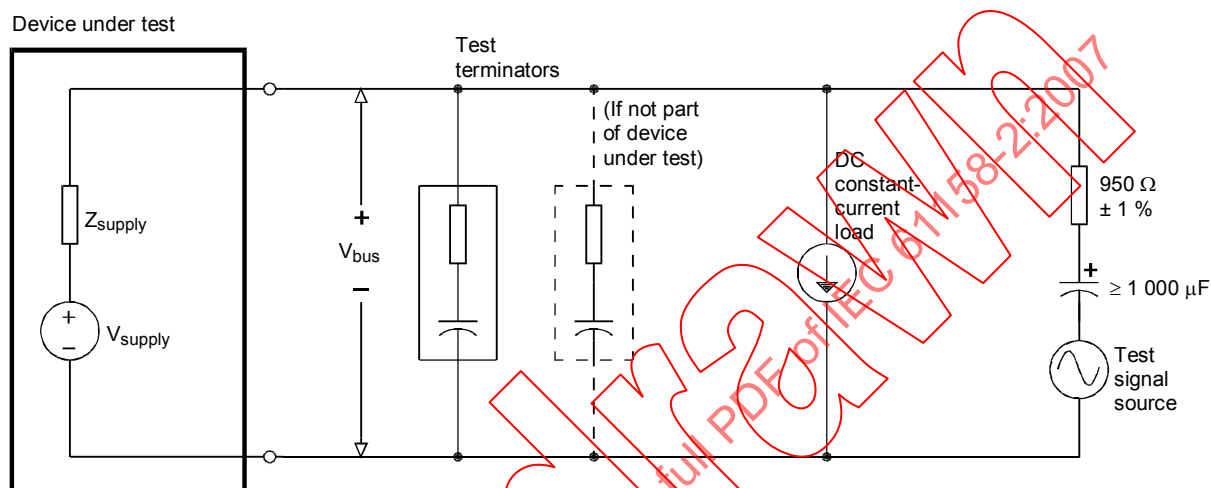


Figure 63 – Test circuit for single-output power supplies

The test terminators shown in Figure 63 shall each be $100\ \Omega \pm 1\%$ in series with $1\ \mu\text{F} \pm 5\%$. Two test terminators shall be used in the test circuit if the supply under test does not contain an internal terminator. If the supply under test contains an internal terminator that is always connected, only one test terminator shall be used in the test circuit. If the supply under test contains an internal terminator that can be optionally connected into the circuit, the supply shall be tested a) with the internal terminator and one test terminator and b) with two test terminators and no internal terminator.

If the power supply is intended to be used with an external impedance-determining network (for example, as might be the case with supplies designed to be used redundantly), the supply shall be tested with the external network connected.

The supply shall be tested at 20 %, 50 %, and 80 % of its rated output current (or 20 mA, whichever is greater), with the supply loaded by a d.c. constant-current load having 1 mA/V compliance or better (i.e. $\geq 1\ \text{k}\Omega$ impedance).

The power supply shall be tested by monitoring the a.c. bus voltage V_{BUS} while applying a $10\ V_{\text{pk-pk}}$ sine wave from a test signal source through a $950\ \Omega \pm 1\%$ resistor and a coupling capacitor of at least $1\ 000\ \mu\text{F}$.

The measured a.c. bus voltage V_{BUS} shall conform to the following.

- For non-IS power supplies intended for feeding IS barriers:** V_{BUS} shall be between $0,40\ V_{\text{pk-pk}}$ and $0,60\ V_{\text{pk-pk}}$ at all frequencies from 50 Hz to 39 kHz.
- For IS power supplies, and for non-IS power supplies not intended for feeding IS barriers:** V_{BUS} shall be between $0,40\ V_{\text{pk-pk}}$ and $0,60\ V_{\text{pk-pk}}$ from 3 kHz to 39 kHz, and shall not increase or decrease at a rate greater than 20 dB per decade at any frequency from 50 Hz to 3 kHz.

NOTE It is acceptable for the functions of power supply and terminator to be combined as long as the combination is electrically equivalent to the independent devices meeting the requirements of this clause, and if the network configuration rules of 12.3 are followed.

Power supplies not intended for feeding IS barriers shall be marked “Not for use with IS barriers”.

12.7.4.2 Power distribution through an IS barrier

Intrinsic safety barrier output impedance shall be defined in terms of its frequency dependent characteristics when connected in the test circuit of Figure 64.

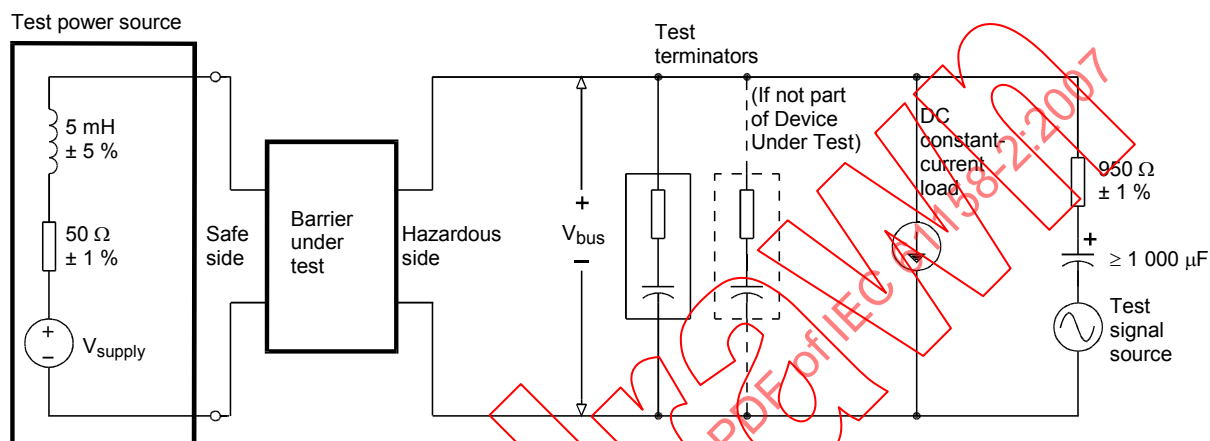


Figure 64 – Test circuit for power distribution through an IS barrier

The test power source shown in Figure 64 consists of a low-impedance d.c. voltage source in series with $5\text{ mH} \pm 5\%$ and $50\ \Omega \pm 1\%$. The test terminators shall each be $100\ \Omega \pm 1\%$ in series with $1\ \mu\text{F} \pm 5\%$. If the barrier contains an internal terminator, the barrier shall be tested with one test terminator. Otherwise, the barrier shall be tested with two test terminators.

The barrier shall be tested at 20 %, 50 %, and 80 % of rated output current (or 20 mA, whichever is greater), when loaded by a d.c. constant-current load having 1 mA/V compliance or better (i.e. $\geq 1\text{ k}\Omega$ impedance).

The barrier shall be tested by monitoring the bus voltage V_{BUS} while applying a $10\text{ V}_{\text{pk-pk}}$ sine wave from a test signal source through a $950\ \Omega \pm 1\%$ resistor and a coupling capacitor of at least $1\ 000\ \mu\text{F}$.

The measured a.c. bus voltage V_{BUS} on the hazardous side of the barrier shall be between $0,40\text{ V}_{\text{pk-pk}}$ and $0,60\text{ V}_{\text{pk-pk}}$ from 3 kHz to 39 kHz, and shall not increase or decrease at a rate greater than 20 dB per decade at any frequency from 50 Hz to 3 kHz.

NOTE It is acceptable for the functions of power supply, IS barrier and terminator to be combined in various ways as long as the combination is electrically equivalent to the independent devices meeting the requirements of this clause, and if the network configuration rules of 12.3 are followed.

12.7.4.3 Power supply impedance for multiple-output supplies with signal coupling between outputs

NOTE 1 This subclause is applicable to galvanic isolators, active couplers, and other devices providing multiple power and signal ports.

For multiple-output power supplies with a coupling of fieldbus communication signal between outputs, power supply impedance shall be measured using the test circuit of Figure 65.

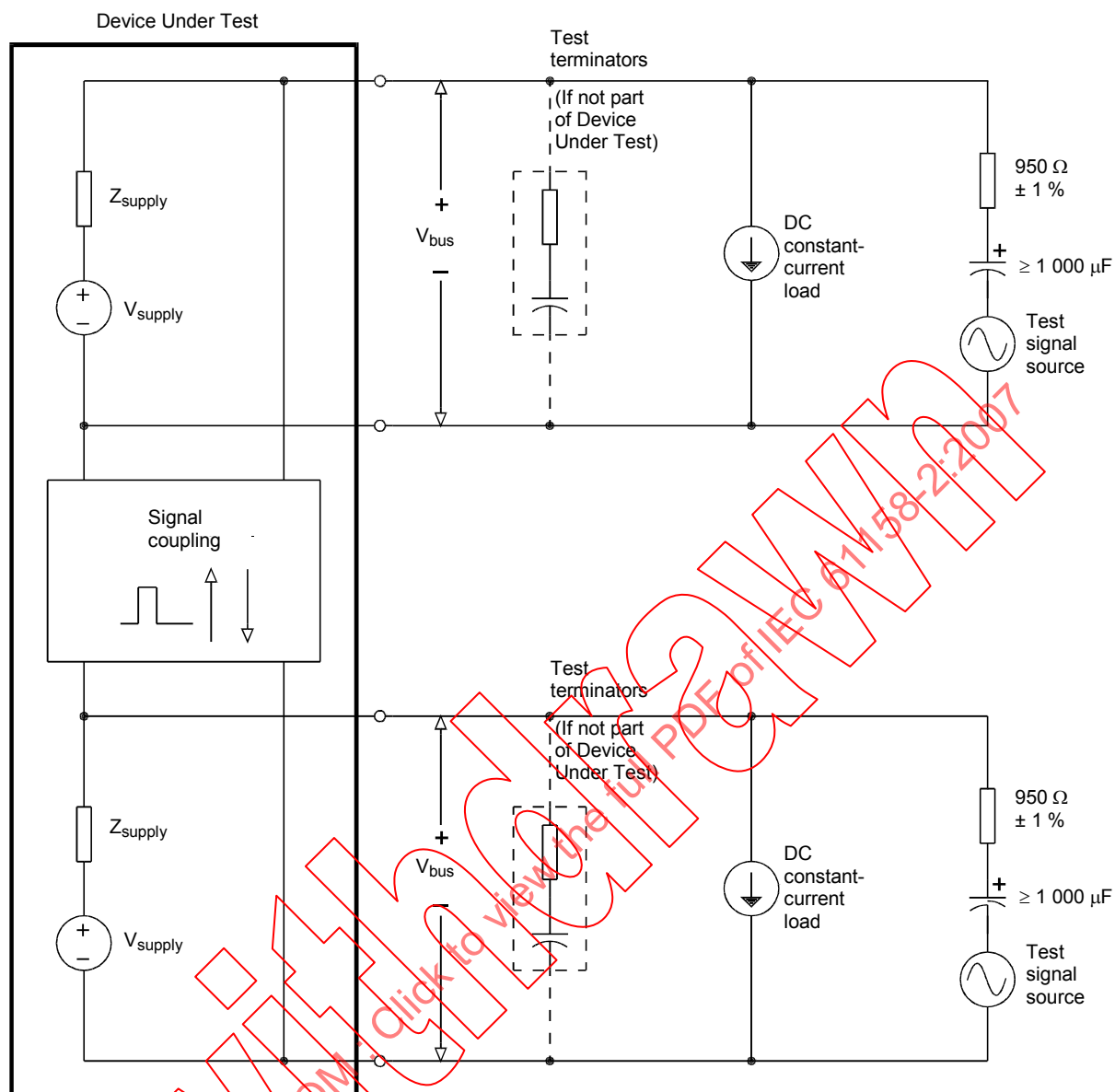


Figure 65 – Test circuit for multiple output supplies with signal coupling

The test terminators shown in Figure 65 shall each be $100 \Omega \pm 1 \%$ in series with $1 \mu\text{F} \pm 5 \%$. Two test terminators shall be used in the test circuit if the device under test does not contain an internal terminator. If the device under test contains an internal terminator that is always connected, only one test terminator shall be used in the test circuit. If the device under test contains an internal terminator that can be optionally connected into the circuit, the device shall be tested a) with the internal terminator and one test terminator and b) with two test terminators and no internal terminator.

If the device under test is intended to be used with an external impedance-determining network (for example, as might be the case with supplies designed to be used redundantly), the supply shall be tested with the external network connected.

The device under test shall be tested at 20 %, 50 %, and 80 % of its rated output current (or 20 mA, whichever is greater) on each output, with the device loaded by a d.c. constant-current load having 1 mA/V compliance or better (i.e. $\geq 1 \text{ k}\Omega$ impedance).

The measured a.c. bus voltage V_{BUS} shall be between $0,40 V_{\text{pk-pk}}$ and $0,60 V_{\text{pk-pk}}$ from 3 kHz to 39 kHz, and shall not increase or decrease at a rate greater than 20 dB per decade at any frequency from 50 Hz to 3 kHz.

NOTE 2 It is acceptable for the functions of power supply, isolator or coupler, and terminator to be combined in various ways as long as the impedance of the combination is equivalent to the parallel impedance of independent devices meeting the requirements of this clause and the network configuration rules of 12.3 are followed.

12.7.5 Powered separately from signal conductors

NOTE Power distribution to non-bus powered fieldbus devices is by separate conductors feeding local power supplies, regulators or safety barriers. IS certification may require these conductors to be in a separate cable from the signal conductors and may also impose more stringent requirements for current levels than specified.

A separately powered fieldbus device shall draw no more than 10 mA direct current from the signal conductors nor shall it supply more than 100 μA direct current to the signal conductors when not transmitting. A device shall be marked with its rated quiescent current draw from the network.

12.7.6 Electrical isolation

All fieldbus devices, whether separately powered or powered via the signal conductors, shall provide low frequency isolation between ground and the fieldbus trunk cable.

NOTE 1 This may be by isolation of the entire device from ground or by use of a transformer, opto-coupler or some other isolating component between trunk cable and device.

A combined power supply and communication element shall not require electrical isolation.

For shielded cables, the isolation impedance measured between the shield of the fieldbus cable and the fieldbus device ground shall be greater than 250 k Ω at all frequencies below 63 Hz.

The maximum unbalanced capacitance to ground from either input terminal of a device shall not exceed 250 pF.

The breakdown requirements of the isolation of the signal circuit and the power distribution circuit from ground and from each other shall be in accordance with IEC 61131-2.

NOTE 2 See 11.7.5, note 3.

12.8 Medium specifications

12.8.1 Connector

Cable connectors, if used, shall be in accordance with this standard (see Annex A for Type 1, and Annex I for Type 3 synchronous transmission). Field termination techniques such as screw or blade terminals and permanent termination may also be used.

12.8.2 Standard test cable

The cable used for testing fieldbus devices which claim conformance to this clause shall be a single twisted-pair cable with overall shield meeting the following minimum requirements at 25 °C:

- impedance at f_r (31,25 kHz) = 100 $\Omega \pm 20 \%$;
- maximum attenuation at $1,25 f_r$ (39 kHz) = 3,0 dB/km;
- maximum capacitive unbalance to shield = 4 nF/km, tested using a 30 m or longer sample;
- maximum d.c. resistance (per conductor) = 24 Ω/km ;
- maximum propagation delay change $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ = 1,7 $\mu\text{s}/\text{km}$;
- conductor cross-sectional area (wire size) = nominal 0,8 mm²;

g) minimum shield coverage shall be 90 %.

NOTE 1 The preceding specification is for conformance testing an MAU. Other types of cable may be used in real installations. (See Annex B.) Cables with improved specifications may enable increased trunk length or superior interference immunity or may be required to meet environmental or installation conditions. Conversely, cables with inferior specifications may be used subject to length limitations for both trunk and spurs, plus possible non-conformance to the RFI/EMI susceptibility requirements.

NOTE 2 For intrinsically safe applications, the inductance/resistance ratio (L/R) should be less than the limit specified by the local regulatory agency for the particular implementation.

12.8.3 Coupler

The coupler shall provide one or several point(s) of connection to the trunk. It may be integrated in a fieldbus device, in which case there is no spur. Otherwise, it has at least three access points as shown in Figure 66: one for the spur and one for each side of the trunk.

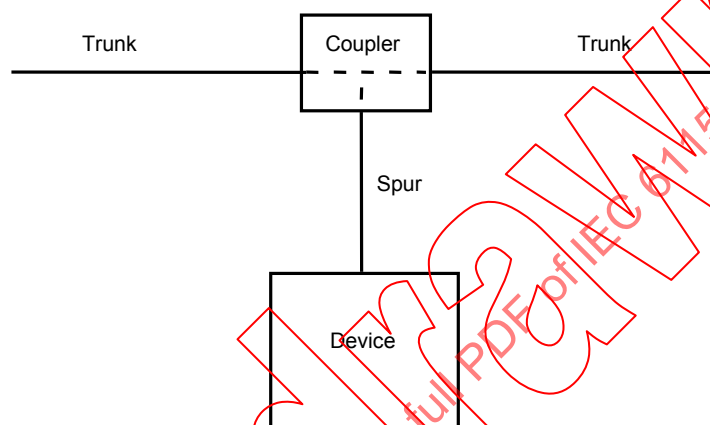


Figure 66 – Fieldbus coupler

A passive coupler may contain any or all of the optional elements as described below:

- a transformer, to provide galvanic isolation and impedance transformation between trunk and spur;
- connectors, to provide easy connection to spur and/or trunk;
- protection resistors, as shown in Figure 67, to protect bus traffic between other devices from the effects of a short-circuit spur on an unpowered, non-intrinsically-safe trunk.

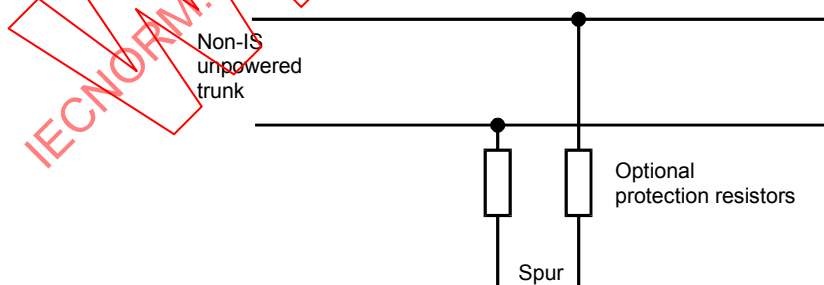


Figure 67 – Protection resistors

NOTE Such series resistors inherently increase the voltage at the device terminals when it is transmitting. This will affect the voltage at the receiving terminals of electrically “nearby” devices. See 12.4.3 for the maximum withstand voltage required of all such devices.

Active couplers, which require external power supplies, contain components for signal amplification and re-transmission. The transmit level and timing requirements shall conform to 12.3.

12.8.4 Splices

NOTE 1 A splice is any part of the network in which the characteristic impedance of the network cable is not preserved. This is possibly due to separation of the cable conductors, removal of the cable shield, change of wire gauge or type, connection to spurs, attachment to terminal strips, etc. A practical definition of a splice is therefore any part of the network that is not a continuous length of the specified medium.

For networks having a total cable length (trunk and spurs) of greater than 400 m, the sum of the lengths of all splices shall not exceed 2,0 % of the total cable length. For cable lengths of 400 m or less, the sum of the lengths of all splices shall not exceed 8 m.

NOTE 2 The motivation for this specification is to preserve transmission quality by requiring that the network be constructed almost entirely of the specified medium.

The continuity of all conductors of the cable shall be maintained in a splice

12.8.5 Terminator

A terminator shall be located at both ends of the trunk cable, connected from one signal conductor to the other. No connection shall be made between terminator and cable shield.

The terminator impedance value shall be $100\ \Omega - 2\ \Omega + 6\ \Omega$ over the frequency range $0,25\ f_r$ to $1,25\ f_r$ (7,8 kHz to 39 kHz). The terminator impedance shall be equivalent to a $100\ \Omega$ resistor in series with a $1,0\ \mu\text{F}$ capacitor. The maximum component tolerances shall be $100\ \Omega \pm 2\ \Omega$ and $1,0\ \mu\text{F} \pm 0,2\ \mu\text{F}$.

NOTE 1 This impedance value is approximately the average cable characteristic impedance value for suitable cables at the relevant frequencies and is chosen to minimize transmission line reflections.

NOTE 2 The terminator components should be chosen to meet the specified values over the temperature range and operating life of the installation. It is recommended that the $25\ ^\circ\text{C}$ rating of the components be $100\ \Omega \pm 1\ \Omega$ and $1\ \mu\text{F} \pm 0,1\ \mu\text{F}$.

The direct current leakage through the terminator shall not exceed 100 μA . The terminator shall be non-polarized.

All terminators used for IS applications shall comply with isolation requirements (creepage and clearance) commensurate with the required IS approval. Terminators for non-IS applications shall not be required to have IS approval.

NOTE 3 It is acceptable for the functions of power supply, safety barrier, and terminator to be combined in various ways as long as the impedance of the combination is equivalent to the parallel impedance of independent devices meeting the requirements of this clause and the network configuration rules of 12.3.3 are followed.

12.8.6 Shielding rules

Where conformance to the noise immunity requirements of 12.5 is to be met by the use of shielding it is necessary to ensure the integrity of shielding throughout the cabling, connectors and couplers. The following rules can assist in meeting these requirements, but are not themselves a requirement:

- a) the cable should be shielded for more than 90 % of its full length;
- b) shielding should completely cover the electrical circuits in connectors, couplers, and splices.

NOTE 1 Deviation from these shielding rules may degrade noise immunity.

NOTE 2 Due to the long wavelengths involved, breaks in the shield coverage of 25 cm or so at connectors, couplers and splices, including where spurs are attached, should not usually be a problem, provided that shield continuity is maintained.

NOTE 3 Enclosure of connectors, couplers and splices in a metallic junction box can provide shielding from noise sources outside the junction box.

12.8.7 Grounding (earthing) rules

NOTE 1 Grounding (earthing) means permanently connected to earth through sufficiently low impedance and with sufficient current-carrying capability to prevent voltage build-up which might result in undue hazard to connected equipment or persons. Zero volts (common) lines may be connected to ground where they are galvanically isolated from the fieldbus trunk.

Fieldbus devices shall be required to function to the requirements of this clause with the mid-point of one terminator or one inductive coupler connected directly to ground.

Fieldbus devices shall not connect either conductor of the twisted pair to ground at any point in the network. Signals shall be applied and preserved differentially throughout the network.

NOTE 2 It is standard practice for the shield of the fieldbus trunk cable (if applicable) to be effectively grounded at one point along the length of the cable. For this reason fieldbus devices should allow d.c. isolation of the cable shield from ground. It is also standard practice to connect the signal conductors to ground in a balanced manner at the same point, e.g. by using the center tap of a terminator or coupling transformer. For bus-powered systems the grounding of the shield and balanced signal conductors should be close to the power supply unit. For IS systems the grounding should be at the safety barrier earth connection. Capacitive coupling between the shield or the balanced signal conductors and device local ground for EMI control is permitted, subject to IS requirements.

12.8.8 Color coding of cables

See 11.8.8.

Where consideration of regional practices, such as those specified in 11.8.8, does not override, the following cable colors are recommended for Type 3 systems, as shown in Table 65.

Table 65 – Type 3 cable color specification

Cable Parameter	Color
Color of sheath non-IS	Black
Color of sheath IS	Blue or blue/black stripe
Color of inner cable conductor A (PA-)	Green
Color inner cable conductor B (PA+)	Red

12.9 Intrinsic safety

12.9.1 General

This standard does not attempt to list the requirements by which an item of equipment may be certified as intrinsically safe nor does it require equipment to be intrinsically safe. Rather, it seeks to exclude conditions or situations that would prevent IS certification.

12.9.2 Intrinsic safety barrier

The barrier impedance shall be greater than 460Ω at any frequency in the range $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz to 39 kHz). The IS barrier impedance specification shall apply to all barriers used as part of the PhL, whether installed as a separate item of network hardware or embedded in a power supply card. The barrier impedance shall be measured across the terminals on both sides of the barrier. The barrier impedance shall be measured while the network power supply is set at the rated working voltage (not safety voltage) of the barrier.

NOTE It is acceptable for the functions of power supply, safety barrier, and terminator to be combined in various ways as long as the impedance of the combination is equivalent to the parallel impedance of independent devices meeting the requirements of this clause and the network configuration rules of 12.3.3 are followed.

At the rated working voltage of the barrier, and at any frequency in the range $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz to 39 kHz), the capacitance measured from the "+" (positive) network terminal (hazardous side) to ground shall differ by no more than 250 pF from the capacitance measured from the "-" (negative) network terminal (hazardous side) to ground.

12.9.3 Barrier and terminator placement

A barrier shall be separated from the nearest terminator by no more than 100 m of cable.

12.10 Galvanic isolators

The communications characteristics of galvanic isolators used on the fieldbus shall comply with the specifications of 12.4, 12.5 and 12.9. Galvanic isolators that provide power to fieldbus devices shall also comply with the power supply specifications of 12.7.

13 Type 1: Medium attachment unit: current mode, twisted-pair wire medium

13.1 General

The 1,0 Mbit/s current-mode MAU simultaneously provides access to a communication network and to a power distribution network. Devices attached to the network communicate via the medium and may or may not be powered from it. Power is distributed as a constant a.c. current. The communications signals are superimposed on the a.c. power.

The network medium consists of shielded twisted-pair cable.

Trapezoidal waveforms are used to reduce electromagnetic emissions and signal distortion.

In Intrinsically Safe applications, available power may limit the number of devices.

The devices are connected in series on the bus whereas in the voltage-mode variants the devices are connected in parallel to the bus.

13.2 Transmitted bit rate

The average bit rate, $BR \pm \Delta BR$, shall be 1,0 Mbit/s $\pm 0,01\%$, averaged over a frame having a minimum length of 16 octets. The instantaneous bit time, $T_{bit} \pm \Delta T_{bit}$, shall be 1,0 μ s $\pm 0,025\%$.

13.3 Network specifications

13.3.1 Components

An MAU operates in a network composed of the following components:

- a) cable;
- b) terminators;
- c) couplers;
- d) devices (containing at least one communication element).

A wire network in current mode may additionally include the following components:

- e) connectors;
- f) power supplies;
- g) devices which include power supplies;
- h) intrinsic safety barriers.

The network medium consists of shielded twisted-pair cable. Independent of topology, all attached devices, other than possibly the transmitting device, are low impedance to prevent significant network loading.

13.3.2 Topologies

A wire MAU shall operate in a network with a linear bus topology, consisting of a trunk, terminated at each end as specified in 13.8.5, to which communication elements are connected via couplers and spurs.

The coupler and communication element may be integrated in one device (i.e. zero-length spur).

A tree topology with all the communication elements located at the ends of the trunk is regarded as a special case of a bus for the purpose of this clause.

Several communication elements may be connected to the trunk at one point using a multi-port coupler. An active coupler may be used to extend a spur to a length that requires termination to avoid reflections and distortions. Active repeaters may be used to extend the length of the trunk beyond that of a single segment as permitted by the network configuration rules.

13.3.3 Network configuration rules

An MAU that claims conformance to this clause shall meet the requirements of this clause when used in a network that complies with these rules.

Rule 1: One fieldbus shall be capable of communication between two and 32 devices, all operating at the same bit rate, both for a powered and a non-powered bus and in a hazardous area using distributed barriers.

NOTE 1 The use of a single barrier in the safe area may limit the number of devices in the hazardous area.

NOTE 2 This rule does not preclude the use of more than the specified number of devices in an installed system. The numbers of devices were calculated on the assumption that a bus-powered device draws 100 mW.

Rule 2: A fully loaded (maximum number of connected devices), current-mode fieldbus segment shall have a total cable length, between any two devices, of up to 750 m.

NOTE 3 750 m maximum cable length is the requirement for conformance to this clause but this does not preclude the use of longer lengths in an installed system.

Rule 3: The total number of waveform regenerations by repeaters and active couplers between any two devices is repeater implementation dependent.

NOTE 4 Prior editions of this standard limited this total number to four.

Rule 4: The maximum propagation delay between any two devices shall not exceed $40 T_{\text{bit}}$.

NOTE 5 For efficiency of the network, that part of the turn-around time of any device on the network caused by a PhE between the end of a received frame and the beginning of the transmitted frame containing an associated immediate response should not exceed 5 bit times, no more than 2 bit times of which should be due to the MAU. As it is not mandatory to expose the DLL – PhL interface or the MDS – MAU interface, that part of the turn-around time of a fieldbus device caused by the PhL or the MAU cannot be specified or conformance tested.

Rule 5: The fieldbus shall be capable of continued operation while a device is being connected or disconnected. Data errors induced during connection or disconnection shall be detected.

Rule 6: Failure of any communication element or spur (including a short circuit or open circuit, but excluding jabber) shall not interfere with transactions between other communication elements for more than 1 ms.

Rule 7: The network shall not be polarity sensitive with or without power injected on the line.

Rule 8: The degradation of the electrical characteristics of the signal, between any two devices, due to attenuation, attenuation distortion and mismatching shall be limited to the values indicated below.

- a) Signal attenuation: The signal attenuation due to each device shall not exceed 0,2 dB. The configuration of the bus (trunk and spur lengths, number of devices, IS barriers, galvanic isolators, and possible matching devices) shall be such that the attenuation between any two devices at the frequency corresponding to the bit rate shall not exceed 16 dB.

- b) Attenuation distortion: The configuration of the bus (trunk and spur lengths and number of devices) shall be such that between any two devices:

$$[\text{Attenuation}(1,25 f_r) - \text{Attenuation}(0,25 f_r)] \leq 6 \text{ dB}$$

$$\text{Attenuation}(1,25 f_r) \geq \text{Attenuation}(0,25 f_r)$$

where f_r is the frequency corresponding to the bit rate. Attenuation shall be monotonic for all frequencies from $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz to 1,25 MHz).

- c) Mismatching distortion: Mismatching (due to spurs or any other effect, including one open circuit spur of maximum length) on the bus shall be such that, at any point along the trunk, in the frequency band $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz to 1,25 MHz):

$$|Z - Z_{fr}| / |Z + Z_{fr}| \leq 0,2$$

where

Z_o is the characteristic impedance of the trunk cable;

Z is the parallel combination of Z_o and the load impedance at the coupler.

NOTE 6 This rule minimizes restrictions on trunk and spur length, number of devices etc. by specifying only the transmission limitations imposed by combinations of these factors. Different combinations may be used depending on the needs of the application.

Rule 9: The following rules shall apply to systems implemented with redundant media:

- each channel (cable) shall comply with the network configuration rules;
- there shall not be a non-redundant segment between two redundant segments;
- repeaters shall also be redundant;
- if the system is configured (by Systems management) to transmit on more than one channel simultaneously then the propagation time difference between any two devices on any two channels shall not exceed five bit times;
- channel numbers shall be maintained throughout the fieldbus, i.e. channels 1,2,3... from Systems management shall always connect to physical channels 1,2,3...

13.3.4 Power distribution rules for network configuration

See 11.3.4.

13.4 MAU transmit circuit specification

The requirements of this subclause are summarized in Table 66 and Table 67.

Table 66 – MAU transmit level specification summary

Transmit level characteristics, values referred to trunk (but measured using test load as shown in Figure 68)	Limits (bus-powered and/or IS)
Output level (peak-to-peak, see Figure 55) With test load ($>2 \times$ nominal Z_o of trunk cable)	$\geq 2,5 \text{ V}$ $320 \Omega \pm 1 \%$
Maximum positive and negative amplitude difference (signaling bias) as shown in Figure 56	$\pm 0,2 \text{ V}$
Output level; open circuit (peak-to-peak)	$\leq 4,0 \text{ V}$
Maximum output signal distortion; i.e., overvoltage, ringing and droop (see Figure 55)	$\pm 10 \%$
Quiescent transmitter output; i.e. transmitter noise (measured over the frequency band 1 kHz to 4 MHz)	$\leq 1 \text{ mV (r.m.s.)}$

Table 67 – MAU transmit timing specification summary

Transmit timing characteristics, values referred to trunk (but measured using test load as shown in Figure 68)	Limits (bus-powered and/or IS)
Transmitted bit rate	1 Mbit/s $\pm$ 0,01 %
Instantaneous bit time	1 μ s $\pm$ 0,025 μ s
Rise and fall times (10 % to 90 % of pk-pk signal, see Figure 55)	$\leq$ 20 % T_{bit}
Slew rate (at any point from 10 % to 90 % of pk-pk signal)	$\leq$ 40,0 V/ μ s
Maximum transmitted bit cell jitter (zero crossing-point deviation, see Figure 56)	$\pm$ 2,5 % T_{bit}
Transmit enable/disable time (i.e. time during which the output waveform may not meet the transmit requirements)	$\leq$ 2,0 T_{bit}

13.4.1 Test configuration

Figure 68 shows the configuration that shall be used for testing.

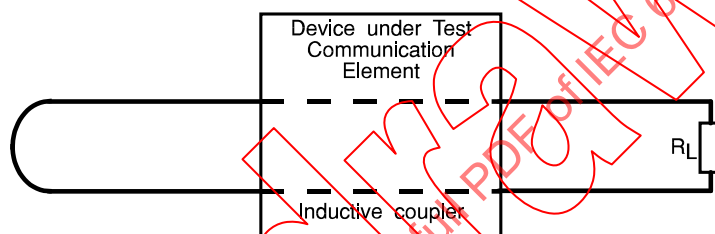


Figure 68 – Test configuration for current-mode MAU

The test configuration for this clause shall be as shown in Figure 68 except where otherwise stated in a specific requirement.

NOTE Test load resistance $R = 320 \Omega$ (twice maximum cable Z_0) as the output is loaded by a series loop of the trunk.

13.4.2 Output level requirements

NOTE Figure 55 shows an example of one cycle of a fieldbus waveform, illustrating some key items from the transmit circuit specification. Only signal voltages are shown; this diagram takes no account of power-supply voltages.

A current-mode MAU transmit circuit shall conform to the following output level requirements, all amplitudes being measured at the estimated mid-point between any peaks or troughs in the top and bottom of the waveform ("mid-point" in Figure 55):

- the output voltage across the test load after transformer step up/down shall be no less than 2,5 V peak-to-peak with a load resistance of $320 \Omega \pm 1 \%$ ("min o/p" in Figure 55);
- the output voltage at the trunk, or at the transmit terminals, with any load including an open circuit shall not exceed 4,0 V peak-to-peak ("max. o/c at trunk" in Figure 55). For test purposes, open circuit shall be defined as a load of 100 k Ω resistance in parallel with 15 pF capacitance;
- during transmission a device shall not suffer permanent failure when a load resistance of $\leq 1 \Omega$ is applied for 1 s;
- the difference between positive amplitude and negative amplitude, measured as shown in Figure 55, shall not exceed $\pm 0,2$ V peak;
- the output noise from a current-mode MAU which is receiving or not powered shall not exceed 1 mV r.m.s., measured differentially over the frequency band 1 kHz to 4 MHz, referred to the trunk;

- f) the differential voltage across the test load shall be such that the voltage monotonically changes between 10 % and 90 % of peak-to-peak value. Thereafter, the signal voltage shall not vary more than ± 10 % of peak-to-peak value until next transition occurs. This permitted variation shall include all forms of output signal distortion, i.e. overvoltage, ringing and droop.

13.4.3 Output timing requirements

A current-mode MAU transmit circuit shall conform to the following output timing requirements:

- rise and fall times, measured from 10 % to 90 % of the peak-to-peak signal amplitude shall not exceed $0,2 T_{\text{bit}}$ (see Figure 55);
- slew rate shall not exceed $40 \text{ V}/\mu\text{s}$ measured at any point in the range 10 % to 90 % of the peak-to-peak signal amplitude (see Figure 55);

NOTE 1 Requirements a) and b) produce a trapezoidal waveform at the transmit circuit output. Requirement b) limits the level of interference emissions that may be coupled to adjacent circuits etc. Requirement b) is calculated from the formula:

Max. slew rate = $3 \times \text{min. slew rate} = 3 \times 0,8 V_o / 0,2 T = 12 \times V_o / T_{\text{bit}}$,
where V_o is an estimated maximum pk-pk output voltage with standard load (3,3 V).

- transmitted bit cell jitter shall not exceed $\pm 0,025$ nominal bit time from the ideal zero crossing-point, measured with respect to previous zero crossing (see Figure 69);

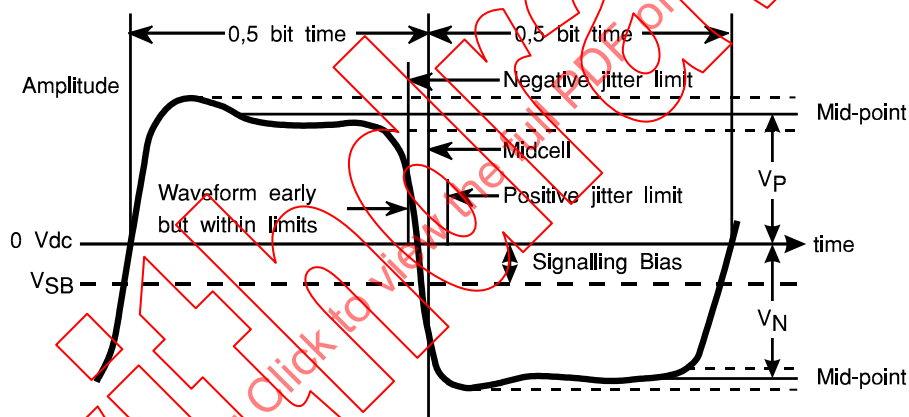


Figure 69 – Transmitted and received bit cell jitter (zero crossing point deviation)

- the transmit circuit shall turn on, i.e. the signal shall rise from below the transmit circuit maximum output noise level as specified in 13.4.2e) to full output level, in less than $2,0 T_{\text{bit}}$. The waveform corresponding to the third and later bit times shall be as specified by other subclauses of 13.4;
- the transmit circuit shall turn off, i.e. the signal shall fall from full output level to below the transmit circuit maximum output noise level as specified in 13.4.2e), in less than $2,0 T_{\text{bit}}$. The time for the transmit circuit to return to its off state impedance shall not exceed $4,0 T_{\text{bit}}$. For the purposes of testing, this requirement shall be met with the transmit circuit test configuration of 13.4.1 with the equivalent capacitance of a maximum length cable across the DUT terminals.

NOTE 2 This requirement is to ensure that the transition of the transmit circuit from active to passive leaves the line capacitance fully discharged.

13.5 MAU receive circuit specification

13.5.1 General

For ease of reference the requirements of 13.4 are summarized in Table 68.

Table 68 – Receive circuit specification summary

Receive circuit characteristics (values referred to trunk)	Limits (bus-powered and/or IS)
Input impedance, measured over the frequency range $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$	$\leq 2,5 \Omega$
Sensitivity; min. peak-to-peak signal required to be accepted (see Figure 58)	1,3 mA
Noise rejection; max. peak-to-peak noise required to be rejected (see Figure 58)	0,8 mA
Maximum received bit cell jitter (zero crossing-point deviation, see Figure 69)	$\pm 0,10 T_{\text{bit}}$

13.5.2 Input impedance

The differential input impedance of a current-mode MAU receive circuit shall not exceed $2,5 \Omega$ in series with the line over the frequency range $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$. (250 kHz to 1,25 MHz) This requirement shall be met in the power-off and power-on (not transmitting) states and in transition between these states. This impedance shall be measured at the inductive coupler using a sinusoidal current waveform with an amplitude greater than the receiver sensitivity threshold and lower than 20 mA peak-to-peak.

NOTE The requirement for $\leq 2,5 \Omega$ input impedance during power-up and power-down may be met by automatic disabling of the transmitter during these periods.

13.5.3 Receiver sensitivity and noise rejection

An MAU receive circuit shall be capable of accepting an input signal from 1,3 mA peak-to-peak to 20,0 mA peak-to-peak, including overvoltage and oscillation (see "signal level" together with "positive amplitude" and "negative amplitude", all in Figure 55).

An MAU receive circuit shall not respond to an input signal with a peak-to-peak line current amplitude which does not exceed 0,8 mA (see "noise rejection" in Figure 58).

13.5.4 Received bit cell jitter

The receive circuit shall accept a Manchester encoded signal transmitted in accordance with 13.2 and 13.4. In addition, the receiver shall work properly with signals with the time variation between any two adjacent signal transition points (zero crossing) of $\pm 0,10 T_{\text{bit}}$ or less. See Figure 69.

NOTE 1 This does not preclude the use of receivers that perform better than this specification.

NOTE 2 Depending on the symbol pattern, the nominal time between zero crossings may be one-half or one bit time.

NOTE 3 There is no requirement to reject a signal with a specified time variation value. The receiver reports an error when the received bit cell jitter exceeds the receiver's ability to reliably decode signaling.

13.5.5 Interference susceptibility and error rates

NOTE 1 When the fieldbus is operating in a variety of standard noise environments the probability that an Application Layer User Data Unit contains an undetected error, due to operation of the conveying Physical and DLL entities, should be less than 1 in 10^{12} (1 error in 20 years at 1 600 messages/s). A communication element is regarded as conforming to this theoretical requirement when it meets the following interference susceptibility requirements. These are specified by a detected frame error rate which is derived by using a ratio of detected to undetected errors of 10^6 . This should be readily achievable with a 16 bit Frame Check Sequence at the DLL.

A communication element which includes a current-mode MAU, operating with frames containing 64 random user data bits, with maximum frame rate and with signals of 4,0 mA peak-to-peak amplitude, shall produce no more than 3 detected frame errors in 3×10^6 frames during operation in the presence of common mode voltage or Gaussian noise as follows:

- a common-mode sinusoidal signal of any frequency from 63 Hz to 2 MHz, with an amplitude of 4 V r.m.s. and from 47 Hz to 63 Hz with an amplitude of 250 V r.m.s.;
- a common-mode d.c. signal of ± 10 V;

- c) white Gaussian additive differential noise in the frequency band 1 kHz to 4 MHz, with a noise density of $0,09 \mu\text{A}/\sqrt{\text{Hz}}$ r.m.s. using the test circuit of Figure 70.

NOTE 2 The common mode voltage and Gaussian noise specifications are for receive circuit conformance testing with balanced loads and are not indicative of system installation practice.

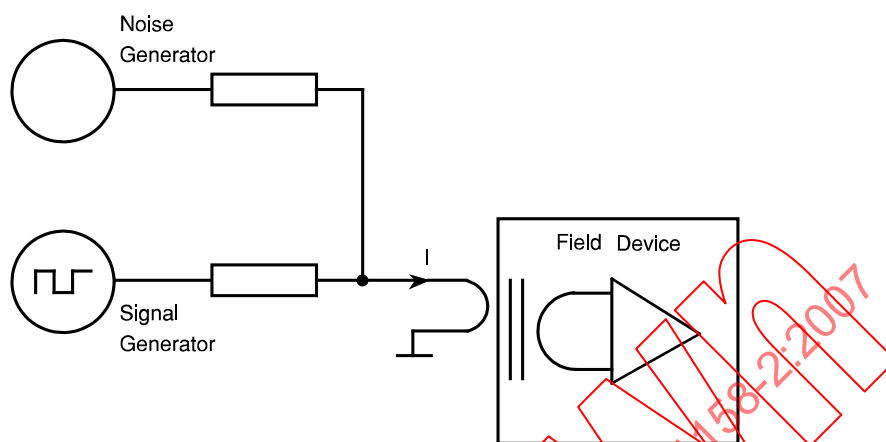


Figure 70 – Noise test circuit for current-mode MAU

A communication element which includes a current-mode MAU, operating with frames containing 64 random user data bits, at an average of 1 600 messages/s, with signals of 4,0 mA peak-to-peak amplitude, shall produce no more than six detected frame errors in 100 000 frames during operation in the presence of electromagnetic or electrical interference environments as follows:

- 1) 10 V/m electromagnetic field as specified in IEC 61000-4-3 at severity level 3;
- 2) electrical fast transient as specified in IEC 61000-4-4 at severity level 3.

The above error-rate specification shall also be satisfied after but not during operation in the following noise environments:

- i) 8 kV electrostatic discharge to exposed metalwork as specified in IEC 61000-4-2 at severity level 3. If the device suffers temporary loss of function or performance as a result of this test it shall recover from any such loss without operator intervention within 3 s after the end of the test;
- ii) high-frequency disturbance tests as specified in IEC 60255-22-1:1988, Test voltage class III (2,5 kV and 1 kV peak values of first half-cycle in longitudinal and transverse mode respectively). If the device suffers temporary loss of function or performance because of this test it shall recover from any such loss without operator intervention within 3 s after the end of the test.

13.6 Jabber inhibit

The MAU shall contain a self-interrupt capability to inhibit transmitted signals from reaching the medium. Hardware within the MAU (with no external message other than the detection of output signals or leakage via the transmit function) shall provide a window of between 5 ms and 15 ms during which time a normal frame may be transmitted. If the frame length exceeds this duration, the jabber inhibit function shall inhibit further output signals from reaching the medium and shall disable echo on the RxS line (see 10.2.2.2) to indicate jabber detection to the MDS.

The MAU shall reset the self-interrupt function after a period of $500 \text{ ms} \pm 50 \%$.

NOTE This inhibits bus traffic for no more than 6 % (= 15/250) of the available time.

13.7 Power distribution

13.7.1 General

A device can optionally receive power via the signal conductors or be separately powered.

A device can be certified as Intrinsically safe with either method of receiving power.

This standard does not include requirements for IS certification but seeks to exclude conditions or situations that would prevent IS certification.

A separately powered device can be connected to a powered fieldbus.

For ease of reference, the requirements of 13.7 are summarized in Table 69.

Table 69 – Network power supply requirements

Network power supply requirements	Limits
Output current	50 mA to 200 mA r.m.s.
Output frequency	16 kHz $\pm$ 0,5 %
Maximum output voltage, IS	Depends on barrier rating
Harmonic distortion of supply current	$\leq$ 0,2 %
Output impedance, measured over the frequency range 0,25 f_r to 1,25 f_r	$\leq$ 5 Ω

13.7.2 Powered via signal conductors

A device shall operate over a range of constant current, from 50 mA to 200 mA.

NOTE The output voltage from the supply is a function of cable loss and power consumed per device. A fieldbus device may be designed to consume one or more standard loads. A standard load is 100 mW.

The power-supply open-circuit output voltage shall be less than the limit specified by the local regulatory agency for the particular implementation. The output impedance of the power supply shall be $\leq$ 5 Ω over the frequency range 0,25 f_r to 1,25 f_r (250 kHz to 1,25 MHz).

The voltage drop in the signal coupler shall be less than 0,1 V at 16 kHz.

The voltage drop in the terminations shall be less than 0,3 V at 16 kHz.

The power waveform shall be a clean sinusoid of frequency 16 kHz $\pm$ 0,5 % and maximum harmonic distortion of 0,2 %.

The device shall not introduce harmonic components of the power frequency larger than 1,0 mV peak-to-peak line to line in the main trunk.

13.7.3 Powered separately from signal

NOTE Power distribution to non-bus powered fieldbus devices is by separate conductors feeding local power supplies, regulators or safety barriers. IS certification may require these conductors to be in a separate cable from the signal conductors and may also impose more stringent requirements for current levels than specified.

A separately powered fieldbus device which claims conformance to this clause shall drop no more than 1 mV r.m.s. at the power frequency on the signal conductors nor shall it supply a current of more than 100 μ A r.m.s. to the signal conductors when not transmitting.

13.7.4 Electrical isolation

All fieldbus devices, whether separately powered or powered via the signal conductors, shall provide low-frequency isolation between ground and the fieldbus trunk cable.

NOTE 1 This may be by use of an inductive coupler with sufficient isolation, by isolation of the entire device from ground or by use of a transformer, opto-coupler or some other isolating component between trunk cable and device.

A combined power supply and communication element shall not require electrical isolation.

The isolation impedance measured between the shield of the fieldbus cable and the fieldbus device ground shall be greater than 250 k Ω at all frequencies below 63 Hz.

The isolation shall be bypassed at high frequencies by capacitance, so that the impedance measured between the shield of the fieldbus cable and the fieldbus device ground shall be less than 15 Ω between 3 MHz and 30 MHz.

NOTE 2 The capacitance between ground and trunk cable shield necessary to meet both these requirements can be any value between 3,5 nF and 10,6 nF.

The maximum unbalanced capacitance to ground from either input terminal of a device shall not exceed 250 pF.

The breakdown requirements of the isolation of the signal circuit and the power distribution circuit from ground and from each other shall be in accordance with IEC 61131-2.

NOTE 3 The equivalent test voltage is to be applied between independent isolated circuits or between isolated circuits and accessible conducting parts. For circuits with a nominal voltage ≤ 50 V d.c. or r.m.s., the equivalent test voltages at sea level are 444 V r.m.s., 635 V d.c. and 635 V peak impulse test. For circuits with a nominal voltage between 150 V and 300 V r.m.s., the equivalent test voltages at sea level are 2 260 V r.m.s., 3 175 V d.c. and 3 175 V peak impulse test.

13.8 Medium specifications

13.8.1 Connector

Cable connectors, if used, shall be to the IEC fieldbus standard (see Annex A). Field termination techniques such as screw or blade terminals and permanent termination may also be used.

13.8.2 Standard test cable

The cable used for testing fieldbus devices with a current-mode MAU for conformance to the requirements of this clause shall be a single twisted pair cable with overall shield meeting the following minimum requirements at 25 °C:

- a) Z_0 at 0,25 f_r (250 kHz) = 150 $\Omega \pm 10$ %;
- b) Z_0 at 1,25 f_r (1,25 MHz) = 150 $\Omega \pm 10$ %;
- c) maximum attenuation at 0,25 f_r (250 kHz) = 6,5 dB/km;
- d) maximum attenuation at 1,25 f_r (1,25 MHz) = 13 dB/km;
- e) maximum capacitive unbalance to shield = 1,5 nF/km
- f) maximum d.c. resistance (per conductor) = 57,1 Ω /km;
- g) conductor cross-sectional area (wire size) = nominal 0,33 mm²;
- h) minimum resistivity between either conductor and shield = 16 G Ω /km;
- i) minimum shield coverage shall be 95 %.

NOTE 1 The preceding specification is for conformance testing an MAU. Other types of cable may be used in real installations. (See Annex B.) Cables with improved specifications may enable increased trunk length and/or superior interference immunity. Conversely, cables with inferior specifications may be used subject to length limitations for both trunk and spurs plus possible non-conformance to the RFI/EMI susceptibility requirements.

NOTE 2 For intrinsically safe applications the inductance/resistance ratio (L/R) should be less than the limit specified by the local Regulatory Agency for the particular implementation.

13.8.3 Coupler

An inductive coupler connects one device or spur to the trunk. It transfers data signals to and from the device and may transfer power to the device. The trunk cable operates as a single primary turn in the inductive coupler transformer. The following options are permitted:

- a) the coupling may be performed without violation of the cable insulation;
- b) the inductive coupler may be used as a connector;
- c) an IS barrier element may be included as an integral part of the inductive coupler.

The coupler shall be an integral part of the MAU if the device is connected in the trunk. The input impedance of the coupler shall be a maximum of $2,5 \Omega$ in series with the line.

13.8.4 Splices

NOTE A splice is any part of the network in which the characteristic impedance of the network cable is not preserved. This is possibly due to separation of the cable conductors, removal of the cable shield, change of wire gauge or type, connection to spurs, etc. A practical definition of a splice is therefore any part of the network that is not a continuous length of the specified medium.

The continuity of all conductors of the cable shall be maintained in a splice.

13.8.5 Terminator

A terminator shall be located at both ends of the trunk cable, connected from one signal conductor to the other. No connection shall be made between terminator and cable shield.

For test purposes, using the cable specified in 13.8.2, the terminator shall have an impedance value of $120 \Omega \pm 2 \%$ over the frequency range $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz to 1,25 MHz).

NOTE 1 The terminator resistance value was selected to be lower than the test cable characteristic impedance value because the current-mode devices add impedances in series with the terminator. The value was chosen to reduce transmission line reflections for a fieldbus with 2 to 32 devices.

NOTE 2 In practical implementations with power supplied via the signal conductors the terminator would be bypassed at power frequencies to minimize power losses.

The direct current leakage through the terminator shall not exceed 100 μ A. The terminator shall be non-polarized.

All terminators used for IS applications shall comply with isolation requirements (creepage and clearance) commensurate with the required IS approval. Terminators for non-IS applications shall not be required to have IS approval.

13.8.6 Shielding rules

For full conformance to the noise immunity requirements of 13.5 it is necessary to ensure the integrity of shielding throughout the cabling, connectors and couplers by the following means:

- a) the coverage of the cable shield shall be greater than 95 % of the full cable length;
- b) shielding shall completely cover the electrical circuits in connectors, couplers, and splices.

NOTE Deviation from these shielding rules may degrade noise immunity.

13.8.7 Grounding rules

NOTE 1 Grounding means permanently connected to earth through a sufficiently low impedance and with sufficient current-carrying capability to prevent voltage build-up which might result in undue hazard to connected equipment or persons. Zero volts (common) lines may be connected to ground where they are galvanically isolated from the fieldbus trunk.

Fieldbus devices shall be required to function to the requirements of this clause with the mid-point of one terminator or one inductive coupler connected directly to ground.

Fieldbus devices shall not connect either conductor of the twisted pair to ground at any point in the network. Signals shall be applied and preserved differentially throughout the network.

NOTE 2 It is standard practice for the shield of the fieldbus trunk cable (if applicable) to be effectively grounded at one point along the length of the cable. For this reason fieldbus devices should allow d.c. isolation of the cable shield from ground. For bus-powered systems the grounding of the shield and balanced signal conductors should be close to the power supply unit. For IS systems the grounding should be at the safety barrier earth connection. Capacitive coupling between the shield or the balanced signal conductors and device local ground for EMI control is permitted subject to IS requirements.

13.8.8 Color coding of cables

See 11.8.8.

14 Type 1: Medium attachment unit: current mode (1 A), twisted-pair wire medium

14.1 General

A 1,0 Mbit/s current-mode MAU simultaneously provides access to a communication network, and to a power distribution network with extended power capacity. Devices attached to the network communicate via the medium, and may or may not be powered from it. Power is distributed as a constant a.c. current with a frequency far below the signal frequency. The communication signals are superimposed on the a.c. power.

The network medium consists of shielded twisted-pair cable.

In hazardous area applications, a non-IS bus may have IS barriers incorporated in connected devices thereby increasing the number of devices permissible in the hazardous area over a single barrier arrangement.

The devices are connected in series on the bus, whereas in the voltage-mode variants the devices are connected in parallel to the bus.

14.2 Transmitted bit rate

See 13.2.

14.3 Network specifications

14.3.1 Components

An MAU operates in a network composed of the following components:

- a) cable;
- b) terminators;
- c) couplers;
- d) coupler mounts;
- e) devices (containing at least one communication element).

A wire network in current mode may additionally include the following components:

- f) connectors;
- g) power supplies;
- h) devices which include power supplies;
- i) intrinsic safety (IS) barriers.

The network medium consists of shielded twisted-pair cable. Independent of topology, all attached devices, other than possibly the transmitting device, are low impedance to prevent significant network loading.

A coupler mount is a network element that allows a coupler to be connected to the network medium. It may be considered as a primary winding in a transformer (inductive coupler) and has, as such, electrical characteristics that affect the network.

14.3.2 Topologies

A wire MAU shall operate in a network with a linear bus topology, consisting of a trunk, terminated at each end as specified in 14.8.5, to which communication elements are connected via couplers.

The coupler and communication element may be integrated in one device (such as zero-length spur).

Several communication elements may be connected to the trunk at one point, using a multiport coupler. An active coupler may be used to extend a spur to a length that requires termination to avoid reflections and distortions. Active repeaters may be used to extend the length of the trunk beyond that of a single segment, as permitted by the network configuration rules.

14.3.3 Network configuration rules

An MAU that claims conformance to this clause shall meet the requirements of this clause when used in a network that complies with these rules.

Rule 1: One fieldbus shall be capable of communication between two and 30 devices, all operating at the same bit rate, for both a powered and a non-powered bus, and in a hazardous area using distributed barriers.

NOTE 1 This rule does not preclude the use of more than the specified number of devices in an installed system. The numbers of devices were calculated on the assumption that a bus-powered device draws 1,0 W.

Rule 2: A fully loaded (maximum number of connected devices), current-mode fieldbus segment shall have a total cable length, between any two devices, of up to 400 m.

NOTE 2 400 m maximum cable length is the requirement for conformance to this clause, but this does not preclude the use of longer lengths in an installed system.

Rule 3: The total number of waveform regenerations by repeaters and active couplers between any two devices is repeater implementation dependent.

NOTE 3 Prior editions of this standard limited this total number to five.

Rule 4: The maximum propagation delay between any two devices shall not exceed 40 Tbit.

NOTE 4 For efficiency of the network, that part of the turnaround time of any device on the network caused by a PhE between the end of a received frame and the beginning of the transmitted frame containing an associated immediate response should not exceed five bit times, no more than two bit times of which should be due to the MAU. As it is not mandatory to expose the DLL-PhL interface, or the MDS-MAU interface, that part of the turnaround time of a fieldbus device caused by the PhL or the MAU cannot be specified, or conformance tested.

Rule 5: The fieldbus shall be capable of continued operation while a device is being connected or disconnected. Data errors induced during connection or disconnection shall be detected.

Rule 6: Failure of any communication element or spur (including a short circuit or open circuit, but excluding jabber) shall not interfere with transactions between other communication elements for more than 1 ms.

Rule 7: The network shall not be polarity sensitive with or without power injected on the line.

Rule 8: The degradation of the electrical characteristics of the signal, between any two devices, due to attenuation, attenuation distortion and mismatching shall be limited to the values indicated below.

- a) Signal attenuation: the signal attenuation due to each device shall not exceed 0,35 dB. The signal attenuation due to each full or empty coupler mount shall not exceed 0,6 dB. The configuration of the bus (trunk and spur lengths, number of devices, IS barriers, galvanic isolators, and possible matching devices) shall be such that the attenuation between any two devices at the frequency corresponding to the bit rate shall not exceed 10 dB.

NOTE 5 The signal attenuation due to a device is with a cable of 80 Ω characteristic impedance. If a lower impedance cable is used, then the attenuation per device will increase.

NOTE 6 It will be required that the devices be connected to the bus using a mount to reach the maximum number of connected devices.

- b) Attenuation distortion: the configuration of the bus (trunk and spur lengths and number of devices) shall be such that between any two devices:

$$[\text{Attenuation}(1,25 f_r) - \text{Attenuation}(0,25 f_r)] \leq 6 \text{ dB}$$

$$\text{Attenuation}(1,25 f_r) \geq \text{Attenuation}(0,25 f_r)$$

where f_r is the frequency corresponding to the bit rate. Attenuation shall be monotonic for all frequencies from $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz to 1,25 MHz).

- c) Mismatching distortion: mismatching (due to spurs or any other effect, including one open-circuit spur of maximum length) on the bus shall be such that, at any point along the trunk, in the frequency band $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz to 1,25 MHz):

$$|Z - Z_{fr}| / |Z + Z_{fr}| \leq 0,2$$

where

Z_o is the characteristic impedance of the trunk cable;

Z is the series combination of Z_o and the load impedance at the coupler.

NOTE 7 This rule minimizes restrictions on trunk and spur length, number of devices etc., by specifying only the transmission limitations imposed by combinations of these factors. Different combinations may be used, depending on the needs of the application.

Rule 9: The following rules shall apply to systems implemented with redundant media:

- each channel (cable) shall comply with the network configuration rules;
- there shall not be a non-redundant segment between two redundant segments;
- repeaters shall also be redundant;
- if the system is configured (by systems management) to transmit on more than one channel simultaneously, then the propagation time difference between any two devices on any two channels shall not exceed five bit times;

NOTE 8 This delay is equal to the default value of the inter-channel signal skew (see 9.2.9). The propagation delay difference can be larger, if the inter-channel signal skew parameter is set to match this difference.

- channel numbers shall be maintained throughout the fieldbus, that is channels 1,2,3... from systems management shall always connect to physical channels 1,2,3...

14.3.4 Power distribution rules for network configuration

See 11.3.4.

14.4 MAU transmit circuit specification

The requirements of this subclause are summarized in Table 70 and Table 71.

Table 70 – Transmit level specification summary for current-mode MAU

Transmit level characteristics, values referred to trunk (but measured using test load as shown in Figure 68)	Limits (bus powered and/or IS)
Output level (peak-to-peak, see Figure 55) With test load ($>2 \times$ nominal Z_0 of trunk cable)	$\geq 2,25$ V $160 \Omega \pm 1 \%$
Maximum output signal distortion; this is overvoltage, ringing and droop (see Figure 55)	$\pm 10 \%$
Quiescent transmitter output; that is transmitter noise (measured over the frequency band 1 kHz to 4 MHz)	≤ 1 mV (r.m.s.)

Table 71 – Transmit timing specification summary for current-mode MAU

Transmit level characteristics, values referred to trunk (but measured using test load as shown in Figure 68)	Limits (bus powered and/or IS)
Transmitted bit rate	1 Mbit/s $\pm 0,01 \%$
Instantaneous bit time	1 μ s $\pm 0,025 \mu$ s
Rise and fall times (10 % to 90 % of peak-to-peak signal, see Figure 55)	$\leq 20 \%$ T_{bit}
Slew rate (at any point from 10 % to 90 % of peak-to-peak signal)	$\leq 200,0$ V/ μ s
Maximum transmitted bit cell jitter (zero-crossing point deviation, see Figure 71)	$\pm 2,5 \%$ T_{bit}
Transmit enable/disable time (that is, time during which the output waveform may not meet the transmit requirements)	$\leq 2,0$ T_{bit}

14.4.1 Configuration

Figure 68 shows the configuration which shall be used for testing.

The test configuration for this clause shall be as shown in Figure 68 except where otherwise stated in a specific requirement.

NOTE Test load resistance $R_L = 160 \Omega \pm 1 \%$ as the output is loaded by a series loop of the trunk.

14.4.2 Output level requirements

NOTE Figure 55 shows an example of one cycle of a fieldbus waveform, illustrating some key items from the transmit circuit specification. Only signal voltages are shown; this diagram takes no account of power supply voltages.

A current-mode MAU transmit circuit shall conform to the following output level requirements, all amplitudes being measured at the estimated mid-point between any peaks or troughs in the top and bottom of the waveform ("Mid-point" in Figure 55):

- the output voltage across the test load after transformer step up/down shall be no less than 2,25 V peak-to-peak, with a load resistance of $160 \Omega \pm 1 \%$ ("min. o/p" in Figure 55);
- during transmission, a device shall not suffer permanent failure when a load resistance of $\leq 1 \Omega$ is applied for 1 s;
- the output noise from a current-mode MAU which is receiving or not powered shall not exceed 1 mV (r.m.s.), measured differentially over the frequency band 100 kHz to 4 MHz, referred to the trunk;
- the differential voltage across the test load shall be such that the voltage monotonically changes between 10 % and 90 % of peak-to-peak value. Thereafter, the signal voltage shall not vary more than $\pm 10 \%$ of peak-to-peak value until next transition occurs. This permitted variation shall include all forms of output signal distortion, such as overvoltage, ringing and droop.

14.4.3 Output timing requirements

An MAU transmit circuit shall conform to the following output timing requirements:

- rise and fall times, measured from 10 % to 90 % of the peak-to-peak signal amplitude shall not exceed 0,2 (see Figure 55);
- slew rate shall not exceed 200,0 V/ μ s measured at any point in the range 10 % to 90 % of the peak-to-peak signal amplitude (see Figure 55);

transmitted bit cell jitter shall not exceed $\pm 0,025$ Tbit from the ideal zero crossing point, measured with respect to previous zero crossing (see Figure 71);

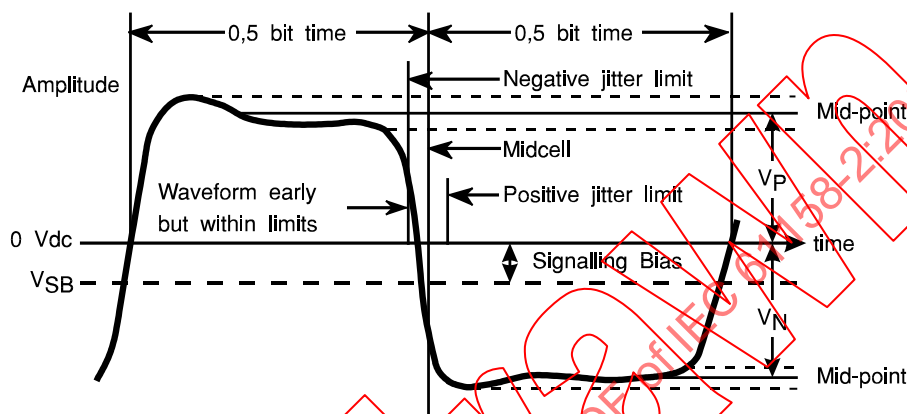


Figure 71 – Transmitted and received bit cell jitter (zero crossing point deviation)

- the transmit circuit shall turn on, that is the signal shall rise from below the transmit circuit maximum output noise level as specified in 14.4.2 c) to full output level, in less than 2,0 Tbit. The waveform corresponding to the third and later bit times shall be as specified by other subclauses of 14.4,
- the transmit circuit shall turn off, that is the signal shall fall from full output level to below the transmit circuit maximum output noise level as specified in 14.4.2 c), in less than 2,0 Tbit. The time for the transmit circuit to return to its off-state impedance shall not exceed 4,0 Tbit. For the purposes of testing, this requirement shall be met with the transmit circuit test configuration of 14.4.1.

NOTE This requirement is to ensure that the transition of the transmit circuit from active to passive leaves the line capacitance fully discharged.

14.5 MAU receive circuit specification

14.5.1 General

The requirements of this subclause are summarized in Table 72.

The input impedance of the receive circuit is allowed to be inductive. To prevent that the resistive part of the impedance becomes too high, both the maximum total input impedance and the maximum input resistance are specified in Table 72.

Table 72 – Receive circuit specification summary for current-mode MAU

Receive circuit characteristics (values referred to trunk)	Limits for current mode (bus powered and/or IS)
Input resistance, measured over the frequency range $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz to 1,25 MHz)	$\leq 0,5 \Omega$
Sensitivity; min. peak-to-peak signal required to be accepted (see Figure 58)	4,0 mA
Noise rejection; max. peak-to-peak noise required to be rejected (see Figure 58)	2,0 mA
Maximum received bit cell jitter (zero crossing-point deviation, see Figure 69)	$\pm 0,10 T_{bit}$
Input impedance, measured over the frequency range $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz to 1,25 MHz)	$\leq 4,0 \Omega$

14.5.2 Input impedance

The differential input resistance of a current-mode MAU receive circuit shall not exceed $0,5 \Omega$, and the differential input impedance of a current-mode MAU receive circuit shall not exceed $4,0 \Omega$ in series with the line over the frequency $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz to 1,25 MHz). This requirement shall be met in the power-off and power-on (not transmitting) states, and in transition between these states. This impedance shall be measured at the inductive coupler, using a sinusoidal current waveform with an amplitude greater than the receiver sensitivity threshold, and lower than 20 mA peak-to-peak.

14.5.3 Receiver sensitivity and noise rejection

An MAU receive circuit shall be capable of accepting an input signal from 4,0 mA peak-to-peak to 20,0 mA peak-to-peak, including overvoltage and oscillation (see "signal level" together with "positive amplitude" and "negative amplitude", all in Figure 55).

An MAU receive circuit shall not respond to an input signal with a peak-to-peak line current amplitude which does not exceed 2,0 mA (see "noise rejection" in Figure 58).

14.5.4 Received bit cell jitter

The receive circuit shall accept a Manchester encoded signal transmitted in accordance with 14.2 and 14.4. In addition, the receiver shall work properly with signals with the time variation between any two adjacent signal transition points (zero crossing) of $\pm 0,10 T_{bit}$ or less. See Figure 71.

NOTE 1 This does not preclude the use of receivers that perform better than this specification.

NOTE 2 Depending on the symbol pattern, the nominal time between zero crossings may be one-half or one bit time.

NOTE 3 There is no requirement to reject a signal with a specified time variation value. The receiver reports an error when the received bit cell jitter exceeds the receiver's ability to reliably decode signaling.

14.5.5 Interference susceptibility and error rates

See 13.5.5.

14.6 Jabber inhibit

See 13.6.

14.7 Power distribution

14.7.1 General

NOTE 1 A device can optionally receive power via the signal conductors, or be separately powered.

NOTE 2 A device can be certified as intrinsically safe with either method of receiving power.

NOTE 3 This standard does not include requirements for intrinsic safety certification, but seeks to exclude conditions or situations that would prevent intrinsic safety certification.

NOTE 4 A separately powered device can be connected to a powered fieldbus.

NOTE 5 For ease of reference, the requirements of 14.7 are summarized in Table 73.

Table 73 – Network power supply requirements

Network power supply requirements	Limits
Output current	1,0 A r.m.s. $\pm$ 5 %
Output frequency	16 kHz $\pm$ 0,5 %
Harmonic distortion and noise of supply current	See Figure 72
Output impedance, measured over the frequency range 0,25 f_r to 1,25 f_r (250 kHz to 1,25 MHz)	$\leq 5 \Omega$

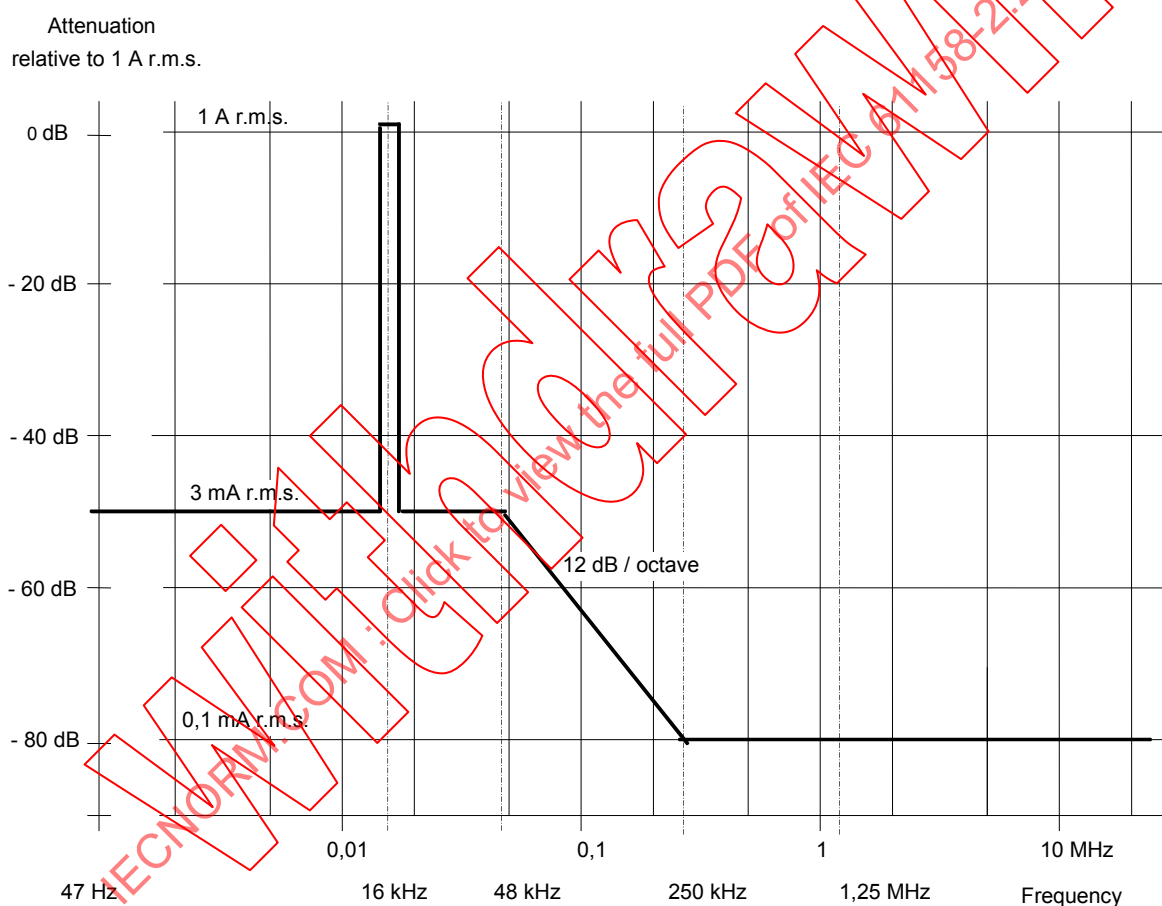


Figure 72 – Power supply harmonic distortion and noise

14.7.2 Powered via signal conductors

A fieldbus device claiming conformance to this clause that is powered via the signal conductors shall conform to the requirements of this clause when powered by a supply with the following specifications.

a) The output current of the power supply shall be a current of 1,0 A r.m.s. $\pm$ 5 %.

NOTE 1 The output voltage from the supply is a function of cable loss and power consumed per device. A fieldbus device may be designed to consume one or more standard loads. A standard load is 1,0 W.

NOTE 2 The power supply open-circuit output voltage will be less than the limit specified by the local regulatory agency for the particular implementation.

- b) The output impedance of the power supply shall be $\leq 5 \Omega$ over the frequency range $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz to 1,25 MHz).
- c) The power waveform shall be a sinusoid of frequency and maximum harmonic distortion and noise as follows:
 - 1) 0,1 mA r.m.s. over the frequency range $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz to 1,25 MHz);
 - 2) 3,0 mA r.m.s. over the frequency range 47 Hz to 48 kHz, with the exception of 16 kHz $\pm 0,5 \%$;
 - 3) levels at other frequencies in accordance with Figure 72.

The device shall not introduce harmonic components of the power frequency larger than 15 μ A r.m.s. in the main trunk.

14.7.3 Powered separately from signal

NOTE Power distribution to non-bus powered fieldbus devices is by separate conductors feeding local power supplies, regulators or safety barriers. IS certification may require these conductors to be in a separate cable from the signal conductors, and may also impose more stringent requirements for current levels than specified.

A separately powered fieldbus device claiming conformance to this clause shall drop no more than 200 mV r.m.s. at the power frequency on the signal conductors, nor shall it supply a current of more than 100 μ A r.m.s. to the signal conductors when not transmitting.

14.7.4 Electrical isolation

See 13.7.4.

14.8 Medium specifications

14.8.1 Connector

See 13.8.1.

14.8.2 Standard test cable

The cable used for testing fieldbus devices with a current-mode MAU for conformance to the requirements of this clause shall be a single twisted-pair cable with overall shield meeting the following minimum requirements at 25 °C:

- a) Z_0 at $0,25 f_r$ (250 kHz) = $80 \Omega \pm 10 \%$;
- b) Z_0 at $1,25 f_r$ (1,25 MHz) = $80 \Omega \pm 10 \%$;
- c) maximum attenuation at $0,25 f_r$ (250 kHz) = 11,0 dB/km;
- d) maximum attenuation at $1,25 f_r$ (1,25 MHz) = 20,0 dB/km;
- e) maximum d.c. resistance (per conductor) = 15,0 Ω /km;
- f) conductor cross-sectional area (wire size) = nominal 1,5 mm².

NOTE The preceding specification is for conformance testing an MAU. Other types of cable may be used in real installations. (See Annex B.) Cables with improved specifications may enable increased trunk length and/or superior interference immunity. Conversely, cables with inferior specifications may be used, subject to length limitations for both trunk and spurs, plus possible non-conformance to the RFI/EMI susceptibility requirements.

14.8.3 Coupler

See 13.8.3.

14.8.4 Splices

See 13.8.4.

14.8.5 Terminator

A terminator shall be located at both ends of the trunk cable, connected from one signal conductor to the other. No connection shall be made between terminator and cable shield.

For test purposes, using the cable specified in 14.8.2, the terminator shall have an impedance value of $80 \Omega \pm 2 \%$ over the frequency range $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz to 1,25 MHz).

The voltage drop in the terminations shall be less than 0,3 V at 16 kHz.

NOTE In practical implementations with power supplied via the signal conductors, the terminator would be bypassed at power frequencies to minimize power losses.

The terminator shall be non-polarized.

All terminators used for potentially explosive atmospheres shall comply with requirements commensurate with the required approval documents.

14.8.6 Shielding rules

For full conformance to the noise immunity requirements of 14.5, it is necessary to ensure the integrity of shielding throughout the cabling, connectors and couplers by the following means:

- a) the coverage of the cable shield shall be greater than 95 % of the full cable length;
- b) shielding shall completely cover the electrical circuits in connectors, couplers, and splices.

NOTE Deviation from these shielding rules may degrade noise immunity.

14.8.7 Grounding rules

See 13.8.7.

14.8.8 Color coding of cables

See 11.8.8.

15 Types 1 and 7: Medium attachment unit: dual-fiber optical media

15.1 General

The network medium consists of a pair of fiber optic waveguides providing bidirectionality by use of a separate fiber for each direction of signal propagation. These are known collectively as an elementary optical path.

In all networks involving more than two devices, the fiber optic waveguides conveying signals from the devices are combined by a passive or active star coupler, then rebroadcast on all the waveguides conveying signals to the devices. A point-to-point link between a pair of devices using a single elementary optical path is also possible.

These dual fibers connect to the CPIC of a fieldbus device. The fiber optic transmission system is itself intrinsically safe.

15.2 Bit-rate-dependent quantities

Six bit rates are defined for a medium attachment unit (MAU) for dual-fiber optical media, where the network medium consists of a pair of unidirectional optical waveguides. A given MAU shall support at least one of these bit rates. Table 74 specifies the supported bit rates, and defines symbols for bit-rate-dependent quantities used throughout the remainder of this subclause:

Table 74 – Bit-rate-dependent quantities of high-speed (≥ 1 Mbit/s) dual-fiber networks

Quantity	Symbol	Unit	Value					
Nominal bit rate	BR	Mbit/s	0,031 25	1	2,5	5	10	25
Maximum deviation from BR	ΔBR		0,2 %	0,01 %				
Nominal bit duration	T_{bit}	μs	32,0	1,0	0,4	0,2	0,1	0,04
Maximum deviation from T_{bit}	ΔT_{bit}	–	0,025 %	0,015 %				
Maximum propagation delay	PD_{max}	T_{bit}	20	40				

The average bit rate shall be $BR \pm \Delta BR$, averaged over a frame having a minimum length of 16 octets. The instantaneous bit time shall be $T_{bit} \pm \Delta T_{bit}$.

15.3 Network specifications

15.3.1 Components

An optical MAU operates in a network composed of the following components:

- a) optical cable;
- b) devices (containing at least one communication element);
- c) connectors;
- d) optical passive stars;
- e) optical active stars.

15.3.2 Topologies

An optical MAU shall operate in a network with a star topology, or in a point-to-point network. Devices are connected to the optical stars or peer devices by elementary optical paths. Optical stars are interconnected by elementary optical paths.

15.3.3 Network configuration rules

An MAU that claims conformance to this clause shall meet the requirements of this clause when used in a network that complies with these rules.

Rule 1: All network devices operate at the same bit rate.

Rule 2: The total number of optical active stars between any two devices shall not exceed four.

Rule 3: The maximum propagation delay between any two devices shall not exceed that specified in Table 74.

NOTE For network efficiency, the part of the turn-around time of any device on the network caused by a PhE between the end of a received frame and the beginning of the transmitted frame containing an associated immediate response should not exceed five bit times, no more than two bit times of which should be due to the MAU. As it is not mandatory to expose either the DLL-PhL interface or the MDS-MAU interface, that part of the turn-around time of a fieldbus device caused by the PhL or the MAU cannot be specified or conformance tested.

Rule 4: The fieldbus shall be capable of continuing operation while a device is being connected or disconnected. Data errors induced during connection or disconnection shall be detected.

Rule 5: The network shall be acyclic, with a single path between any two devices.

Rule 6: The following rules shall apply to systems implemented with redundant media:

- a) each channel shall comply with the network configuration rules;
- b) there shall not be a non-redundant segment or equipment between two redundant segments;
- c) if the devices of the system are configured (by systems management) to transmit on more than one channel simultaneously then the propagation time difference between any two devices on any two channels shall not exceed five bit times;
- d) channel numbers and association with the physical transmission media shall be maintained consistently throughout the fieldbus, i.e. channels 1,2,3,... from systems management shall always connect to physical channels 1,2,3,...

15.4 MAU transmit circuit specifications

NOTE For ease of reference, the requirements of 15.4 are summarized in Table 75 and Table 76.

15.4.1 Test configuration

The output level, spectral and timing specifications are measured at the end of a 1 m standard test fiber connected to the CPIC.

15.4.2 Output level specification

An optical MAU transmit circuit shall conform to the following output level and spectral requirements. Level and spectral characteristics are measured at a temperature of 25 °C. Output level is the effective launch power of a Hi level. Output level specification is shown in Table 75.

Table 75 – Transmit level and spectral specification summary

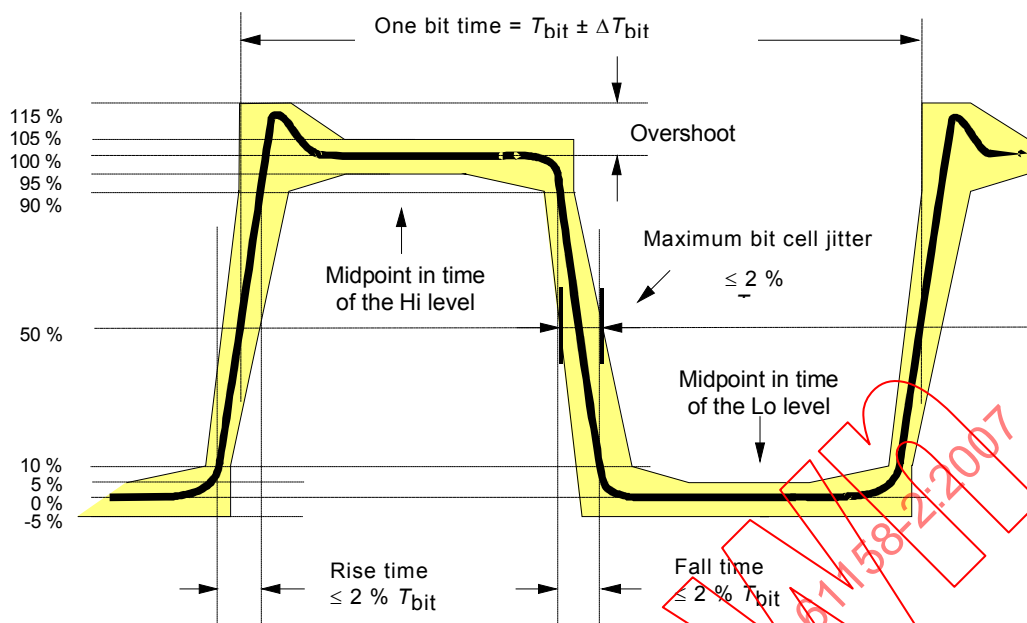
Transmit level and spectral characteristics (values referred to the CPIC with standard test fiber)	Limits, using 62,5/125 µm fiber
Peak emission wavelength (λ_p)	(850 ± 30) nm
Typical half-intensity wavelength ($\Delta\lambda$)	≤50 nm
Effective launch power Hi level	(−11,5 ± 1,5) dBm
Overshoot of transitions	≤15 % effective power
Extinction ratio	≥20:1

15.4.3 Output timing specification

An optical MAU transmit circuit shall conform to the following output timing requirements (see Figure 73). Timing characteristics are measured at a temperature of 25 °C. The output timing specification is shown in Table 76.

Table 76 – Transmit timing specification summary

Transmit timing characteristics (values referred to the CPIC with standard test fiber)	Limits
Transmitted bit rate	BR ± ΔBR
Instantaneous bit time	$T_{bit} \pm \Delta T_{bit}$
Rise and fall times (10 % to 90 % of peak-peak signal)	≤ 2,0 % T_{bit}
Difference between rise and fall times	≤ 0,5 % T_{bit}
Maximum transmitted bit cell jitter	± 2,0 % T_{bit}



NOTE 0 % effective power is the Lo level state power level.
100 % effective power is the Hi level state power level.

Figure 73 – Optical wave shape template

15.5 MAU receive circuit specifications

15.5.1 General

The requirements of this subclause are summarized in Table 77.

Table 77 – Receive circuit specification summary

Receive circuit characteristics (values referred to the CPIC with standard test fiber)	Limits	
	Low sensitivity system	High sensitivity system
Receiver operating range	–30,0 dBm to –10,0 dBm	–40,0 dBm to –20,0 dBm
Maximum received bit cell jitter	±14 % Tbit	

15.5.2 Receiver operating range

The specified receiver sensitivity range is

- 30,0 dBm to –10,0 dBm effective power for low sensitivity;
- 40,0 dBm to –20,0 dBm effective power for high sensitivity.

15.5.3 Maximum received bit cell jitter

The receive circuit shall accept a Manchester encoded signal transmitted in accordance with 15.4. In addition, the receiver shall accept signals with time variation between two adjacent signal transition points (50 % crossing) of ±14,0 % Tbit or less.

NOTE 1 This does not preclude the use of receivers that perform better than this specification but in accordance with the tolerance of the received bit cell jitter of the MDS (see 9.2.6).

NOTE 2 Depending on the symbol pattern, the nominal time between 50 % crossings may be either 1,0 Tbit or 0,5 Tbit.

15.5.4 Interference susceptibility and error rates

15.5.4.1 Low-speed (31,25 kbit/s)

NOTE When the fieldbus is operating in a variety of standard noise environments, the probability that an Application Layer User Data Unit contains an undetected error, due to operation of the conveying Physical and DLL entities, should be less than 1 in 6×10^9 (one error in 20 years at 10 messages/s). A communication element is regarded as conforming to this theoretical requirement when it meets the following interference susceptibility requirements. These are specified by a detected frame error rate which is derived by using a ratio of detected to undetected errors of 10^6 .

A communication element which includes an optical MAU operating at 31,25 kbit/s with frames containing 32 random user data bits, at an average of 10 messages per second, with signals of –25 dBm, shall produce no more than 10 detected frame errors in 60 000 frames during operation in the presence of electromagnetic or electrical interference environments as follows:

- a) 10 V/m electromagnetic field as specified in IEC 61000-4-3 at severity level 3;
- b) electrical fast transient as specified in IEC 61000-4-4 at severity level 3.

15.5.4.2 High-speed (≥ 1 Mbit/s)

NOTE When the fieldbus is operating in a variety of standard noise environments, the probability that an Application Layer User Data Unit contains an undetected error, due to operation of the conveying Physical and DLL entities, should be less than 1 in 10^{12} (one error in 20 years at 1 600 messages/s). A communication element is regarded as conforming to this theoretical requirement when it meets the following interference susceptibility requirements. These are specified by a detected frame error rate which is derived by using a ratio of detected to undetected errors of 10^6 .

A communication element which includes an optical MAU operating at ≥ 1 Mbit/s with frames containing 64 random user data bits, at an average of 1 600 messages/s, with signals of –25 dBm, shall produce no more than 6 detected frame errors in 100 000 frames during operation in the presence of electromagnetic or electrical interference environments as follows:

- a) 10 V/m electromagnetic field as specified in IEC 61000-4-3 at severity level 3;
- b) electrical fast transient as specified in IEC 61000-4-4 at severity level 3.

15.5.4.3 Common

The error rate specifications shall also be satisfied after, but not during, operation in the following noise environments:

- a) 8 kV electrical discharge to exposed metalwork as specified in IEC 61000-4-2 at severity level 3. If the device suffers temporary loss of function or performance as a result of this test, it shall recover from any such loss without operator intervention within 3 s after the end of the test;
- b) high frequency disturbance tests as specified in IEC 60255-22-1:1988, 3.1 (test voltage class III, 2,5 kV and 1 kV peak values of first half-cycle in longitudinal and transverse mode respectively). If the device suffers temporary loss of function or performance because of this test it shall recover from any such loss without operator intervention within 3 s after the end of the test.

15.6 Jabber inhibit

The MAU shall contain a self-interrupt capability to inhibit transmitted signals from reaching the medium. Hardware within the MAU (with no external message other than the detection of output signals or leakage via the transmit function) shall provide a window of between 3 750 and 7 500 Tbit, during which time a normal frame may be transmitted. If the frame length exceeds this duration, the jabber inhibit function shall inhibit further output signals from reaching the medium and shall disable echo on the RxS line (see 10.2.2.2) to indicate jabber detection to the MDS.

For a data rate of 31,25 kbit/s, the MAU shall reset the self-interrupt function after a period of $3 \text{ s} \pm 50 \%$.

NOTE 1 This inhibits bus traffic for no more than 8 % ($\approx 1/12,5$) of the available time.

For a data rate of 1 Mbit/s or greater, the MAU shall reset the self-interrupt function after a period of 500 000 Tbit $\pm$ 50 %.

NOTE 2 This inhibits bus traffic for no more than 3 % ($\approx 1/32$) of the available time.

15.7 Medium specifications

15.7.1 Connector

Cable connectors, if used, shall be in accordance with this standard (see Annex A). Permanent terminations (splices) may also be used.

15.7.2 Standard test fiber

The cable used for testing fieldbus devices or optical active stars with an optical MAU, for conformance to the requirements of this clause, shall be a 1 m fiber optic cable with two silica fiber optic waveguides. The characteristics of those waveguides shall be compatible with IEC 60793 [fiber type: A1b (62,5/125 μ m)] as follows:

- core diameter (μ m): $62,5 \pm 3$
- cladding diameter (μ m): 125 ± 3
- core/cladding concentricity (%): ≤ 6
- no circularity core (%): ≤ 6
- no circularity cladding (%): ≤ 2
- external primary coating diameter (μ m): 250 ± 15
- numerical aperture: $0,275 \pm 0,015$
- attenuation for 850 nm (dB/km): $\leq 3,0$
- bandwidth for 850 nm (MHz x km): ≥ 200

NOTE Alternate test fibers are allowed. Operation using a 50 μ m or 100 μ m alternate test fiber is described in Annex E.

15.7.3 Optical passive star

NOTE For more information, see Annex C.

15.7.4 Optical active star

15.7.4.1 Definition

An opto-electronic device or module in an optical communication system, that receives a signal, amplifies it and retransmits it (retiming is optional).

15.7.4.2 Operating

Three types of link shall be considered.

a) Link between two optical active stars

Any frame coming directly from an optical active star and reaching an optical access of another optical active star is retransmitted without feedback (the access which receives the frame does not retransmit that frame).

b) Link between an optical active star and a fieldbus device

Any frame coming from an optical active star and reaching a fieldbus device is received and not retransmitted. Any frame coming from a fieldbus device and reaching an optical active star is retransmitted without feedback.

c) Link between an optical passive star and an optical active star

Any frame coming from an optical passive star and reaching an optical active star is retransmitted without feedback. A passive star reflects all frames by design. An optical active star shall not retransmit the feedback signs of an optical passive star.

Regenerative functions

An optical active star restores signals to standard transmit power levels. The timing characteristics (jitter) can be regenerated or not; that function is optional.

15.7.4.3 Transmit and receive characteristics

The following characteristics are given ...

a) Level characteristics

Transmit and receive level specifications are the same as those of an optical MAU (15.4.2 and 15.5.2). Level and spectral characteristics are measured at a temperature of 25 °C. These specifications are summarized in Table 78.

Table 78 – Transmit and receive level and spectral specifications for an optical active star

Transmit level and spectral characteristics (values referred to the CPIC with standard test fiber)	Limits, with 62,5/125 µm fiber	
Peak emission wavelength (λ_p)	(850 ± 30) nm	
Typical half-intensity wavelength ($\Delta\lambda$)	≤ 50 nm	
Extinction ratio	≥ 20:1	
Effective launch power Hi level	(−11,5 ± 1,5) dBm	
Receiver operating range (effective power)	Low sensitivity system	High sensitivity system
	−30,0 dBm to −10,0 dBm	−40,0 dBm to −20,0 dBm

b) Timing characteristics

Transmit and receive timing specifications of an optical active star concern (see Table 79):

- rise and fall times of the transmitted signal;
- temporal deformation of signals due to an optical active star.

Timing characteristics are measured at a temperature of 25 °C. For optical active stars that have a timing regenerative function, the timing characteristics are the same as those of an optical MAU.

Table 79 – Timing characteristics of an optical active star

Timing characteristics (values referred to the CPIC)	Limits
Rise and fall times of transmitted signals (10 % to 90 % of peak-peak signal)	≤ 2 % Tbit
Maximum temporal deformation between optical input ports and optical output ports (see Note 1)	± 3 % Tbit
Propagation time of a data bit between an optical input port and any output ports for an active star with timing regenerative function (see NOTE 2)	≤ 2 Tbit
Maximum transmitted bit cell jitter for an optical active star with timing regenerative function (see Note 2)	$\pm 2,0$ % Tbit
NOTE 1 The temporal deformation due to an optical active star is the temporal difference of width of a same physical bit, bit pattern, waveform, or other appropriate term.	
NOTE 2 Only for optical active stars with timing regenerative function.	

16 Type 1: Medium attachment unit: 31,25 kbit/s, single-fiber optical medium

16.1 General

The network medium consists of a set of bidirectional single-fiber optic waveguides, each known as an elementary optical path.

In all networks involving more than two devices, the fiber optic waveguides conveying signals from the devices are combined by a reflective passive star coupler, where the received signals are retransmitted on all the fiber optic waveguides to the devices. A point-to-point link between a pair of devices using a single elementary optical path is also possible.

These bidirectional single fibers connect to the CPIC of a fieldbus device. The fiber optic transmission system is itself intrinsically safe.

16.2 Transmitted bit rate

The transmitted bit rate, $BR \pm \Delta BR$, shall be 31,25 kbit/s $\pm 0,2$ %, averaged over a frame having a minimum length of 16 octets. The instantaneous bit time, $T_{bit} \pm \Delta T_{bit}$, shall be 32 μ s $\pm 0,025$ %.

16.3 Network specifications

16.3.1 Components

See 15.3.1.

16.3.2 Topologies

See 15.3.2.

16.3.3 Network configuration rules

An MAU that claims conformance to this clause shall meet the requirements of this clause when used in a network that complies with these rules.

The rules are the same as 15.3.3, except as follows.

16.4 MAU transmit circuit specifications

NOTE For ease of reference, the requirements of 16.4 are summarized in Table 80 and Table 76.

16.4.1 Test configuration

See 15.4.1.

16.4.2 Output level specification

An optical MAU transmit circuit shall conform to the following output level and spectral requirements. Level and spectral characteristics are measured at a temperature of 25 °C. Output level is the effective launch power of a Hi level. Output level specification is shown in Table 80.

Table 80 – Transmit level and spectral specification summary

Transmit level and spectral characteristics (values referred to the CPIC with standard test fiber)	Limits for 31,25 kbit/s (100/140 µm fiber)
Peak emission wavelength (λ_p)	(850 ± 30) nm
Typical half-intensity wavelength ($\Delta\lambda$)	≤ 50 nm
Effective launch power Hi level	$(-13,5 \pm 1,0)$ dBm
Overshoot of transitions	≤ 15 % effective power
Extinction ratio	$\geq 20:1$

16.4.3 Output timing specification

An optical MAU transmit circuit shall conform to the following output timing requirements (see Figure 73). Timing characteristics are measured at a temperature of 25 °C. The output timing specification is shown in Table 76.

16.5 MAU receive circuit specifications

16.5.1 General

The requirements of 16.5 are summarized in Table 77, but relative to the standard 100/140 µm test fiber of this clause.

16.5.2 Receiver operating range

The specified receiver sensitivity range is

- 30,0 dBm to –12,5 dBm effective power for low sensitivity;
- 40,0 dBm to –20,0 dBm effective power for high sensitivity.

16.5.3 Maximum received bit cell jitter

See 15.5.3.

16.5.4 Interference susceptibility and error rates

See 15.5.4.1 and 15.5.4.3 .

16.6 Jabber inhibit

The requirement is the same as 15.6, except as follows:

The MAU shall reset the self-interrupt function after a period of 3 s $\pm$ 50 %.

NOTE This inhibits bus traffic for no more than 8 % ($\approx 1/12,5$) of the available time.

16.7 Medium specifications

16.7.1 Connector

See 15.7.1

16.7.2 Standard test fiber

Silica fiber optic waveguide whose nominal characteristics are compatible with IEC 60793 [fiber type: A1d (100/140 μm)].

The cable used for testing fieldbus devices or optical active stars with an optical MAU, for conformance to the requirements of this clause, shall be a 1 m fiber optic cable with one fiber optic waveguides, whose characteristics are as follows:

- core diameter (μm): 100 ± 5
- cladding diameter (μm): 140 ± 4
- core/cladding concentricity (%): ≤ 6
- no circularity core (%): ≤ 6
- no circularity cladding (%): ≤ 4
- numerical aperture: $0,26 \pm 0,03$
- attenuation for 850 nm (dB/km): $\leq 4,0$
- bandwidth for 850 nm (MHz x km): ≥ 100

NOTE Alternate test fibers are allowed. Operation using a 50 μm or 62,5 μm alternate test fibers is described in annex E.

16.7.3 Optical passive star

NOTE For more information, see Annex C.

16.7.4 Optical active star

16.7.4.1 Definition

Subclause 15.7.4.1 applies.

16.7.4.2 Operating

Subclause 15.7.4.2 applies.

16.7.4.3 Transmit and receive characteristics

16.7.4.3.1 Level characteristics

Transmit and receive level specifications are the same as those of an optical MAU (see 16.4.2 and 16.5.2). Level and spectral characteristics are measured at a temperature of 25 °C. These specifications, summarized in Table 81.

**Table 81 – Transmit and receive level and spectral specifications
for an optical active star**

Transmit level and spectral characteristics (values referred to the CPIC with standard test fiber)	Limits, with 100/140 μm fiber	
Peak emission wavelength (λ_p)	(850 $\pm$ 30) nm	
Typical half intensity wavelength ($\Delta\lambda$)	≤ 50 nm	
Extinction ratio	$\geq 20:1$	
Effective launch power Hi level	(–13,5 $\pm$ 1,0) dBm	
Receiver operating range (effective power)	Low sensitivity system	High sensitivity system
	–30,0 dBm to –12,5 dBm	–40,0 dBm to –20,0 dBm

16.7.4.3.2 Timing characteristics

The timing characteristics of 15.7.4.3 apply.

17 Type 1: Medium attachment unit: radio signaling

17.1 General

The conceptual radio MAU corresponds approximately to the analog and RF portions of a real radio, including aspects related to carrier and intermediate frequencies, types of modulation, modulation indices, transmit signal filtering and shaping, receive signal filtering, signal strength assessment, signal quality assessment, and recovery of clock and data from received signaling. It also includes all digital aspects related to the configuration of these analog-world aspects. It does not include strictly digital data aspects of a radio such as coding that require binary interpretation of the signaling, even though the clock and data recovery functions of the MAU may use expected aspects of that coding (e.g., expected Manchester or 8b/10b code transitions and DC balance) in the recovery process.

The radio environment is space- and time-varying, rendering long-term prediction of properties almost impossible. Real protocols that coordinate transmission and reception may adapt to this variance in real time by changing operating modes dynamically (but in a coordinated manner) to achieve their communications objectives. Therefore this specification provides minimum requirements in a form suitable to that adaptation.

17.2 Transmit signaling rate

The radio MAU shall be capable of transmitting at a signaling (i.e., Ph-symbol) rate that is within 1 % of any configured nominal signaling rate within its design range, with an actual variance in that symbol timing of no more than 0.1 % between any arbitrarily-selected two symbols of a transmission, measured over any transmission but not including the first or last four symbols of the transmission.

The relationship between signaling (baud) rate and maximum bit rate of the radio may vary transmission to transmission as the employing protocol entities adapt to the radio environment and the criticality, urgency or other QoS aspects of the information to be communicated, and of the needs of those protocol entities. The actual bit rate may vary within the message, as occurs in the ETSI DECT standards, where the initial part of the message uses only the 1 bit/bd signaling constellation while the latter part of the message may use a richer constellation, based on data in the message header.

Common ratios of bit rate to baud rate in modems, which determine the required signaling constellation, are

- 1 bit/bd, also known as 2-ary signaling, which is historically the most common
- 2 bit/bd, also known as 4-ary signaling (e.g., QPSK, quadrature phase shift keying)
- 3 bit/bd, also known as 8-ary signaling (e.g., 8PSK)
- 4 bit/bd, also known as 16-ary signaling (e.g., QAM, quadrature amplitude modulation)

Precoding of the digital information before transmission, e.g., for forward error correction or in Manchester or biphase or 8bit/10bd coding, can lower the effective bit rate of the Ph-entity, but does not itself affect the signaling constellation of the radio.

17.3 Modulation

17.3.1 General

The radio MAU shall support at least one of the following types of modulation:

- a) FSK (frequency shift keying);
- b) GFSK (FSK with Gaussian shaping to reduce spectral content of the signal);
- c) MSK (minimum phase shift keying);
- d) GMSK (MSK with Gaussian shaping to reduce spectral content of the signal).

The radio MAU also may support other types of modulation, including:

- e) OOK (on-off keying, a form of amplitude modulation).

17.3.2 Gaussian shaping (filtering)

Many modulation methods use a Gaussian low-pass filter prior to transmission to smooth the abrupt transitions between different signaling states, thereby reducing the energy in the higher-frequency components of the modulation spectrum, improving its spectral content in exchange for limited inter-symbol interference.

The untruncated impulse response $h(t)$ of a Gaussian filter is

$$h(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi \times \delta \times T}} e^{\frac{-t^2}{2 \times \delta^2 \times T^2}},$$

where

$$\delta = \frac{\sqrt{\ln(2)}}{2\pi \times B \times T};$$

B is the 3 dB bandwidth of the filter;

T is the symbol duration;

giving BT as the normalized bandwidth of the filter (in Hz.s).

Pulses such as that produced by a Gaussian low-pass filter have infinite duration (albeit at infinitesimal energy for most of that duration). To make communications with such pulses practical, they are convolved with a rectangular filter that truncates their extent:

$$g(t) = \text{rect}\left(\frac{t}{T}\right) \otimes h(t)$$

$$\text{where } \text{rect}\left(\frac{t}{T}\right) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{T} & \text{for } |t| < \frac{T}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

and $\otimes$ denotes convolution.

17.3.3 FSK

In frequency shift keying, a nominal carrier 'center' frequency f_{carrier} is modulated before transmission by subtracting or adding a deviation frequency (Δf) that is a specified fraction of the signaling rate. The maximum deviation, limit to limit (i.e., $2 \times \max \Delta f$), when divided by the signaling rate, is known as the *modulation index*, h .

A radio MAU that supports FSK shall support 2-ary modulation with a modulation index of

- $h = \frac{2 \times \Delta f}{\text{SR}} = 1,0 \pm 10\%$. Other greater or lesser modulation indices also may be supported.

Modulation with more bits per baud, such as 4-ary and 8-ary FSK, also may be supported.

NOTE 1 This modulation index corresponds to the conventional estimate of channel capacity as 1 bit/s/Hz.

For 2-ary FSK modulation, a '0' MDS-MAU symbol shall be represented by the frequency ($f_{\text{carrier}} - \Delta f$) and a '1' MDS-MAU symbol shall be represented by the frequency ($f_{\text{carrier}} + \Delta f$), where $\Delta f = h/2$.

NOTE 2 If other parts of the Ph-layer provide transparent coding, so that data bits at the DL-Ph interface are unchanged at the DCE-MAU interface, this results in a '1' data bit being represented as a greater frequency than a '0' data bit.

17.3.4 GFSK

In Gaussian frequency shift keying, the FSK modulation of 17.3.3 is shaped by the Gaussian filter of 17.3.2 prior to transmission to reduce its spectral content (that is, to narrow the part of the spectrum where most of the information is conveyed). Typical BT values for the Gaussian filter are:

- $BT = 0,5 \pm 10\%$, and
- $BT = 1,0 \pm 10\%$

A radio MAU that supports FSK shall support at least one of these two BT values. Other normalized bandwidths also may be supported.

17.3.5 PSK

In phase shift keying, a nominal carrier of frequency f_{carrier} is phase-modulated before transmission by advancing a phase deviation ($\Delta\phi$) that is a specified fraction of the signaling rate and the symbol to be transmitted. The maximum deviation (i.e., $\max \Delta\phi$), is known as the *modulation index*, h .

A radio MAU that supports PSK shall support 2-ary modulation with modulation indices of

- $h = \max \Delta\phi = \pi$ radians

where a one is signaled by the maximum phase advance and a zero by half that phase advance. Other greater or lesser extents of maximum phase advance also may be supported. Modulation with more bits per baud, such as 4-ary and 8-ary PSK, also may be supported.

For 2-ary PSK modulation, a '0' DCE-MAU symbol shall be represented by the frequency ($\Phi_{\text{carrier}} + \min \Delta\phi$) and a '1' DCE-MAU symbol shall be represented by the frequency ($\Phi_{\text{carrier}} + \max \Delta\phi$).

NOTE If other parts of the Ph-layer provide transparent coding, so that data bits at the DL-Ph interface are unchanged at the DCE-MAU interface, this results in a '1' data bit being represented as a greater phase advance than a '0' data bit.

17.3.6 GMSK

In Gaussian minimal (phase-) shift keying, the PSK modulation of 17.3.5 is shaped by the Gaussian filter of 17.3.2 prior to transmission to reduce its spectral content (that is, to narrow the part of the spectrum where most of the information is conveyed).

Typical BT values for the Gaussian filter are:

- $BT = 0,3 \pm 10\%$,
- $BT = 0,5 \pm 10\%$, and
- $BT = 1,0 \pm 10\%$

A radio MAU that supports GMSK shall support at least one of these three BT values. Other normalized bandwidths also may be supported.

17.4 Network specification

17.4.1 Components

A radio MAU operates in a network composed of the following components:

- a) devices (containing at least one communication element);
- b) antennas and any connecting cables.

NOTE An antenna may be integrated into a device.

17.4.2 Topologies

The concept of connection topology does not apply to the space-time fabric through which electromagnetic waves propagate. Therefore there are no MAU-induced constraints on patterns of MAU communications other than those induced by nature and sometimes codified as "the laws of physics". Chief among these are attenuation and reflections (multi-path), as well as proximity-induced affects of other nearby radios.

17.4.3 Network configuration rules

A low speed radio MAU shall be required to conform to the requirements of this clause when used in a network that complies with these rules.

Rule 1: All communicating elements on one fieldbus using a radio medium shall be capable of operating at a common baud rate and shall use the same physical or logical radio channel.

Rule 2: More than one independent radio medium fieldbus may operate in the same physical location, but then each separate network shall operate on a different physical or logical radio channel.

Rule 3: A specific radio medium fieldbus radio channel shall define a geographical area (or "CELL") over which that network will operate and no other network using the same radio channel shall operate in that cell. Networks in adjacent cells shall use different radio channels and it shall be possible to implement networks in non-adjacent cells using the same frequency. Non-adjacent cells using class 1 receivers whose geographic centers are less than 40 m apart should use different radio channels. Non-adjacent cells using class 2 receivers whose geographic centers are less than 400 m apart should use different radio channels. Non-adjacent cells using class 3 receivers whose geographic centers are less than 4 000 m apart should use different radio channels.

NOTE 1 See Figure 74 for the cellular structure using radio medium fieldbus networks covering a large industrial site. Examples of the topologies are given in Figure 75 and Figure 76. These three figures are included for explanatory purposes and do not imply a particular implementation.

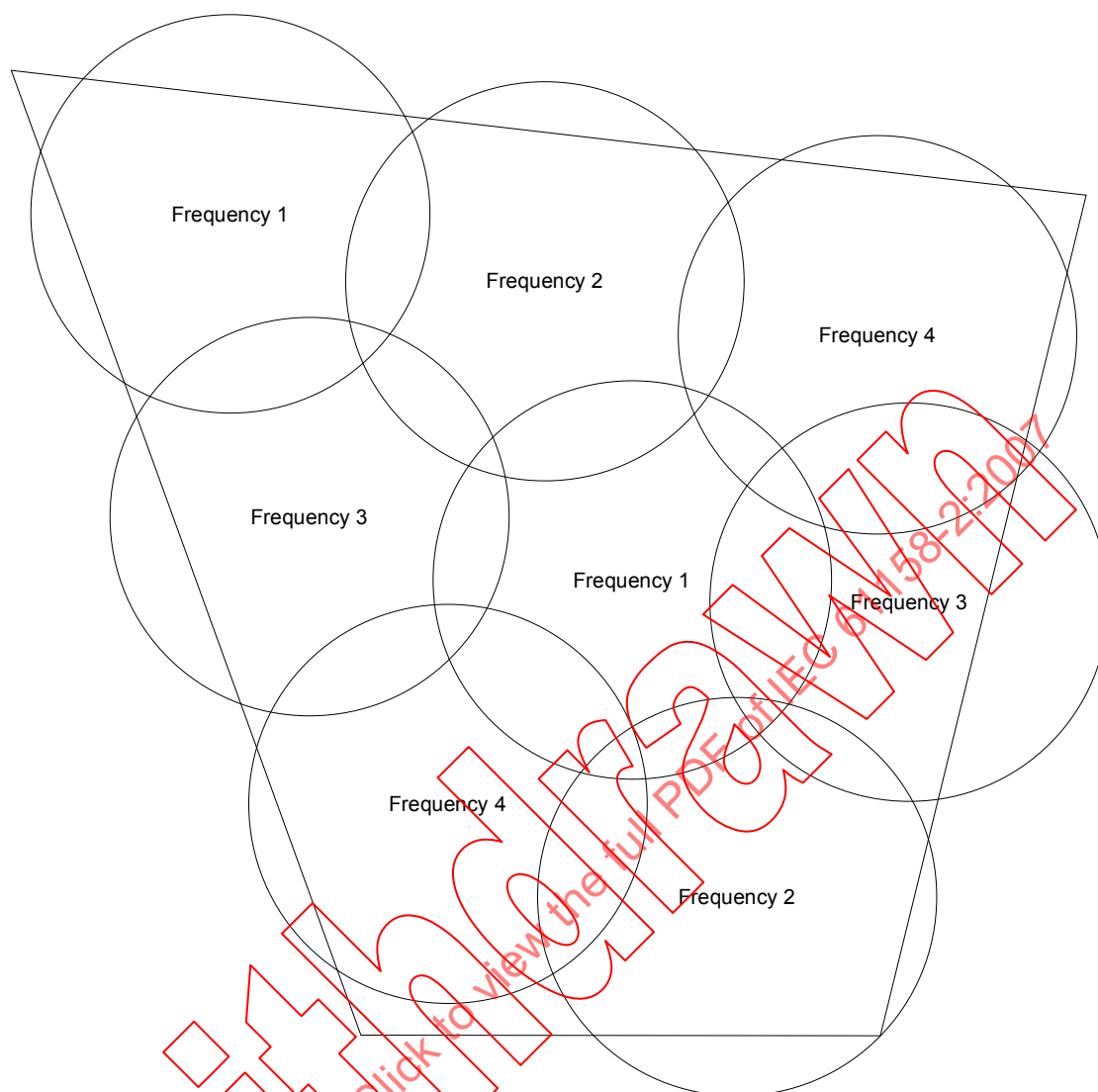
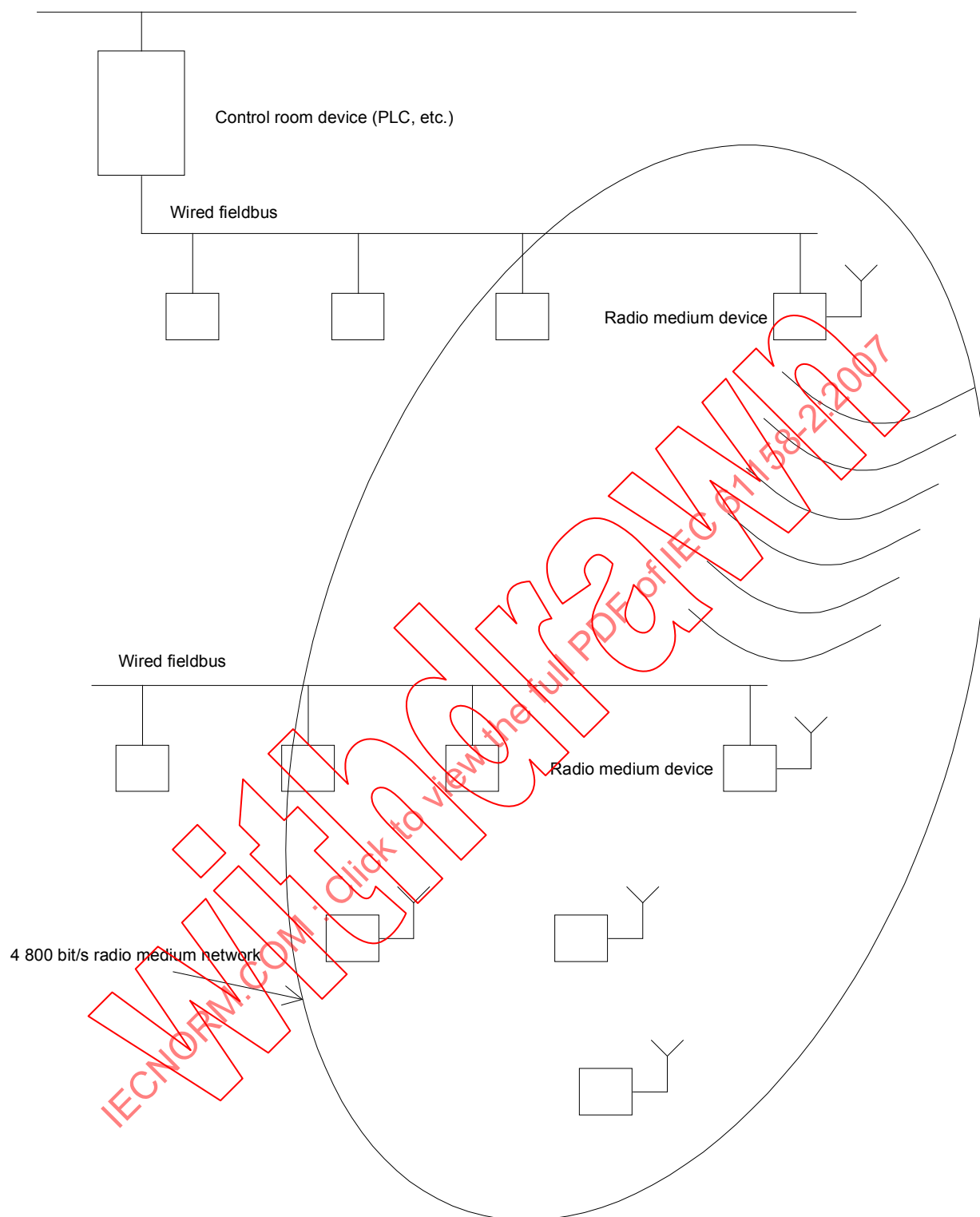


Figure 74 – Cellular radio topology and reuse of frequencies

**Figure 75 – Radio segment between wired segments topology**

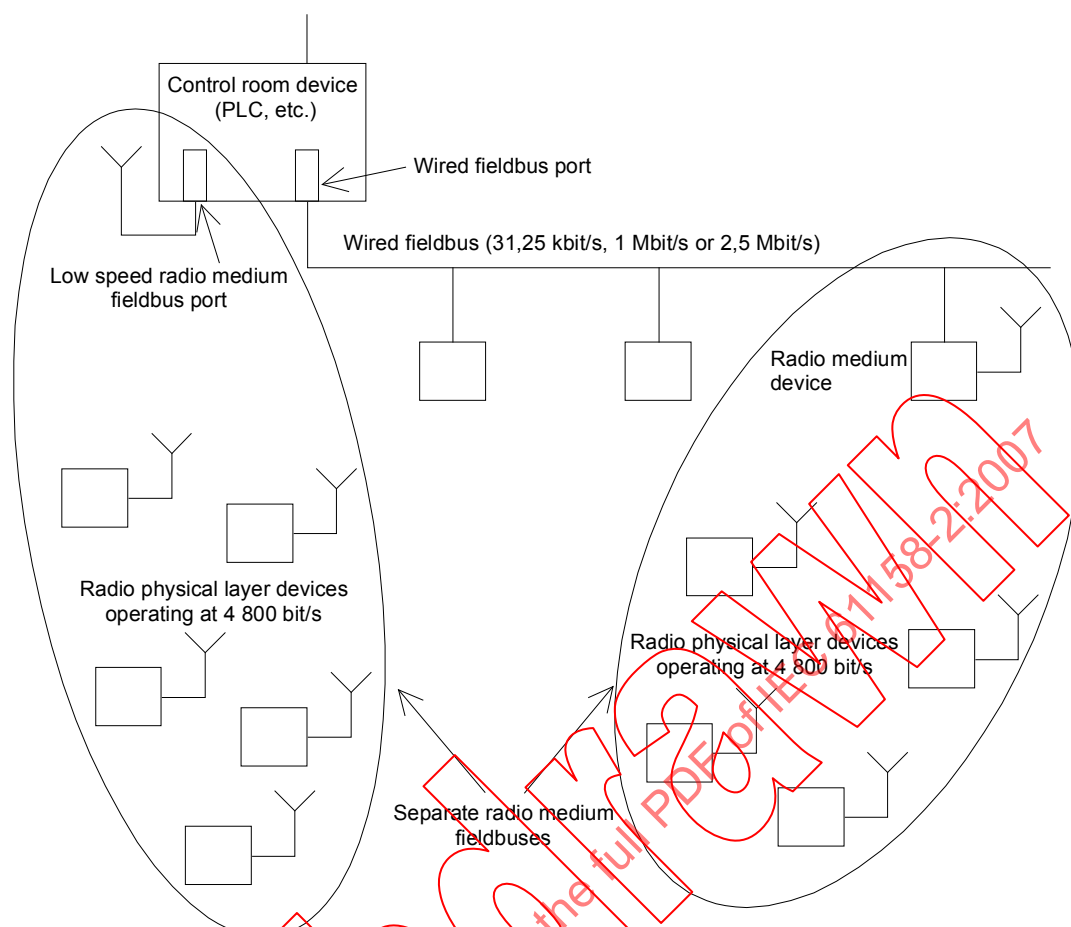


Figure 76 – Mixed wired and radio medium fieldbus topology

NOTE 2 The number and frequencies of channels available depend on the frequency allocations in each country and within that country the use of the radio spectrum in the locality of the specific installation. Due to historic use of radio spectrum it will not be possible to harmonise international frequencies for fieldbus use for some time, especially at the lower frequencies needed for technical reasons in the process industries; therefore, it is not possible to specify the radio channels in this standard. Implementers should contact their local radio regulatory body for a copy of the relevant documentation covering channel availability and specifications for the use of those channels.

NOTE 3 This standard does not define how the carrier is generated, changed or communicated, as this will be application-specific, depending on range, power supply requirements and local regulations.

NOTE 4 Network design should take into account the different speed at which the low speed radio medium fieldbus devices and other medium fieldbus devices are operating in a particular implementation.

Rule 4: It shall be possible to use radio repeaters to extend the range of a specific installation. These repeaters may use different physical or logical radio channels, or may use store-and-forward functionality to repeat on the same channel after complete reception of the message to be repeated.

17.5 Antennas

The radio medium fieldbus MAU shall be suitable for use with a single combined antenna connection for both the receiver and transmitter.

NOTE Any type of antenna can be used subject to the local radio regulations in force at any one installation. This includes directional antennas, remote, mast mounted antennas. The local regulations may set an upper limit to the Effective Radiated Power (ERP) in any one direction that may be violated if directional antennas are used. An antenna may be shared by more than one device or service providing it will handle all required frequencies adequately.

17.6 Jabber inhibit

The MAU shall contain a self-interrupt capability to inhibit transmitted signals from reaching the medium. Hardware within the MAU (with no external message other than the detection of

output signals or leakage via the transmit function) shall provide a window of at least the duration of 4 000 bd during which time a normal frame may be transmitted. If the frame length exceeds this duration, the jabber inhibit function shall inhibit further output signals from reaching the medium and shall indicate jabber detection to the MDS or DTE.

The MAU shall reset the self-interrupt function after a period of 400 kbd $\pm$ 50 %.

NOTE This inhibits bus traffic for no more than 1 % of the available time.

17.7 Common air interface

17.7.1 Channel frequencies

Channel carrier frequencies to be used for the radio medium fieldbus shall be defined by the regulations and type approval documents of the country of final end use of specific implementations and are therefore not part of this standard, but could be added as a separate technical report summarising the requirements for specific countries. Where frequency hopping spread spectrum techniques are used, they shall conform to those same regulations and type approval documents.

Channel frequency accuracy will be as specified by the local radio regulations or giving a delta of less than or equal to $\pm 0,002$ % of the nominal center frequency between this frequency and the actual center frequency over the supply voltage and temperature ranges of the implementation, whichever is the greater accuracy. Automatic frequency control may be used at the receiver.

17.7.2 Transmitter characteristics

These shall depend on the local regulations and type approval specifications in force in the country of end use. It shall be possible to limit the effective radiated power from the antenna to the maximum allowable under the local regulations.

NOTE This is required to ensure that a nearby radio device, whether similar or not but operating under the local radio frequency regulations on a nearby frequency at maximum power allowed, does not swamp a lower power signal from a fieldbus device.

17.7.3 Receiver performance

NOTE 1 The receiver sensitivity requirement will depend on the local radio regulations for any one installation; however, this specification contains the minimum requirement.

A receiver in a device adhering to this standard shall conform to one of the following classes of receiver performance.

NOTE 2 These classes ensure that vendors give the users a clear indication of the applicability of a particular device or set of devices to a specific application.

NOTE 3 This subclause covers performance of the radio receiver subsystem only in the face of typical radio interference imposed via the receiver input stage. It does not cover EMC related performance of the complete fieldbus device.

Class 1

A test set-up shall be used consisting of a 40 m line of site range from transmitter to receiver. The Effective Radiated Power (ERP) from the transmitter antenna shall be set at the maximum allowed in the local regulations, for the channel in use and a 20 dB loss total shall be set in the receiving antenna to the receiver's antenna connector.

- a) With this set-up, a communication element operating with frames containing 80 random user data bits with maximum frame rate, shall produce no more than 10 detected errors in 1 000 frames after any forward error correction, under the following noise environments imposed on the channel.
 - 1) 10 V/m electromagnetic field as specified in IEC 61000-4-3 at severity level 3, but not with a frequency that is within 25 kHz of the center channel frequency of the radio medium fieldbus network under test.
 - 2) Electrical fast transients as specified in IEC 61000-4-4 at severity level 3.

The above error rate specification shall also be satisfied after, but not during the following noise environments:

- i) 8 kV electrostatic discharge to exposed metalwork as specified in IEC 61000-4-2 at severity level 3. If the device suffers temporary loss of function as a result of this test it shall recover from any such loss without operator intervention within 3 s after the end of the test;
 - ii) high frequency disturbance test as specified in IEC 60255-22-1:1988, test voltage class III (2,5 kV and 1 kV peak values of first half cycle in longitude and traverse mode respectively).
- b) With the same test set-up, a communication element operating with frames containing 80 random user data bits with maximum frame rate, shall produce no more than 10 detected errors in 60 000 frames under the following condition: after any forward error correction, when an unmodulated, or asynchronously modulated, interfering carrier wave signal at any frequencies within the ranges and at the corresponding field strengths as shown in Table 82 is applied.

Class 2

A test set-up shall be used consisting of a 400 m line of site range from transmitter to receiver. The Effective Radiated Power (ERP) from the transmitter antenna shall be set at the maximum allowed in the local regulations, for the channel in use and a 20 dB loss total shall be set in the receiving antenna to the receiver's antenna connector.

- a) With this set-up, a communication element operating with frames containing 80 random user data bits with maximum frame rate, shall produce no more than 10 detected errors in 1 000 frames after any forward error correction, under the following noise environments imposed on the channel.
 - 1) 10 V/m electromagnetic field as specified in IEC 61000-4-3 at severity level 3, but not with a frequency that is within 25 kHz of the center channel frequency of the radio medium fieldbus network under test.
 - 2) Electrical fast transients as specified in IEC 61000-4-4 at severity level 3.

The above error rate specification shall also be satisfied after, but not during the following noise environments:

- i) 8 kV electrostatic discharge to exposed metalwork as specified in IEC 61000-4-2 at severity level 3. If the device suffers temporary loss of function as a result of this test it shall recover from any such loss without operator intervention within 3 s after the end of the test;
 - ii) high frequency disturbance test as specified in IEC 60255-22-1:1988, test voltage class III (2,5 kV and 1 kV peak values of first half cycle in longitude and traverse mode respectively).
- b) With the same test set-up, a communication element operating with frames containing 80 random user data bits with maximum frame rate, shall produce no more than 10 detected errors in 60 000 frames under the following condition: after any forward error correction, when an unmodulated, or asynchronously modulated, interfering carrier wave signal at any frequencies within the ranges and at the corresponding field strengths as shown in Table 82 is applied.

Class 3

A test set-up shall be used consisting of a 4 km line of site range from transmitter to receiver. The Effective Radiated Power (ERP) from the transmitter antenna shall be set at the maximum allowed in the local regulations, for the channel in use and a 20 dB total loss shall be set in the receiving antenna to the receiver's antenna connector.

- a) With this set up, a communication element operating with frames containing 32 random user data bits with maximum frame rate, shall produce no more than 10 detected errors in 1 000 frames after any forward error correction, under the following noise environments imposed on the channel.

- 1) 10 V/m electromagnetic field as specified in IEC 61000-4-3 at severity level 3, but not with a frequency that is within 25 kHz of the center channel frequency of the radio medium fieldbus network under test.
- 2) Electrical fast transients as specified in IEC 61000-4-4 at severity level 3.

The above error rate specification shall also be satisfied after, but not during the following noise environments:

- i) 8 kV electrostatic discharge to exposed metalwork as specified in IEC 61000-4-2 at severity level 3. If the device suffers temporary loss of function as a result of this test it shall recover from any such loss without operator intervention within 3 s after the end of the test;
 - ii) high frequency disturbance test as specified in IEC 60255-22-1:1988, test voltage class III (2,5 kV and 1 kV peak values of first half cycle in longitude and traverse mode respectively).
- b) With the same test set-up, a communication element operating with frames containing 32 random user data bits with maximum frame rate, shall produce no more than 10 detected errors in 60 000 frames under the following condition: after any forward error correctio, when an unmodulated, or asynchronously modulated, interfering carrier wave signal at any frequencies within the ranges and at the corresponding field strengths as shown in Table 82 is applied.

Table 82 – Interfering frequencies for testing receiver performance

Frequency range in MHz	Field strength in dB (µV/m)
25 to 800	120
800 to 4 000	110
Except where within following band around the center frequency	Where the interfering field strength shall be
±60	100
±0,3	80
±0,2	75
±0,1	65
< ±0,1	20

NOTE The values quoted in this table are considered sufficient to ensure operation in the presence of known broadcast transmissions from high power sources such as for television transmission, however, even greater levels can be experienced in close proximity to some transmitters. The signal from the radio medium fieldbus MAU transmitting element and the interfering carrier are assumed to have the same polarisation.

17.7.4 Post processing

NOTE Receiver performance can be improved by post processing, and, in order to decrease the bit error rate of PhPDUs passed to the radio medium fieldbus MDS layer, the radio medium fieldbus MAU receiver implementations may include post processing algorithms that use the knowledge and structure of the raw radio wave forms imposed by this standard, so long as this post processing function can be shown in the worst case not to cause any timing violations.

Post processing if implemented shall not violate any timing constraints imposed by this standard.

17.7.5 Transmit receive turnaround time

The transmit to receive and the receive to transmit turnaround times shall be no more than 10 ms.

17.7.6 Random data rejection and carrier detect circuit

The radio medium fieldbus MAU shall not allow the reception of random data when no carrier is present.

NOTE This can be provided by a carrier detect circuit or by redundant bit detection methods.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61158-2:2007

Withd2Wm

18 Type 2: Medium attachment unit: 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire medium

18.1 General

Only one attachment method is specified for the 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire medium. Other methods may be used but they shall conform to the same signaling and performance characteristics. If the specified coaxial wire medium attachment method is used, then it shall incorporate transformer coupling at the node and it shall use a Passive Tap for attachment to the medium. The tap shall include a 1 m spur.

The 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire PhL variant shall connect to coaxial wire medium with network segments up to 1 km long with up to 48 nodes (see 18.5).

NOTE The physical layer can be implemented to allow certification for operation in explosive atmospheres, without sacrificing distance or reducing the number of nodes. This standard does not include requirements for intrinsic safety certification, but seeks to exclude conditions or situations that would prevent intrinsic safety certification.

The MAU shall consist of a transceiver, transformer, and connector as shown in Figure 77. The transceiver shall use the signals defined in the MDS-MAU interface to generate those necessary to drive the transformer. Attachment to the medium shall be via BNC or TNC connectors as specified in Annex F. Ground isolation shall be provided via the transformer as specified in 18.3.

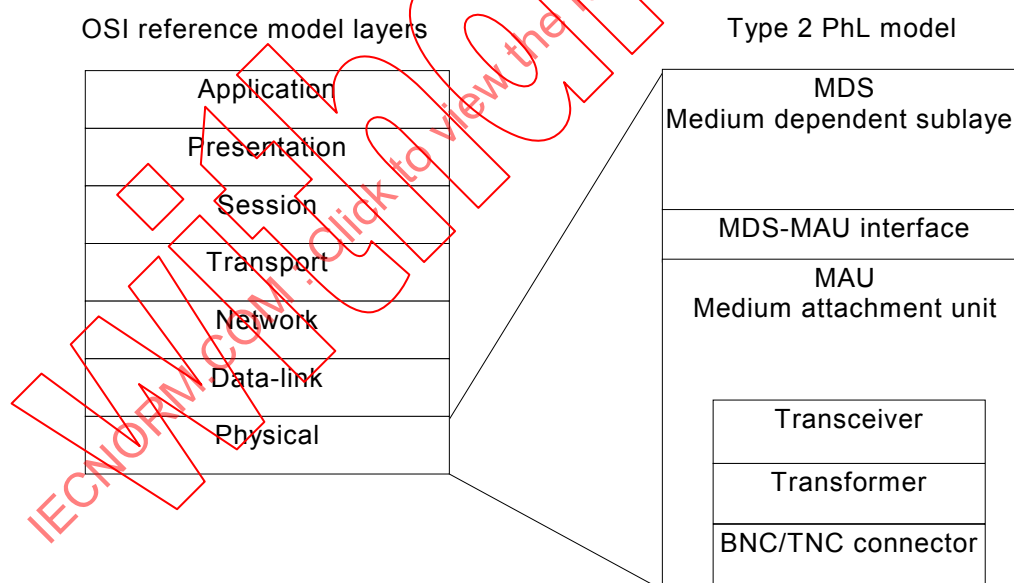


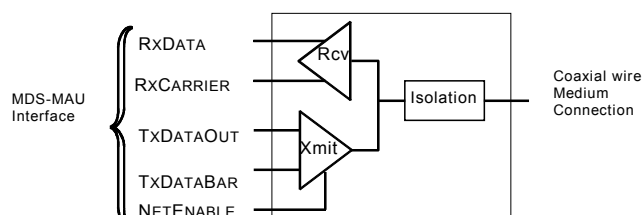
Figure 77 – Components of 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire PhL variant

18.2 Transceiver: 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire

When using a 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire medium, a coaxial wire transceiver shall be used to transmit and receive the L and H signals. The transmitter portion of the transceiver shall obtain transmit signals from the MDS-MAU interface, representing H and L symbols. It shall transmit a single-ended, ground-isolated signal onto the cable via the isolation transformer. The complement of this function shall be performed in the receiver that shall provide RXDATA and RxCARRIER indications to the MDS-MAU interface.

A functional block diagram depicting the MAU sublayer components is shown in Figure 78.

NOTE 1 Figure H.3 shows an example of a redundant transceiver and Figure H.4 shows an example of a single channel transceiver.



NOTE The blocks labeled Xmit and Isolation combine to represent the transmitter.

Figure 78 – Coaxial wire MAU block diagram

Figure 79 shows a simplified functional diagram of the transmitter.

NOTE 2 Refer to the example schematics found in Figure H.3 and Figure H.4 for more detail.

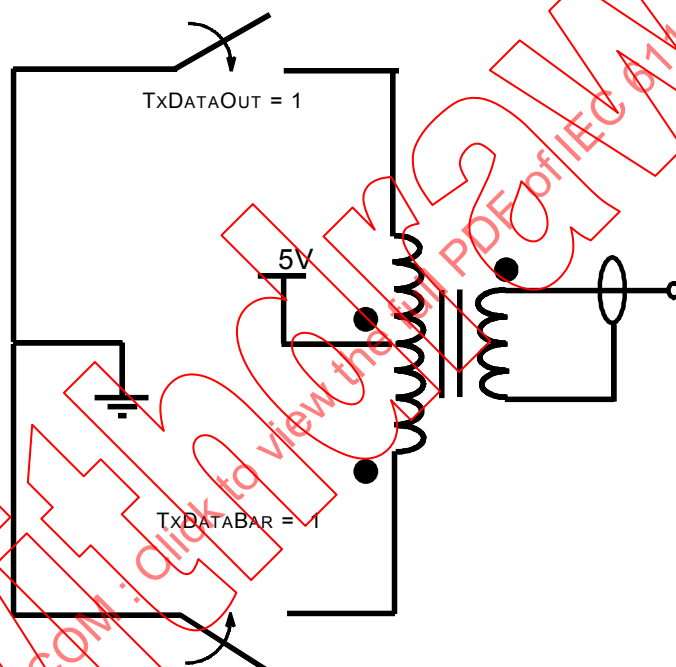


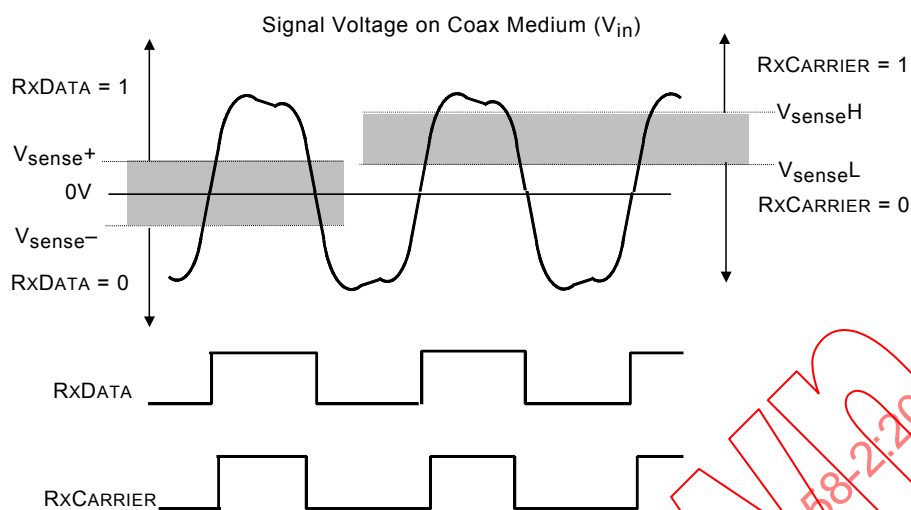
Figure 79 – Coaxial wire MAU transmitter

Three signals shall be available at the MDS-MAU interface for controlling transmission onto the medium, TXDATAOUT, TXDATABAR, and NETENABLE. These three transmit signals, when connected to the transceiver, shall define the physical symbols on the wire. The relationship between these transceiver request lines and the signals on the medium shall be as specified in Table 83.

Table 83 – Transmit control line definitions 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire

TxDataOut	TxDataBar	NetEnable	Physical symbol	Signal on medium
don't care(x)	don't care(x)	false(0)	none	Transmitter off, see Table 86.
false(0)	false(0)	true(1)	none	Transmitter off, see Table 86.
true(1)	false(0)	true(1)	H	+ voltage (positive), see Table 86.
false(0)	true(1)	true(1)	L	- voltage (negative), see Table 86.
true(1)	true(1)	true(1)	not allowed (see note)	Not allowed (see note)

NOTE This state can result in damage to the transmitter circuitry.



NOTE The shaded areas shown above are not defined.

Figure 80 – Coaxial wire MAU receiver operation

Two indication signals shall be provided at the MDS-MAU interface from the MAU with RxDATA and RxCARRIER as shown in Table 83. The relationship between the signal voltage on the wire and these two signals for nominal thresholds shall be as shown in Table 84 and Table 85. The values referenced in Table 84 and Table 85 are defined in Table 87. The input level (V_{in}) as shown in Figure 80 shall be defined as the voltage as measured between the coaxial cable center conductor and the coaxial shield. All polarities shall be defined in terms of the voltage on the coaxial cable center conductor (V_{in+} or V_{in-}) as referenced to the coaxial shield.

Table 84 – Receiver data output definitions: 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire

Input level at medium	RxDATA	Comments
V_{in} more positive than positive data sensitivity limit (V_{sense+})	true (1)	See Table 87
V_{in} more negative than negative data sensitivity limit (V_{sense-})	false (0)	See Table 87
V_{in} between positive and negative data sensitive limits	undefined	Allows for hysteresis and tolerance

Table 85 – Receiver carrier output definitions: 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire

Input level at medium	RxCARRIER	Comments
V_{in} more positive than high carrier sensitivity limit (V_{senseH})	true (1)	See Table 87
V_{in} lower than low carrier sensitivity limit (or negative) (V_{senseL})	false (0)	See Table 87
V_{in} between low and high carrier sensitivity limits	undefined	Allows for hysteresis and tolerance

The medium interface shall conform to the requirements shown in Table 86, Table 87 and Table 88.

Table 86 – Coaxial wire medium interface – transmit specifications

Specification	Limits / characteristics	Comments
Transmit level (Tx level) peak-to-peak	$8,2 \text{ V} \pm 1,3 \text{ V}^{a, b, c}$	See Figure 81
Transmit level asymmetry (between 0 and 1)	$< 450 \text{ mV max}^{b, d}$	
Transmit signal distortion (over voltage, droop, ring)	$\pm 10 \%^{a, e}$	See Figure 81
Total transmit jitter (Tx Jitter)	$< 5 \text{ ns}$	See Figure 81
Transmitter output impedance	$20 \Omega \text{ max}$	
Maximum transmitter off noise level	5 mV max^a	
Time from NETENABLE false to transmitter off noise level	400 ns^a	
Slew limit	1 V/ns max^a	See Figure 81
Rise / fall limit (10 % to 90 % of peak-to-peak)	30 ns max^a	See Figure 81

^a This shall be a peak-to-peak voltage as measured into a $37,5 \Omega$ load from 0 MHz to 20 MHz.

^b The transmit level shall be measured at the estimated mid-point between any peaks or troughs in both top and bottom of the waveform.

^c This level shall be 0,5 V lower when measured as inside of eye pattern when driving a tap for a minimum signal of 6,4 V (peak-to-peak).

^d This shall be measured as the absolute difference between the absolute value of Transmit level for 1 (+ voltage) and the absolute value of transmit level for 0 (– voltage) as measured into a $37,5 \Omega$ load from 0 MHz to 20 MHz.

^e Levels shall be a function of the actual measured transmit voltage.

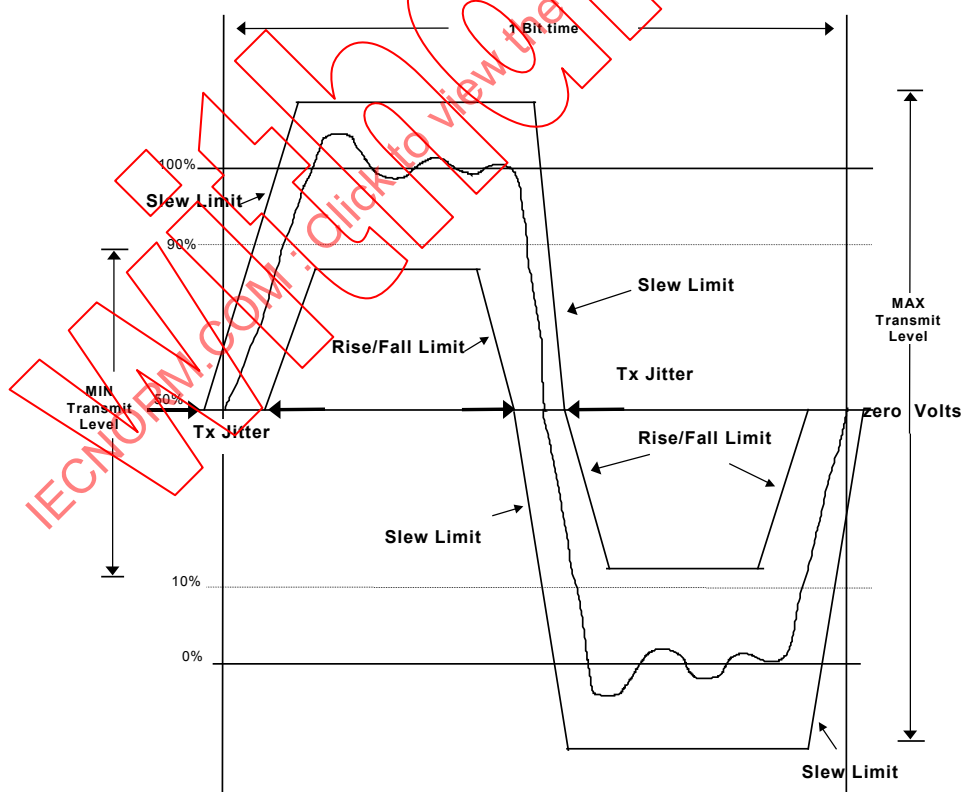


Figure 81 – Coaxial wire MAU transmit mask

Table 87 – Coaxial wire medium interface – receive

Specification	Limits / characteristics	Comments
Minimum receive signal level (peak-to-peak)	510 mV	Inside of eye pattern as shown in Figure 82
Data threshold voltage	zero V	Negative and positive sensitivity limits allow for hysteresis and tolerance
Negative data sensitivity limits ($V_{\text{sense-}}$)	- 140 mV	Allows for hysteresis and tolerance
Positive data sensitivity limits ($V_{\text{sense+}}$)	+140 mV	Allows for hysteresis and tolerance
Low carrier sensitivity limit (V_{senseL})	+ 23 mV	Allows for hysteresis and tolerance
High carrier sensitivity limit (V_{senseH})	+ 255 mV	Allows for hysteresis and tolerance
RxData pattern jitter (peak-to-peak) for $V_{\text{in}} > 510$ mV	< 40 ns	Inside of eye pattern as shown in Figure 82 shall be true when $V_{\text{in}} >$ minimum receive signal level

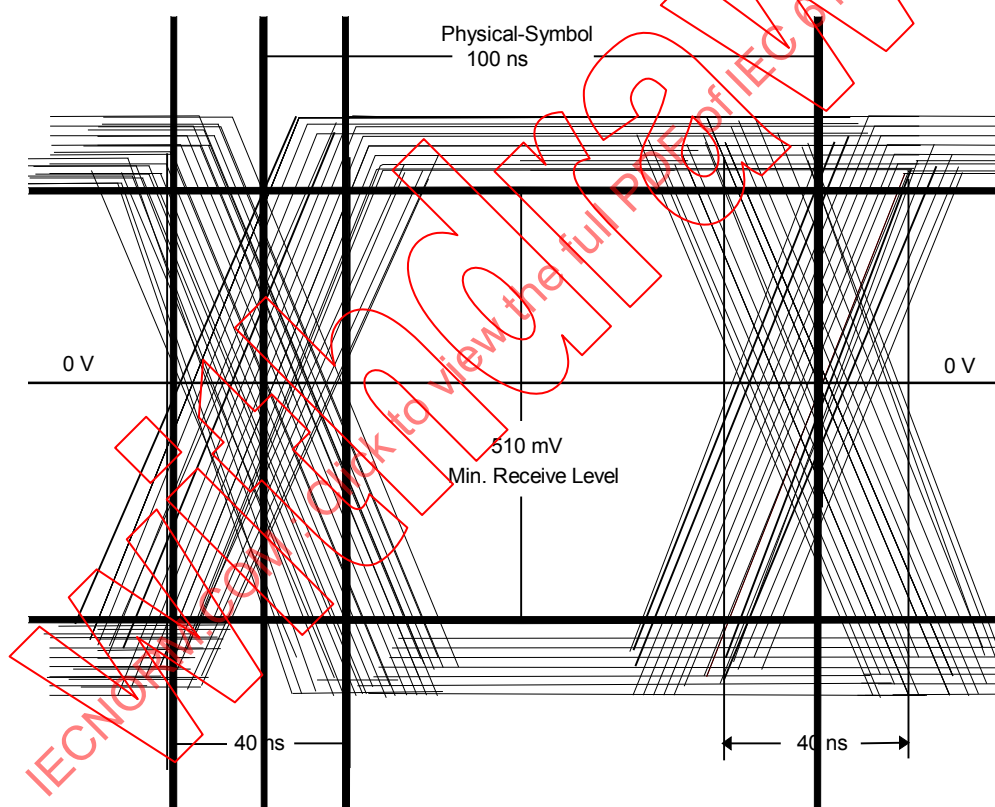
**Figure 82 – Coaxial wire MAU receive mask**

Table 88 – Coaxial wire medium interface – general

Specification	Limits / characteristics	Comments
Coupling	Transformer coupled	Ground isolated
Isolation at 0 Hz	500 k Ω min ^a	Shield shall be R/C coupled to local earth
Input impedance (Tx Off)	0,2 dB tap loss	(See Figure 86) Alternative to impedance model
Impedance model (Tx Off)		Alternative to input impedance
Series inductance	0,56 μ H $\pm$ 20 % ^b	Power on
Parallel inductance	425 μ H $\pm$ 20 % ^b	Power on
Parallel capacitance	50 pF max ^b 55 pF max ^b	Power on Power off
Parallel resistance	3,9 k Ω $\pm$ 20 % ^b 3,4 k Ω $\pm$ 20 % ^b	Power on Power off
Connector	BNC or TNC	See Annex F for more details

^a Capacitor value shall be 0,01 μ F/500 V minimum. This requirement applies to all medium interfaces connected to the network.

^b All impedance specifications shall be met with the transmitter off and with power applied or removed as shown. All impedance specifications shall be met over the entire receiver dynamic range from minimum receive level to maximum transmit level.

NOTE 3 A reference design example for a 5 Mbit/s, voltage mode, coaxial wire MAU transceiver is shown in Annex H.1.1.

18.3 Transformer 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire

NOTE 1 The Transformer couples the transmit and receive signals to and from the medium. An important feature of the transformer is that it provides galvanic isolation or ground isolation between nodes. This prevents large common-mode voltages due to ground voltage differences between nodes. Also prevented are large ground loops, which can be susceptible to low frequency magnetic coupling.

Figure 83 shows the schematic symbol for the transformer.



Figure 83 – Transformer symbol

Coupling transformers shall conform to the requirements specified in Table 89.

Table 89 – 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire transformer electrical specifications

Specification	Min.	Typical	Max.
Inductance (measured at 40 kHz and 100 mV)	350 μ H	750 μ H	
Winding capacitance (measured at 10 MHz)	16,0 pF	24,8 pF	29,5 pF
Parallel resistance (core loss)	8,0 k Ω	9,1 k Ω	11,2 k Ω
Leakage inductance	255 nH	441 nH	625 nH
Galvanic isolation (at 47-63 Hz, less than 1,0 mA)	500 V _{rms} for 60 s 600 V _{rms} for 1 s		
Resonant frequency	1,0 MHz	1,4 MHz	1,8 MHz

Leakage inductance shall be measured between pins 1 and 2 with pins 4 and 6 connected together. Galvanic isolation shall be measured with pins 1, 2 and 3 tied together and with pins 4 and 6 tied together. The galvanic isolation requirement shall be met from pin 1 to pin 4, from pin 1 to core, and from pin 4 to core. All other measurements shall be made between pins 4 and 6 with pin 2 connected to instrument ground.

NOTE 2 A reference design example for a 5 Mbit/s, voltage mode, coaxial wire MAU transformer is shown in Annex H.1.2.

18.4 Connector 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire medium

The connector used on a node shall be a BNC or TNC jack, in accordance with the requirements of this standard (see Annex F).

18.5 Topology 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire medium

A segment shall comprise a trunk–spur architecture. The trunk shall consist of coaxial cable and shall be terminated at both ends by a resistor equal to $75 \Omega \pm 5 \%$.

NOTE 1 This limits the reflections from transmitted signals on the trunk reflecting at the ends of the cable.

Nodes shall be attached to the network via drop cables. The drop cables shall attach to the trunk using the specified taps. These taps shall contain passive circuitry that allows trunk attachment while minimizing reflections due to attachment loading.

Nodes connected to the deterministic control network shall not terminate the drop cable shield directly to ground. Termination of the shield shall be in accordance with Table 88. To properly terminate each drop cable's shield, a resistor in parallel with a 0,01 μ F capacitor shall be used. The parallel R/C shall be connected from shield to ground.

Figure 84 shows a topology example.

NOTE 2 In this example, two segments are connected by a repeater to form a seven node link.

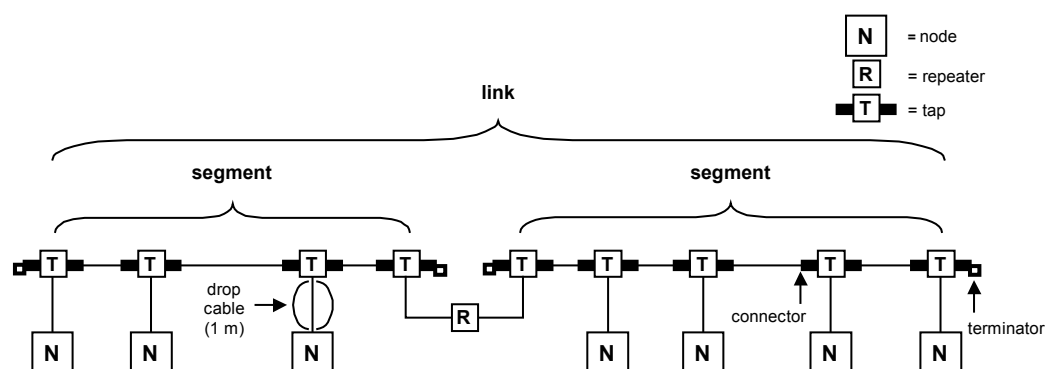


Figure 84 – 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire topology example

Topology limits are shown in Figure 85. Up to 48 nodes can be connected to a segment of length up to 1 km as shown in Figure 85. The trade-off between distance and number of nodes is shown in Figure 85. If a combination of nodes and distance is required that exceeds the segment limits, then a PhL repeater device shall be used (see Annex G). With respect to the medium, a PhL repeater device shall appear, electrically and mechanically, to be the same as a node. The PhL repeater device shall require a tap for each segment to which it is connected, and therefore, can be attached anywhere on each segment. The repeaters shall not be placed in a manner that causes more than one connection between segments.

Any topology that supports a single path between any two PhL entities shall be supported. Multiple paths between PhL entities shall not be allowed by an implementation that claims conformance to this clause.

This PhL variant may be combined with other PhL variants within the same node, or in different nodes, by using the RM (repeater machine) and/or PhL repeater devices (see Annex G).

NOTE 3 See Annex G for more information on repeaters.

NOTE 4 These limits are based upon the cable specifications in 18.7.1.

Figure 85 shall apply when using taps as specified in 18.6 and trunk coaxial cable as specified in Table 91. Cables with attenuation characteristics other than those shown in Table 91 may be used if an appropriate segment length multiplier is applied to Figure 85.

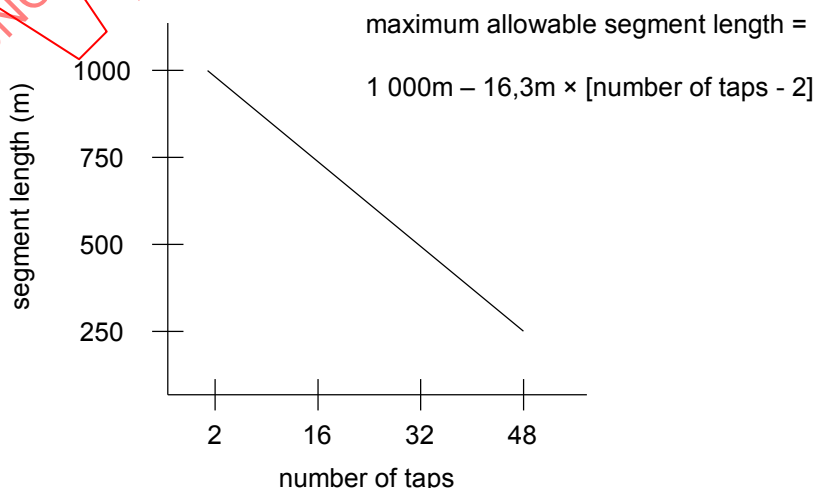


Figure 85 – Coaxial wire medium topology limits

18.6 Taps 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire medium

18.6.1 Description

The tap shall contain passive circuitry that compensates for the added loading of the attached node.

NOTE 1 In this way, a small amount of transmission loss is experienced rather than an impedance discontinuity, and therefore a reflection, on the trunk for every node.

A tap shall be used for all nodes that conform to the specified coaxial wire medium attachment method.

NOTE 2 A reference design example for a 5 Mbit/s, voltage mode, coaxial wire MAU Tap is shown in Annex H.1.3.

18.6.2 Requirements

The standard tap variant shall provide BNC jack connections at the trunk and a BNC plug at the node, the IP67 sealed tap variant shall provide TNC jack connections at the trunk and a TNC or BNC plug at the node, in accordance with the requirements of this standard (see Annex F). A 1 m length of spur cable of the specified type shall be used in the tap if proper compensation for the spur cable is to be achieved.

NOTE 1 The electrical requirements of the tap are defined by the transmitted and reflected characteristics as seen by the trunk when the tap port is properly connected by the required spur and a node equivalent load. Although the tap has three ports, it can be viewed as a two port device when it is configured this way. The term, node equivalent load, means a load that represents the nominal impedance of a node. A node equivalent load may be constructed from discrete components so long as the equivalent load meets all requirements in this clause.

The transmission and reflection requirements shall be as shown in Figure 86. Scattering parameters (S_{11} , S_{22} , S_{12} , and S_{21}) shall be used to define the tap electrical requirements. S_{11} and S_{22} shall be used to define the reflection characteristics of the trunk connector of a tap while the spur is terminated by a node equivalent load and the other trunk connector is terminated with a trunk terminator ($75\ \Omega \pm 5\%$). S_{12} and S_{21} shall be used to define the transmission characteristics of the tap from one trunk connector to the other with the drop cable terminated by a node equivalent load. The transmission and reflection characteristics of all taps shall fall in the pass region defined in Figure 86.

NOTE 2 The tap is a reciprocal device ($S_{11}=S_{22}$, $S_{12}=S_{21}$) so trunk port orientation is arbitrary.

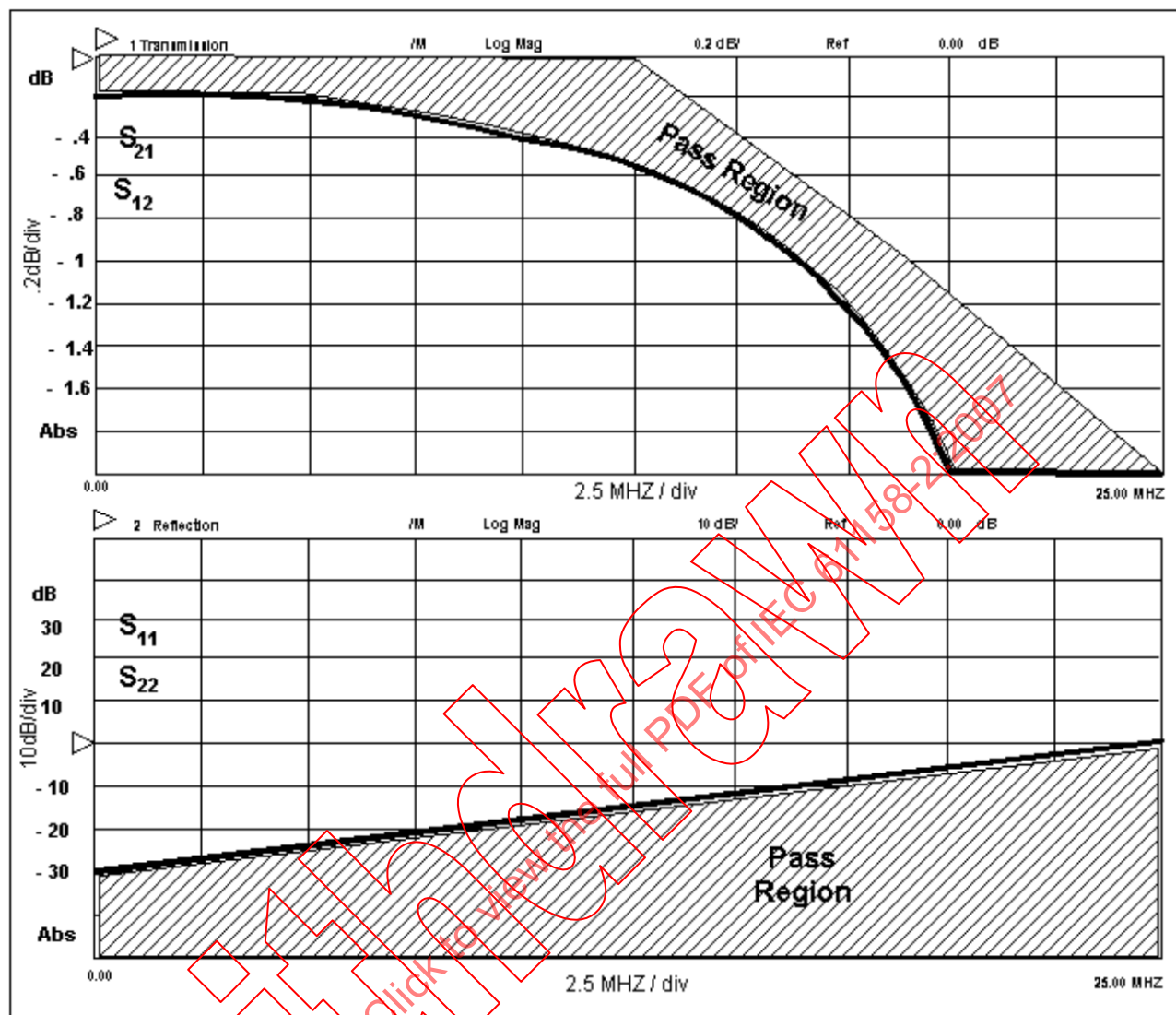


Figure 86 – Coaxial wire medium tap electrical characteristics

18.6.3 Spur

The spur cable shall conform to the limits and characteristics shown in Table 90.

Table 90 – Coaxial spur cable specifications

Specification	Limits / characteristics
Shielding	Dual braided shield, each braid is 95 % coverage
Impedance	$75 \Omega \pm 3 \Omega$
Delay	$4,1 \text{ ns/m} \pm 0,1 \text{ ns/m}$
Attenuation (dB/100 m) at	
1 MHz	1,25
5 MHz	3,01
10 MHz	4,33
25 MHz	6,89
50 MHz	10,1
Structural return loss	23 dB minimum from 5 MHz to 50 MHz
Conductor DC resistance	$92 \Omega/\text{km}$ nominal
Shield DC resistance	$10,5 \Omega/\text{km}$ nominal
Nominal capacitance	$54,13 \text{ pF/m}$

18.7 Trunk 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire medium

18.7.1 Trunk Cable

The trunk cable shall meet the specification given in Table 91.

Table 91 – Coaxial trunk cable specifications

Specification	Limits / characteristics
Shielding	Quad shield
Impedance	$75 \Omega \pm 3 \Omega$
Delay	$4,1 \text{ ns/m} \pm 0,1 \text{ ns/m}$
Attenuation (dB/100 m) at	
1 MHz	1,15
2 MHz	1,25
5 MHz	1,48
10 MHz	1,94
20 MHz	2,82
50 MHz	4,49
Structural return loss	23 dB minimum from 5 MHz to 50 MHz
Conductor DC resistance	$92 \Omega/\text{km}$ nominal
Shield DC resistance	$24 \Omega/\text{km}$ nominal
Nominal capacitance	$53,15 \text{ pF/m}$

Spur cable as specified in Table 90 may also be used for trunk cable in limited lengths (up to 10 m per segment).

18.7.2 Connectors

The trunk connection shall use a BNC or TNC plug, in accordance with the requirements of this standard (see Annex F).

19 Type 2: Medium attachment unit: 5 Mbit/s, optical medium

19.1 General

NOTE 1 This subclause specifies the optical medium and PhL variant. Information important to designing the PhL connection is captured here.

NOTE 2 The fiber medium attachment method defines three fiber media and PhL variants. The first variant covers fiber media and PhL requirements for a short-range system for distances of up to 300 m (nominal), the second variant covers fiber media and PhL requirements for a medium-range system for distances of up to 7 km (nominal), and the last variant covers fiber media and PhL requirements for a long-range system for distances of up to 20 km (nominal).

The fiber medium attachment method shall incorporate a full duplex point to point or ring topology using a transmitter and receiver at each end of a pair of fibers.

For all variants, the fiber medium attachment methods shall be defined either as a point to point link or as a ring topology. The point to point link shall connect between end nodes, end nodes and PhL repeater devices, or PhL repeater and PhL repeater. The ring topology shall connect between any two or more nodes or devices that implement the ring repeater machine (RRM), which is described in Annex G. Switching between media or topologies shall require the use of a PhL repeater device. This shall be implemented as an active hub, active star or active ring. An active hub or active star shall consist of a minimum of two ports.

NOTE 3 The physical layer can be implemented to allow certification for operation in explosive atmospheres, without sacrificing distance or reducing the number of nodes. This standard does not include requirements for intrinsic safety certification, but seeks to exclude conditions or situations that would prevent intrinsic safety certification.

The fiber medium MAU shall consist of the fiber transceiver and fiber connector. The transceiver shall use the signals defined in the MDS-MAU interface to generate those necessary to drive the transceiver. Attachment to the medium shall be via fiber connectors.

19.2 Transceiver 5 Mbit/s, optical medium

To support a fiber medium, a fiber transceiver shall transmit and receive the L and H signals from the MDS. The transmitter portion of the transceiver shall obtain transmit signals from the MDS-MAU interface, representing H and L symbols, and transmits either 'light on' (for H) or 'light off' (for L) using a direct coupled transceiver. This means that the transceiver shall be capable of transmitting and receiving PhL signaling at frequencies from zero (no Ph-symbol transitions) to 10 MHz minimum.

NOTE Direct coupled transceivers are required because the MDS and MAU sublayers, as specified, do not provide for the insertion and deletion of an idle sequence when there is no L or H data to be sent, i.e. during periods of no Ph-symbol activity.

The complement of this function shall be performed in the receiver, which shall provide RXDATA and RXCARRIER indications to the MDS-MAU interface as shown in Figure 87, a functional block diagram depicting the MAU components.

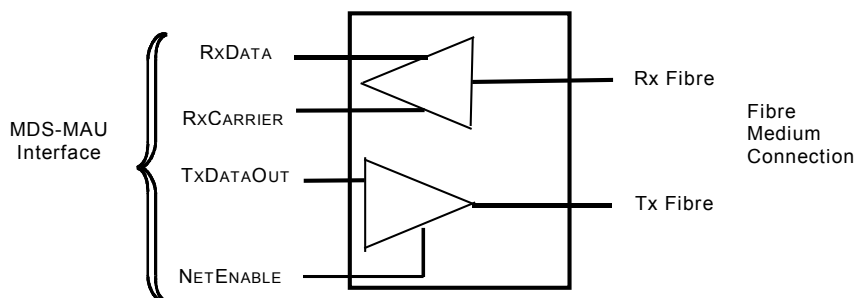


Figure 87 – MAU block diagram 5 Mbit/s, optical fiber medium

The transmit signals shall be as shown in Table 92.

Table 92 – Transmit control line definitions 5 Mbit/s, optical fiber medium

TxDATAOUT	NETENABLE	Physical symbol	Signal on fiber medium
don't care(x)	false(0)	don't care (x)	light off
false(0)	true(1)	L	light off
true(1)	true(1)	H	light on

The fiber interface transmit and receive limits shall be as shown in Table 93.

Table 93 – Fiber medium interface 5,0 Mbit/s, optical

Specification	Limits / Characteristics	Comments
Input pattern jitter	40 ns peak-to-peak max.	Measured on RxDATA
Total transmit jitter	< 5 ns peak-to-peak	

19.3 Topology 5 Mbit/s, optical medium

The media topology defined for a fiber medium attachment variant shall be a point to point link or a ring topology. The point to point topology shall be between any two PhL entities that meet the requirements of this clause and that do not implement the RRM. The ring topology shall be between any two PhL entities that meet the requirements of this clause and that implement the RRM (see Annex G). Switching between these two topologies shall require the use of a PhL repeater or of any device implementing the RRM function and repeater PhL. In either case, nodes and repeaters shall be cascable as long as each link meets the requirements specified in this clause. The total signal propagation delay shall be used in the calculation of the slot time value as described in IEC 61158-4-2.

Any topology that supports a single path between any two PhL entities shall be supported. Multiple paths between PhL entities shall not be allowed by an implementation that claims conformance to this clause.

This PhL variant may be combined with other PhL variants within the same node, or in different nodes, by using the RM (repeater machine) and/or PhL repeater devices (see Annex G).

19.4 Trunk fiber 5 Mbit/s, optical medium

The trunk fiber shall meet the requirements specified in 19.6 for the appropriate fiber PhL variant.

19.5 Trunk connectors 5 Mbit/s, optical medium

The Trunk connectors shall be in accordance with the requirements of this standard (see Annex F) for the different fiber PhL variants.

19.6 Fiber specifications 5 Mbit/s, optical medium

The signal characteristics for fiber media and PhL variant at 25 °C shall be as shown in Table 94, Table 95 and Table 96.

Table 94 – Fiber signal specification 5 Mbit/s, optical medium, short range

Specification	Min.	Nominal	Max.
Fiber			
Distance	0 m	300 m	
Fiber attenuation at λ		6 dB/km	
Fiber technology	Step index, hard clad silica (HCS)		
Core/cladding	200/230 μm		
Numerical aperture	0,5		
System			
BER	10^{-9}		
Power budget	3,9 dB	9,5 dB	
Transmitter			
Wavelength λ	640 nm	650 nm	660 nm
Spectral width	21 nm		
Coupled power, $P_{T \text{ on}}$ (transmit light on)	-16,1 dBm, peak	-12,5 dBm, peak	-8,5 dBm, peak
Coupled power, $P_{T \text{ off}}$ (transmit light off)			- 44 dBm, peak
Optical rise time T_{rise}			
Optical fall time T_{fall}			
Receiver			
$P_{R \text{ MIN}}$ (receive light on)		-25 dBm, pk	-23 dBm, peak
$P_{R \text{ MAX}}$ (receive light on)	-1,0 dBm	+3,0 dBm	
Pulse width distortion			30 ns

Table 95 – Fiber signal specification 5 Mbit/s, optical medium, medium range

Specification	Min.	Nominal	Max.
Fiber			
Distance	0 m	7 km	
Fiber attenuation at λ		1,5 dB/km	
Fiber technology	Graded index, multi-mode		
Core/cladding	62,5/125 μm		
Numerical aperture	0,275		
System			
BER	10^{-9}		
Power budget	11,3 dB	16,4 dB	
Transmitter			
Wavelength λ	1 270 nm	1 300 nm	1 370 nm
Spectral width		130 nm	185 nm
Coupled power, $P_{T \text{ on}}$ (transmit light on)	-15,5 dBm, peak	-13,5 dBm, peak	-12,0 dBm, peak
Coupled power, $P_{T \text{ off}}$ (transmit light off)			- 40 dBm, peak
Optical rise time T_{rise}		1,8 ns	4,0 ns
Optical fall time T_{fall}		2,2 ns	4,0 ns
Receiver			
$P_{R \text{ MIN}}$ (receive light on)	-33,5 dBm, pk	-31,8 dBm, peak	-28,8 dBm, peak
$P_{R \text{ MAX}}$ (receive light on)			
Pulse width distortion			2ns

Table 96 – Fiber signal specification 5 Mbit/s, optical medium, long range

Specification	Min.	Nominal	Max.
Fiber			
Distance			20 km
Fiber attenuation at λ		0,5 dB/km	
Fiber technology	Graded index, single mode		
Core/cladding	10/125 μm		
Numerical aperture	0,1		
System			
BER	10^{-9}		
Power budget	10 dB		
Transmitter			
Wavelength λ	1 270 nm	1 300 nm	1 370 nm
Spectral width		70 nm	
Coupled power, $P_{T \text{ on}}$ (transmit light on)	-18 dBm, pk	- 15 dBm, pk	- 10 dBm, pk
Coupled power, $P_{T \text{ off}}$ (transmit light off)			- 40 dBm pk
Optical rise time T_{rise}		2 ns	4,0 ns
Optical fall time T_{fall}		2,2 ns	4,0 ns
Receiver			
$P_{R \text{ MIN}}$ (receive light on)		- 32 dBm, pk	- 30 dBm, pk
$P_{R \text{ MAX}}$ (receive light On)	- 10 dBm		
Pulse width distortion			2 ns

20 Type 2: Medium attachment unit: network access port (NAP)

20.1 General

Figure 88 shows the location of the network access port (NAP) PhL and Medium within the ISO/OSI reference model.

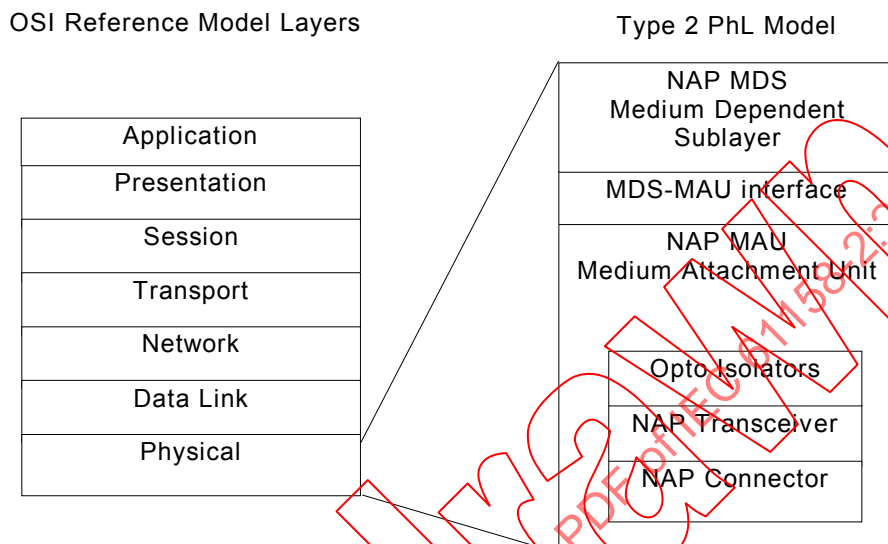


Figure 88 – NAP reference model

Local connection to a computer (desktop or laptop), hand held programming device or other temporary network connection shall be made through the NAP transceiver using protocol and data rates as specified for the trunk. The NAP transceiver shall obtain a single transmit line from the MDS-MAU interface, transmit to and receive from, another node at the other end of the NAP cable and provide a single receive line back to the MDS-MAU interface.

As these are single lines, no representation of carrier on/off shall be present. These signals shall be either a logical 'zero' or a logical 'one' at all times. The medium shall be driven from the single transmit line at all times.

The NAP PhL shall support a point to point connection between two nodes. This topology shall not be multi-dropped to support more than two nodes.

Any topology that supports a single path between any two PhL entities shall be supported. Multiple paths between PhL entities shall not be allowed by an implementation that claims conformance to this clause.

A node, whose primary connection to the link is through the NAP PhL variant, shall be considered a transient network node. A node, whose primary connection to the link is via any other PhL variant, shall be considered a permanent network node. A transient node shall communicate with another transient node or a permanent node using the NAP medium. The permanent node shall utilize the repeater machine (RM) functionality (see Annex G) contained in the DLL of that node to allow the transient node to communicate to other permanent nodes as shown in Figure 89. A permanent node shall function as a transient node when no other PhL medium is connected as shown in Figure 89.

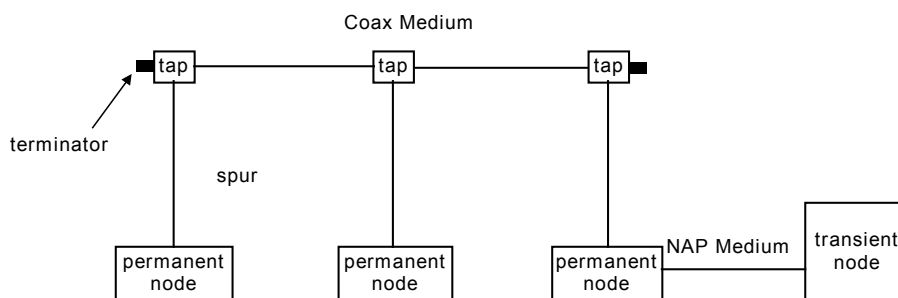


Figure 89 – Example of transient and permanent nodes

This PhL variant may be combined with other PhL variants within the same node, or in different nodes, by using the RM (repeater machine) and/or PhL repeater devices (see Annex G).

20.2 Signaling

The signaling requirements for the NAP port shall be as shown in Table 97.

Table 97 – NAP requirements

NAP interface specification	Design specification	Comments
NAP interface – General		
Coupling	DC	Opto-isolator required for programming nodes
Link configuration	Two uni-directional RS-422 pair	One Rx, one Tx
Connector	Shielded RJ-45	See Annex F
Termination	100 Ω internal on /RxPTC only	
NAP – Transmit		
Output level at NAP medium with /TxPTC = true	2,5 V min.	Measured between Tx_H and GND REF pin with 100 Ω NAP receive load connected (see Table F.2)
Output level at NAP medium with /TxPTC = false	2,5 V min.	Measured between Tx_L and GND REF pin with 100 Ω NAP receive load connected (see Table F.2)
Output level at NAP medium with /TxPTC = true	0,5 V max.	measured between Tx_L and GND REF pin with 100 Ω NAP receive load connected (see Table F.2)
Output level at NAP medium with /TxPTC = false	0,5 V max.	measured between Tx_H and GND REF pin with 100 Ω NAP receive load connected (see Table F.2)
Output level at NAP medium with /TxPTC = data	4,0 V min.	(Tx_H - Tx_L) measured as peak to peak with 100 Ω load (see Table F.2)
Total Transmit Jitter	± 5 ns max.	
Termination	None	
NAP – Receive		
Receive level at NAP medium with /TxPTC = data	2,5 V min.	(Rx_H – Rx_L) measured as peak to peak (see Table F.2)
Receive jitter	± 15 ns max.	
Termination	100 $\Omega \pm 10$ %	Across differential lines
Fault receive signal	/RxPTC = true	If medium is disconnected, shorted, receiver turned off or disabled, /RxPTC shall be true

20.3 Transceiver

The NAP MAU block diagram shown in Figure 90 represents both the isolated and non-isolated implementations. The isolated NAP shall be used on transient nodes. Opto-isolation shall be provided to prevent ground loop currents from flowing between nodes at different ground potentials. Opto-isolation shall not be required if the node is self powered and is not grounded. The non-isolated NAP shall be used on permanent nodes.

NOTE 1 A transient node is defined as a node with primary and normal connection to the network through the NAP of another node. This includes, but is not limited to, computer interface cards, configuration nodes and other nodes that are transient or temporary network connections.

NOTE 2 A permanent node is defined as a node with primary and normal connection to the network through a PhL other than the NAP. This includes, but is not limited to: PLCs, I/O rack adapters, controllers, robots, welders and other nodes that are connected to the network on a mostly permanent basis.

If a node can be used as both a transient and permanent node, it shall include opto-isolation in the design of the NAP (unless it is self-powered and cannot be grounded).

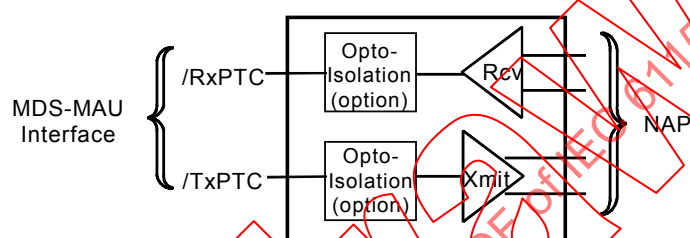


Figure 90 – NAP transceiver

NOTE 3 A reference design example for a Network Access Port MAU is shown in Annex H.2.

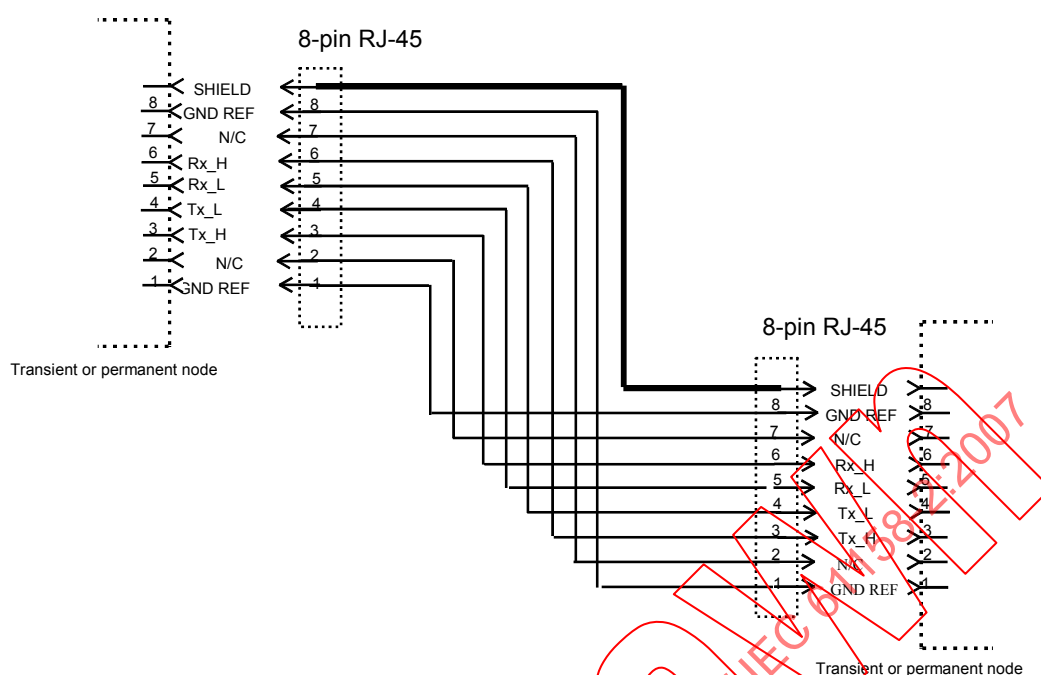
20.4 Connector

The connector used at both ends of a NAP connection shall be a shielded 8-pin RJ-45 type connector, as specified in Annex F.

20.5 Cable

The NAP cable shall have 8 conductors and an overall shield. The shield shall be designed to minimize electromagnetic interference. The cable connector pins shall be as shown in Table F.2.

As the NAP connector and pin connections are the same for both a node and a transient node, the cable shall be built in a way that allows the correct transmit data and receive data connection. This shall be accomplished by reversing the connection on one end of the NAP cable as shown in Figure 91.



NOTE The NAP cable connectors are installed so that the signal lines are reversed to allow the correct connection. This allows the equipment to use the same pinout independent of function.

Figure 91 – NAP cable

The NAP cable shall meet the following requirements:

- paired line characteristics = 100 Ω ;
- resistance (at 0 Hz) = 0,122 Ω /m;
- wire gauge = 26 (7 strands, diameter 0,16 mm);
- conductors = 8 plus overall shield;
- maximum cable length = 10 m.

21 Type 3: Medium attachment unit: synchronous transmission, 31,25 kbit/s, voltage mode, wire medium

21.1 General

The 31,25 kbit/s voltage-mode MAU simultaneously provides access to a communication network and to an optional power distribution network. Devices attached to the network communicate via the medium and may or may not be powered from it. If bus-powered, power is distributed as direct voltage and current, and communications signals are superimposed on the d.c. power. In Intrinsically Safe applications, available power may limit the number of devices.

The network medium consists of twisted pair cable. Independent of topology, all attached devices, other than possibly the transmitting device, are high impedance to prevent significant network loading. Trapezoidal waveforms are used to reduce electromagnetic emissions.

Bus and tree topologies are supported. In either topology a network contains one trunk cable, terminated at both ends. In the bus topology, spurs are distributed along the length of the trunk. In the tree topology, spurs are concentrated at one end of the trunk. A spur may connect more than one device to the network, the number of devices depending on spur length.

At the power frequency (d.c.), devices appear to the network as current sinks, with a limited rate of change of the supply current drawn from the medium. This prevents transient changes in load current from interfering with communication signals.

21.2 Transmitted bit rate

See 12.2.

21.3 Network specifications

21.3.1 Components

Subclause 12.3.1 applies.

When selecting the individual components, make sure that all components meet the requirements of the FISCO model. Only components that are identified as an intrinsically safe electrical apparatus or as an associated electrical apparatus in accordance with IEC 60079-11 may be installed in intrinsically safe fieldbus segments. To comply with 12.2.5.1 of IEC 60079-14, the permitted values of the input parameters U_i , I_i , and P_i of an intrinsically safe apparatus (e.g. a field device) must not be less than the certified maximum values of the output parameters U_o , I_o and P_o of the associated power device. Additional restrictions applicable to the individual components (e.g., limitation of the supply power of $\leq 1,2$ W) have to be taken into account as well.

Table 98 lists possible combinations of devices from different system categories.

Table 98 – Mixing devices from different categories

Explosion protection of the bus-segment	Explosion protection of the power device	Explosion protection of the field device					
		EEx ia			EEx ib		
		IIC	IIB	IIC/IIB	IIC	IIB	IIC/IIB
EEx ia IIC (Group IIC)	[EEx ia] IIC	x		x			
EEx ia IIB (Group IIB)	[EEx ia] IIB	x	x	x			
	[EEx ia] IIC	x	x	x			
EEx ib IIC (Group IIC)	[EEx ib] IIC	x		x	x		x
	[EEx ia] IIC	x		x	x		x
EEx ib IIB (Group IIC)	[EEx ib] IIB	(x) ¹⁾	x	x	(x) ¹⁾	x	x
	[EEx ib] IIC	x	x	x	x	x	x
	[EEx ia] IIB	(x) ¹⁾	x	x	(x) ¹⁾	x	x
	[EEx ia] IIC	x	x	x	x	x	x
¹⁾ These combinations are possible in theory but in practice they are irrelevant, because the field devices may be certified for group IIC and for group IIB as well (see column IIC/IIB). By any combination it must be assured that the absolute maximum ratings for the input of the field device fit to the output characteristics of the power device: $U_i \geq U_o$ $I_i \geq I_o$ $P_i \geq P_o$							

Connection of bus-powered devices and local-powered devices on an intrinsically safe fieldbus is permitted if the local-powered devices are provided with suitable isolation in accordance with IEC 60079-11.

Although connection of a fieldbus station (i.e., field device, hand-held terminal, and coupler for the bus master) with its poles reversed does not affect the functionality of the other devices connected to the fieldbus, an incorrectly installed bus station which is not equipped with automatic polarity detection will not be supplied with power or be able to send and receive. Stations with automatic polarity detection operate correctly with any allocation of the input terminals to the wires.

21.3.2 Topologies

A wire MAU shall operate in a network with a linear bus topology, consisting of a trunk, terminated at each end as specified in 21.8.5, to which communication elements are connected via couplers and spurs.

The coupler and communication element may be integrated in one device (i.e. zero length spur).

A tree topology with all the communication elements located at the ends of the trunk is regarded as a special case of a bus for the purpose of this clause of IEC 61158-2.

Several communication elements may be connected to the trunk at one point using a multi-port coupler. An active coupler may be used to extend a spur to a length that requires termination to avoid reflections and distortions. Active repeaters may be used to extend the length of the trunk beyond that of a single segment as permitted by the network configuration rules.

21.3.3 Network configuration rules

A 31,25 kbit/s voltage-mode MAU shall be required to conform to the requirements of this clause when used in a network which complies with these rules.

Rule 1: One fieldbus shall be capable of communication between the following numbers of devices, all operating at the same bit rate:

- a) for a non IS fieldbus without power supplied via the signal conductors: between two and 32 devices;
- b) for a non IS fieldbus with power supplied via the signal conductors: between two and the number of devices which can be powered via the signal conductors, assuming that a minimum of 120 mA shall be available to devices at the remote end from the power supply communicating with one device at the power supply end drawing 10 mA;
- c) for an IS fieldbus: between two and the number of devices that can be powered via the signal conductors, assuming that a minimum of 40 mA shall be available to devices in the hazardous area.

NOTE 1 Rule 1 does not preclude the use of more than the specified number of devices in an installed system. Since the device power consumption is not specified, the number of bus-powered devices cannot be specified. Item b) assumes that the minimum power supply voltage is 20 V d.c. Item c) assumes that the IS barrier operates with a 19 V d.c. output.

Rule 2: A fully loaded (maximum number of connected devices) 31,25 kbit/s voltage-mode fieldbus segment shall have a total cable length, including spurs, between any two devices, of up to 1 900 m.

NOTE 2 1 900 m maximum cable length is the requirement for conformance to this clause but this does not preclude the use of longer lengths in an installed system.

Rule 3: The total number of waveform regenerations by repeaters and active couplers between any two devices shall not exceed four.

Rule 4: The maximum propagation delay between any two devices shall not exceed 20 Tbit.

NOTE 3 For efficiency of the network, that part of the turn-around time of any device on the network caused by a PhE between the end of a received frame and the beginning of the transmitted frame containing an associated immediate response should not exceed 5 bit times, no more than 2 bit times of which should be due to the MAU. As it is not mandatory to expose the DLL – PhL interface or the MDS – MAU interface, that part of the turn-around time of a fieldbus device caused by the PhL or the MAU cannot be specified or conformance tested.

Rule 5: The fieldbus shall be capable of continued operation while a device is being connected or disconnected. Data errors induced during connection or disconnection shall be detected.

Rule 6: Failure of any communication element or spur (with the exception of a short circuit, low impedance, or jabber) shall not interfere with transactions between other communication elements for more than 1 ms.

Rule 7: In polarity sensitive systems the medium twisted pairs shall have distinctly marked conductors that uniquely identify individual conductors. The polarization shall be maintained at all connection points.

Rule 8: The degradation of the electrical characteristics of the signal, between any two devices, due to attenuation, attenuation distortion and mismatching shall be limited to the values indicated below.

- a) Signal attenuation: The configuration of the bus (trunk and spur lengths, number of devices, IS barriers, galvanic isolators, and possible matching devices) shall be such that the attenuation between any two devices at the frequency corresponding to the bit rate shall not exceed 10,5 dB.
- b) Attenuation distortion: The configuration of the bus (trunk and spur lengths and number of devices, IS barriers, and galvanic isolators) shall be such that between any two devices:

$$[\text{Attenuation}(1,25 f_r) - \text{Attenuation}(0,25 f_r)] \leq 6 \text{ dB}$$

$$\text{Attenuation}(1,25 f_r) \geq \text{Attenuation}(0,25 f_r)$$

where f_r is the frequency corresponding to the bit rate. Attenuation shall be monotonic for all frequencies from $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz to 39 kHz).

- c) Mismatching distortion: Mismatching (due to spurs or any other effect, including one open circuit spur of maximum length) on the bus shall be such that, at any point along the trunk, in the frequency band $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz to 39 kHz):

$$|Z - Z_0| / |Z + Z_0| \leq 0,2$$

where Z_0 is the characteristic impedance of the trunk cable and Z is the parallel combination of Z_0 and the load impedance at the coupler.

The concentration of couplers shall be less than 15 per 250 m.

NOTE 4 Rule 8 minimizes restrictions on trunk and spur length, number of devices etc. by specifying only the transmission limitations imposed by combinations of these factors. Different combinations may be used depending on the needs of the application.

Rule 9: The following rules shall apply to systems implemented with redundant media:

- each channel (cable) shall comply with the network configuration rules;
- there shall not be a non-redundant segment between two redundant segments;
- repeaters shall also be redundant;
- if the system is configured (by Systems management) to transmit on more than one channel simultaneously then the propagation time difference between any two devices on any two channels shall not exceed five bit times;
- channel numbers shall be maintained throughout the fieldbus, i.e. channels 1, 2, 3... from Systems management shall always connect to physical channels 1, 2, 3...

21.3.4 Power distribution rules for network configuration

See 12.3.4.

21.4 Transmit circuit specification for 31,25 kbit/s voltage-mode MAU

21.4.1 Summary

For ease of reference, the requirements of 21.2 and 21.4 are summarized in Table 60 and Table 61 (see 12.4.1).

21.4.2 Test configuration

Figure 54 (see 11.4.2) shows the configuration that shall be used for testing.

Differential signal voltage: $V_d = V_a - V_b$.

Test load resistance $R = 50 \Omega$ (0,5 cable Z_0) and $C = 10 \mu\text{F}$ except where otherwise stated in a specific requirement.

21.4.3 Impedance

For both the bus interfaces (i.e., medium attachment unit MAU) of the field devices and coupling elements and the power supplies, 11.4 requires that the input impedance (can be measured from the bus line) in the signal frequency range (7,8 kHz to 39 kHz) does not pass below a minimum value during normal operation. With the exception of the first 10 ms following connection of a field device to a power supply, this requirement applies to all aspects of operation. Table 99 shows the input Impedances of bus interfaces and power supplies

Table 99 – Input Impedances of bus interfaces and power supplies

	Impedance	Voltage range	Current range
Bus interface (e.g., field device)	$\geq 3 \text{ k}\Omega$	9 V to 32 V	For operating current
Intrinsically safe bus power supply	$\geq 400 \Omega$	For operating voltage	0 to I_{Max}
Non intrinsically safe bus power supply	$\geq 3 \text{ k}\Omega$	For operating voltage	0 to I_{Max}

The input impedance of the bus interface shall be measured with a sinus signal whose amplitude shall be greater than the receiver sensitivity but always less than 2 V_{ss}.

NOTE No measuring signal is defined for the power supply.

Impedance of the field device and the power supply shall be determined using the measuring circuit shown in Figure 92.

Impedance X of the tested device is calculated from the ratio of the two voltages U_D and U_R .

$$X = R_M \times \frac{U_D}{U_R}$$

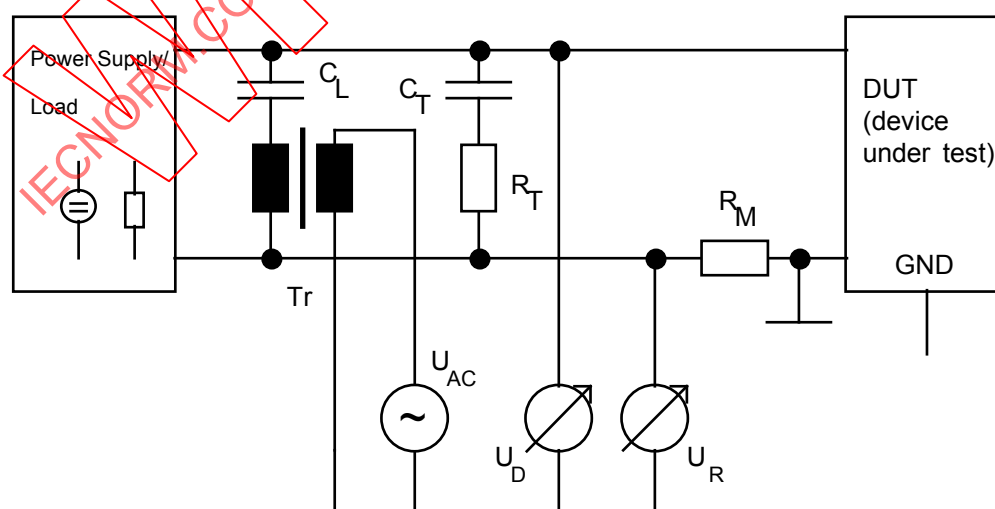
The two measured voltages represent complex values whose phase difference is included in the result. If U_R is used as the reference, then:

$$X = R_M \times \frac{|U_D|}{|U_R|} \times e^{j\varphi}$$

where

φ is the phase angle $\varphi(U_D) - \varphi(U_R)$

This reduces impedance measurement to a ratio measurement of two voltages and one phase difference measurement.

**Figure 92 – Circuit diagram of the principle of measuring impedance**

Example

$CL = CT = 2 \mu\text{F}$, $RT = RM = 100 \Omega$

The phase angle can also be negative. If so, the object to be measured represents a negative load that amplifies rather than attenuates. This can be disregarded (it even has positive effects) for the signal frequency range from 7,9 kHz to 39 kHz as long as $|X|$ remains within the specified range.

NOTE There is no specification for the impedance. Its amount can be any low value. In combination with unfavourable outside circuiting conditions (e.g., long stub lines), negative impedance can create an unattenuated oscillating circuit which turns the bus system into an oscillator although the object to be measured remains stable in the measuring circuit.

The following sources of errors can affect the result of the impedance measurement.

- Non-linear distortions. Correction: Use frequency-selective measurement (i.e., only evaluate the fundamental wave) and oscillographic monitoring of the measuring signal.
- Asymmetries in the measuring setup. Correction: Use symmetrical transformer Tr and avoid ground capacitances. Leave open any ground connection on the test object (e.g., caused by EMC filter) when measuring the impedance.
- Noise signals generated by the test object. Correction: Measure the background noise. It shall be $\leq 1 \text{ mV}_{\text{eff}}$ (measured at 50Ω). If this condition is met, the effect on the impedance measurement can be disregarded.

21.4.4 Symmetry

All bus interfaces shall be isolated from earth. The unbalanced capacitance between the two bus terminals and earth must not exceed 250 pF. That is also required for barriers and power supplies.

Under the condition that the impedance between each of the two bus terminals and earth only contains one capacitive component, measuring the two effective earth capacitances and then calculating the difference can determine asymmetry. Particularly when non-intrinsically safe bus interfaces, which can be coupled to the bus via a transformer, are used, significant inductive components are present. Even when coupling elements are used, which do not contain inductivities as components, inductive behaviour caused by parasitic effects can be detected particularly for higher frequencies. At best, a purely capacitive asymmetry only can be assumed within a limited frequency range. For this reason, it is recommended to determine the Common Mode Rejection Ratio CMRR as defined in Figure 93 to evaluate the characteristics of symmetry.

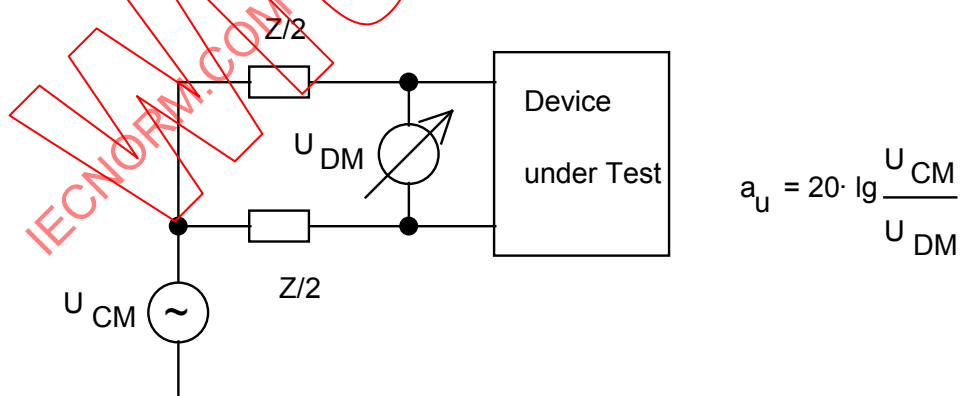


Figure 93 – Definition of CMRR

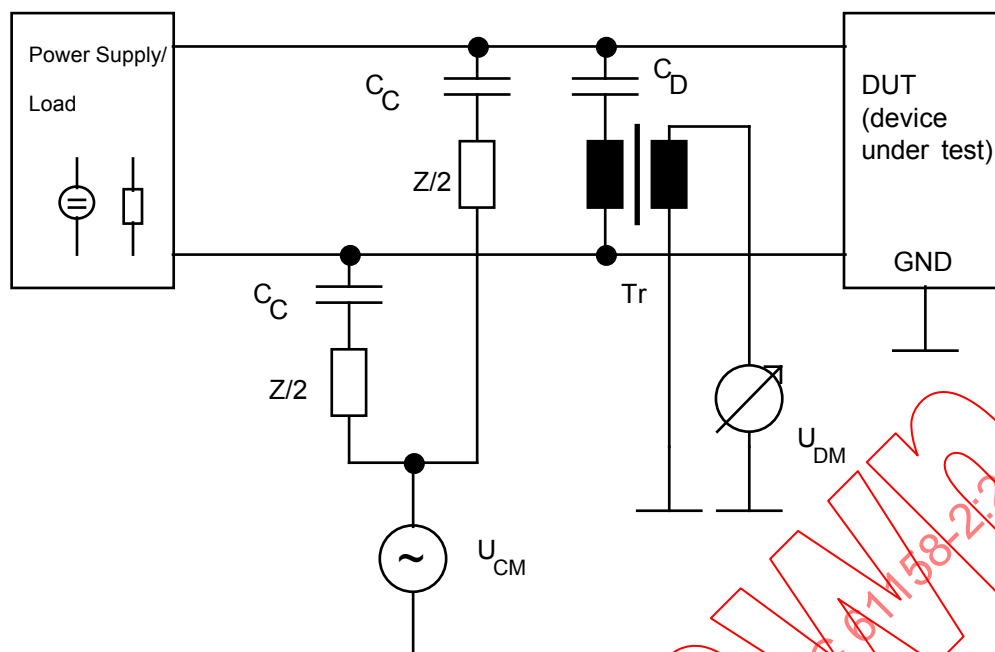


Figure 94 – Block circuit diagram of the principle of measuring CMRR

Example

$C_C = C_D = 2 \mu\text{F}$, $Z/2 = 25 \Omega \pm 0,1 \%$.

Field device, barrier or power supply shall meet the required CMRR of Table 100. With regard to the unbalanced capacitance, the CMRR shall be higher than the values listed in Table 100. CMRR of the measuring instrument (e.g. as shown in Figure 94) without the device under test (i.e., DUT) shall be at least 10 dB above the listed values.

Table 100 – Required CMRR

Frequency	kHz	≤ 40	120	400	1 200
CMRR	dB	≥ 50	≥ 40	≥ 30	≥ 20

21.4.5 Output level requirements

See 12.4.3

21.4.6 Output timing requirements

See 12.4.4

21.4.7 Signal polarity

See 11.4.5.

21.5 Receive circuit specification for 31,25 kbit/s voltage-mode MAU

See 12.5.

21.6 Jabber inhibit

See 12.6.

21.7 Power distribution

21.7.1 General

A device can optionally receive power via the signal conductors or be separately powered.

A device can be certified as Intrinsically safe with either method of receiving power.

NOTE This standard does not include requirements for IS-certification but seeks to exclude conditions or situations that would prevent IS certification.

A separately powered device can be connected to a powered fieldbus.

For ease of reference, the requirements of 21.7 are summarized in Table 101 and Table 102.

Table 101 – Network powered device characteristics for the 31,25 kbit/s voltage-mode MAU

Network powered device characteristics	Limits for 31,25 kbit/s
Operating voltage	9,0 V d.c. to 32,0 V d.c.
Minimum withstand voltage, either polarity, for no damage	35 V
Maximum rate of change of quiescent current (non-transmitting); this requirement does not apply within the first 10 ms after the connection of the device to an operating network or within the first 10 ms after the application of power to the network	1,0 mA/ms
Maximum current; this requirement applies during the time interval of 100 μ s to 10 ms after the connection of the device to an operating network or 100 μ s to 10 ms after the application of power to the network (see note)	Rated quiescent current plus 10 mA
NOTE The first 100 μ s is excluded to allow for the charging of RFI filters and other capacitances in the device. The rate of change specification applies after 10 ms.	

Table 102 – Network power supply requirements for the 31,25 kbit/s voltage-mode MAU

Network power supply requirements	Limits for 31,25 kbit/s
Output voltage, non-IS	≤ 32 V d.c.
Output voltage, IS	Depends on barrier rating
Output ripple and noise	See Figure 95
Output impedance, non-IS, measured over the frequency range 0,25 f_r to 1,25 f_r	≥ 3 k Ω
Output impedance, IS, measured over the frequency range 0,25 f_r to 1,25 f_r	≥ 400 Ω (See note)
NOTE The IS power supply is assumed to include an IS barrier.	

21.7.2 Supply voltage

A fieldbus device that includes a 31,25 kbit/s voltage-mode MAU shall be capable of operating within a voltage range of 9 V to 32 V d.c. between the two conductors including ripple. The device shall withstand a minimum voltage of ± 35 V d.c. without damage.

NOTE 1 For IS systems the operating voltage may be limited by the certification requirements. In this case the power supply will be located in the safe area and its output voltage will be attenuated by a safety barrier or equivalent component.

A fieldbus device that includes a 31,25 kbit/s voltage-mode MAU shall conform to the requirements of this clause when powered by a supply with the following specifications.

- a) The output voltage of the power supply for non-IS networks shall be 32 V d.c. maximum including ripple.
- b) The output impedance of the power supply for non-IS networks shall be $\geq 3 \text{ k}\Omega$ over the frequency range $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz to 39 kHz). This requirement does not apply within 10 ms of the connection or removal of a field device.
- c) The output impedance of an IS power supply shall be $\geq 400 \Omega$ over the frequency range $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz to 39 kHz).

NOTE 2 The IS power supply is assumed to include an IS barrier.

- d) The breakdown requirements of the isolation of the signal circuit and the power distribution circuit from ground and from each other shall be in accordance with IEC 61131-2.

NOTE 3 The equivalent test voltage is to be applied between independent isolated circuits or between isolated circuits and accessible conducting parts. For circuits with a nominal voltage $\leq 50 \text{ V d.c. or r.m.s.}$, the equivalent test voltages at sea level are 444 V r.m.s., 635 V d.c. and 635 V peak impulse test. For circuits with a nominal voltage between 150 V r.m.s. and 300 V r.m.s., the equivalent test voltages at sea level are 2 260 V r.m.s., 3 175 V d.c. and 3 175 V peak impulse test.

21.7.3 Powered via signal conductors

A fieldbus device which includes a 31,25 kbit/s voltage-mode MAU and is powered via the signal conductors shall be required to conform to the requirements of this clause when operating with maximum levels of power supply ripple and noise as follows:

- a) 16 mV peak-to-peak over the frequency range $0,25 f_r$ to $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz to 39 kHz);
- b) 2,0 V peak-to-peak over the frequency range 47 Hz to 63 Hz for non-IS applications;
- c) 0,2 V peak-to-peak over the frequency range 47 Hz to 625 Hz for IS applications;
- d) 1,6 V peak-to-peak at frequencies greater than $125 f_r$, up to a maximum of 25 MHz;
- e) levels at intermediate frequencies generally in accordance with Figure 95.

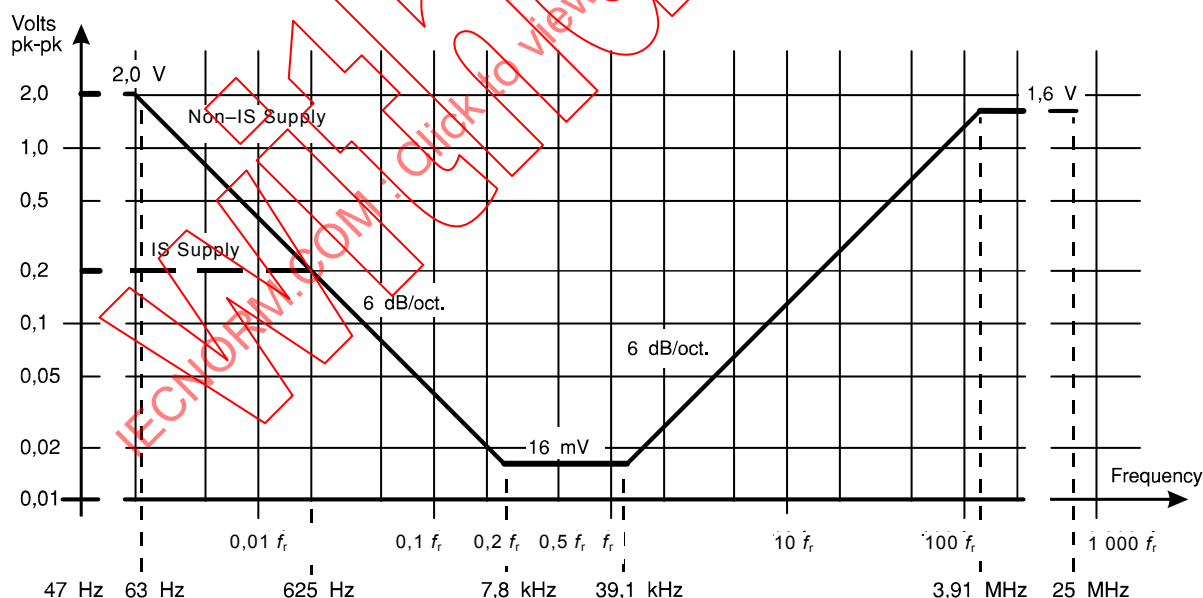


Figure 95 – Power supply ripple and noise

A fieldbus device which includes a 31,25 kbit/s voltage-mode MAU and is powered via the signal conductors shall exhibit a maximum rate of change of current drawn from the network of 1 mA/ms. This requirement does not apply:

- when transmitting;
- within the first 10 ms after the connection of the device to an operating network;
- within the first 10 ms after the application of power to the network;

- upon disconnection from the network or removal of power to the network.

A device shall be marked with a rated quiescent current. A device shall draw no more than 10 mA above its rated current from the network during the time interval of 100 μ s to 10 ms after the connection of the device to an operating network or 100 μ s to 10 ms after the application of power to the network.

NOTE The first 100 μ s is excluded to allow for the charging of RFI filters and other capacitance in the device. The rate of change specification applies after 10 ms.

21.7.4 Electrical isolation

All fieldbus devices that use wire medium, whether separately powered or powered via the signal conductors, shall provide low-frequency isolation between ground and the fieldbus trunk cable.

NOTE 1 This may be by isolation of the entire device from ground or by use of a transformer, opto-coupler or some other isolating component between trunk cable and device.

A combined power supply and communication element shall not require electrical isolation.

For shielded cables, the isolation impedance measured between the shield of the fieldbus cable and the fieldbus device ground shall be greater than 250 k Ω at all frequencies below 63 Hz.

The maximum unbalanced capacitance to ground from either input terminal of a device shall not exceed 250 pF.

The breakdown requirements of the isolation of the signal circuit and the power distribution circuit from ground and from each other shall be in accordance with IEC 61131-2.

NOTE 2 The equivalent test voltage is to be applied between independent isolated circuits or between isolated circuits and accessible conducting parts. For circuits with a nominal voltage $\leq$ 50 V d.c. or r.m.s., the equivalent test voltages at sea level are 444 V r.m.s., 635 V d.c. and 635 V peak impulse test. For circuits with a nominal voltage between 150 V r.m.s. and 300 V r.m.s., the equivalent test voltages at sea level are 2 260 V r.m.s., 3 175 V d.c. and 3 175 V peak impulse test.

21.8 Medium specifications

21.8.1 Connector

The connector is specified in Annex I.1.

21.8.2 Standard test cable

The cable used for testing fieldbus devices with a 31,25 kbit/s voltage-mode MAU for conformance to the requirements of this clause shall be a single twisted pair cable with overall shield meeting the following minimum requirements at 25 °C:

- Z_0 at f_r (31,25 kHz) = 100 $\Omega \pm 20 \Omega$;
- maximum attenuation at 1,25 f_r (39 kHz) = 3,0 dB/km;
- maximum capacitive unbalance to shield = 2 nF/km;
- maximum d.c. resistance (per conductor) = 24 Ω /km;
- maximum propagation delay change 0,25 f_r to 1,25 f_r = 1,7 μ s/km;
- conductor cross-sectional area (wire size) = nominal 0,8 mm²;
- minimum shield coverage shall be 90 %.

NOTE 1 The preceding specification is for conformance testing an MAU. Other types of cable may be used in real installations. (See Annex B.) Cables with improved specifications may enable increased trunk length and/or superior interference immunity. Conversely, cables with inferior specifications may be used subject to length limitations for both trunk and spurs plus possible non-conformance to the RFI/EMI susceptibility requirements.

NOTE 2 For Intrinsically Safe applications special requirements should be met such as specified by relevant Intrinsically Safe standards, e.g. IEC/TS 60079-27 (FISCO).

21.8.3 Coupler

See 12.8.3.

21.8.4 Splices

See 12.8.4.

21.8.5 Terminator

A terminator shall be located at both ends of the trunk cable, connected from one signal conductor to the other. No connection shall be made between terminator and cable shield.

The terminator impedance value shall be $100\ \Omega \pm 2\ \Omega$ over the frequency range $0,25\ f_r$ to $1,25\ f_r$ (7,8 kHz to 39 kHz).

NOTE 1 This value is approximately the average cable characteristic impedance value for suitable cables at the relevant frequencies and is chosen to minimize transmission line reflections.

The direct current leakage through the terminator shall not exceed 100 μ A. The terminator shall be non-polarized.

All terminators used for IS applications shall comply with isolation requirements (creepage and clearance) commensurate with the required IS approval. Terminators for non-IS applications shall not be required to have IS approval.

NOTE 2 It is acceptable for the functions of power supply, safety barrier, and terminator to be combined in various ways as long as the impedance of the combination is equivalent to the parallel impedance of independent devices meeting the requirements of this clause of IEC 61158-2 and the network configuration rules of 21.3.3 are followed.

21.8.6 Shielding rules

See 12.8.6.

21.8.7 Grounding rules

NOTE 1 Grounding means permanently connected to earth through a sufficiently low impedance and with sufficient current-carrying capability to prevent voltage build-up which might result in undue hazard to connected equipment or persons. Zero volts (common) lines may be connected to ground where they are galvanically isolated from the fieldbus trunk.

Fieldbus devices shall be required to function to the requirements of this clause of IEC 61158-2 with the mid-point of one terminator or one inductive coupler connected directly to ground.

Fieldbus devices shall not connect either conductor of the twisted pair to ground at any point in the network. Signals shall be applied and preserved differentially throughout the network.

NOTE 2 It is best practice for the shield of the fieldbus trunk cable (if applicable) to be effectively grounded at several points along the length of the cable. But the fieldbus devices should allow d.c. isolation of the cable shield from ground. It is also standard practice to connect the signal conductors to ground in a balanced manner at one central grounding point, e.g. by using the center tap of a terminator or coupling transformer. For bus powered systems the grounding of the shield and balanced signal conductors should be close to the power supply unit. For IS systems the grounding should be in accordance to the related Intrinsic safety standards, e.g. prepared by IEC TC 31, SC31G, WG2.

21.8.8 Cable colours

See 12.8.8.

21.9 Intrinsic safety

21.9.1 General

This standard does not attempt to list the requirements by which an item of equipment may be certified as intrinsically safe nor does it require equipment to be intrinsically safe. Rather, it seeks to exclude conditions or situations that would prevent IS certification.

21.9.2 Intrinsic safety barrier

The barrier impedance shall be greater than $460\ \Omega$ at any frequency in the range $0,25\ f_r$ to $1,25\ f_r$ (7,8 kHz to 39 kHz). The IS barrier impedance specification shall apply to all barriers used as part of the PhL, whether installed as a separate item of network hardware or embedded in a power supply card. The barrier impedance shall be measured across the terminals on both sides of the barrier. The barrier impedance shall be measured while the network power supply is set at the rated working voltage (not safety voltage) of the barrier.

NOTE It is acceptable for the functions of power supply, safety barrier, and terminator to be combined in various ways as long as the impedance of the combination is equivalent to the parallel impedance of independent devices meeting the requirements of this clause of IEC 61158-2 and the network configuration rules of 21.3.3 are followed.

At the rated working voltage of the barrier, and at any frequency in the range $0,25\ f_r$ to $1,25\ f_r$ (7,8 kHz to 39 kHz), the capacitance measured from the "+" (positive) network terminal (hazardous side) to ground shall differ by no more than 250 pF from the capacitance measured from the "-" (negative) network terminal (hazardous side) to ground.

21.9.3 Barrier and terminator placement

A barrier shall be separated from the nearest terminator by no more than 100 m of cable.

NOTE The barrier can appear as a shunt impedance as low as $460\ \Omega$ at the signaling frequencies. The terminator resistance is sufficiently low that when it is placed in parallel with the barrier impedance, the resulting impedance is almost entirely resistive (non-reactive).

21.10 Galvanic Isolators

The communications characteristics of galvanic isolators used on the fieldbus shall comply with the specifications of 21.9.

21.11 Coupling elements

21.11.1 General

Coupling elements are used to connect different Type 3 segments with the same PhL or a different PhL.

With the exception of signal levels this document does not describe the required characteristics of a coupling element. This means that it is the task of the system planner to ensure that "Network Configuration Rules" standard is complied with when coupling elements are used. The following specifications are important.

- Maximum signal delay.
- Maximum deviation from nominal signal zero crossing (signal jitter).

Two types of coupling elements can be used:

- MBP-IS repeaters
- MBP-IS - RS 485 signal couplers

21.11.2 MBP-IS repeater

A MBP-IS repeater connects two MBP-IS segments. It contains a MAU on each segment and a galvanic isolation between the two MAU. The electrical characteristics shown in Table 103 are mandatory for both fieldbus interfaces. MAU related requirements in Clause 12 and 21.1 to 21.10 also apply to repeaters.

Table 103 – Electrical characteristics of fieldbus interfaces

Parameter	Values	Subclause of this standard
Signal coding	Manchester II	9.2.2
Start delimiter	1, N+, N-, 1, 0, N-, N+, 0 (Note 1)	9.2.4
End delimiter	1, N+, N-, N+, N-, 1, 0, 1 (Note 1)	9.2.5
Preamble	1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0	9.2.6
Data transmission rate	31,25 kbit/s $\pm$ 0,2 %	21.2
Output level (peak to peak)	0,75 V to 1 V	21.4.5
Max. difference between positive and negative transmit amplitude	$\pm$ 50 mV	21.4.5
Max. transmit signal distortion (overshoot, ringing and drop)	$\pm$ 10 %	21.4.5
Transmitter noise	1 mV (RMS) (Note 2)	21.4.5
Output impedance	$\geq$ 3 k Ω (Note 3)	21.7.1
Operating voltage	9 V to 32 V (Note 4)	21.7.1
Common Mode Rejection Ratio (CMRR)	$\geq$ 50 dB (Note 5)	
Leakage current (Note 6)	50 μ A	
NOTES 1 N+ and N- are non-data symbols. 2 In frequency range of 1 kHz to 100 kHz. 3 In frequency range of 7,8 kHz to 39 kHz. 4 Operational voltage range. Can be limited to 9 V to 17,5 V or to 9 V to 24 V for intrinsically safe devices. 5 Corresponds to a unbalanced capacitance of 250 pF at 39 kHz. 6 Only for intrinsic safety.		

Repeaters which are connected to intrinsically safe bus segments must be certified as intrinsically safe apparatus. The certificate must contain a statement that the devices conform to the FISCO model. The specifications of IEC 60079-11 must be adhered to for galvanic isolation.

To be able to determine whether the network configuration rules in 21.3.3 are met, the system planner requires information on the signal delay caused by repeaters and the maximum deviation from the nominal signal zero crossing (i.e., signal jitter). This information shall be documented in the data sheet.

A repeater can be combined with a power supply and with line terminators.

21.11.3 MBP-IS – RS 485 signal coupler

A MBP-IS – RS 485 signal coupler connects a MBP-IS segment with a RS 485 segment. It contains a MAU on each segment, a galvanic isolation between the two MAU, and a Manchester encoding/decoding.

The electrical characteristics shown in Table 103 are mandatory for the MBP-IS interface. MAU related requirements in Clause 12 and 21.1 to 21.10 also apply. Clause 22 apply to the design of the RS 485 bus interface.

Signal couplers which are connected to intrinsically safe bus segments must be certified as intrinsically safe apparatus. The certificate must contain a statement that the devices conform to the FISCO model. The specifications of IEC 60079-11 shall be adhered to for galvanic isolation (see 21.10).

To be able to determine whether the network configuration rules in 21.3.3 are met, the system planner requires information on the signal delay caused by repeaters and the maximum deviation from the nominal signal zero crossing (i.e., signal jitter). This information shall be documented in the data sheet of a signal coupler.

A signal coupler can be combined with a power supply and with a bus terminator.

NOTE Such a device is usually called segment coupler.

21.12 Power supply

21.12.1 General

A power supply must be connected to the bus to supply the field devices with power. The supply voltage depends on the requirements of the particular application.

The power for an intrinsically safe bus can either be provided by a power supply with intrinsically safe output or by a non intrinsically safe power supply supplemented by a barrier.

To prevent any impact on the data transmission, the electrical characteristics in Clause 21 of this standard and listed in Table 104 are mandatory for all power supplies.

The output terminals of a power supply shall be clearly marked with "+" and "-".

Although a power supply isolated against earth is not specifically required, asymmetrical grounding of the bus cable conductors is not permitted. It is essential that any connection between the conductors and earth is balanced. For more details, see 21.8.7.

Table 104 – Electrical characteristics of power supplies

	Not intrinsically safe	Intrinsically safe, IIC FISCO 1)	Intrinsically safe, IIB FISCO 1)	Intrinsically safe, IIC linear barrier 2)
According to FISCO model	no	yes	yes	
Max. DC supply voltage U ₀	≤ 32 V	≤ 17,5 V	≤ 17,5 V	≤ 24 V
Max. DC short-circuit current I ₀		≤ 360 mA	≤ 380 mA ⁷⁾	≤ 250 mA
Max. output power P ₀		≤ 2,52 W	≤ 5,32 W	≤ 1,2 W
Ripple, noise	≤ 16 mV 3)	≤ 16 mV 3)	≤ 16 mV 3)	≤ 16 mV 3)
Output impedance ⁷⁾	≥ 3 k Ω 3) 4)	≥ 400 Ω 3) 4)	≥ 400 Ω 3) 4)	≥ 400 Ω 3) 4) 5)
Ripple, noise	≤ 16 mV 3)			
Asymmetry attenuation	≥ 50 dB 6)			≥ 50 dB 5) 6)

1) Power supply with rectangular or trapezoidal characteristic in accordance with the FISCO model.

2) Power supply or barrier with linear characteristic.

3) In frequency range from 7,8 kHz to 39 kHz. Otherwise see Figure 95.

4) With integrated line terminator: 100 Ω ± 2 %. It is recommended to provide each power supply with a terminating resistor.

5) Including barrier if required.

6) No mandatory specification in the standard, but required functionally.

7) The current limit results from a rectangular characteristic.

Power supplies that are used to supply field devices located in potentially explosive areas shall be certified as intrinsically safe associated apparatus for use in hazardous locations.

21.12.2 Non-intrinsically safe power supply

Non intrinsically safe power supplies shall have the technical characteristics listed in Table 104.

Non intrinsically safe power supplies can be used together with an approved barrier to supply an intrinsically safe bus.

21.12.3 Intrinsically safe power supply

To supply field devices in potentially explosive areas, a power supply with intrinsically safe output can be connected to the bus instead of the combination of non intrinsically safe power supply and barrier. This device is usually located outside the hazardous area in the control room. In the sense of IEC 60079-11, this is a so-called associated apparatus since, although it is not protected against explosion itself, it does generate an intrinsically safe electric circuit which leads to the potentially explosive area.

In addition to the requirements in Clause 21 especially in Table 104, intrinsically safe power supplies shall meet the safety requirements stated in the IEC 60079-14 and IEC 60079-11.

If the power supply is located within the hazardous area, an additional standardized type of protection must be provided (e.g., installation in a housing of protection type "flameproof enclosure d").

Intrinsically safe power supplies can be part of other fieldbus components (e.g., segment couplers, see 21.11).

The FISCO model is based on a rated DC voltage of 13,5 V. The ignition curves for power supplies with rectangular characteristic indicate that the maximum permissible power considerably decreases if the voltage increases. On the other hand, a low voltage power supply may not be advantageous because of the voltage drop caused by the transmission line. Therefore the voltage of 13,5 V seems to be an acceptable compromise.

Due to tolerances and in order to offer a margin for the signal amplitude the maximum output voltage U_0 of a power device shall be greater than the rated output voltage. The signal amplitude is $\leq 1 V_{PP}$, therefore a margin of 0,5 V is needed. If the tolerances are assumed to be $\leq 1 V$ the calculation results in a guaranteed maximum output voltage $U_0 = 15 V$. The admissible maximum output current (short circuit current), depending on the gas group, can be taken from available ignition curves or can be derived from ignition tests. In group IIC the allowed output current is $I_0 = 128 \text{ mA}$. Other voltage/current combination in accordance with FISCO may be chosen.

Design and implementation of the safety-related voltage, and current limiters depends on the chosen category of the intrinsically safe circuit ("ia" or "ib") The maximum values of the output parameters have to meet the requirements of FISCO.

An inspection certificate must be obtained for the bus power supply as "associated apparatus" in the sense of IEC 60079-11. This certificate must state that the power supply conforms to the FISCO model.

NOTE In addition to the usual data (i.e maximum output parameters), the certificate may also contain primary specifications applicable to permissible fieldbus configuration. Usually limit values for the maximum permissible external inductance L_a and capacity C_a are not required. If these values had been included, it would create the impression that L_a and C_a are present in the intrinsically safe circuit as unprotected inductivity and capacity, which is not the case for the FISCO model. The cable here is not considered as concentrated inductivity and capacity as long as the parameters of the system remain within the range of limits defined in the FISCO model.

21.12.4 Power supply of the category "ib"

NOTE Since the output current circuit of the power supply should have a low inner resistance for direct current, use of a power supply with a voltage regulator and an active current control (i.e., electronic current limitation) comes to mind. An inner resistance $\geq 400 \Omega$ in the signal frequency range according Table 104 can be achieved by using a frequency-dependent negative feedback, for example.

The ideal output characteristic curve of a power supply (i.e., current/voltage characteristic) is rectangular (see Figure 96). When the output current increases, the output voltage remains constant until the current reaches a certain limit. IEC 60079-11 permits such a solution under the assumption that redundant current and voltage limitation has been set up and reliable galvanic isolation (optional) from the non intrinsically safe electric circuits has been provided.

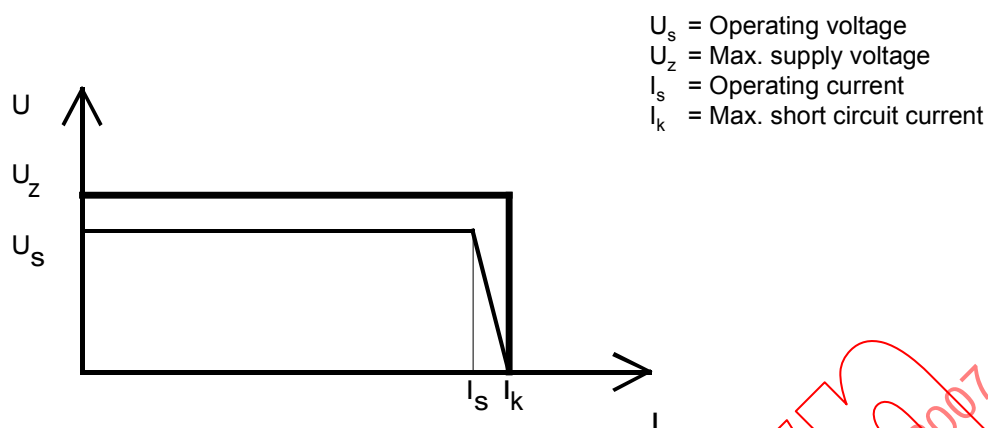


Figure 96 – Output characteristic curve of a power supply of the category EEx ib

NOTE A voltage of 13,5 V direct current seems realistic since higher voltages would restrict the available power. The explosion limit curves for sources with square output characteristic curve show that the permissible power decreases significantly when the voltage increases.

21.12.5 Power supply in category "ia"

Power supplies with electronic current limitation shall be certified in accordance with IEC 60079-11 for category "ib".

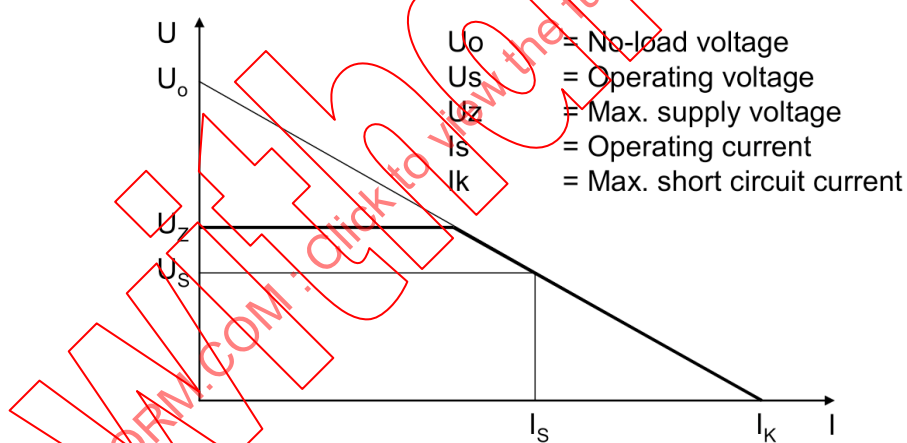


Figure 97 – Output characteristic curve of a power supply of the category EEx ia

The ia-power supply shall be according FISCO. The maximum output current I_K of Figure 96 corresponds to the current I_{Zul} (at $U = U_z$) of

Figure 97.

Example

An example of a power supply suitable for category "ia" contains the following safety-related elements: Voltage source with $U_0 = 34 \text{ V}$, fixed resistance with $R = 158 \Omega$, and Zener diodes with $U_{ZD} = 15 \text{ V}$ (maximum value). Such a circuit has a trapezoidal output characteristic curve as shown in

Figure 97. The approximate operational values which can be achieved for the power supply are listed below.

$$U = 13,5 \text{ V}$$

$$I = 120 \text{ mA}$$

$$P = 1,7 \text{ W}$$

$$P_{v \max} = \frac{U_0^2}{R_v} = 7,32 \text{ W}$$

NOTE 1 Thus, the operational values are comparable to those of the "ib" concept with electronic current limitation. A disadvantage is the requirement of a relatively high thermal stress of the series resistor and the power loss in the series resistor which is always present under operational conditions.

Applying a safety factor of 1,5, the allowed power dissipation of the resistor shall be 11 W.

NOTE 2 Use of two resistors in series may be helpful.

The maximum power dissipation of the Zener diodes is 1,8 W.

$$P_{v \max} = \frac{U_0 - U_z}{R_v} \times 15 \text{ V} = \frac{34 \text{ V} - 15 \text{ V}}{158 \Omega} \times 15 \text{ V} = 1,8 \text{ W}$$

Taking into account the safety factor, the Zener diodes shall be suitable for a maximum power dissipation of 2,7 W.

NOTE 3 The use of two diodes in series is also possible here.

IEC 60079-14 and IEC 60079-11 apply.

21.12.6 Reverse powering

With the exception of one power supply per segment, the FISCO model does not permit devices that are connected to the intrinsically safe fieldbus to feed power back to the fieldbus, even when a short circuit occurs on the fieldbus line. This is usually ensured by connection in series of two (for EEx ib) or three (for EEx ia) silicon or Schottky diodes in the input electric circuit. The field device conforms to the FISCO model when the leakage current of these diodes (up to the maximum reverse voltage in the permissible temperature range) does not exceed 50 μA . Diode manufacturer specifications (i.e., typical values as per data sheet) usually apply here in addition to a safety factor.

Final judgment of these measures is the responsibility of the certifying authority performing the safety tests and certification of the particular field device.

22 Type 3: Medium attachment unit: asynchronous transmission, wire medium

22.1 Medium attachment unit for non intrinsic safety

22.1.1 Characteristics

This MAU specification describes a balanced line transmission corresponding to ANSI TIA/EIA RS-485-A. Terminators, located at both ends of the twisted-pair cable, enable the PhL to support in particular higher speed transmission. The maximum cable length is 1 200 m for data rates $\leq 93,75$ kbit/s. For 1 500 kbit/s the maximum length is reduced to 70 m for type B and 200 m for type A cable. For 12 Mbit/s the maximum length is 100 m (only cable type A, see 22.1.2.2).

NRZ bit encoding is combined with ANSI TIA/EIA RS-485-A signaling targeted to low cost line couplers, which may or may not isolate the station from the line (galvanic isolation); line terminators are required, especially for higher data rates (up to 12 Mbit/s).

Table 105 shows the required characteristics.

Table 105 – Characteristics for non intrinsic safety

Characteristic	Constraints
Topology:	Linear bus, terminated at both ends, stubs $\leq 0,3$ m, no branches; see Note. The total line length includes the sum of the stub lengths.
Medium:	Shielded twisted pair cable recommended, see "Medium specifications"
Line Length: ^a	$\leq 1\,200$ m, depending on the data rate and cable type
Number of stations: ^a	32 (Master stations, slave stations or repeaters)
Data rates:	9,6 / 19,2 / 45,45 / 93,75 / 187,5 / 500 / 1 500 / 3 000 / 6 000 / 12 000 kbit/s, additional data rates can be supported
^a Repeater extends the characteristics, see Table 106.	
NOTE In contrast to the ANSI TIA/EIA RS-485-A recommendations it is good practice to allow longer stubs, if the total of the capacities of all stubs (Cstges) does not exceed the following values: 0,05 nF at 3, 6 and 12 Mbit/s. 0,2 nF at 1,5 Mbit/s. 0,6 nF at 500 kbit/s. 1,5 nF at 187,5 kbit/s. 3,0 nF at 93,75 kbit/s. 15 nF at 9,6 and 19,2 kbit/s.	

The line length and number of connected stations may be increased by using repeaters. A maximum of 3 repeaters between two stations is permissible. If the data rate is $\leq 93,75$ kbit/s and if the linked sections form a chain (linear bus topology, no active star, for example, as in Figure 98) and assuming a conductor cross-sectional area of $0,22\text{ mm}^2$, the maximum permissible topology is shown in Table 106.

Table 106 – Characteristics using repeaters

Number of repeaters	Characteristic	Constraints
1	Line Length	< 2,4 km
	Number of stations	62 (Master stations, slave stations or repeaters)
2	Line Length	< 3,6 km
	Number of stations	92 (Master stations, slave stations or repeaters), see Figure 98
3	Line Length	< 4,8 km
	Number of stations	122 (Master stations, slave stations or repeaters)

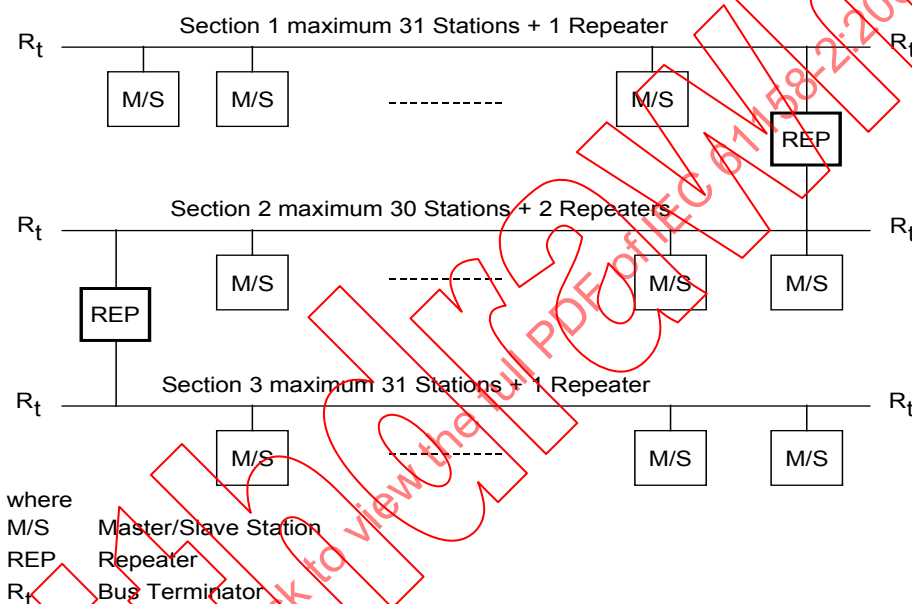


Figure 98 – Repeater in linear bus topology

In a tree topology, for example, as in Figure 99, more than 3 repeaters may be used and more than 122 stations may be connected, for example, 5 repeaters and 127 stations. A large area may be covered by this topology, for example, 4,8 km length at a data rate less than 93,75 kbit/s and a cross-sectional area of 0,22 mm².

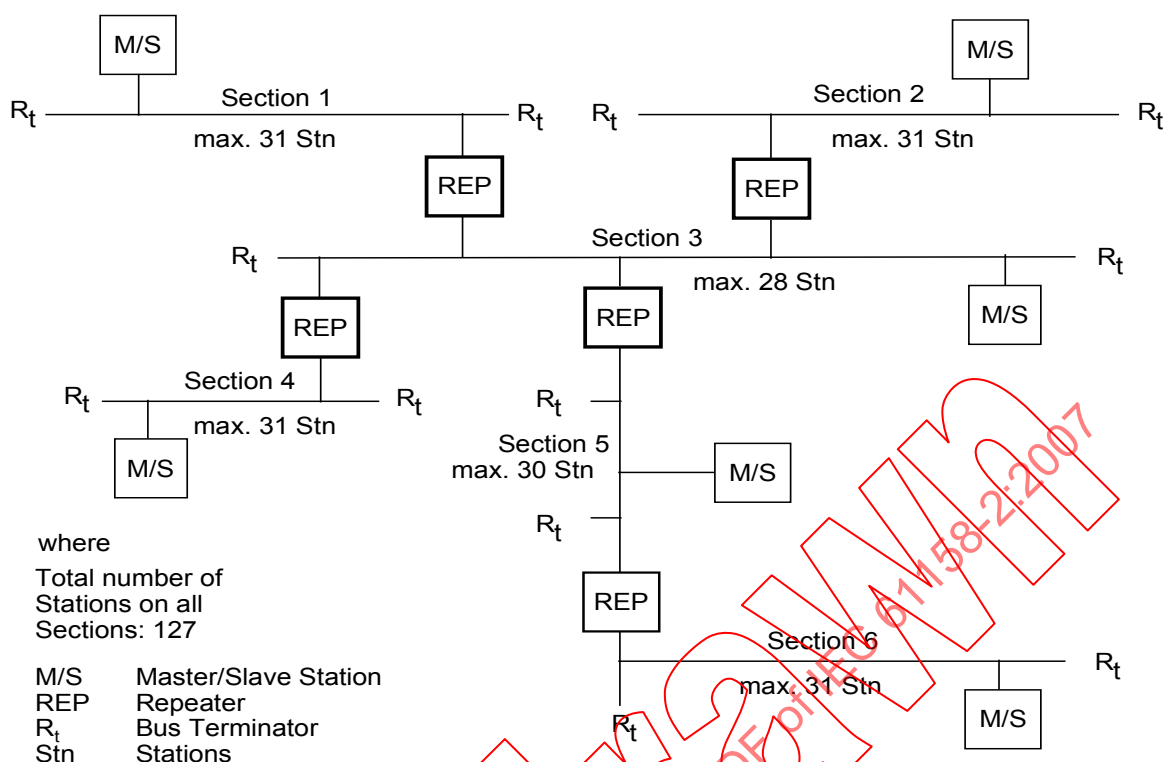


Figure 99 – Repeater in tree topology

22.1.2 Medium specifications

22.1.2.1 Connector

The connector is specified in Annex I.2.1.

22.1.2.2 Cable

The bus medium is a shielded twisted-pair cable. The shield helps to improve the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). Unshielded twisted-pair may be used, if there is no severe electromagnetic interference (EMI).

The characteristic impedance of the cable shall be in the range between 100 and 220 Ω , the cable capacity (conductor - conductor) should be less than 60 pF/m and the conductor cross-sectional area should be equal or greater than 0,22 mm². Cable selection criteria are included in the appendix of the ANSI TIA/EIA RS-485-A.

Two types of cables are defined, as specified in Table 107.

Table 107 – Cable specifications

Cable parameter	Type A	Type B
Impedance	135 to 165 Ω (f = 3 to 20 MHz)	100 to 130 Ω (f > 100 kHz)
Capacity	< 30 pF/m	< 60 pF/m
Resistance	< 110 Ω /km	not specified
Conductor cross-sectional area	$\geq 0,34 \text{ mm}^2$	$\geq 0,22 \text{ mm}^2$
Colour of sheath non-IS	Violet	Not specified
Colour of inner cable conductor A (RxD/TxD-N)	Green	Not specified
Colour inner cable conductor B (RxD/TxD-P)	Red	Not specified

Table 108 shows the maximum length of cable type A and cable type B for the different transmission speeds.

Table 108 – Maximum cable length for the different transmission speeds

Item	Unit	Value								
Data rate	kbit/s	9,6	19,2	93,75	187,5	500	1 500	3 000	6 000	12 000
Cable type A	m	1 200	1 200	1 200	1 000	400	200	100	100	100
Cable type B	m	1 200	1 200	1 200	600	200	70	Not permissible		

For data rates equal or less 1 500 kbit/s the sum of the stub lengths (total of the capacities of all stubs (Cstges)) is specified in 22.1. For example at 1 500 kbit/s the maximum stub length for cable type A is 6,6 m.

At 3 Mbit/s and higher data rates the total capacities of all stubs shall be less than 0,05 nF. For cable type A the total stub length is therefore 1,6 m. At this data rate it is necessary to integrate impedance into the wiring to avoid reflections.

The following example, Figure 100, shows the integration of inductances L1 to L4 in the connector.

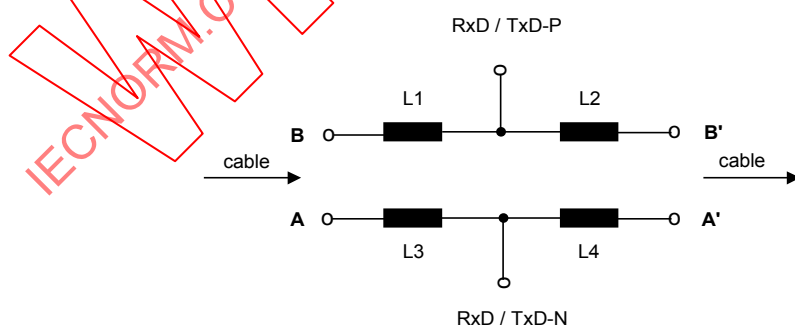


Figure 100 – Example for a connector with integrated inductance

For cable type A the inductances L1 to L4 shall have the value of 110 nH $\pm$ 22 nH with the following constraint:

The resistance between A and A' as well as B and B' shall be $\leq 0,35 \Omega$.

The typical capacity of each connected station (connector, cable to ANSI TIA/EIA RS-485-A Transceivers, Transceivers itself and other parts) shall be: 15 to 25 pF.

NOTE 1 The calculation of the inductance includes the contribution of the connected station. In case of disconnection of such connectors wiring reflections may occur which cause distortion on the bus.

The dependency of the permissible data rate upon the local link expanse (maximum distance between two stations) is shown in Figure 2-A.1 of the ANSI TIA/EIA-422-B (also included in ITU-T V.11).

NOTE 2 The recommendations concerning the line length presume a maximum signal attenuation of 6 dB. Experience shows that the distances may be doubled if conductors with a cross-sectional area $\geq 0,5 \text{ mm}^2$ are used.

The minimum wiring between two stations is shown in Figure 101.

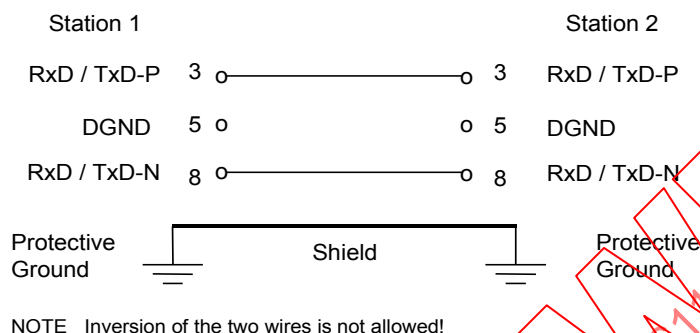


Figure 101 – Interconnecting wiring

The wiring shown in Figure 101 allows a common mode voltage between both stations (that is, the voltage difference between the protective grounds) of at most $\pm 7 \text{ V}$. If a higher common mode voltage is expected, a compensation conductor between the grounding points shall be installed.

22.1.2.3 Grounding and shielding rules

If a shielded twisted-pair cable is used it is recommended to connect the shield to the protective ground at both ends of the cable via low impedance (that is, low inductance) connections. This is necessary to achieve a reasonable electromagnetic compatibility.

Preferably the connections between the cable shield and the protective ground (for example, the metallic station housing) should be made via the metallic housings and the metallic fixing screws of the sub-D connectors. If this is not possible the pin 1 of the connectors may be used.

22.1.2.4 Bus terminator

The bus cable Type "A" and "B" shall be terminated at both ends with R_{tA} respectively R_{tB} . The termination resistor R_t specified in ANSI TIA/EIA RS-485-A shall be complemented by a pulldown resistor R_d (connected to Data Ground DGND) and by a pullup resistor R_u (connected to Voltage-Plus VP), as shown in Figure 102. This supplement forces the differential mode voltage (that is, the voltage between the conductors) to a well-defined value when no station is transmitting (during the idle periods).

Each station that is destined to terminate the line (in common with a bus terminator) shall make Voltage-Plus (for example, $+5 \text{ V} \pm 0,25 \text{ V}$) available at pin 6 of the bus connector.

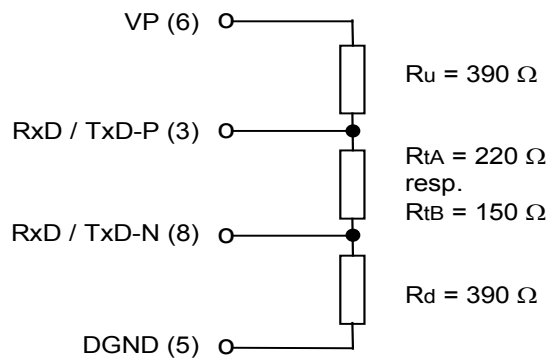


Figure 102 – Bus terminator

Assuming a power supply voltage of +5 V $\pm$ 0,25 V the following resistor values are recommended:

$$R_{tA} = 220 \, \Omega \pm 4,4 \, \Omega, \text{ min. } 1/4 \, \text{W};$$

$$R_{tB} = 150 \, \Omega \pm 3 \, \Omega, \text{ min. } 1/4 \, \text{W};$$

$$R_u = R_d = 390 \, \Omega \pm 7,8 \, \Omega, \text{ min. } 1/4 \, \text{W}.$$

The power source supplying pin 6 (VP) shall be able to deliver a current of at least 10 mA within the specified voltage tolerances.

A mixture of both cable types and cable termination resistors as described above is allowed. However, the maximum line length has to be reduced up to the half of the above fixed values if line termination and line impedance do not match.

22.1.3 Transmission method

22.1.3.1 Bit coding

The "Non Return to Zero" (NRZ) coded data from DLL is transmitted via a twisted pair cable. A binary "1" (DL_symbol = "ONE") is represented by a constant positive differential voltage between pin 3 (RxD/TxD-P) and pin 8 (RxD/TxD-N) of the bus connector, a binary "0" (DL_symbol = "ZERO") by a constant negative differential voltage.

22.1.3.2 Transceiver control

When a station is not transmitting the transmitter output shall be disabled (DL_symbol = "SILENCE"), it shall present a high impedance to the line. During the idle periods, that is, when no data is transmitted by any station, the receive line signal shall represent a binary "1" (DL_symbol = "ONE"). Therefore the Bus Terminator shall force the differential voltage between the connector pins 3 and 8 to be positive when all transmitters are disabled. The line receivers shall always be enabled, therefore during idle the binary signal "1" is received by every station.

22.2 Medium attachment unit for intrinsic safety

22.2.1 Characteristics

This MAU specification describes a MAU for explosion protection type Ex i in accordance to IEC 60079-11 and IEC 60079-25 on the basis of balanced line transmission corresponding to ANSI TIA/EIA RS-485-A. Terminators, located at both ends of the twisted-pair cable, enable the PhL to support in particular higher speed transmission. The maximum cable length is 1 200 m for data rates $\leq$ 93,75 kbit/s. For the maximum transmission rate of 1 500 kbit/s the maximum cable length is reduced to 200 m. Only cable type A, see 22.2.2.2, shall be used with this MAU.

NRZ bit encoding is combined with ANSI TIA/EIA RS-485-A signaling targeted to low cost line couplers. Line terminators are required.

In all devices connected to the fieldbus the bus interface circuit shall be galvanically isolated from all other electrical circuits. Separation distances and insulation voltages between intrinsically safe circuits and/or non-intrinsically-safe circuits must meet the relevant applicable standards (e.g. IEC 60079-11).

Table 112 shows the required characteristics.

Table 109 – Characteristics for intrinsic safety

Characteristic	Constraints
Topology	Linear bus, terminated at both ends, stubs $\leq 0,3$ m, no branches
Medium	Shielded twisted pair cable recommended, see "Medium specifications"
Line Length:	$\leq 1\,200$ m, depending on the data rate
Number of stations:	32 (Master stations, Slave stations or fieldbus isolating repeaters and additionally 2 external bus terminators)
Data rates	9,6 / 19,2 / 45,45 / 93,75 / 187,5 / 500 / 1\,500 kbit/s

The linear structure, as in Figure 103, permits connection points along the field bus segment similar to the installation of power supply circuits. The field bus cable should be looped through the individual field devices in order to avoid stubs.

A fieldbus isolating repeater or a comparable device normally forms the beginning of an intrinsically safe fieldbus segment. This fieldbus isolating repeater connects a non-intrinsically-safe fieldbus segment with the intrinsically safe fieldbus segment and simultaneously ensures reliable galvanic isolation between the two. The intrinsically safe fieldbus segment is terminated at both ends with an active bus termination. Up to 32 bus participants (field devices, fieldbus isolating repeater, external bus terminators etc.) can be arranged along the fieldbus segment. The bus participants are connected to a segment of the fieldbus in an electrically-floating arrangement.

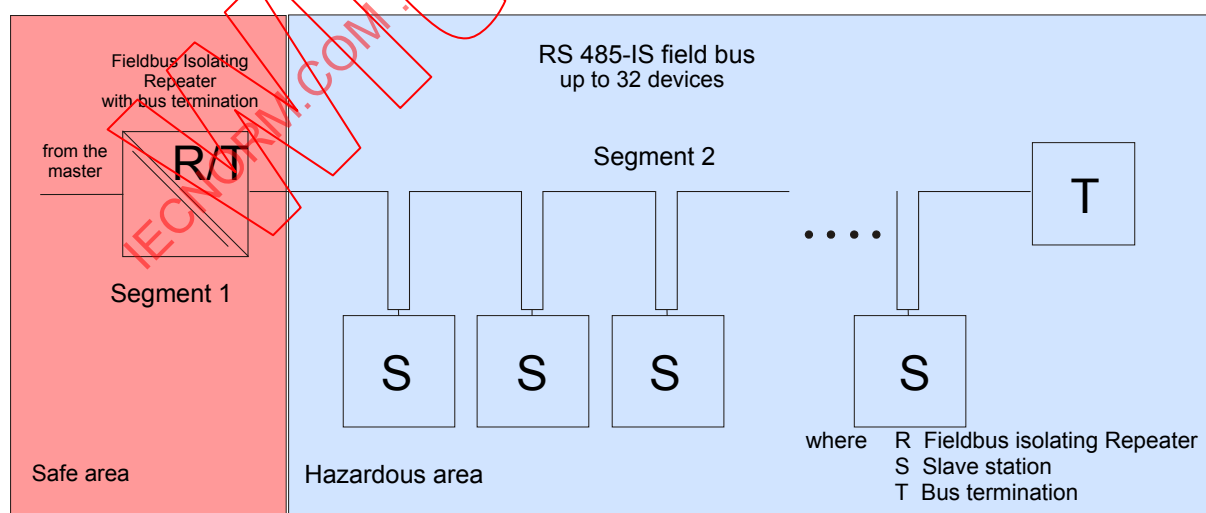


Figure 103 – Linear structure of an intrinsically safe segment

Figure 104 shows an example of the set-up and the segmentation of a fieldbus system with fieldbus isolating repeaters. The fieldbus segments 2 and 3 are intrinsically safe. The fieldbus isolating repeater between the intrinsically safe segments 2 and 3 must maintain galvanic isolation. The number of cascadable repeaters depends on the signal distortion and the delay of the signal (pay attention to the manufacturer's specifications).

Segment 3 in Figure 104 is started by means of a fieldbus isolating repeater in the middle of segment 3. Bus termination is provided at one end by means of an active bus termination and at the other end by means of another fieldbus isolating repeater which opens segment 4 into the safe area.

The bus terminations of an fieldbus segment can be located in a fieldbus isolating repeater, field device, in an active bus termination (as a stand-alone device), or in a connector powered from a fieldbus isolating repeater or field device.

The repeater between segments 2 and 3 in Figure 104 shall be installed either outside of the hazardous area, as associated apparatus. The installation in the hazardous area requires additional explosion protection measures (e.g. Ex e, Ex d, Ex I, etc., in accordance with IEC 60079-0).

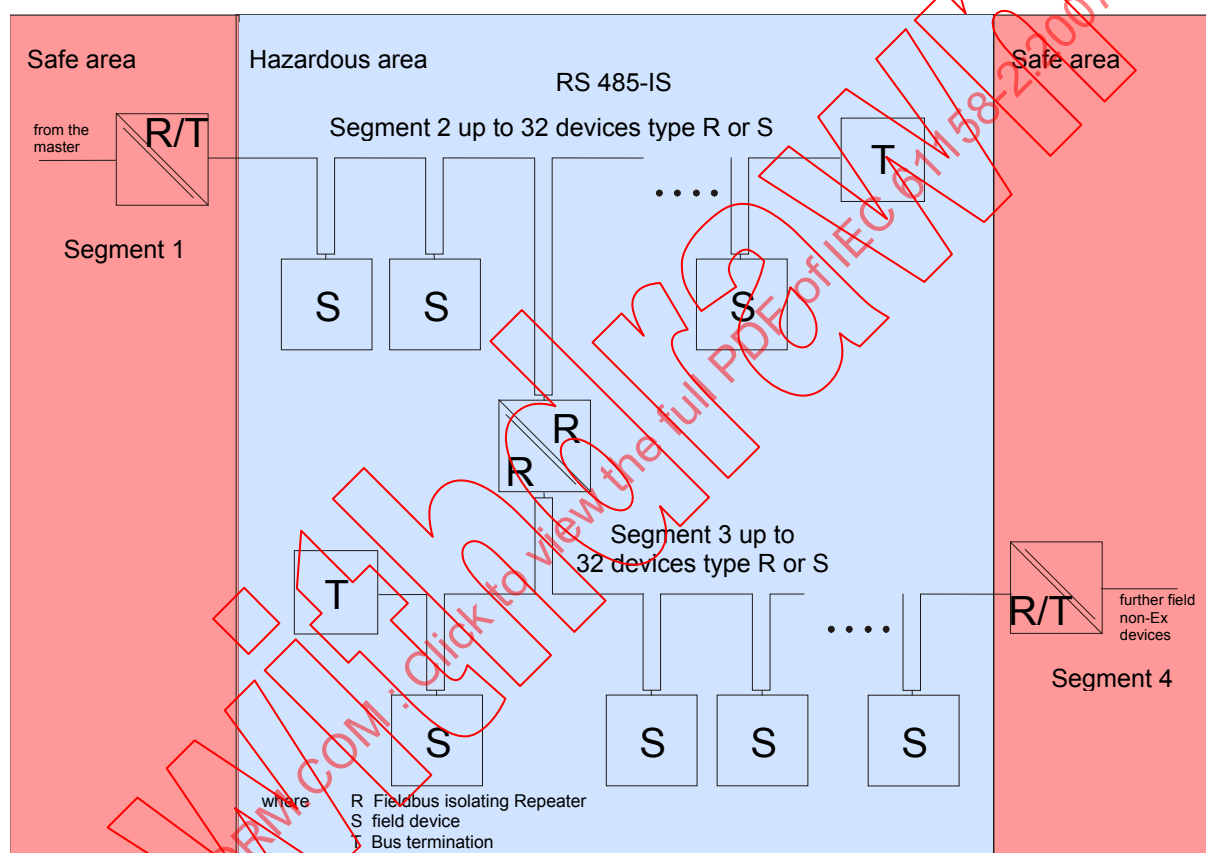


Figure 104 – Topology example extended by repeaters

22.2.2 Medium specifications

22.2.2.1 Connector

The connector is specified in Annex I.2.2.

22.2.2.2 Cable

Table 110 shows the specified cable parameters related to function and intrinsic safety.

Table 110 – Cable specification (function- and safety-related)

Cable parameter	Cable type A (see Note 1)	Limiting safety values
Surge impedance (Ω)	135...165 at a frequency of 3...20 MHz	Not relevant
Working capacitance (nF/km)	≤ 30	Not relevant
Wire diameter (mm)	$> 0,64$	$> 0,1$ single wire for a fine-stranded conductor (see Note 2) $> 0,35$ (see Note 3)
Core cross-sectional area (mm ²)	$> 0,34$	$> 0,096\ 2$ (see Note 3)
Loop resistance (Ω /km)	≤ 110	Not relevant
L/R ratio ($\mu\text{H}/\Omega$)	≤ 15	≤ 15 for the lowest ambient temperature (see Note 4)
Colour of sheath IS	Light blue	If colour is used for marking
Colour of inner cable conductor A (Rx/D/TxD-N)	Green	
Colour inner cable conductor B (Rx/D/TxD-P)	Red	

NOTE 1 In accordance with IEC 60079-14. The cable must fulfil the requirements for cables.

NOTE 2 In accordance with IEC 60079-14. The wire ends of fine-stranded conductors must be protected against separation of the strands, e.g. by means of cable lugs or core end sleeves.

NOTE 3 This minimum value applies for a maximum ambient temperature of 40 °C and the temperature class T6 for a total current in the field bus cable of max. 4,8 A. According to IEC 60079-11 To get information on the ampacity at other ambient temperatures, this must be deduced from the existing requirements. In the case of the RS 485-IS, a maximum current of 4,8 A occurs in the field bus cable. This necessitates a wire cross section of $\geq 0,096\ 2\ \text{mm}^2$ (diameter: $\geq 0,35\ \text{mm}$) for a cable used in T6 and for a maximum ambient temperature of 40 °C. Because the permissible surface temperature of the cable shall not exceed 80 °C in the case of T6, the maximum temperature rise is 40 K for 4,8 A and the above-specified wire cross section. For cables deployed in T4 and higher ambient temperatures than 40 °C, the sum of the ambient temperature and the cable's temperature rise must not exceed 130 °C for a current of 4,8 A. In all cases, the insulation of the cable must be suitable for the maximum expected cable temperatures.

NOTE 4 Cable type A fulfils this requirement for a ambient temperature above –40 °C.

Table 111 shows the permissible maximum cable length depending on the transmission speeds.

Table 111 – Maximum cable length for the different transmission speeds

Item	Unit	Value					
Data rate	kbit/s	9,6	19,2	93,75	187,5	500	1 500
Cable type A	m	1 200	1 200	1 200	1 000	400	200

22.2.2.3 Grounding and shielding rules

NOTE 1 Grounding means permanently connected to earth through a sufficiently low impedance and with sufficient current-carrying capability to prevent voltage build-up which might result in undue hazard to connected equipment or persons. Zero volts (common) lines may be connected to ground where they are galvanically isolated from the fieldbus trunk.

Fieldbus devices shall not connect either conductor of the twisted pair to ground at any point in the network. Signals shall be applied and preserved differentially throughout the network.

NOTE 2 The fieldbus devices should allow d.c. isolation of the cable shield from ground. For intrinsically safe installations the grounding shall be in accordance to IEC 60079-14.

For shielding, see 12.8.6.

22.2.2.4 Bus terminator

The bus cable Type "A" shall be terminated at both ends with R_t . The termination resistor R_t specified in ANSI TIA/EIA RS-485-A shall be complemented by a pulldown resistor R_d (connected to Bus termination ground ISGND) and by a pullup resistor R_u (connected to Bus termination plus ISP), as shown in Figure 105. This supplement forces the differential mode voltage (that is, the voltage between the conductors) to a well-defined value when no station is transmitting (during the idle periods).

The termination of this MAU specification for explosion protection type Ex i differs from the specification of the non-intrinsic safe MAU on account of the modified electrical specification. In this context, the resistance values of the bus termination (see Figure 105) and the modified arrangement of the bus termination (see I.2.2) shall be paid attention when integrated into communication devices or plug connectors.

Each station that is destined to terminate the line (in common with a bus terminator) shall make a internal supply voltage U_+ of $+3,3 \text{ V} \pm 5 \%$ available.

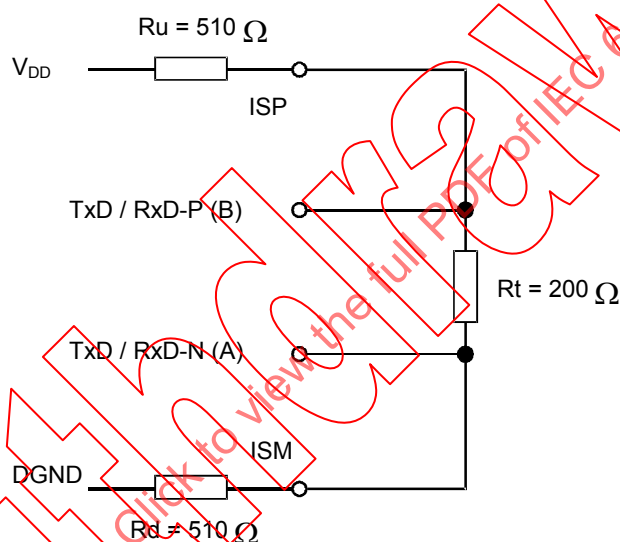


Figure 105 – Bus terminator

22.2.3 Transmission method

22.2.3.1 Bit coding

See 22.1.3.1.

22.2.3.2 Transceiver control

See 22.1.3.2.

22.2.3.3 Signal characteristics

22.2.3.3.1 Signal specification

A typical voltage waveform on the intrinsically safe fieldbus is shown in Figure 106. Three phases are defined in which characteristic signal levels are generated on the bus:

- idle state with V_{ODidle}
- low phase with V_{ODlow}
- high phase with V_{ODhigh}

The noise margin plays a crucial role in the definition of signal levels. The noise margin of a signal level is always the difference between the voltage corresponding to this level and the threshold voltage. The threshold voltage U_{TH} is an attribute of the ANSI TIA/EIA RS-485-A receiver according to ANSI TIA/EIA RS-485-A and is defined in the range of $\pm 0,2$ V. For reliable data transmission the noise margin shall be as large as possible. In the case of the MAU for intrinsically safe fieldbus, a minimum noise margin of 0,2 V shall be assured under "worst case" conditions.

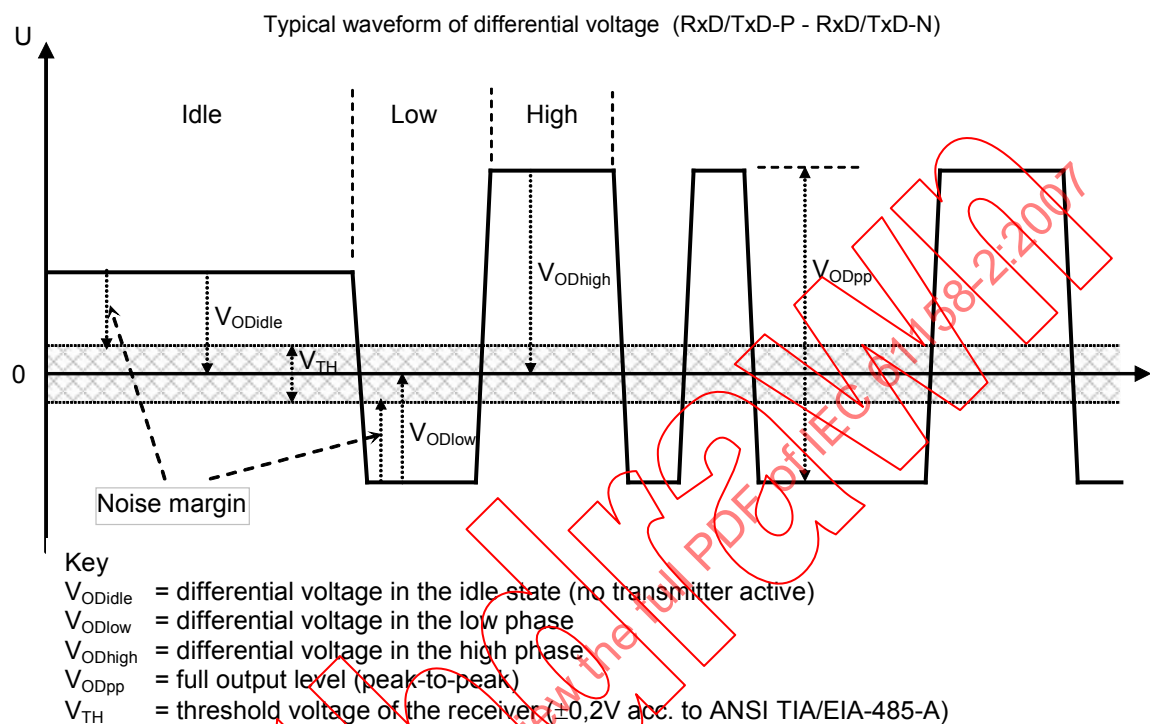


Figure 106 – Waveform of the differential voltage

The parameters listed in Table 112 are mandatory for the communication devices.

Table 112 – Electrical characteristics of the intrinsically safe interface

Parameter	Description	Value	Remark
Minimum idle level	V_{ODidle} [V]	0,50	Only relevant for devices with an integrated or a connectable bus termination
Transmission level on the bus connection (peak-to-peak)	V_{ODss} [V]	$\geq 2,7$	For the worst-case bus configuration and maximum load on the transmitter
Positive and negative transmission level on the bus connection	V_{ODhigh} [V]	$\geq 1,5$	For the worst-case bus configuration and maximum load on the transmitter
	V_{ODlow} [V]	$\leq -1,1$	
Signal level on the receiver input	V_{IDhigh} [V]	$\geq 0,8$	For the worst-case bus configuration
	V_{IDlow} [V]	$\leq -0,4$	
Data transmission rates	kbit/s	9,6; 19,2; 45,45; 93,75; 187,5; 500; 1 500	A field device can be designed with limited data transmission rate
Input impedance (receiver)	R_{IN} [kOhm]	≥ 12	For a device supplied or not supplied
	C_{IN} [pF]	≤ 40	
	L_{IN}	≈ 0	
Supply voltage RS 485 driver and bus termination	V_{DD} [V]	$3,3 \pm 5\%$	

22.2.3.3.2 Test circuits

22.2.3.3.2.1 General

The purpose of these measurements is the verification of the signal levels required by Table 112. The measurements should be performed statically at a low data transmission rate so that the existing reactances, like input capacitances, do not influence the measurement results. Furthermore, the bus cable is substituted by an equivalent resistance corresponding to the loop resistance for the maximum length of the bus cable.

NOTE Only the measurements which are specific for the intrinsically safe interface are described here. Additionally the compliance with ANSI TIA/EIA RS-485-A should be verified.

22.2.3.3.2.2 Measurement of the idle level

This measurement determines the characteristics of the termination resistance. For this reason, this measurement must only be performed on devices under test which are either equipped with a bus termination, see Figure 107, or provide a power supply for an external bus termination (the connections ISM and ISP are realised), see Figure 108.

NOTE The additional components as well as switch and resistors should be connected directly to the DUT terminals (5..15 cm). When a connecting cable must be used, the length of the cable must not exceed 1m.

The measurement is undertaken in two steps:

Step 1: the open circuit voltage V_1 is measured and must be greater than specified in Table 112, line 1.

Step 2: the voltage V_2 is measured under load conditions (330 Ω load). V_2 must be in a specified range ($0,65 \cdot V_1 \leq V_2 \leq 0,72 \cdot V_1$). That guarantees that the termination resistor is in the range 130 Ω to 180 Ω .

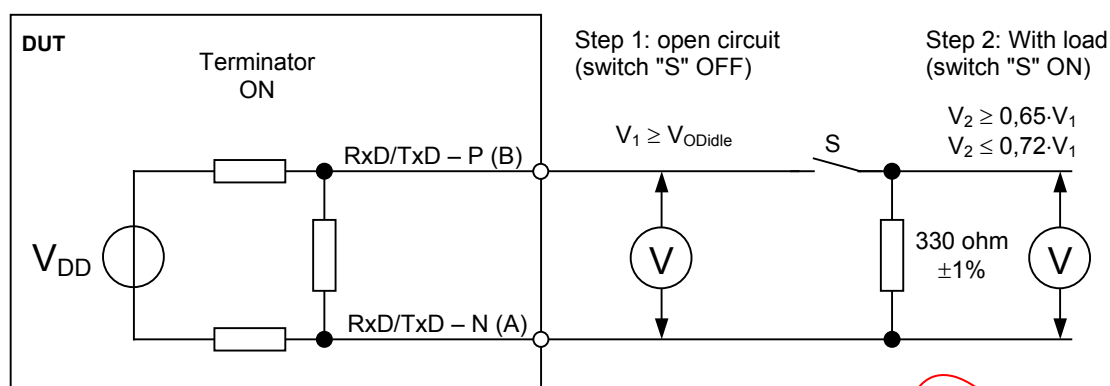


Figure 107 – Test set-up for the measurement of the idle level for devices with an integrated termination resistor

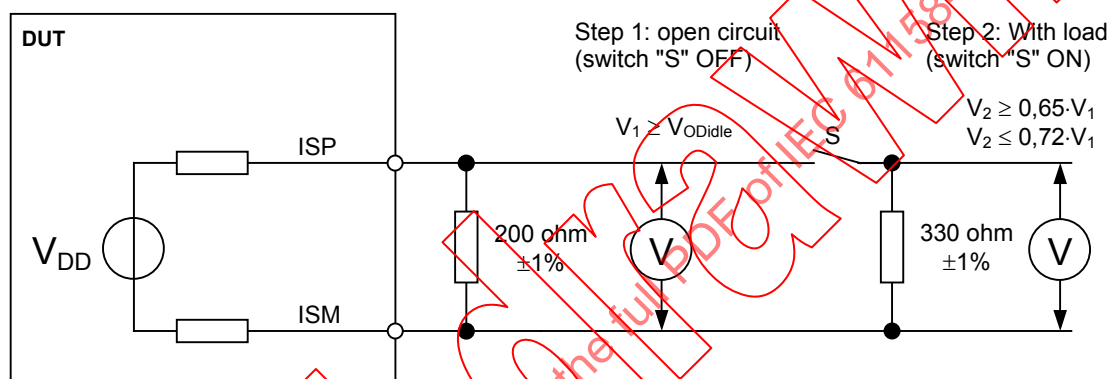


Figure 108 – Test set-up for the measurement of the idle level for devices with a connectable termination resistor

22.2.3.3.2.3 Measurement of the signal levels

For the measurement set-ups below A compliant fieldbus isolating repeater must be employed for connection on the master system. During the test, the intrinsically safe fieldbus shall be terminated at both ends in accordance with 22.2.2.4. If the bus termination is not integrated in the device under test, then an external compliant bus termination shall be used.

NOTE 1 In order to measure the signals on the intrinsically safe fieldbus without external influences, it is necessary to connect an electrically isolated oscilloscope (e.g. a hand-held with a battery supply).

NOTE 2 The additional components as well as resistor and resistor network should be connected as short as possible to the terminals of the DUT and the fieldbus isolating repeater. When a connecting cable must be used, the entire length of the cable(s) must not exceed 2 m. The oscilloscope can be attached to any suitable terminals according to set-up.

The measurement shown in Figure 109 determines the transmission levels on the transmitter connections and for a worst-case load. This is the case for a fieldbus cable length equal to zero. In this case, the output current of the transmitter and consequently the load is at maximum. The rated values for the transmission levels are shown in Table 112, lines 2 and 3.

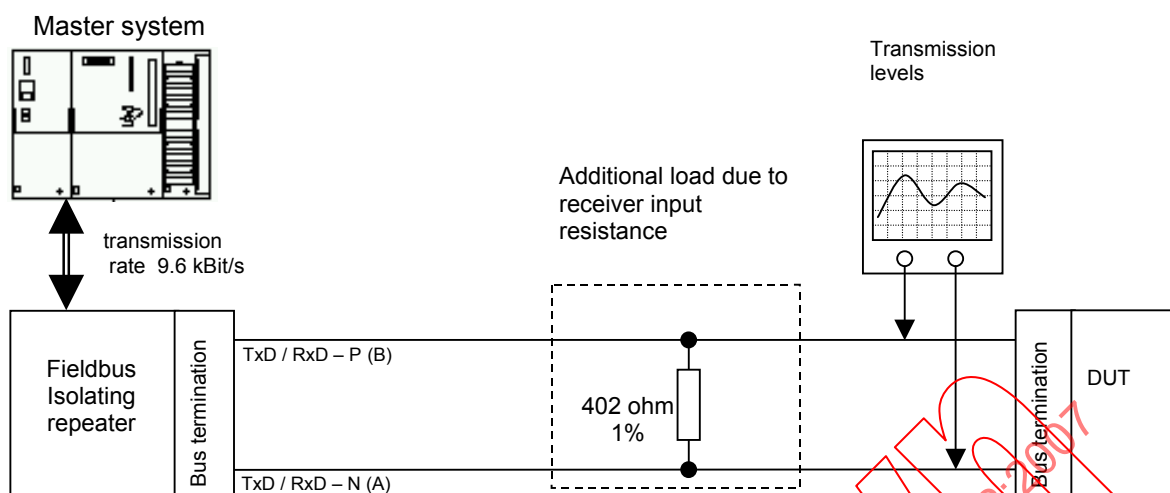


Figure 109 – Test set-up for measurement of the transmission levels

The measurement shown in Figure 110 attempts to verify the capability of the transmitter to generate a sufficient level for every receiver for a worst-case load. For a maximum fieldbus cable length of 1 200 m and additional load, this is the case roughly in the middle of the cable. The measurement values shall fulfill the requirements of Table 112, line 4.

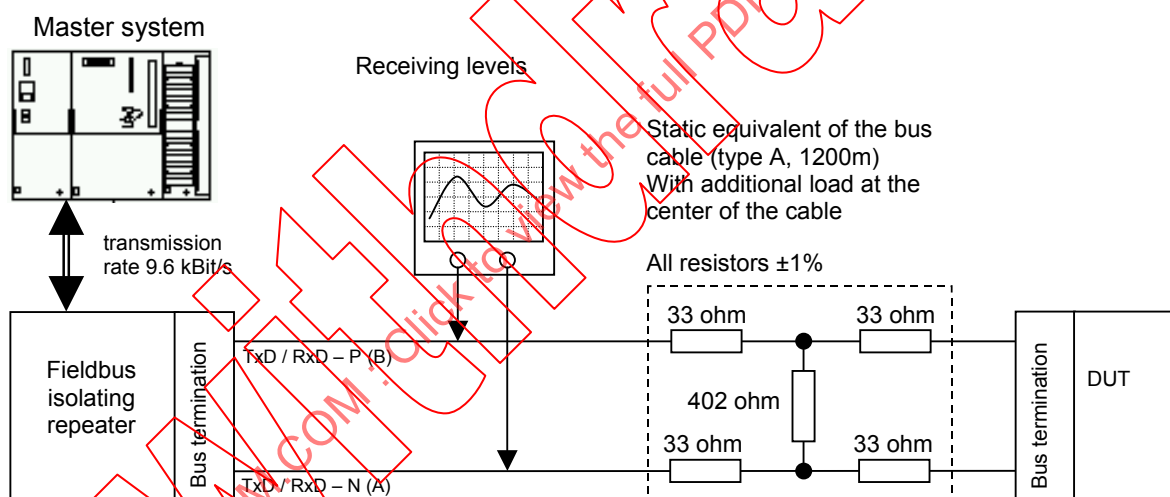


Figure 110 – Test set-up for the measurement of the receiving levels

22.2.4 Intrinsic safety

22.2.4.1 General

This standard does not attempt to list the requirements by which an item of equipment may be certified as intrinsically safe nor does it require equipment to be intrinsically safe. Rather, it seeks to exclude conditions or situations that would prevent intrinsic safety certification.

22.2.4.2 Fieldbus model for intrinsic safety

The intrinsically safe fieldbus is based on a model, in which all devices are active. All devices are supplied from outside and can provide power to the field bus. In an intrinsically safe circuit, only a maximum amount of energy is permissible when considering the inductances and capacitances which exist. This maximum amount of energy is described by the ignition curves.

NOTE 1 The analysis carried out by the PTB (Physikalisch-Technische Bundesanstalt) forms the basis for the intrinsically safe fieldbus." PTB-Mitteilungen, 113 Jahrgang, Heft 2/2003, Die Bewertung der Zündfähigkeit

eigensicherer Stromkreise anhand eines Rechenverfahrens. Abschnitt: Der eigensichere RS 485 Feldbus als Anwendungsbeispiel."

A basic set-up of the fieldbus model is shown in Figure 111. A fieldbus isolating repeater is (usually) located in the non-hazardous area for the safe separation of the intrinsically-safe bus segment from the non-intrinsically-safe bus segment. Other connected communications devices are located in the hazardous area. The bus cable is terminated at both ends by means of an external active bus termination or a bus termination integrated in a field device. All communications devices are supplied by external voltage sources and possess the means of safely limiting the current and voltage on the bus.

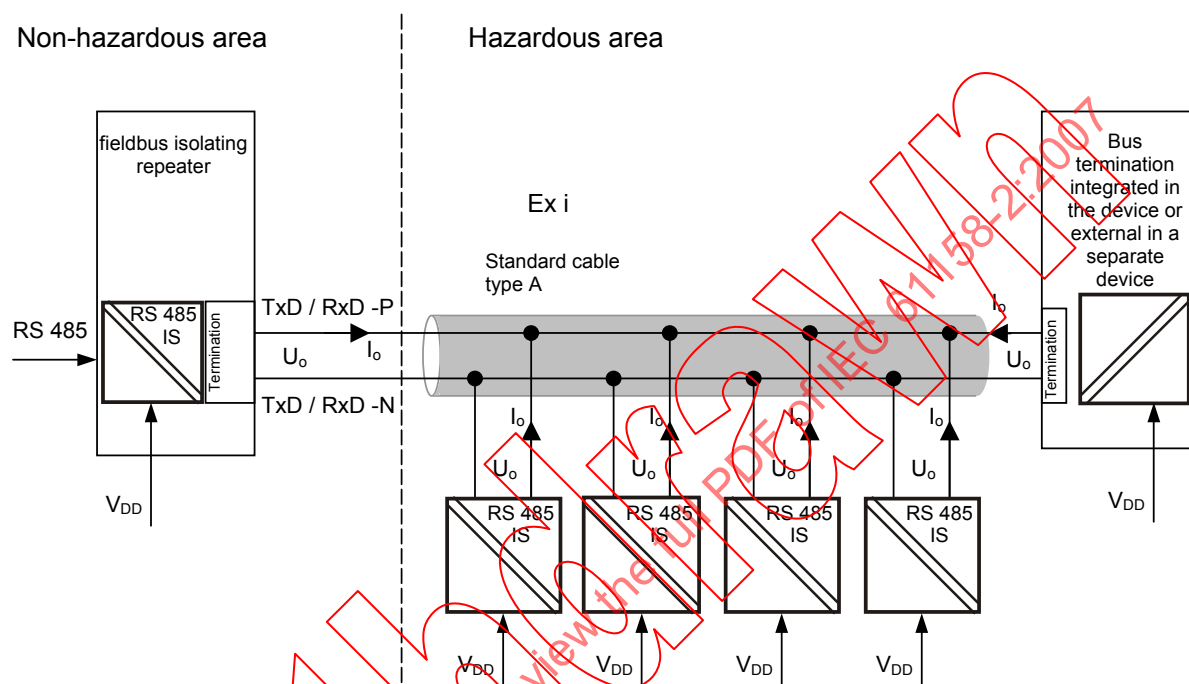


Figure 111 – Fieldbus model for intrinsic safety

NOTE 2 Under certain circumstances, devices which are installed in the hazardous area must be protected with additional explosion measures (e.g. Ex e, d, m in accordance with IEC 60079-0).

22.2.4.3 Model of a communication device

A circuit diagram for the RS 485-IS interface is described in Figure 112. The interface is composed of the components for galvanic isolation, voltage limitation, current limitation and an RS 485 transceiver.

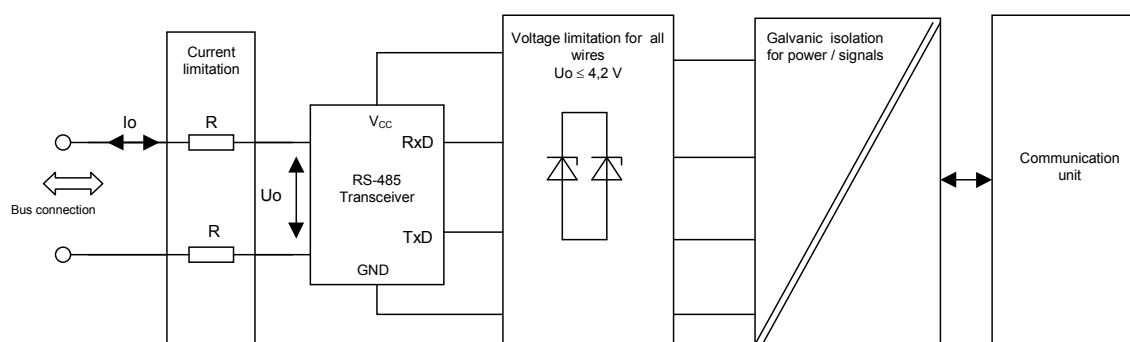


Figure 112 – Communication device model for intrinsic safety

To meet the limit for U_o given in Table 113 all connections to the bus interface (power supply and data lines) must be limited by appropriate voltage limiting components. In this context, the tolerances and the maximum power rating of the components must be taken into account. Under certain circumstances, suitable measures for power limitation should be introduced in the communications unit / power supply.

In all devices connected to the intrinsically safe the bus interface circuit shall be galvanically isolated from all other electrical circuits.

Separation distances and insulation voltages between intrinsically safe circuits and/or non-intrinsically-safe circuits shall meet IEC 60079-11.

NOTE Current limitation is determined by the maximum output voltage and the sum of the internal resistance. The internal resistance is formed by the series resistors of the data lines R_{xD}/T_{xD-N} and R_{xD}/T_{xD-P} and series resistors R_u and R_d for the supply of the bus terminator.

In this context, the tolerances and power ratings of the resistances must also be taken into account. Detailed requirements for the current- and voltage-limiting components are outlined in IEC 60079-11.

22.2.4.4 Maximum safety values

Table 113 shows the safety relevant parameters and their values for the entire fieldbus system.

Table 113 – Maximum safety values

Parameter	Description	Value	Remark
Bus system			
Maximum input voltage	U_i [V]	$ \pm 4,2 $	
Maximum input current	I_i [A]	4,8	The characteristic of the circuit is linear $R_s = U_o/I_o$
Maximum inductance to resistance ratio (see note)	L'/R' [$\mu\text{H}/\Omega$]	15	For the whole operation temperature range of the bus system
Number of devices	N_{TN}	≤ 32	A field device can be designed with limited data transmission rate
Communication Device			
Maximum output voltage	U_o [V]	$ \pm 4,2 $	
Maximum output current	I_o [mA]	149	Total current from wires A, B and supply for bus termination
Maximum input voltage	U_i [V]	$ \pm 4,2 $	
Maximum internal inductance	L_i [H]	0	No concentrated inductances are permissible along the fieldbus
Maximum internal capacitance	C_i [nF]	N/A	Insignificant for safety
External active bus termination			
Maximum output voltage	U_o [V]	$ \pm 4,2 $	
Maximum output current	I_o [mA]	16	
Maximum input voltage	U_i [V]	$ \pm 4,2 $	
Maximum internal inductance	L_i [H]	0	No concentrated inductances are permissible along the fieldbus
Maximum internal capacitance	C_i [nF]	N/A	Insignificant for safety
NOTE For a voltage less than 10 V, the cable capacitance does not cause any additional danger. However, for functional reasons, the cable capacitance for the bus cable is limited to $C < 40 \text{ nF/km}$.			

NOTE For functional reasons, the current limitation resistance should be subdivided symmetrically.

22.2.4.5 Fieldbus isolating repeater

In order to create or connect intrinsically safe fieldbus segments, fieldbus isolating repeaters (see Figure 103 and Figure 104) are required. The intrinsically safe fieldbus interfaces of these devices must also be implemented in accordance with this MAU specification. In particular, the maximum safety data (see 22.2.4.4) and the galvanic isolation from all other circuits (see 22.2.1) shall be considered from the safety point of view.

The fieldbus isolating repeater shall be designed as associated apparatus. If the fieldbus isolating repeaters are to be installed in the hazardous area, additional explosion-protection measures are necessary.

23 Type 3: Medium attachment unit: asynchronous transmission, optical medium

23.1 Characteristic features of optical data transmission

Table 114 shows the characteristic features of an optical data transmission.

Table 114 – Characteristic features

Item	Feature
Transfer medium	Fiber optic cable (FOC) manufactured from quartz or plastic
Characteristics	- Large range, independent of the transmission speed - Insensitivity to electromagnetic disturbance - Galvanic isolation between the connected nodes - Non-reacting connection – even to existing implementations - Configuration of the optical components with economical, standard components
Network structure	Star, ring, line and mixed topologies (tree) Connection to electrical network segments
Network components	Active star coupler Repeater Opto-electrical converter } with or without retiming
Data rates	9,6 kbit/s; 19,2 kbit/s; 45,45 kbit/s; 93,75 kbit/s; 187,5 kbit/s; 500 kbit/s; 1,5 Mbit/s; 3 Mbit/s; 6 Mbit/s; 12 Mbit/s
Network range and number of nodes	Dependent on the number and type of network components used EXAMPLE 1: Network segment with 1 active star coupler and glass fiber optic cable (multimode) : - 3 400m (independent of the number of nodes). EXAMPLE 2: Network segment with 1 active star coupler and plastic fiber optic cable: - 88 m (independent of the number of nodes). NOTE: Increasing of ranges and numbers of nodes is possible through linking network segments.

Figure 113 shows the optical MAU beside an ANSI TIA/EIA RS-485-A MAU. This means that the optical MAU shall be connected over a DL-Ph interface to a DLL in the same manner as an ANSI TIA/EIA RS-485-A MAU. The mentioned interface is described in 5.4.2.

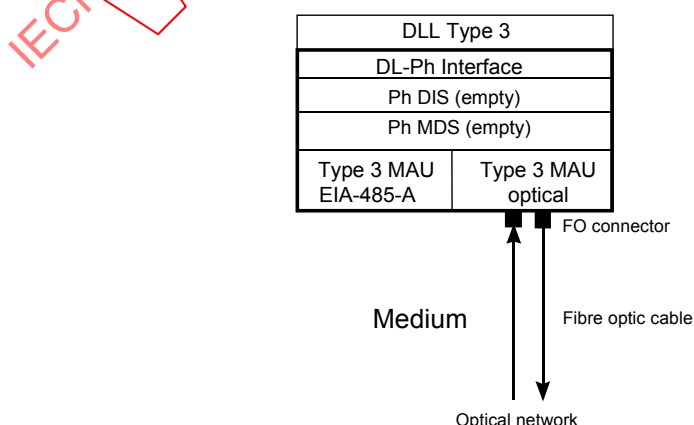


Figure 113 – Connection to the optical network

23.2 Basic characteristics of an optical data transmission medium

An optical data transmission medium is characterized by:

- Insensitivity to electromagnetic interference, i.e.:
 - a) no cross talk between different fiber optic signal lines,
 - b) immunity to interference injection from and to electrical lines,
 - c) immunity to interference from electromagnetic fields which can occur e.g. when switching large electrical loads.
- Galvanic isolation between the connected nodes, i.e.:
 - a) no equalizing currents between differing ground potentials
 - b) no special lightning protection measures are required for the transmission link.
- The capability to use fiber optics to bridge large distances at high transmission speeds.
- Simple and economical installation of shorter networks based on plastic fibers.
- Low weight.
- No corrosion.
- Simplified standard cabling of buildings through identical reference fibers for many other communication standards.

23.3 Optical network

Significant components of the optical MAU of a node are the electro-optical converters that interface the electrical part of the MAU and an optical network medium.

An optical transmitter converts electrical signals into optical ones and feeds these signals into the optical medium. Conversely, an optical receiver converts the received optical signals from the optical medium into electrical signals.

Figure 114 shows the principal structure of an optical network.

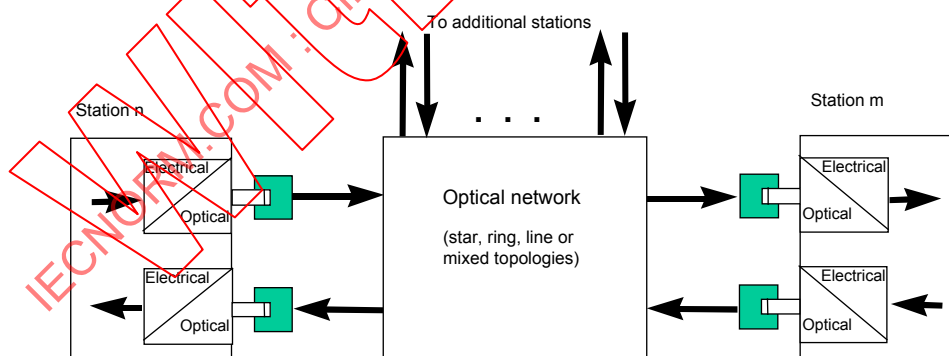


Figure 114 – Principle structure of optical networking

Electrical-optical converters with a specific signal level budget that take into account of the physical differences between glass and plastic fibers are specified for each fiber type.

The user can “consume” the signal level budget as attenuation along the optical link.

23.4 Standard optical link

The standard optical link is a theoretical construction that is used to specify the admissible range of signal levels and signal distortions, see Figure 115.

Network topologies of any complexity can be calculated from the standard optical link. The standard optical link consists of

- an electro-optical converter (transmitter) that converts an electrical signal into an optical signal which lies within the admissible limits specified by the signal template (see Figure 116);
- a passive optical link consisting of a fiber optic cable and characterized by signal amplitude attenuation and signal timing distortion;
- an opto-electrical converter (receiver) that detects the received optical signal as described in 23.7.3 and converts this signal to an electrical signal with characteristics specified in 23.8.

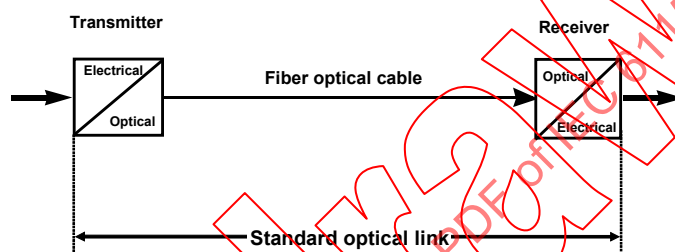


Figure 115 – Definition of the standard optical link

23.5 Network structures built from a combination of standard optical links

According to the definition above, a standard optical link forms an end-to-end connection. Standard optical links can be interconnected (chained) to build complex networks by interconnecting the electric interfaces. Chaining rules are specified in 23.8.3.

The user can thus specify the network structure by choosing the signal distribution to best meet the requirements of the system to be networked.

The following topologies are supported: star, ring or linear topologies, as well as their combination to form a mixed topology. Coupling of optical and electrical segments of the network (such as ANSI TIA/EIA RS-485-A MAU) is both possible and permissible.

23.6 Bit coding

NRZ bit coding (non return to zero) from the DLL is represented with optical signals as follows:

- binary "1" (DL_symbol = "ONE") means no light on the FOC,
- binary "0" (DL_symbol = "ZERO") means light on the FOC.

The idle state (DL_symbol = "SILENCE") has the "1" binary state, i.e. no light.

23.7 Optical signal level

23.7.1 General

Taking into account the physical differences between glass and plastic fibers, a specific level budget is applicable for both fiber types.

23.7.2 Characteristics of optical transmitters

The transmitted power is specified in dBm.

The specified levels are defined at the end of a 1m long glass fiber optic cable or a 0,5 m long plastic fiber optic cable and measured with a large detector area. Cladding modes must not be included in the measured value. The fiber optic cable must be connected to the transmitter using the connector specified in 23.10. That is, the attenuation of the connector at the optical transmitter is included in the measured value.

The signal level tolerances are applicable for the entire operating temperature range (ambient temperature of the transmitter element).

All values specified in the following Table 115 to Table 118 are based on the shape of the transmit signal specified by the signal template in Figure 116. The technical terms used in the table (peak wavelength, etc.) are explained in IEC 60050-731.

Table 115 – Characteristics of optical transmitters for multi-mode glass fiber

Quantity	Value	Unit
Peak wavelength	790 to 910	nm
Spectral width	≤ 75	nm
Operating temperature	0 to 70	°C
Test fiber (graded index) (see note)	62,5/125	μm
NA (numerical aperture of the test fiber)	$0,275 \pm 0,015$	
P _{Smax} "0" (max. transmit power for binary "0")	-10	dBm
P _{Smin} "0" (min. transmit power for binary "0")	-15	dBm
P _{Smax} "1" (max. transmit power for binary "1")	-40	dBm
P _{Sost} (max. overshoot, transmit power for binary "0")	-8,8	dBm
NOTE Test fiber as specified in IEC 60793, Type A1b.		

Table 116 – Characteristics of optical transmitters for single-mode glass fiber

Quantity	Value	Unit
Peak wavelength	1 260 to 1 380	nm
Spectral width	≤ 120	nm
Operating temperature	0 to 70	°C
Test fiber (graded index) (see note)	9/125	μm
NA (numerical aperture of the test fiber)	$0,113 \pm 0,02$	
P _{Smax} "0" (max. transmit power for binary "0")	-10	dBm
P _{Smin} "0" (min. transmit power for binary "0")	-20	dBm
P _{Smax} "1" (max. transmit power for binary "1")	-40	dBm
P _{Sost} (max. overshoot, tx power for "0")	-8,8	dBm
NOTE Test fiber as specified in IEC 60793, Type B1.1, B3.		

Table 117 – Characteristics of optical transmitters for plastic fiber

Quantity	Value		Unit
Peak wavelength	640 to 675		nm
Spectral width	≤ 35		nm
Operating temperature	0 to 70		°C
Test fiber (graded index) (see Note)	980/1 000		μm
NA (numerical aperture of the test fiber)	0,5 ± 0,15		
Transmitter power level	Standard	Increased	
P _{Smax} "0" (max. transmit power for binary "0")	-5,0	0	dBm
P _{Smin} "0" (min. transmit power for binary "0")	-11	-6	dBm
P _{Smax} "1" (max. transmit power for binary "1")	-42	-42	dBm
P _{Sost} (max. overshoot, transmit power for binary "0")	-4,3	2,3	dBm
NOTE Test fiber as specified in IEC 60793, Type A4a.			

Table 118 – Characteristics of optical transmitters for 200/230 μm glass fiber

Quantity	Value	Unit
Peak wavelength	640 to 675	nm
Spectral width	≤ 35	nm
Operating temperature	0 to 70	°C
Test fiber (stepped index) (see Note)	200/230	μm
NA (numerical aperture of the test fiber)	0,37 ± 0,02	
P _{Smax} "0" (max. transmit power for binary "0")	-8	dBm
P _{Smin} "0" (min. transmit power for binary "0")	-17	dBm
P _{Smax} "1" (max. transmit power for binary "1")	-44	dBm
P _{Sost} (max. overshoot, transmit power for binary "0")	-6,8	dBm
NOTE Test fiber in IEC 60793, Type A3c: NA = 0,4 ± 0,04.		

23.7.3 Characteristics of optical receivers

The input sensitivity of receivers is also specified in dBm see Table 119 to Table 122 The input sensitivity is measured at the end of the specified reference fiber with a large detector area. Cladding modes shall not be included in the measured value.

The signal level tolerances are applicable for the entire operating temperature range (ambient temperature of the receiver element). They shall be maintained throughout the specified lifetime of the receive element. The shape of the receive signal is based on the shape of the transmit signal shown in the signal template in Figure 116.

The receiver shall tolerate an overshoot of the input signal at the beginning of a binary "0" pulse. However, the receiver shall not require an overshoot, e.g. to maintain a required signal distortion.

Table 119 – Characteristics of optical receivers for multi-mode glass fiber

Quantity	Value	Unit
Peak wavelength	790 to 910	nm
Operating temperature	0 to 70	°C
P _E max“0” (max. receive power for binary “0”)	-10	dBm
P _E min“0” (min. receive power for binary “0”)	-24	dBm
P _E max“1” (max. receive power for binary “1”)	-42	dBm

Table 120 – Characteristics of optical receivers for single-mode glass fiber

Quantity	Value	Unit
Peak wavelength	1 260 to 1 380	nm
Operating temperature	0 to 70	°C
P _E max“0” (max. receive power for binary “0”)	-10	dBm
P _E min“0” (min. receive power for binary “0”)	-27	dBm
P _E max“1” (max. receive power for binary “1”)	-40	dBm

Table 121 – Characteristics of optical receivers for plastic fiber

Quantity	Value		Unit
Peak wavelength	640 to 675		nm
Operating temperature	0 to 70		°C
Receiver for tx performance level	Standard	Increased	
P _E max“0” (max. receive power for binary “0”)	-5	0	dBm
P _E min“0” (min. receive power for binary “0”)	-20		dBm
P _E max“1” (max. receive power for binary “1”)	-42		dBm

Table 122 – Characteristics of optical receivers for 200/230 µm glass fiber

Quantity	Value	Unit
Peak wavelength	640 to 675	nm
Operating temperature	0 to 70	°C
P _E max“0” (max. receive power for binary “0”)	-8	dBm
P _E min“0” (min. receive power for binary “0”)	-22	dBm
P _E max“1” (max. receive power for binary “1”)	-44	dBm

23.8 Temporal signal distortion

23.8.1 General

The following sections describe the signal distortion due to each of the elements in the transmission link.

Evaluation of the electrical digital signals always takes place at the intersection with 50 % of the signal amplitude.

23.8.2 Signal shape at the electrical input of the optical transmitter

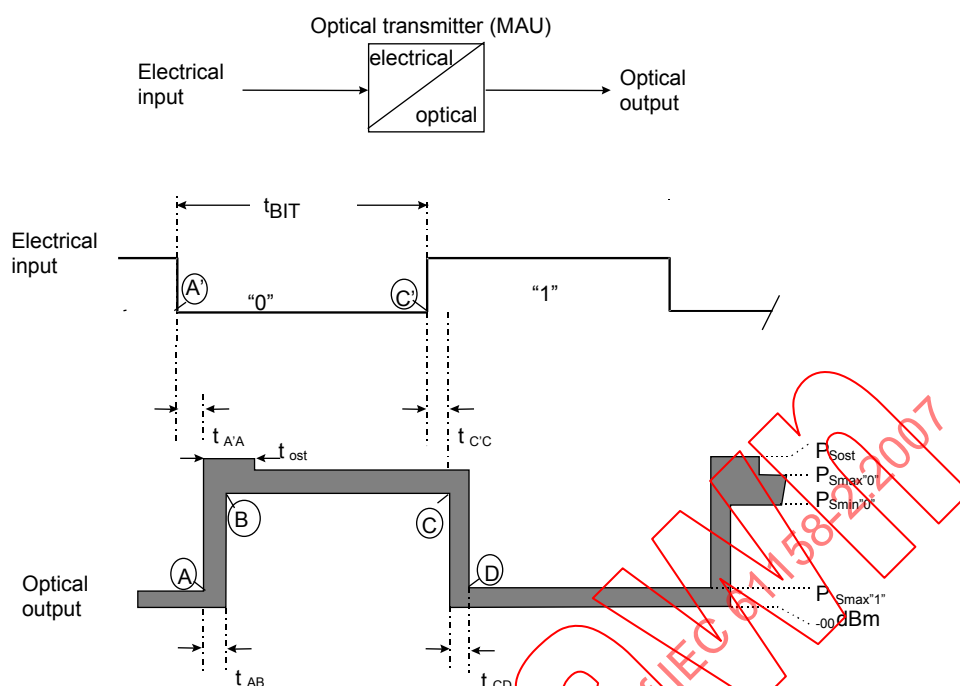
The permissible signal distortion at the electrical input of the optical transmitter of a station or a component with retiming is shown in Table 123.

Table 123 – Permissible signal distortion at the electrical input of the optical transmitter

Signal	Limits for data rates < 1,5 Mbit/s	Limits for data rates ≥ 1,5 Mbit/s (Note 1)
t_{BIT} (Note 2)	$1 / \text{Data\_rate} \times (1 \pm 0,3 \%)$	$1 / \text{Data\_rate} \times (1 \pm 0,03 \%)$
t_{SBIT} (only for stop bit) (Note 3)	$t_{BIT} \times (1 \pm 6,25 \%)$	
NOTE 1 Data rate is the nominal data rate specified in Table 114. NOTE 2 t_{BIT} is the time, which elapses during the transmission of one bit. It is equivalent to the reciprocal value of the transmission rate. NOTE 3 t_{SBIT} is the extended tolerance for the permissible bit duration in the optical network that applies exclusively to the transmitted stop bit. This extension of the tolerance allows repeaters with retiming to equalize deviations in the receive and transmit clocks.		

23.8.3 Signal distortion due to the optical transmitter

To meet the specified requirements, the transmit signal of the optical transmitter shall be within the shaded section of the signal template in Figure 116, with parameters as given in Table 124.



where

t_{ost} = the maximum duration that the maximum optical transmit power can be exceeded dynamically.

t_{AB} = the rising edge of the optical signal must pass through $P_{Smax'1'}$ to $P_{Smin'0'}$ within this time

t_{CD} the falling edge of the optical signal must pass through $P_{Smin'0'}$ to $P_{Smax'1'}$ within this time.

$t_{A'A}$ the shortest duration signal delay due to the electro-optical converter for a level change from "1" to "0" (rising optical edge).

$t_{C'C}$ the shortest duration signal delay due to the electro-optical converter for a level change from "0" to "1" (falling optical edge).

Figure 116 – Signal template for the optical transmitter

The optical transmitter shall meet the template specifications at $\leq 1,5$ Mbit/s and 3 Mbit/s to 12 Mbit/s as shown in Table 124.

Table 124 – Permissible signal distortion due to the optical transmitter

Time	$\leq 1,5$ Mbit/s	3 Mbit/s to 12 Mbit/s	Unit
t_{ost}	200	20	ns
t_{AB}	40	25	ns
t_{CD}	95	25	ns
$t_{A'A} - t_{C'C}$	65	5	ns

23.8.4 Signal distortion due to the optical receiver

The maximum distortion of the receiver's electrical output signal compared to the optical input signal is specified in Table 125. This applies to the entire input level range specified in 23.7.3.

Table 125 – Permissible signal distortion due to the optical receiver

Time	≤ 1,5 Mbit/s	3 Mbit/s to 12 Mbit/s	Unit
$t_{dis"0"}$ (see note)	-20 to 95	-25 to 25	ns
NOTE $t_{dis"0"}$ describes the permissible limits of the bit duration distortion for a "0" bit.			

23.8.5 Signal influence due to coupling components

Coupling components, such as active star couplers, ANSI TIA/EIA RS-485-A/optical-MAU converters or repeaters contain internal logic that influences the propagated signal beyond that due to the electro-optical converter that was described above.

The maximum influence shall be within the limits specified in Table 126.

Table 126 – Permissible signal influence due to internal electronic circuits of a coupling component

Time	≤ 1,5 Mbit/s	3 Mbit/s to 12 Mbit/s	Unit
t_{log} (see Note 1)	-0 to 10	-0 to 10	ns
t_{delay} (see Note 2)	≤ 3 t_{BIT}	≤ 8 t_{BIT}	ns
NOTE 1 t_{log} describes the maximum permissible signal distortion due to the internal logic of a coupling component (for example an active star coupler) with no retiming. This factor must be considered when chaining standard optical links and is already taken into account in Table 127.			
NOTE 2 t_{delay} describes the maximum permissible signal delay between any input and output when passing through a coupling component (for example an active star coupler).			

23.8.6 Chaining standard optical links

If the network consists of standard optical links connected in series (chaining), the sum of the distortions of individual links shall not exceed the overall permissible bit duration distortion of a node interface, which is 25 % (≤ 1,5 Mbit/s) or 30 % (12 Mbit/s).

Since the distortions of the electro-optical converters represent absolute values, they become increasingly important at higher data transmission rates.

If standard optical links are chained without a retiming device, the calculated maximum number of links between two nodes and/or retiming components shall not exceed the values shown in Table 127.

Table 127 – Maximum chaining of standard optical links without retiming

Data rate	Number of links in series	Number of links in series
	(≤1,5 Mbit/s, see Note 1)	(3 Mbit/s to 12 Mbit/s, see Note 2)
12 Mbit/s	–	1
6 Mbit/s	–	2
3 Mbit/s	–	4
1,5 Mbit/s	1	8
500 kbit/s	3	24
187,5 kbit/s	8	64
93,75 kbit/s	16	128
45,45 kbit/s	33	264
19,2 kbit/s	78	625
9,6 kbit/s	156	1 250
NOTE 1 Devices designed for max. data transmission rate of 1,5 Mbit/s.		
NOTE 2 Devices designed for max. data transmission rate of 12 Mbit/s.		

Any required degree of chaining is possible if the coupling components re-establish the timing between the optical links (retiming).

23.9 Bit error rate

A maximum bit error rate (BER) of 10^{-9} is permitted at the electrical output of a standard optical link.

23.10 Connectors for fiber optic cable

The connectors are specified in Annex I.2.2.

23.11 Redundancy in optical transmission networks

A redundant optical link analogous to the Type 3 electrical transmission technology is also possible. The functional principle is described in Annex J.

24 Type 4: Medium attachment unit: RS-485

24.1 General

The RS-485 MAU can be used to connect up to 125 fieldbus devices on the same cable. The length of the cable can be up to 1 200 m, and the Baud rate can be 9 600, 19 200, 38 400 or 76 800.

24.2 Overview of the services

The MDS-MAU interface makes services available to connect the MDS with a corresponding MAU. The TxS and RxS services are defined as logical signals that the MAU sublayer directly converts into physical signals. The TxE service is defined as a logical signal that is used internally in the MAU. The services of the RS-485 MDS-MAU interface are shown in Table 128.

Table 128 – Services of the MDS-MAU interface, RS-485, Type 4

Signal name	Mnemonic	Direction
Transmit Signal	TxS	To MAU
Transmit Enable	TxE	To MAU
Receive Signal	RxS	From MAU

24.3 Description of the services

24.3.1 Transmit signal (TxS)

This service transmits the PhPDU from the MDS to the MAU, where it shall be transmitted on to the medium if Transmit Enable (TxE) is set to logic 1 (high level).

24.3.2 Transmit enable (TxE)

The Transmit Enable service (TxE) shall provide the MDS with the facility to enable the MAU to transmit. TxE shall be set to logic 1 (high level) by the MDS immediately before the transmission begins, and to logic 0 (low level) minimum 3, maximum 10 bit periods after transmission ends.

24.3.3 Receive signal (RxS)

This service transmits the PhPDU from the MAU to the MDS.

24.4 Network

24.4.1 General

This MAU operates in a network that consists of the following components:

- cable;
- connectors;
- devices (containing at least one communication element).

24.4.2 Topology

This MAU shall operate in a bus structure organized as a physical ring without termination. Up to 125 fieldbus devices are connected directly or via stubs of maximum length 2 m. The total length of the cable shall not exceed 1 200 m.

24.5 Electrical specification

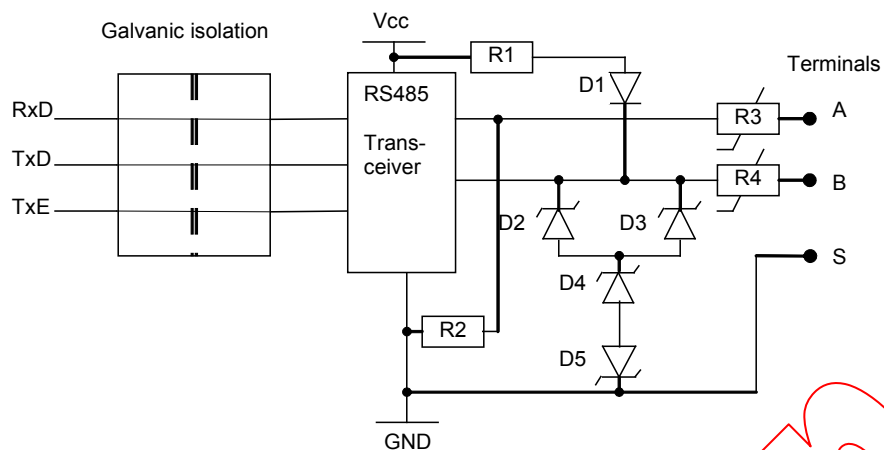
The voltage levels of the transmitter and receiver can be taken from ANSI TIA/EIA-485-A.

24.6 Time response

The time response of the transmitter and receiver can be taken from ANSI TIA/EIA-485-A.

24.7 Interface to the transmission medium

A recommended circuit for coupling to the transmission medium is shown in Figure 117.



Component values:

R1, R2 15 k Ω

R3, R4 PTC, max 13 Ω ; hold current 100 mA

D1 100 mA small signal diode

D2, D3, D4, D5 3.9 V / 1 W Voltage regulator diode

Figure 117 – Recommended interface circuit

24.8 Specification of the transmission medium

24.8.1 Cable connectors

Normally, fieldbus devices are equipped with screw terminals marked A, B and S for shield.

24.8.2 Cable

A shielded twisted pair cable with conductors with minimum 0,22 mm² cross section and a characteristic impedance of 100 to 120 Ω .

25 Type 4: Medium attachment unit: RS-232

25.1 General

The RS-232 MAU can be used to connect two fieldbus devices (point-to-point). The devices may be connected directly with an RS-232 cable, or can be connected through for example an external or a built-in modem or radio transmitter. Therefore, signal levels, cable and connectors are not defined for this MAU. Depending on selected medium, the baud rate can be 9 600, 19 200, 38 400, 76 800 or 230 400.

If two devices are connected directly with an RS-232 cable, signal levels and timing shall follow the recommendations in ANSI TIA/EIA-232-F.

25.2 Overview of the services

The MDS-MAU interface makes services available to connect the MDS with a corresponding MAU. The TxS and RxS services are defined as logical signals that the MAU sublayer directly converts into physical signals. The RTS and CTS services are defined as logical signals that are used internally in the MAU. The services of the RS-232 MDS-MAU interface are shown in Table 129.

Table 129 – Services of the MDS-MAU interface, RS-232, Type 4

Signal name	Mnemonic	Direction
Transmit signal	TxS	to MAU
Receive signal	RxS	from MAU
Request-to-send	RTS	to MAU
Clear-to-send	CTS	from MAU

25.3 Description of the services

25.3.1 Transmit signal (TxS)

This service transmits the PhPDU from the MDS to the MAU, where it shall be transmitted on to the medium.

25.3.2 Receive signal (RxS)

This service transmits the PhPDU from the MAU to the MDS.

25.3.3 Request-to-send (RTS)

This service can be used to activate the transmitting part of the MAU, or can be used as a local handshake signal between MDS and MAU. If this is not required, the RTS signal can be locally looped directly to CTS.

25.3.3.1 Clear-to-send (CTS)

This service can be used to indicate that the transmitting part of the MAU is activated, or can be used as a local handshake signal between MDS and MAU. If this is not required, the RTS signal can be locally looped directly to CTS.

26 Type 6: *This clause has been removed*

NOTE This clause is a placeholder in this edition to minimize the disruption to existing national and multi-national standards and consortia documents that reference the clause numbering of the prior edition.

27 Type 8: Medium attachment unit: twisted-pair wire medium

27.1 MAU signals

A MAU of an outgoing and incoming interface is shown in Figure 118 and Figure 119.

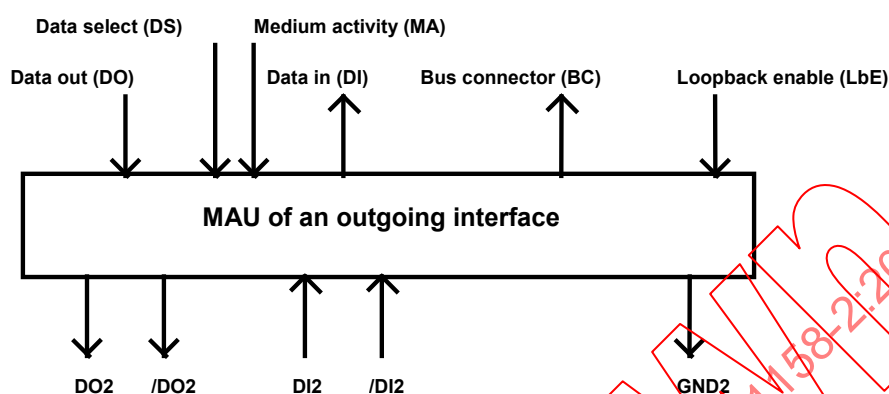


Figure 118 – MAU of an outgoing interface

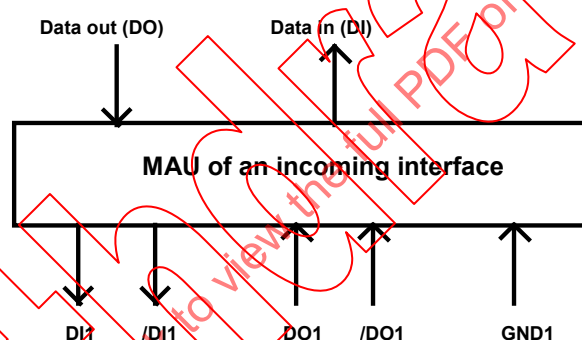


Figure 119 – MAU of an incoming interface

27.2 Transmission bit rate dependent quantities

Four bit rates are defined for the twisted pair wire medium attachment unit (MAU). A given MAU shall support at least one of these bit rates. Table 130 defines the bit rates and bit rate dependent quantities.

Table 130 – Bit rate dependent quantities twisted pair wire medium MAU

Quantity	Value				Unit
Nominal bit rate (see note)	0,5	2	8	16	Mbit/s
Maximum deviation from bit rate	± 0,1 %	± 0,1 %	± 0,1 %	± 0,1 %	—
Nominal bit duration (T)	2 000	500	125	62,5	ns
Minimum remote bus length	0	0	0	0	m
Maximum remote bus length	400	150	125	100	m
Maximum transmitted bit cell jitter	± 240	± 60	± 15	± 7,5	ns
NOTE Average transmission bit rate for 13 bits.					

27.3 Network

27.3.1 General

A twisted-pair wire medium MAU operates in a network that consists of the following components:

- cable;
- connectors;
- Electrical isolation;
- devices (with at least one communication element).

27.3.2 Topology

The twisted-pair wire medium MAU shall operate in one remote bus with one further device. A remote bus link (see Figure 120) consists of two point-to-point connections. The connections are unidirectional. Thus each MAU has one transmitter and one receiver.

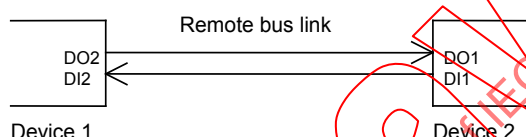


Figure 120 – Remote bus link

A remote bus link shall be between 0 and the maximum length for a given bit rate (see Table 130).

27.4 Electrical specification

The voltage levels of the transmitter and receiver shall be taken from ANSI TIA/EIA-422-B.

27.5 Time response

The time response of the transmitter and the receiver shall be taken from ANSI TIA/EIA-422-B.

27.6 Interface to the transmission medium

27.6.1 General

The coupling to the transmission medium is effected via one incoming (optional) and one or several outgoing interfaces which are independent of the medium (see Figure 121).

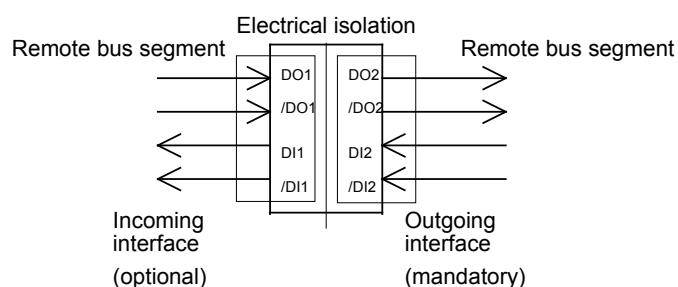


Figure 121 – Interface to the transmission medium

27.6.2 Incoming interface

The incoming interface comprises five signal lines (see Table 131) for the connection to the network. These signal lines have to be electrically isolated from the device. The isolation voltage shall amount to ≥ 500 V (direct voltage).

Table 131 – Incoming interface signals

Short name	Name
DO1	Receive data line +
/DO1	Receive data line -
DI1	Send data line +
/DI1	Send data line -
GND1	Ground line

27.6.3 Outgoing interface

The outgoing interface comprises five signal lines (see Table 132) for the connection to the network.

Table 132 – Outgoing interface signals

Short name	Name
DO2	Send data line +
/DO2	Send data line -
DI2	Receive data line +
/DI2	Receive data line -
GND2	Ground line

27.7 Specification of the transmission medium

27.7.1 Cable connectors

If used, the 9-position subminiature D connectors shall use a standard connector pin assignment (see M.1.1).

Field termination elements, such as screw-clamp or flat-type connectors and fixed connectors, can also be used. In this case the connector pin assignment given in M.1.2 should be used.

27.7.2 Cable

A shielded cable with two twisted cable pairs is to be used as a bus cable. The shielding is to improve the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). The remote bus cable should at least fulfil the requirements indicated in Table 133.

Table 133 – Remote bus cable characteristics

Characteristic quantity (20 °C)	Value	Test method
Number of wires (twisted pairs)	3 x 2, twisted pair	
Cross section	Min. 0,20 mm ²	
Direct current conductor resistance/100 m	Max. 9,6 Ω	IEC 60189-1, 5.1
Characteristic impedance	120Ω ± 20 % at f = 0,064 MHz 100 Ω ± 15 Ω at f > 1 MHz	IEC 61156-1, 3.3.6
Dielectric strength		
- Conductor/conductor	1 kV _{rms} , 1 min	IEC 60189-1, 5.2
- Conductor/shield	1 kV _{rms} , 1 min	
Insulation resistance (after dielectric strength test)	Min 150 MΩ for a cable of 1 km in length	IEC 60189-1, 5.3
Maximum transfer impedance		
- at 30 MHz	250 mΩ/m	IEC 60096-1
Mutual capacitance (at 800 Hz)	Max. 60 nF for a cable of 1 km in length	IEC 60189-1, 5.4
Min. near end cross talk loss (NEXT) for a cable of 100 m		IEC 61156-1, 3.3.4
- at 0,772 MHz	61 dB	
- at 1 MHz	59 dB	
- at 2 MHz	55 dB	
- at 4 MHz	50 dB	
- at 8 MHz	46 dB	
- at 10 MHz	44 dB	
- at 16 MHz	41 dB	
- at 20 MHz	40 dB	
Max. attenuation for a cable of 100 m		IEC 61156-1, 3.3.2
- at 0,256 MHz	1,5 dB	
- at 0,772 MHz	2,4 dB	
- at 1 MHz	2,7 dB	
- at 4 MHz	5,2 dB	
- at 10 MHz	8,4 dB	
- at 16 MHz	11,2 dB	
- at 20 MHz	11,9 dB	

The minimum wiring with a shield between two communicating devices is shown in Figure 122.

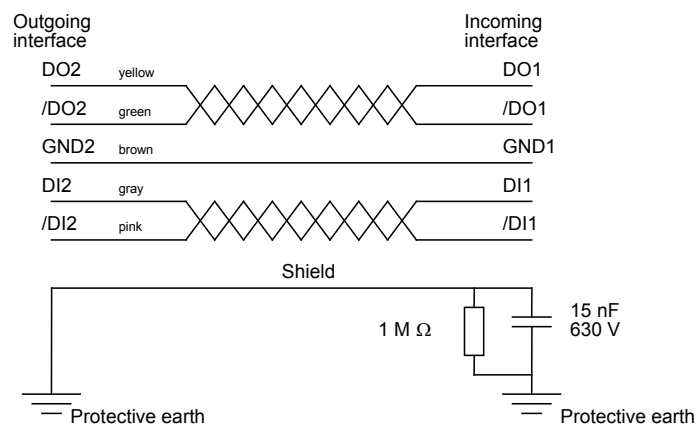


Figure 122 – Wiring

27.7.3 Terminal resistor

The cable pair of the receive line is to be connected with a resistor network (see Figure 123) directly before the receiver of the MAU. The circuit may be used for the polarisation of the MAU, for the detection of a short or open circuit on a wire. It shall be observed that the resulting equivalent resistance is at least 100 Ω .

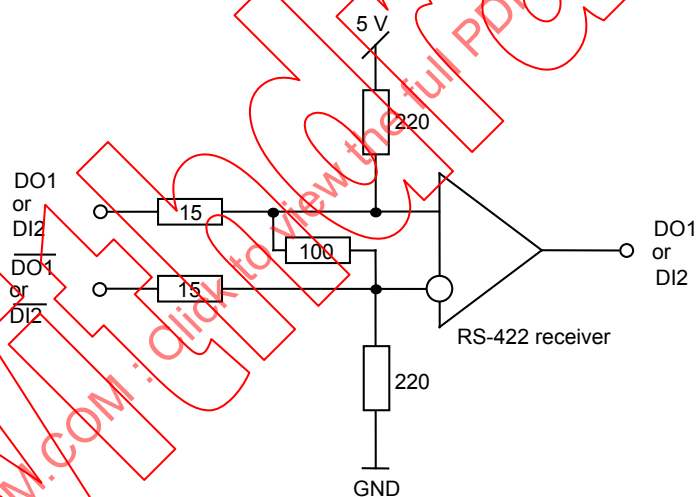


Figure 123 – Terminal resistor network

28 Type 8: Medium attachment unit: optical media

28.1 General

The object of this clause is to give the operating and optical specifications of the duplex fiber mode optical MAU.

The fiber optic remote bus cable consists of a pair of optical fiber (see Figure 124) waveguides providing bidirectionality by use of a separate fiber for each direction of signal propagation. These dual fibers connect to the CPIC of a network device.

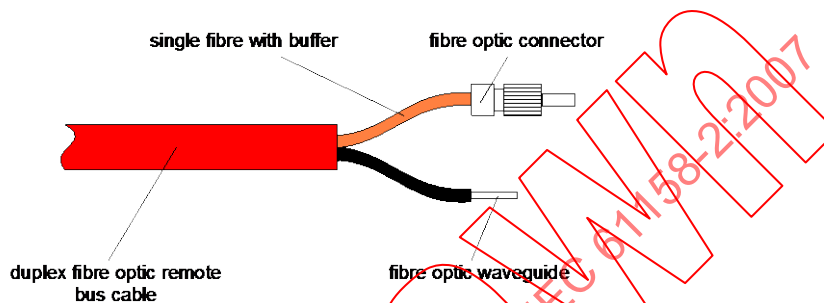


Figure 124 – Fiber optic remote bus cable

Two optical fiber types are supported:

- polymer optical fiber;
- plastic clad silica fiber.

28.2 Transmission bit rate dependent quantities

Four bit rates are defined for the optical medium attachment unit (MAU). A given MAU shall support at least one of these bit rates. Table 134 defines the bit rates and bit rate dependent quantities.

Table 134 – Bit rate dependent quantities optical MAU

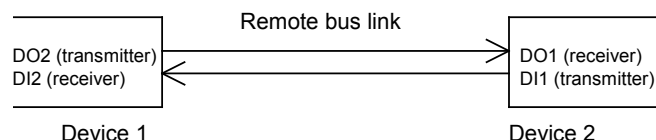
Transmit timing characteristics	Value				Unit
Nominal bit rate	0,5	2	8	16	Mbit/s
Maximum deviation from bit rate	± 0,1 %	± 0,1 %	± 0,1 %	± 0,1 %	
Nominal bit duration (T)	2 000	500	125	62,5	ns

28.3 Network topology

An optical MAU operates in a network that consists of the following components:

- optical cable;
- connectors;
- devices (containing at least one communication element).

An optical MAU shall operate in one remote bus with one further device. A remote bus link (see Figure 125) consists of two point-to-point connections. The connections are unidirectional. Thus each MAU has one fiber optic transmitter and one fiber optic receiver.

**Figure 125 – Optical fiber remote bus link**

The cable length shall be in the range specified in Table 135.

Table 135 – Remote bus fiber optic cable length

Fiber type	Minimum length	Maximum length
Polymer optical fiber	1 m	50 m (see notes 1, 2)
Plastic clad silica fiber	1 m	300 m (see notes 1, 2)
NOTE 1 This does not exclude longer distances between two devices, e.g. by using receive circuits with a lower minimum optical receiver sensitivity than specified in 28.5.2.		
NOTE 2 The maximum length may be reduced in cases where special cables with higher attenuation than the standard cables specified in 28.6.2 are used.		

28.4 Transmit circuit specifications

28.4.1 Data encoding rules

NRZ Coding is specified for the optical transmission following the encoding rules given in Table 136.

Table 136 – Encoding rules

Logical symbol bit	Encoding
1	Low optical output level
0	High optical output level

In the case of no bus activity an idle state of logic 0 shall be used.

28.4.2 Test configuration

The output level, spectral and timing specifications are measured at the end of a standard test fiber (as specified in 28.6.4) connected to the CPIC.

The requirements relative to this subclause are summarized in Table 137 and Table 134.

28.4.3 Output level specification

An optical MAU transmit circuit shall conform to the following output level and spectral requirements. The specified level and spectral characteristics shall be maintained over the whole temperature range specified for the network device. Output level is the effective launch power of logic 0. The output level specification is shown in Table 137.

Table 137 – Transmit level and spectral specification summary for an optical MAU

Transmit level and spectral characteristics (values referred to CPIC with standard test fiber)	Polymer optical fiber (980/1 000 µm fiber)		Plastic-clad silica fiber (200/230 µm fiber)
Maximum peak emission wavelength (λ_p)	660 nm	520 nm	660 nm
Typical spectral full width half maximum ($\Delta\lambda$)	< 30 nm		< 30 nm
Maximum output level	- 2,0 dBm		- 8 dBm
Minimum output level	- 6,2 dBm		- 16,9 dBm
Maximum effective launch power of a logic 1	- 43 dBm	- 41 dBm	- 45 dBm
NOTE Standard test fiber specification, see 28.6.4.			

28.4.4 Output timing specification

An optical MAU transmit circuit shall conform to the following output timing requirements (see Figure 126). Timing characteristics shall be maintained over the whole temperature range specified for the network device.

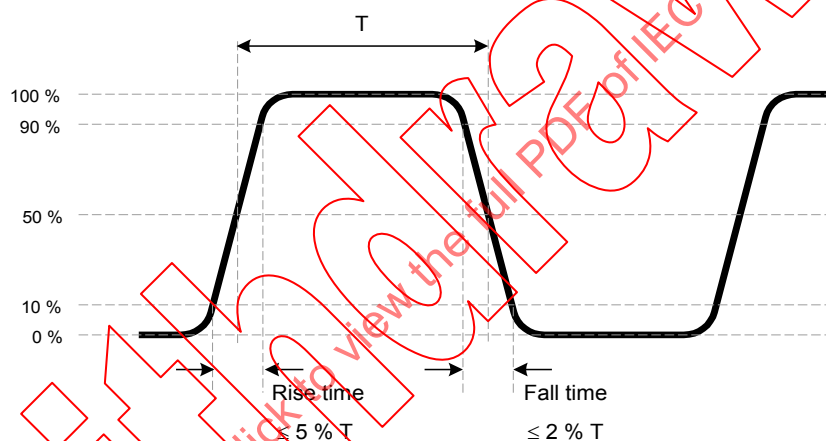


Figure 126 – Optical wave shape template optical MAU

NOTE 1 For ease of reference, the requirements of 28.4.4 are summarized in Table 134.

NOTE 2 0 % effective power is the low optical output power state (logic 1).

NOTE 3 100 % effective power is the high optical output power state (logic 0).

Rise time, fall time and bit cell jitter shall be chosen in that manner, that the electrical output timing specifications of the optical MAU receive circuit given in Table 138 are still fulfilled.

28.5 Receive circuit specifications

The requirements relative to this subclause are summarized in Table 138.

28.5.1 Decoding rules

Decoding rules according to Table 136 shall be used.

28.5.2 Fiber optic receiver operating range

An optical MAU receive circuit shall have the minimum optical receiver sensitivity defined in Table 138 over the whole temperature range specified for the network device. The maximum optical power for logic 0, measured with a standard test fiber specified in 28.6.4, of an optical MAU receive circuit shall not exceed the value defined in Table 138 .

The fiber optic receive circuit used for 0,5 Mbit/s and 2 Mbit/s systems shall be capable of detecting a 01010 bit stream after a 200 ms long idle state where the optical power level of the second logical 0 is reduced by up to 65 % against the others. This capability shall be maintained over the whole fiber optic receiver operating range.

28.5.3 Maximum received bit cell jitter

The receive circuit shall accept a NRZ encoded signal transmitted in accordance with 28.4. In addition, the fiber optic receiver shall accept signals with the time variation between any two adjacent signal transition points (50 % crossing) of ± 25 %.

Table 138 – Optical MAU receive circuit specification summary

Receive circuit characteristics (values referred to the CPIC)	Polymer optical fiber (980/1 000 μm fiber)	Plastic-clad silica fiber (200/230 μm fiber)
Minimum optical receiver sensitivity	$\leq -21,6$ dBm	≤ -23 dBm
Maximum optical power for logic 0	- 2,0 dBm	- 8 dBm
Maximum received bit cell jitter	± 25 % of nominal bit time	± 25 % of nominal bit time

28.6 Specification of the transmission medium

28.6.1 Connector

Cable connectors, if used, shall be in accordance with the specification given in Annex M.2.

28.6.2 Fiber optic cable specification: polymer optical fiber cable

28.6.2.1 General

A polymer optical fiber cable for fixed routing in indoor installations shall be compatible to the following specifications. Special fiber optic cables used for special environmental or physical applications where e.g. high flexibility of the cable is essential may differ from the following specification concerning the cable attenuation.

28.6.2.2 Fiber optic waveguide

A fiber optic waveguide of a polymer optical fiber cable for a network optical MAU shall fulfil the following requirements given in Table 139.

Table 139 – Specification of the fiber optic waveguide

Parameter	Value
Core diameter	(980 ± 60) μm
Cladding diameter	$(1\,000 \pm 60)$ μm
Cladding non-circularity	≤ 6 %
Core material	Polymethylmethacrylate (PMMA)
Numerical aperture	$0,47 \pm 0,03$
Refractive index profile	Step index
Bandwidth at 660 nm	≥ 10 MHz $\times$ 100 m
Attenuation at 650 nm (monochromatic)	≤ 160 dB/km
Attenuation at 660 nm (measured with LED and 50 m cable length)	≤ 230 dB/km

28.6.2.3 Single fiber

A single fiber of a polymer optical fiber cable for an optical MAU shall conform to the following requirements given in Table 140.

Table 140 – Specification of the single fiber

Parameter	Value
Buffer material	Polyamide (PA)
Buffer color	Black or orange
External diameter	2,20 mm ± 0,07 mm
Minimum long term bending radius	30 mm

28.6.2.4 Cable sheath and mechanical properties of the cable

The sheath of a polymer optical fiber cable for an optical MAU should conform to the following requirements given in Table 141.

Table 141 – Specification of the cable sheath and mechanical properties of the cable

Parameter	Value
Sheath material	Polyurethane (PUR)
Sheath color	Red
Strain relief elements	Non-metallic
Marking	Running length in m, production date
Temperature range (in operation)	-20 °C to +70 °C
Minimum long-term bending radius	≤ 65 mm
Maximum long-term tensile strength	≥ 100 N
Maximum long-term lateral pressure	≥ 20 N/cm

28.6.2.5 Material properties of the cable

The polymer optical fiber cable for an optical MAU should have the following further material properties as shown in Table 142.

Table 142 – Recommended further material properties of the cable

Parameter	Value
Oil resistance	ASTM Oil No. 2, 100 °C, IEC 60811-2-1
Halogen-free	IEC 60754-2
Ozone resistance	IEC 60811-2-1
UV resistance	ISO 4892-1
Abrasion resistance	IEC 60794-1-2:1999 method E2A Minimum 5 000 cycles, 1 mm radius of the point of the steel needle, 500 g
NOTE Dependent on the application, other material properties may also be required, for example, free from substances impairing paint-wetting performance (chloroform test).	

28.6.3 Fiber optic cable specification: plastic clad silica fiber cable

28.6.3.1 General

A plastic clad silica fiber optic cable for fixed routing in indoor installations shall be compatible to the following specifications. Special plastic clad silica fiber optic cables used for special environmental applications such as outdoor cables may differ from the following specification concerning the cable attenuation.

28.6.3.2 Fiber optic waveguide

A fiber optic waveguide of a plastic clad silica fiber optic cable for an optical MAU shall fulfil the following requirements given in Table 143.

Table 143 – Specification of the fiber optic waveguide

Parameter	Value
Core diameter	$(200 \pm 8) \mu\text{m}$
Cladding diameter	$(230 \pm 10) \mu\text{m}$
Cladding non-circularity	$\leq 6 \%$
Numerical aperture	$0,40 \pm 0,04$
Refractive index profile	Step index
Bandwidth at 650 nm	$\geq 17 \text{ MHz} \times \text{km}$
Attenuation at 650 nm	$\leq 10 \text{ dB/km}$

28.6.3.3 Single fiber

A single fiber of a plastic clad silica fiber optical cable for an optical MAU shall conform to the following requirements given in Table 144.

Table 144 – Specification of the single fiber

Parameter	Value
Buffer material	FRNC material
Buffer color	Red or green
External diameter	2,2 mm or 2,9 mm
Minimum long term bending radius	30 mm

28.6.3.4 Cable sheath and mechanical properties of the cable

The sheath of a plastic clad silica fiber optic cable for an optical MAU should conform to the following requirements given in Table 145.

Table 145 – Specification of the cable sheath and mechanical properties of the cable

Parameter	Value
Sheath color	Red
Strain relief elements	Non-metallic
Marking	Running length (m); production date
Temperature range (in operation)	-20 °C to +70 °C
Minimum long-term bending radius	≤ 50 mm
Maximum long-term tensile strength	≥ 200 N
Maximum long-term lateral pressure	≥ 100 N/cm

28.6.3.5 Material properties of the cable

The plastic clad silica fiber optic cable for an optical MAU should have further material properties as shown in Table 142.

28.6.4 Standard test fiber

The cable used for testing network devices with an optical MAU for conformance to the requirements of the clause shall be a cable with one or more fiber optic waveguides whose characteristics are as shown in Table 146.

Table 146 – Specification of the standard test fiber for an optical MAU

Parameter	Polymer optical fiber (980/1 000 µm fiber)	Plastic-clad silica fiber (200/230 µm fiber)
Length	1 m	1 m
Core diameter	(980 ± 60) µm	(200 ± 8) µm
Cladding diameter	(1 000 ± 60) µm	(230 ± 10) µm
Cladding non-circularity	≤ 6 %	≤ 6 %
Numerical aperture	0,47 ± 0,03	0,40 ± 0,04
Bandwidth for 660 nm	≥ 10 MHz × 100 m	≥ 17 MHz × 1 km
Attenuation for 660 nm (monochromatic)	≤ 160 dB/km	≤ 10 dB/km
Buffer diameter	2,2 mm	2,9 mm
Insertion loss (see note)	1,5 dB to 2,0 dB	1,0 dB to 1,5 dB
NOTE Measured in conformance with IEC 61300-3-4 (insertion procedure B).		

29 Type 12: Medium attachment unit: electrical medium

29.1 Electrical characteristics

This MAU specification describes a balanced line unidirectional transmission via a pair of wires corresponding to ANSI TIA/EIA-644-A. A terminator, located at receiving end of the wire, enables the PhL to support in particular higher speed transmission. The maximum wire length should not exceed 20 m. This transmission method is offered in addition to the ISO/IEC 8802-3 technologies known as 100BASE-TX and 100BASE-FX. Its main purpose is to connect devices within a control cabinet. Thus, it assumes a common signal ground.

Manchester bit encoding is combined with ANSI TIA/EIA-644-A signaling targeted to low cost line couplers, which may not isolate the station from the line (galvanic isolation); a line terminator is required (recommended resistor value is 100 Ω).

The topology supported is a pair of wires with exactly one sender and one receiver on a single pair.

A connection consists of two pairs of wire which connects exactly two DTE.

The term wire specifies a media which is able to transmit signals according to ANSI TIA/EIA-644-A at the specified length. A conformance statement of the device manufacturer shall specify these parameters.

29.2 Medium specifications

29.2.1 Connector

There is no connector specified for this media. A conformance statement of the device manufacturer shall specify the connection capabilities.

29.2.2 Wire

The medium is a pair of wires. Shielding can be used to improve the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). Unshielded wires can be used, if there is no severe electromagnetic interference (EMI).

The characteristic impedance Z_0 of the wire pair should be in the range between 80 and 120 Ω , the wire capacity (conductor - conductor) should be less than 60 pF/m. Wire selection criteria should follow the ANSI TIA/EIA-644-A implementation guidelines, especially for backplane and PCB interconnection.

NOTE Assuming an output common-mode voltage of approximately 1,2 V, the output resistor can be modelled as two 50 Ω resistors in series with their center-tap sitting at 1,2 V. This provides a match to a typical PCB trace characteristic impedance (Z_0) of 50 Ω and minimizes reflections.

A pair of wire should have a symmetrical design (same length, closely related to each other and same distance to ground signal). The two pair of wires shall have the same length. A skew of less than 2 ns is acceptable.

29.3 Transmission method

29.3.1 Bit coding

The Manchester coded data from DLL is transmitted via a pair of wires. A binary "1" (N+ or first half of DL_symbol = "ONE" or second half of DL_symbol = "ZERO") is represented by a constant positive differential voltage on TxS/RxS and a binary "0" (N- or first half of DL_symbol = "ZERO" or second half of DL_symbol = "ONE") by a constant negative differential voltage on TxS/RxS.

29.3.2 Representation as ANSI TIA/EIA-644-A signals

TxS will be represented as OUT+ and OUT- in ANSI TIA/EIA-644-A terms. RxS inputs at ANSI TIA/EIA-644-A level will be denominated as IN+ and IN-.

NOTE Assuming an output current of 3,5 mA common-mode voltage of approximately 1,2 V, the nominal voltage difference between OUT+ and OUT- is 350 mV (in a range between 247 mV and 454 mV). A differential voltage of 100 mV is needed to detect a signal.

Withdrawing
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61158-2:2007

30 Type 16: Medium attachment unit: optical fiber medium at 2, 4, 8 and 16 Mbit/s

30.1 Structure of the transmission lines

The structure of the optical transmission line is shown in Figure 127.

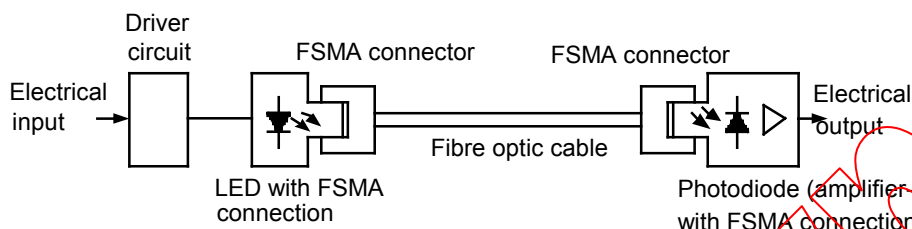


Figure 127 – Optical transmission line

The driver circuit for the transmitting LED shall be activated by an electrical impulse. The high-performance LED (transmitter) shall emit light of a wavelength of 650 nm. The transmission power shall be switchable between “low attenuation” and “high attenuation”, using a manually operated switch.

The fiber optic cable shall be made of plastic or glass and have a step index profile or graded index profile. Fiber optic cables and cores may be used depending on application. Attenuation taking place along the transmission line is caused by the fiber optic cable and possibly other couplings. These additional couplings can become necessary when routing through a wall, for example. The factors which contribute to attenuation along the line are explained in more detail in O.2.

NOTE For fiber optic materials currently in use, the attenuation is approximately 220 dB/km for plastic and 6 dB/km for glass.

The receiver component shall consist of a photodiode and an integrated amplifier circuit.

It shall be possible that the signal is inverted while passing through a slave (i.e., a light-on signal at the optical slave input shall not necessarily lead to a light-on signal at the optical output).

30.2 Time performance of bit transmission

30.2.1 Introduction

The distance between rising and falling edges of the optical signal is specified in this clause. An edge is a change in level between the optically low and optically high levels. The specification is based on an envelope which has been defined for the optical signal. Any optical output signal of a transmitter shall remain within this specific envelope at all times.

Furthermore, the run-time performance between optical slave input and output is specified. A slave shall be synchronized to the transmission clock of the bit stream coming into its optical input. Although the transmission clock of a slave can deviate from the clock at its input for a short time, the slave needs to be synchronized to the predetermined clock (e.g., by means of a phase locked loop). Thus, all units connected to the network are required by definition to transmit the same averaged transmission clock pulse. In other words, all units shall use the transmission clock pulse of the master.

The slave shall be synchronized to the transmission clock on its optical input by means of light-on edges (rising edges).

30.2.2 Master and slave in test mode

30.2.2.1 Introduction

In this clause, the run-time performance at the optical output of the master is specified while the master is operating both in its normal and test modes.

It shall be possible to activate the test mode externally by special means (e.g. pressing a key). Master and slave shall then be able to provide a continuous signal light, as well as a zero bit stream at the optical output, without the presence of an input signal.

30.2.2.2 Continuous light signal test mode

A continuous light signal implies a logical high level without a level change at the optical output. This mode is only required for the master. The slave may generate a continuous light signal, depending on whether or not a continuous light signal comes in at the optical input. Due to its function as a repeater, the slave shall be able to echo the light at its optical output, which it receives at its optical input (or the lack thereof).

NOTE Optical signal inversion by the slave shall be possible.

30.2.2.3 Zero bit stream test mode

The zero bit stream test mode implies that the transmitter shall transmit consecutive zeros which, based on the NRZI code, result in continuous level changes in the signaling pattern of the transmission clock (this results in a 1 MHz signal for a data rate at 2 Mbit/s). A slave shall use its local clock to synchronize the transmitting clock at its optical output signal. No clock adjustments may occur at the optical output (e.g., due to the phase locked loop, $\rightarrow t_{cad}$) and only statistically distributed jitter of the optical signal is allowed. This requirement is important because it allows the system to isolate and separate jitter noise ($\rightarrow J_{noise}$) from possible clock adjustments due to the phase locked loop ($\rightarrow t_{cad}$), as will be discussed later. The curve shapes of optical signals which are generated while the system is in the zero bit stream test mode, are not allowed to deviate from the signals during normal mode near the rising and falling edges (e.g. different rise and fall times, different excess levels during the test mode). Specifically, the same driver circuit shall be used during the zero bit stream test mode as is used during normal mode.

The following parameters shall be used to specify the optical output signal of the master and slave (see Figure 128 and Figure 129):

t_r : This is the time delay between points 1 and 2 (= 1-1' or 2-2'). It shall be the upper limit of the time required by the optical signal to pass through P_{TmaxL} to P_{TminH} on the rising edge. This time does not correspond to the rise time of the transmitter which is given between 10 % and 90 % of the optical signal in the data sheet.

t_f : This is the time delay between points 3 and 4 (= 3-3' or 4-4'). It shall be the upper limit of the time required by the optical signal to pass through P_{TminH} to P_{TmaxL} on the falling edge. This time does not correspond to the fall time of the transmitter, which is given between 10 % and 90 % of the optical signal in the data sheet.

NOTE See item remark below regarding t_r and t_f .

t_{os} : This parameter indicates length of time the maximum optical transmission power may be exceeded dynamically. This interval shall start at time ① (see Figure 128).

t_{BIT} : This is the arithmetic mean value (measured over several seconds) of the transmission clock period (duration of a bit cell) by the master (not in test mode) and shall correspond to the reciprocal value of the data rate. The nominal duration shall be described by t_{BITnom} . t_{BIT} shall be measured between edges with the same direction (= $2 \times t_{BIT}$) at optical power levels of $0,5 \times P_{TminH} \pm 20 \%$. t_{BIT} shall be considered to be constant in the range of seconds. Only fluctuations due to noise are allowed. Relatively long measurement duration of t_{BIT} ensures

that the influence of short-term deviations of the delays between edges (jitter $\rightarrow J_{\text{noise}}$) is negligible. Hence, t_{BIT} shall describe the time between points 1 and 3, as well as the time between points 3 and 5 (which shall correspond to point 1 of the next period) (see Figure 128).

t_{BITtest} : This is the arithmetic mean value measured over several seconds of the master or slave transmission clock period (duration of a bit cell) in the zero bit stream test mode. All measurements and properties of t_{BITtest} shall correspond to t_{BIT} .

J_{noise} : This parameter describes the jitter of the optical signal. It shall be the purely statistical deviation of the distance between both edges, compared with the value t_{BITtest} measured over a long time interval. J_{noise} shall be obtained by overlaying the signals of several periods (e.g. on an oscilloscope) such that they come together at one optical power level (e.g. P_{TmaxL} on the falling or rising edge). The jitter of the optical signal is then determined by the width of the overlaid optical signals (which gives a time). This width shall not exceed the value J_{noise} in the power region between P_{TmaxL} and P_{TminH} vice versa. By this definition, the jitter of the optical signals is limited, that is, the signal curve shapes shall be reproducible in the power region P_{TmaxL} through P_{TminH} vice versa.

NOTE The times t_r and t_f are not fully available as rise time and fall time. Due to non-symmetrical ON/OFF performance of the driver circuit (duty cycle, propagation delay), the falling edge can be time-shifted with respect to the rising edge, resulting in a remaining difference for t_{BITtest} . In this case, the high level can be extended by some time interval and the low level could be shortened by the same interval. This extending/shortening interval is not considered part of the rising and falling interval. In addition, the signal with added J_{noise} must remain completely within the envelope, which implies that the jitter shall be taken into consideration for the times t_r and t_f .

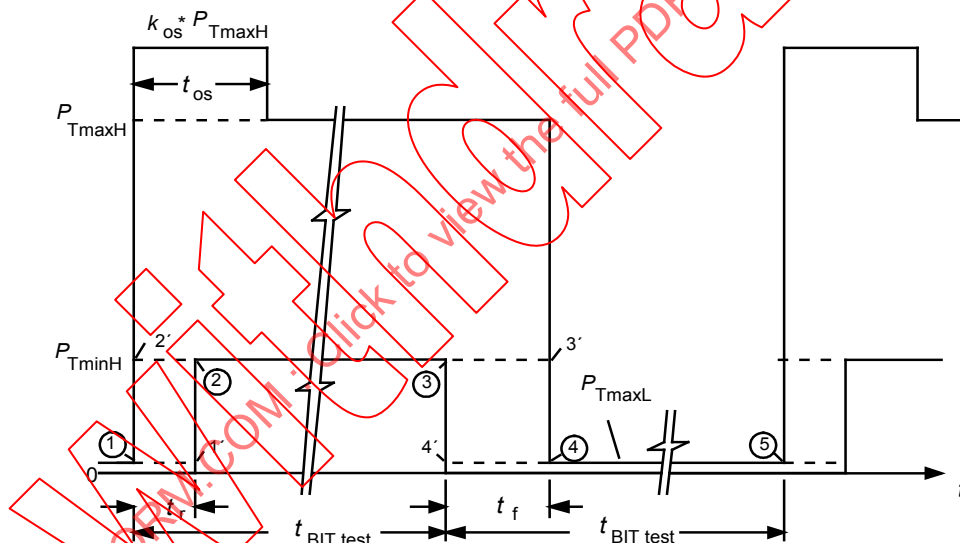


Figure 128 – Optical signal envelope

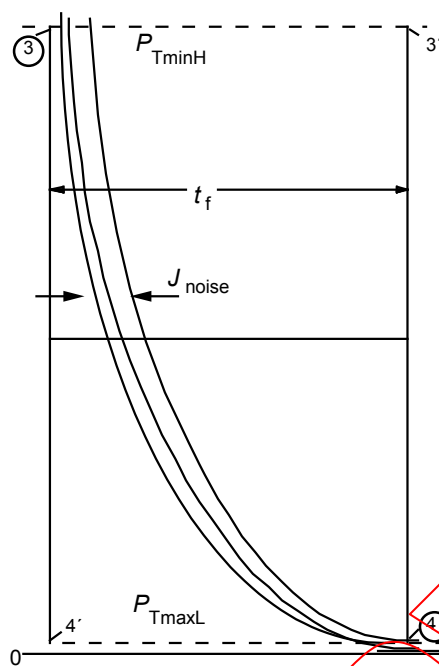


Figure 129 – Display of jitter (J_{noise})

30.2.3 Data rate

The data rate is the baud rate measured at the optical output of the master. Its nominal value shall be 2 Mbit/s, 4 Mbit/s, 8 Mbit/s or 16 Mbit/s. The measured value is allowed to deviate by $\pm 0,01\%$. The data rate is a time average measured over several seconds. The short-term performance (nanoseconds range) may deviate slightly and is specified through J_{noise} (see Table 148).

Table 147 specifies which data rates shall be supported by Type16, and the way baud rate shall be selected, for two performance classes called CP16/1 and CP16/2.

Table 147 – Transmission rate support

Performance class	CP16/1	CP16/2
2 Mbit/s	Mandatory	Mandatory
4 Mbit/s	Optional	Optional
8 Mbit/s	No	Optional
16 Mbit/s	No	Optional
Baud rate	Manual setting (e.g. switch)	Manual setting (e.g. switch), or automatic baud rate recognition

Table 148 – Transmission data parameters

Transmission rate (data rate)	Bit times			
	2 Mbit/s ± 0,2 kbit/s	4 Mbit/s ± 0,4 kbit/s	8 Mbit/s ± 0,8 kbit/s	16 Mbit/s ± 1,6 kbit/s
t_{BIT} [ns]	500 ± 0,05	250 ± 0,025	125 ± 0,012 5	62,5 ± 0,006 25
t_{BITnom} [ns]	500	250	125	62,5
$t_{BITtest}$ [ns]	500 ± 0,05	250 ± 0,025	125 ± 0,012 5	62,5 ± 0,006 25
Data frequency (max.)	1 MHz	2 MHz	4 MHz	8 MHz
Times for curve shapes				
t_{OS} [ns]	200	100	50	25
t_r [ns]	100	40	20	10
t_f [ns]	150	110	25	15
Jitter [ns]	$0 \leq J_{noise} \leq 10$	$0 \leq J_{noise} \leq 10$	$0 \leq J_{noise} \leq 5$	$0 \leq J_{noise} \leq 5$

30.2.4 Input-output performance of the slave

30.2.4.1 General

In this clause, the input-output performance of the slave synchronization performance is specified. A slave shall receive a signal with a certain clock at its optical input. The mean value of this clock is equal to the transmitting clock of the master. In the long run, a slave shall be synchronized to this clock (by evaluation of one of the rising or falling edges).

The slave shall generate its own local clock. This local clock shall be used to receive and to transmit data. The local clock of a slave shall run freely between the synchronizing edges of the incoming bit stream. During synchronization, the slave shall adjust the phases of the local clock (phase locked loop). This performance can be observed at the optical output because the duration of the high or low level becomes shortened or lengthened with respect to the average bit duration (t_{BIT}). The amount of shortening or lengthening shall be called clock adjustment time t_{cad} .

Clock adjustment time shall not exceed a specific value (t_{cadmax}). In addition, the implemented maximum clock adjustment time ($t_{cadreal}$) of every slave shall be specified by the manufacturer (e.g. $t_{BIT}/16$).

The optical signal shall run through the range P_{TmaxL} - P_{TminH} resp. vice versa of the envelope always at the same position (taking J_{noise} into account). The envelope can be shifted over the optical signal (due to short rise and fall times), but this possible shift shall not be taken into account as a "bonus" to the clock adjustment.

A slave shall be able to receive signals correctly if its clock adjustment time is smaller or equal to the maximum clock adjustment time, $t_{cadreal}$, implemented in that slave. If the slaves are physically located in the ring in an ascending $t_{cadreal}$ sequence, the system shall make sure that correct receiving conditions are established for any slave. The receiver of the master, being the last unit in the ring, shall be able to process the maximum allowable clock adjustment time t_{cadmax} .

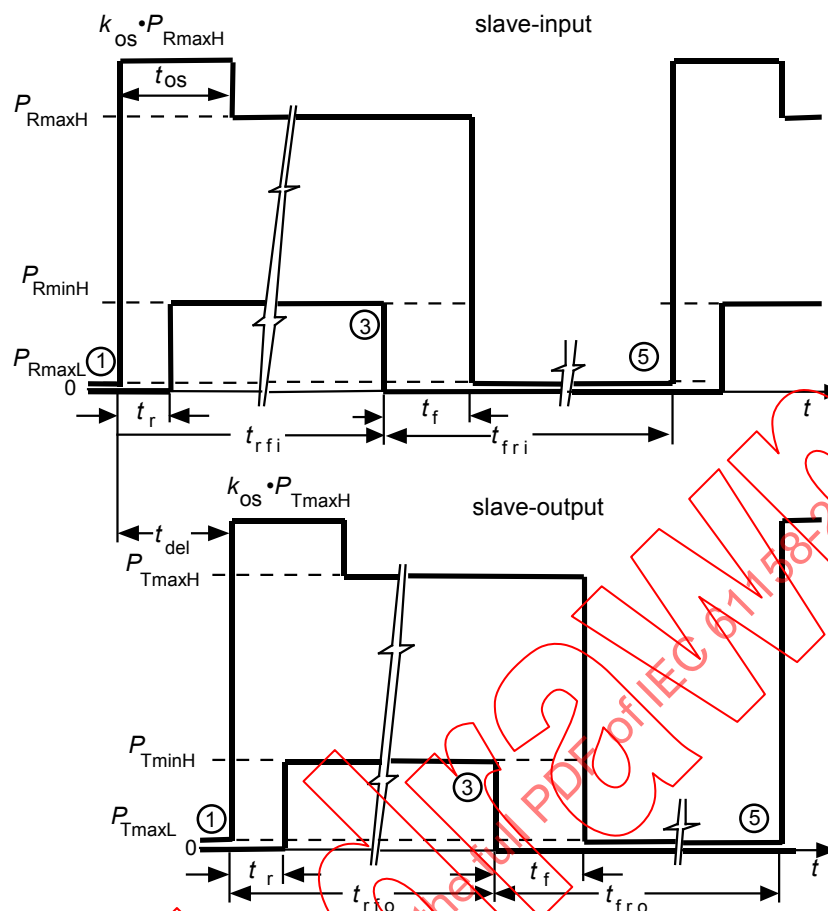


Figure 130 – Input-output performance of a slave

In addition to the clock adjustment time just described, a minimum clock adjustment time (t_{cadmin}) shall be specified. Every slave shall be able to process data if the clock has been adjusted by t_{cadmin} at its input. The input/output performance of a slave is specified by the following parameters.

t_{rfi} : this is the time between points 1 and 3 in Figure 130 on the receiver input.

t_{fri} : this is the time between points 3 and 5 in Figure 130 on the receiver input.

$t_{cadreal}$: This is the maximum clock adjustment time (shortening or lengthening a level) which a slave generates at its optical output. This value shall be specified by the manufacturer. The slave shall also be able to correctly process this maximum clock adjustment time at its input, within the scope of the specified bit error rate.

t_{cadmin} : this is the minimum clock adjustment time which a slave shall be able to process correctly within the scope of the specified bit error rate.

t_{cadmax} : this is the upper limit for $t_{cadreal}$ and also describes the maximum clock adjustment time that the master shall be able to process correctly within the scope of the specified bit error rate.

t_{rfo} : this is the time between points 1 and 3 in Figure 130 at the transmitter output.

t_{fro} : this is the time between points 3 and 5 in Figure 130 at the transmitter output.

t_{del} : this is the time delay of the envelope between the optical input and output, measured at the slave (see Figure 130). This parameter describes the signal delay (run-time) of the optical signal through a slave in a repeater mode (see also Table 153). The delay shall be measured between the light-ON edge at the optical input and the associated light signal edge at the optical output (in non-inverting slaves, this is the light-ON edge; in inverting slaves, this is the light-OFF edge).

$t_{del-optic}$: max. delay in the electro-optical elements of receiver and transmitter.

$t_{del-electric}$: max. delay of the electric signal routing through the slave (e.g. using an ASIC).

A receiver shall be provided with an input signal as defined by cases a) or b) of Table 149. Changing between cases a) and b) is not allowed. Thus the clock adjustment time will shorten or lengthen only the high level, or only the low level.

Table 149 – Possible slave input signals

Case	t_{rfi}	t_{fri}
a)	$i \times t_{BIT} - t_{cadreal} \leq t_{rfi} \leq i \times t_{BIT} + t_{cadreal}$	$j \times t_{BIT}$
b)	$i \times t_{BIT}$	$j \times t_{BIT} - t_{cadreal} \leq t_{fri} \leq j \times t_{BIT} + t_{cadreal}$
NOTE 1 i and j are ordinary digits; i is not identical to the sequence of networks as given in the abbreviations.		
NOTE 2 For normal operation $i = 1$ to 8 and $j = 1$ to 8, so that $i + j = 2$ to 16. When switching from telegram to fill signal and vice versa, $i = 1$ to 12 and $j = 1$ to 12, but $i + j = 2$ to 20.		

With these specific input signals, the slave shall be able to perform following tasks:

- a) receiving and processing data correctly within the scope of the bit error rate;
- b) generating valid output signals.

Valid output signals shall have a signal timing within the specified limits and be generated according to cases c) or d) of Table 150. The slave shall be able to either shorten or lengthen only the high level or only the low level through clock adjustment. Alternating between the two is not allowed.

Table 150 – Possible slave output signals

Case	t_{rfo}	t_{fro}
c)	$m \times t_{BIT} - t_{cadreal} \leq t_{rfo} \leq m \times t_{BIT} + t_{cadreal}$	$n \times t_{BIT}$
d)	$m \times t_{BIT}$	$n \times t_{BIT} - t_{cadreal} \leq t_{fro} \leq n \times t_{BIT} + t_{cadreal}$
NOTE m and n are ordinary digits. They are not identical to the explanation given in the abbreviations.		

Four cases (shown in Table 151) shall be distinguished for the allowable values m and n:

Table 151 – Valid slave output signals

Status / slave	Non-inverting slave		Inverting slave	
Repeater	i = m; j = n		i = n; j = m	
Slave transmits own telegram	Normal operation i, j = 8 m, n = 1 .. 8 m + n = 2 .. 16	When switching from telegram to fill signal (1 .. 12) (2 .. 20)	Normal operation i, j = 8 m, n = 1 .. 8 m + n = 2 .. 16	When switching from telegram to fill signal (1 .. 12) (2 .. 20)
NOTE Numbers in brackets represent values which may occur when switching from telegram to fill signal.				

30.2.4.2 Clock adjustment

The limit values of clock adjustment times are specified in Table 152.

Table 152 – Specifications of the clock adjustment times

Time	Value
t_{cadmin}	$= t_{BITnom} / 64$
t_{cadmax}	$= t_{BITnom} / 11$
$t_{cadreal}$	$0 \leq t_{cadreal} \leq t_{cadmax}$

30.2.4.3 Signal delay due to the slave

Signal delay due to the slave (in repeater mode) is specified in Table 153.

Table 153 – Optical signal delay in a slave

Baud rate	$t_{del-max}$	$t_{del-electric}$	$t_{del-optic}$
2 Mbit/s	750 ns	400 ns	350 ns
4 Mbit/s	375 ns	200 ns	175 ns
8 Mbit/s	250 ns	100 ns	150 ns
16 Mbit/s	200 ns	50 ns	150 ns

30.2.5 Idealized waveform

The idealized waveform is characterized by status changes of the optical signal. The optical signal is replaced by rectangular wave shapes of equal height and infinitely short rise and fall times. The status change (edge) of the idealized waveform (rectangle) is defined at the transmitter output as the instant of time at which the optical power is $0,5 \times P_{TminH} \pm 20 \%$. Both threshold levels (low attenuation and high attenuation) shall always fall within the interval P_{TmaxL} and P_{TminH} .

All subsequent times shall be measured between the status changes defined above.

30.3 Connection to the optical fiber

30.3.1 Introduction

In this clause, the connections to the optical fiber for master and slave as well as their interaction are described in more detail.

Table 154 shows all basic functions that shall be performed by a connection.

Table 154 – Basic functions of the connection

Function to be performed by →		Master	Slave
1	Retrieve clock from received signal	x	x
2	Regenerate and transmit received signal		x
3	Transmit 0111 1111 as fill signal	x	
4	Transmit own telegram	x	x
5	Phase-correct and spike-free transition between numbers	4 → 3 3 → 4	4 → 2 2 → 4

30.3.2 Master connection

30.3.2.1 Function

Figure 131 shows the functions that a master connection shall have.

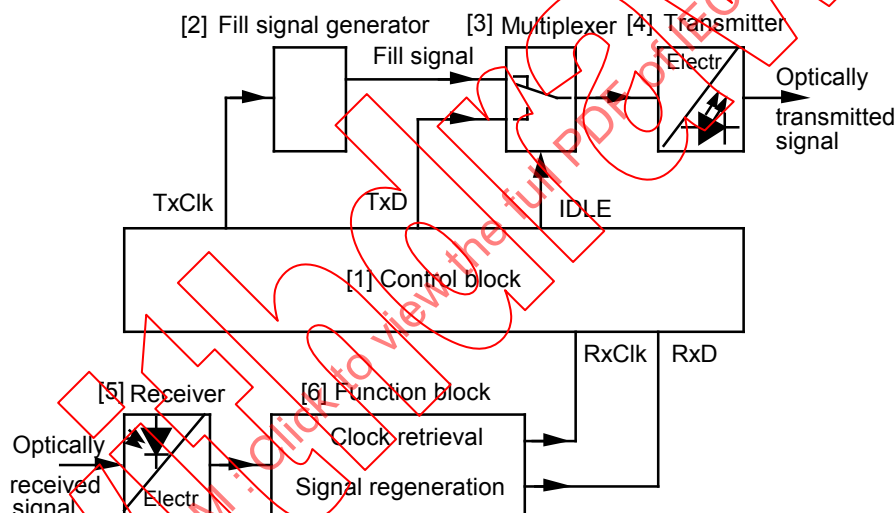


Figure 131 – Functions of a master connection

The control block – [1] in Figure 131 – shall construct the telegram to be sent according to Figure 131 and convert it into a NRZI-coded signal. When receiving a telegram, the master's control block shall recognize the NRZI-coded and regenerated telegram as one for the master based upon its telegram delimiters and the address field. In addition, the control block [1] shall check the telegram and transmit only correct data fields to the signal processing unit.

Except for NRZI coding/decoding and the generation/recognition of the telegram delimiters, the functions above will be discussed with higher protocol layers.

30.3.2.2 Generating a fill signal

According to Figure 131, the control block [1] shall generate the transmitting clock (TxClk) for the master. This shall be sent to the fill signal generator – [2] in Figure 131 –, where the fill signal is generated according to 9.10.2, Figure 52.

When the master is transmitting the fill signal (IDLE = 1), the signal shall reach the electro-optical converter [4] via the switch [3]. The switch shall work in such a way that a signal change at its output always coincides with the pattern of the transmitting clock. In this way, subsequent units can use phase locked loops for clock retrieval. Thus, they can always be synchronized to the transmitting clock of the master.

Function block [6] will be discussed in 30.3.3.

30.3.2.3 Switching from fill signal to telegram delimiters and vice versa

During transitions from fill signal 0111 1111 to telegram delimiters:

- a) it shall be possible to interrupt the bit string 0111 1111 at any point;
- b) it shall be possible to insert up to two arbitrary (transitioning) bits xx (e.g., for simplifying implementation).

All signal changes generated this way, however, shall be synchronized with the transmitting clock.

Figure 132 shows some examples of valid signal patterns of the transmitting signal during transitions from fill signal to a telegram to be sent, where occasionally inserted (transitioning) bits are shaded.

As shown in Figure 132, bit sequences having several delimiters can be generated. The receiver shall be able to recognize the highlighted, double-lined signal as the leading telegram delimiter.

During the transition from telegram delimiters to fill signals, i.e. after the bit sequence 01111110_B (delimiter):

- a) up to four arbitrary transitioning bits can be inserted;
- b) followed by switching to an arbitrary point in the bit sequence 0111 1111 (fill bits).

All generated signal changes shall be synchronized to the transmitting clock. Figure 133 shows some examples. Occasionally inserted (transitioning) bits are shaded. It is possible to have several delimiters appear. A receiver shall be able to recognize the first delimiter as an enclosing telegram delimiter.

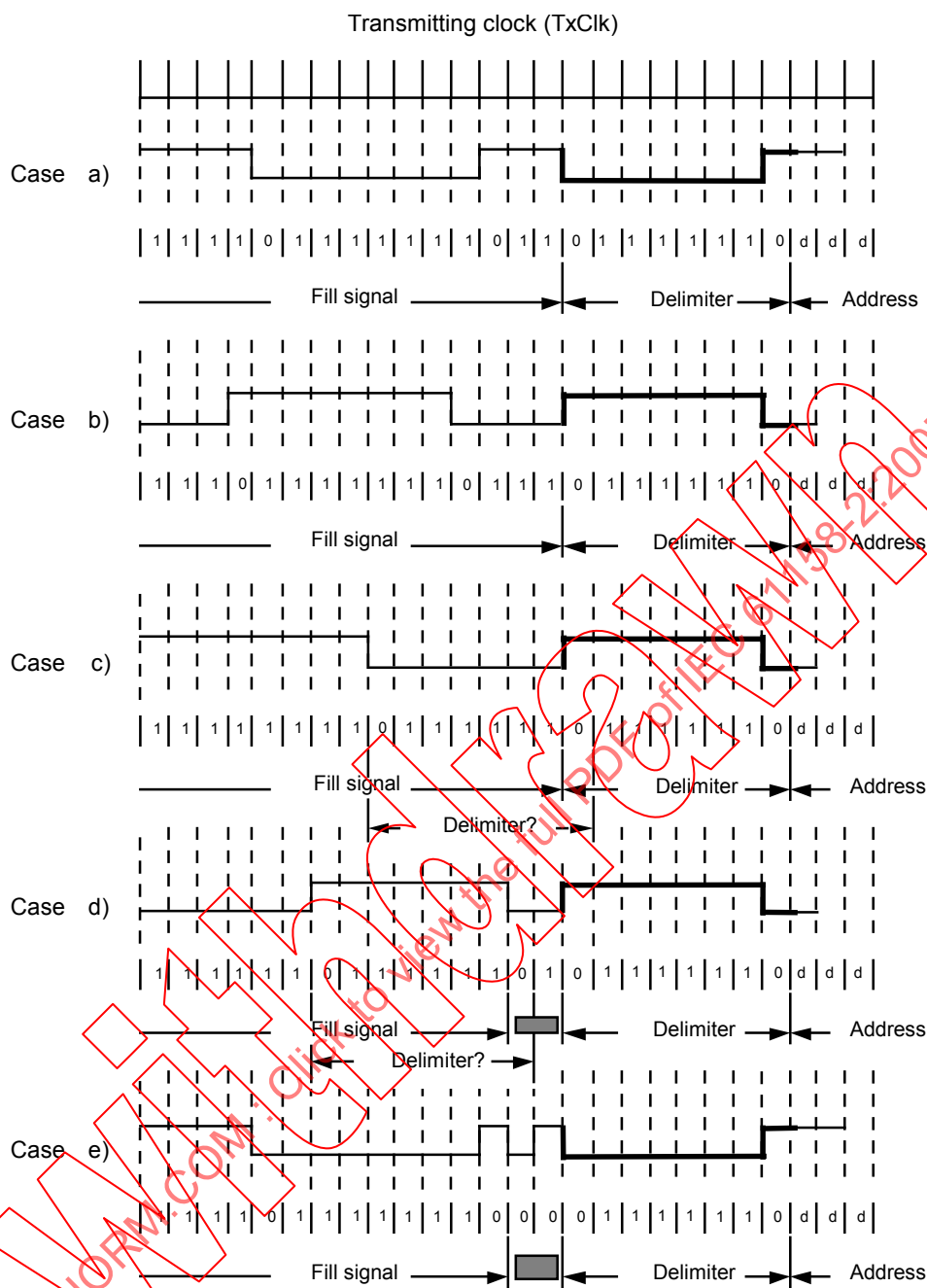


Figure 132 – Valid transmitting signals during the transition from fill signal to telegram delimiters

In Figure 133, case e) is identified by the fact that two consecutive edges of opposite directions shall be separated by a maximum of 12 transmitting clock cycles (t_{BIT}) and two sequential edges with the same direction shall be separated by a maximum of 20 transmitting clock cycles (t_{BIT}). This is important for the proper operation of a DPLL.

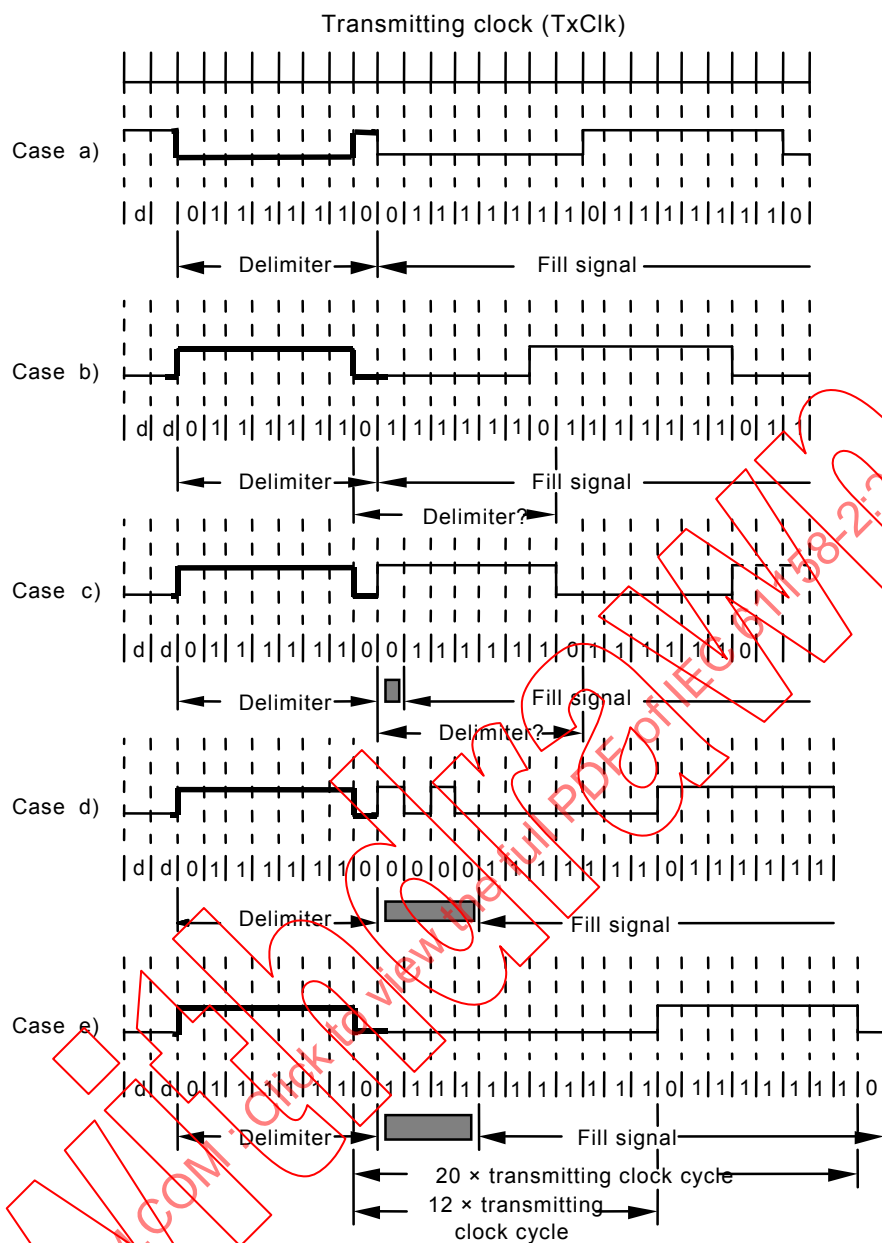


Figure 133 – Valid transmitting signals during the transition from telegram delimiter to fill signal

30.3.3 Slave connection

Figure 134 shows the functions that a slave connection shall have.

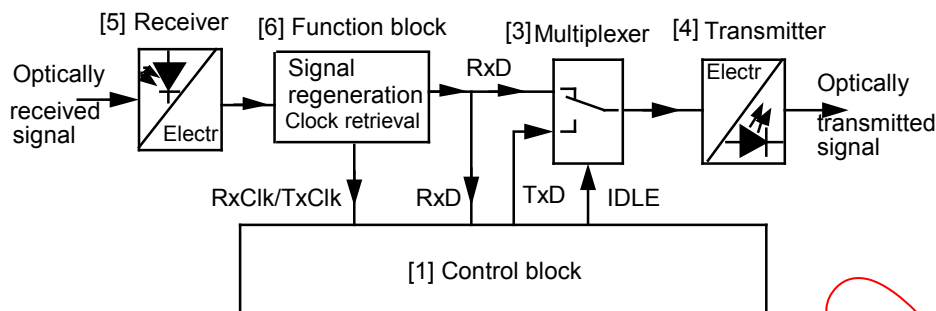


Figure 134 – Functions of a slave connection

The function block [6] has the following tasks:

- Retrieving the clock from the electrical received signal (clock retrieval, possibly with DPLL). The clock retrieved in [6] shall be used as transmitting and receiving clock for [1] (for the master, transmitting and receiving clocks are different signals),
- Regenerating the received signal, care shall be taken that any signal changes occur synchronously with the clock retrieved in a). If the slave does not need to transmit its own telegram, the regenerated received signal shall be sent (repeater mode, IDLE = 1).

The multiplexer [3] shall work according to the transitioning parameters as shown in 30.3.2.3.

Power supply:

In order to perform the above functions, the electronic components shall continue to work (e.g. during start-up and diagnostics), even if the power supply of the associated devices is shut-down. The slaves shall at least be able to regenerate the stream of data and to function as repeaters by transmitting the data.

30.3.4 Interactions of the connections

In Figure 135, the interaction of the connection of two slaves in a network is illustrated. The assumption is made that slave 1 is in the process of transmitting a telegram to the master. The multiplexer [3] in the master shall pass the fill signal so that the function block [6] of slave 1 can retrieve the clock. Slave 2 multiplexer [3] shall pass its regenerated received signal (i.e., the slave 1 telegram) to the master. The master, in turn, shall retrieve the receiver clock from the received signal by means of its function block [6]. All three phase locked loops in Figure 135 shall be synchronized at any time. This synchronization shall always be maintained, even if a transition [3] is activated. During switch over of [3], it is important to avoid any signal edges which do not follow the clock pattern.

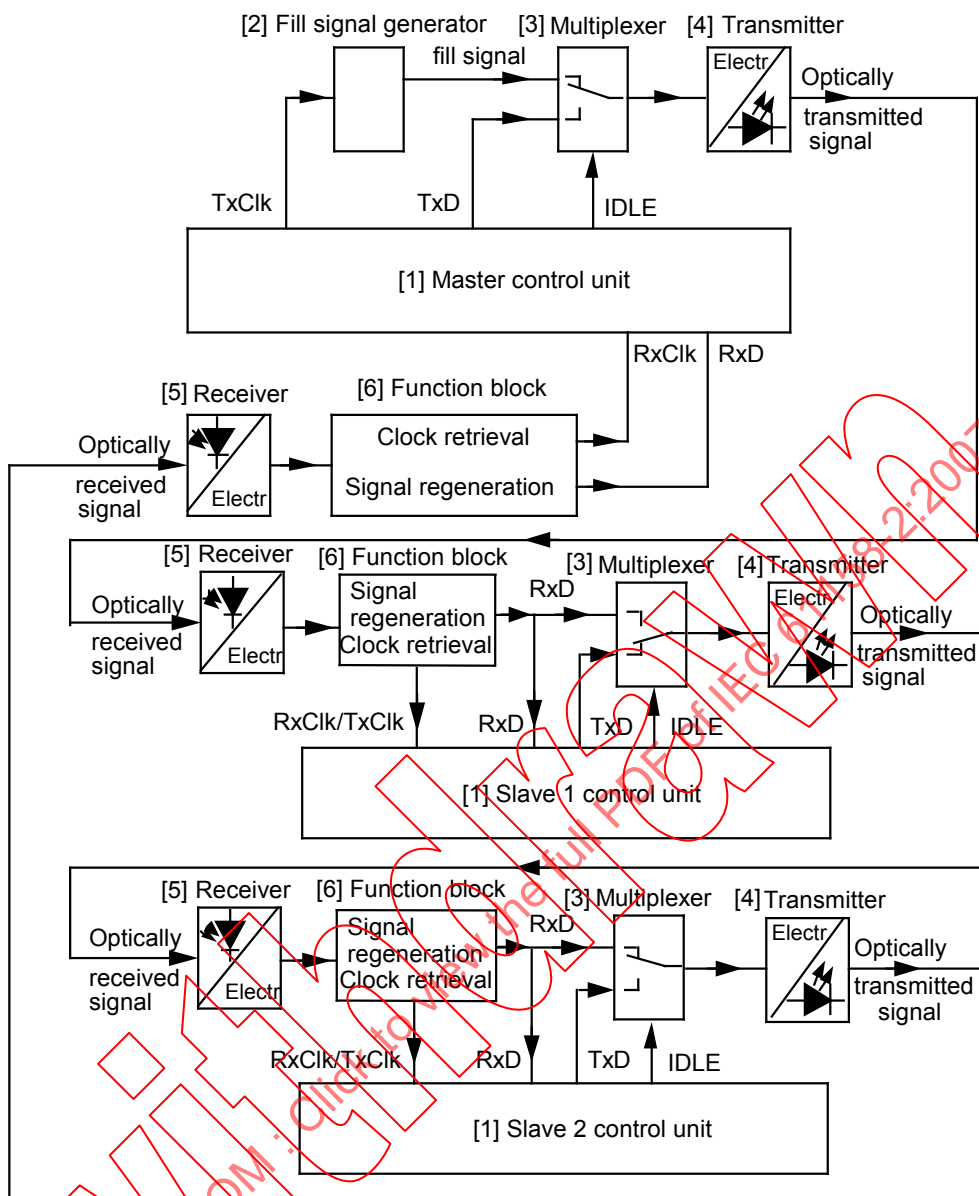


Figure 135 – Network with two slaves

31 Type 18: Medium attachment unit: basic medium

31.1 General

Type 18-PhL-B implements an MAU compliant with ISO/IEC 8482 twisted pair multipoint interconnections, named TPMT throughout the remainder of this clause, and is a derivative of ANSI TIA/EIA-485-A.

Added to the TPMT requirements are the following:

- data signal encoding specifications
- MAU bus signal loading
- signal conveyance requirements
- media specifications
 - topology descriptions
 - cable specifications
 - transmission line termination specifications
- endpoint and branch trunk cable connectors
- recommended interface circuitry

The resulting Type 18-PhL-B bus can support bit rates as high as 10 Mbit/s and transmission lengths as long as 1,2 km.

NOTE Throughout this subclause, the term *station* refers to a network device and is used for consistency with the Type 18 DLL and AL where various types of stations are defined.

31.2 Data signal encoding

Type 18-PhL-B specifies NRZI (Non-Return to Zero Inverted) data signal encoding as defined by ISO/IEC 9314-1. Accordingly, a Mark-to-Space transition or a Space-to-Mark transition represents a PhPDU logical one; and a lack of transition (Mark-to-Mark or Space-to-Space) presents a PhPDU zero.

31.3 Signal loading

A Type 18-PhL-B MAU communication element implementation requires transceiver devices that are specified not to exceed 0,5 Unit Loads (UL). Thus, the maximum number of connected devices is 64.

31.4 Signal conveyance requirements

The minimum wiring between communicating devices is shown in Figure 136.

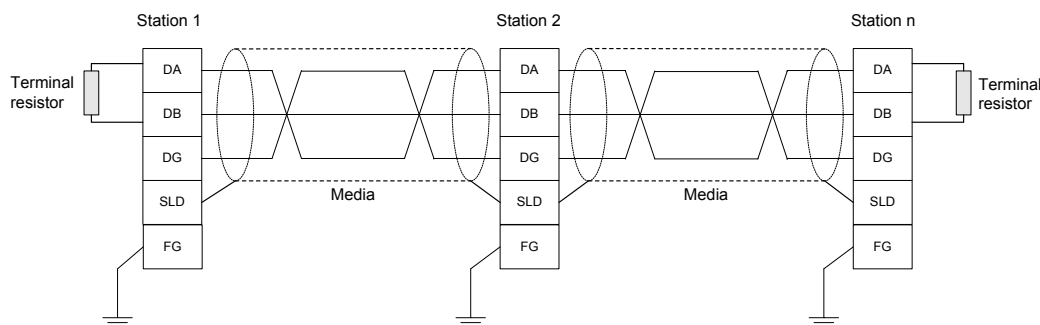


Figure 136 – Minimum interconnecting wiring

It is recommended to connect the SLD (shield) to the FG (field ground) at both ends of the trunk line cable via low impedance (that is, low inductance) connections. This is necessary to achieve a reasonable electromagnetic compatibility.

31.5 Media

31.5.1 General

The medium of each bus segment (trunk) and spurs (branches) is a shielded twisted-pair cable. The shield helps to improve the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC).

31.5.2 Topology

31.5.2.1 Pass-through topology

A dedicated cable is configured with a pass-through type connector for each device as shown in Figure 137.

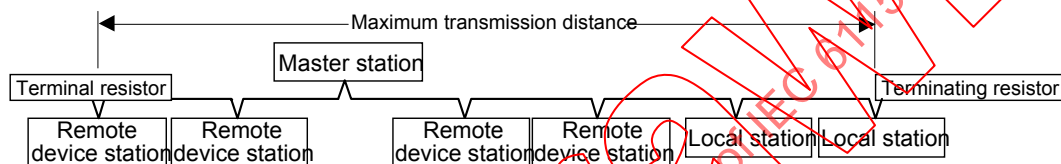


Figure 137 – Dedicated cable topology

31.5.2.2 T-branch topology

A T-branch topology is configured with T-connectors as couplers to provide node points for spurs (branches) as shown in Figure 138.

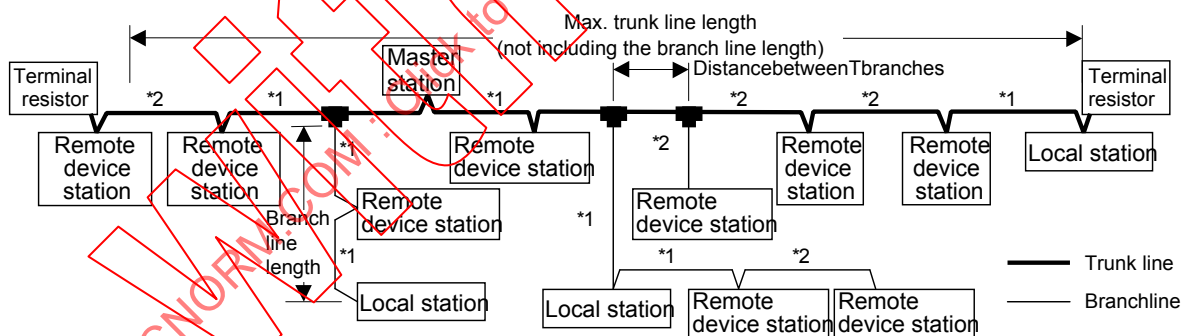


Figure 138 – T-branch topology

31.5.2.3 Topology requirements

31.5.2.3.1 Pass-through topology

The maximum cable length as a function of bit-rate is specified in Table 155. The minimum cable distance device-to-device is 20 cm.

Table 155 – Pass-through topology limits

Bit rate(kbit/s)	Max. cable length (m)
10 000	100
5 000	160
2 500	400
625	900
156	1 200

31.5.2.3.2 T-branch topology

The only allowable bit rates for the T-branch topology are 156 kbit/s and 625 kbit/s. The maximum cable lengths (as a function of bit-rate) and other topology limitations are specified in Table 156. See Figure 138 for a description of the referenced bus components.

Table 156 – T-branch topology limits

Parameter		Value	Comment
Max. trunk length	625 kbit/s	100 m	
	156 kbit/s	500 m	
Max. branch length	625 kbit/s	50 cm	Cable length per branch (spur)
	156 kbit/s	200 cm	
Max. overall branch length		8 m	Total length of all branch lines combined
Max. distance between T-branches		No limit	This distance measured on trunk line
Max. number of stations connected per branch		6	
Min. distance to master station		2 m	See *1 in Figure 138. This parameter is reduced to 1 m for systems configured without Local Stations or Intelligent Device Stations.
Min. distance between stations		30 cm	See *2 in Figure 138.
NOTE Station types (e.g., master station) are defined in Type 18 DLL and AP.			

31.5.3 Signal cable specifications

The 3-core twisted-pair cable Type 18-PhL-B medium is specified in Annex R.1.

31.5.4 Media termination

The trunk line segment shall be terminated at each end with its characteristic impedance. Requirements for these two transmission line terminating resistors are specified in Table 157.

Table 157 – Terminating resistor requirements

Parameter	Value
Resistance	110 Ω
Power	0,5 W
Tolerance	<10 %

31.6 Endpoint and branch trunk cable connectors

There is no physical connector specified for use with Type 18-PhL-B.

The type of connector shall be a screw-compression type with each terminal able to accommodate two conductors of the type specified for the media cable. It is also required that sufficient terminals are provided for all five connection points, or alternatively, four connection points with a separate connection point provided for the FG circuit.

It is recommended that two-piece connectors be implemented for disconnecting online devices. It is further recommended that the implementer evaluate appropriate industry partnership associations and consortia for commonly implemented connector solutions for the industry of targeted application. See the IEC 61784 series for references to these and other related specifications.

31.7 Recommended type 18-PhL-B MAU circuitry

Galvanic isolation of the communications element is not required, but it is recommended and strongly encouraged for stable performance. It is minimally recommended that the communications element be configured with galvanic isolation as shown in Figure 139. It is further recommended that the input/output element be configured with its own galvanic isolation as shown in Figure 140.

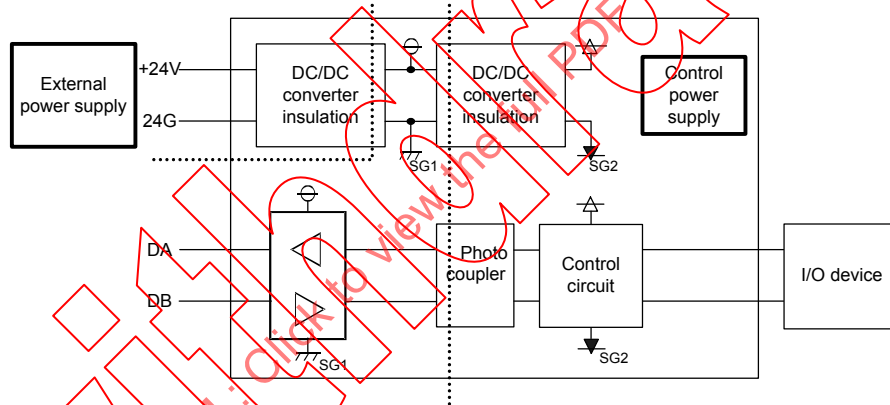


Figure 139 – Communication element isolation

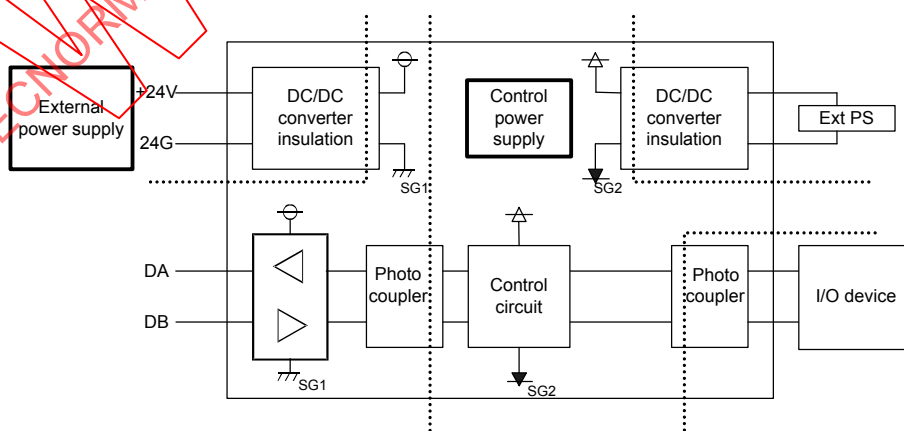


Figure 140 – Communication element and I/O isolation

32 Type 18: Medium attachment unit: powered medium

32.1 General

Type 18-PhL-P implements a MAU compliant with ISO/IEC 8482 twisted pair multipoint interconnections, named TPML throughout the remainder of this clause, and is a derivative of ANSI TIA/EIA-485-A.

Added to the TPML requirements are the following:

- data signal encoding specifications
- MAU bus signal loading
- signal conveyance requirements
- media specifications
 - topology descriptions
 - cable specifications
 - transmission line termination specifications
- endpoint and branch trunk cable connectors
- embedded power distribution
- recommended interface circuitry

The resulting Type 18-PhL-P bus can support bit rates as high as 2,5 Mbit/s and transmission lengths as long as 500 m.

NOTE Throughout this subclause, the term *station* refers to a network device and is used for consistency with the Type 18 DLL and AL where various types of stations are defined.

32.2 Data signal encoding

Type 18-PhL-U specifies NRZI (Non-Return to Zero Inverted) data signal encoding as defined by ISO/IEC 9314-1. Accordingly, a Mark-to-Space transition or a Space-to-Mark transition represents a PhPDU logical one, and a lack of transition (Mark-to-Mark or Space-to-Space) presents a PhPDU zero.

32.3 Signal loading

Type 18-PhL-U MAU communication element implementation requires transceiver devices that are specified not to exceed 0,5 Unit Loads (UL). Thus, the maximum number of node devices is 64.

32.4 Signal conveyance requirements

The minimum wiring between two communicating devices is shown in Figure 141.

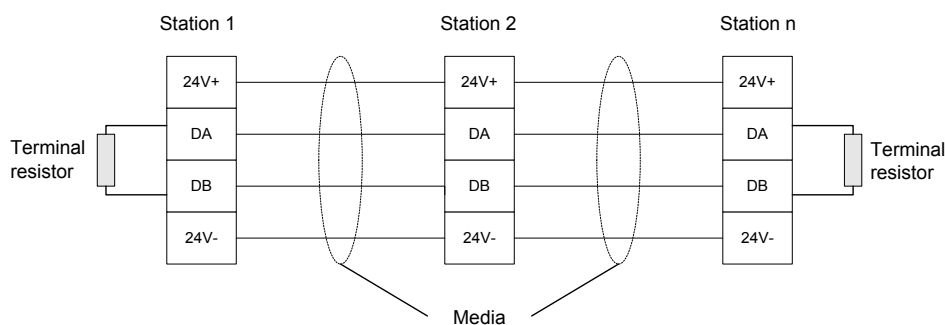


Figure 141 – Minimum interconnecting wiring

32.5 Media

32.5.1 General

The medium of each bus segment (trunks) and spurs (braches) is a 4-core unshielded cable. These cables are specified in both flat cable and round cable configurations with conductors for both communications and embedded power distribution.

32.5.2 Topology

32.5.2.1 General

An example flat cable configuration with embedded power distribution is shown in Figure 142. The bus contains a trunk and may contain spurs (branches).

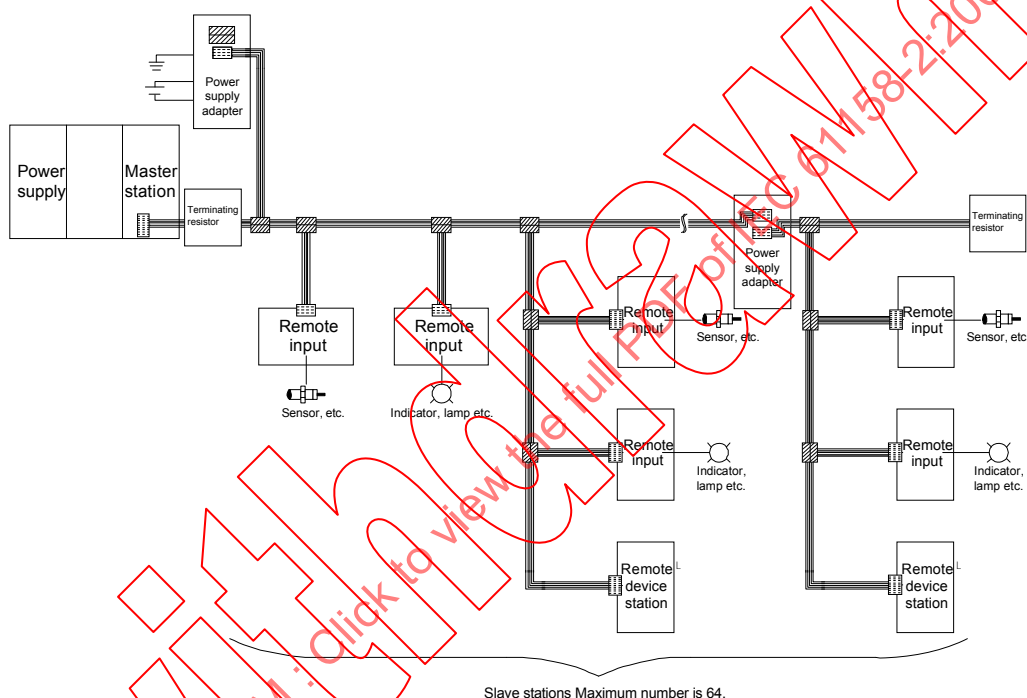


Figure 142 – Flat cable topology

32.5.2.2 Pass-through topology

A dedicated cable is configured with a pass-through type connector for each device as shown in Figure 143.

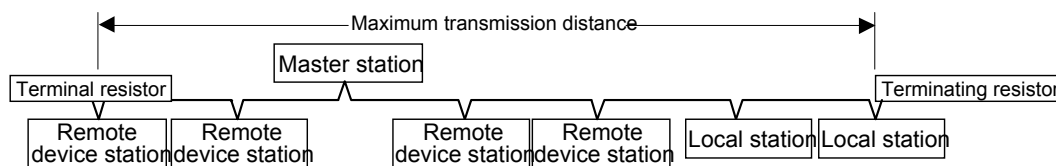


Figure 143 – Dedicated cable topology

32.5.2.3 T-branch topology

A T-branch topology is shown in Figure 144. The cable types can be mixed in the network, but must remain consistent for a given branch of trunk segment.

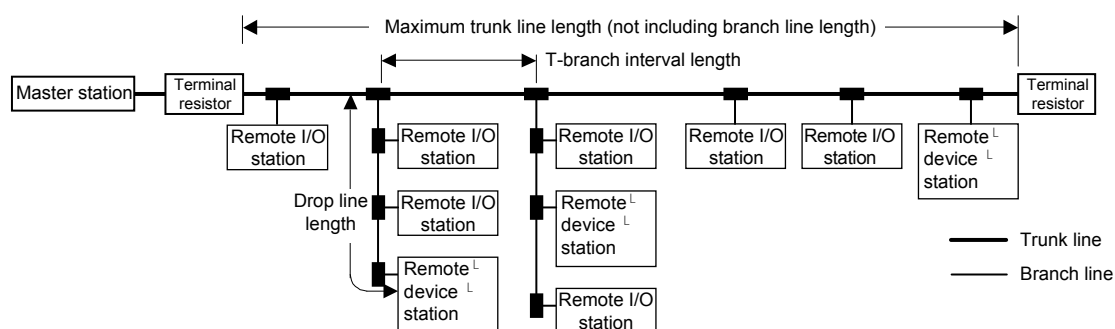


Figure 144 – T-branch topology

32.5.3 Topology requirements

32.5.3.1 Pass-through topology

The maximum cable length, as a function of bit-rate, is specified in Table 158. The minimum cable distance device-to-device is 20 cm.

Table 158 – Pass-through topology limits

Bit rate (kbit/s)	Max. cable length (m)
2 500	35
625	100
156	500

32.5.3.2 T-branch topology

The type 18-PhL-P topological implementation is restricted in that the trunk segment shall be constructed using only one type of cable (flat, round preferred, or round alternate). Similarly, each branch (spur) shall be self-consistent, that is, constructed of only one type of cable. However, branch cable types need not match the trunk cable type or that of other branches in the PhL-segment bus.

The only allowable bit rates for the T-branch topology are 156 kbit/s, 625 kbit/s and 2,5 Mbit/s.

The maximum cable lengths as a function of bit-rate and other topology limitation are specified in Table 159.

Table 159 – T-branch topology limits

Parameter	Value			Comment
	156 kbit/s	625 kbit/s	2 500 kbit/s	
Max. trunk segment length	500 m	100 m	35 m	Not including branch line length
Max. branch length	60 m	16 m	4 m	Cable length per branch (spur)
Max. overall branch length	200 m	50 m	15 m	Total length of all branch lines combined
Max. cable length between connected devices	500 m	100 m	35 m	
Max. cable length between T-branches	No limit			This distance measured on trunk line
Max. number of devices connected per branch	8			

32.5.4 Signal cable specifications

32.5.4.1 Flat cable

The 4-core unshielded flat cable Type-18-PhL-P medium is specified in Annex R.2.1.

32.5.4.2 Round cable - preferred

The preferred 4-core unshielded round cable for the Type-18-PhL-P medium is specified in Annex R.2.2. This cable type is also known as VCTF cord and is compliant with IEC 60227-5.

32.5.4.3 Round cable - alternate

The alternate 4-core unshielded round cable for the Type-18-PhL-P medium is specified in R.2.3.

32.5.5 Media termination

The trunk line segment shall be terminated at each end with its characteristic impedance. Requirements for these two transmission line terminating resistors are specified in Table 160 for flat cable and Table 161 for round cable.

Table 160 – Terminating resistor requirements – flat cable

Parameter	Value
Resistance	130 Ω
Power	0,5 W
Tolerance	<10 %

Table 161 – Terminating resistor requirements – round cable

Parameter	Value
Resistance	90 Ω
Power	0,5 W
Tolerance	<10 %

32.6 Endpoint and branch trunk cable connectors

32.6.1 Device connector

The required dimensions of the Type 18-PhL-P device connector are specified in Annex Q.2.

32.6.2 Flat-cable connector

The required dimensions of the Type 18-PhL-P flat cable connector are specified in Annex Q.3.

32.6.3 Round cable connector

The required dimensions of the Type 18-PhL-P round cable connector are specified in Annex Q.4. This connector is applicable to both styles of Type 18-PhL-P round cable.

32.6.4 Round cable alternate connector

The required dimensions of the Type 18-PhL-P round cable alternate connector is specified in Annex Q.5.

32.6.5 T-branch coupler

There are no required dimensions for the Type 18-PhL-P T-branch coupler. Any suitable commercially available terminal block can be used.

32.7 Embedded power distribution

32.7.1 General

Type 18-PhL-P includes specifications for network embedded power distribution. The power component of a PhL-segment can be either a single interconnected power distribution system or partitioned into more than one power allocation segments. The example block diagram in Figure 145 demonstrates a PhL-segment with two power allocation segments.

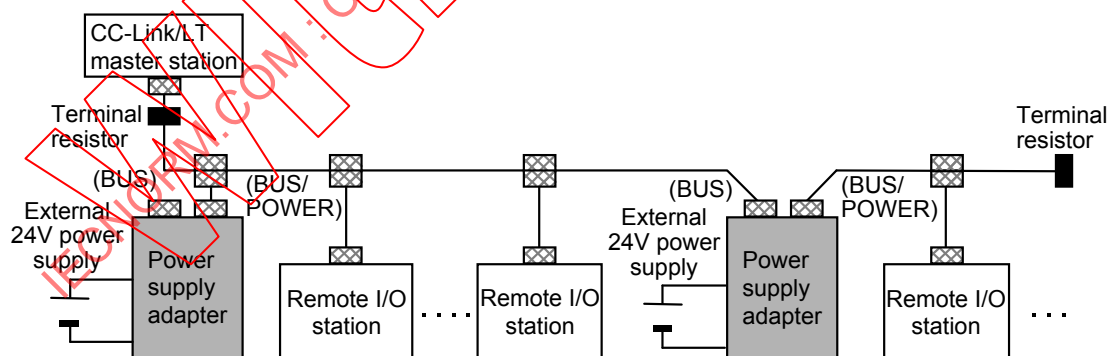


Figure 145 – Type 18-PhL-P power distribution

32.7.2 Power source

Power supply devices shall be implemented with two device bus connectors that provide pass-through connectivity for the data signals but power sourced to only one connector. The circuit diagram in Figure 146 shows the interconnection for the power source.

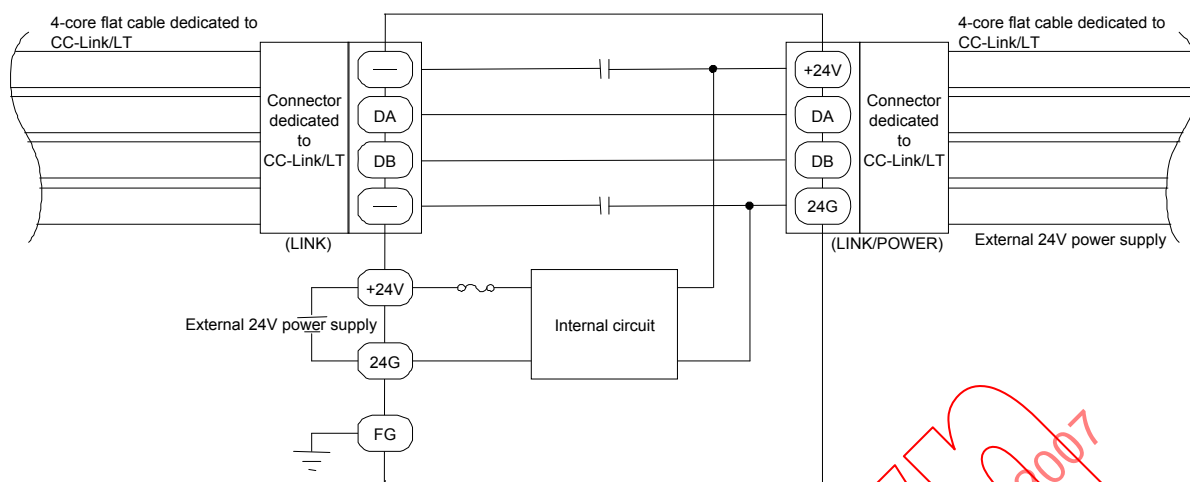


Figure 146 – Type 18-PhL-P power distribution

The 24 V power supply for the Type 18-PhL-P shall comply with the specifications given in Table 162.

Table 162 – 24 V Power supply specifications

Parameter	Specification
Max. operating voltage	28,8 V
Min. operating voltage	20,4 V
Max. current	5 A
Isolation – power to data signals	500 Vrms
Reverse over voltage protection	95 V
Current surge tolerance	Output voltage within 19,2 V to 30,0 V for ± 5 A/1 mS pulse

32.7.3 Power loading

Each device connected to the Type 18-PhL-P bus that also consumes power shall comply with the requirements specified in Table 163.

Table 163 – 24V Power consumption specifications

Parameter	Specification
Max. operating voltage	30,0 V
Min. operating voltage	19,2 V
Max. current	5 A (see note 1)
Start current	1,33 times operating current (see note 2)
Reverse current protection	no damage to device or network from reverse wired power
NOTE 1 For full transmission distances, it is necessary to limit power consumption to 0,1 A per device.	
NOTE 2 This does not include the inrush current required to charge the input bypass capacitors. When these are included, it is necessary to limit the overall inrush current such that the bus power shall not droop to less than 19,2 V for more than 1 ms when a device is plugged into an operating network.	

The specifications for start current and inrush current (Table 163, Note 2) are required to support hot-pluggable devices, that is, devices that can be plugged into, or removed from, an operating network without harm to the network or the devices. Data errors may occur.

Filtering of the power input circuitry and protecting against reverse power connection is also required for stable performance at the higher bit rates. The filter parameters are not specified. A typical filter and protection circuit is shown in Figure 147 with critical components labeled.

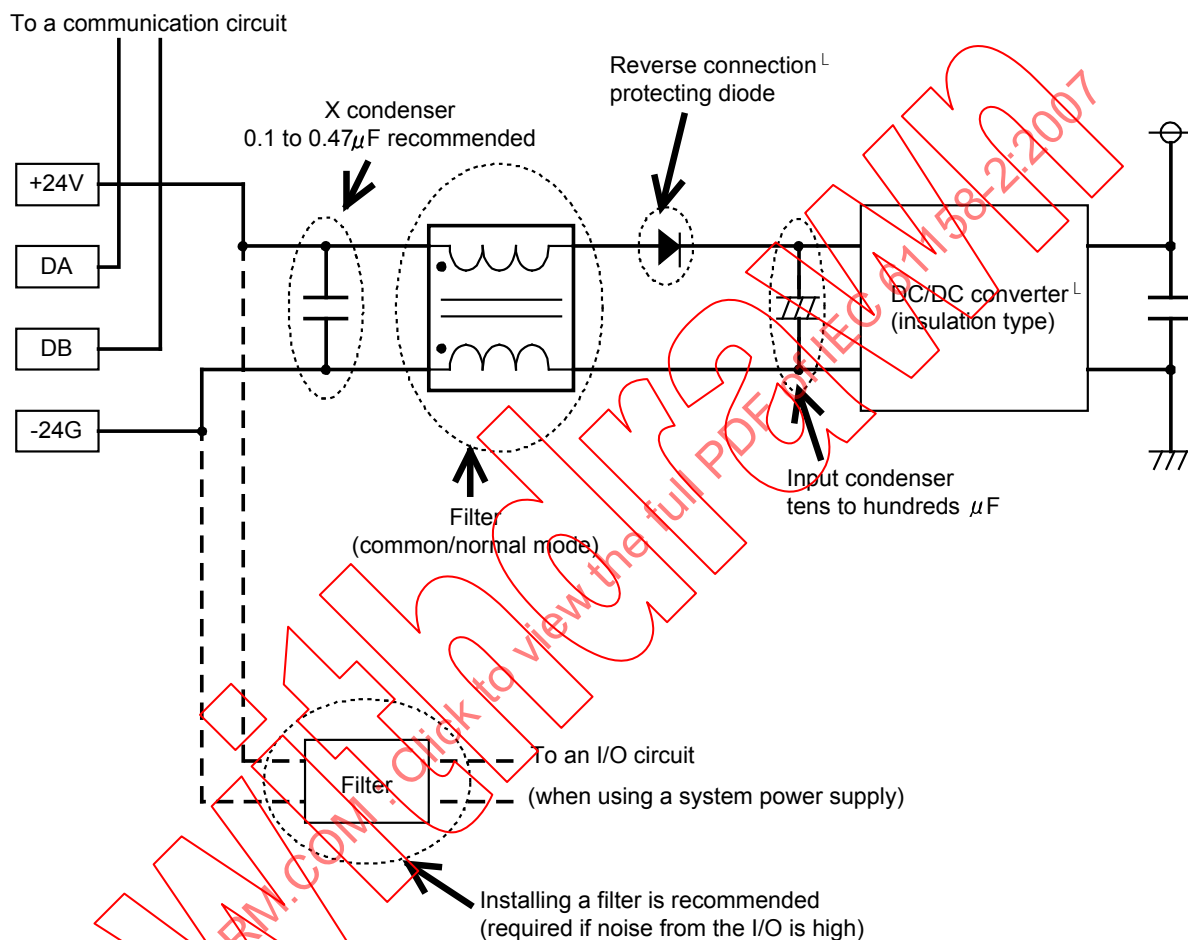


Figure 147 – Type 18-PhL-P power supply filtering and protection

32.8 Recommended type 18-PhL-P MAU circuitry

32.8.1 General

The circuit diagrams in the following two subclauses are included for informational purposes.

32.8.2 Communications element galvanic isolation

Galvanic isolation of the communications element is not required, but it is recommended and strongly encouraged for stable performance. It is minimally recommended that the communications element be configured with galvanic isolation as shown in Figure 148. It is further recommended that the input/output element be configured with its own galvanic isolation as shown in Figure 149.



A complete power conditioning circuit is shown in Figure 150. This diagram serves as an informative guide for a recommended implementation of Type 18-PhL-P power supply components.



Annex A (normative)

Type 1: Connector specification

A.1 Internal connector for wire medium

A fieldbus connector that is inside the enclosure of the fieldbus device and therefore requires no protection against the electromagnetic and physical environment shall be specified as an internal connector. An internal connector shall meet the following functional requirements:

- distinctly marked to avoid conductors being interchanged;
- positive locking with a minimum of 50 N extraction force locked;
- field installation with hand tools shall be possible;
- the fixed (device) side shall be 4,8 mm × 0,8 mm male tabs with hole as shown in Figure A.1, Table A.1, and specified in IEC 60760;
- each conductor of the cable shall be terminated with a locking female connector with an insulating sleeve or housing;
- the female connector with insulating sleeve or housing shall fit through a 9,5 mm diameter hole.

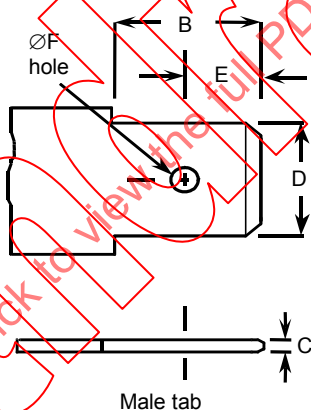


Figure A.1 – Internal fieldbus connector

Table A.1 – Internal connector dimensions

4,8 mm (0,187 in) Male tab				
	Millimetres		Inches	
	max.	min.	max.	min.
B	6,5	6,2	0,256	0,244
C	0,84	0,77	0,033	0,030
D	4,9	4,7	0,193	0,185
E	3,4	3,0	0,134	0,117
Ø F	1,5	1,3	0,060	0,050

A.2 External connectors for wire medium

A fieldbus connector that is outside the enclosure of the fieldbus device and therefore requires protection against the electromagnetic and physical environment shall be specified as an external connector.

Two external connectors are specified in accordance with the environment of the installation.

A.2.1 External connector for harsh industrial environments

An external connector for harsh industrial environments shall meet the following functional requirements:

- a) polarized to avoid conductors being interchanged, both mated and unmated;
- b) available with sealing to IEC 60529: IP65 when mated or fitted with protective caps;
- c) the free (cable) side shall be available with a cable clamp which secures the cable but does not subject the cable conductors to damaging stress;
- d) the conductors shall be completely surrounded by a conductive shell which maintains the electrical continuity of the shield;
- e) the conductive shell of the free (cable) side shall be covered by insulating material;
- f) the conductive shell of the fixed (device) side shall be insulated from its mounting surface;
- g) the fixed (device) side shall provide a connection to the shield, other than the shell;
- h) the contacts shall accommodate wire sizes of 0,20 mm² to 0,64 mm²;
- i) provided with positive locking to prevent disconnection by cable strain;
- j) provided with four pins (two signal pins and two power pins);
- k) available with crimped conductors;
- l) provided with male contacts on the fixed (device) side;
- m) a cable connector with male pins shall be available for in-line connection;
- n) dielectric strength from contacts to shell and from shell to ground shall be at least as high as specified under isolation for the appropriate MAU;
- o) contacts shall be assigned to functions as shown in Table A.2 and Figure A.2;
- p) connector dimensions (mating face) shall be as shown in Figure A.3, Figure A.4 and Figure A.5.

Table A.2 – Contact assignments for the external connector for harsh industrial environments

Contact No.	Function
A	DATA + with the option of power +
B	DATA – with the option of power –
C	Reserved for option of power +
D	Reserved for option of power –

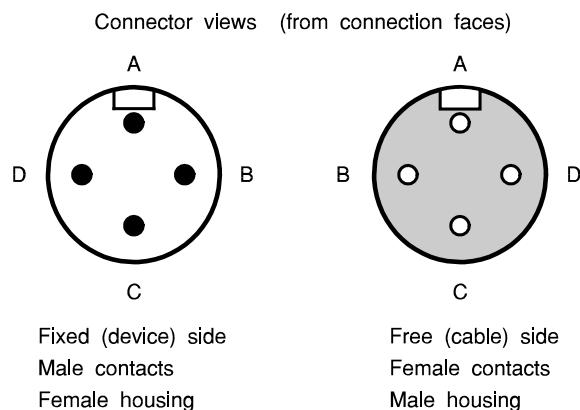


Figure A.2 – Contact designations for the external connector for harsh industrial environments

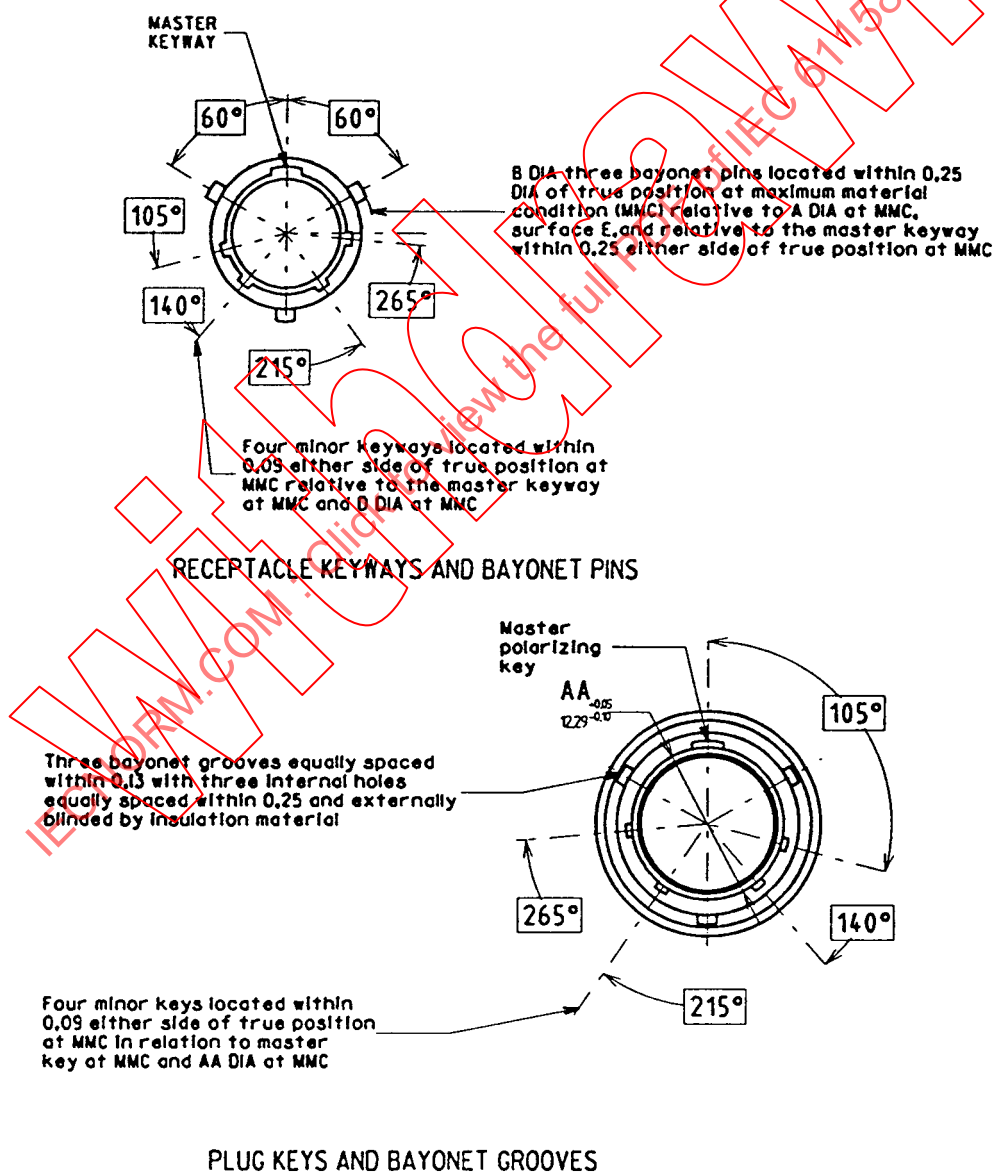
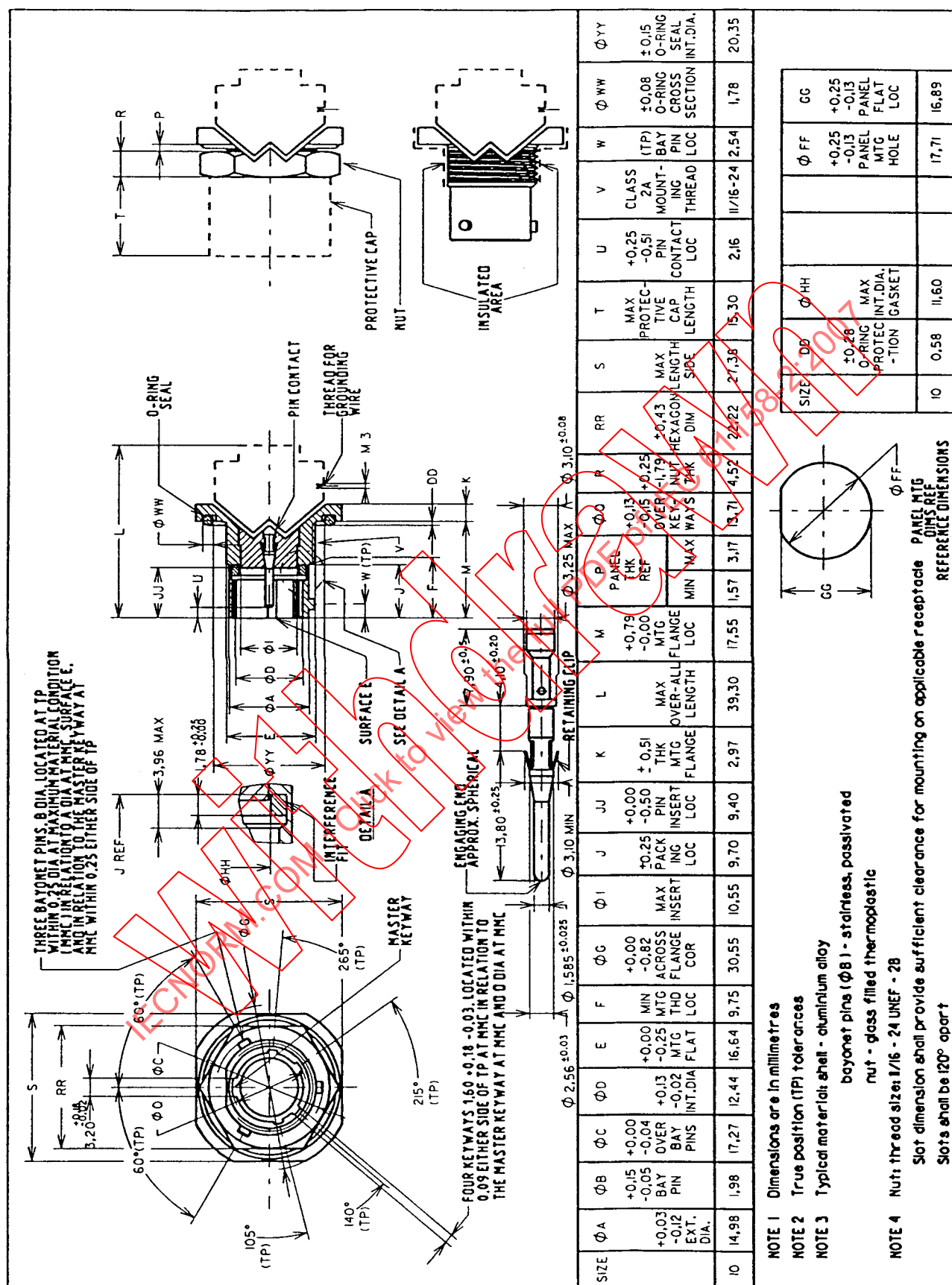
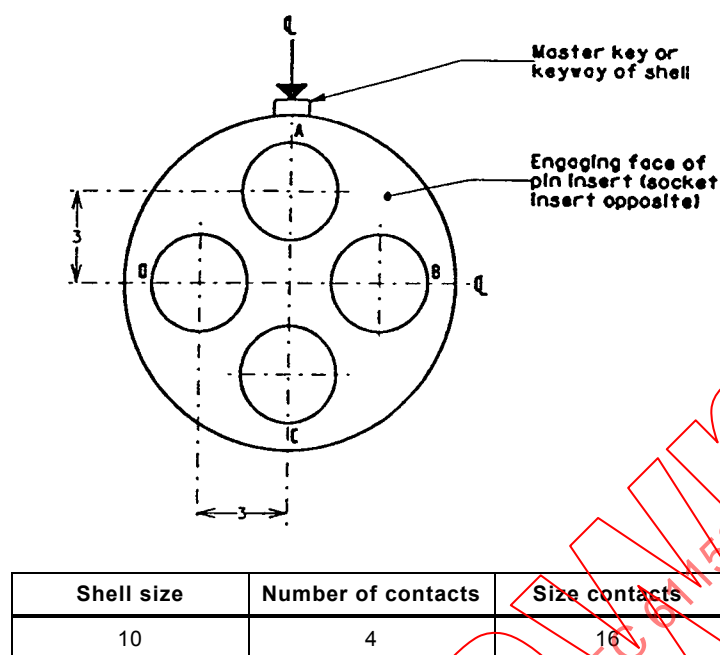


Figure A.3 – External fieldbus connector keyways, keys, and bayonet pins and grooves





NOTE 1 Dimensions are in millimetres.

NOTE 2 Insert arrangement is shown in the normal position in the shell with the A cavity in front of the master key or keyway of the shell. Only this "normal position" shall be used.

NOTE 3 Four keys or keyways (MMC) and insert shall be located within 0,09 either side of (TP) relative to master key or keyway (MMC) and shall DD or ID (MMC).

Figure A.5 – External fieldbus connector contact arrangement

A.2.2 External connector for typical industrial environments

A connector for typical industrial environments shall meet the following functional requirements:

- polarized to avoid conductors being interchanged, both mated and unmated;
- completely surrounded by a conductive shell;
- provided with male contacts on the fixed (device) side, and with female threaded stand-offs for screw type locking (4-40NC-2B thread);
- provided with female contacts on the free (cable) side, and with locking screws (4-40 NC-2A thread);
- provided with nine pins (two signal pins, two power pins, and five reserved pins)
- contacts shall be assigned to functions as shown in Figure A.6 and Table A.3;
- connector dimensions (mating face) shall be as shown in Figure A.7 and Figure A.8, Table A.4 and Table A.5, and specified in IEC 60807-3.

Table A.3 – Contact assignments for the external connector for typical industrial environments

PIN number	Function
1	Reserved
2	Reserved
3	Reserved
4	Reserved
5	Reserved
6	DATA + with the option of power +
7	DATA – with the option of power –
8	Reserved for option of power +
9	Reserved for option of power –

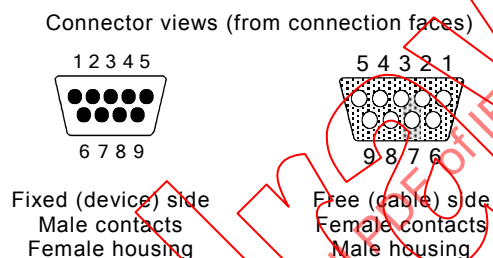


Figure A.6 – Contact designations for the external connector for typical industrial environments

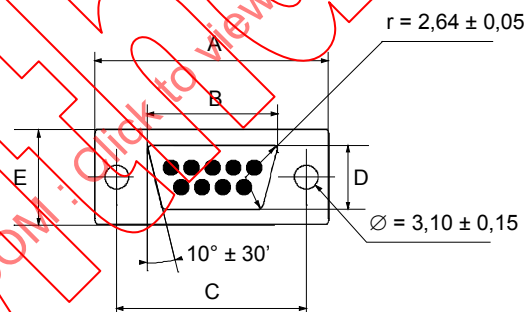


Figure A.7 – External fixed (device) side connector for typical industrial environments: dimensions

Table A.4 – Fixed (device) side connector dimensions

Fixed (device) side connector (male contacts, female housing)				
	Millimetres		Inches	
	max.	min.	max.	min.
A	31,19	30,43	1,23	1,20
B	17,04	16,79	0,67	0,66
C	25,12	24,87	0,99	0,98
D	8,48	8,23	0,33	0,32
E	12,93	12,17	0,51	0,48

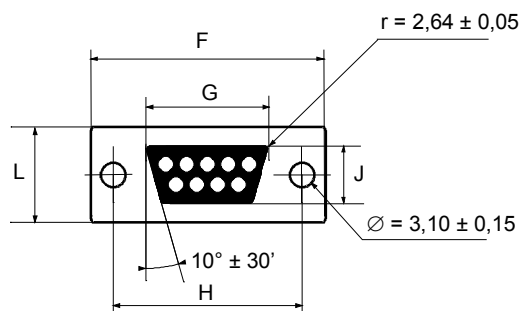


Figure A.8 – External free (cable) side connector for typical industrial environments: dimensions

Table A.5 – Free (cable) side connector dimensions

Free (cable) side connector (female contacts, male housing)				
	Millimetres		Inches	
	max.	min.	max.	min.
F	31,19	30,43	1,23	1,20
G	16,46	16,21	0,65	0,64
H	25,12	24,87	0,99	0,98
J	8,03	7,77	0,32	0,31
L	12,93	12,17	0,51	0,48

External connectors for optical medium

A fieldbus connector that is outside the enclosure of the fieldbus device and therefore requires protection against the electromagnetic and physical environment shall be specified as an external connector.

Two types of external connectors are specified in accordance with the environment of the installation.

A.2.3 External connector for typical industrial environments

A.2.3.1 External connector for typical industrial environments (1)

For the CPIC interface at the level of a fieldbus device, or an optical active star or an optical passive star, the connector used shall be compatible with the connector shown in Figure A.9 and Table A.6. (See IEC 61754-13.)

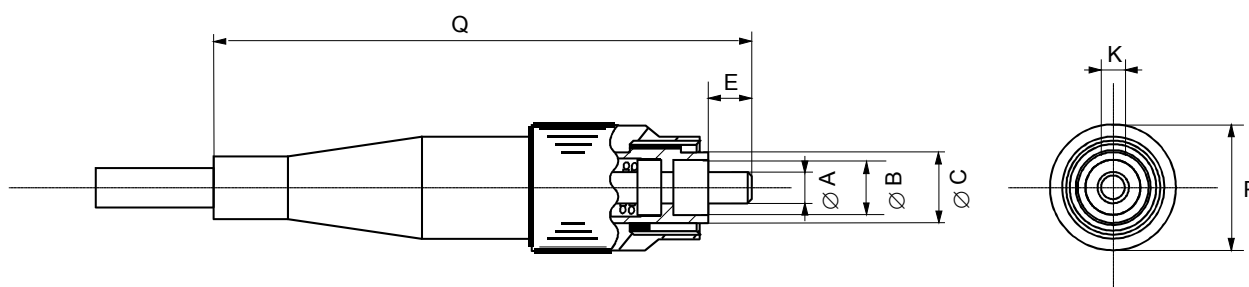


Figure A.9 – Optical connector for typical industrial environments (FC connector)

Table A.6 – Connector dimensions

Reference	Millimetres	
	min.	max.
Ø A	2,498	2,500
Ø B	4,40	4,42
Ø C	5,95	6,00
E	3,75	4,05
K	1,85	2,14
P	–	10,5
Q	–	45

A.2.3.2 External connector for typical industrial environments (2)

For the CPIC interface at the level of a fieldbus device, or an optical active star or an optical passive star, the connector used shall be compatible with the connector shown in Figure A.10.

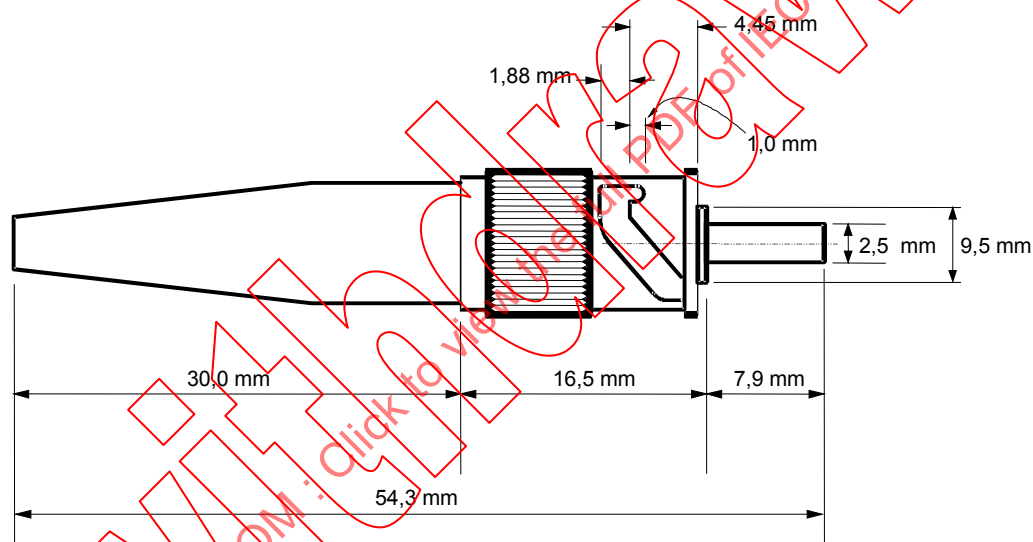


Figure A.10 – Optical connector for typical industrial environments (ST connector)

Annex B (informative)

Types 1 and 3: Cable specifications and trunk and spur lengths for the 31,25 kbit/s voltage-mode MAU

B.1 Cable description and specifications

The preferred fieldbus cable is specified in 12.8.2 for conformance testing, and it is referred to as type "A" fieldbus cable.

NOTE 1 This cable will probably be used in new installations.

Other types of cables can be used for fieldbus wiring, other than for conformance testing. The alternate preferred fieldbus cable is a multiple, twisted pair cable with an overall shield, hereinafter referred to as type "B" fieldbus cable.

NOTE 2 This cable will probably be used in both new and retrofit installations where multiple fieldbuses are run in the same area of the user's plant.

A less preferred fieldbus cable is a single or multiple, twisted pair cable without any shield, hereinafter referred to as type "C" fieldbus cable. The least preferred fieldbus cable is a multiple conductor cable without twisted pairs but with an overall shield, hereinafter referred to as type "D" fieldbus cable.

NOTE 3 Type "C" and "D" cables will mainly be used in retrofit applications. They will have some limitations in fieldbus distance and S/N ratios that the type "A" and "B" cables do not have. This may preclude the use of type "C" and "D" cables in certain applications.

Typical cable specifications at 25 °C are listed in Table B.1.

Table B.1 – Typical cable specifications

Parameter	Conditions	Type "B"	Type "C"	Type "D"
Impedance, Ω	f_r (31,25 kHz)	100 $\pm$ 30	Not specified	Not specified
Max. d.c. resistance, Ω /km	Per conductor	56	132	20
Max. attenuation, dB/km	1,25 f_r (39 kHz)	5,0	8,0	8,0
Nominal conductor cross-sectional area, mm ² (wire size)		0,32	0,13	1,25
Max. capacitive unbalance, nF/km	$\geq$ 30 m length	6	Not specified	Not specified

B.2 Typical trunk and spur lengths

Using the network configuration rules specified in 12.3.3, the maximum lengths for type "B", "C" and "D" cables, including all spurs, typically will be:

- type "B" – 1 200 m;
- type "C" – 400 m;
- type "D" – 200 m.

NOTE These typical guidelines do not supersede the network configuration rules of 12.3.3.

Allowable spur lengths for either bus or tree topology are dependent on the number of communication elements on the fieldbus. Table B.2 relates the recommended number of communication elements to spur length. Maximum spur lengths are the same for type "A", "B", "C", and "D" cables. The table assumes one communication element per spur. When a spur with passive trunk coupler has more than one communication element, the length of that spur should be reduced by 30 m per communication element. As the recommended maximum total spur length is 120 m, the maximum number of communication elements per spur should be four.

Table B.2 – Recommended maximum spur lengths versus number of communication elements

Total number of communication elements	Recommended maximum spur length (m)
25 to 32	0
19 to 24	30
15 to 18	60
13 to 14	90
1 to 12	120

Spurs of length less than 1 m should be regarded as splices.

Annex C (informative)

Types 1 and 7: Optical passive stars

C.1 Definition

A passive device in which the signal from input optical fibers is distributed among a larger number of output optical fibers (input and output optical fibers may be the same).

a) Optical reflective passive star

A device whose purpose is to reflect optical power input at any output port (see Figure C.1). This device can only be used with a single fiber mode MAU.

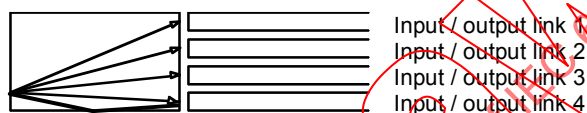


Figure C.1 – Example of an optical passive reflective star

b) Optical transmissive passive star

A device whose purpose is to divide optical power input at any output port (see Figure C.2). This device allows a broadcasting of information only over one direction. It can only be used with a dual fiber mode MAU.

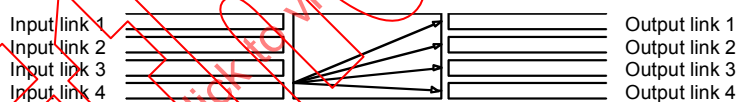


Figure C.2 – Example of an optical passive transmissive star

C.2 Example of attenuations

For a wavelength included between 700 nm and 900 nm, Table C.1 gives an example of minimal and maximal attenuations of optical passive star (these specifications are equally available for 62,5/125 fiber or 100/140 fiber).

Table C.1 – Optical passive star specification summary: example

$700 \text{ nm} \leq \lambda_p \leq 900 \text{ nm}$	Star 4/4	Star 8/8	Star 16/16	Star 32/32	Unit
Min. attenuation	–6,0	–9,0	–12,0	–16,0	dB
Max. attenuation	–9,0	–12,0	–16,0	–20,0	dB

Annex D (informative)

Types 1 and 7: Star topology

D.1 Examples of topology

This subclause illustrates some of the network topologies that can be constructed in accordance with this standard. This subclause does not imply that these are the only possible topologies.

The physical size of a network, both in geographic length and the number of desired fieldbus devices, will have a significant impact on the choice of network topology. When a limited number of fieldbus devices are required, almost any topology can be used. Figure D.1 illustrates a possible topology.

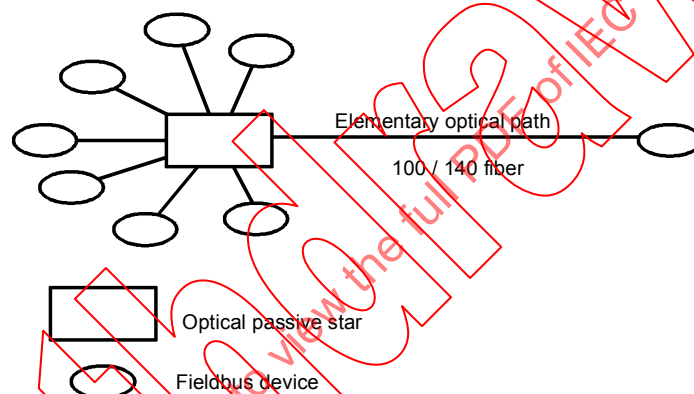


Figure D.1 – Example of star topology with 31,25 kbit/s, single fiber mode, optical MAU

For situations that require a large number of fieldbus devices located in widely separated geographic locations, a multi-star topology may be required. Topologies of this type may grow to very large numbers of communicating devices (see Figure D.2).

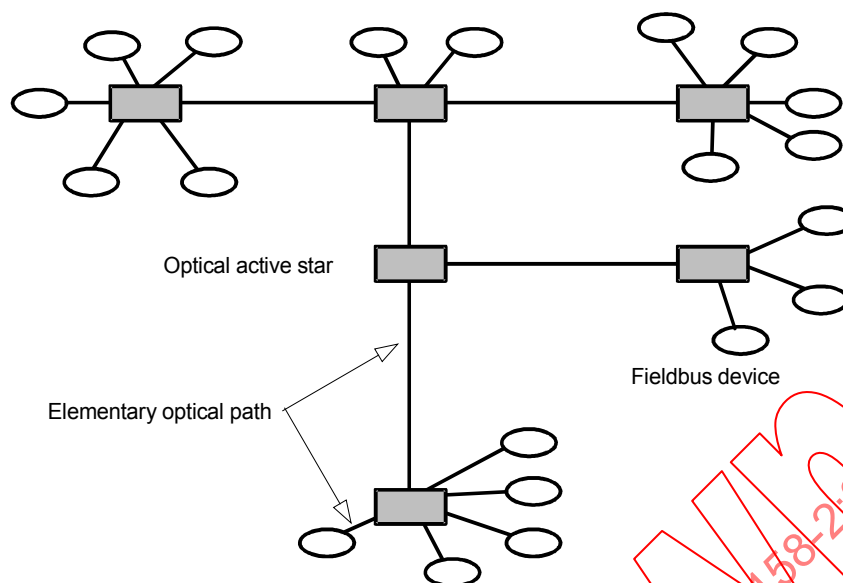


Figure D.2 – Multi-star topology with an optical MAU

D.2 Optical power budget

An optical power budget allows anticipation of the distribution of different losses and attenuations of the optical signal along an optical link.

From the transmitter effective launch power levels and the receiver operating range, it is possible to establish the minimum and maximum length of the link.

Two cases are considered.

- Minimum power case: corresponds to the minimum transmitter effective launch power, maximum losses, maximum penalties and maximum margin system, and the lower limit of the receiver operating range. This case gives the maximum guaranteed length.
- Maximum power case: corresponds to the maximum transmitter effective launch power, minimum losses, minimum penalties and minimum margin system, and the upper limit of the receiver operating range. This case gives the minimum guaranteed length.

Two examples are given. The first corresponds to the topology shown in Figure D.1 and the second, to the topology given in Figure D.2.

D.2.1 Passive star topology (31,25 kbit/s, single fiber mode, optical MAU)

For this example the transmission between high sensitivity modems is considered. Table D.1 summarizes the passive star topology specifications.

Parameters that will be considered are the following:

- typical fiber 100/140 attenuation: 4,0 dB/km
- optical passive star 8/8 attenuation: 9,0 dBm to 12,0 dB
- effective launch power (100/140 μ m fiber): –14,5 dBm to –12,5 dBm
- high sensitivity receiver operating range: –40,0 dBm to –20,0 dBm

Table D.1 – Passive star topology

Parameters	max.	min.	Units
Receiver operating range (high sensitivity)	–40,0	–20,0	dBm
Effective launch power	–14,5	–12,5	dBm
Dynamics for all losses and attenuations	25,5	7,5	dB
Margin system	3,0	0,0	dB
Losses due to two connectors	2,0	0,0	dB
Reflective optical passive star (8/8)	12,0	9,0	dB
Max. and min. attenuations due to fiber	8,5	–	dB
Length of fiber between modems (fiber attenuation: 4,0 dB/km)	2 125	0	m

D.2.2 Active star topology (optical MAU)

For this example, the transmission between low sensitivity modems is considered. Table D.2 summarizes the passive star topology specifications.

Parameters that will be considered are the following:

- typical fiber 62,5/125 attenuation: 3,0 dB/km
- transmitter (effective launch power): $(-11,5 \pm 1,5)$ dBm
- low sensitivity receiver (receiver operating range): $(-30,0 \text{ to } -10,0)$ dBm.

Table D.2 – Active star topology

Parameters	max.	min.	Unit
Receiver operating range (high sensitivity)	–30,0	–10,0	dBm
Transmitter effective launch power	–13,0	–10,0	dBm
Dynamics for all losses and attenuations	17,0	0,0	dB
Margin system	3,0	0,0	dB
Losses due to two connectors	2,0	0,0	dB
Max. and min. attenuations due to fiber	12,0	0,0	dB
Length of fiber between modems (fiber attenuation 3,0 dB/km)	4 000	0	m

D.3 Mixed with wire media

The mixing of wire and optical media is achieved with an electro-optical converter. This element presents one or several wire medium accesses and one or several optical accesses. Each access, wire or optical, shall respect the transmit and receive circuit specifications.

This element regenerates the signal to their nominal optical power levels or electrical levels and to nominal timing characteristics (jitter, rise and fall times, slew rate, etc.).

Two examples are shown in Figure D.3 and Figure D.4.

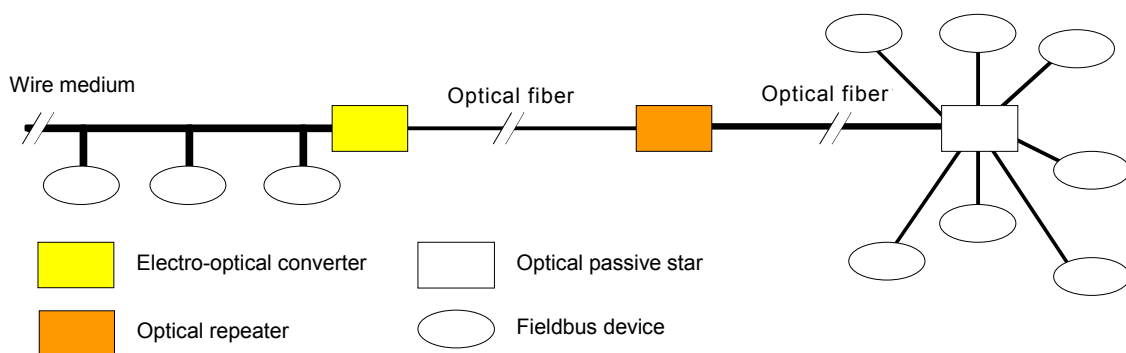


Figure D.3 – Example of mixture between wire and optical media for a 31,25 kbit/s bit rate

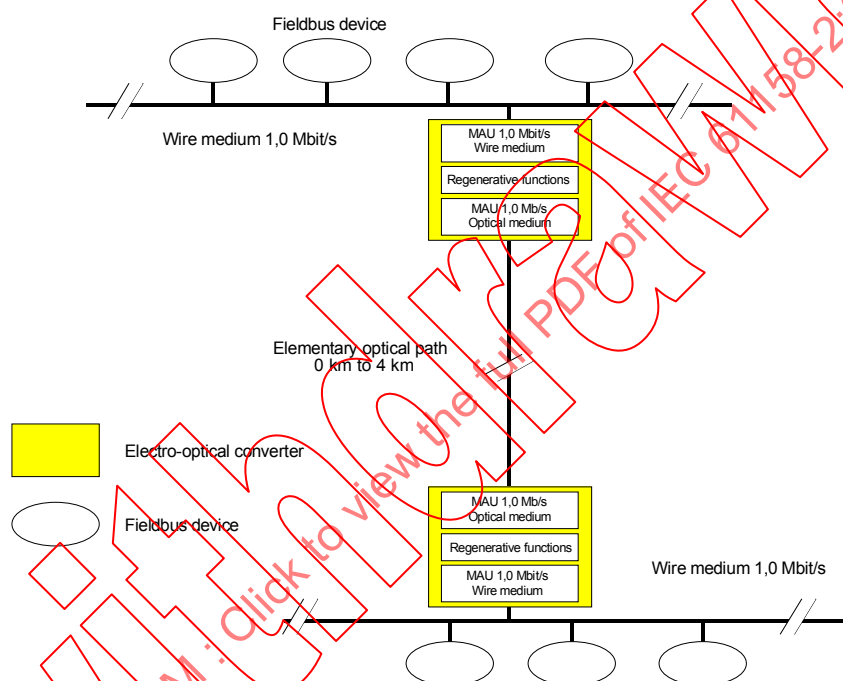


Figure D.4 – Example of mixture between wire and optical media

Annex E (informative)

Type 1: Alternate fibers

E.1 Alternate fibers for dual-fiber mode

It is possible to use other fibers than the fiber A1d specified as standard test fiber. Depending on the characteristics of these fibers, effective launch power levels differ. On the other hand, receiver operating ranges for low and high sensitivities are identical.

Table E.1 allows a comparison between these different fibers.

Table E.1 – Alternate fibers for dual-fiber mode

Parameters	Subclause	Specified fiber test standard	Specified alternate fiber	Specified alternate fiber
Fiber	15.7.2	A1b (62,5/125)	A1a (50/125)	A1d (100/140)
Effective launch power	15.4.2	$(-11,5 \pm 1,5)$ dBm	$(-14,5 \pm 1,5)$ dBm	$(-7,5 \pm 1,0)$ dBm
Receiver operating range low sensitivity	15.5.2	-30,0 dBm to -10,0 dBm	-30,0 dBm to -10,0 dBm	-30,0 dBm to -10,0 dBm
Receiver operating range high sensitivity	15.5.2	-40,0 dBm to -20,0 dBm	-40,0 dBm to -20,0 dBm	-40,0 dBm to -20,0 dBm

E.2 Alternate fibers for single-fiber mode

It is possible to use other fibers than the fiber A1d specified as standard test fiber. Depending on the characteristics of these fibers, effective launch power levels differ. On the other hand, receiver operating ranges for low and high sensitivities are identical.

Table E.2 allows a comparison between these different fibers.

Table E.2 – Alternate fibers for single-fiber mode

Parameters	Subclause	Specified fiber test standard	Specified alternate fiber	Specified alternate fiber
Fiber	16.7.2	A1d (100/140)	A1a (50/125)	A1b (62,5/125)
Effective launch power	16.4.2	$(-13,5 \pm 1,0)$ dBm	$(-21,0 \pm 1,0)$ dBm	$(-17,5 \pm 1,0)$ dBm
Receiver operating range low sensitivity	16.5.2	-30,0 dBm to -12,5 dBm	-30,0 dBm to -12,5 dBm	-30,0 dBm to -12,5 dBm
Receiver operating range high sensitivity	16.5.2	-40,0 dBm to -20,0 dBm	-40,0 dBm to -20,0 dBm	-40,0 dBm to -20,0 dBm

Annex F (normative)

Type 2: Connector specification

F.1 Connector for coaxial wire medium

Attachment to the coaxial medium shall be via BNC (see IEC 60169-8, Annex A) or TNC (see IEC 60169-17, 75 Ω variant) plug and jack connectors.

The TNC variant shall be sealed to IP67 minimum. Where sealing is required, the node shall also meet IP67 requirements.

NOTE It is possible to achieve sealing up to IP65 with the BNC.

The characteristic impedance shall be between 45 Ω and 80 Ω .

The center conductor contact shall be plated in conformance with one of the following specifications:

- a) 0,75 μm gold minimum over 1,25 μm nickel minimum over base metal;
- b) 0,05 μm to 0,2 μm gold flash over 1,25 μm palladium nickel minimum over 1,25 μm nickel minimum over base metal.

F.2 Connector for optical medium

F.2.1 General requirements

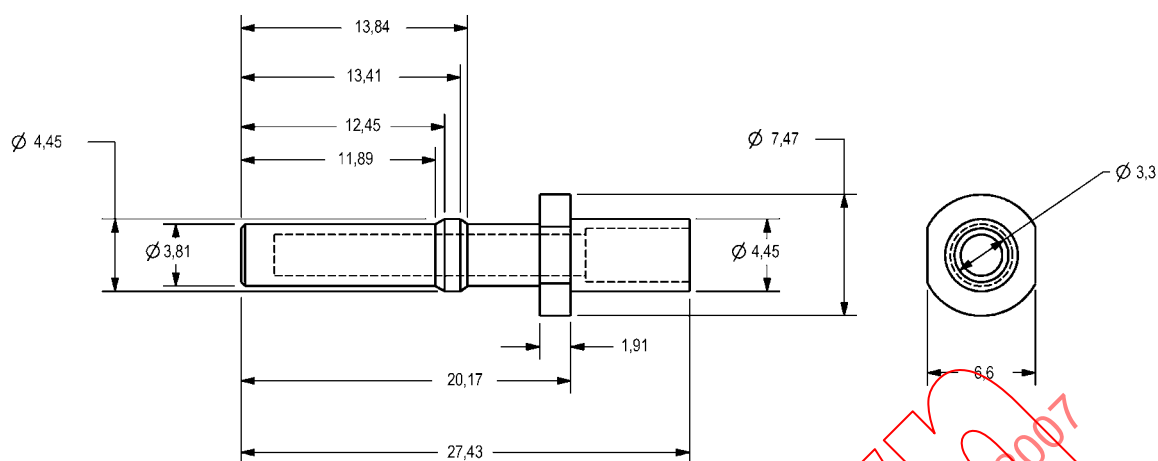
Connectors for optical medium shall meet the requirements specified in Table F.1.

Table F.1 – Connector requirements

Specification	Short range	Medium and long range
Connector Insertion Loss (nominal value)	1,5 dB	1,0 dB

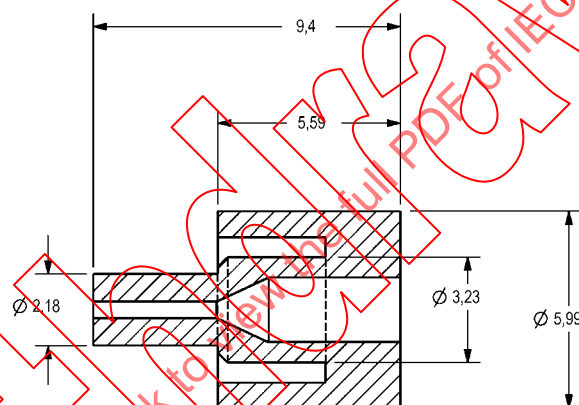
F.2.2 Connector for short range optical medium

This variant shall use a two-part connector, composed of a pin connector (as specified in Figure F.1, and a crimp ring that crimps the cable to the pin connector (as specified in Figure F.2).



NOTE Dimensions are in mm.

Figure F.1 – Pin connector for short range optical medium



NOTE Dimensions are in mm.

Figure F.2 – Crimp ring for short range optical medium

F.2.3 Connector for medium and long range optical medium

These variants shall use an ST type connector, as specified in IEC 61754-2.

F.3 Connector for NAP medium

The connector used at both ends of a NAP connection shall be a shielded 8-pin RJ-45 type connector (see IEC 60603-7).

The NAP connector pins shall be as shown in Table F.2. This pin definition shall apply to both ends of the cable. The connector shall be installed on the cable to meet the requirements shown in Figure 91.

Table F.2 – NAP connector pin definition

Pin number	Signal name
1	GND REF
2	N/C (no connection)
3	Tx_H
4	Tx_L
5	Rx_L
6	Rx_H
7	N/C (no connection)
8	GND REF

Annex G (normative)

Type 2: Repeater machine sublayers (RM, RRM) and redundant PhLs

G.1 General

A PhL repeater device (bus or ring) shall be used to increase trunk lengths and number of nodes by connecting full length and/or fully loaded sections of medium. Repeaters may also be used to connect between different PhL variants, for example between fiber and coaxial wire. In addition, a ring repeater device shall support media redundancy through the use of a ring topology.

Repeater devices shall conform to all applicable clauses concerning the MAU sublayer and the MDS-MAU interface. A PhL bus repeater device shall consist of two (or more) complete PhL interfaces (MDS/MAU, from the same or different variants) connected together by a Repeater Machine (RM) sublayer. A PhL ring repeater device shall consist of two or more complete PhL interfaces connected together by a Ring Repeater Machine (RRM) sublayer.

A PhL repeater (bus or ring) need not have a MAC ID. A PhL repeater device is not the source of network traffic and shall not support layers above the RM or RRM sublayers. Rather, it shall only be responsible for retransmitting network traffic from one segment to one or more other segments, and for the correct implementation of the RM or RRM sublayer.

Optionally, a node may include the RM or RRM sublayer functionality as part of that node's MAC sublayer to allow a network node to function as both a network node and a repeater between PhL variants. This type of node shall be considered a network node and shall have a MAC ID.

A node that supports multiple PhL variants and an RM sublayer shall function as both a node (that is the source of network traffic) with redundant PhL entities (see G.3) and a PhL bus repeater device. A node that supports multiple PhL variants and a RRM sublayer shall function as both a node and a PhL ring repeater device.

G.2 Repeater machine (RM) sublayer

G.2.1 Requirements

Figure G.1 shows the reference model for a PhL bus repeater device.

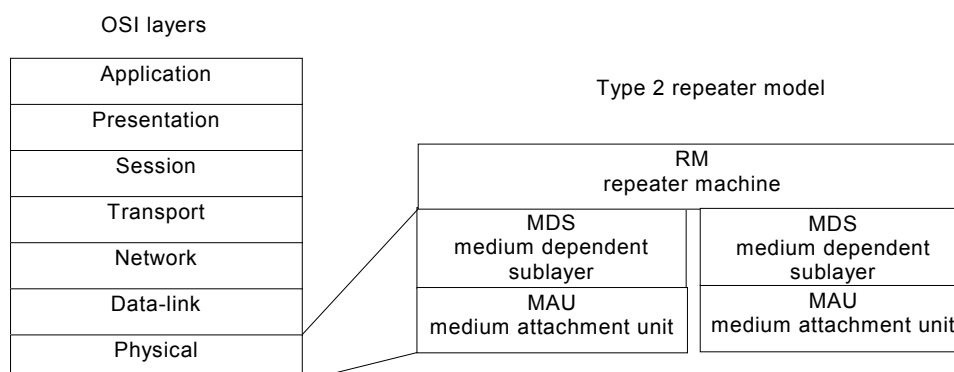


Figure G.1 – PhL repeater device reference model

Each of the two (or more) PhL entities connected by the RM sublayer shall follow the specifications shown for a given PhL variant.

A RM sublayer shall be used as a connection between segments to form a link as shown in Figure 84. Any MAC ID used on one PhL variant that is connected to another PhL variant using the RM sublayer shall be unique as the two sides share a common link.

The RM sublayer shall be completely transparent to network traffic. All valid MAC symbols between the start and end delimiters (inclusive) that are received by one PhL entity in the RM shall be passed unaltered to all of the others for transmission. The preamble shall be regenerated by the RM sublayer to correct any discrepancies introduced by the MDS or MAU. Preamble regeneration shall recreate the original preamble of 16 consecutive {1} M_symbols and may introduce up to an additional 4 consecutive {1} M_symbols. Following the retransmission of the end delimiter, the RM sublayer may introduce up to 4 additional consecutive M_symbols of any value.

The RM shall be a half-duplex sublayer. Only one PhL entity connected to the RM shall receive data at any one time while all the other PhL entities are retransmitting the received data.

The RM sublayer shall not be the cause of collisions on any medium. At any point in time, only one PhL entity shall be selected for reception while all others shall be selected for transmission. The PhL entity that is selected for reception shall be based on the state of the PLS_CARRIER_INDICATION from the PhL entity that indicates PLS_CARRIER_INDICATION (true) first. All other PhL entities connected to the RM sublayer shall be set for transmission while the PhL entity is receiving PLS_CARRIER_INDICATION (true) and PLS_FRAME_INDICATION (true). While that PhL entity is selected for reception, any PLS_CARRIER_INDICATION (true) from other PhL entities shall be ignored. A new PhL entity shall be selected for reception after the completion of the previous frame (PLS_FRAME_INDICATION = false).

The RM sublayer shall be designed to minimize the length of time delay that is added to the PLS_DATA_INDICATION retransmission. The RM sublayer time delay shall be defined as the time delay from the end of the received start delimiter to the end of the retransmitted start delimiter as measured at the MDS-MAU interface. Any delay added by the RM sublayer shall be included in the calculation of slot time used by the MAC sublayer. The total amount of delay that is added by the RM sublayer shall be made available for use by network configuration tools and users.

NOTE Any delay in the RM sublayer reduces the total amount of medium that can be supported and reduces the efficiency of the network by increasing the slot time required by the DLL protocol (see IEC 61158-4-2).

The RM sublayer shall be designed to reconstruct the data as transmitted from the originating node. This requirement shall allow an unlimited number of repeaters to be cascaded (in series) with no distortion being added to the original data by the repeaters. The only limit to the total number of RM sublayers that can be cascaded shall be the ability of the slot time to be adjusted to compensate for the total amount of delay on the medium. The maximum slot time is defined in the DLL protocol (see IEC 61158-4-2).

G.2.2 RM sublayer state machine (informative)

NOTE 1 This subclause describes an example implementation. There are no normative requirements.

The RM sublayer consists of two interconnected state machines. The first machine dictates which channel is receiving while all other channels are transmitting. The second state machine controls when the transmitting channel transmits data.

The first state machine consists of one state per channel to be arbitrated. When the second machine is in its idle state and a PLS_CARRIER_INDICATION arrives on any channel, this state machine moves to the state corresponding to the indication. If the second machine is in any state other than idle, this machine is locked and does not move, independent of PLS_CARRIER_INDICATION. The simultaneous first arrivals of two or more PLS_CARRIER_INDICATIONS is not a normal operating condition of the PhL and this machine's state transitions are unspecified.

The second state machine consists of 4 states: RM_IDLE, RM_CARRIER, RM_FRAME, RM_WAIT. If the node MAC sublayer is transmitting data, the RM should be forced to RM_WAIT:

- RM_Idle indicates that no activity is present on any channel. Other states move to RM_Idle when pls_carrier_indication is false for every channel. The presence of pls_carrier_indication on any channel causes the machine to move to the state RM_Carrier. While in RM_Idle, the pls_frame_request on all channels is false. The simultaneous first arrivals of two or more pls_carrier_indication is not a normal operating condition of the network and this machine should transition to RM_Wait.
- RM_Carrier indicates receive activity, but the MDS sublayer has not yet achieved lock (pls_lock_indication = false). This state should activate pls_frame_request on all channel's except the one indicated by the first machine as being the receive channel. The pls_data_request is preamble. If preamble regeneration is not used, this state serves as a placeholder to lock the first machine from transitioning. The presence of pls_lock_indication on the channel selected by the first machine causes the machine to move to the state RM_Frame;
- RM_Frame indicates the active repeating of data. This state activates pls_frame_request on all channels except the one indicated by the first machine as being the receive channel. It moves M_symbols from the receiving PhL entity to the transmitting channels, pls_data_indication => pls_data_request. At the point where the start delimiter of the repeated data is transmitted, it is required that at least 16 M_symbols of preamble have already been transmitted. The loss of pls_lock_indication on the channel selected by the first machine causes the machine to move to state RM_Wait;
- RM_Wait indicates the closing period of the repeated data. It holds off both state machines from moving to any other state to prevent repeating of echoes and end of packet noise. The machine remains in RM_Wait until pls_carrier_indication is false for all channels and the end of the blanking timer has occurred (see DLL protocol, IEC 61158-4-2). At that point, the machine moves to RM_Idle. While in RM_Wait, the pls_frame_request on all channels is false.

The PLS_FRAME_INDICATION of the receiving channel is not directly used by the repeater machines. Indirectly, the condition causing the end of frame should also force the receiver clock recovery to immediately unlock (PLS_LOCK_INDICATION = false) to eliminate repetition of noise after the end delimiter is repeated.

NOTE 2 Failure to maintain PLS_LOCK_INDICATION or failure to detect a valid start delimiter probably indicates a corrupted data frame or a burst of noise on the medium. The RM should be designed to minimize the possibility of repeating a corrupted frame or noise.

G.3 Redundant PhL

Figure G.2 shows a reference model for a node that contains multiple MDS and MAU entities to achieve PhL redundancy.

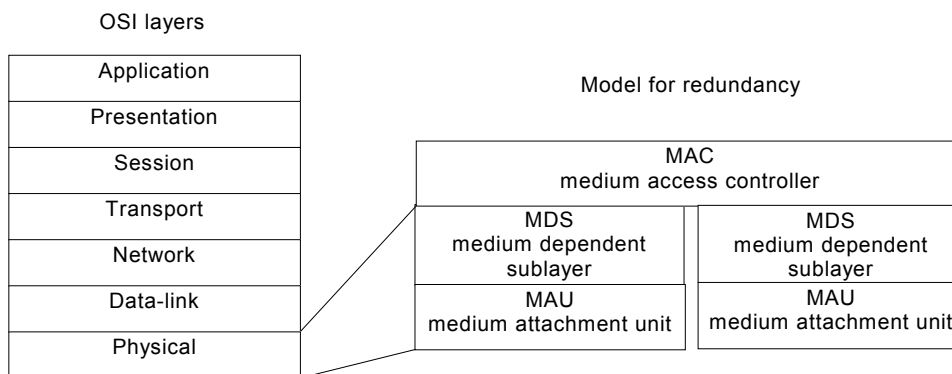


Figure G.2 – Reference model for redundancy

NOTE 1 The basic model is very similar to that used for the PhL Repeater devices specified in G.2.

The redundant PhL entities ('channels') in a single node shall transmit the same information on all channels at all times. The PLS_FRAME_REQUEST and PLS_DATA_REQUEST shall be common to all redundant channels.

PLS_DATA_INDICATION, PLS_CARRIER_INDICATION, PLS_FRAME_INDICATION, PLS_LOCK_INDICATION and PLS_STATUS_INDICATION shall be independent for each channel. At any point in time, some nodes may listen to one channel while other nodes listen to the other channel. Since both channels are considered independent and identical, neither channel shall be considered to be primary or preferred even though they are generally referred to as channel A and channel B.

NOTE 2 The MAC sublayer on each node determines which channel to select for use by the upper layers of its node. This determination is made independently on each node.

As the same data is transmitted on both channels, the same data shall be received on both channels. If PLS_FRAME_INDICATION of a channel has not yet been true for a MAC frame when PLS_STATUS_INDICATION of the other channel signals Normal, an error shall be declared on the channel that did not detect the MAC frame. Because the smallest MAC frame has 64 Ph-symbols from the end of the start delimiter to the end of the end delimiter, the two channels shall be designed and installed such that the difference in MAC frame arrival times at the DLL is ≤ 64 Ph-symbol times.

NOTE 3 If one channel detects a Normal frame and the other channel does not, the DLL raises either DLL_EV_ERRA or DLL_EV_ERRB (see IEC 61158-4-2).

In the example of a node with redundant PhL entities and a NAP shown in Figure G.3, the MAC sublayer shall support the RM sublayer functionality to allow the data on the selected channel to be retransmitted onto the NAP port. At the same time, the data received on the NAP shall be transmitted onto both of the redundant channels. Any data sourced from this node shall be transmitted on both channels and the NAP at the same time.

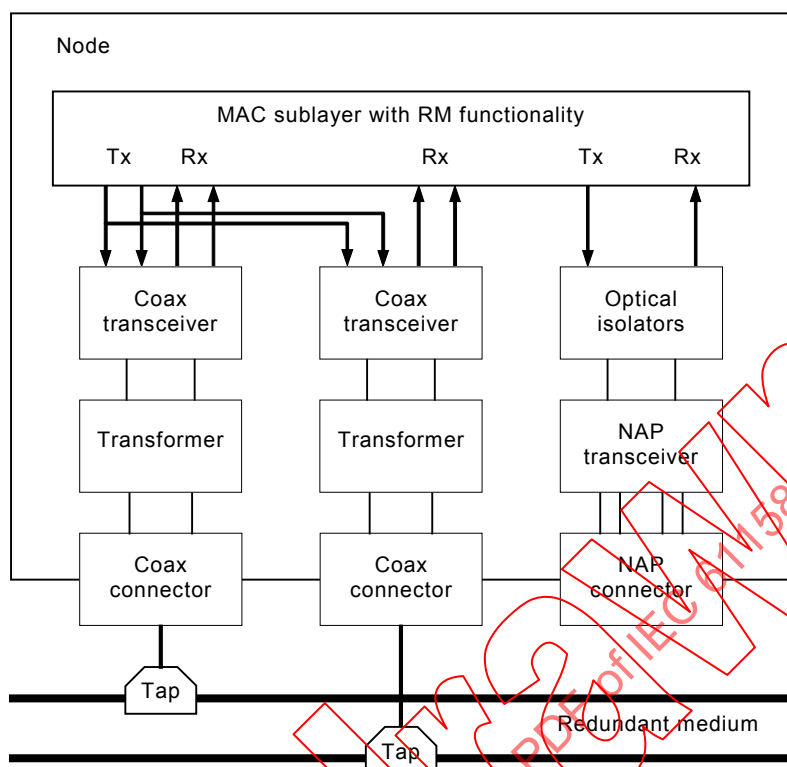
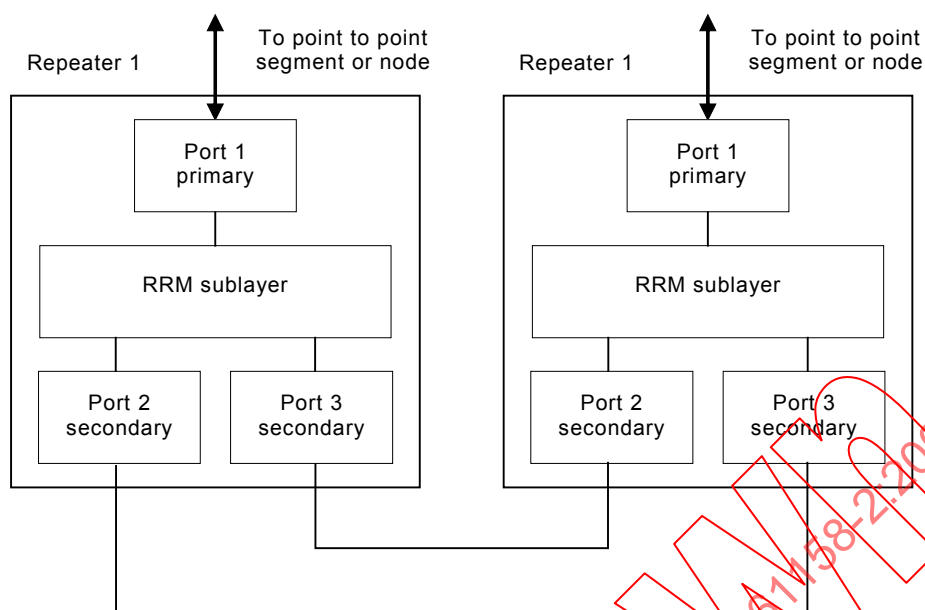


Figure G.3 – Block diagram showing redundant coaxial medium and NAP

G.4 Ring repeater machine (RRM) sublayer

G.4.1 Requirements

The minimum RRM shall be a three-port packet based switch (see Figure G.4). Port 1, the primary port, shall see a given data packet only once, and may be used as an interface to point to point network segments or to a node. The two secondary ports, port 2 and 3, shall be equal and shall participate in the ring. The RRM shall decide which port to repeat data packets from and shall prevent data packets from endlessly circling the ring.



NOTE If one connection fails, the other may still be active.

Figure G.4 – Block diagram showing ring repeaters

G.4.2 RRM sublayer operation

G.4.2.1 RRM requirements

To support RRM operation, the ports in each ring repeater shall meet the following requirements:

- The secondary ports in each repeater shall have the ability to send and receive data at the same time. Each secondary port shall be independent of the other port, and each secondary port shall also have the ability to operate in a duplex fashion with a separate receiver and transmitter for each port.
- The RRM shall have the ability to detect the network slot time, either by deciphering the moderator packet or by monitoring network activity, or by some other means.
- Each secondary port shall have its own fiber port stack counter, called `fps_portx`, where `x` is the port number.

RRM operation shall start in an idle state when there is no network activity and `fps_port2` and `fps_port3` are both zero.

G.4.2.2 Port segmentation

The segmentation process shall be used by the RRM to reset counters for the synchronization purpose. At power up ports 2 and 3 shall begin in segmentation mode. The ports shall return to segmentation mode any time that communication is lost between adjacent fiber connected repeater ports. A port in segmentation mode shall block all messages from the other ports within the same module/node. Further a port in segmentation mode shall not rebroadcast segmentation frames from other ports within the same module.

NOTE For example, a node will enter segmentation mode during power up, when a fiber cable is disconnected from one of the fiber ports, or when traffic stops for one second or more.

In addition, the RRM shall force segmentation mode at any time the RRM detects that the counters are out of sync with traffic. Counter synchronization/resynchronization can be performed by determining the correct NUT boundaries.

A node shall enter segmentation mode based on the following conditions :

- upon power up,
- an echo of message is not received from an adjacent connected node,
- fiber link between two ports is quiet for more than one second, indicating no traffic (idle).

This method uses two special segmentation frames to acquire counter synchronization. The segmentation frames consist of M_{symbols} , as defined in 5.3.2. The segmentation frames are used for RRM handshaking during the segmentation process.

During segmentation, the affected port will broadcast as a query a preamble of 32 consecutive {1} M_{symbols} , as shown in Figure G.5. A port that is connected to a port broadcasting 32 consecutive {1} M_{symbols} that is in segmentation shall respond upon hearing this preamble with a (16 M_{symbols} preamble, start delimiter, 16 M_{symbols} preamble) sequence as shown in Figure G.6. A module transmitting preamble who is soliciting a response shall listen for a (preamble, start delimiter, preamble) sequence. Upon hearing a response it shall then reset the appropriate fps_portx counters, switch from port segmentation mode to port active mode. The port shall only be switched from segmentation mode to port active mode during a NUT boundary (quiet time). The segmentation process shall be used by the RRM to reset counters for the synchronization purpose. A port in segmentation mode and broadcasting queries shall continue until a response has been received back from a connected node. Upon receiving a response and during the NUT quiet time, the port may be put in service for transmission of data packets.

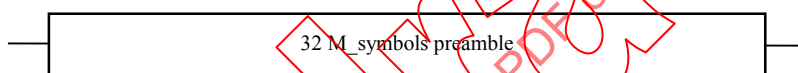


Figure G.5 – Segmentation query

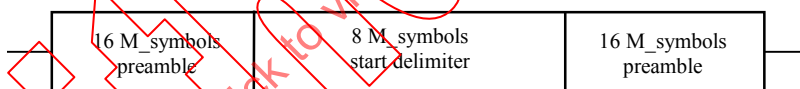


Figure G.6 – Segmentation response

G.4.2.3 Main operation

The port that sees network activity first shall define where the data shall be repeated to. If port 2 sees network activity first, data shall be repeated from port 2 to port 1 and port 3 (see details in G.4.2.4). Similarly, if port 1 sees network activity first, data shall be repeated from port 1 to port 2 and port 3 (see details in G.4.2.5). Port 2 and 3 are equal, so the behaviour of the RRM when port 2 sees activity first shall be identical to its behaviour when port 3 sees activity first.

For correct power up operation and to recover from a media failure, the RRM requires a timeout with no network activity equal to the slot time.

NOTE 1 It may be required that SMAX be set to one greater than the actual number of nodes on the network to get this timeout. This method will guarantee at least one quiet time per NUT. There is no problem with multiple quiet times per NUT.

NOTE 2 The RRM does not store parts of the frame to determine whether or not echoes are actually the same data packet that was sent transmitted. The order of data packets is guaranteed by the Type 2 DLL that specifies that nodes shall transmit sequentially. It is not possible for the order of the echoed frames to become garbled, unless a media or module malfunction occurs. At the instant of media malfunction a frame may be lost. However, the network will continue to function normally since the other message path still exists.

NOTE 3 The maximum value of fps_portx can be calculated as follows. The shortest possible data packet length is 56 bits, or 11,2 μs . The minimum time between frames is the node turn around time of 11,2 μs . At a maximum distance between the repeaters of 22,5 km, no more than 10 data packets can be travelling between neighbouring modules.

The corresponding main switch state machine for RRM operation is shown in G.4.2.6.

G.4.2.4 RRM operation when port 2 (or port 3) is active first

In the case where port 2 is active first, the RRM operation shall be as follows.

Port 2 receives the data packet. Since `fps_port2` is zero, the RRM shall repeat the data to port 1, port 2 and port 3 and shall increment `fps_port3`.

NOTE 1 The data is repeated out of the receive port, port 2, because the neighbouring RRM expects this to occur. This action generates an echo packet.

The RRM shall then wait for either:

- 1) Network activity on port 1.
See G.4.2.5 for resulting behaviour.
- 2) New network activity on port 2.
The RRM shall simply behave as it did previously.

NOTE 2 This requires that `fps_port3` be allowed to be greater than one and less than 11, since the worst-case timeout will have occurred by the time `fps_port3` reaches 11 (see case 4 below).

- 3) Reception of a data packet on port 3.
This data packet should be the echo of the packet that was originally transmitted out of port 3 and is returned by the neighbouring module. Upon reception of this packet, `fps_port3` shall be decremented and the RRM shall return to the original idle state. Reception of this data packet shall not cause the RRM to repeat the packet to ports 1 and 2.

NOTE 3 This is because the `fps_port3` counter is non-zero, which indicates to the RRM that the received packet is an echo and is not a new data packet. Using this mechanism, the RRM prevents packets from endlessly circling the ring.

- 4) A timeout with no network activity equal to the slot time occurs.
In this case, the neighbouring module has not returned the data packet transmitted out of port 3. This may have occurred due to a module malfunction or a media failure. If this occurs, `fps_port2` and `fps_port3` shall be reset to zero.

Port 2 and 3 are equal, so the behaviour of the RRM when port 3 sees activity first shall be identical to its behaviour when port 2 sees activity first (roles for port 2 and 3 shall be inverted in sequence above).

The corresponding state machine for port 2 (and 3) is shown in G.4.2.6.

G.4.2.5 RRM operation when port 1 is active first

In the case where port 1 is active first, the RRM operation shall be as follows.

Port 1 receives the data packet. The RRM shall repeat this packet by transmitting it out of port 2 and 3. When the port 2 and 3 transmit this data packet, they shall both increment their respective `fps_portx` counters.

The RRM shall then wait for either:

- a) Network activity on port 1.
The RRM shall simply behave as it did previously, namely transmitting the packet out of port 2 and port 3 and incrementing `fps_port2` and `fps_port3`.
- b) Network activity on port 2 or port 3.
Similar to case 3 in G.4.2.4: in this situation the next data packet that port 2 or port 3 receives should be an echo from a neighbouring module. Upon reception of this data packet, the port shall decrement its `fps_portx` counter. It shall not repeat this echoed packet.

- c) A timeout with no network activity equal to the slot time occurs.
Again, this means that echoes were not received (for whatever reason). In this case, `fps_port2` and `fps_port3` shall be reset to zero.

The corresponding state machine for port 1 is shown in G.4.2.6.

G.4.2.6 State machines

Figure G.7 shows the main switch state machine for RRM operation.

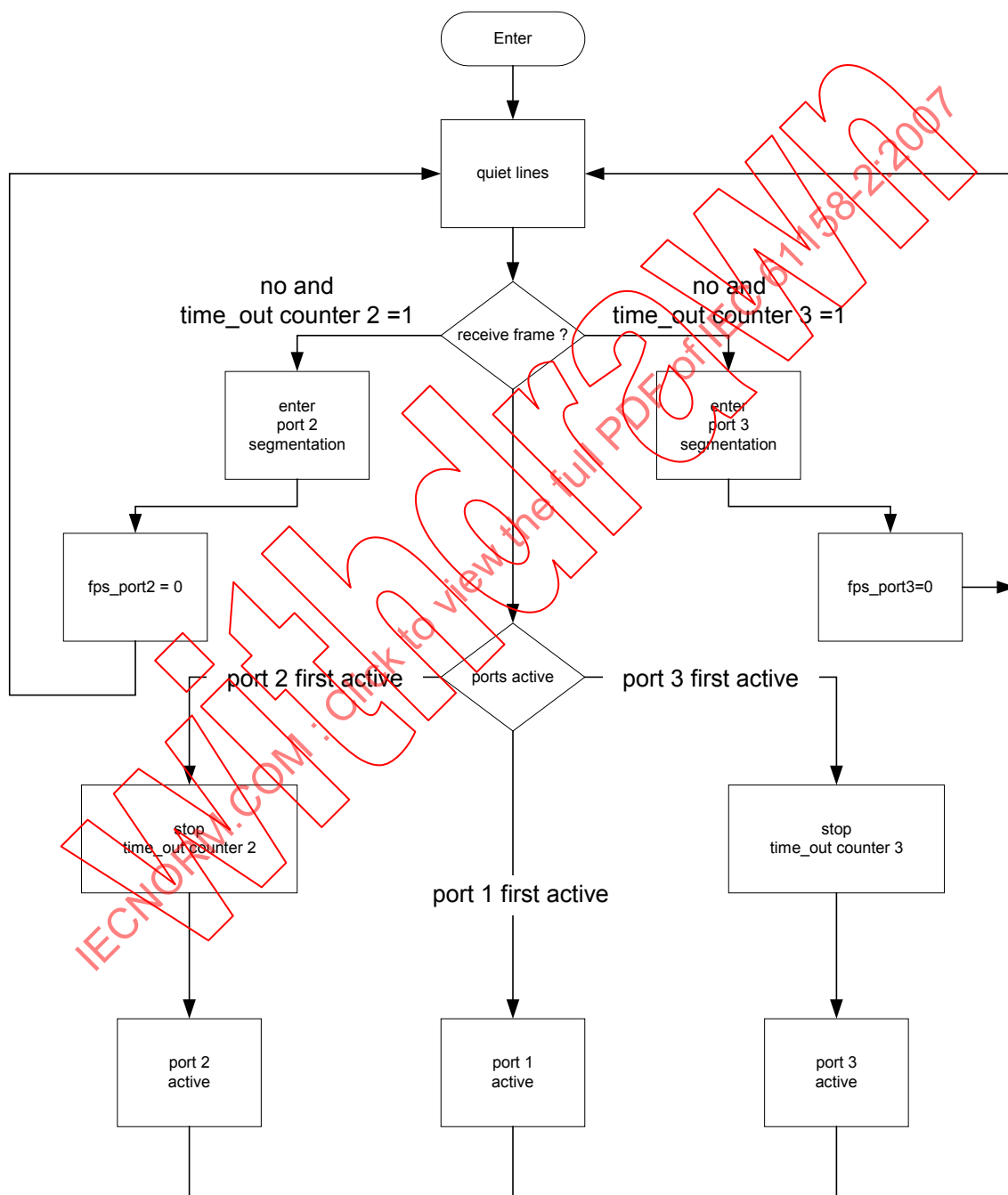


Figure G.7 – Main switch state machine

Figure G.8 shows the RRM behaviour when port 1 is active first.

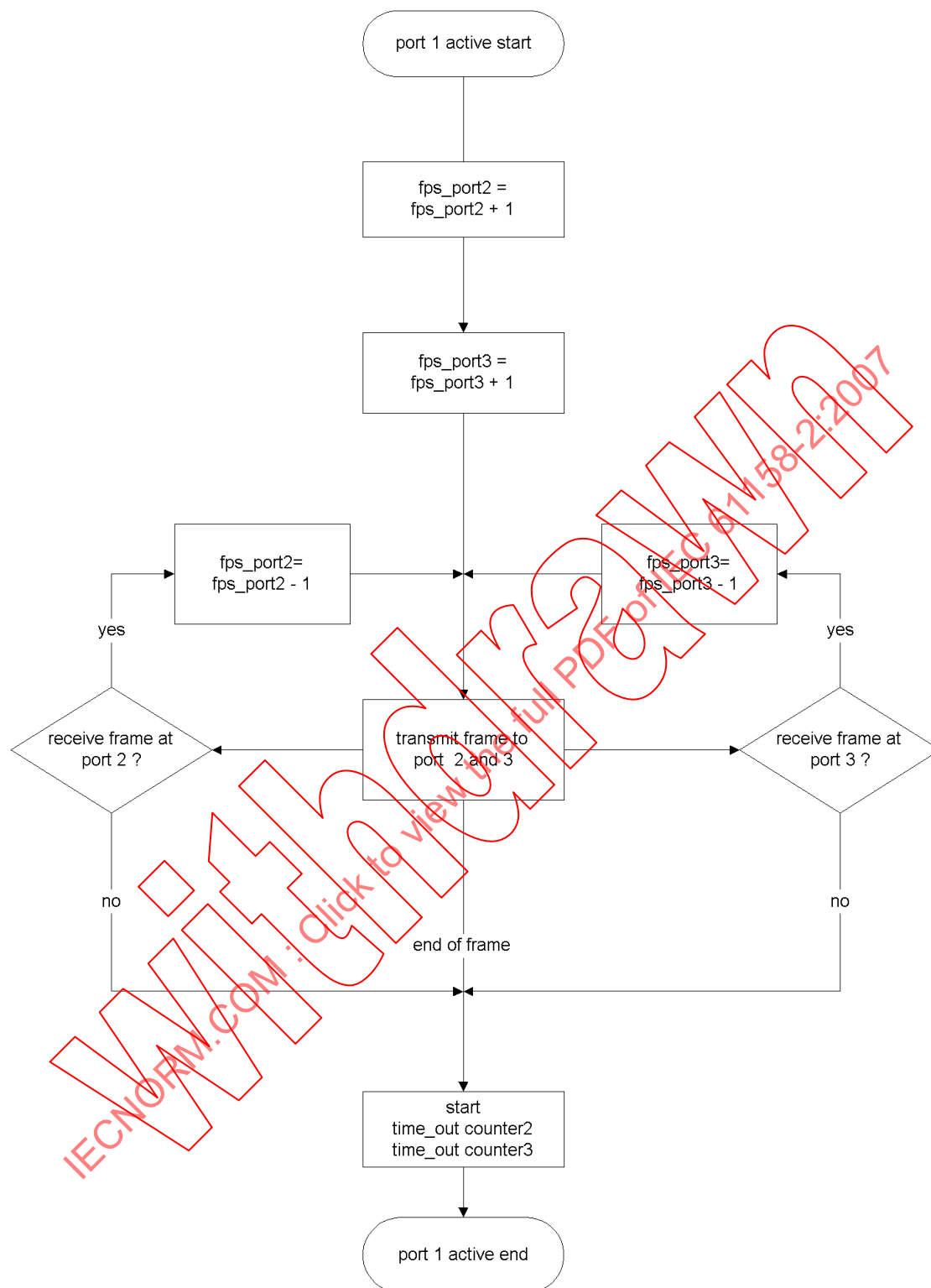


Figure G.8 – Port 1 sees network activity first

Figure G.5 shows the RRM behaviour when port 2 is active first. RRM behaviour when port 3 is active first shall be identical, with "2" and "3" being exchanged in Figure G.9.

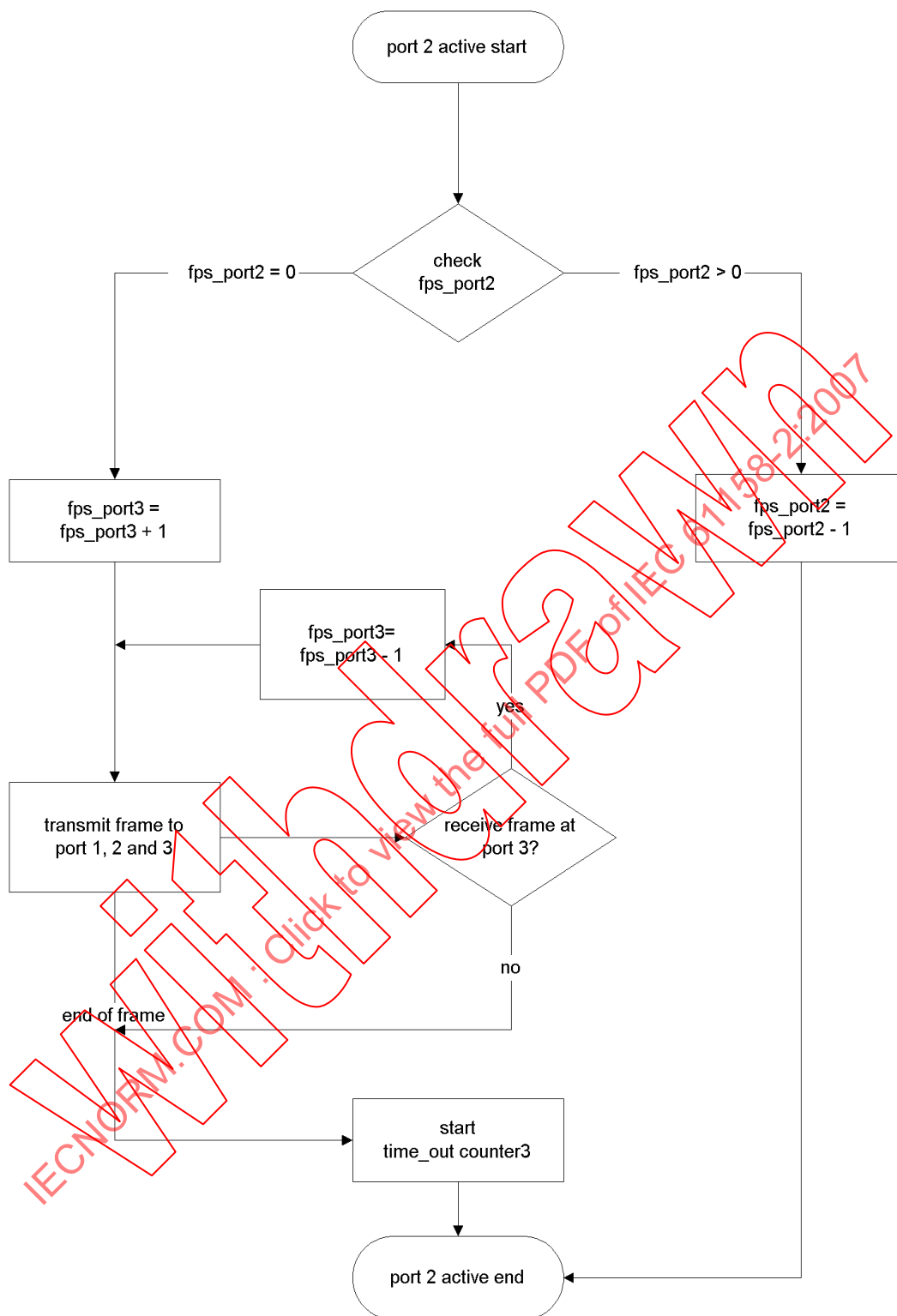


Figure G.9 – Port 2 sees network activity first

Annex H (informative)

Type 2: Reference design examples

H.1 MAU: 5 Mbit/s, voltage mode, coaxial wire

H.1.1 Transceiver reference design example

The transmitter, shown in Figure H.3 and Figure H.4 is made up of a CMOS pre-transmitter pair, transistor transmitter pair, and the transformer. The series Schottky diodes and over voltage diodes are discussed later in this subclause.

The pre-transmitter is a 74AC08. This device allows the combination of the data and enables signals and provides the base drive for the drive transistors.

The transistor driver uses a pair of MMBT2369 transistors. These are high-speed switches selected for important performance factors including the following

- collector current capability of at least 150 mA;
- fast switching characteristics typically better than 10 ns;
- small size SOT-23;
- low $V_{ce\ sat}$ at I_c about 0,5 V;
- low output capacitance 4,0 pF nom.

The series base resistors define the required base drive and the shunt base resistors reduce turn off time. The base capacitors provide slew rate limiting that improves radiated emissions slightly.

The transformer (1:1:1) couples the transmit signal to the medium. Each side of the driver pair controls one side of the center tapped transformer, such that the driver operates in a push pull configuration. The voltage presented to each side of the driver is 4,2 V typical (at $V_{cc} = 5\text{ V}$) and 4,7 V maximum (at $V_{cc} = 5,5\text{ V}$). This corresponds to a peak driver output current (into 37,5 Ω) of about 110 mA typical and about 125 mA maximum. The total peak supply current including the base drive is about 140 mA.

The receiver circuitry is conceptually simple. The complexity arises in controlling the detection thresholds. Figure H.1 is a schematic reduced to include just the important components of the RXDATA detector.

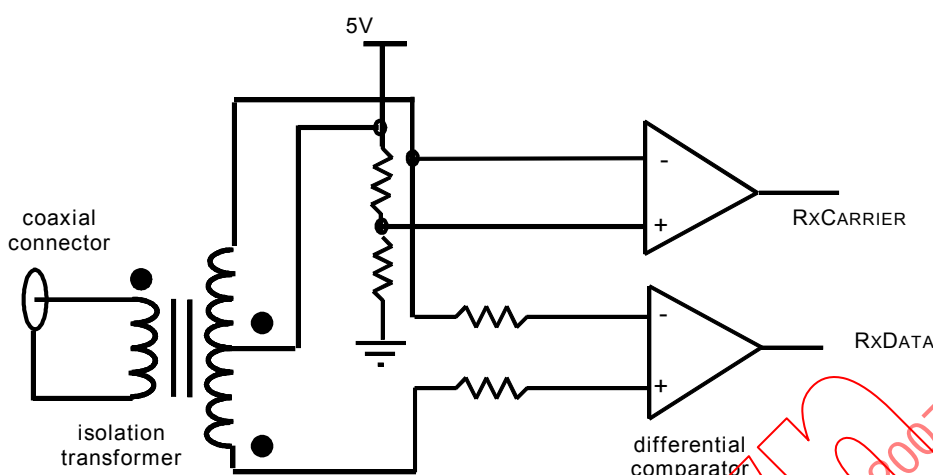


Figure H.1 – Coaxial wire MAU RxDATA detector

The detector example uses a 26LS32A (quad receiver) selected for high input impedance. Many devices of this class offer a minimum input impedance spec of 6 k Ω , whereas one supplier has a specification of 12 k Ω minimum. A special screening is required for this part, in the reference design, to allow an improved sensitivity over a smaller common-mode range. The important specifications for this device are the following:

- a) high input impedance (this is required to meet the node input impedance requirements): 15 k Ω typical, 12 k Ω minimum;
- b) low worst case threshold voltages: ± 100 mV over a common-mode range of 0 V to 5,5 V;
- c) 0 °C to 85 °C temperature range;
- d) single 5 V supply;
- e) ± 10 % supply tolerance;
- f) fast enough to handle the Manchester encoded 5 Mbit/s bit rate.

For the Rx detector shown in Figure H.1 and in the schematic diagrams shown in Figure H.3 and Figure H.4, Table H.1 shows the input voltage levels for transition of RxDATA and RxCARRIER.

Table H.1 – 5 Mbit/s, voltage-mode, coaxial wire receiver output definitions

Input voltage at medium	RxDATA	RxCARRIER
$V_{in} < -140$ mV	false (0)	false(0)
-140 mV $< V_{in} < 23$ mV	undefined	false(0)
23 mV $< V_{in} < 140$ mV	undefined	undefined
140 mV $< V_{in} < 255$ mV	true(1)	undefined
255 mV $< V_{in}$	true(1)	true(1)

The series resistors on the input to the 26LS32A are different in value to counteract the threshold offset caused by the 26LS32A's fail-safe resistors.

Figure H.2 – Coaxial wire MAU RXCARRIER detection

The RXCARRIER signal looks just like the RXDATA signal at high signals. At low signal levels it looks similar, except that the RXCARRIER 'one' pulse widths are narrower than those of the data are. When no signal is present the RXCARRIER output is always low, unlike the data, which is **undefined** and could be changing state with noise.

Figure H.3 shows an example of a redundant transceiver and Figure H.4 shows an example of a single channel transceiver.

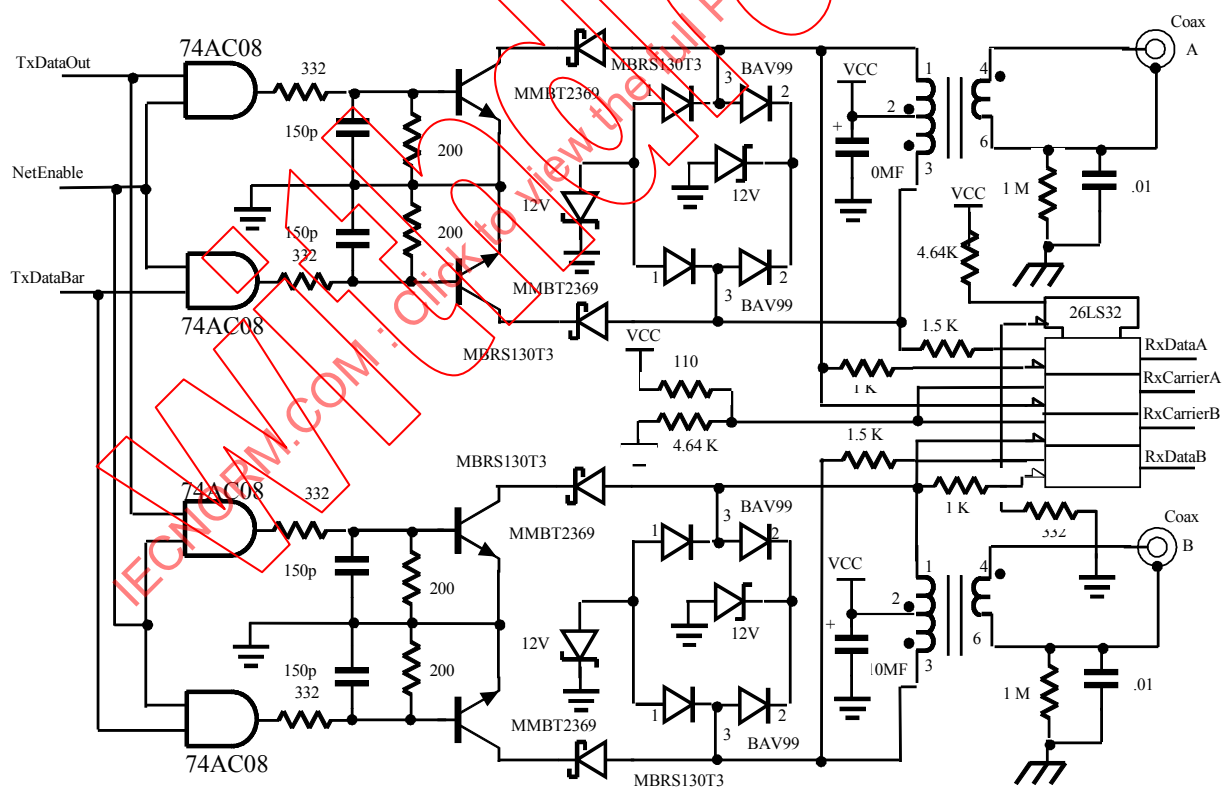


Figure H.3 – Redundant coaxial wire MAU transceiver



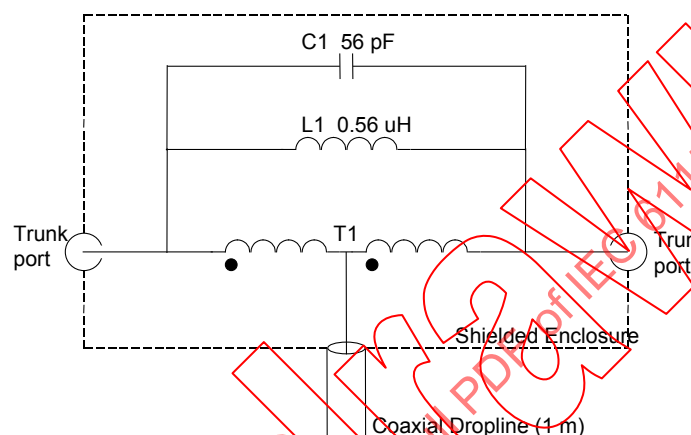
Core is IEC 61596 type EP-7, ungapped, with minimum $AI = 1100 \text{ nH per turn}^2$. Construction sequence for the windings is as follows.

- ### H.1.3 Tap reference design example

Measured electrical characteristics are as shown in Table H.2.

Table H.2 – Coaxial wire medium toroid specification

Parameter	Value
Leakage inductance	75 μH at 300 kHz
Magnetising inductance	890 μH at 300 kHz
Winding capacitance	20 pF at 25 MHz
Winding loss resistance	0,1 Ω at 300 kHz
Core loss resistance	16 k Ω at 1,3 MHz



NOTE Values shown are nominal. The actual values should be adjusted to meet the scattering parameter requirements detailed in Figure 86.

Figure H.5 – Coaxial wire medium tap

H.2 Network access port (NAP)

The design of the node NAP circuitry shown in the schematic in Figure H.6 is relatively simple. A single transmitter and receiver are used. The receiver has an internal offset voltage added to produce a zero data state for the fault conditions (medium removed, short circuited, etc.) listed in the requirements shown in Table 97. The polarity of the receive signal is high for data zero. Differential RS-422 transmitters and receivers are used to improve noise rejection.

Back biased diodes are provided on the NAP transmitter lines to prevent damage due to electrostatic discharge.

For the fiber medium option, the NAP circuitry is the same. The coaxial wire medium transceivers are simply replaced by optical fiber transceivers.

The schematic for a non-isolated permanent node uses a transceiver similar to the one shown in Figure H.6.

As in the node, a single transmitter / receiver is used for data. The same offset circuit is used to guarantee the correct disconnect and power off levels. In addition, the same transmitter protection diodes are used.

For a transient node that derives its power from a grounded source, opto-isolators are used. The design shown in Figure H.7 shows how opto-isolators and a DC-DC converter can be used to supply the required ground isolation.

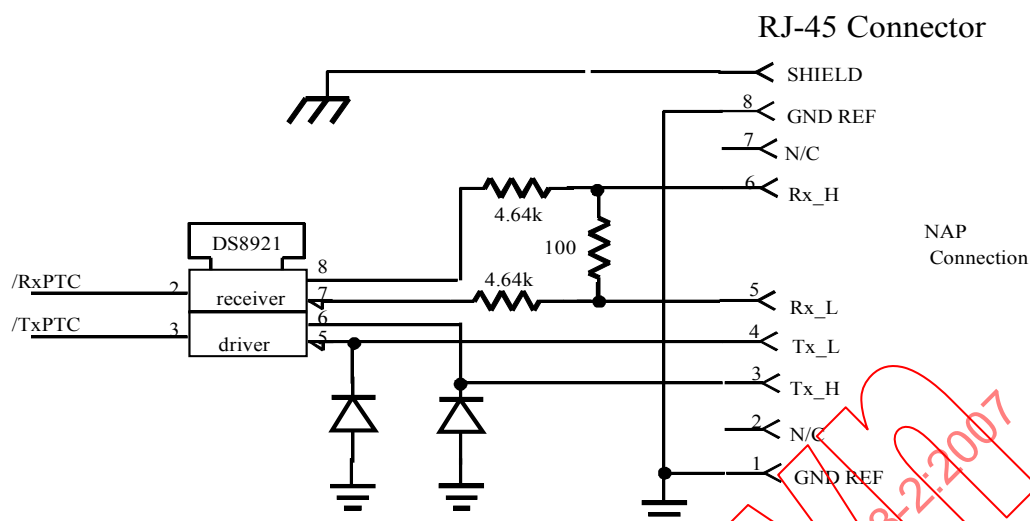


Figure H.6 – Non-isolated NAP transceiver

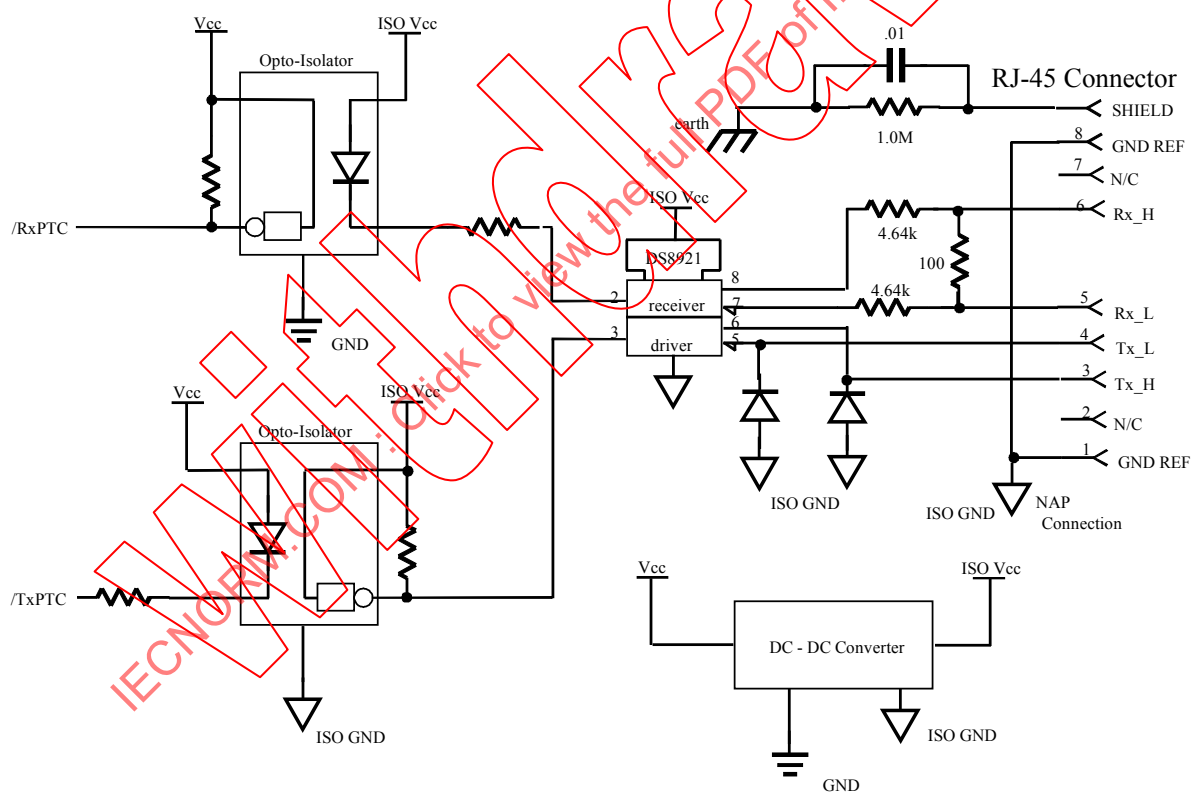


Figure H.7 – Isolated NAP transceiver

Annex I (normative)

Type 3: Connector specification

I.1 Connector for synchronous transmission

I.1.1 General

The topology can be in the form of a tree, line or a combination of the two. The tees connect the stations (e.g. field devices) to the bus cable; they shall have an IP 65 rating. The tee connect can be constructed in single T or multiple T, see Figure I.1. The tee function can also be integrated into the station.

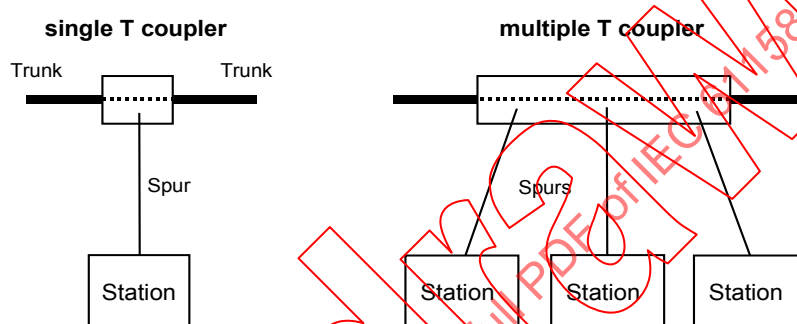


Figure I.1 – Schematic of the station coupler

I.1.2 Pin assignment of M12 circular connector

The contacts of the M12 circular connector shall be assigned to functions as shown in Table I.1 and Figure I.2.

Table I.1 – Contact assignments for the external connector
for harsh industrial environments

Contact No.	Function
1	Data + with the option of power +
2	not connected
3	Data – with the option of power –
4	not connected
Thread	Shield

The shield shall be concentric around the thread. The shield potential shall be transmitted via the thread. Existing Type 3 devices with connected pin 4 are still conform to this International Standard. For new devices the pin 4 shall not be used. Existing pre-harnessed Type 3 cables with connected pin 4 are still conform to this International Standard. For new cables the pin 4 shall not be connected.

The M12 circular connector and the female connector shall be IP 65 or higher.

The male and female contacts shall be designed such that they maintain their transmission properties even in a corrosive atmosphere, e.g. chemical environment.

The centered hole of the female plug shall not be fitted because of the increased air and creepage distances in potentially explosive atmospheres, see Figure I.2.

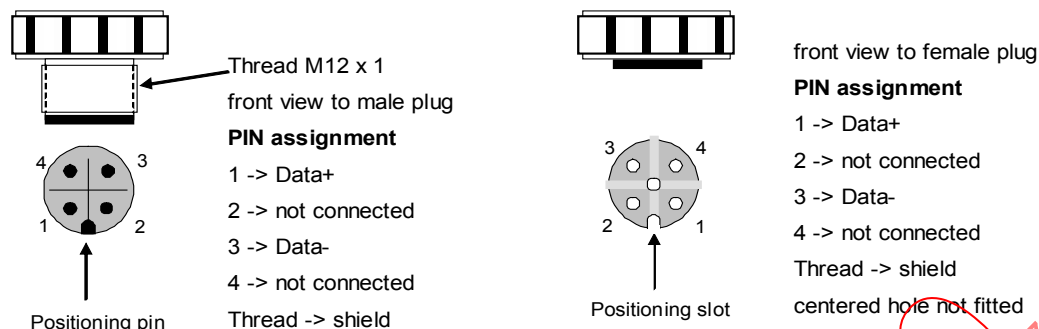


Figure I.2 – Pin assignment of the male and female connectors IEC 947-5-2 (A coding)

I.1.3 Connection between a tee and a station

The tees and the stations are connected using a shielded circular connector M12. The tee can be connected directly to the station or a branch using a shielded M12 connector.

Always make sure that the bus cable shield is applied over a large surface according to the grounding guidelines (for grounding and shielding, see 21.8.6 and 21.8.7).

Field termination techniques such as screw or blade terminals and permanent termination may also be used.

I.2 Connector for asynchronous transmission

I.2.1 Connector for non-intrinsic safe asynchronous transmission

Each station is connected to the medium via a 9-pin sub-D connector. The female side of the connector is located in the station, while the male side is mounted to the bus cable.

The mechanical and electrical characteristics are specified in IEC 60807-3.

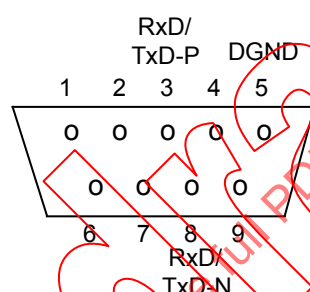
Preferably a metal connector housing should be used. When put together both parts of the connector should be fixed by conducting screws. The connection between the cable sections and the stations should be realized as T-connectors, containing three 9-pin sub-D connectors (two male connectors and one female connector). Such T-connectors allow disconnection or replacement of stations without cutting the cable and without interrupting operation (on line disconnection).

The pin assignments for the connectors are shown in Table I.2 and Figure I.3.

Table I.2 – Contact designations

Pin number	RS-485 ref.	Signal name	Meaning
1		SHIELD (see notes 1, 2)	Shield, protective ground
2		M24V (see note 1)	Minus 24 V output voltage
3	B/B'	RxD/TxD-P	Receive/transmit-data-P
4		CNTR-P (see note 1)	Control-P
5	C/C'	DGND	Data ground
6		VP	Voltage-plus
7		P24V (see note 1)	Plus 24 V output voltage
8	A/A'	RxD/TxD-N	Receive/transmit-data-N
9		CNTR-N (see note 1)	Control-N

NOTE 1 Signals are optional.
NOTE 2 Recommended to be not connected.

**Figure I.3 – Connector pinout, front view of male and back view of female respectively**

The Data Ground, connected to pin 5, and the Voltage-Plus, connected to pin 6, supply the Bus Terminator.

The control signals CNTR-P and CNTR-N, connected to pin 4 and pin 9, support direction control when repeaters without self control capability are used. ANSI TIA/EIA-485-A signaling is recommended. For simple devices the signal CNTR-P may be a TTL signal (1 TTL load) and the signal CNTR-N may be grounded (DGND). The definition of signaling is not a subject of this standard.

The 24 V output voltage, according to IEC 61131-2, Table 6, allows the connection of operator panels or service devices without integrated power supply. If a device offers 24 V output voltage it shall allow for a current load up to 100 mA.

I.2.2 Connector for intrinsic safe asynchronous transmission

I.2.2.1 IP20 connecting technique

For mechanical and electrical characteristics, see I.2.1.

The pin assignments for the connectors are shown in Table I.3.

Table I.3 – Contact designations

Pin number	RS-485 ref.	Signal name	Meaning
1		SHIELD (see note 1)	Shield
2		NC	(Not connected)
3	B	RxD/TxD-P	Receive/transmit-data-P
4		NC	(Not connected)
5		ISM (see note 2)	Bus termination minus
6		ISP (see note 2)	Bus termination plus
7		NC	(Not connected)
8	A	RxD/TxD-N	Receive/transmit-data-N
9		NC	(Not connected)
NOTE 1 Signal is optional and recommended to be not connected.			
NOTE 2 Signal is current-limited by resistors.			

The ISM, connected to pin 5, and the ISP, connected to pin 6, supply the Bus Terminator.

Series inductances in the data lines, as used in non-intrinsic safe connectors, shall not be used. The wiring from bus input to bus output in the connector shall be designed for a maximum current of 4,8 A. The trap to the communication device (A, B, ISM and ISP wire) must be designed for the maximum input current of 2 x I₀ (~300 mA). The appropriate values for the design of the connector (track widths, separation distances etc.) shall be according to IEC 60079-11.

The separation distances between A, B, ISM and ISP wire from the connector's trap to the current limiting resistors in the communication device shall be infallible in accordance IEC 60079-11.

I.2.2.2 IP65 connecting technique

The 4-pin M-12 connector according to IEC 947-5-2 is used for fieldbus systems where extreme industrial environments exist. Only shielded connectors are permitted. The connectors feature a mechanical key (B-coding). The pin assignments for the connectors are shown in Table I.4.

Table I.4 – Contact designations

Pin number	RS-485 ref.	Signal name	Meaning
1		ISP (see note)	Bus termination plus
2	A	RxD/TxD-N	Receive/Transmit-Data-N
3		ISM (see note)	Bus termination minus
4	B	RxD/TxD-P	Receive/Transmit-Data-P
Threaded joint		SHIELD	Shield
NOTE Signal is current-limited by resistors.			

The ISM, connected to pin 3, and the ISP, connected to pin 1, supply the Bus Terminator.

Series inductances in the data lines, as used in non-intrinsic safe connectors, shall not be used. The connector contacts shall be designed for the maximum current of 4,8 A.

The connector at the field device must be a female type M12 connector, as shown in Figure I.4.

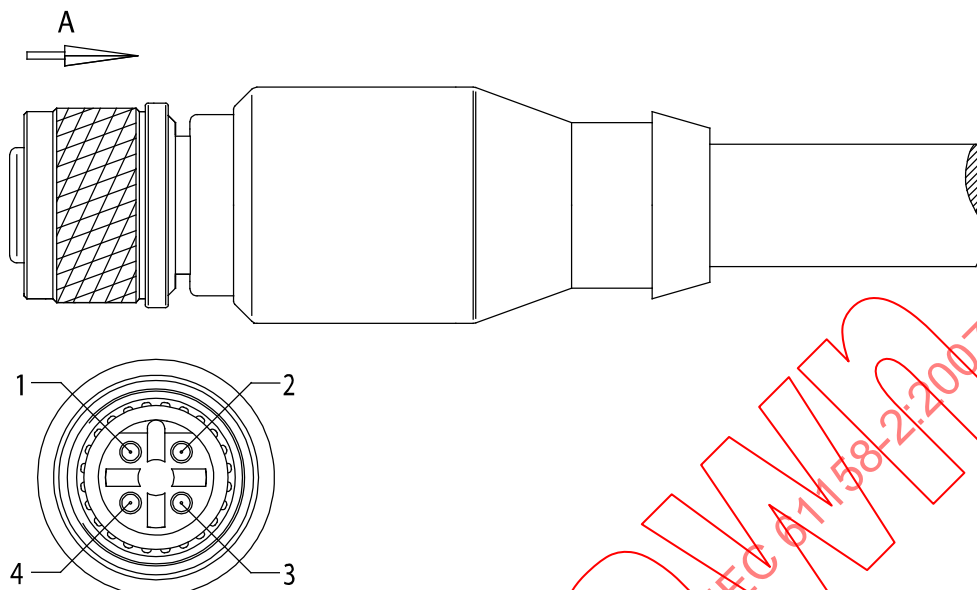


Figure I.4 – Connector pinout, front view of female M12 connector

The connector at the cable side must be a male type M12 connector, as shown in Figure I.5.

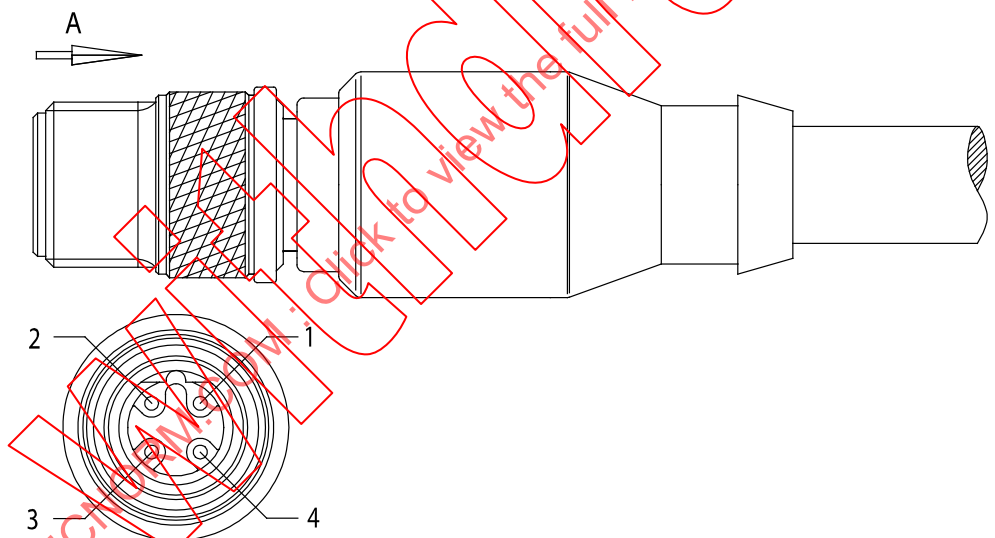


Figure I.5 – Connector pinout, front view of male M12 connector

The fieldbus topology has a linear structure. The junctions (tees), as shown in Figure I.6, connect the individual devices to the trunk cable. The stub length should be as short as possible. Series inductances in the data lines shall not be used.

The Tee shall be uniform and concentric all the way to the cap nut (Threaded joint), (metal connectors and similar).

The supply voltage provided by the devices for driving the termination resistance shall be passed on via the Tee.

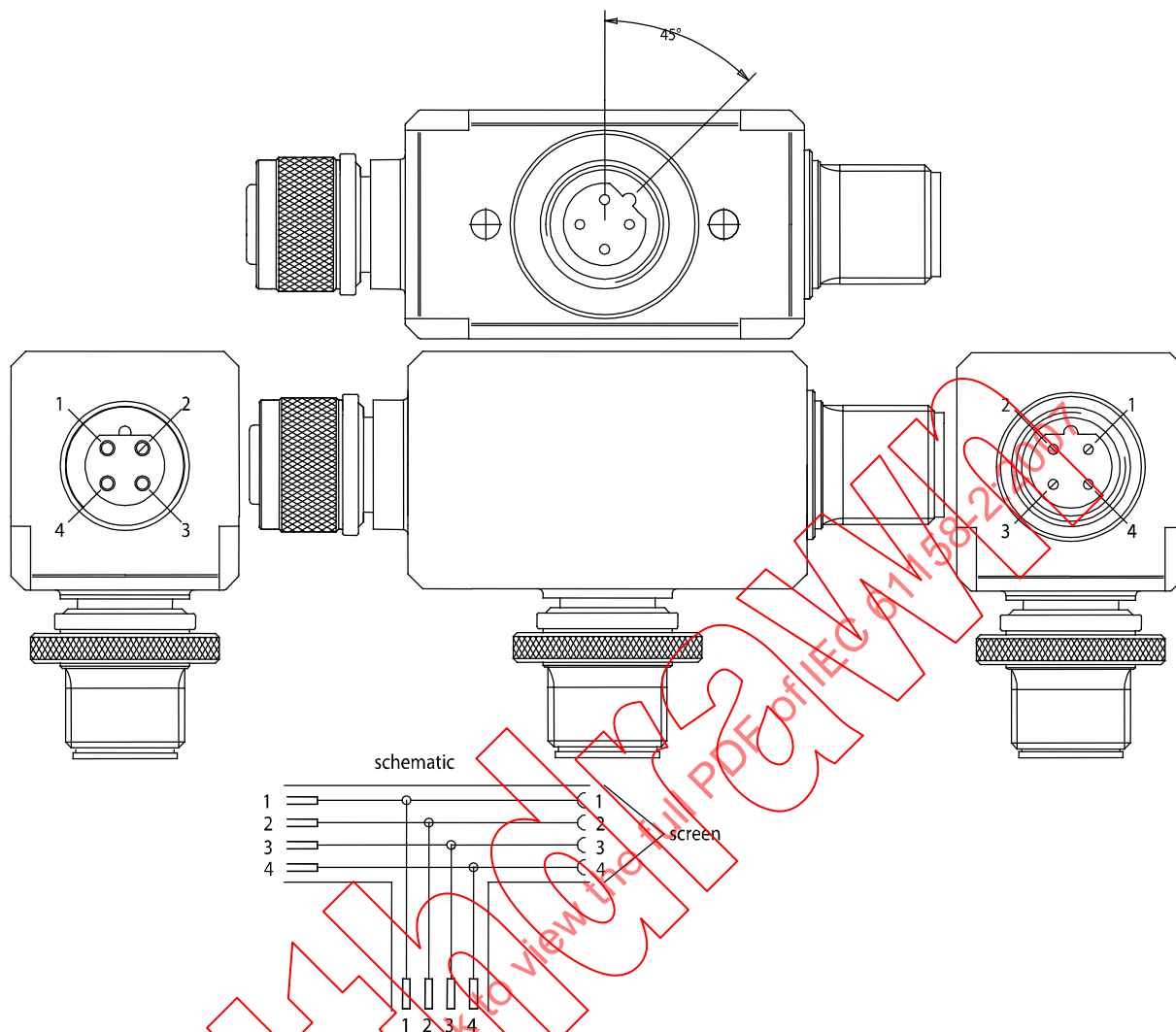


Figure I.6 – M12 Tee

Figure I.7 shows the pinout and schematic of the M12 bus termination.

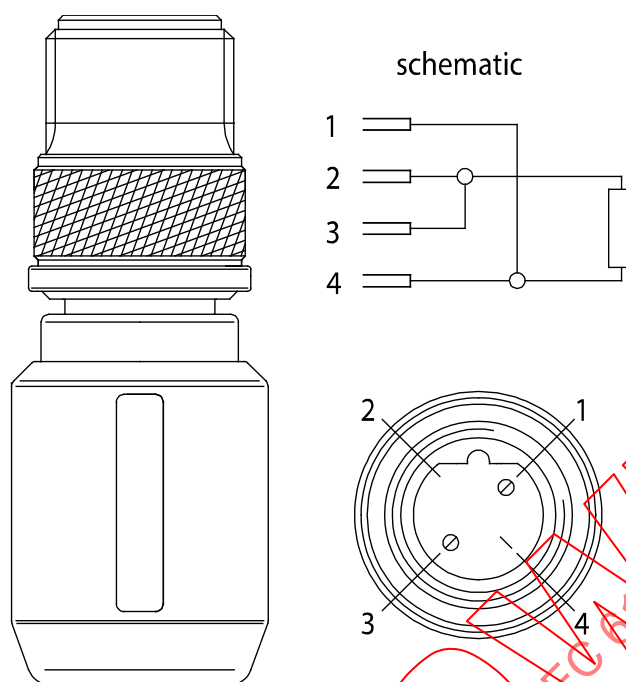


Figure I.7 – M12 Bus termination

I.2.2.3 Terminal connecting technique

The terminal connection shall provide the signals A, B, LSM and ISP. The terminal designation shall be according to the signal name. Alternatively, when internal bus termination is available, only the signals A and B may be provided. The communication device shall provide a suitable connection for cable shield.

The wiring from bus input to bus output in the terminal shall be designed for a maximum current of 4,8 A.

I.3 Connectors for fiber optic cable

I.3.1 Connectors for glass fiber optic cable (850 nm and 1 300 nm wavelength)

Glass fiber optic cables are connected or interconnected using type BFOC/2.5 connectors according to IEC 60874-10-1.

NOTE Butt joint contact of the fibers, so-called physical contact (PC), minimizes the attenuation and reflection for fiber-fiber connections.

I.3.2 Connectors for plastic and glass fiber optic cable (660 nm wavelength)

Plastic fiber optic cables are preferentially connected or interconnected using type BFOC/2.5 connectors.

Other connector elements are admissible if they are compatible to reference fiber 980/1 000 μm plastic fiber or 200/230 μm glass fiber.

Annex J (normative)

Type 3: Redundancy of PhL and medium

The use of a redundant PhL improves the reliability of the fieldbus. When implemented, the redundant PhL contains two separately installed medium (bus cable "a" and bus cable "b") and two complete Medium Attachment Units (MAUs) per station. The redundancy architecture in principle is shown in Figure J.1.

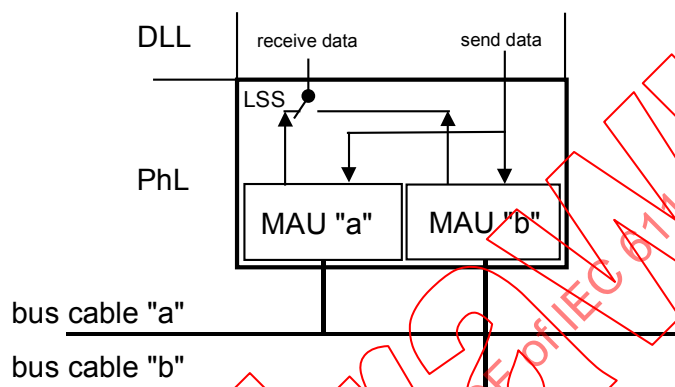


Figure J.1 – Redundancy of PhL MAU and Medium

The basic principle, shown in Figure J.1, assumes that data is sent out simultaneously by both MAUs (transceivers) onto both mediums (bus cable "a" and bus cable "b"). In contrast to this, each station receives from only one medium (either bus cable "a" or bus cable "b"). The receive channel is selected by a Line Selector Switch (LSS), which is located between both MAUs and the DLL. The Line Selector Switch is controlled by the Ph-management. For this the Medium Access Control (MAC) of each station's DLL monitors the medium activity, and gives corresponding information to DL-management (see IEC 61158-3-3 the DLMS Event and Get Value service) independently of any other station. The main switching conditions for masters and slaves are as follows:

- two or more successive invalid frames are received; invalid means frames with invalid format, invalid parity bit or invalid frame check sequence are detected;
- time out timer T_{FO} expires (see IEC 61158-4-3, "Timers and counters");
- no Syn. Time T_{SYN} (i.e. line idle for at least T_{SYN}) was detected during one Synchronization Interval Time T_{SYNI} (see IEC 61158-4-3, "Timer Operation").

NOTE 1 Dependent on the execution, further switch conditions may be selected.

The selected receive channel "a" (primary) or "b" (alternate) is notified to the Ph-management, see 6.3. The Ph-management then provides this information to the PHMS-user via the management interface.

NOTE 2 There is no preferred receive channel after the system initialisation is finished.

Annex K (normative)

Type 3: Optical network topology

K.1 Signal flow in an optical network

K.1.1 General

Connections to Master or Slave stations or coupling elements, such as star couplers, repeaters, etc. are the user's responsibility. However, the user must make sure that the various interfaces are compatible with each other.

This clause contains the description of optical Medium Attachment Units (MAU) to connect to a fiber optical network with or without echo.

K.1.2 Connection to a network with echo

After a delay, the optical MAU receives its own transmit signal from the network again as an echo. Echo signal detection can be used to confirm the status of the physical connection to the optical MAU at the other end of the line (see Figure K.1).

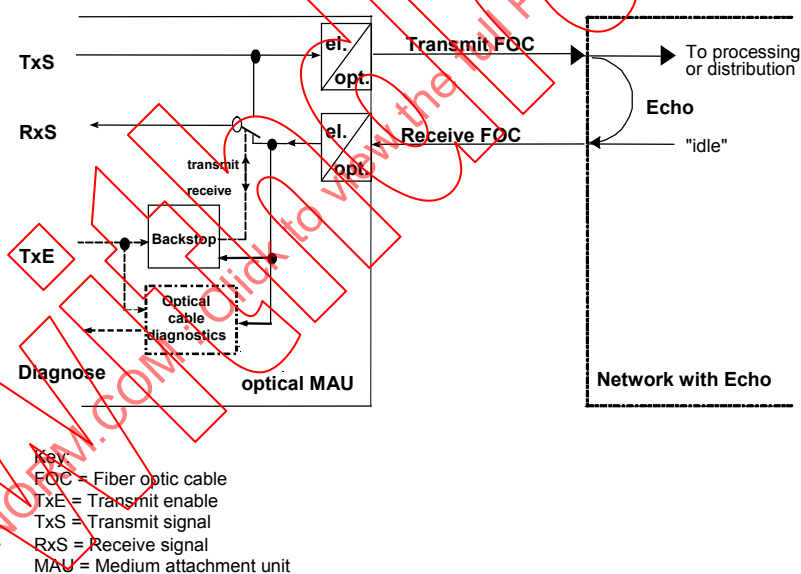


Figure K.1 – Optical MAU in a network with echo

The echo is returned with a delay equal to twice the signal delay to the coupling element (e.g. star coupler) that generates the echo. With a ring structure, the delay corresponds to one cycle of the ring. The receive signal delay, which does not occur in asynchronous transmission networks, shall not cause operating faults or error messages. The transmitting optical MAU shall remove the echo signal from the network. The echo signal shall not be returned to the network by the transmitter again and shall not lead to duplication of the message as a “new” message within a field device.

K.1.3 Connection to a network without echo

The optical MAU does not receive its own transmit signal from the network again as an echo in such a network. The receive line remains idle during the transmit procedure as shown in Figure K.2. No information is available on the status of the link.

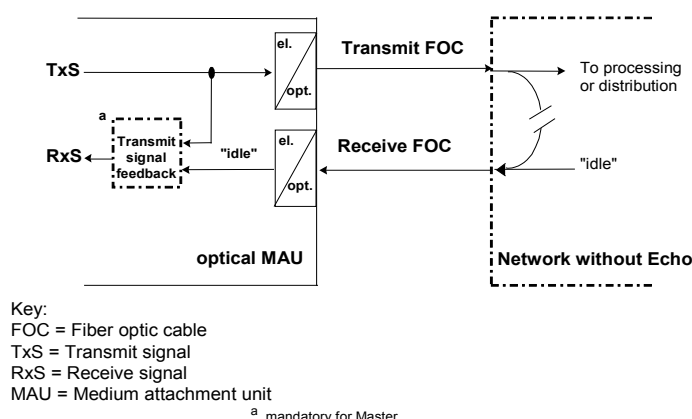


Figure K.2 – Optical MAU in a network without echo

Masters shall fulfil the requirements of token acknowledgement locally, for example with hardware feedback (emulation) of the transmit signal.

K.1.4 Optical MAU with echo function

An optical MAU with echo function returns the signal received at an input gate to the associated return line as shown in Figure K.3. This allows an appropriate optical MAU at the other end of the optical line to check for its own message by monitoring for the echo.

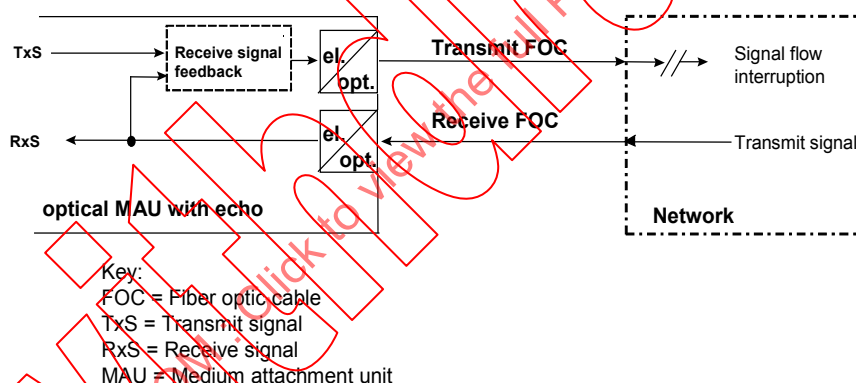


Figure K.3 – Optical MAU with echo via internal electrical feedback of the receive signal

K.1.5 Optical MAU without echo function

An optical MAU without echo function does not return the signal received at an input gate to the associated return line. The output remains at the idle level (see Figure K.4).

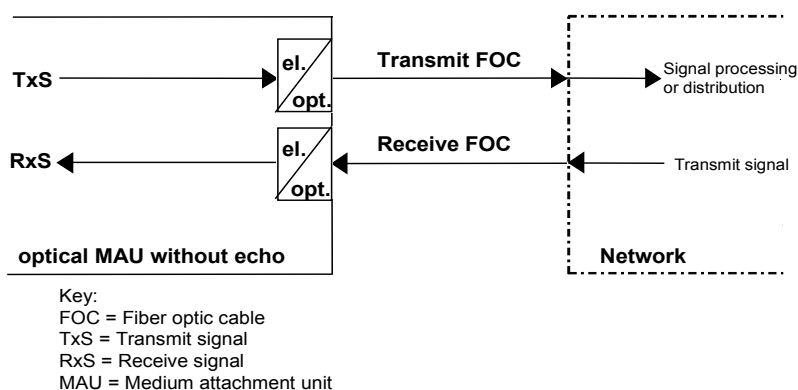


Figure K.4 – Optical MAU without echo function

K.1.6 Examples of topology

K.1.6.1 General

The following subclauses illustrate some of the network topologies that can be constructed in accordance with this standard. This subclause does not imply that these are the only possible topologies.

K.1.6.2 Star topology

Central signal distribution using active star couplers results in a star-shaped structure for the optical network with the active star coupler as the central element (see Figure K.5)

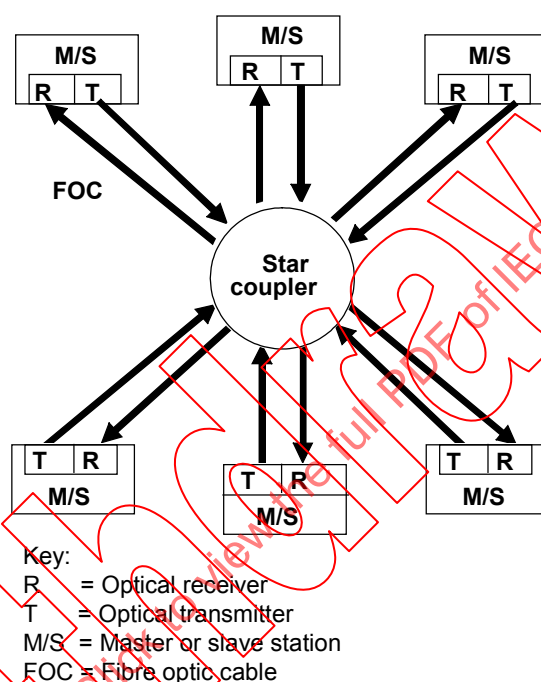


Figure K.5 – Optical network with star topology

The active star coupler is used in optical networks as a central signal distributor with signal level restoration. Regeneration of the signal timing (re-timing) is available as an option. The active star coupler requires an electrical power supply. The active star coupler converts optical signals received at an input into electrical signals. Internal signal processing takes place electrically. Electro-optical converters at the output gates transmit an optical signal.

K.1.6.3 Ring topology

A ring structure, as shown in Figure K.6, requires additional control measures in the station. A transmitting station (Master/Slave) shall interrupt the ring logically and maintain the interruption after the end of the telegram until the telegram has passed around the ring once and returned to the transmitting station, where it is discarded.

Stations in receive mode shall output the received signal on the transmit side again.

Stations have to be provided with a protection, which prevents dropping the ring into a statically closed ring. This problem can occur if e.g. a fault spike occurs during an “idle” phase.

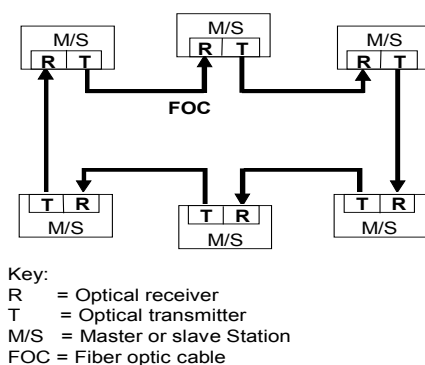


Figure K.6 – Optical network with ring topology

K.1.6.4 Bus topology

The bus topology is built with type 3x3 star couplers or stations with integrated optical interfaces (see Figure K.7).

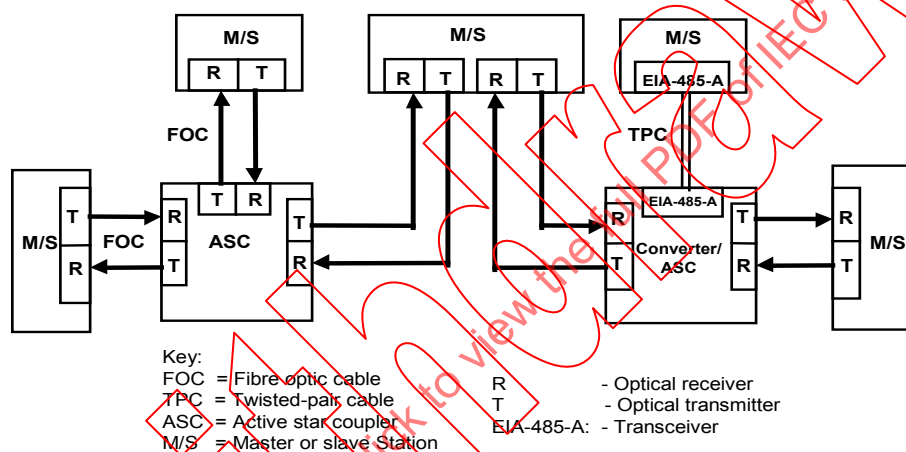


Figure K.7 – Optical network with bus topology

K.1.6.5 Tree topology

Several active star couplers can be combined to build networks with a tree structure as shown in Figure K.8.

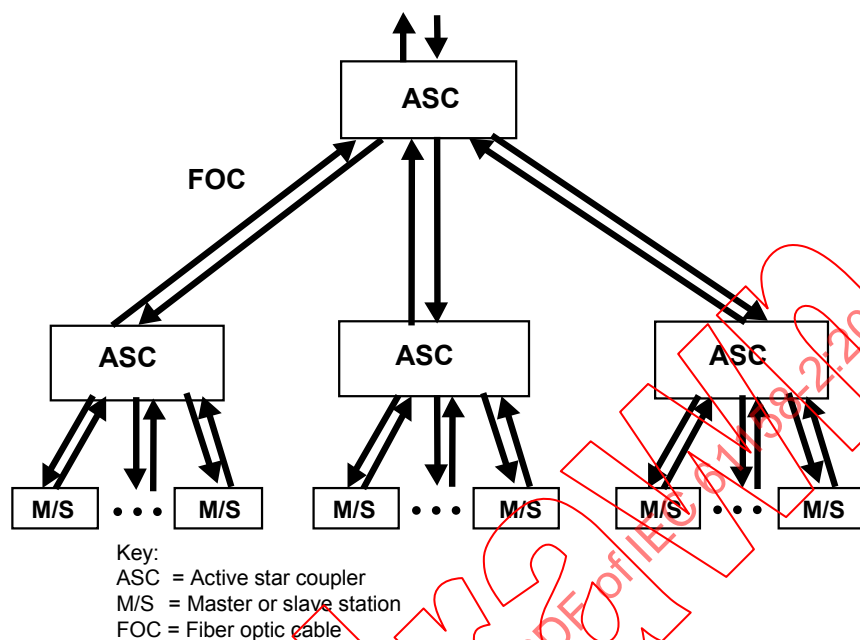


Figure K.8 – Tree structure built from a combination of star structures

K.1.6.6 ANSI TIA/EIA-485-A / fibre optic converter

An ANSI TIA/EIA-485-A / fiber optic converter is used to connect a station or a subnet based on the ANSI TIA/EIA-485-A technology to an optical network segment or an optical Master/Slave station.

Figure K.9 illustrates an application example for an ANSI TIA/EIA-485-A / fiber optic converter.

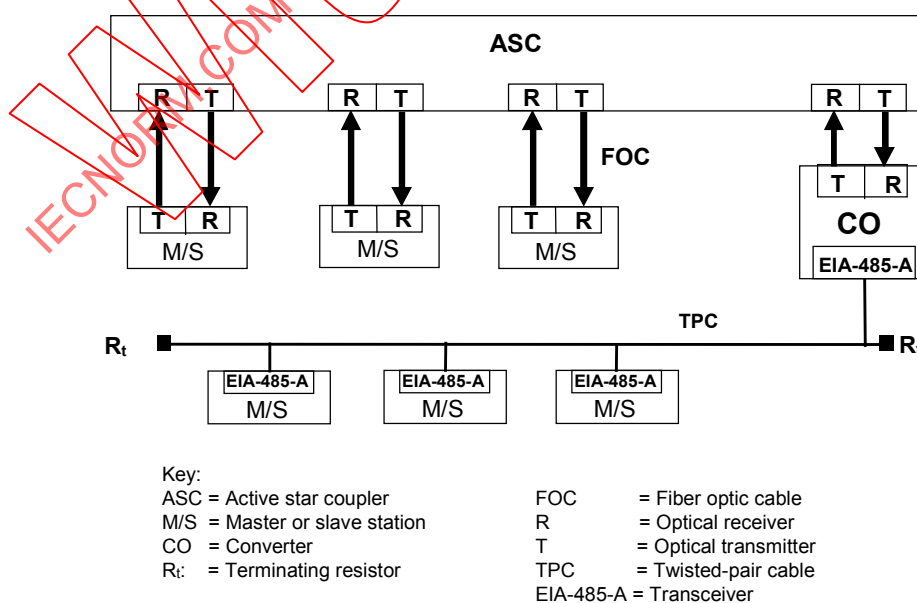


Figure K.9 – Application example for an ANSI TIA/EIA-485-A / fiber optic converter

The ANSI TIA/EIA-485-A / fiber optic converter can also be implemented internally in a modular active star coupler.

K.1.7 Optical power budget

K.1.7.1 General

A fiber-specific optical signal level budget is available between two nodes that can be consumed in the form of attenuation along the optical link.

Specific budget calculations can be carried out using the specifications from the respective manufacturer.

Signal level budget refers to the difference between the output power from the optical transmitter and the input power required by an optical receiver for error-free signal detection. The overall attenuation must be between the level budgets for overload and sensitivity.

The following subclauses provide examples of which network extents can be implemented with various fiber types and transmitter power levels.

K.1.7.2 Limiting conditions

The following limiting conditions must be taken into consideration when interpreting the tables and dimensioning the optical links.

K.1.7.2.1 Numerical aperture (NA)

Numerical aperture (for description refer to IEC 60793-2).

K.1.7.2.2 Output power

Output power is the power level in the fiber for a “0” signal for the specified fiber for the entire temperature range giving consideration to sample diffusion and to the losses that are caused by the fiber connection at the transmitter (connector element).

K.1.7.2.3 Receiver limits

These values identify the acceptable signal range (dynamic range) for a “0” signal (“light” ON), whereby “overload” refers to the highest acceptable signal level (= brightest “light”) and “sensitivity” refers to the lowest signal level. Moving outside the dynamic range does not necessarily cause interruption of the data transfer, but increases the deviation of signal timing beyond the specified limits that increases the likelihood of transmission errors.

K.1.7.2.4 Level budget

Level budget is the dynamic range resulting from the specified transmitter/receiver combination. The bit error rate (BER) is $<10^{-9}$ within these limits.

K.1.7.2.5 Overall attenuation

Overall attenuation refers to the minimum required attenuation required for overload protection of the receiver or to the maximum allowed attenuation needed to utilize the entire sensitivity of the receiver.

The overall attenuation is composed of:

- fibre attenuation for the fiber optic cable;
- coupling losses for inserted connectors and splices, if applicable;
- a system margin.

K.1.7.2.6 System reserve

System reserve takes account of the transmitter element's output power loss due to aging. The life expectancy of a transmitter element is usually defined by the time by which the transmitted power has fallen by 3dB compared to the value for a new element.

When determining the overload immunity of a receiver, it is assumed that this "system reserve" has not been consumed.

K.1.7.2.7 Fiber attenuation

Fiber attenuation refers to the maximum allowable attenuation or to the minimum required attenuation of the fiber optic cable.

K.1.7.2.8 Specific fiber attenuation

Specific fiber attenuation is the maximum or minimum attenuation of the fiber optic cable per length unit. It is dependent on the wavelength of the light.

Attenuation values for fibers are not stipulated in the specifications and must be obtained from the data sheet for the respective fiber. The values in the tables are typical values based on experience.

NOTE The peak wavelength of the emitted light shifts with the operating temperature of the transmitter element. This wavelength shift must be taken into consideration when determining the limiting values for the specific fiber attenuation.

K.1.7.2.9 Fiber length

The fiber length is calculated by dividing that part of the overall attenuation that is due to fiber attenuation by the specific fiber attenuation.

K.1.7.3 62,5/125 µm multi-mode glass fiber

The transmit power level is so chosen that the minimum optical link length is 0 m, i.e. receiver overload cannot occur with the 62,5/125 µm fiber. An example of a level budget calculation for this reference fiber is given in Table K.1.

Table K.1 – Example of a link budget calculation for 62,5/125 µm multi-mode glass fiber

Link budget for a 62,5/125 µm multi-mode glass fiber standard link (graded index profile) NA = 0,275			
Transmitter output power	–20 ... –15		dBm
Receiver limits	Overload	Sensitivity	
	–10	–24	dBm
Level budget	0	9	dB
Overall attenuation	0	9	dB
System reserve	0	3	dB
Fiber attenuation	0	6	dB
Specific fiber attenuation	2,5	3,5	dB/km
Fiber length	min. 0	max. 1 700	m

K.1.7.4 9/125 µm single mode glass fiber

This fiber type has been included to be able to implement longer optical links.

The transmit power level is so chosen that the minimum optical link length is 0 m, i.e. receiver overload cannot occur with the 9/125 µm fiber.

The Table K.2 shows typical values in practice, which do not represent specifications.

Table K.2 – Example of a link budget calculation for 9/125 µm single mode glass fiber

Link budget for a 9/ 125 µm single mode glass fiber standard link (step index profile) NA = 0,13			
Transmitter output power	–20 ... –10		dBm
Receiver limits	Overload	Sensitivity	
	–10	–27	dBm
Level budget	0	7	dB
Overall attenuation	0	7	dB
System reserve	0	2	dB
Fiber attenuation	0	5	dB
Specific fiber attenuation	0,3	0,5	dB/km
Fiber length	min. 0	max. 10 000	m

K.1.7.5 980/1 000 µm multi-mode plastic fiber

Due to its larger diameter, plastic fiber places lower demands on absolute mechanical tolerances during installation. This generally leads to reduced installation costs.

However, due to the much higher fiber attenuation compared to glass fiber, plastic fiber is generally only suitable for relatively short optical links. The wavelength range of the optical signal is chosen to match the minimum attenuation of the plastic material. Numerical example for the level budget is given in Table K.3.

**Table K.3 – Example of a link budget calculation
for 980/1 000 μm multi-mode plastic fiber**

Link budget for a 980/1 000 μm plastic fiber standard link (step index profile) NA = 0,47					
Transmitter output power	Standard		Increased		
Output power	-11 ... - 5,5		-6 ... 0		dBm
Receiver limits	Overload	Sensitivity	Overload	Sensitivity	
	-5,0	-20,0	0	-20,0	dBm
Level budget	-0,5	9,0	0	14,0	dB
Overall attenuation	0	9,0	0	14,0	dB
System reserve	0	3,0	0	3,0	dB
Fiber attenuation	0	6,0	0	11,0	dB
Specific fiber attenuation	0,15	0,25 (see note)	0,15	0,25 (see note)	dB/m
Fiber length	min. 0	max. 24	min. 0	max. 44	m
NOTE Increased attenuation due to the fiber material and the wavelength shift due to temperature changes in the transmitter element.					

K.1.7.6 Multi-mode glass fiber 200/230 μm fiber

This fiber type has been included to be able to implement longer optical links. The numerical example for the level budget is given in Table K.4.

**Table K.4 – Example of a level budget calculation
for 200/230 μm multi-mode glass fiber**

Link budget for an 200/230 μm fiber standard link (step index profile) NA = 0,37			
Transmitter output power	- 16,0 to -8,0		dBm
Receiver limits	Overload	Sensitivity	
	-8,0	-22,0	dBm
Level budget	0	6,0	dB
Overall attenuation	0	6,0	dB
System reserve	0	3,0	dB
Fiber attenuation	0	3,0	dB
Specific fiber attenuation	5	10	dB/km
Fiber length	min. 0	max. 300	m

Annex L (informative)

Type 3: Reference design examples for asynchronous transmission, wire medium, intrinsically safe

L.1 Bus termination in the communication device

In this version, the bus termination is already in the device by means of the resistors R_t , R_u and R_d , as shown in Figure L.1. Activation is done via the switch S_1 for the device which is installed at the end of the bus segment.

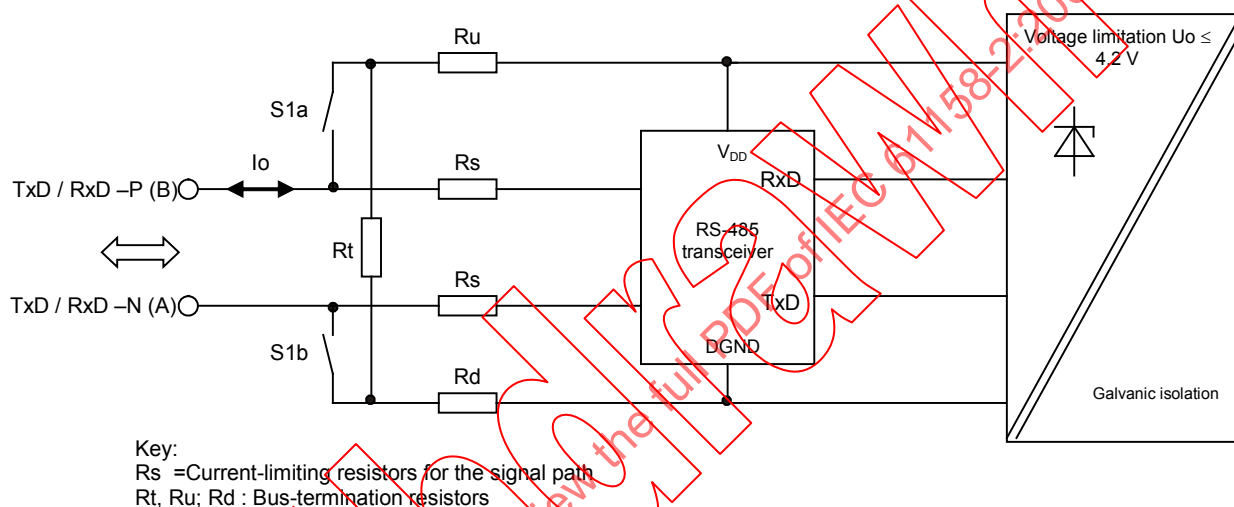


Figure L.1 – Bus termination integrated in the communication device

When determining the maximum output current I_o , it shall be noted that, on account of the switch S_1 , the resistor R_3 is connected in parallel to R_1 and the resistor R_4 is connected in parallel to R_2 .

NOTE Here, the safety-related limiting values as described in "PTB-Mitteilungen, 113 Jahrgang, Heft 2/2003, Die Bewertung der Zündfähigkeit eigensicherer Stromkreise anhand eines Rechenverfahrens. Abschnitt: Der eigensichere RS 485 Feldbus als Anwendungsbeispiel." shall also be adhered to.

For the design of the components and the required separation distances, the relevant applicable standard shall be met (e.g. IEC 60079-11).

L.2 Bus termination in the connector

In this version, the bus termination is realised in the connector, as shown in Figure L.2. For this, it is necessary that the communication devices provide the appropriate power supply. Activation is done via the switch S_1 for the devices which are installed at the relevant end of the bus segment.

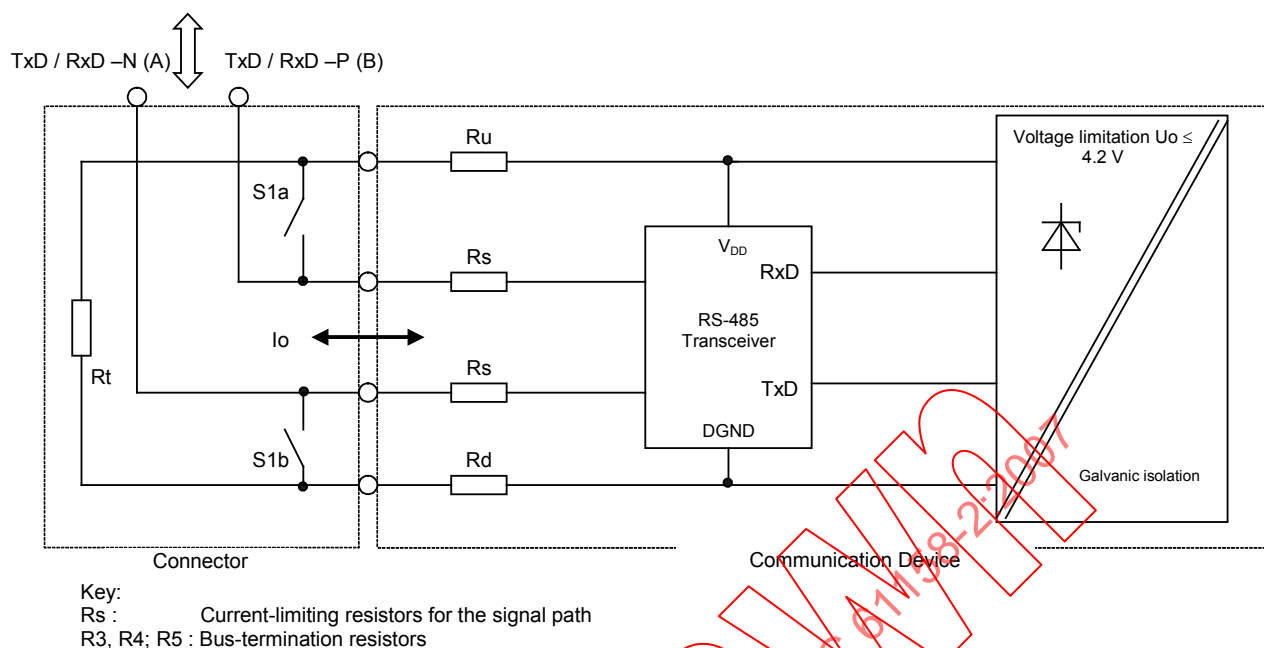


Figure L.2 – Bus termination in the connector

L.3 External bus termination

The auxiliary power supply must be galvanically isolated from the field bus circuit, as shown in Figure 111. Details of this are provided in 22.2.4.3.

In this version, the bus termination is realised externally in a separate device, as shown in Figure L.3.

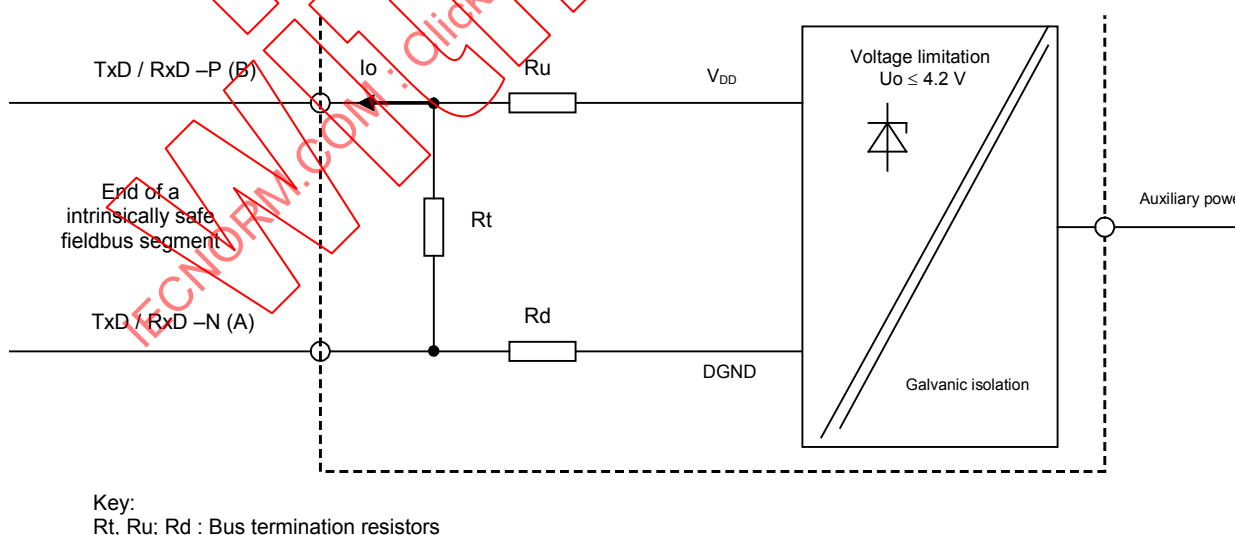


Figure L.3 – External bus termination

The auxiliary power supply must be galvanically isolated from the field bus circuit.

The resistors R_u and R_d are relevant for the calculation of the maximum output current I_o . In this context, the safety-related limiting values for external bus terminations shall be adhered

too. Regarding to the design of the components and the necessary separation distances, the relevant applicable standard (e.g. IEC 60079-11) shall be applied.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61158-2:2007

Withd2Wm

Annex M (normative)

Type 8: Connector specification

M.1 External connectors for wire medium

M.1.1 Subminiature D connector pin assignment

The connector pin assignment is shown in Figure M.1, Figure M.2 and Table M.1.

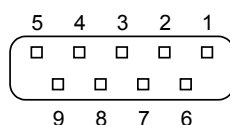


Figure M.1 – Outgoing interface 9-position female subminiature D connector at the device

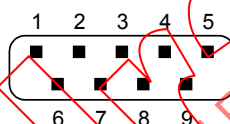


Figure M.2 – Incoming interface 9-position male subminiature D connector at the device

Table M.1 – Pin assignment of the 9-position subminiature D connector

Pin number	Signal line
1	DO
2	DI
3	GND
4	–
5	–
6	/DO
7	/DI
8	–
9	–

M.1.2 Terminal connector pin assignment

Figure M.3 shows the terminal connector position at the device and pin assignments of the terminal connector are shown in Table M.2.

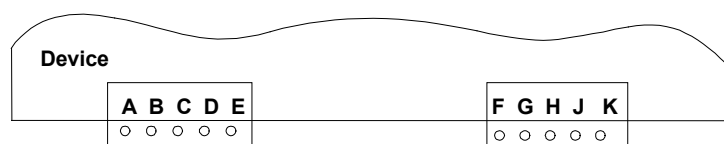


Figure M.3 – Terminal connector at the device

Table M.2 – Pin assignment of the terminal connector

Incoming interface		Outgoing interface	
Pin	Standard	Pin	Standard
A	/DO1	F	/DO2
B	DO1	G	DO2
C	/DI1	H	/DI2
D	DI1	J	DI2
E	GND1	K	GND

A separate terminal for protective earth shall be provided.

The sequence of terminal points should be observed.

M.2 External connectors for fiber optic medium

A network connector that is outside the enclosure of the device and therefore requires protection against the electromagnetic, chemical and physical environment shall be specified as an external connector.

If a degree of protection of IP20 or less is used for the device having an optical MAU implemented the connector used for the CPIC at the device level should be mechanically compatible with a F-SMA type connector as specified in IEC 61754-22. The ferrule of an optical F-SMA connector for polymer optical fiber (980/1 000 µm) is shown in Figure M.4.

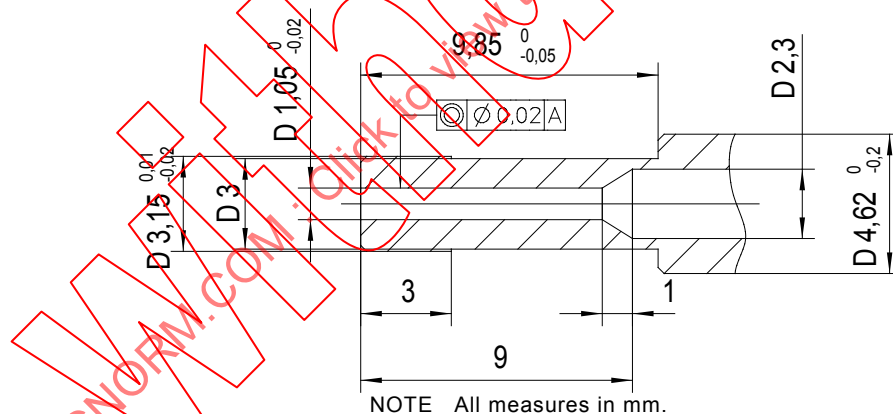


Figure M.4 – Ferrule of an optical F-SMA connector for polymer optical fiber (980/1 000 µm)

M.3 External connectors for hybrid connectors for IP65 applications

If a hybrid connector for applications with a degree of protection of IP65 or higher is used for the device having an optical MAU implemented, this connector used for the CPIC at the device level should be as shown in Figure M.5 and Figure M.6 with the connector dimension specified in Table M.3.

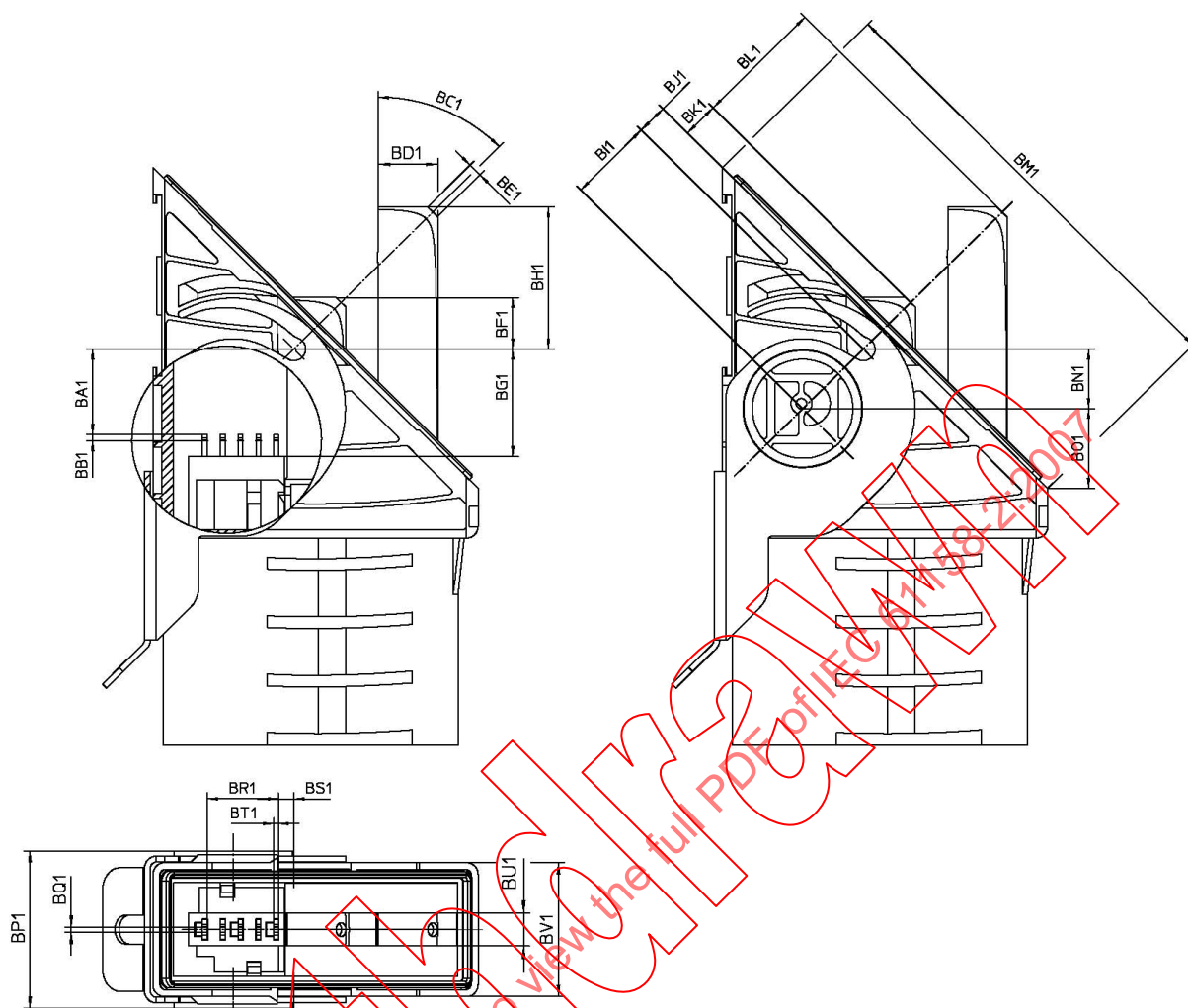
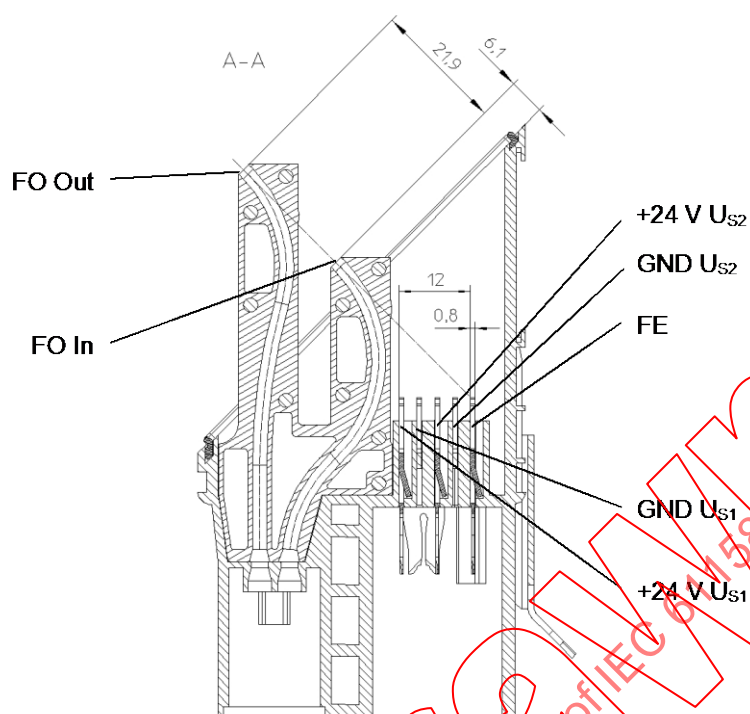


Figure M.5 – Type 8 fiber optic hybrid connector housing



Key:

U_{S1} = Sensor and bus module power supply

U_{S2} = Actuator power supply

FO in = connection to the FO transmitter

FO out = Connection to the FO receiver

Figure M.6 – Type 8 fiber optic hybrid connector assignment

The electrical contacts for the power supplies should be capable of supporting a continuous maximum current of 16 A at 24 V.

Table M.3 – Type 8 fiber optic hybrid connector dimensions

Letter	Max.	Min.	Nominal
BA1	14,9	14,5	14,7
BB1	1,2	1	1,1
BC1	45,5	44,5	45
BD1	10,2	9,8	10
BE1	2,5	2,3	2,4
BF1	9	8,6	8,8
BG1	18,7	18,3	18,5
BH1	24,5	24,1	24,3
BI1	14,7	14,3	14,5
BJ1	5,3	5,1	5,2
BK1	6,3	5,9	6,1
BL1	22,1	21,7	21,9
BM1	78	77,6	77,8
BN1	10,45	10,05	10,25
BO1	13,85	13,45	13,65
BP1	27,2	26,8	27
BQ1	0,95	0,75	0,85
BR1	12,2	11,8	12
BS1	2,7	2,5	2,6
BT1	0,9	0,7	0,8
BU1	5,7	5,5	5,6
BV1	23,2	22,8	23

Annex N (normative)

Type 16: Connector specification

Connectors for fiber optic cables shall

- correspond to F-SMA standard (see IEC 61754-22);
- have a quality level of at least 5;
- have a metallic connector ring.

The transmitter and receiver components shall be built into light-proof housings.

In addition, it is recommended that fiber optic cables have a strain relief.

Annex O (normative)

Type 16: Optical network topology

O.1 Topology

The topology shall consist of optical point-to-point transmission lines and subscribers. A transmission line shall consist of fiber optic cables having no optical branches. Transmission shall take place in only one direction. The master and the slaves are part of the network (subscribers).

Figure O.1 shows the structure in connection with the control unit and the devices. The control unit may encompass one or more masters, as needed by the application. A master shall handle only one network on the physical layer as well as in the overlying protocol layers. Slaves shall be used to connect the devices to the optical fiber network. On the physical layer, a slave can represent the connection of one or more devices to the optical fiber network. Logically, one slave with several devices shall act the same as several slaves with one device each. Although the slaves are connected to each other physically through the optical fiber network, all transmission of information takes place directly between the master and the slaves. A star-shaped topology is created if every master has only one slave connected to itself.

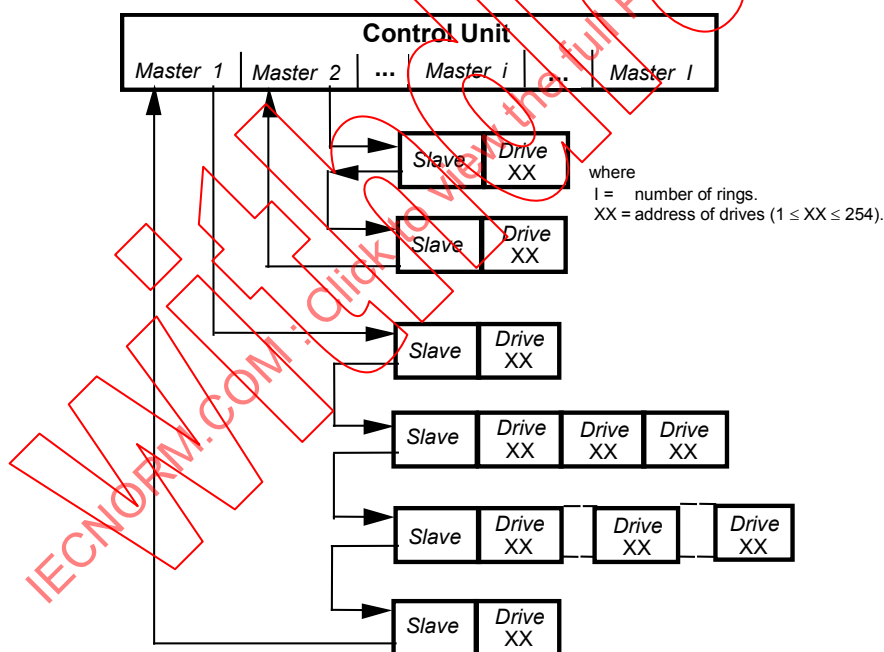


Figure O.1 – Topology

The physical arrangement of slaves in the network shall be independent from the device address set for the slave, as well as from the timing sequence of transmitting the acknowledge telegrams.

NOTE The number of devices in a network is $M = K$. The sequence of the AT is labeled as 1, 2, ..., M and the sequence of the device data records in the MDT is labeled as 1, 2, ... K.

The Types CP16/1 and CP16/2 interface determine any exchange of information within a network. Any cooperation of networks is controlled by the control unit and is not subject to this specification.

O.2 Optical power budget

O.2.1 Optical signals on the transmission line

Optical power levels on the transmission line have units of dB_m or μW which are related as follows:

- level [dBm] = 10 × log (level [μW] / 1 000 μW):
- level [μW] = 10 level [dBm] / 10 dBm × 1 000 μW.

The optical signals given in Table O.1, Table O.2 and Table O.4 for the transmitter, the receiver, and the transmission line are measured with a plastic fiber cable (POF) with a 1 mm core diameter and a length of 1 m or with a glass fiber cable (HCS) with 200 μm diameter and a length of 1 m as specified in Table O.3.

Optical levels and edges (status changes) along the transmission line are specified by means of the following parameters:

- a) P_{TmaxL} , the maximum transmission power at an optically low level. If the optical signal falls below this level, it is at a logic low state;
- b) P_{TminH} , the minimum transmission power at an optically high level. If the optical signal goes above this level, it is at a logic high state;
- c) P_{TmaxH} , the maximum transmission power at an optically high level. Stationary signals shall never exceed this limit. A rising optical edge, however, may dynamically exceed the upper limit of the optically high level. This makes it possible to accent the rising edge (minimizing the rise time). Both the magnitude, as well as the duration of the excess signal level are limited;
- d) k_{OS} , factor for optical power overshoot. This parameter indicates the factor by which the maximum optical transmission power may be exceeded dynamically. The excess power level is only permissible during an optical status change from low to high (rising signal edge).

NOTE PR_{xxx} is used to express the PT_{xxx} equivalent for a receiver.

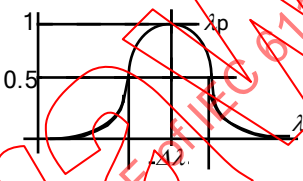
The optical signal shall pass through P_{TmaxL} to P_{TminH} in a monotonic manner (which means that the signal noise is less than 100 nW = –40 dB_m). Therefore, the logic high level between P_{RmaxL} and P_{RminH} can be recognized definitely without generating additional signal changes.

O.2.2 Transmitter specifications

Unless stated otherwise, these specifications shall be valid throughout the temperature range from 0 °C to +70 °C.

A transmitter shall follow the specifications in Table O.1.

Table O.1 – Transmitter specifications

Position	Attenuation at 650 nm		
Fiber type	POF		HCS
Optical transmission power	Low	High	High
P_{TmaxL}	-31,2 dBm	-28,2 dBm	-33,2 dBm
	0,75 μ W	1,5 μ W	0,5 μ W
P_{TminH}	-10,5 dBm	-7,5 dBm	-18 dBm
	90 μ W	180 μ W	16 μ W
P_{TmaxH}	-5,5 dBm	-3,5 dBm	-10 dBm
	280 μ W	450 μ W	100 μ W
Transmitting diode wavelength			
Peak wavelength	λ_{pk} = 640 nm to 675 nm		
Spectral bandwidth	$\Delta\lambda \leq 30$ nm (25 °C)		
Optical spectrum			
k_{os}	120 %		
Temperature range	0 °C to 70 °C		
NOTE All data are for λ_{pk} (which is λ_p in the above inset drawing).			

O.2.3 Receiver specifications

Unless stated otherwise, these specifications are valid throughout the temperature range from 0 $^\circ\text{C}$ to +70 $^\circ\text{C}$.

In order to process the data correctly, the receiver shall meet the requirements shown in Table O.2. Since the bandwidth of the fiber optic cable is relatively wide, distortion of the optical signals is insignificant.

Table O.2 – Receiver specifications

	Wavelength	650 nm	
	Fiber type	Plastic fiber POF	Glass fiber HCS
	P_{RmaxL}	-31,2 dBm	-33,2 dBm
		0,75 μ W	0,5 μ W
	P_{RminH}	-20 dBm	-22 dBm
		10 μ W	6,3 μ W
	P_{RmaxH}	-5 dBm	-7 dBm
		316 μ W	200 μ W
Dynamic power (P_{RmaxH} to P_{RminH})		15 dB	
Bit error rate		$\leq 10^{-9}$	
Temperature range		0 °C to 70 °C	
NOTE All data are for λ_{pk}			

O.2.4 Fiber optic cable

The fiber optic cable can consist of plastic or glass with a step index profile or graded index profile. An example is shown in Figure O.2 and Table O.3.

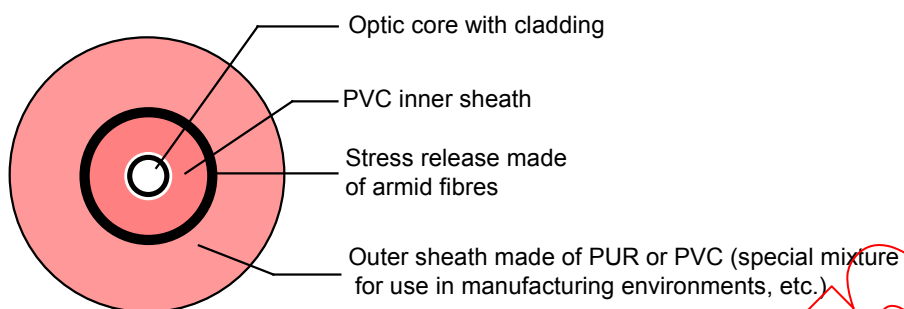


Figure O.2 – Structure of a single-core cable (example)

Table O.3 – Cable specifications (example)

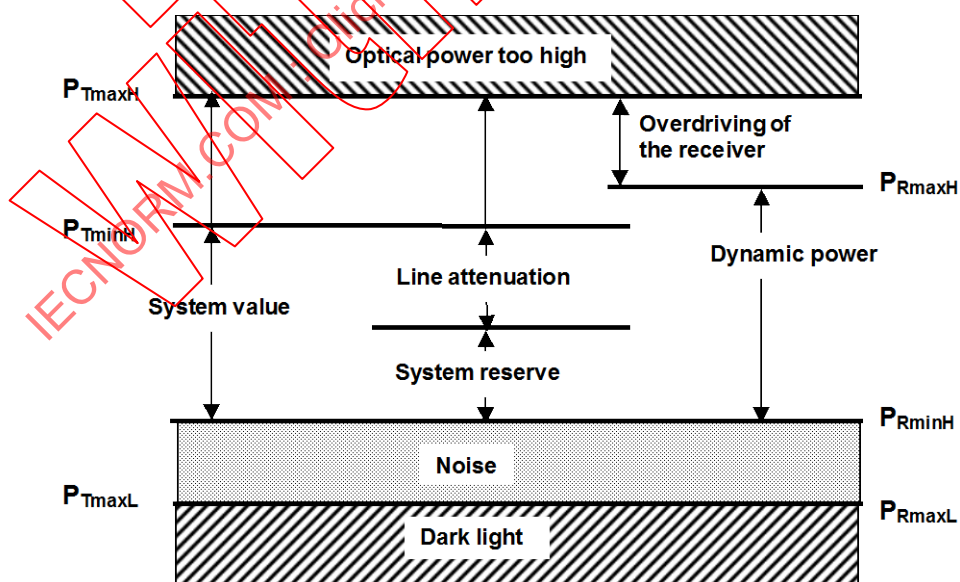
	Plastic fiber POF	Glass fiber HCS
Core diameter	980 μm	200 μm
Cladding diameter	1 000 μm	230 μm
Numeric aperture	0,47	0,37
Bandwidth	$\geq 5 \text{ MHz} \times 1 \text{ km}$	$\geq 10 \text{ MHz} \times 1 \text{ km}$

O.2.5 System data of the optical transmission path

The optical power levels are shown in Figure O.3 and shall be in accordance with values in Table O.4.

Table O.4 – System data of the optical transmission line at 650 nm

Fiber type		POF		HCS
Optical transmission power (see 30.1)		Low	High	High
Transmission power	P_{TmaxL}	-31,2 dBm	-28,2 dBm	-33,2 dBm
		0,75 μ W	1,5 μ W	0,5 μ W
	P_{TminH}	-10,5 dBm	-7,5 dBm	-18 dBm
		90 μ W	180 μ W	16 μ W
	P_{TmaxH}	-5,5 dBm	-3,5 dBm	-10 dBm
		280 μ W	450 μ W	100 μ W
Received power	P_{RmaxL}	-31,2 dBm		
		0,75 μ W		
	P_{RminH}	-20 dBm		
		10 μ W		
	P_{RmaxH}	-5 dBm		
		315 μ W		
	Dynamic power (P_{RmaxH} to P_{RminH})		15 dB	
System value	P_{TminH} to P_{RminH}	9,5 dB	12,5 dB	4 dB
System reserve (including lifetime of transmitting diode)		$\geq 5,1$ dB		≥ 2 dB
Line attenuation (System value – System reserve)		$\leq 4,4$ dB	$\leq 7,4$ dB	≤ 2 dB
Measuring cable attenuation (typical)		0,2 dB/m	0,2 dB/m	10 dB/km
Cable length		≥ 22 m	≤ 37 m	≤ 200 m
Transmission rate (NRZI)		2 Mbit/s, 4 Mbit/s, 8 Mbit/s and 16 Mbit/s		
Bit error rate		$\leq 10^{-9}$		
Temperature range		0 °C to 70 °C		

**Figure O.3 – Optical power levels**

Annex P (informative)

Type 16: Reference design example

P.1 Functional principles of the repeater circuit

Figure P.1 shows an example of an implementation of the signal-regeneration function from the repeater circuit. The primary task of this circuit consists of retrieving the clock RCLK from the NRZI-coded input signal IN. This may be accomplished e.g., by means of a digital phase-locked loop (DPLL). In addition, by sampling the input signal IN at appropriate times, a regenerated received signal RxD can be generated. The NRZI-coded signal is especially useful in the network structure.

The circuit consists of eight flip-flops and a combinational logic PLA. The flip-flops are driven by a common clock CX. This clock signal is generated by a crystal oscillator having 16 times the frequency of the data rate, which is 32 MHz at 2 Mbit/s transmission rate.

It is also possible to implement DPLLs having different sampling rates. In order to match the following condition, a sampling rate of at least 12 times is needed:

$$0 \leq t_{\text{cadreal}} \leq \frac{t_{\text{bitnom}}}{11}$$

Flip-flop 1 is used to initially synchronize the input signal. Flip-flop 2 is used for edge detection; it is always the case that if IN1 = 1 and IN2 = 0, a positive edge has been found. Flip-flops 5-8 in conjunction with the combinatorial logic are used to implement a finite-state machine.

The status diagram of Figure P.2 illustrates the behavior of the DPLL. States Z = 0 through Z = 15 correspond to the binary values which are given by the output signals of the flip-flops 5-8.

Depending on the status number (Z = 0 ... 15) in which E (event: light-on edge detected) or E* (event: no light-on edge detected) is detected, the DPLL reacts by repeating or skipping a status. If E is found to be in the state Z = 0, the DPLL does not repeat or skip (i.e., the DPLL is synchronized). Input signals are not sampled at the theoretical mean of the bit cell but in their shifted position. This enables the system to operate even with relatively strong distorted signals. During the transition from Z = 3 to Z = 4, RCLK = 1 is set. During the transition from Z = 10 or Z = 11 to Z = 12 and from Z = 11 to Z = 13, RCLK = 0 is set and the output signal RxD is set equal to the synchronized input signal IN1.

Figure P.3 illustrates the timing of various signals.

In general, the signal becomes distorted mainly by electrical-to-optical conversion and vice versa. In Figure P.3, it is shown what the signal IN1 looks like ideally, and what its typical shape is during minimum and maximum transmission power. The assumption is made that a series of NRZI-coded zeros is transferred. This corresponds to a rectangular signal with the period $2 \times t_{\text{BIT}}$.

Increasing transmission power eventually overdrives the receiver. The electrical signal level corresponding to the optical "light-on" remains at the receiver output longer than the generating electrical signal at the transmitter's input. Since the signal IN1 is not symmetric, it is useful to synchronize the phase lock loop on one signal edge only. For this purpose, the light-on edge seems to be more stable. Depending on the physical circumstances (i.e.,

inverted or non-inverted receiver) either the positive or the negative edge can be used as the input signal of the DPLL.

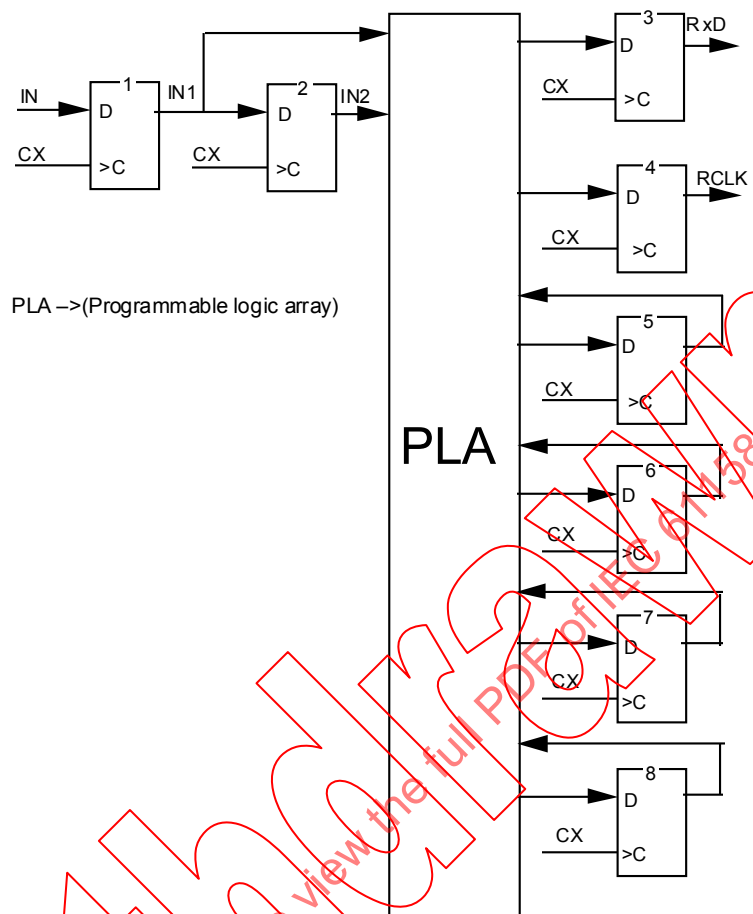


Figure P.1 – Example of an implemented DPLL

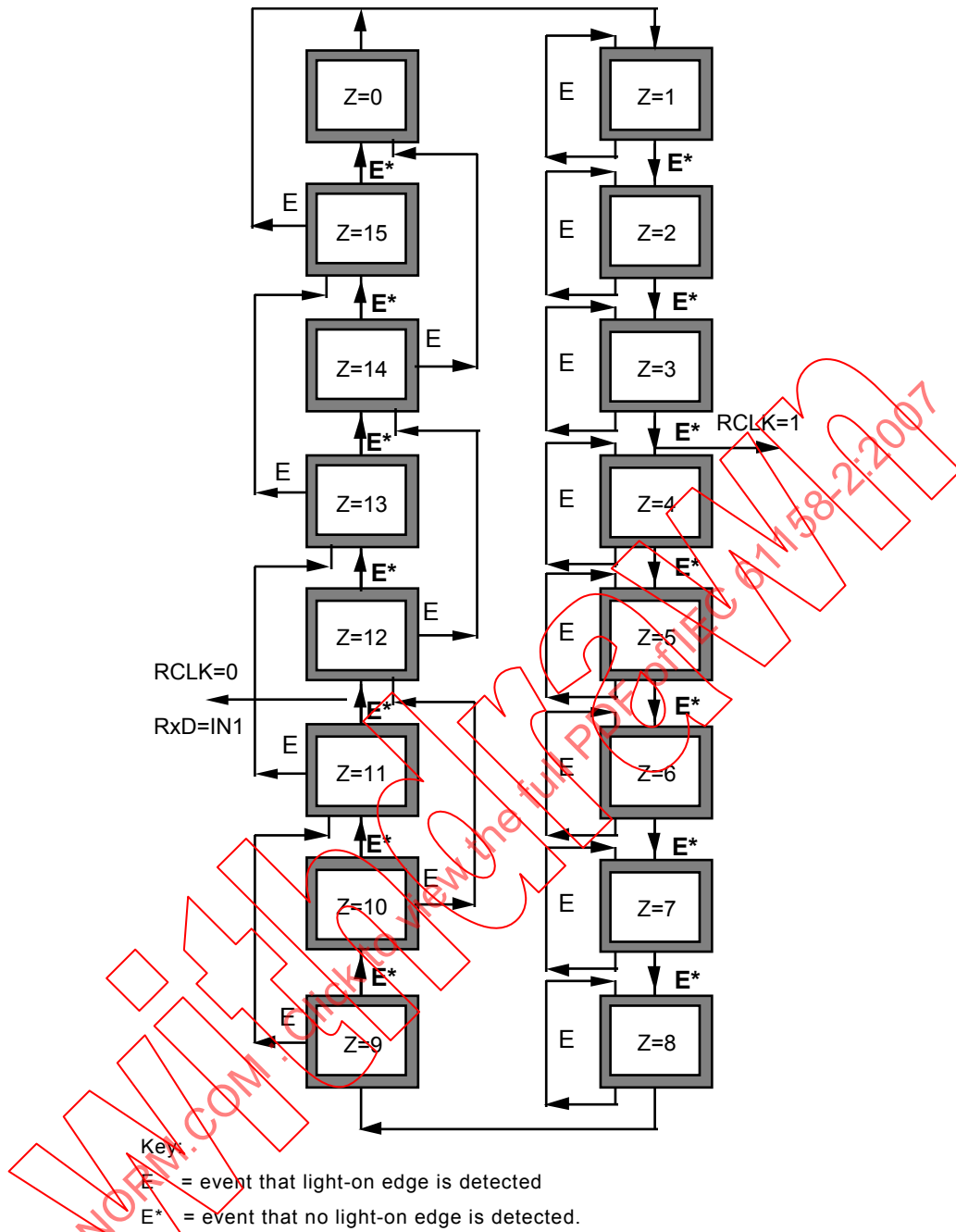


Figure P.2 – DPLL status diagram

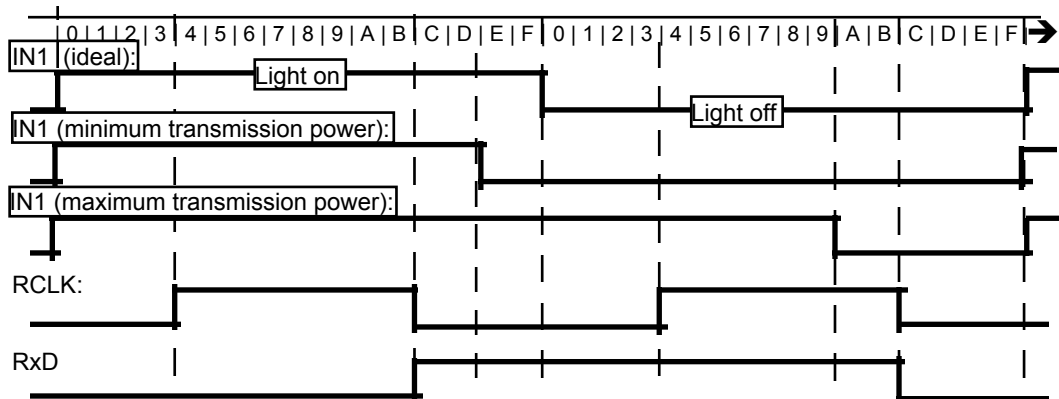


Figure P.3 – DPLL timing

P.2 Attenuation on the transmission line

This informative clause shows which factors contribute to the attenuation along the transmission line.

Two levels of maximum allowable attenuation along the line are specified. A transmitter can be switched to drive a transmission line with "low attenuation" or "high attenuation". This reduces the effects of the large attenuation range (0 dB to 7,4 dB).

The following factors contribute to attenuation:

- the fiber optic cable
- possible additional couplings (e.g. wall breakthroughs)

The additional variable couplings do not include inserted attenuation due to F-SMA plug connectors on the transmitter output and receiver input.

The transmission "low attenuation" should be selected for a short transmission line without additional couplings (e.g., 2 dB attenuation along the line) whereas "high attenuation" is selected for a long transmission line with additional couplings (e.g., 7 dB attenuation along the line). When designing the line, care shall be taken that the maximum attenuation along the line does not exceed the power levels as defined by high and low attenuation, i.e. the level of the transmission power shall eventually be adapted to the expected attenuation along the line.

Attenuation due to the couplings is often specified by technical data for the plugs. Attenuation due to the fiber optic cable cannot be determined so simply. The reason is that the specific attenuation of the fiber optic cable is not constant in the range of the specified wavelength range. For instance, a cable with a specified attenuation of 220 dB/km may in fact have this rating for only a narrow range of wavelengths, around 650 nm. This specific attenuation rating can easily increase to a value in excess of 350 dB/km (at wavelengths of approximately 635 nm and approximately 680 nm).

Consider that the wavelength radiated by the transmitting diode shifts to longer wavelengths at increasing temperatures (λ_p and $\Delta\lambda$ increase), significant portions of the emitted light become attenuated by the fiber optic cable.

In order to determine the exact attenuation due to the fiber optic cable, the product of attenuation and radiated light power has to be integrated over the wavelength.

A 30 m long fiber optic cable with a typical attenuation rating of 220 dB/km may have an attenuation interval of 6 dB to 9 dB over the entire temperature range of 0 °C to +55 °C (due to shifted wavelength).

Another uncertainty factor contributing to attenuation along the line is assembly. A cleanly mounted and polished plug has a very low inserted attenuation, compared to a poorly installed plug.

Annex Q (normative)

Type 18: Connector specification

Q.1 Overview

Only Type 18-PhL-P defines specific connectors.

Q.2 Device connector

The required dimensions of the Type 18-PhL-P device connector are shown in Figure Q.1 for a right angle and Figure Q.2 for a straight board mount connector.

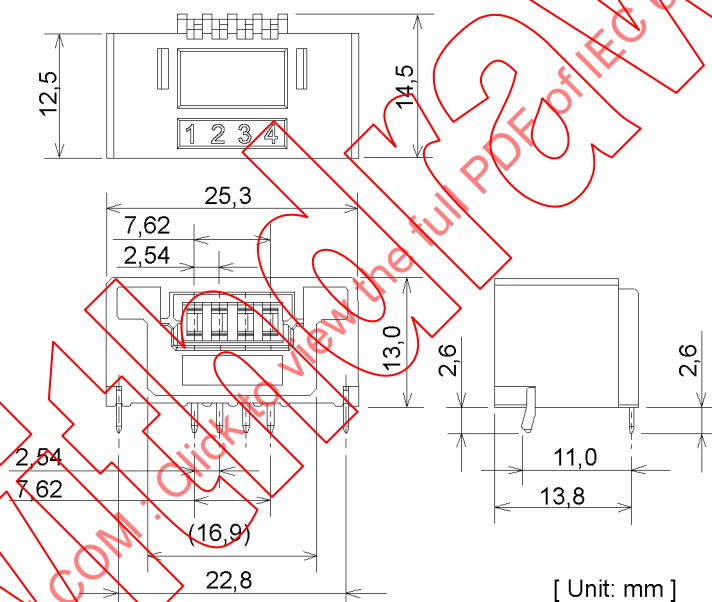


Figure Q.1 – PhL-P device connector r-a

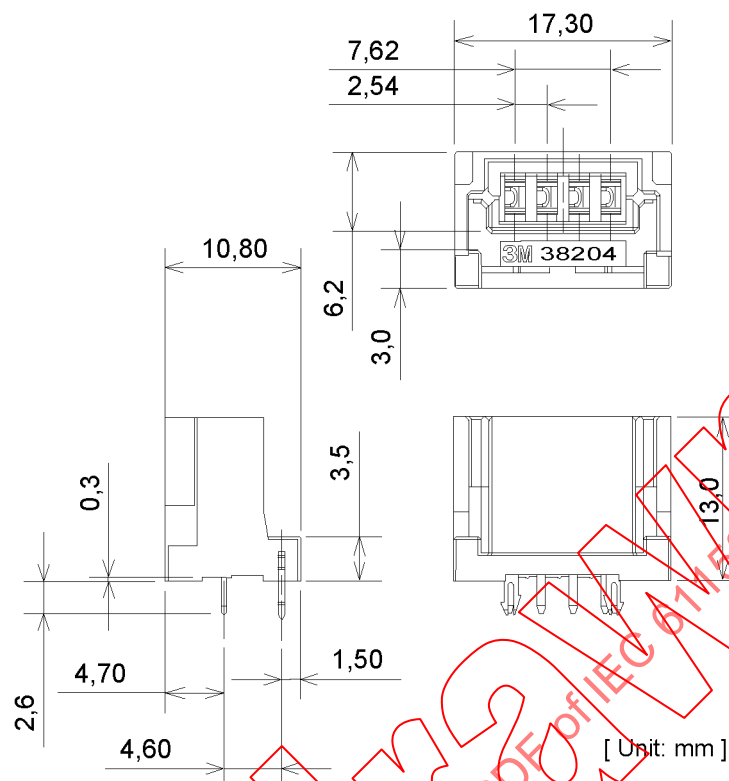


Figure Q.2 – PhL-P device connector straight

Q.3 Flat-cable connector

The required dimensions of the Type 18-PhL-P flat cable connector are shown in Figure Q.3 and Figure Q.4.

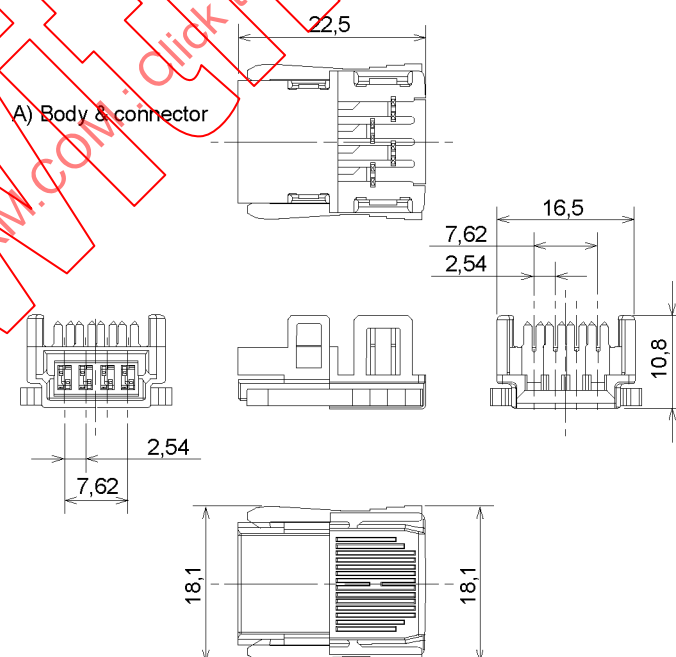


Figure Q.3 – PhL-P flat cable connector and terminal cover – body and connector

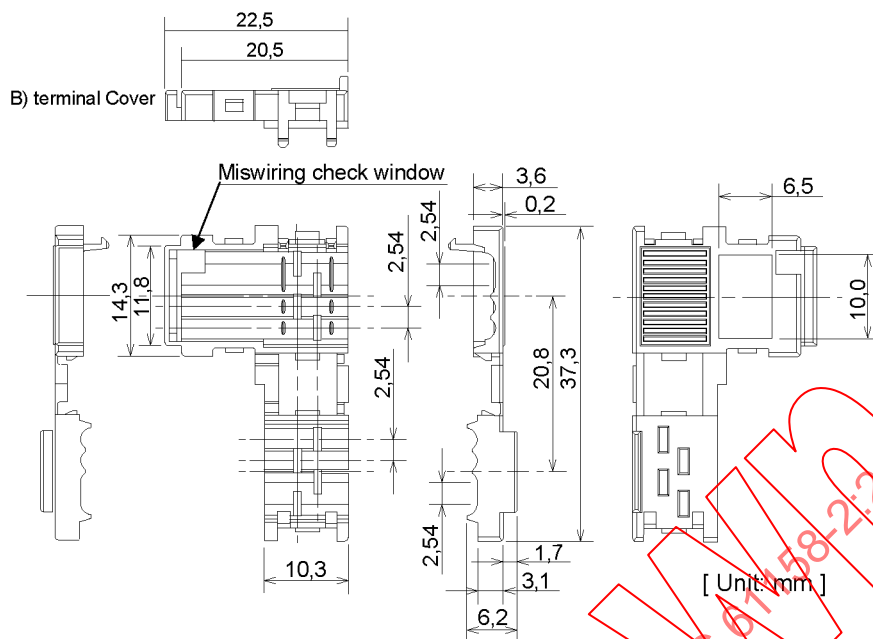


Figure Q.4 – PhL-P flat cable connector and terminal cover – terminal cover

Q.4 Round cable connector

The required dimensions of the Type 18-PhL-P round cable connector are shown in Figure Q.5 and Figure Q.6. This connector is applicable to both styles of Type 18-PhL-P round cable.

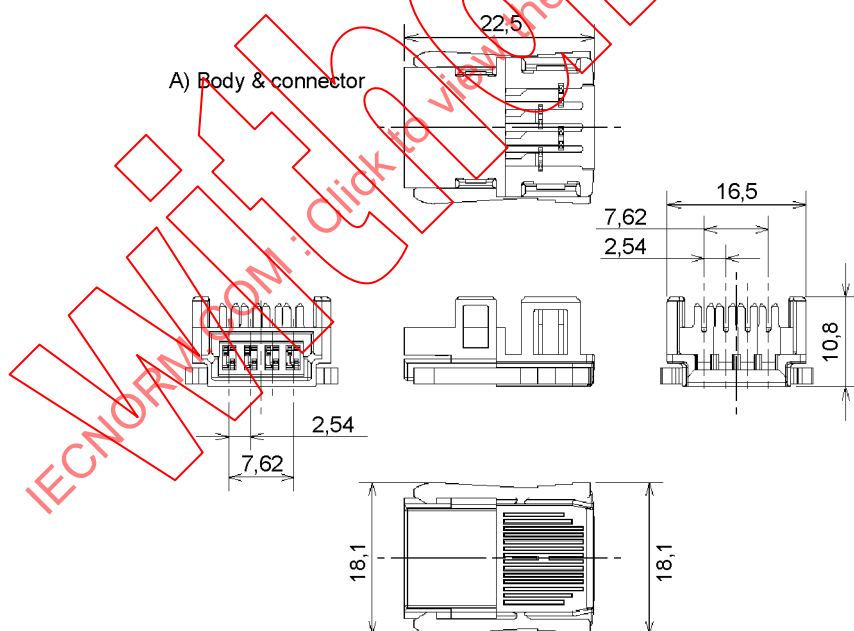


Figure Q.5 – Type 18-PhL-P round cable connector body

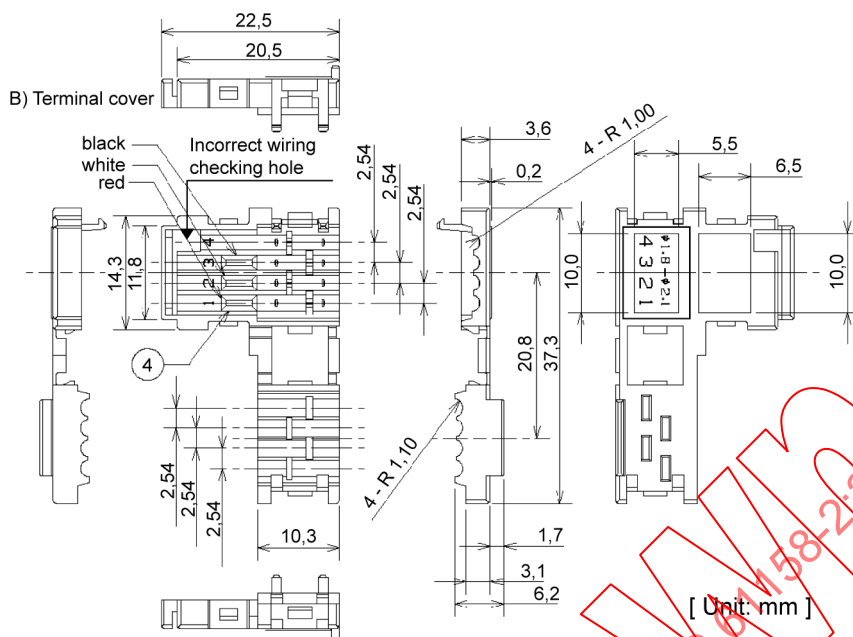


Figure Q.6 – Type 18-PhL-P round cable connector terminal cover

Q.5 Round cable alternate connector

The required dimensions of the Type 18-PhL-P round cable alternate connector is shown in Figure Q.7 and Figure Q.8.

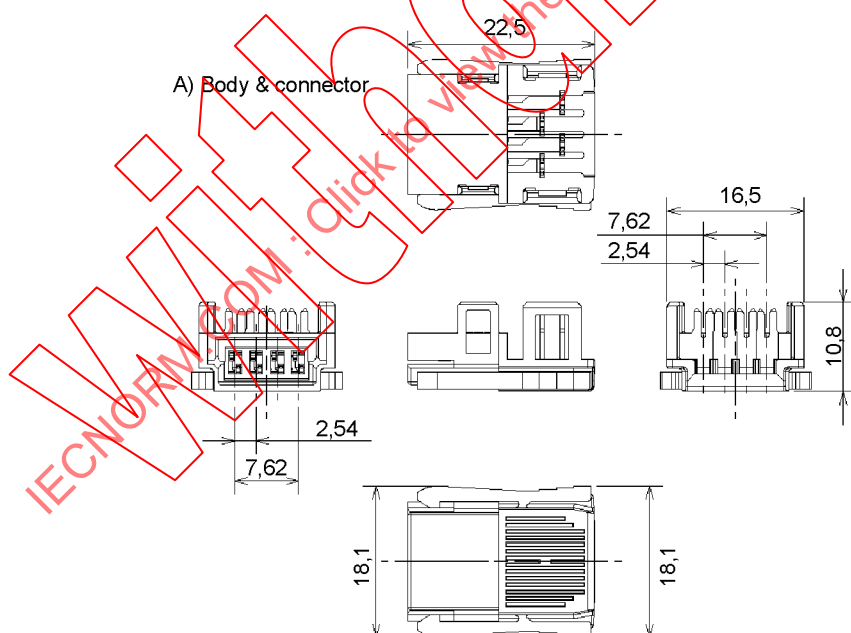


Figure Q.7 – Type 18-PhL-P round cable alternate connector and body

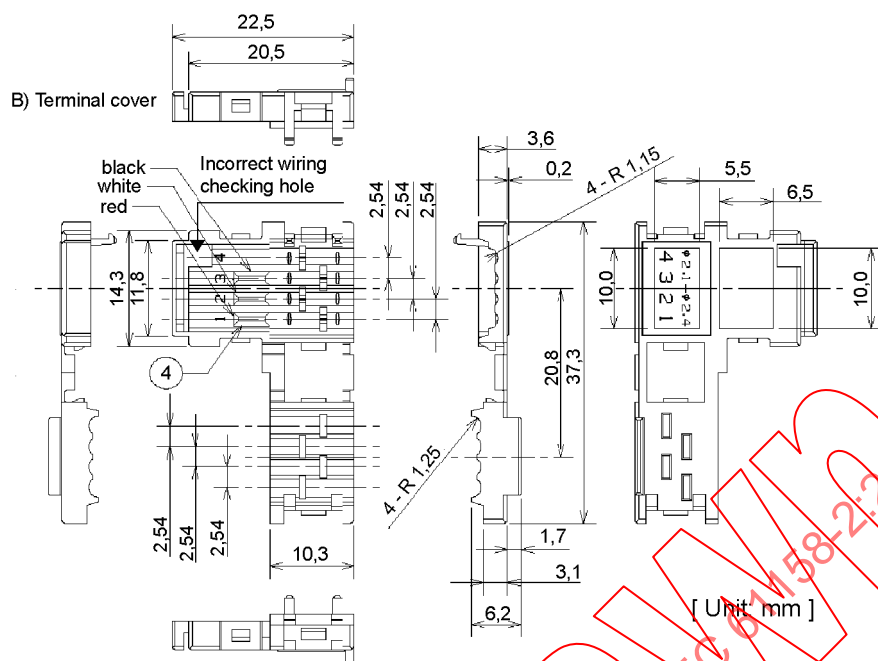


Figure Q.8 – Type 18-PhL-P round cable alternate connector terminal cover

Annex R (normative)

Type 18: Media cable specifications

R.1 Type 18-PhL-B cable

The 3-core twisted-pair cable Type 18-PhL-B medium is specified in Table R.1.

Table R.1 – PhL-B cable specifications

Item		Specifications
Cable type		Shielded twisted cable
Outer diameter		8,0 mm or less
Number of cores		3
Conductor size		20 AWG
Insulation size		0,55 mm to 0,80 mm
Drain line		20 lines/0,18 mm or 24 lines/0,18 mm Insert separately or in a bundle between the ground cable bundle and aluminum tape.
Conductor resistance (20 °C)		37,8 Ω /km or less
Insulation resistance		10 000 M Ω /km or more
Dielectric withstand voltage		500 VDC 1 min
Electrostatic capacity (1kHz)		60 nF/km or less
Impedance characteristic	1 MHz	110 $\pm$ 15 Ω
	5 MHz	110 $\pm$ 6 Ω
Attenuation (20 °C)	1 MHz	1,6 dB/100 m or less
	5 MHz	3,5 dB/100 m or less
Cross section	Twisted drain	See Figure R.1
	Non-twisted drain	See Figure R.2

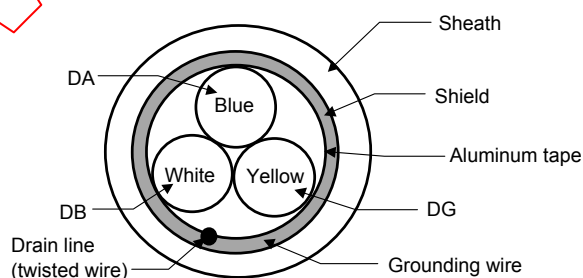


Figure R.1 – PhL-B cable cross section twisted drain

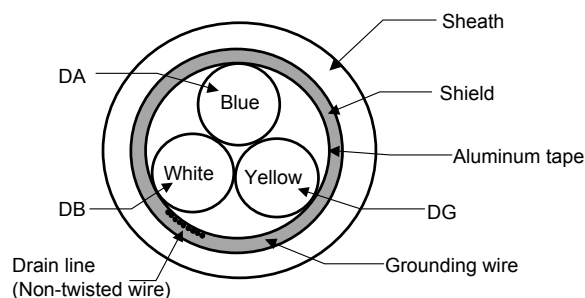


Figure R.2 – PhL-B cable cross section non-twisted drain

R.2 Type 18-PhL-P cable

R.2.1 Flat cable

The 4-core unshielded flat cable Type-18-PhL-P medium is specified in Table R.2.

Table R.2 – PhL-P flat cable specifications

Item		Unit	Specification
Cable type		-	Flat cable
Number of wire cores		-	4
Conductor	Material	-	Tinned, annealed copper wire (collective twisting)
	AWG	-	18
	Construction	Lines/mm	43/0,16, 34/0,18, 30/0,18
	Standard outline	mm	1,20 to 1,21
	Pitch between twisted lines	mm	24,9 or less
Insulating material	Material	-	Flexible resin
	Standard thickness	mm	0,66 to 0,67
	Outline (major axis × major axis)	mm	2,54 ± 0,15 × 10,16 ± 0,40
	Line-to-line pitch	mm	2,54 ± 0,10
Conductor resistance (at 20 °C)		Ω/km	23,4 or less
Insulation resistance (at 20 °C)		MΩ/km	10 or more
Withstand voltage		-	500 VAC, 1 min
Characteristic impedance (reference value)		Ω	1 MHz
			2 MHz
Attenuation amount(reference value)		dB/100m	1 MHz
			2 MHz
Electrostatic capacity (reference value)		nF/km	1 kHz
Cross section - with key (recommended)		-	See Figure R.3
Cross section – without key		-	See Figure R.4
Polarity marking		-	See Figure R.5

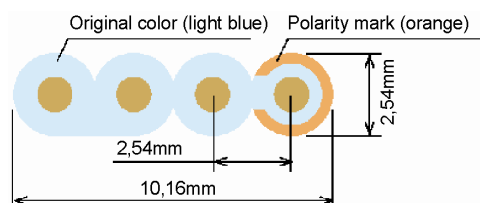


Figure R.3 – PhL-P flat cable cross section - with key

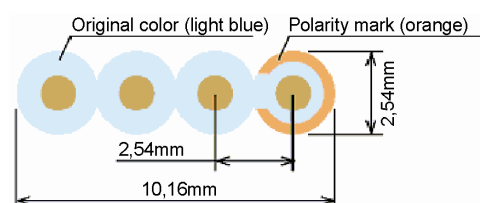


Figure R.4 – PhL-P flat cable cross section - without key



Figure R.5 – PhL-P flat cable polarity marking

R.2.2 Round cable - preferred

The preferred 4-core unshielded round cable for the Type-18-PhL-P medium is specified in Table R.3. This cable type is also known as VCTF cord and is compliant with IEC 60227-5.

Table R.3 – PhL-P round cable specifications - preferred

Item		Unit	Specification
Cable type		–	Polyvinyl chloride sheathed round cable
Number of wire cores		–	4
Conductor	Nominal cross-sectional area	mm ²	0,75
	Number of wires/diameter of a wire	wire/mm	30/0,18
	Outer diameter	mm	1,1
Insulator	Thickness	mm	0,6
	Outer diameter (approx.)	mm	2,3
Sheath	Thickness	mm	1,0
	Finish outer diameter (approx.)	mm	7,6
Conductor resistance (at 20 °C)		Ω/km	25,1
Cross-section		-	See Figure R.6

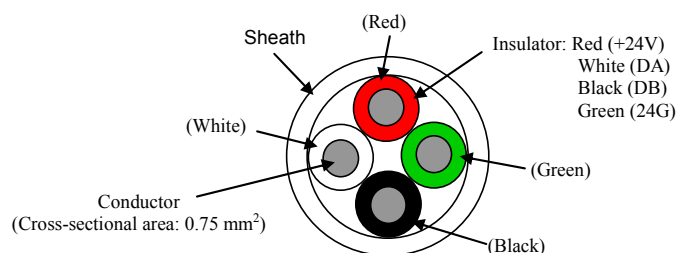


Figure R.6 – Round cable – preferred; cross section

R.2.3 Round cable - alternate

The alternate 4-core unshielded round cable for the Type-18-PhL-P medium is specified in Table R.4.

Table R.4 – PhL-P round cable specifications – alternate

Item		Unit	Specification	
Number of wire cores		-	4	
Conductor	Cross-sectional area	mm ²	0,75	
Insulator	Outer diameter	mm	1,8 to 2,4	
Conductor resistance (at 20 °C)		Ω/km	35 or less	
Conductor resistance (at 20 °C) (reference value)		MΩ/km	5 or more	
Withstand voltage (reference value)		-	500 VAC, 1min	
Characteristic impedance (reference value)		Ω	1 MHz	90 ± 30
			2 MHz	
Drop in decibel level (reference value)		db/100 m	1 MHz	4 or less
			2 MHz	5 or less
Electric capacity (reference value)		nF/km	1 MHz	100 or less
Cross section		-	See Figure R.7	

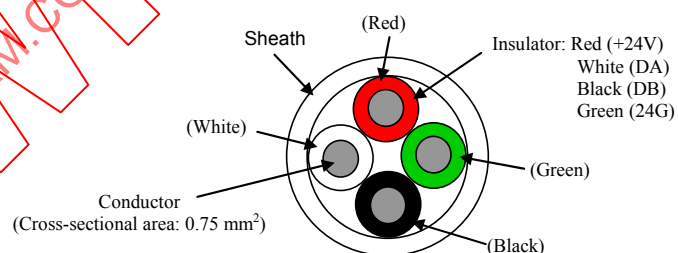


Figure R.7 – Round cable – alternate; cross-section

Bibliography

NOTE A listing of relevant documents from consortia associated with some of the IEC 61158 series of fieldbus standards can be found in the bibliography of IEC/TR 61158-1.

IEC Multilingual Dictionary: Electricity, Electronics and Telecommunications (on CD_ROM-2001 Edition)

IEC 60050(131):2002, *International Electrotechnical Vocabulary (IEV) – Part 131: Circuit theory*

IEC 60079-0, *Electrical apparatus for explosive gas atmospheres – Part 0: General requirements*

IEC 60079-27, *Electrical apparatus for explosive gas atmospheres – Part 27: Fieldbus intrinsically safe concept (FISCO) and Fieldbus non-incendive concept (FNICO)*

IEC 60227-5, *Polyvinyl chloride insulated cables of rated voltages up to and including 450/750 V – Part 5: Flexible cables (cords)*

IEC 60875-1, *Non-wavelength-selective fibre optic branching devices – Part 1: Generic specification*

IEC 60947-5-2, *Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear – Part 5-2: Control circuit devices and switching elements – Proximity switches*

IEC 61300-3-4, *Fibre optic interconnecting devices and passive components – Basic test and measurement procedures – Part 3-4: Examinations and measurements – Attenuation*

IEC 61491, *Electrical equipment of industrial machines – Serial data link for real-time communication between controls and drives*

IEC 61596, *Magnetic oxide EP-cores and associated parts for use in inductors and transformers – Dimensions*

IEC 61784-1, *Industrial communication networks – Profiles – Part 1: Fieldbus profiles*

ISO/IEC 8886:1996, *Information technology – Open Systems Interconnection – Data link service definition*

ISO/IEC 10022:1996, *Information technology – Open Systems Interconnection – Physical service definition*

ISO/TR 8509:1987, *Information processing systems – Open Systems Interconnection – Service conventions*

ITU-T V.11:1996, *Electrical characteristics for balanced double-current interchange circuits operating at data signalling rates up to 10 Mbit/s*

IEEE Std 100, *The IEEE Standard Dictionary of Electrical and Electronics Terms*

SOMMAIRE

AVANT-PROPOS	428
0 Introduction	431
0.1 Généralités	431
0.2 Aperçu de la Couche Physique	431
0.3 Aperçu des documents	431
0.4 Principales variantes de couche physique spécifiées dans la présente norme	433
1 Domaine d'application	435
2 Références normatives	435
3 Termes et définitions	437
3.1 Termes et définitions communs	437
3.2 Type 1: Termes et définitions	442
3.3 Type 2: Termes et définitions	445
3.4 Type 3: Termes et définitions	449
3.5 Type 4: Termes et définitions	451
3.6 Type 6: <i>Ce paragraphe a été retiré</i>	452
3.7 Type 8: Termes et définitions	453
3.8 Type 12: Termes et définitions	455
3.9 Type 16: Termes et définitions	457
3.10 Type 18: Termes et définitions	459
4 Symboles et abréviations	461
4.1 Symboles	461
4.2 Abréviations	465
5 Interface DLL-PhL	471
5.1 Généralités	471
5.2 Type 1: Services exigés	473
5.3 Type 2: Services exigés	475
5.4 Type 3: Services exigés	477
5.5 Type 4: Services exigés	479
5.6 Type 6: <i>Ce paragraphe a été retiré</i>	480
5.7 Type 8: Services exigés	480
5.8 Type 12: Services exigés	492
5.9 Type 16: Services exigés	494
5.10 Type 18: Services exigés	495
6 Interface Gestion systèmes – PhL	497
6.1 Généralités	497
6.2 Type 1: Interface Gestion systèmes – PhL	497
6.3 Type 3: Interface Gestion systèmes – PhL	499
6.4 Type 4: Interface Gestion systèmes – PhL	505
6.5 Type 6: <i>Ce paragraphe a été retiré</i>	505
6.6 Type 8: Interface Gestion systèmes – PhL	505
6.7 Type 12: Interface Gestion systèmes – PhL	510
6.8 Type 18: Interface Gestion systèmes – PhL	511
7 Sous-couche indépendante du DCE (DIS)	511
7.1 Généralités	511
7.2 Type 1: DIS	512
7.3 Type 3: DIS	512

7.4	Type 6: <i>Ce paragraphe a été retiré</i>	512
7.5	Type 8: DIS	512
7.6	Type 12: DIS	514
8	Interface ETDD – DCE et fonctions spécifiques à la MIS	515
8.1	Généralités	515
8.2	Type 1: Interface ETDD – DCE	515
8.3	Type 3: Interface ETDD-DCE	527
8.4	Type 8: Interface MIS — MDS	527
8.5	Type 12: Interface ETDD-DCE	539
9	Sous-couche dépendante du support (MDS)	539
9.1	Généralités	539
9.2	Type 1: MDS: Supports câblés et optiques	539
9.3	Type 1: MDS: Supports radioélectriques	543
9.4	Type 2: MDS: Supports câblés et optiques	543
9.5	Type 3: MDS: Supports câblés et optiques	544
9.6	Type 4: MDS: Support câblé	544
9.7	Type 6: <i>Ce paragraphe a été retiré</i>	550
9.8	Type 8: MDS: Supports câblés et optiques	550
9.9	Type 12: MDS: Supports câblés	558
9.10	Type 16: MDS: Supports optiques	561
9.11	Type 18: MDS: Supports câblés	563
10	Interface MDS-MAU	564
10.1	Généralités	564
10.2	Type 1: Interface MDS-MAU: Supports câblés et optiques	564
10.3	Type 1: Interface MDS-MAU: Signalisation radioélectrique	566
10.4	Type 2: Interface MDS-MAU: Supports câblés et optiques	566
10.5	Type 3: Interface MDS-MAU: Supports câblés et optiques	568
10.6	Type 8: Interface MDS-MAU: Supports câblés et optiques	568
10.7	Type 18: Interface MDS-MAU: Supports câblés	570
11	Types 1 et 7: Unité de liaison au Support: mode tension, topologie de bus linéaire, support câblé à paire torsadée 150 Ω	572
11.1	Généralités	572
11.2	Grandeurs dépendantes du débit binaire	572
11.3	Spécifications du réseau	573
11.4	Spécification du circuit d'émission de la MAU	576
11.5	Spécification du circuit de réception de la MAU	581
11.6	Inhibition du bavardage	584
11.7	Distribution de l'alimentation	584
11.8	Spécifications du support	587
12	Types 1 et 3: Unité de liaison au Support: 31,25 kbit/s, mode tension avec option basse puissance, topologie bus et arborescente, support câblé 100 Ω	590
12.1	Généralités	590
12.2	Débit binaire d'émission	591
12.3	Spécifications du réseau	591
12.4	Spécification du circuit d'émission de la MAU	593
12.5	Spécification du circuit de réception de la MAU	596
12.6	Inhibition du bavardage	598
12.7	Distribution de l'alimentation	599
12.8	Spécifications du support	607

12.9	Sécurité intrinsèque	610
12.10	Sectionneurs galvaniques.....	611
13	Type 1: Unité de liaison au Support: mode courant, support câblé à paire torsadée.....	611
13.1	Généralités.....	611
13.2	Débit binaire d'émission	611
13.3	Spécifications du réseau	612
13.4	Spécification du circuit d'émission de la MAU	614
13.5	Spécification du circuit de réception de la MAU	617
13.6	Inhibition du bavardage	619
13.7	Distribution de l'alimentation.....	620
13.8	Spécifications du support	621
14	Type 1: Unité de liaison au Support: mode courant (1 A), support câblé à paire torsadée	624
14.1	Généralités.....	624
14.2	Débit binaire d'émission	624
14.3	Spécifications du réseau	624
14.4	Spécification du circuit d'émission de la MAU	627
14.5	Spécification du circuit de réception de la MAU	629
14.6	Inhibition du bavardage	630
14.7	Distribution de l'alimentation.....	630
14.8	Spécifications du support	632
15	Types 1 et 7: Unité de liaison au Support: supports à fibre optique double	633
15.1	Généralités.....	633
15.2	Grandeurs dépendantes du débit binaire	634
15.3	Spécifications du réseau	634
15.4	Spécifications du circuit d'émission de la MAU	635
15.5	Spécifications du circuit de réception de la MAU	637
15.6	Inhibition du bavardage	638
15.7	Spécifications du support	638
16	Type 1: Unité de liaison au Support: support optique monofibre 31,25 kbit/s, ...	641
16.1	Généralités.....	641
16.2	Débit binaire d'émission	641
16.3	Spécifications du réseau	641
16.4	Spécifications du circuit d'émission de la MAU	641
16.5	Spécifications du circuit de réception de la MAU	642
16.6	Inhibition du bavardage	642
16.7	Spécifications du support	642
17	Type 1: Unité de liaison au Support: signalisation radioélectrique.....	644
17.1	Généralités.....	644
17.2	Vitesse de signalisation en émission	644
17.3	Modulation	645
17.4	Spécification du réseau	647
17.5	Antennes.....	652
17.6	Inhibition du bavardage	652
17.7	Interface radioélectrique commune.....	652
18	Type 2: Unité de liaison au Support: Support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s, en mode tension	655
18.1	Généralités.....	655
18.2	Emetteur-récepteur: support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension	657

18.3	Transformateur pour support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension	663
18.4	Connecteur de support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension	664
18.5	Topologie pour un support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension	664
18.6	Prises pour un support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension	666
18.7	Ligne principale pour un support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension.....	668
19	Type 2: Unité de liaison au Support: support optique 5 Mbit/s.....	669
19.1	Généralités.....	669
19.2	Emetteur-récepteur de support optique de 5 Mbit/s, ...	669
19.3	Topologie de support optique de 5 Mbit/s	670
19.4	Support à fibre optique de ligne principale de 5 Mbit/s.....	671
19.5	Connecteurs de ligne principale de support à fibre optique de 5 Mbit/s.....	671
19.6	Spécifications de fibre optique de support de 5 Mbit/s	671
20	Type 2: Unité de liaison au Support: Port d'accès au réseau (NAP).....	674
20.1	Généralités.....	674
20.2	Signalisation	675
20.3	Emetteur-récepteur	676
20.4	Connecteur	677
20.5	Câble	677
21	Type 3: Unité de liaison au Support: Transmission synchrone, 31,25 kbit/s, mode tension, support câblé	678
21.1	Généralités.....	678
21.2	Débit binaire d'émission	679
21.3	Spécifications du réseau	679
21.4	Spécification du circuit d'émission pour la MAU 31,25 kbit/s en mode tension	682
21.5	Spécification du circuit de réception pour la MAU 31,25 kbit/s en mode tension	686
21.6	Inhibition du bavardage	686
21.7	Distribution de l'alimentation.....	686
21.8	Spécifications du support.....	689
21.9	Sécurité intrinsèque	691
21.10	Sectionneurs galvaniques.....	691
21.11	Eléments de couplage	692
21.12	Alimentation	694
22	Type 3: Unité de liaison au Support: transmission asynchrone, support câblé	699
22.1	Unité de liaison au Support non IS	699
22.2	Unité de liaison au support de sécurité intrinsèque.....	705
23	Type 3: Unité de liaison au support: transmission asynchrone, support optique	717
23.1	Caractéristiques techniques de transmission de données sur fibre optique.....	717
23.2	Caractéristiques de base d'un support de transmission de données sur fibre optique.....	719
23.3	Réseau optique	719
23.4	Liaison optique normalisée.....	720
23.5	Structures de réseaux construits à partir d'une combinaison de liaisons optiques normalisées	721
23.6	Codage binaire.....	721
23.7	Niveau de signal optique	721
23.8	Distorsion temporelle des signaux	724
23.9	Taux d'erreurs sur les bits	728
23.10	Connecteurs pour câble à fibre optique	728

23.11	Redondance dans des réseaux de transmission optique.....	728
24	Type 4: Unité de liaison au support: RS-485.....	728
24.1	Généralités.....	728
24.2	Aperçu des services.....	728
24.3	Description des services.....	729
24.4	Réseau.....	729
24.5	Spécification électrique.....	729
24.6	Réponse temporelle.....	729
24.7	Interface avec le support de transmission.....	729
24.8	Spécification du support de transmission.....	730
25	Type 4: Unité de liaison au support: RS-232.....	730
25.1	Généralités.....	730
25.2	Aperçu des services.....	730
25.3	Description des services.....	731
26	Type 6: <i>Cet article a été retiré</i>	731
27	Type 8: Unité de liaison au support: support câblé à paire torsadée.....	731
27.1	Signaux de MAU.....	731
27.2	Grandeurs dépendantes du débit binaire de transmission.....	732
27.3	Réseau.....	732
27.4	Spécification électrique.....	733
27.5	Réponse temporelle.....	733
27.6	Interface avec le support de transmission.....	733
27.7	Spécification du support de transmission.....	734
28	Type 8: Unité de liaison au support: supports optiques.....	736
28.1	Généralités.....	736
28.2	Grandeurs dépendantes du débit binaire de transmission.....	737
28.3	Topologie du réseau.....	737
28.4	Spécifications du circuit d'émission.....	738
28.5	Spécifications du circuit de réception.....	740
28.6	Spécification du support de transmission.....	740
29	Type 12: Unité de liaison au support: support électrique.....	744
29.1	Caractéristiques électriques.....	744
29.2	Spécifications du support.....	744
29.3	Méthode de transmission.....	745
30	Type 16: Unité de liaison au support: support à fibre optique de 2, 4, 8 et 16 Mbit/s.....	745
30.1	Structure des lignes d'émission.....	745
30.2	Caractéristiques de durée de la transmission binaire.....	746
30.3	Connexion à la fibre optique.....	754
31	Type 18: Unité de liaison au support: Support de base.....	760
31.1	Généralités.....	760
31.2	Codage du signal de données.....	760
31.3	Chargement du signal.....	760
31.4	Exigences d'acheminement du signal.....	761
31.5	Supports.....	761
31.6	Connecteurs de câbles de dérivation et de points d'extrémité.....	764
31.7	Circuits recommandés de MAU de PhL-B de Type 18.....	764
32	Type 18: Unité de liaison au support: Support alimenté.....	765
32.1	Généralités.....	765

32.2	Codage du signal de données	766
32.3	Chargement du signal	766
32.4	Exigences d'acheminement du signal	766
32.5	Supports	766
32.6	Connecteurs de câbles de dérivation et de point d'extrémité	770
32.7	Distribution de l'alimentation intégrée	770
32.8	Circuits recommandés de MAU de PhL-P de Type 18	773
Annexe A	(normative) Type 1: Spécification des connecteurs	776
A.1	Connecteur interne pour support câblé	776
A.2	Connecteurs externes pour support câblé	777
Annexe B	(informative) Types 1 et 3: Spécifications du câblage – longueurs de lignes principales et de lignes secondaires pour la MAU de 31,25 kbit/s en mode tension	788
B.1	Description et spécification du câblage	788
B.2	Longueurs de lignes principales et de lignes secondaires typiques	788
Annexe C	(informative) Types 1 et 7: Etoiles passives optiques	790
C.1	Définition	790
C.2	Exemples d'affaiblissements	791
Annexe D	(informative) Types 1 et 7: Topologie en étoile	792
D.1	Exemples de topologie	792
D.2	Bilan de puissance optique	793
D.3	Mixte, avec supports câblés	794
Annexe E	(informative) Type 1: Autres fibres	796
E.1	Variantes de fibres en mode fibre double	796
E.2	Variantes de fibres en mode monofibre	796
Annexe F	(normative) Type 2: Spécification des connecteurs	797
F.1	Connecteur pour support à câble coaxial	797
F.2	Connecteur pour support optique	797
F.3	Connecteur pour support NAP	798
Annexe G	(normative) Type 2: Sous-couches de machine répéteur (RM, RRM) et PhL redondantes	800
G.1	Généralités	800
G.2	Sous-couche RM (machine répéteur)	800
G.3	PhL redondante	803
G.4	Sous-couche RRM (Machine répéteur d'anneau)	804
Annexe H	(informative) Type 2: Exemples de conceptions de référence	815
H.1	MAU: support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension	815
H.2	Port d'accès au réseau (NAP)	819
Annexe I	(normative) Type 3: Spécification des connecteurs	821
I.1	Connecteur pour transmission synchrone	821
I.2	Connecteur pour transmission asynchrone	822
I.3	Connecteurs pour câble à fibre optique	828
Annexe J	(normative) Type 3: Redondance de PhL et support	829
Annexe K	(normative) Type 3: Topologie de réseau optique	830
K.1	Flux de signaux dans un réseau optique	830
Annexe L	(informative) Type 3: Exemples de modèles de référence pour une transmission asynchrone, sur support câblé de sécurité intrinsèque	840
L.1	Terminaison de bus intégrée au dispositif de communication	840
L.2	Terminaison de bus intégrée dans le connecteur	840

L.3	Terminaison de bus externe	841
Annexe M (normative)	Type 8: Spécification des connecteurs	843
M.1	Connecteurs externes pour support câblé.....	843
M.2	Connecteurs externes pour support à fibre optique.....	844
M.3	Connecteurs externes hybrides utilisés dans des applications IP65.....	845
Annexe N (normative)	Type 16: Spécification des connecteurs	848
Annexe O (normative)	Type 16: Topologie de réseau optique	849
O.1	Topologie	849
O.2	Bilan de puissance optique.....	850
Annexe P (informative)	Type 16: Exemple de modèle de référence.....	855
P.1	Principes fonctionnels du circuit répéteur	855
P.2	Affaiblissement sur la ligne d'émission	858
Annexe Q (normative)	Type 18: Spécification des connecteurs	860
Q.1	Aperçu général.....	860
Q.2	Connecteur de dispositif	860
Q.3	Connecteur de câble plat.....	861
Q.4	Connecteur de câble rond	863
Q.5	Variante de connecteur de câble rond	864
Annexe R (normative)	Type 18: Spécifications du câblage des supports	866
R.1	Câble de PhL-B de type 18.....	866
R.2	Câble PhL-P de type 18	867
Bibliographie.....		872
Figure 1 – Modèle général de couche physique		432
Figure 2 – Mise en correspondance entre unités de données sur l'interface DLL-PhL		472
Figure 3 – Service de données pour transmission asynchrone		478
Figure 4 – Interactions pour une séquence de données de maître: cycle d'identification		484
Figure 5 – Interactions pour une séquence de données de maître: cycle de données.....		485
Figure 6 – Interactions pour une séquence de données d'esclave: cycle d'identification.....		487
Figure 7 – Interactions pour une séquence de données d'esclave: cycle de données		488
Figure 8 – Interactions pour une séquence de contrôle de maître		490
Figure 9 – Interactions pour une séquence de contrôle d'esclave.....		492
Figure 10 – Réinitialiser, Etablir valeur, Obtenir valeur		501
Figure 11 – Service d'événements		501
Figure 12 – Interface entre PhL et PNM1 dans le modèle en couches		506
Figure 13 – Services Réinitialiser, Etablir valeur, Obtenir valeur de PhL		507
Figure 14 – Service d'événements PhL		507
Figure 15 – Attribution du numéro d'interface.....		509
Figure 16 – Configuration d'un maître		513
Figure 17 – Configuration d'un esclave avec un type alternatif d'émission		514
Figure 18 – Configuration d'un coupleur de bus avec un type alternatif d'émission.....		514
Figure 19 – Machines de séquençement ETTD/DCE		521
Figure 20 – Transitions d'état avec le service de demande de cycle d'identification		530
Figure 21 – Interface MIS-MDS: service de demande de cycle d'identification		531
Figure 22 – Interface MIS-MDS: service de demande de cycle d'identification		532

Figure 23 – Transitions d'état du service de demande de cycle de données.....	532
Figure 24 – Interface MIS-MDS: service de demande de cycle de données.....	533
Figure 25 – Transitions d'état du service de classification de séquences de données	534
Figure 26 – Machine protocolaire du service d'émission de messages	535
Figure 27 – Machine protocolaire du service d'identification de séquences de données	536
Figure 28 – Machine protocolaire du service de réception de messages	537
Figure 29 – Unité de données de protocole (PhPDU)	539
Figure 30 – Codage et décodage des PhSDU	540
Figure 31 – Règles de codage Manchester	540
Figure 32 – Préambule et délimiteurs	542
Figure 33 – Symboles codés Manchester	544
Figure 34 – Format d'une PhPDU – semi-duplex	545
Figure 35 – Format d'une PhPDU – duplex intégral	547
Figure 36 – PhPDU de séquence de données	551
Figure 37 – Structure de l'en-tête dans une PhPDU de séquence de données	551
Figure 38 – PhPDU de séquence de contrôle	552
Figure 39 – Structure de l'en-tête dans une PhPDU de séquence de contrôle	552
Figure 40 – Structure de la PhPDU d'état	553
Figure 41 – Structure de l'en-tête dans une PhPDU d'état	553
Figure 42 – Structure de la PhPDU d'état d'activité du support	554
Figure 43 – Structure de l'en-tête d'une PhPDU d'état d'activité du support	554
Figure 44 – PhPDU de réinitialisation	556
Figure 45 – Configuration d'un maître	557
Figure 46 – Configuration d'un esclave	557
Figure 47 – Configuration d'un coupleur de bus	558
Figure 48 – Unité de données de protocole	558
Figure 49 – Codage et décodage des PhSDU	559
Figure 50 – Règles de codage Manchester	559
Figure 51 – Exemple de signal codé en NRZI	562
Figure 52 – Signal de remplissage	563
Figure 53 – Tolérance à l'instabilité (gigue)	570
Figure 54 – Configuration d'essai du circuit d'émission	577
Figure 55 – Forme d'onde de sortie	578
Figure 56 – Instabilité de bit élémentaire émis et reçu (écart du point de passage par zéro)	579
Figure 57 – Polarité du signal	581
Figure 58 – Sensibilité du récepteur et suppression du bruit	582
Figure 59 – Ondulation et bruit de l'alimentation	586
Figure 60 – Coupleur de bus de terrain	588
Figure 61 – Transition de la réception à l'émission	596
Figure 62 – Ondulation et bruit de l'alimentation	601
Figure 63 – Circuit d'essai pour des alimentations à sortie unique	602
Figure 64 – Circuit d'essai pour distribution de l'alimentation par l'intermédiaire d'une barrière IS	603

Figure 65 – Circuit d'essai pour des alimentations à sorties multiples avec couplage du signal.....	605
Figure 66 – Coupleur de bus de terrain	608
Figure 67 – Résistances de protection	608
Figure 68 – Configuration d'essai d'une MAU en mode courant.....	615
Figure 69 – Instabilité de bit élémentaire émis et reçu (écart du point de passage par zéro).....	617
Figure 70 – Circuit d'essai du bruit d'une MAU en mode courant.....	619
Figure 71 – Instabilité de bit élémentaire émis et reçu (écart du point de passage par zéro).....	628
Figure 72 – Taux d'harmoniques et bruit de l'alimentation	631
Figure 73 – Modèle de forme d'onde optique	637
Figure 74 – Topologie de radiocommunication cellulaire et réutilisation de fréquences	649
Figure 75 – Topologie de segment de radiocommunication entre des segments câblés	650
Figure 76 – Topologie de bus de terrain mixte à supports câblés et radioélectriques	651
Figure 77 – Composantes de la variante de PhL à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension.....	657
Figure 78 – Synoptique de MAU à câble coaxial	657
Figure 79 – Emetteur-récepteur de MAU à câble coaxial.....	658
Figure 80 – Fonctionnement du récepteur avec MAU à câble coaxial	659
Figure 81 – Masque d'émission de MAU à câble coaxial	661
Figure 82 – Masque de réception de MAU à câble coaxial	662
Figure 83- Schéma du transformateur	663
Figure 84 – Exemple de topologie de câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension	665
Figure 85 – Limites de topologie d'un support à câble coaxial	666
Figure 86 – Caractéristiques électriques d'une prise de support à câble coaxial	667
Figure 87 – Synoptique de MAU, support à fibre optique de 5 Mbit/s	670
Figure 88 – Modèle de référence NAP	674
Figure 89 – Exemples de nœuds transitoires et permanents	675
Figure 90 – Emetteur-récepteur NAP	677
Figure 91 – Câble de NAP	678
Figure 92 – Schéma de principe de la mesure de l'impédance	684
Figure 93 – Définition du CMRR.....	685
Figure 94 – Schéma de principe de mesure du CMRR	685
Figure 95 – Ondulation et bruit de l'alimentation	688
Figure 96 – Courbe de sortie caractéristique d'une alimentation de catégorie EEx ib	697
Figure 97 – Courbe de sortie caractéristique d'une alimentation de catégorie EEx ia	698
Figure 98 – Répéteur en topologie en bus linéaire	700
Figure 99 – Répéteur en topologie arborescente.....	701
Figure 100 – Exemple d'un connecteur avec inductance intégrée	703
Figure 101 – Câblage d'interconnexion	703
Figure 102 – Terminateur de bus	704
Figure 103 – Structure linéaire d'un segment de sécurité intrinsèque	706
Figure 104 – Exemple de topologie étendue par des répéteurs	708

Figure 105 – Terminateur de bus	710
Figure 106 – Forme d'onde de la tension différentielle	711
Figure 107 – Montage d'essai pour la mesure du niveau au repos de dispositifs à résistance de terminaison intégrée	713
Figure 108 – Montage d'essai pour la mesure du niveau au repos de dispositifs à résistance de terminaison raccordable	713
Figure 109 – Montage d'essai pour la mesure des niveaux d'émission	714
Figure 110 – Montage d'essai pour la mesure du niveau de réception	714
Figure 111 – Modèle de bus de terrain de sécurité intrinsèque	715
Figure 112 – Modèle de dispositif de communication de sécurité intrinsèque	716
Figure 113 – Connexion au réseau optique	719
Figure 114 – Structure de principe d'un réseau optique	720
Figure 115 – Définition d'une liaison optique normalisée	721
Figure 116 – Modèle de signal pour l'émetteur optique	726
Figure 117 – Circuit d'interface recommandé	730
Figure 118 – MAU d'une interface de départ	732
Figure 119 – MAU d'une interface d'arrivée	732
Figure 120 – Liaison de bus distant	733
Figure 121 – Interface avec le support de transmission	733
Figure 122 – Câblage	736
Figure 123 – Réseau de résistances terminales	736
Figure 124 – Câble de bus distant à fibre optique	737
Figure 125 – Liaison de bus distant à fibre optique	737
Figure 126 – Modèle de forme d'onde optique pour une MAU à fibre optique	739
Figure 127 – Ligne d'émission optique	746
Figure 128 – Enveloppe de signal optique	748
Figure 129 – Affichage de l'instabilité (J_{noise})	749
Figure 130 – Caractéristiques d'entrée/sortie d'un esclave	751
Figure 131 – Fonctions de connexion d'un maître	755
Figure 132 – Signaux de transmission valides pendant les transitions de signal de remplissage à délimiteurs de message	757
Figure 133 – Signaux de transmission valides pendant les transitions de délimiteurs de télégramme à signal de remplissage	757
Figure 134 – Fonctions de connexion d'un esclave	758
Figure 135 – Réseau avec deux esclaves	760
Figure 136 – Câblage minimal d'interconnexion	761
Figure 137 – Topologie de câble dédié	762
Figure 138 – Topologie en T	762
Figure 139 – Isolation des éléments de communication	764
Figure 140 – Isolation des éléments E/S et de communication	765
Figure 141 – Câblage minimal d'interconnexion	766
Figure 142 – Topologie de câble plat	767
Figure 143 – Topologie de câble dédié	768
Figure 144 – Topologie en T	768

Figure 145 – Distribution de l'alimentation de PhL-P de Type 18.....	771
Figure 146 – Distribution de l'alimentation de PhL-P de Type 18.....	772
Figure 147 – Filtrage et protection de l'alimentation de PhL-P de Type 18	773
Figure 148 – Isolation des éléments de communication	774
Figure 149 – Isolation des éléments E/S et de communication	775
Figure 150 – Circuit d'alimentation de PhL-P	775
Figure A.1 – Connecteur interne de bus de terrain	776
Figure A.2 – Désignations des contacts du connecteur externe pour environnements industriels rigoureux	778
Figure A.3 – Rampes, clavettes, ergots et rainures de connecteur externe de bus de terrain.....	780
Figure A.4 – Dimensions d'accouplabilité de connecteur externe de bus de terrain.....	783
Figure A.5 – Disposition des contacts de connecteur externe de bus de terrain.....	784
Figure A.6 – Désignation des contacts de connecteur externe pour des environnements industriels typiques	784
Figure A.7 – Connecteur externe du côté fixe (dispositif) pour des environnements industriels typiques: dimensions	785
Figure A.8 – Connecteur externe du côté libre (câble) pour des environnements industriels typiques: dimensions	785
Figure A.9 – Connecteur optique pour des environnements industriels typiques (connecteur FC).....	786
Figure A.10 – Connecteur optique pour des environnements industriels typiques (connecteur ST).....	787
Figure C.1 – Exemple d'étoile passive optique réfléchive.....	790
Figure C.2 – Exemple d'étoile passive optique transmissive.....	790
Figure D.1 – Exemple de topologie en étoile avec une MAU à fibre optique de 31,25 kbit/s en mode monofibre.....	792
Figure D.2 – Topologie multi-étoile avec une MAU à fibre optique	793
Figure D.3 – Exemple de combinaison de supports câblé et optique pour un débit binaire de 31,25 kbit/s	795
Figure D.4 – Exemple de combinaison de supports câblé et optique	795
Figure F.1 – Connecteur à broches pour support optique de courte portée	798
Figure F.2 – Fût à sertir pour support optique de courte portée.....	798
Figure G.1 – Modèle de référence de dispositif répéteur PhL	801
Figure G.2 – Modèle de référence pour la redondance.....	803
Figure G.3 – Synoptique illustrant le support coaxial redondant et le NAP	804
Figure G.4 – Synoptique illustrant les répéteurs d'anneau.....	805
Figure G.5 – Requête de segmentation.....	806
Figure G.6 – Réponse de segmentation	806
Figure G.7 – Diagramme d'états du commutateur principal	810
Figure G.8 – Le port 1 voit l'activité du réseau en premier	812
Figure G.9 – Le port 2 voit l'activité du réseau en premier	814
Figure H.1 – Détecteur RxData de MAU à câble coaxial.....	816
Figure H.2 – Détection RxCARRIER de MAU à câble coaxial	817
Figure H.3 – Emetteur-récepteur redondant de MAU à câble coaxial.....	817
Figure H.4 – Emetteur-récepteur à un seul canal de MAU à câble coaxial.....	818

Figure H.5 – Prise de support à câble coaxial	819
Figure H.6 – Émetteur-récepteur NAP non isolé	820
Figure H.7 – Émetteur-récepteur NAP isolé	820
Figure I.1 – Schéma du coupleur de station	821
Figure I.2 – Affectation des contacts des connecteurs mâles et femelles CEI 947-5-2 (codage A)	822
Figure I.3 – Configuration des contacts de connecteurs, vue de face du connecteur mâle et vue arrière du connecteur femelle, respectivement	823
Figure I.4 – Configuration des contacts du connecteur, vue de face du connecteur M12 femelle	825
Figure I.5 – Configuration des contacts du connecteur, vue de face du connecteur M12 mâle	826
Figure I.6 – Coupleur en T M12	827
Figure I.7 – Terminaison de bus M12	828
Figure J.1 – Redondance de PhL et support	829
Figure K.1 – MAU à fibre optique dans un réseau avec écho	830
Figure K.2 – MAU à fibre optique dans un réseau sans écho	831
Figure K.3 – MAU à fibre optique avec écho renvoyé par retour électrique interne du signal de réception	831
Figure K.4 – MAU à fibre optique sans fonction d'écho	832
Figure K.5 – Réseau optique à topologie en étoile	832
Figure K.6 – Réseau optique à topologie annulaire	833
Figure K.7 – Réseau optique à topologie en bus	833
Figure K.8 – Structure arborescente construite à partir d'une combinaison de structures en étoile	834
Figure K.9 – Exemple d'application d'un convertisseur à fibre optique de la norme TIA/EIA-485-A de l'ANSI	835
Figure L.1 – Terminaison de bus intégrée au dispositif de communication	840
Figure L.2 – Terminaison de bus intégrée dans le connecteur	841
Figure L.3 – Terminaison de bus externe	841
Figure M.1 – Connecteur subminiature D femelle à 9 contacts, interface de départ du côté dispositif	843
Figure M.2 – Connecteur subminiature D mâle à 9 contacts, interface d'arrivée du côté dispositif	843
Figure M.3 – Connecteur terminal du côté dispositif	844
Figure M.4 – Férule d'un connecteur optique F-SMA pour fibre optique polymère (980/1 000 µm)	844
Figure M.5 – Boîtier de connecteur hybride à fibre optique de type 8	845
Figure M.6 – Affectation des contacts de connecteur hybride à fibre optique de type 8	846
Figure O.1 – Topologie	850
Figure O.2 – Structure d'un câble unipolaire (exemple)	852
Figure O.3 – Niveaux de puissance optique	854
Figure P.1 – Exemple d'application d'une DPLL	856
Figure P.2 – Diagramme d'états de boucle DPLL	857
Figure P.3 – Synchronisation de boucle DPLL	858
Figure Q.1 – Connecteur de dispositif PhL-P monté en angle droit	860

Figure Q.2 – Connecteur de dispositif PhL-P monté directement.....	861
Figure Q.3 – Connecteur de câble plat PhL-P et capot de borne – corps et connecteur	862
Figure Q.4 – Connecteur de câble plat PhL-P – capot de borne	862
Figure Q.5 – Corps de connecteur de câble rond de PhL-P de Type 18	863
Figure Q.6 – Capot de borne de connecteur de câble rond de PhL-P de Type 18.....	864
Figure Q.7 – Corps et variante de connecteur de câble rond de PhL-P de Type 18	864
Figure Q.8 – Capot de borne de variante de connecteur de câble rond de PhL-P de Type 18	865
Figure R.1 – Section transversale de câble PhL-B – Ligne d'évacuation torsadée	867
Figure R.2 – Section transversale de câble PhL-B – Ligne d'évacuation non torsadée	867
Figure R.3 – Section transversale de câble plat PhL-P – avec clé.....	868
Figure R.4 – Section transversale de câble plat PhL-P – sans clé.....	868
Figure R.5 – Marquage de la polarité de câble plat de PhL-P.....	869
Figure R.6 – Câble rond – préférentiel; Section.....	870
Figure R.7 – Câble rond – variante; Section.....	871
Tableau 1 – Règles de codage des données.....	475
Tableau 2 – Tableau de vérité de l'indication d'ETAT Ph	476
Tableau 3 – Indications de bavardage.....	477
Tableau 4 – Noms et valeurs de paramètres pour la demande Ph-SET-VALUE	498
Tableau 5 – Noms de paramètres pour l'indication Ph-EVENT	499
Tableau 6 – Récapitulatif des services et primitives de gestion Ph.....	500
Tableau 7 – Primitives et paramètres "Réinitialiser".....	501
Tableau 8 – Valeurs d'Etat PhM pour le service de réinitialisation.....	502
Tableau 9 – Primitives et paramètres "Etablir valeur"	502
Tableau 10 – Variables PhE obligatoires.....	502
Tableau 11 – Valeurs admissibles des variables PhE.....	503
Tableau 12 – Valeurs d'Etat PhM pour le service Etablir valeur.....	503
Tableau 13 – Primitives et paramètres Obtenir valeur	503
Tableau 14 – Valeurs courantes des variables PhE	504
Tableau 15 – Valeurs d'Etat PhM pour le service Obtenir valeur	504
Tableau 16 – Primitive et paramètres "Evénement"	504
Tableau 17 – Nouvelles valeurs des variables PhE	505
Tableau 18 – Noms et valeurs de paramètres de gestion	505
Tableau 19 – PH-RESET	508
Tableau 20 – Ph-SET-VALUE.....	508
Tableau 21 – Variables PhL	508
Tableau 22 – Ph-GET-VALUE	510
Tableau 23 – Ph-EVENT.....	510
Tableau 24 – Evénements PhL	510
Tableau 25 – Noms et valeurs de paramètres pour la demande Ph-SET-VALUE	511
Tableau 26 – Signaux à l'interface ETDD-DCE.....	517
Tableau 27 – Niveaux de signaux pour une interface ETDD-DCE exposée.....	517

Tableau 28 – Réinitialisation du bus MDS	528
Tableau 29 – Signaux à l'interface MIS-MDS	529
Tableau 30 – Règles de codage Manchester.....	540
Tableau 31 – Caractéristiques temporelles de la MDS	543
Tableau 32 – Règles de codage des données MDS	544
Tableau 33 – Attribution du bit SL et du signal TxSL	551
Tableau 34 – Attribution du bit SL et du signal RxSL.....	552
Tableau 35 – Attribution du bit SL et du signal TxSL	553
Tableau 36 – Attribution du bit SL et du signal RxSL.....	553
Tableau 37 – Attribution du bit SL et du signal TxSL	554
Tableau 38 – Attribution du bit SL et du signal RxSL.....	554
Tableau 39 – Règles de codage et de décodage.....	555
Tableau 40 – Règles de décodage pour les états de repos	555
Tableau 41 – Règles de codage de la PhpDU de réinitialisation	556
Tableau 42 – Règles de décodage de la PhpDU de réinitialisation.....	556
Tableau 43 – Règles de codage Manchester.....	559
Tableau 44 – Ensemble minimal de services à l'interface MDS-MAU	564
Tableau 45 – Niveaux de signaux pour une interface MDS-MAU exposée.....	565
Tableau 46 – Définitions de l'interface MDS-MAU: support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension	566
Tableau 47 – Support à fibre optique 5 Mbit/s d'interface MDS-MAU.....	567
Tableau 48 – Services de l'interface MDS-MAU	569
Tableau 49 – Ensemble minimal de services à l'interface MAU	571
Tableau 50 – Niveaux de signaux pour une interface MAU exposée.....	572
Tableau 51 – Grandeurs dépendantes du débit binaire de réseaux en mode tension	573
Tableau 52 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du niveau d'émission de la MAU	576
Tableau 53 – Récapitulatif de la spécification de la synchronisation de l'émission de la MAU pour un fonctionnement à 31,25 kbit/s	576
Tableau 54 – Récapitulatif de la spécification de la synchronisation de l'émission de la MAU pour un fonctionnement à ≥ 1 Mbit/s.....	576
Tableau 55 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du circuit de réception de la MAU	582
Tableau 56 – Caractéristiques des dispositifs alimentés par le réseau	584
Tableau 57 – Exigences d'alimentation réseau.....	584
Tableau 58 – Limites d'affaiblissement du câble d'essai.....	588
Tableau 59 – Code de couleur recommandé pour les câbles en Amérique du Nord.....	590
Tableau 60 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du niveau d'émission de la MAU	594
Tableau 61 – Récapitulatif de la spécification de synchronisation d'émission de la MAU	594
Tableau 62 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du circuit de réception de la MAU	597
Tableau 63 – Caractéristiques des dispositifs alimentés par le réseau	599
Tableau 64 – Exigences d'alimentation réseau.....	599
Tableau 65 – Spécification des couleurs de câbles pour le Type 3.....	610
Tableau 66 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du niveau d'émission de la MAU	614
Tableau 67 – Récapitulatif de la spécification de synchronisation d'émission de la MAU	615
Tableau 68 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du circuit de réception	617

Tableau 69 – Exigences d'alimentation réseau.....	620
Tableau 70 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du niveau d'émission de la MAU en mode courant	627
Tableau 71 – Récapitulatif de la spécification de la synchronisation de l'émission de la MAU en mode courant	627
Tableau 72 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du circuit de réception de la MAU en mode courant.....	629
Tableau 73 – Exigences d'alimentation réseau.....	630
Tableau 74 – Grandeurs dépendantes du débit binaire de réseaux à fibre optique double à grande vitesse (≥ 1 Mbit/s)	634
Tableau 75 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du niveau d'émission et des caractéristiques spectrales	635
Tableau 76 – Récapitulatif de la spécification de synchronisation d'émission	636
Tableau 77 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du circuit de réception	637
Tableau 78 – Spécifications du niveau d'émission et de réception et des caractéristiques spectrales d'une étoile active optique	640
Tableau 79 – Caractéristiques de synchronisation d'une étoile active optique.....	640
Tableau 80 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du niveau d'émission et des caractéristiques spectrales	642
Tableau 81 – Spécifications du niveau d'émission et de réception et des caractéristiques spectrales d'une étoile active optique	644
Tableau 82 – Fréquences perturbatrices pour les essais de performances des récepteurs	655
Tableau 83 – Définition des lignes de commande d'émission – support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension	658
Tableau 84 – Définitions des sorties de données du récepteur: support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension	659
Tableau 85 – Définitions des sorties de porteuses du récepteur: support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension	660
Tableau 86 – Interface du support à câble coaxial – Spécifications d'émission	660
Tableau 87 – Interface du support à câble coaxial – Réception	662
Tableau 88 – Interface du support à câble coaxial – Aspects généraux.....	663
Tableau 89 – Spécifications électriques de transformateur pour support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension	664
Tableau 90 – Spécifications du câble coaxial de ligne secondaire.....	668
Tableau 91 – Spécifications du câble coaxial de ligne principale.....	668
Tableau 92 – Définitions des lignes de commande d'émission – support à fibre optique de 5 Mbit/s.....	670
Tableau 93 – Interface de support à fibre optique de 5,0 Mbit/s	670
Tableau 94 – Spécification des signaux de support à fibre optique de 5 Mbit/s de courte portée	671
Tableau 95 – Spécification des signaux de support à fibre optique de 5 Mbit/s de moyenne portée.....	672
Tableau 96 – Spécification des signaux de support à fibre optique de 5 Mbit/s de longue portée.....	673
Tableau 97 – Exigences du NAP	676
Tableau 98 – Combinaison de dispositifs de différentes catégories.....	680
Tableau 99 – Impédances d'entrée des interfaces de bus et des alimentations	683

Tableau 100 – CMRR exigé	686
Tableau 101 – Caractéristiques des dispositifs alimentés par le réseau pour la MAU de 31,25 kbit/s en mode tension	687
Tableau 102 – Exigences d'alimentation réseau pour la MAU de 31,25 kbit/s en mode tension.....	687
Tableau 103 – Caractéristiques électriques des interfaces de bus de terrain	693
Tableau 104 – Caractéristiques électriques des alimentations	695
Tableau 105 – Caractéristiques de MAU non de sécurité intrinsèque	699
Tableau 106 – Caractéristiques avec utilisation de répéteurs.....	700
Tableau 107 – Spécifications du câblage	702
Tableau 108 – Longueur maximale du câble pour les différentes vitesses d'émission	702
Tableau 109 – Caractéristiques de sécurité intrinsèque	705
Tableau 110 – Spécification du câble (liée à la fonction et à la sécurité).....	708
Tableau 111 – Longueur maximale du câble pour les différentes vitesses d'émission	709
Tableau 112 – Caractéristiques électriques de l'interface de sécurité intrinsèque	712
Tableau 113 – Valeurs maximales de sécurité	716
Tableau 114 – Caractéristiques techniques.....	718
Tableau 115 – Caractéristiques des émetteurs optiques pour fibre silice multimodale	722
Tableau 116 – Caractéristiques des émetteurs optiques pour fibre silice unimodale.....	722
Tableau 117 – Caractéristiques des émetteurs optiques pour fibre plastique	723
Tableau 118- Caractéristiques des émetteurs optiques pour fibre silice 200/230 μm	723
Tableau 119 – Caractéristiques des récepteurs optiques pour fibre silice multimodale.....	724
Tableau 120 – Caractéristiques des récepteurs optiques pour fibre silice unimodale.....	724
Tableau 121 – Caractéristiques des récepteurs optiques pour fibre plastique	724
Tableau 122 – Caractéristiques des récepteurs optiques pour fibre silice 200/230 μm	724
Tableau 123 – Distorsion de signal admissible à l'entrée électrique de l'émetteur optique	725
Tableau 124 – Distorsion de signal admissible due à l'émetteur optique	727
Tableau 125 – Distorsion de signal admissible due au récepteur optique	727
Tableau 126 – Influence admissible des circuits électroniques internes d'un élément de couplage sur le signal	727
Tableau 127 – Possibilité de chaînage maximale de liaisons optiques normalisées sans resynchronisation	728
Tableau 128 – Services de l'interface MDS-MAU, RS-485, de Type 4	729
Tableau 129 – Services de l'interface MDS-MAU, RS-232, de Type 4	731
Tableau 130 – Grandeurs dépendantes du débit binaire pour une MAU de support câblé à paire torsadée	732
Tableau 131 – Signaux d'interface d'arrivée.....	734
Tableau 132 – Signaux d'interface de départ	734
Tableau 133 – Caractéristiques du câble de bus distant	735
Tableau 134 – Grandeurs dépendantes du débit binaire de MAU à fibre optique.....	737
Tableau 135 – Longueur du câble à fibre optique de bus distant.....	738
Tableau 136 – Règles de codage.....	738
Tableau 137 – Récapitulatif des spécifications de niveau d'émission et de caractéristiques spectrales d'une MAU à fibre optique	739

Tableau 138 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du circuit de réception de MAU à fibre optique	740
Tableau 139 – Spécification du guide d'onde à fibre optique	741
Tableau 140 – Spécification d'une monofibre	741
Tableau 141 – Spécification de la gaine de câble et propriétés mécaniques du câble	742
Tableau 142 – Autres propriétés supplémentaires recommandées du matériau du câble	742
Tableau 143 – Spécification du guide d'onde à fibre optique	743
Tableau 144 – Spécification d'une monofibre	743
Tableau 145 – Spécification de la gaine de câble et propriétés mécaniques du câble	743
Tableau 146 – Spécification de la fibre d'essai normalisée pour une MAU à fibre optique	744
Tableau 147 – Prise en charge de la vitesse d'émission	749
Tableau 148 – Paramètres des données de transmission.....	750
Tableau 149 – Signaux d'entrée possibles de l'esclave	752
Tableau 150 – Signaux de sortie possibles de l'esclave	752
Tableau 151 – Signaux de sortie valides de l'esclave.....	753
Tableau 152 – Spécifications des temps de réglage de l'horloge.....	753
Tableau 153 – Retard du signal optique dans un esclave.....	753
Tableau 154 – Fonctions de base de la connexion.....	754
Tableau 155 – Limites de la topologie de transfert.....	763
Tableau 156 – Limites de la topologie en T.....	763
Tableau 157 – Exigences applicables aux résistances de terminaison	764
Tableau 158 – Limites de la topologie de transfert.....	768
Tableau 159 – Limites de la topologie en T.....	769
Tableau 160 – Exigences applicables aux résistances de terminaison – câble plat	770
Tableau 161 – Exigences applicables aux résistances de terminaison – câble rond	770
Tableau 162 – Spécification de l'alimentation en 24 V.....	772
Tableau 163 – Spécifications de consommation d'énergie de l'alimentation en 24 V	772
Tableau A.1 – Dimensions du connecteur interne	776
Tableau A.2 – Affectation des contacts du connecteur externe pour environnements industriels rigoureux	777
Tableau A.3 – Affectation des contacts de connecteur externe pour des environnements industriels typiques	784
Tableau A.4 – Dimensions du connecteur du côté fixe (dispositif)	785
Tableau A.5 – Dimensions du connecteur du côté libre (câble)	785
Tableau A.6 – Dimensions du connecteur	786
Tableau B.1 – Spécifications de câbles typiques.....	788
Tableau B.2 – Longueurs maximales de ligne secondaire recommandées en fonction du nombre d'éléments de communication.....	789
Tableau C.1 – Récapitulatif de spécification d'une étoile passive optique: Exemple	791
Tableau D.1 – Topologie en étoile passive.....	794
Tableau D.2 – Topologie en étoile active	794
Tableau E.1 – Variantes de fibre en mode fibre double	796
Tableau E.2 – Variantes de fibres en mode monofibre	796
Tableau F.1 – Exigences applicables au connecteur	797

Tableau F.2 – Définition des contacts du connecteur NAP	799
Tableau H.1 – Définition des sorties du récepteur à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension.....	816
Tableau H.2 – Spécification de tore bobiné de support à câble coaxial	819
Tableau I.1 – Affectation des contacts du connecteur externe pour environnements industriels rigoureux	821
Tableau I.2 – Désignation des contacts.....	823
Tableau I.3 – Désignation des contacts.....	824
Tableau I.4 – Désignation des contacts.....	825
Tableau K.1 – Exemple de calcul de bilan de liaison pour une fibre silice multimodale 62,5/125 μm	837
Tableau K.2 – Exemple de calcul de bilan de liaison pour une fibre silice unimodale 9/125 μm	838
Tableau K.3 – Exemple de calcul de bilan de liaison pour une fibre plastique multimodale 980/1 000 μm	838
Tableau K.4 – Exemple de calcul de bilan de niveau pour une fibre silice multimodale 200/230 μm	839
Tableau M.1 – Affectation des contacts du connecteur subminiature D à 9 contacts	843
Tableau M.2 – Affectation des contacts du connecteur terminal.....	844
Tableau M.3 – Dimensions de connecteur hybride à fibre optique de type 8.....	847
Tableau O.1 – Spécifications de l'émetteur	851
Tableau O.2 – Spécifications du récepteur.....	852
Tableau O.3 – Spécifications des câbles (exemple)	852
Tableau O.4 – Données système de la ligne d'émission optique à 650 nm	853
Tableau R.1 – Spécifications du câblage de PhL-B	866
Tableau R.2 – Spécifications du câble plat de PhL-P	867
Tableau R.3 – Spécifications du câble rond de PhL-P – type préférentiel.....	869
Tableau R.4 – Spécifications du câble rond de PhL-P – variante.....	870

COMMISSION ÉLECTROTECHNIQUE INTERNATIONALE

**RÉSEAUX DE COMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRIELS –
SPÉCIFICATIONS DES BUS DE TERRAIN –****Partie 2: Spécification de couche physique et définition des services**

AVANT-PROPOS

- 1) La Commission Electrotechnique Internationale (CEI) est une organisation mondiale de normalisation composée de l'ensemble des comités électrotechniques nationaux (Comités nationaux de la CEI). La CEI a pour objet de favoriser la coopération internationale pour toutes les questions de normalisation dans les domaines de l'électricité et de l'électronique. A cet effet, la CEI – entre autres activités – publie des Normes internationales, des Spécifications techniques, des Rapports techniques, des Spécifications accessibles au public (PAS) et des Guides (ci-après dénommés "Publication(s) de la CEI"). Leur élaboration est confiée à des comités d'études, aux travaux desquels tout Comité national intéressé par le sujet traité peut participer. Les organisations internationales, gouvernementales et non gouvernementales, en liaison avec la CEI, participent également aux travaux. La CEI collabore étroitement avec l'Organisation Internationale de Normalisation (ISO), selon des conditions fixées par accord entre les deux organisations.
- 2) Les décisions ou accords officiels de la CEI concernant les questions techniques représentent, dans la mesure du possible, un accord international sur les sujets étudiés, étant donné que les Comités nationaux de la CEI intéressés sont représentés dans chaque comité d'études.
- 3) Les Publications de la CEI se présentent sous la forme de recommandations internationales et sont agréées comme telles par les Comités nationaux de la CEI. Tous les efforts raisonnables sont entrepris afin que la CEI s'assure de l'exactitude du contenu technique de ses publications; la CEI ne peut pas être tenue responsable de l'éventuelle mauvaise utilisation ou interprétation qui en est faite par un quelconque utilisateur final.
- 4) Dans le but d'encourager l'uniformité internationale, les Comités nationaux de la CEI s'engagent, dans toute la mesure possible, à appliquer de façon transparente les Publications de la CEI dans leurs publications nationales et régionales. Toutes divergences entre toutes Publications de la CEI et toutes publications nationales ou régionales correspondantes doivent être indiquées en termes clairs dans ces dernières.
- 5) La CEI elle-même ne fournit aucune attestation de conformité. Des organismes de certification indépendants fournissent des services d'évaluation de conformité et, dans certains secteurs, accèdent aux marques de conformité de la CEI. La CEI n'est responsable d'aucun des services effectués par les organismes de certification indépendants.
- 6) Tous les utilisateurs doivent s'assurer qu'ils sont en possession de la dernière édition de cette publication.
- 7) Aucune responsabilité ne doit être imputée à la CEI, à ses administrateurs, employés, auxiliaires ou mandataires, y compris ses experts particuliers et les membres de ses comités d'études et des Comités nationaux de la CEI, pour tout préjudice causé en cas de dommages corporels et matériels, ou de tout autre dommage de quelque nature que ce soit, directe ou indirecte, ou pour supporter les coûts (y compris les frais de justice) et les dépenses découlant de la publication ou de l'utilisation de cette Publication de la CEI ou de toute autre Publication de la CEI, ou au crédit qui lui est accordé.
- 8) L'attention est attirée sur les références normatives citées dans cette publication. L'utilisation de publications référencées est obligatoire pour une application correcte de la présente publication.
- 9) L'attention est attirée sur le fait que certains des éléments de la présente Publication de la CEI peuvent faire l'objet de droits de propriété intellectuelle ou de droits analogues. La CEI ne saurait être tenue pour responsable de ne pas avoir identifié de tels droits de propriété et de ne pas avoir signalé leur existence.

NOTE L'utilisation de certains des types de protocoles est restreinte par les détenteurs des droits de propriété intellectuelle correspondants. Quoi qu'il en soit, l'engagement pris par les détenteurs, quant à une diffusion limitée desdits droits de propriété intellectuelle, permet d'utiliser un type particulier de protocole de Couche Liaison de données avec des protocoles de Couche Physique et de Couche Application dans les combinaisons de types explicitement spécifiées dans la série de normes CEI 61784. L'utilisation des divers types de protocoles dans d'autres combinaisons peut nécessiter l'autorisation de leurs détenteurs de droits de propriété intellectuelle respectifs.

La Commission Electrotechnique Internationale (CEI) attire l'attention sur le fait qu'il est déclaré que la conformité à la présente norme peut impliquer l'utilisation des brevets suivants, où la notation [xx] indique le détenteur du droit de propriété intellectuelle:

Type 2 (indiqués en 5.3, 9.3, 10.3, dans les Articles 17 à 20, et de l'Annexe F à l'Annexe H):

5,396,197 [AB] Network Node TAP (Prise de station réseau)

La CEI ne prend pas position eu égard à la preuve, la validité et la portée de ces droits de propriété.

Le détenteur de ce droit de propriété a donné l'assurance à la CEI qu'il consent à négocier des licences avec des demandeurs du monde entier, en des termes et à des conditions raisonnables et non discriminatoires. A ce propos, la déclaration du détenteur de ce droit de propriété est enregistrée à la CEI. Des informations peuvent être obtenues auprès de:

[AB]: Rockwell Technologies, LLC
Allen-Bradley Co, LLC
1201 So. Second Street
Milwaukee, WI 53204
Etats-Unis
Attention: Service de la propriété intellectuelle

L'attention est par ailleurs attirée sur le fait que certains des éléments de la présente norme peuvent faire l'objet de droits de propriété autres que ceux mentionnés ci-dessus. La CEI ne saurait être tenue pour responsable de ne pas avoir identifié de tels droits de propriété et de ne pas avoir signalé leur existence.

La Norme Internationale CEI 61158-2 a été établie par le sous-comité 65C: Réseaux de communications industriels, du comité d'études 65 de la CEI: Mesure, commande et automation dans les processus industriels.

Cette quatrième édition annule et remplace la CEI 61158-2:2003. L'édition de la présente partie en constitue une révision mineure. Cette publication, associée à ses parties correspondantes pour le Type 16, remplace également en partie la CEI 61491:2002 qui est actuellement en cours de révision. La CEI 61491 sera publiée en tant que rapport technique.

Cette édition inclut les modifications techniques significatives suivantes par rapport à la précédente édition:

- a) suppression de l'ancien bus de terrain de Type 6 du fait de son manque de pertinence pour le marché;
- b) ajout de nouveaux types de bus de terrain;
- c) généralisation du Type 1 support radioélectrique rarement utilisé, sous une forme plus utile.

La présente version bilingue (2014-04) correspond à la version anglaise monolingue publiée en 2007-12.

Le texte anglais de cette norme est issu des documents 65C/472/FDIS et 65C/483/RVD.

Le rapport de vote 65C/483/RVD donne toute information sur le vote ayant abouti à l'approbation de cette norme.

La version française de cette norme n'a pas été soumise au vote.

Cette publication a été rédigée selon les Directives ISO/CEI, Partie 2.

NOTE De légères variations par rapport aux directives ont été autorisées par le Bureau Central de la CEI pour assurer la continuité de la numérotation des paragraphes des éditions précédentes.

Le comité a décidé que le contenu de cette publication ne sera pas modifié avant la date de stabilité indiquée sur le site web de la CEI sous "<http://webstore.iec.ch>" dans les données relatives à la publication recherchée. A cette date, la publication sera

- reconduite,
- supprimée,
- remplacée par une édition révisée, ou
- amendée.

La liste de toutes les parties de la série CEI 61158, publiée sous le titre général *Réseaux de communications industriels – Spécifications de bus de terrain*, est disponible sur le site Web de la CEI.

IMPORTANT – Le logo "*colour inside*" qui se trouve sur la page de couverture de cette publication indique qu'elle contient des couleurs qui sont considérées comme utiles à une bonne compréhension de son contenu. Les utilisateurs devraient, par conséquent, imprimer cette publication en utilisant une imprimante couleur.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61158-2:2007

Without watermark

0 Introduction

0.1 Généralités

Cette partie de la CEI 61158 fait partie d'une série élaborée pour faciliter l'interconnexion des composants de systèmes d'automatisation. Elle est apparentée à d'autres normes dans cet ensemble, comme défini par le modèle de référence de bus de terrain "à trois couches" décrit dans la CEI/TR 61158-1.

0.2 Aperçu de la couche physique

Le principal objectif de la présente norme est de fournir un ensemble de règles de communication exprimées en termes de procédures à appliquer par les entités Ph homologues au cours de la communication.

La couche physique reçoit des unités de données de la couche de liaison de données, les code si nécessaire en ajoutant des informations de trame de communication et transmet les signaux physiques résultants au support de transmission à un nœud donné. Les signaux sont ensuite reçus à un ou plusieurs autres nœuds, décodés si nécessaire en retirant les informations de trame de communication avant que les unités de données ne soient passées à la couche de liaison de données du dispositif de réception.

0.3 Aperçu des documents

La présente norme est constituée de spécifications de couche physique correspondant à de nombreux types de protocoles de couche physique spécifiés dans les CEI 61158-4-1 à CEI 61158-4-18.

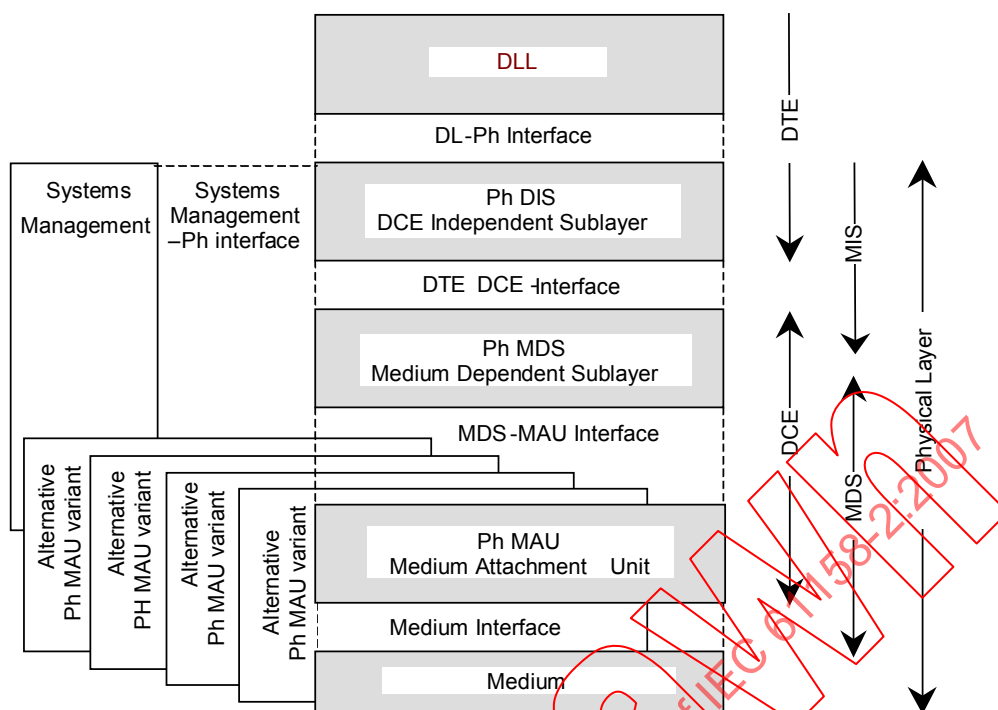
NOTE 1 La numérotation des types de protocoles utilisés est homogène dans l'ensemble de la série CEI 61158.

NOTE 2 Les spécifications des Types 1, 2, 3, 4, 8 et 16 sont incluses. Le Type 7 utilise des spécifications de Type 1. Les autres types n'utilisent aucune des spécifications présentées dans la présente norme.

NOTE 3 Pour faciliter le renvoi aux textes correspondants, les numéros de type sont indiqués dans le titre des articles/paragraphes. En d'autres termes, la spécification donnée dans ledit article/paragraphe s'applique à ce type, ce qui n'exclut pas son utilisation pour d'autres types.

NOTE 4 Les ensembles de dispositions d'inter-fonctionnement sont du ressort de l'utilisateur de la présente norme. Pour plus d'informations sur les profils de communication normalisés fondés sur la série CEI 61158, se reporter à la série CEI 61784.

Un modèle général de la couche physique est illustré en Figure 1.



Légende

Anglais	Français
DL-Ph interface	Interface DL – Ph
Systems management	Gestion systèmes
Systems management – Ph interface	Interface Gestion systèmes – Ph
Ph DIS DCE Independent Sublayer	DIS de Ph: Sous-couche indépendante du DCE
DTE-DCE Interface	Interface ETDD – DCE
Ph MDS Medium dependent sublayer	MDS de Ph: Sous-couche dépendante du support
MDS – MAU interface	Interface MDS – MAU
Alternative Ph MAU variant	Variante de MAU de Ph
Ph – MAU Medium Attachment Unit	MAU de Ph: Unité de liaison au support
Medium interface	Interface de support
Medium	Support
DCE DTE	ETDD DCE
Physical Layer	Couche physique

Figure 1 – Modèle général de couche physique

NOTE 5 Les types de protocoles utilisent un sous-ensemble des éléments de structure.

NOTE 6 Etant donné que le Type 8 utilise un DIS plus complexe que celui des autres types, le terme MIS est employé pour le différencier.

Les caractéristiques communes de tous les types et variantes sont les suivantes:

- émission numérique de données;
- pas d'émission d'horloge séparée;
- communication soit en semi-duplex (bidirectionnelle mais dans un sens à la fois) soit en duplex intégral.

0.4 Principales variantes de couche physique spécifiées dans la présente norme

0.4.1 Support de Type 1

0.4.1.1 Type 1: Supports câblés

Pour les supports câblés à paire torsadée, le Type 1 spécifie deux modes de couplage et différentes vitesses de signalisation:

- a) mode tension (couplage parallèle), 150 Ω , débit binaire de 31,25 kbit/s à 25 Mbit/s;
- b) mode tension (couplage parallèle), 100 Ω , 31,25 kbit/s;
- c) mode courant (couplage série), 1,0 Mbit/s comprenant deux options de courant.

Les variantes en mode tension peuvent être mises en oeuvre avec un couplage inductif en utilisant des transformateurs. Ceci n'est pas obligatoire si les exigences d'isolation de la présente norme sont satisfaites par d'autres moyens.

La couche physique à support câblé de Type 1 (paire torsadée ou non) dispose des options suivantes:

- pas d'alimentation par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de bus; non de sécurité intrinsèque;
- alimentation par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de bus; non de sécurité intrinsèque;
- pas d'alimentation par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de bus; de sécurité intrinsèque;
- alimentation par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de bus; de sécurité intrinsèque.

0.4.1.2 Type 1: Supports optiques

Les principales variantes du support en fibre optique de Type 1 sont les suivantes:

- fibre optique double, débit binaire de 31,25 kbit/s à 25 Mbit/s;
- mode monofibre, 31,25 kbit/s.

0.4.1.3 Type 1: Supports radioélectriques

La spécification des supports radioélectriques de Type 1 inclut une capacité radioélectrique FSK/PSK généralisée à des débits binaires arbitraires.

0.4.2 Type 2: Supports à câble coaxial et optiques

Le Type 2 spécifie les variantes suivantes:

- support à câble cuivre coaxial, 5 Mbit/s;
- support à fibre optique, 5 Mbit/s;
- port d'accès au réseau (NAP), un mécanisme de liaison temporaire point-à-point qui peut être utilisé pour programmation, configuration, diagnostic ou à d'autres fins;
- sous-couches machine répéteur (RM, RRM) et couches physiques redondantes.

0.4.3 Type 3: Supports câblés à paire torsadée et optiques

Le Type 3 spécifie les émissions synchrones suivantes:

- a) support câblé à paire torsadée, 31,25 kbit/s, mode tension (couplage parallèle) avec les options suivantes:
 - alimentation par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de bus: non de sécurité intrinsèque;
 - alimentation par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de bus: sécurité intrinsèque;

ainsi que les variantes d'émission asynchrone suivantes:

- b) support câblé à paire torsadée, jusqu'à 12 Mbit/s, norme TIA/EIA-485-A de l'ANSI;
- c) support à fibre optique, jusqu'à 12 Mbit/s.

0.4.4 Type 4: Support câblé

Le Type 4 spécifie des supports câblés ayant les caractéristiques suivantes:

- support câblé RS-485, jusqu'à 76,8 kbit/s;
- support câblé RS-232, jusqu'à 230,4 kbit/s.

0.4.5 Type 8: Supports câblés à paire torsadée et optiques

La couche physique permet également l'émission d'unités de données reçues par l'intermédiaire d'un accès au support par le support d'émission directement à travers un autre accès au support et son protocole d'émission vers un autre dispositif.

Le Type 8 spécifie les variantes suivantes:

- support câblé à paire torsadée, jusqu'à 16 Mbit/s;
- support à fibre optique, jusqu'à 16 Mbit/s.

Les caractéristiques générales de ces supports de transmission sont les suivantes:

- émission en duplex intégral;
- codage NRZ(non-retour à zéro).

Les types de supports câblés disposent des options suivantes:

- pas d'alimentation par l'intermédiaire du câble de bus, non de sécurité intrinsèque;
- alimentation par l'intermédiaire du câble de bus et sur des conducteurs supplémentaires, non de sécurité intrinsèque.

0.4.6 Type 12: Supports câblés

Le Type 12 spécifie des supports câblés ayant les caractéristiques suivantes:

- Support câblé LVDS jusqu'à 100 Mbit/s.

0.4.7 Type 16: Supports optiques

Le Type 16 spécifie une transmission synchrone utilisant un support à fibre optique, à 2 Mbit/s, 4 Mbit/s, 8 Mbit/s et 16 Mbit/s.

0.4.8 Type 18: Supports

0.4.8.1 Type 18: Supports basiques

Le Type 18-PhL-B spécifie un signal d'émission équilibré sur un câble torsadé blindé à 3 conducteurs. Il est spécifié des débits binaires pouvant atteindre 10 Mbit/s et des distances d'émission allant jusqu'à 1,2 km.

0.4.8.2 Type 18: Supports alimentés

Le Type 18-PhL-P spécifie un signal d'émission équilibré sur un câble non blindé à 4 conducteurs, à profil plat ou rond dont les conducteurs sont conçus pour le signal de communications et la distribution d'une alimentation intégrée au réseau. Il est spécifié des débits binaires allant jusqu'à 2,5 Mbit/s et des distances d'émission allant jusqu'à 500 m.

RÉSEAUX DE COMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRIELS – SPÉCIFICATIONS DES BUS DE TERRAIN –

Partie 2: Spécification de couche physique et définition des services

1 Domaine d'application

La présente partie de la CEI 61158 spécifie les exigences applicables aux composants de bus de terrain. Elle spécifie également les exigences de configuration des supports et des réseaux requises pour garantir les niveaux convenus de

- a) intégrité des données avant vérification d'erreur de la couche de liaison de données;
- b) interopérabilité entre dispositifs au niveau de la couche physique.

La couche physique des bus de terrain est conforme à la couche 1 du modèle OSI à 7 couches, telle que définie dans l'ISO 7498, à l'exception du fait que, pour certains types, les délimiteurs de trame se trouvent dans la couche physique tandis que pour d'autres types, ils se trouvent dans la couche de liaison de données.

2 Références normatives

Les documents de référence suivants sont indispensables pour l'application du présent document. Pour les références datées, seule l'édition citée s'applique. Pour les références non datées, la dernière édition du document de référence s'applique (y compris les éventuels amendements).

CEI 60050-731, *Vocabulaire Electrotechnique International – Chapitre 731: Télécommunications par fibres optiques*

CEI 60079-11, *Atmosphères explosives – Partie 11: Protection de l'équipement par sécurité intrinsèque "i"*

CEI 60079-14, *Matériel électrique pour atmosphères explosives gazeuses – Partie 14: Installations électriques dans les emplacements dangereux (autres que les mines)*

CEI 60079-25, *Matériel électrique pour atmosphères explosives gazeuses – Partie 25: Systèmes de sécurité intrinsèque*

CEI 60096-1, *Câbles pour fréquences radioélectriques – Partie 1: Prescriptions générales et méthodes de mesure*

CEI 60169-8, *Connecteurs pour fréquences radioélectriques – Partie 8: Connecteurs coaxiaux pour fréquences radioélectriques avec diamètre intérieur du conducteur extérieur de 6,5 mm (0,256 in) à verrouillage à baïonnette – Impédance caractéristique 50 ohms (Type BNC)*

CEI 60169-17, *Connecteurs pour fréquences radioélectriques – Partie 17: Connecteurs coaxiaux pour fréquences radioélectriques avec diamètre intérieur du condenseur extérieur de 6,5 mm (0,256 in) à verrouillage à vis – Impédance caractéristique 50 ohms (Type TNC)*

IEC 60189-1:1986, *Low-frequency cables and wires with PVC insulation and PVC sheath – Part 1: General test and measuring methods* ¹, (disponible en anglais seulement)

CEI 60255-22-1:1988 *Relais de mesure et dispositifs de protection – Partie 22-1: Essais d'influence électrique – Essais d'immunité à l'onde oscillatoire amortie 1 MHz* ²

CEI 60364-4-41, *Installations électriques à basse tension – Partie 4-41: Protection pour assurer la sécurité – Protection contre les chocs électriques*

CEI 60364-5-54, *Installations électriques des bâtiments – Partie 5-54: Choix et mise en oeuvre des matériels électriques – Mises à la terre, conducteurs de protection et conducteurs d'équipotentialité de protection*

CEI 60529: *Degrés de protection procurés par les enveloppes (Code IP)*

CEI 60603-7, *Connecteurs pour fréquences inférieures à 3 MHz pour utilisation avec cartes imprimées – Partie 7: Spécification particulière pour connecteurs à 8 voies, comprenant des embases et des fiches ayant des caractéristiques d'accouplement communes, avec assurance de la qualité*

CEI 60760, *Bornes plates à connexion rapide*

CEI 60793 (toutes les parties), *Fibres optiques*

CEI 60794-1-2, *Câbles à fibres optiques – Partie 1-2: Spécification générique – Procédures de base applicables aux essais des câbles optiques*

CEI 60807-3, *Connecteurs rectangulaires pour fréquences inférieures à 3 MHz – Partie 3: Spécification particulière pour une gamme de connecteurs ayant les boîtiers métalliques de forme trapézoïdale et les contacts ronds – Types de contacts à sertir démontables avec fûts fermés, à insérer et à extraire par l'arrière de l'isolant*

IEC 60874-10-1, *Connectors for optical fibres and cables – Part 10-1: Detail specification for fiber optic connector type BFOC/2,5 terminated to multimode fibre type A1* (disponible en anglais seulement)

CEI 61000-4-2, *Compatibilité électromagnétique (CEM) – Partie 4-2: Techniques d'essai et de mesure – Essai d'immunité aux décharges électrostatiques* (Publication fondamentale en CEM)

CEI 61000-4-3, *Compatibilité électromagnétique (CEM) – Partie 4-3: Techniques d'essai et de mesure – Essai d'immunité aux champs électromagnétiques rayonnés aux fréquences radioélectriques* (Publication fondamentale en CEM)

CEI 61000-4-4, *Compatibilité électromagnétique (CEM) – Partie 4-4: Techniques d'essai et de mesure – Essais d'immunité aux transitoires électriques rapides en salves* (Publication fondamentale en CEM)

IEC 61131-2, *Programmable controllers – Part 2: Equipment requirements and tests* (disponible en anglais seulement)

¹ Il existe une nouvelle édition de cette publication (2007).

² Il existe une nouvelle édition de cette publication (2007).

IEC 61156-1, *Câbles multiconducteurs à paires symétriques et quartes pour transmissions numériques – Partie 1: Spécification générique*

IEC 61158-4-2, *Industrial communication network – Fieldbus specifications – Part 4-2: Data-link layer protocol specification – Type 2 elements* (disponible en anglais seulement)

IEC 61158-4-3, *Industrial communication network – Fieldbus specifications – Part 4-3: Data-link layer protocol specification – Type 3 elements* (disponible en anglais seulement)

CEI 61754-2, *Interfaces de connecteurs pour fibres optiques – Partie 2: Famille de connecteurs de type BFOC/2,5*

CEI 61754-13, *Interfaces de connecteurs pour fibres optiques – Partie 13: Connecteur de type FC-PC*

CEI 61754-22, *Interfaces de connecteurs pour fibres optiques – Partie 22: Famille de connecteurs de type F-SMA*

ISO/CEI 7498 (toutes les parties), *Technologies de l'information – Modèle de référence de base pour l'interconnexion de systèmes ouverts (OSI) : Le Modèle de base*

ISO/CEI 8482, *Technologies de l'information – Télécommunications et échange d'informations entre systèmes – Interconnexions multipoints par paire torsadée*

ISO/IEC 8802-3, *Information technology – Telecommunications and information exchange between systems – Local and metropolitan area networks – Specific requirements – Part 3: Carrier sense multiple access with collision detection (CSMA/CD) access method and physical layer specifications* (disponible en anglais seulement)

ISO/IEC 9314-1, *Information processing systems – Fibre distributed data interface (FDDI) Part 1: Token ring physical layer protocol (PHY)* (disponible en anglais seulement)

ISO/CEI 10731, *Technologies de l'information – Interconnexion de systèmes ouverts – Modèle de référence de base – Conventions pour la définition des services OSI*

ANSI TIA/EIA-232-F, *Interface Between Data Terminal Equipment and Data Circuit – Terminating Equipment Employing Serial Binary Data Interchange*

ANSI TIA/EIA-422-B, *Electrical Characteristics of Balanced Voltage Digital Interface Circuits*

ANSI TIA/EIA-485-A, *Electrical Characteristics of Generators and Receivers for Use in Balanced Digital Multipoint Systems*

ANSI TIA/EIA-644-A, *Electrical Characteristics of Low Voltage Differential Signaling (LVDS) Interface Circuits*

3 Termes et définitions

Pour les besoins du présent document, les termes et définitions donnés dans l'ISO/CEI 7498 ainsi que les suivants s'appliquent.

3.1 Termes et définitions communs

NOTE De nombreuses définitions sont communes à plusieurs types de protocoles; elles ne sont pas nécessairement utilisées par tous les types de protocoles.

3.1.1

activité

présence d'un signal ou d'un bruit aux bornes d'entrée d'un dispositif de bus de terrain qui est d'un niveau supérieur au seuil de niveau du signal du récepteur de ce dispositif

3.1.2

barrière

entité physique qui limite le courant ou la tension dans une zone dangereuse afin de satisfaire aux exigences de sécurité intrinsèque

3.1.3

bit

unité de données constituée d'un 1 ou d'un 0

NOTE Un bit est la plus petite unité de données qui peut être transmise.

3.1.4

bus

ligne principale ainsi que tous les dispositifs qui y sont connectés

3.1.5

connecteur d'interface de canalisation de câbles

CPIC (Cable Plant Interface Connector)

point auquel les essais et mesures de conformité sont effectués et qui assurent l'interface entre le dispositif de réseau et la canalisation du câble

3.1.6

élément de communication

partie d'un dispositif de bus de terrain qui communique avec d'autres éléments via le bus

3.1.7

connecteur

dispositif de couplage utilisé pour connecter le support d'un circuit ou d'un élément de communication avec celui d'un autre circuit ou élément de communication

[IEEE Std 100-1996, modifiée]

3.1.8

coupleur

interface physique entre la ligne principale et une dérivation ou entre la ligne principale et le dispositif

3.1.9

équipement de transmission de données

DCE (Data Communication Equipment)

mode de réalisation des supports, partie dépendante de la modulation et du codage d'un dispositif connecté au bus de terrain, incluant les parties inférieures de la couche physique au sein du dispositif

3.1.10

équipement terminal de traitement de données

ETTD

mode de réalisation des supports, partie indépendante de la modulation et du codage d'un dispositif connecté au bus de terrain, incluant la partie la plus haute de la couche physique ainsi que toutes les parties supérieures dans le dispositif

3.1.11

décibel (milliwatt)

dB(mW)

unité logarithmique de puissance référencée à 1 mW (également écrite **dBm**.)

$$P_{dBm} = 10 \log (P_{mW})$$

NOTE Si P_{mW} est la puissance mesurée en mW, P_{dBm} est la puissance logarithmique exprimée en dB(mW), ou de manière équivalente, en dBm.

3.1.12

délimiteur

drapeau (indicateur) qui sépare et organise des éléments de données

3.1.13

dispositif

entité physique connectée au bus de terrain, constituée d'au moins un élément de communication (l'élément réseau) et qui peut être un élément de commande et/ou un élément final (transducteur, actionneur, etc.)

NOTE Un dispositif peut contenir plusieurs nœuds.

3.1.14

puissance d'injection effective

puissance effective couplée dans le cœur d'un guide d'onde à fibre optique par l'émetteur. La puissance est mesurée au moyen d'une fibre d'essai normalisée connectée au CPIC

3.1.15

puissance effective

différence, exprimée en dBm, entre la puissance optique absolue, mesurée en milliwatts au point médian dans le temps du niveau haut (Hi) et la puissance optique absolue mesurée en milliwatts au point médian dans le temps du niveau bas (Lo)

NOTE On considère que la puissance effective donne une mesure plus précise des conditions qui affectent les récepteurs que des mesures conventionnelles telles que la puissance crête et la puissance moyenne; des méthodes de mesure de la puissance effective feront l'objet d'études ultérieures.

3.1.16

erreur

écart ou discordance entre une valeur ou une condition calculée, observée ou mesurée, et la valeur ou la condition prescrite ou théoriquement correcte

3.1.17

rapport d'extinction

rapport de la puissance optique absolue, mesurée en milliwatts au point médian dans le temps du niveau haut (Hi) à la puissance optique absolue mesurée en milliwatts au point médian dans le temps du niveau bas (Lo)

NOTE Un exemple de calcul de la puissance efficace et du rapport d'extinction est fourni ci-après. Si le point médian du niveau haut (Hi) est mesuré à 105 μ W et si le point médian du niveau bas (Lo) est mesuré à 5 μ W, la différence est de 100 μ W. Par conséquent, la puissance effective est de $10 \log ((100 \mu\text{W}) / 1 \text{ mW}))$, ce qui est égal à -10,0 dBm. Le rapport d'extinction est (105/5), ce qui équivaut à 21:1.

3.1.18

câble à fibre optique

câble contenant un ou plusieurs guides d'onde à fibre optique, couvert de matériau d'enrobage destiné à faciliter le traitement et à protéger la fibre

3.1.19

récepteur à fibre optique

dispositif de communication combinant l'optique et l'électronique qui accepte le signal optique reçu par l'intermédiaire du CPIC

3.1.20

domaine de fonctionnement d'un récepteur à fibre optique

plage de puissance optique qui doit être présente au niveau du CPIC pour assurer la conformité aux spécifications relatives au taux d'erreur sur les bits

3.1.21

émetteur à fibre optique

dispositif qui émet des signaux optiques qui se propagent dans un guide d'onde à fibre optique à travers le CPIC

3.1.22

guide d'onde à fibre optique

brin souple, transparent du point de vue optique, utilisé pour transporter des signaux optiques d'un point géographique à un autre

3.1.23

trame

ensemble de créneaux temporels numériques consécutifs dans lesquels la position de chaque créneau temporel numérique peut être identifiée par référence à un signal de verrouillage de trame

[IEEE Std 100-1996]

3.1.24

sécurité intrinsèque

méthodologie de conception d'un circuit ou d'un ensemble de circuits dans lequel toute étincelle ou effet thermique produit dans des conditions normales de fonctionnement et des conditions de défaut spécifiées, est incapable, dans des conditions d'essai prescrites, de provoquer l'inflammation d'une atmosphère explosive donnée

[CEI 60079-11]

3.1.25

isolation

disposition physique et électrique des parties d'un système de transmission de signaux destinée à prévenir les courants de perturbations électriques dans ou entre ces composants

[IEEE Std 100-1996]

3.1.26

bavardage

transmission continue sur le support due à un dispositif défectueux

3.1.27

instabilité (gigue)

décalage des points de transition à 50 % des fronts d'impulsion par rapport à leur position idéale, résultant de causes diverses

3.1.28

codage Manchester

méthode qui permet de combiner des signaux de données et d'horloge séparés en un seul flux de données à synchronisation automatique, transmissible sur un canal série

3.1.29

support

câble, fibre optique ou autre moyen permettant de transmettre des signaux de communication entre deux ou plusieurs points

NOTE Dans la version anglaise de la présente norme, le terme "media" est utilisé uniquement comme pluriel du terme medium.

3.1.30**réseau**

tous les supports, connecteurs, répéteurs, routeurs, passerelles et éléments de communication du nœud associés permettant d'interconnecter un ensemble donné de dispositifs de communication

3.1.31**nœud**

point d'extrémité d'une dérivation de réseau ou point où se rencontrent une ou plusieurs dérivations

[VEI 131-02-04]

3.1.32**étoile active optique**

dispositif actif dans lequel un signal provenant d'une fibre d'entrée est reçu, amplifié et retransmis à un plus grand nombre de fibres optiques de sortie. La re-synchronisation du signal reçu est facultative

3.1.33**temps de décroissance optique**

durée nécessaire pour qu'une impulsion passe d'une puissance efficace de 90 % à une puissance efficace de 10 %, spécifiée en pourcentage du temps binaire nominal

3.1.34**étoile passive optique**

dispositif passif dans lequel des signaux provenant de fibres d'entrée sont combinés puis distribués entre des fibres optiques de sortie

3.1.35**temps de croissance optique**

durée nécessaire pour qu'une impulsion passe d'une puissance efficace de 10 % à une puissance efficace de 90 %, spécifiée en pourcentage du temps binaire nominal

3.1.36**longueur d'onde d'émission crête**

λ_p

longueur d'onde à laquelle l'intensité énergétique atteint son maximum

3.1.37**récepteur**

ensemble des circuits de réception d'un élément de communication

3.1.38**répéteur**

dispositif de couche physique actif à deux accès qui reçoit et ré-émet tous les signaux pour accroître la distance et le nombre de dispositifs auxquels les signaux peuvent être correctement transférés pour un support donné

3.1.39**segment**

section de câble d'une ligne principale de bus de terrain dont la terminaison a une impédance caractéristique

NOTE Les segments sont reliés par des répéteurs au sein d'une liaison logique et par des ponts, de manière à constituer un réseau de bus de terrain.

3.1.40

dispositif à alimentation séparée (dispositif alimenté séparément)

dispositif qui ne reçoit pas son alimentation de fonctionnement par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de signal de bus de terrain

3.1.41

blindage

revêtement métallique mis à la terre enveloppant utilisé pour confiner le champ électrique dans le câble et pour protéger le câble des influences électriques externes

NOTE Les gaines et armatures métalliques ainsi que les conducteurs concentriques mis à la terre peuvent également servir de blindage.

3.1.42

ligne secondaire (ligne de distribution)

dérivation (c'est-à-dire une connexion à une ligne plus importante en un point donné sur son itinéraire) qui constitue un circuit terminal

NOTE Le terme 'câble de dérivation' est également utilisé dans la présente norme.

3.1.43

terminateur

résistance reliant des paires de conducteurs aux deux extrémités d'un segment de support câblé afin d'éviter les réflexions aux extrémités des câbles

NOTE Pour le Type 2, le terminateur est monté dans un connecteur BNC ou TNC.

3.1.44

émetteur-récepteur

dispositif constitué d'équipements de réception et d'émission dans un même boîtier utilisant des composants de circuit communs pour l'émission et la réception
[IEEE Std 100-1996; définition modifiée pour l'usage non radioélectrique]

NOTE Une unité de liaison support peut être l'émetteur-récepteur ou contenir l'émetteur-récepteur, en fonction du type et de la mise en œuvre.

3.1.45

émetteur

ensemble des circuits d'émission d'un élément de communication

3.1.46

ligne principale

principal bus de communication agissant comme source d'alimentation principale pour un certain nombre d'autres lignes (secondaires)

3.1.47

longueur d'onde type de demi-intensité

$\Delta\lambda$

gamme de longueur d'onde de répartition spectrale dans laquelle l'intensité énergétique est au moins égale à la moitié de l'intensité maximale

3.2 Type 1: Termes et définitions

3.2.1

activité

[voir 3.1.1]

3.2.2

barrière

[voir 3.1.2]

3.2.3**bus**

[voir 3.1.4]

3.2.4**connecteur d'interface de canalisation de câbles****CPIC**

[voir 3.1.5]

3.2.5**élément de communication**

[voir 3.1.6]

3.2.6**connecteur**

[voir 3.1.7]

3.2.7**coupleur**

[voir 3.1.8]

3.2.8**équipement de transmission de données****DCE**

[voir 3.1.9]

3.2.9**équipement terminal de traitement de données****ETTD**

[voir 3.1.10]

3.2.10**dBm**

[voir 3.1.11]

3.2.11**délimiteur**

[voir 3.1.12]

3.2.12**dispositif**

[voir 3.1.13]

3.2.13**puissance d'injection effective**

[voir 3.1.14]

3.2.14**puissance effective**

[voir 3.1.15]

3.2.15**câble à fibre optique**

[voir 3.1.17]

3.2.16**récepteur à fibre optique**

[voir 3.1.19]

3.2.17

domaine de fonctionnement d'un récepteur à fibre optique

[voir 3.1.20]

3.2.18

émetteur à fibre optique

[voir 3.1.21]

3.2.19

guide d'onde à fibre optique

[voir 3.1.22]

3.2.20

trame

[voir 3.1.23]

3.2.21

modulation par déphasage minimal avec filtrage gaussien

forme de modulation de fréquence dans laquelle un "1" est représenté par une fréquence de $F_c + f$ et un "0" est représenté par $F_c - f$, f étant égal au débit binaire divisé par 4 et la fréquence de modulation étant d'abord passée à travers un filtre gaussien avant d'être imposée sur la porteuse

3.2.22

sécurité intrinsèque

[voir 3.1.24]

3.2.23

isolation

[voir 3.1.25]

3.2.24

bavardage

[voir 3.1.26]

3.2.25

codage Manchester

[voir 3.1.27]

3.2.26

support

[voir 3.1.29]

3.2.27

réseau

[voir 3.1.30]

3.2.28

nœud

[voir 3.1.31]

3.2.29

temps de décroissance optique

[voir 3.1.32]

3.2.30

temps de croissance optique

[voir 3.1.34]

3.2.31**longueur d'onde d'émission crête** λ_p

[voir 3.1.36]

3.2.32**répéteur**

[voir 3.1.38]

3.2.33**segment**

[voir 3.1.39]

3.2.34**dispositif à alimentation séparée (dispositif alimenté séparément)**

[voir 3.1.40]

3.2.35**blindage**

[voir 3.1.41]

3.2.36**ligne secondaire (ligne de distribution)**

[voir 3.1.42]

3.2.37**terminateur**

[voir 3.1.43]

3.2.38**émetteur-récepteur**

[voir 3.1.43]

3.2.39**émetteur**

[voir 3.1.45]

3.2.40**ligne principale**

[voir 3.1.46]

3.3 Type 2: Termes et définitions**3.3.1****activité**

[voir 3.1.1]

3.3.2**bit**

[voir 3.1.3]

3.3.3**suppression ou temps de suppression**

intervalle de temps requis après émission avant qu'un nœud ne soit autorisé à recevoir

3.3.4**bus**

[voir 3.1.4]

3.3.5
élément de communication
[voir 3.1.6]

3.3.6
connecteur
[voir 3.1.7]

3.3.7
équipement de transmission de données
DCE
[voir 3.1.9]

3.3.8
dBm
[voir 3.1.11]

3.3.9
délimiteur
[voir 3.1.12]

3.3.10
dispositif
[voir 3.1.13]

3.3.11
délimiteur de fin
séquence unique de symboles qui identifie la fin d'une trame

3.3.12
nœud d'extrémité
nœud producteur ou consommateur

3.3.13
erreur
[voir 3.1.16]

3.3.14
trame
[voir 3.1.23]

3.3.15
isolation
[voir 3.1.25]

3.3.16
bavardage
[voir 3.1.26]

3.3.17
codage Manchester
[voir 3.1.27]

3.3.18
support
[voir 3.1.29]

3.3.19**M_symbol** (symbole M)

représentation des bits de données MAC à coder et à émettre par la couche physique

3.3.20**trame MAC**

ensemble de symboles M émis sur le support et contenant un préambule, un délimiteur de début, des données, un CRC et un délimiteur de fin

3.3.21**réseau**

[voir 3.1.30]

3.3.22**port d'accès au réseau**

variante de couche physique qui permet la connexion d'un nœud temporaire à la liaison par connexion au NAP d'un nœud permanent

3.3.23**nœud**

[voir 3.1.31]

NOTE En outre, un nœud est une connexion à une liaison qui nécessite un M_ID (identifiant de Support) unique.

3.3.24**symbole de non-données**

signal de couche physique codé Manchester utilisé pour des délimiteurs et ne transportant aucune donnée

3.3.25**isolateur optique**

composant placé dans l'émetteur-récepteur de couche physique d'un nœud, qui convertit le courant en lumière et de nouveau en signal électrique

3.3.26**nœud permanent**

nœud dont la connexion au réseau n'utilise pas la variante de couche physique port d'accès au réseau (NAP)

NOTE Ce nœud peut, en option, prendre en charge une variante de couche physique NAP pour permettre à des nœuds temporaires de se connecter au réseau.

3.3.27**supports redondants**

plusieurs supports utilisés pour réduire les échecs de communication

3.3.28**répéteur**

[voir 3.1.38]

3.3.29**segment**

[voir 3.1.39]

3.3.30**blindage**

[voir 3.1.41]

3.3.31

durée de créneau

temps maximal requis pour détecter une émission prévue

NOTE Chaque nœud attend pendant une durée de créneau chaque nœud manquant pendant le passage de jeton implicite.

3.3.32

ligne secondaire (ligne de distribution)

[voir 3.1.42]

NOTE Elle fait partie intégrante des prises réseau.

3.3.33

délimiteur de début

séquence unique de symboles qui identifie le début d'une trame

3.3.34

prise

point de liaison d'un nœud ou d'une ligne secondaire au câble de ligne principale

NOTE Une prise permet de retirer un nœud sans interrompre la liaison.

3.3.35

terminateur

[voir 3.1.43]

3.3.36

outil

programme logiciel exécutable qui interagit avec l'utilisateur pour réaliser certaines fonctions

3.3.37

émetteur-récepteur

[voir 3.1.43]

3.3.38

nœud transitoire

nœud uniquement destiné à être connecté au réseau de manière temporaire, en utilisant le support de couche physique NAP connecté au NAP d'un nœud permanent

3.3.39

émetteur

[voir 3.1.45]

3.3.40

ligne principale

[voir 3.1.46]

3.3.41

câble de ligne principale

bus ou partie centrale d'un système de câble

3.3.42

section de câble de ligne principale

longueur de câble de ligne principale entre deux prises quelconques

3.4 Type 3: Termes et définitions

3.4.1

activité

[voir 3.1.1]

3.4.2

barrière

[voir 3.1.2]

3.4.3

temps binaire

temps nécessaire pour transmettre un bit

3.4.4

bus

[voir 3.1.4]

3.4.5

élément de communication

[voir 3.1.6]

3.4.6

confirmation (primitive de)

[ISO/CEI 10731]

3.4.7

connecteur

[voir 3.1.7]

3.4.8

coupleur

[voir 3.1.8]

3.4.9

équipement de transmission de données

DCE

[voir 3.1.9]

3.4.10

équipement terminal de traitement de données

ETTD

[voir 3.1.10]

3.4.11

dBm

[voir 3.1.11]

3.4.12

dispositif

[voir 3.1.13]

3.4.13

entité DL

[ISO/CEI 7498-1]

3.4.14
câble à fibre optique
FOC (Fiber Optic Cable)
[voir 3.1.17]

3.4.15
trame
[voir 3.1.23]

3.4.16
indication (primitive d')
[ISO/CEI 10731]

3.4.17
sécurité intrinsèque
[voir 3.1.24]

3.4.18
isolation
[voir 3.1.25]

3.4.19
bavardage
[voir 3.1.26]

3.4.20
support
[voir 3.1.29]

3.4.21
entité (N)
[ISO/CEI 7498-1]

3.4.22
service (N)
[ISO/CEI 7498-1]

3.4.23
réseau
[voir 3.1.30]

3.4.24
nœud
[voir 3.1.31]

3.4.25
entité Ph
[ISO/CEI 7498-1]

3.4.26
service Ph
[ISO/CEI 7498-1]

3.4.27
répéteur
[voir 3.1.38]

3.4.28**demande (primitive de)**

[ISO/CEI 10731]

3.4.29**réinitialisation**

[ISO/CEI 7498-1]

3.4.30**segment**

[voir 3.1.39]

3.4.31**dispositif à alimentation séparée (dispositif alimenté séparément)**

[voir 3.1.40]

3.4.32**blindage**

[voir 3.1.41]

3.4.33**ligne secondaire (ligne de distribution)**

[voir 3.1.42]

3.4.34**station**

nœud

3.4.35**terminateur**

[voir 3.1.43]

3.4.36**émetteur-récepteur**

[voir 3.1.43]

3.4.37**émetteur**

[voir 3.1.45]

3.4.38**ligne principale**

[voir 3.1.46]

3.5 Type 4: Termes et définitions**3.5.1****activité**

[voir 3.1.1]

3.5.2**bus**

[voir 3.1.4]

3.5.3**connecteur**

[voir 3.1.7]

3.5.4

équipement de transmission de données

DCE

[voir 3.1.9]

3.5.5

équipement terminal de traitement de données

ETTD

[voir 3.1.10]

3.5.6

dispositif

[voir 3.1.13]

3.5.7

compteur de repos

compteur mesurant le nombre de périodes binaires pendant lesquelles le niveau du signal sur la liaison physique a été élevé pour des dispositifs de classe normale ou de classe simple en mode semi-duplex

3.5.8

isolation

[voir 3.1.25]

3.5.9

support

[voir 3.1.29]

3.5.10

réseau

[voir 3.1.30]

3.5.11

dispositif de classe normale

dispositif qui lance l'émission et répond aux demandes et qui peut agir comme serveur (répondeur) et en tant que client (demandeur) (également appelé "homologue")

3.5.12

blindage

[voir 3.1.41]

3.5.13

dispositif de classe simple

dispositif qui répond aux demandes de dispositifs de classe normale et agit comme serveur ou répondeur uniquement

3.5.14

émetteur

[voir 3.1.45]

3.6 Type 6: Ce paragraphe a été supprimé

NOTE Dans la présente édition, ce paragraphe est destiné à maintenir la numérotation des articles et éviter la rupture avec des normes nationales et multinationales ainsi que des documents de consortiums existants qui renvoient à l'édition précédente.

3.7 Type 8: Termes et définitions

3.7.1

activité

[voir 3.1.1]

3.7.2

coupleur de bus

dispositif qui divise l'anneau en segments, en ouvrant l'anneau et en intégrant un autre anneau à cet endroit

3.7.3

connecteur d'interface de canalisation de câbles

CPIC

[voir 3.1.5]

3.7.4

élément de communication

[voir 3.1.6]

3.7.5

connecteur

[voir 3.1.7]

3.7.6

dBm

[voir 3.1.11]

3.7.7

puissance d'injection effective

[voir 3.1.14]

3.7.8

puissance effective

[voir 3.1.15]

3.7.9

câble à fibre optique

[voir 3.1.17]

3.7.10

récepteur à fibre optique

[voir 3.1.19]

3.7.11

domaine de fonctionnement d'un récepteur à fibre optique

[voir 3.1.20]

3.7.12

émetteur à fibre optique

[voir 3.1.21]

3.7.13

guide d'onde à fibre optique

[voir 3.1.22]

3.7.14

trame

[voir 3.1.23]

3.7.15

interface d'arrivée

interface qui reçoit des données du dispositif précédent et qui envoie des données, reçues par l'intermédiaire d'une interface de départ, au dispositif précédent

3.7.16

isolation

[voir 3.1.25]

3.7.17

bus local

segment d'anneau d'un réseau ayant différentes spécifications de supports et couplé à un bus distant par l'intermédiaire du coupleur de bus

3.7.18

dispositif de bus local

dispositif fonctionnant comme un esclave sur un bus local

3.7.19

maître

dispositif qui commande le transfert de données sur le réseau et lance l'accès aux supports (au support) des esclaves en envoyant des messages et qui constitue l'interface avec le système de commande

3.7.20

support

[voir 3.1.29]

3.7.21

sensibilité minimale du récepteur optique

puissance optique minimale à l'entrée du récepteur optique requise pour obtenir un taux d'erreur sur les éléments binaires inférieur à 10^{-9} pour le système de transmission optique

3.7.22

réseau

[voir 3.1.30]

3.7.23

temps de décroissance optique

[voir 3.1.32]

3.7.24

temps de croissance optique

[voir 3.1.34]

3.7.25

interface de départ

interface qui envoie des données à l'esclave suivant de façon à ce que les données qui sont reçues par l'intermédiaire de cette interface soient envoyées, par l'intermédiaire d'une autre interface de départ, à l'esclave suivant ou, par l'intermédiaire d'une interface d'arrivée, à l'esclave précédent et renvoyées au maître

3.7.26**longueur d'onde d'émission crête (λ_p)**

[voir 3.1.36]

3.7.27**fibre optique polymère****POF (polymer optical fiber)**

guide d'onde à fibre optique en matière plastique dont les caractéristiques nominales sont compatibles avec la série CEI 60793 [type de fibre: A4a (980/1000)]

3.7.28**fibre de silice gainée de plastique (fibre silice-plastique)****PCS (plastic clad silica fiber)**

guide d'onde à fibre optique dont le cœur est en verre (silice) et la gaine en matière plastique et dont les caractéristiques nominales sont compatibles avec la série CEI 60793 [type de fibre: A3c (200/230 μm)]

3.7.29**bus distant**

segment d'anneau d'un réseau

3.7.30**dispositif de bus distant**

dispositif fonctionnant comme esclave sur un bus distant

3.7.31**liaison de bus distant**

connexion de deux dispositifs de bus distant

3.7.32**segment d'anneau**

section d'un réseau

NOTE Le maître constitue le premier segment d'anneau et d'autres segments d'anneau peuvent être reliés par des coupleurs de bus.

3.7.33**blindage**

[voir 3.1.41]

3.7.34**esclave**

dispositif qui n'accède au support qu'après avoir été lancé par l'esclave précédent ou le maître

3.7.35**largeur spectrale à mi-crête ($\Delta\lambda$)**

gamme de longueur d'onde de répartition spectrale dans laquelle l'intensité énergétique est au moins égale à la moitié de l'intensité maximale

3.7.36**terminateur**

[voir 3.1.43]

3.8 Type 12: Termes et définitions**3.8.1****activité**

[voir 3.1.1]

3.8.2

bit

[voir 3.1.3]

3.8.3

connecteur

[voir 3.1.7]

3.8.4

coupleur

[voir 3.1.8]

3.8.5

équipement de transmission de données (DCE)

[voir 3.1.9]

3.8.6

équipement terminal de traitement de données (ETTD)

[voir 3.1.10]

3.8.7

délimiteur

[voir 3.1.12]

3.8.8

dispositif

[voir 3.1.13]

3.8.9

erreur

[voir 3.1.16]

3.8.10

trame

[voir 3.1.23]

3.8.11

repos

symbole au niveau des supports entre EOF et SOF

3.8.12

isolation

[voir 3.1.25]

3.8.13

instabilité (gigue)

[voir 3.1.27]

3.8.14

codage Manchester

[voir 3.1.28]

3.8.15

support

[voir 3.1.29]

3.8.16**réseau**

[voir 3.1.30]

3.8.17**récepteur**

[voir 3.1.37]

3.8.18**blindage**

[voir 3.1.41]

3.8.19**terminateur**

[voir 3.1.43]

3.9 Type 16: Termes et définitions**3.9.1****atténuation**

phénomène tel que la puissance optique au récepteur est inférieure à celle à l'émetteur

3.9.2**barrière**

[voir 3.1.2]

3.9.3**bit**

[voir 3.1.3]

3.9.4**insertion binaire**

procédure par laquelle, après cinq "1" logiques, l'émetteur insère automatiquement un zéro qui est ensuite enlevé par le récepteur. Ce zéro entraîne une modification des fronts de signaux qui permettent au récepteur de récupérer une horloge de réception

3.9.5**connecteur**

[voir 3.1.7]

3.9.6**équipement de transmission de données (DCE)**

[voir 3.1.9]

3.9.7**équipement terminal de traitement de données (ETTD)**

[voir 3.1.10]

3.9.8**dBm**

[voir 3.1.11]

3.9.9**délimiteur**

[voir 3.1.12]

3.9.10

dispositif

[voir 3.1.13]

3.9.11

erreur

[voir 3.1.16]

3.9.12

câble à fibre optique

[voir 3.1.18]

3.9.13

trame

[voir 3.1.23]

3.9.14

connecteur F-SMA

connecteur F-SMA conforme à la CEI 61754-22

3.9.15

caractère de remplissage

séquence de sept “1” suivie d’un “0”

3.9.16

instabilité (gigue)

[voir 3.1.27]

3.9.17

support

[voir 3.1.29]

3.9.18

réseau

[voir 3.1.30]

3.9.19

nœud

[voir 3.1.31]

3.9.20

non-retour à zéro inversé

NRZI (non-return-to-zero-inverted)

échange de signaux ayant lieu à des intervalles fixes et réguliers en synchronisation avec l’impulsion de l’horloge d’émission en débit binaire. Un changement de front de signal n’est affecté qu’à un “0” logique

3.9.21

temps de décroissance optique

[voir 3.1.33]

3.9.22

temps de croissance optique

[voir 3.1.35]

3.9.23**remplissage (octet de)**

séquence d'octets ajoutée pour s'assurer que le télégramme est suffisamment long pour un fonctionnement approprié

3.9.24**longueur d'onde d'émission crête (λ_p)**

[voir 3.1.36]

3.9.25**récepteur**

[voir 3.1.37]

3.9.26**répéteur**

[voir 3.1.38]

3.9.27**fonction répéteur**

fonction par laquelle un télégramme est reçu par un nœud et passé et resynchronisé sur le nœud suivant du réseau, tout en restant logiquement inchangé

3.9.28**émetteur**

[voir 3.1.45]

3.9.29**longueur d'onde type de demi-intensité ($\Delta\lambda$)**

[voir 3.1.47]

3.9.30**flux zéro bit**

séquence de zéros logiques qui, en codage NRZI, entraîne une modification périodique du front de signal sur la ligne d'émission (utilisée uniquement en mode d'essai)

3.10 Type 18: Termes et définitions**3.10.1****activité**

[voir 3.1.1]

3.10.2**bit**

[voir 3.1.3]

3.10.3**bus**

[voir 3.1.4]

3.10.4**élément de communication**

[voir 3.1.6]

3.10.5**connecteur**

[voir 3.1.7]

3.10.6

équipement de transmission de données (DCE)

[voir 3.1.9]

3.10.7

équipement terminal de traitement de données (ETTD)

[voir 3.1.10]

3.10.8

dispositif

[voir 3.1.13]

3.10.9

erreur

[voir 3.1.16]

3.10.10

isolation

[voir 3.1.25]

3.10.11

support

[voir 3.1.29]

3.10.12

réseau

[voir 3.1.30]

3.10.13

nœud

[voir 3.1.31]

3.10.14

récepteur

[voir 3.1.37]

3.10.15

segment

[voir 3.1.39]

3.10.16

blindage

[voir 3.1.41]

3.10.17

ligne secondaire (ligne de distribution)

[voir 3.1.42]

3.10.18

station

dispositif de réseau matérialisant un nœud

3.10.19

terminateur

[voir 3.1.43]

3.10.20**émetteur-récepteur**

[voir 3.1.44]

3.10.21**émetteur**

[voir 3.1.45]

3.10.22**ligne principale**

[voir 3.1.46]

4 Symboles et abréviations**4.1 Symboles****4.1.1 Type 1: Symboles**

Symbole	Définition	Unité
$A_{\max}$	Affaiblissement maximal entre dispositifs	dB
$AD_{\max}$	Distorsion d'affaiblissement maximale entre dispositifs	dB
BR	Débit binaire nominal	Mbit/s
ΔBR	Ecart maximal par rapport à BR	-
$CS_{\max}$	Espacement maximal des coupleurs pour former une grappe	m
$D_{\min}$	Impédance d'entrée minimale d'un dispositif	k Ω
dBm	Unité logarithmique de puissance référencée à 1 mW	dB(mW)
F_c	Fréquence centrale de porteuse utilisée en modulation par déplacement de fréquence	kHz
F_{c+f}	Fréquence qui correspond au 1 logique en modulation par déplacement de fréquence	kHz
F_{c-f}	Fréquence qui correspond au 0 logique en modulation par déplacement de fréquence	kHz
f_r	Fréquence correspondant au débit binaire nominal	MHz
$f_{\min}$	Fréquence nominale minimale pour le débit binaire nominal	MHz
$f_{\max}$	Fréquence nominale maximale pour le débit binaire nominal	MHz
$f_{QTO_{\max}}$	Fréquence maximale pour la mesure de $QTO_{\max}$	MHz
$L_{\max}$	Distance maximale entre dispositifs	m
$MD_{\max}$	Distorsion de désadaptation maximale entre dispositifs	dB
N+	Symbole de non-données – positif; Signal codé Manchester à haut niveau pour un temps binaire, utilisé pour des délimiteurs et ne transportant aucune donnée	-
N-	Symbole de non-données – négatif; Signal codé Manchester à niveau bas pour un temps binaire, utilisé pour des délimiteurs et ne transportant aucune donnée	-
$N_{\max}$	Nombre maximal de dispositifs	-
P	Période nominale d'émission d'octet	s
PICS	Déclaration de conformité d'une instance de protocole	-
$QTO_{\max}$	Sortie maximale d'émetteur passif	mV
T_{bit}	Durée binaire nominale	μ s
ΔT_{bit}	Ecart maximal par rapport à T_{bit}	-
T_{rf}	Temps de croissance ou de décroissance de signal maximal	ns
V_{DD}	Niveau d'alimentation le plus positif (ou le moins négatif)	V
V_{IH}	Tension d'entrée de haut niveau minimale	V
V_{IL}	Tension d'entrée de niveau bas maximale	V

Symbole	Définition	Unité
V_{OH}	Tension de sortie de haut niveau minimale	V
V_{OL}	Tension de sortie de niveau bas maximale	V
Z	Impédance; somme vectorielle de la résistance et de réactance (inductive ou capacitive)	Ω
Z_{fr}	Impédance caractéristique; impédance d'un câble, et de ses terminateurs, à la fréquence f_r	Ω
Z_O	Impédance caractéristique, impédance d'un câble, et de ses terminateurs, sur la gamme de fréquences définie	Ω

4.1.2 Type 2: Symboles

Symbole	Définition	Unité
dBm	Unité logarithmique de puissance référencée à 1 mw	dB(mW)
f_r	Fréquence correspondant au débit binaire	Hz
GND	Niveau masse de référence de l'alimentation	V
H	Symbole physique – niveau haut	-
L	Symbole physique – niveau bas	-
M_0	Commande d'accès au support physique – symbole de données – “zéro”; Symbole à l'interface DL-Ph, représentant le signal codé Manchester émis et reçu, à un niveau haut pendant un demi-temps binaire et à un niveau bas pendant un demi-temps binaire, transportant des données “zéro”	-
M_1	Commande d'accès au support physique – symbole de données – “un”; Symbole à l'interface DL-Ph, représentant le signal codé Manchester émis et reçu, à un niveau bas pendant un demi-temps binaire et à un niveau haut pendant un demi-temps binaire, transportant des données “un”	-
M_ND+	Commande d'accès au support physique – symbole non données – positif; Symbole à l'interface DL-Ph, représentant le signal codé Manchester émis et reçu, à un niveau haut pendant un temps binaire complet, utilisé pour des délimiteurs et ne transportant aucune donnée	-
M_ND-	Commande d'accès au support physique – symbole non données – négatif; Symbole à l'interface DL-Ph, représentant le signal codé Manchester émis et reçu, à un niveau bas pendant un temps binaire complet, utilisé pour des délimiteurs et ne transportant aucune donnée	-
Rx_H	Réception – niveau haut (interface NAP)	V
Rx_L	Réception – niveau bas (interface NAP)	V
Tx_H	Emission – niveau haut (interface NAP)	V
Tx_L	Emission – niveau bas (interface NAP)	V
V_{in}	Tension sur le conducteur central du câble coaxial (V_{in+} ou V_{in-}) référencée au blindage coaxial	V
V_{sense+}	Limite positive de sensibilité des données	V
V_{sense-}	Limite négative de sensibilité des données	V
V_{senseH}	Limite haute de sensibilité de la porteuse	V
V_{senseL}	Limite basse de sensibilité de la porteuse	V

4.1.3 Type 3: Symboles

Symbole	Définition	Unité
dBm	Unité logarithmique de puissance référencée à 1 mW	dB(mW)
f_r	Fréquence correspondant au débit binaire	Hz, kHz, MHz
N-	Symbole de non-données – négatif; Signal codé Manchester à niveau bas pour un temps binaire, utilisé pour des délimiteurs et ne transportant aucune donnée	-
N+	Symbole de non-données – positif; Signal codé Manchester à haut niveau pour un temps binaire, utilisé pour des délimiteurs et ne transportant aucune donnée	-
P	Période nominale d'émission d'octet	s
R_d	Résistance de polarisation à la masse	Ω
R_t	Terminateur de bus	Ω
R_u	Résistance de polarisation à l'alimentation	Ω
SYN	Bits de synchronisation d'une trame (période de repos)	s
t_{BIT}	Le temps binaire t_{BIT} est la durée qui s'écoule pendant l'émission d'un bit	s
T_{SBIT}	Tolérance élargie (uniquement pour le bit d'arrêt)	s
T_{SYN}	Temps de synchronisation	s
T_{SYNI}	Temps d'intervalle de synchronisation	s
V_{DD}	niveau d'alimentation le plus positif (ou le moins négatif)	V
V_{IH}	tension d'entrée de haut niveau minimale	V
V_{IL}	tension d'entrée de niveau bas maximale	V
V_{OH}	Tension de sortie de haut niveau minimale	V
V_{OL}	Tension de sortie de niveau bas maximale	V
VP	Plus de la tension	V
Z	Impédance; somme vectorielle de la résistance et de réactance (inductive ou capacitive)	Ω
Z_O	Impédance caractéristique, impédance d'un câble, et de ses terminateurs, sur la gamme de fréquences définie	Ω

4.1.4 Type 4: Symboles

Symbole	Définition	Unité
Vcc	Niveau d'alimentation le plus positif (ou le moins négatif)	V
GND	Niveau masse de référence de l'alimentation	V

4.1.5 Type 6: Ce paragraphe a été supprimé

NOTE Dans la présente édition, ce paragraphe est destiné à maintenir la numérotation des articles et éviter la rupture avec des normes nationales et multinationales ainsi que des documents de consortiums existants qui renvoient à l'édition précédente.

4.1.6 Type 8: Symboles

Symbole	Définition	Unité
dBm	Unité logarithmique de puissance référencée à 1 mW	dB(mW)
f_r	Fréquence correspondant au débit binaire	Hz
Vdd	Niveau d'alimentation le plus positif (ou le moins négatif)	V
GND	Niveau de masse de référence de l'alimentation	V

4.1.7 Type 12: Symboles

Symbole	Définition	Unité
f_r	Fréquence correspondant au débit binaire nominal	MHz
N+	Symbole de non-données – positif; Signal codé Manchester à haut niveau pour un temps binaire, utilisé pour des délimiteurs et ne transportant aucune donnée	-
N-	Symbole de non-données – négatif; Signal codé Manchester à niveau bas pour un temps binaire, utilisé pour des délimiteurs et ne transportant aucune donnée	-
T_{bit}	Durée binaire nominale	μs
Z	Impédance; somme vectorielle de la résistance et de réactance (inductive ou capacitive)	Ω
Z_O	Impédance caractéristique, impédance d'un câble, et de ses terminateurs, sur la gamme de fréquences définie	Ω

4.1.8 Type 16: Symboles

Symbole	Définition	Unité
j	Instabilité, gigue	μs
J_{noise}	Instabilité du signal optique	μs
J_{t2}	Instabilité en t_2	μs
J_{tscyc}	Instabilité en t_{scyc}	μs
P	Puissance	dBm ou μW
P_{RmaxH}	Puissance maximale reçue à un haut niveau optique	dBm ou μW
P_{RmaxL}	Puissance maximale reçue à un bas niveau optique	dBm ou μW
P_{RminH}	Puissance minimale reçue à un haut niveau optique	dBm ou μW
P_{TmaxH}	Puissance d'émission maximale à un haut niveau optique	dBm ou μW
P_{TmaxL}	Puissance d'émission maximale à un bas niveau optique	dBm ou μW
P_{TminH}	Puissance d'émission minimale à un haut niveau optique	dBm ou μW
P_x	Seuil de puissance	dBm ou μW
t_{cable}	Durée de retard du signal transmis, dû au câble, pour chaque unité de longueur (environ 5 ns/m)	ns
t_{fri}	Temps pour le niveau optique faible à l'entrée d'un esclave	ns
t_{fro}	Temps pour le niveau optique faible à la sortie d'un esclave	ns
t_{rep}	Temps de retard du signal reçu, dû à un esclave d'acheminement (entrée-sortie)	ns
t_{ring}	Temps nécessaire à un télégramme du maître pour passer à travers tout le réseau et revenir de nouveau au maître	μs
t_{RPAT}	Temps de transition maximal dans un esclave pour passer de la fonction répéteur à la fonction émetteur de l'AT	μs
$t_{RPAT.2}$	Temps de transition maximal dans l'esclave 2 pour passer de la fonction répéteur à la fonction émetteur de l'AT	μs

4.1.9 Type 18: Symboles

Symbole	Définition	Unité
V_{DD}	Tension fournie aux composantes logiques numériques de puissance	V
V_{OL}	Tension de sortie, niveau bas	V
V_{OH}	Tension de sortie, niveau haut	V
V_{IL}	Tension d'entrée, niveau bas	V
V_{IH}	Tension d'entrée, niveau haut	V

4.2 Abréviations

4.2.1 Type 1: Abréviations

CTS	Signal "Prêt à émettre" (Clear-to-send) (du DCE)	
DCE	Équipement de transmission de données (Data communication equipment)	
DIS	Sous-couche indépendante du DCE	
DL	Liaison de données (Data-link) (utilisée comme préfixe)	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
DLE	Entité de liaison de données (Data-link entity)	
DLL	Couche de liaison de données (Data-link layer)	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
ETTD	Équipement terminal de traitement de données	
EMI	Brouillage électromagnétique (Electro-magnetic interference)	
IDU	Unité de données d'interface (Interface data unit)	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
IS	Sécurité intrinsèque (Intrinsic safety)	
LbE	Signal d'activation du rebouclage (Loopback-enable signal) (vers MAU)	
MAU	Unité de liaison au support (Medium attachment unit) (pour les supports câblés, MAU = émetteur-récepteur)	
MDS	Sous-couche dépendante du support (Medium dependent sublayer)	
min o/p	Tension minimale de sortie crête à crête	
MIS	Sous-couche indépendante des supports (Media independent sublayer)	
NRZ	Code de non-retour à zéro (Non-return-to-zero code)	

NOTE niveau haut = 1 logique, niveau bas = 0 logique

ph	Physique (utilisée comme préfixe)	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhE	Entité de Couche Physique	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhL	Couche Physique (Physical layer)	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhICI	Informations de commande d'interface de couche physique	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhID	Données d'interface de couche physique	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhIDU	Unité de données d'interface de couche physique	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhPCI	Informations de commande de protocole de couche physique	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhPDU	Unité (ensemble) de données de protocole de couche physique	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhS	Service de couche physique (Physical layer service)	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhSAP	Point d'accès de service de couche physique	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhSDU	Ensemble (Unité) de données de service de couche physique	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PK	Crête	
pk-pk	Crête à crête	
RDF	Signal de réception de données et de verrouillage de trame (Receive-data-and-framing signal) (du DCE)	
RFI	Brouillage radioélectrique (Radio frequency interference)	
RTS	Signal "Demande pour émettre" (Request-to-send) (vers DCE)	
RxA	Signal d'activité de réception (du DCE)	
RxC	Signal d'horloge de réception (du DCE)	

RxS	Signal de réception (de la MAU)
SDU	Unité (ensemble) de données de service (Service data unit) [ISO/CEI 7498-1]
TxC	Signal d'horloge d'émission (du DCE)
TxD	Signal de données d'émission (vers DCE)
TxE	Signal d'activation de l'émission (vers MAU)
TxS	Signal d'émission (vers MAU)

4.2.2 Type 2: Abréviations

BNC	Bayonet Neill Concelman (Connecteur pour câble coaxial ayant une enveloppe de type à baïonnette avec deux petits boutons sur le connecteur femelle qui s'enclenchent dans les rainures spiralées du connecteur mâle lorsqu'il est tourné) [CEI 60169-8]
DCE	Equipement de transmission de données
DL	Liaison de données (utilisée comme préfixe) [ISO/CEI 7498-1]
DLL	Couche de liaison de données [ISO/CEI 7498-1]
MAC	Commande d'accès au support physique (section de niveau inférieur de la couche liaison de données en interface avec la couche physique)
MAC ID	Identification de la commande d'accès au support physique – adresse d'un nœud
MAU	Unité de liaison au support (pour les supports câblés, MAU = émetteur-récepteur)
MDS	Sous-couche dépendante du support
MIS	Sous-couche indépendante des supports
NAP	Port d'accès au réseau (accès local) à un dispositif, c'est-à-dire non par l'intermédiaire du bus)
NetEnable	Signal d'activation d'émission
NUT	Temps de mise à jour du réseau [CEI 61158-4-2]
pH	Physique (utilisée comme préfixe) [ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhL	Couche physique [ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PK	Crête
Rcv	Réception
Rx	Réception
RxCARRIER	Signal de porteuse de réception
RxDATA	Signal de données de réception
RxPTC	Signal de données de réception (interface NAP)
RM	Machine répéteur (Repeater machine) (mécanisme d'extension de la longueur du bus, fournissant de multiples interfaces de supports, et permettant la redondance des supports)
RRM	Machine répéteur d'anneau (Ring repeater machine) (mécanisme fournissant une topologie annulaire sur support optique)
SMAX	Adresse maximale planifiée [CEI 61158-4-2]
TNC	Threaded Neill Concelman (version filetée du connecteur BNC) [CEI 60169-17]
Tx	Emission
TxDATABAR	Signal de données d'émission (inversé)
TxDATAOUT	Signal de données d'émission

TxPTC	Signal de données d'émission (interface NAP)
Xmit	Emission

4.2.3 Type 3: Abréviations

ASC	Coupleur en étoile actif (Active star coupler)
BER	Taux d'erreur sur les éléments binaires (Bit error rate)
CO	Convertisseur
CTS	Signal "Prêt à émettre" (Clear-to-send) (du DCE)
DCE	Équipement de transmission de données
DGND	Masse de référence des données
DIS	Sous-couche indépendante du DCE
DL	Liaison de données (utilisée comme préfixe)
DLE	Entité de liaison de données
DLL	Couche de liaison de données [ISO/CEI 7498-1]
DLPDU	Ensemble (Unité) de données de protocole de liaison de données [ISO/CEI 7498-1]
ETTD	Équipement terminal de traitement de données
DUT	Dispositif en essai (Device under test)
CEM	Compatibilité électromagnétique
EMI	Brouillage électromagnétique
FEC	Correction d'erreurs sans voie de retour (Forward error correction)
FISCO	Concept de bus de terrain de sécurité intrinsèque (Fieldbus intrinsically safe concept) [7]
FO	Fibre optique
FOC	Câble à fibre optique (Fiber optic cable)
IS	Sécurité intrinsèque
LbE	Signal d'activation du rebouclage (vers MAU)
LSS	Sélecteur de ligne (Line selector switch)
M/S	Station maître / esclave (Master / slave station)
MAU	Unité de liaison au support (pour les supports câblés, MAU = émetteur-récepteur)
MDS	Sous-couche dépendante du support
MIS	Sous-couche indépendante des supports
n	Numéro d'une station
NRZ	Code de non-retour à zéro

NOTE Niveau haut = 1 logique, niveau bas = 0 logique.

OST	Dépassement de transition (Overshot of transition)
PC	Contact physique (Physical contact)
Ph	Physique (utilisée comme préfixe)
Ph-ASYN-DATA	Service de données physique pour transmission asynchrone
PhE	Entité de couche physique [ISO/CEI 7498-1]

PhICI	Informations de commande d'interface de couche physique [ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhID	Données d'interface de couche physique [ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhIDU	Unité de données d'interface de couche physique [ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhL	Couche physique [ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhM	Gestion Ph
PhMS	Service de gestion Ph
PhPCI	Informations de commande de protocole de couche physique [ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhPDU	Unité (ensemble) de données de protocole de couche physique [ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhS	Service de couche physique [ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhSAP	Point d'accès de service de couche physique [ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhSDU	Unité (ensemble) de données de service de couche physique [ISO/CEI 7498-1]
pk-pk	Crête à crête
RDF	Signal de réception de données et de verrouillage de trame (du DCE)
REP	Répéteur
RFI	Brouillage radioélectrique
RTS	Signal "Demande pour émettre" (Request-to-send) (vers DCE)
RxA	Signal d'activité de réception (du DCE)
RxC	Signal d'horloge de réception (du DCE)
RxS	Signal de réception (de la MAU)
Stn	Stations (maître ou esclave)
TPC	Câble à paire torsadée (Twisted-pair cable)
TxC	Signal d'horloge d'émission (du DCE)
TxD	Signal de données d'émission (vers DCE)
TxE	Signal d'activation de l'émission (vers MAU)
TxS	Signal d'émission (vers MAU)
UART	Émetteur-récepteur asynchrone universel (Universal asynchronous receiver/transmitter)

4.2.4 Type 4: Abréviations

CTS	Signal "Prêt à émettre" (Clear-to-send) (du DCE)
DCE	Équipement de transmission de données
DL	Liaison de données (utilisée comme préfixe) [ISO/CEI 7498-1]
DLE	Entité de liaison de données
DLL	Couche de liaison de données [ISO/CEI 7498-1]
ETTD	Équipement terminal de traitement de données
MAU	Unité de liaison au support (pour les supports câblés, MAU = émetteur-récepteur)
MDS	Sous-couche dépendante du support
MIS	Sous-couche indépendante des supports
NRZ	Code de non-retour à zéro

NOTE Niveau haut = 1 logique, niveau bas = 0 logique.

Ph	Physique (utilisée comme préfixe)	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhE	Entité de couche physique	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhL	Couche physique	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhID	Données d'interface de couche physique	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhPDU	Ensemble (Unité) de données de protocole de couche physique	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
RTS	Signal "Demande pour émettre" (Request-to-send) (vers DCE)	
RxS	Signal de réception (de la MAU)	
TxE	Signal d'activation de l'émission (vers MAU)	
TxS	Signal d'émission (vers MAU)	

4.2.5 Type 6: *Ce paragraphe a été supprimé*

NOTE Dans la présente édition, ce paragraphe est destiné à maintenir la numérotation des articles et éviter la rupture avec des normes nationales et multinationales ainsi que des documents de consortiums existants qui renvoient à l'édition précédente.

4.2.6 Type 8: Abréviations

BC	Connecteur de bus (Bus connector)	
BLL	Couche de liaison basique (Basic link layer)	
BSY	Occupé	
CPIC	Connecteur d'interface de canalisation de câbles (Cable plant interface connector)	
CRC	Contrôle de redondance cyclique	
CTS	Prêt à émettre	
DL	Liaison de données (utilisée comme préfixe)	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
DLL	Couche de liaison de données	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
DI	Données In (entrantes)	
DLPDU	Unité (ensemble) de données de processus de liaison de données	
DO	Données out (sortantes)	
DS	Sélection de données (Data select)	
GND	Masse (terre) de référence	
ICI	Informations de commande d'interface	
ID	Identifiant	
LbE	Activation du rebouclage	
LSB	Octet de poids faible (Least significant byte)	
MA	Activité du support (Medium activity)	
MAC	Commande d'accès au support physique	
MAU	Unité de liaison au Support	
MDS	Sous-couche dépendante du support	
MIS	Sous-couche indépendante des Supports	
MSB	Bit de poids fort (Most significant bit)	
NRZ	Non-retour à zéro	
PCS	Fibre de silice gainée de plastique; fibre silice-plastique	

Ph	Physique (utilisée comme préfixe)	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhE	Entité de couche physique	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhICI	Informations de commande d'interface de couche physique	
PhIDU	Unité de données d'interface de couche physique	
PhL	Couche physique	[ISO/CEI 7498-1]
PhPDU	Unité (ensemble) de données de protocole de couche physique	
PhSDU	Unité (ensemble) de données de service de couche physique	
PNM1	Gestion de réseau de périphériques de couche 1 (Peripherals network management of layer 1)	
POF	Fibre optique polymère (Polymer optical fiber)	
RI	Réinitialisation-entrée	
RO	Réinitialisation-sortie	
RqDly1	Délai de demande 1	
RqDly2	Délai de demande 2	
RTS	Demande pour émettre	
RxA	Activité de réception	
RxC	Horloge de réception	
RxCR	Ligne de commande de réception	
RxD	Données de réception	
RxS	Séquence de réception	
RxSL	Ligne de sélection de réception	
SL	Ligne de sélection (Select line)	
TRst	Codage et décodage (du PhPDU de réinitialisation)	
TxC	Horloge d'émission	
TxCR	Ligne de commande d'émission	
TxD	Données d'émission	
TxS	Séquence d'émission	
TxSL	Ligne de sélection d'émission	

4.2.7 Type 12: Abréviations

EBUS	Une couche physique de Type 12 telle que décrite dans la présente norme internationale
EOF	Fin de trame (End of Frame)
LVDS	Signalisation différentielle basse tension (Low Voltage Differential Signaling)
PCB	Carte de circuit imprimé (Printed Circuit Board)
RxS	Signal de réception
SOF	Début de trame (Start of Frame)
TxS	Signal d'émission

4.2.8 Type 16: Abréviations

DPLL	Boucle numérique à verrouillage de phase (digital phase locked loop)

HCS	Silice (fibre de verre) gainée en dur
CI	Circuit intégré
DEL	Diode électroluminescente
LSB	Bit de poids faible
MSB	Bit de poids fort
NRZI	Non-retour à zéro inversé
POF	Fibre optique polymère (fibre plastique)
RxCLK	Horloge de réception
RxD	Données reçues
TxCLK	Horloge d'émission
TxD	Données émises

4.2.9 Type 18: Abréviations

CMOS	Semi-conducteur à oxyde métallique complémentaire (Complimentary Metal Oxide Silicon) – une classe de spécification d'interface logique numérique
DA / DB	Données A et données B – paire de signaux de télécommunication
DG	Masse de référence des données – référence des signaux de télécommunication dont le potentiel est égal à zéro
FG	Masse de référence du bus de terrain – référence des dispositifs dont le potentiel est égal à zéro
NRZI	Non-retour à zéro inversé
PhL-B	Couche physique – de type basique
PhL-P	Couche physique – de type alimenté
RxS	Signal de réception
SLD	Blindage – cage de Faraday linéaire
TTL	Logique transistor-transistor (Transistor-Transistor Logic) – une classe de spécification d'interface logique numérique
TxE	Activation d'émission
TxS	Signal d'émission
UL	Charge unitaire (Unit Load)

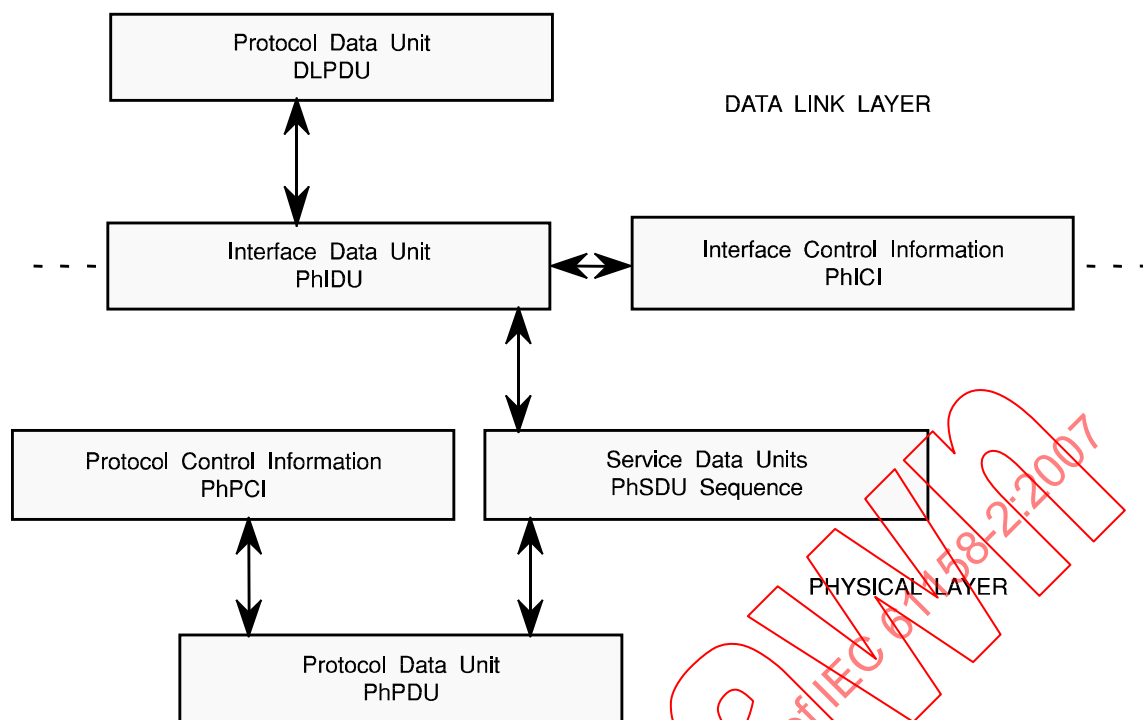
5 Interface DLL-PhL

5.1 Généralités

Le présent article définit les primitives de services physiques (PhS) requises et les contraintes liées à leur utilisation.

NOTE 1 L'interface couche de liaison de données – couche physique est une interface de service virtuelle entre machines virtuelles; il n'y a aucune exigence concernant les lignes de signaux physiques car la norme n'exige pas que cette interface soit exposée.

Les PhIDU doivent être transférées entre la DLL et la PhL conformément aux exigences de l'ISO/CEI 7498, comme illustré en Figure 2.



NOTE La prise en charge des PhPCI et PhICI est spécifique au type.

Légende

Anglais	Français
Protocol Data Unit DLPDU	Unité de données de protocole DLPDU
DATA LINK LAYER	COUCHE DE LIAISON DE DONNÉES
Interface Data Unit PhIDU	Unité de données d'interface PhIDU
Interface Control Information PhICI	Informations de commande d'interface PhICI
Protocol Control Information PhPCI	Informations de commande de protocole PhPCI
Service Data Units PhSDU Sequence	Unité de données de service, Séquence de PhSDU
PHYSICAL LAYER	COUCHE PHYSIQUE
Protocol Data Unit PhPDU	Unité de données de protocole PhPDU

Figure 2 – Mise en correspondance entre unités de données sur l'interface DLL-PhL

NOTE 2 Ces services assurent l'échange de PhIDU entre une entité DLL et l'entité PhL correspondante. Ce transfert fait partie d'une transaction entre entités DLL coopérantes. Les services énumérés dans cette section constituent un minimum; ils peuvent conjointement fournir les moyens par lesquels des entités DLL coopérantes peuvent coordonner leurs émissions et leurs échanges de données sur le support de communication partagé. La synchronisation de l'échange de données et les actions correspondantes sont également prévues si nécessaire.

NOTE 3 Une organisation appropriée des couches exige qu'une entité de couche (N+1) ne soit pas concernée par les moyens utilisés par une couche (N) pour fournir ses services (N) et qu'une interface de services (N) ne restreigne pas exagérément ces moyens. Ainsi, l'interface de service Ph n'exige pas que les DLE soient informées des détails internes de la PhE (par exemple préambule (synchroniseur initial), synchroniseur final et configuration des signaux délimiteurs de trames, nombre de bits par baud) et il convient que la PhE ne soit pas empêchée d'utiliser des avancées technologiques appropriées.

NOTE 4 Un certain nombre de différentes interfaces DLL-PhL sont spécifiées, sur la base des pratiques industrielles en la matière.

5.2 Type 1: Services exigés

5.2.1 Primitives du PhS

5.2.1.1 Généralités

La granularité des données utilisateur PhS échangées au niveau de l'interface PhL-DLL est d'un octet.

5.2.1.2 Indication des CARACTÉRISTIQUES Ph

Le PhS doit fournir la primitive de service suivante afin de rendre compte des caractéristiques essentielles du PhS (qui peuvent être utilisées dans les activités d'émission, de réception et de planification de la DLL):

Indication des CARACTÉRISTIQUES Ph (débit binaire minimal, surdébit de trame)

où

le débit binaire minimal – doit spécifier le débit minimal d'acheminement des données effectif, en bits/s, y compris d'éventuelles tolérances temporelles ;

NOTE 1 Une PhE ayant un débit binaire nominal de 1 Mbit/s $\pm$ 0,01 % indiquerait un débit binaire minimal de 0,999 9 Mbit/s.

le surdébit de trame – doit spécifier le nombre maximal de périodes binaires (la période binaire étant l'inverse du débit binaire) utilisées dans toute émission de PhPDU qui n'acheminent pas directement de données (par exemple des PhPDU qui acheminent des préambules (synchroniseurs initiaux), des délimiteurs de trames, des synchroniseurs finaux, des "silences" inter-trames, etc.).

NOTE 2 Si le surdébit de trame est F et si deux longueurs de messages DL sont L_1 et L_2 , le temps nécessaire à l'envoi d'un message de longueur $L_1 + F + L_2$ sera au moins égal au temps nécessaire pour envoyer deux messages immédiatement consécutifs de longueurs L_1 et L_2 .

5.2.1.3 Services PhS d'émission et de réception

Le PhS doit fournir les primitives de service suivantes pour l'émission et la réception:

Demande de DONNÉES PH (classe, données)

Indication de DONNÉES PH (classe, données)

Confirmation de DONNÉES PH (état)

où

classe – doit spécifier la composante PhICI de PhIDU.

Pour une demande de DONNÉES PH, les valeurs possibles doivent être:

DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ – l'émission des PhPDU qui précèdent les données utilisateur Ph doit commencer;

DONNÉES – la valeur d'octet unique du paramètre de données correspondant doit être transmise comme partie d'une émission continue correctement formée; et

FIN DE DONNÉES ET D'ACTIVITÉ – les PhPDU qui mettent fin aux données utilisateur Ph doivent être émises après le dernier octet précédent des données utilisateur Ph, aboutissant à la cessation de l'émission active.

Pour une indication de DONNÉES PH, les valeurs possibles doivent être:

DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ – la réception d'une émission apparente d'une ou de plusieurs PhE a commencé;

DONNÉES – le paramètre de données correspondant a été reçu comme partie d'une réception continue correctement formée;

FIN DE DONNÉES – la réception continue correctement formée des données utilisateur Ph en cours s'est terminée par la réception correcte des PhPDU impliquant la FIN DES DONNÉES;

FIN D'ACTIVITÉ – la réception en cours (d'une émission apparente provenant d'une ou de plusieurs PhE) s'est achevée avec aucune preuve supplémentaire d'émission PhE; et

FIN DE DONNÉES ET D'ACTIVITÉ – occurrence simultanée de FIN DE DONNÉES et de FIN D'ACTIVITÉ.

données – doit spécifier la composante PhID de PhIDU. Elle est constituée d'un octet de données utilisateur Ph à émettre (demande de DONNÉES PH) ou qui a été reçu avec succès (indication de DONNÉES PH).

état – doit spécifier soit le succès, soit la raison détectée localement qui a donné lieu à l'échec.

La primitive de confirmation de DONNÉES PH doit fournir le retour d'informations critiques de temporisation physique nécessaires pour empêcher la DLE de démarrer une seconde émission avant que la première ne soit terminée. La confirmation de DONNÉES PH finale d'une émission ne doit pas être initiée avant que la PhE n'ait terminé l'émission.

5.2.2 Notification de caractéristiques PhS

La PhE a la responsabilité d'informer la DLE des caractéristiques du PhS qui peuvent être importantes pour le fonctionnement de la DLE. La PhE doit fournir ces informations en remettant une primitive unique d'indication de CARACTÉRISTIQUES Ph à chaque PhSAP de PhE, au démarrage de la PhE.

5.2.3 Emission de données utilisateur Ph

La PhE doit déterminer la temporisation de toutes les émissions. Lorsqu'une DLE transmet une séquence de PhSDU, la DLE doit envoyer la séquence de PhSDU en réalisant une séquence bien formée de demandes de DONNÉES PH, constituée d'une seule demande spécifiant le DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ, suivie de 3 à 300 demandes consécutives qui spécifient également les DONNÉES, chacune de ces demandes acheminant une PhSDU et se terminant par une demande unique spécifiant la FIN DES DONNÉES ET DE L'ACTIVITÉ.

La PhE doit signaler l'achèvement de chaque demande de DONNÉES PH et indiquer qu'elle est prête à accepter une nouvelle demande de DONNÉES PH, en lançant une primitive de confirmation de DONNÉES PH; le paramètre d'état de la primitive de confirmation de DONNÉES PH doit acheminer le succès ou l'échec de la demande de DONNÉES PH correspondante. Une seconde demande de DONNÉES PH ne doit être lancée par la DLE qu'après que la PhE a émis la confirmation de DONNÉES PH correspondant à la première demande.

5.2.4 Réception de données utilisateur Ph

La PhE doit rendre compte d'une émission reçue par une séquence bien formée d'indications de DONNÉES PH, qui doit être constituée

- a) d'une indication unique spécifiant le DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ; suivie par des indications consécutives spécifiant les DONNÉES et acheminant chacune une PhSDU; suivie par une indication unique spécifiant la FIN DES DONNÉES; et terminée par une indication unique spécifiant la FIN DE L'ACTIVITÉ; ou
- b) d'une indication unique spécifiant le DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ; suivie par des indications consécutives spécifiant les DONNÉES et acheminant chacune une PhSDU; et suivie par une indication unique spécifiant la FIN DES DONNÉES ET DE L'ACTIVITÉ; ou
- c) d'une indication unique spécifiant le DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ; suivie, en option, par une ou des indications consécutives spécifiant des DONNÉES et acheminant chacune une PhSDU; et terminée par une indication unique spécifiant la FIN DE L'ACTIVITÉ.

Cette dernière séquence indique une réception incomplète ou incorrecte. La détection d'une erreur dans la séquence de PhPDU reçues, ou dans le processus de réception des PhE, doit désactiver des indications ultérieures de DONNÉES PH avec un paramètre de classe spécifiant les DONNÉES, la FIN DES DONNÉES ou la FIN DES DONNÉES ET DE L'ACTIVITÉ jusqu'à ce que la fin de la période d'activité courante et le début d'une période d'activité suivante aient été

rapportés par des indications de DONNÉES PH spécifiant la FIN DE L'ACTIVITÉ et le DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ, respectivement.

5.3 Type 2: Services exigés

5.3.1 Généralités

Le paragraphe 5.3 définit les primitives de services physiques (PhS) requises et les contraintes liées à leur utilisation.

Il n'est pas nécessaire d'exposer l'interface DLL-PhL lors de la mise en œuvre d'une quelconque variante de PhL. Cette interface peut être interne au nœud et peut être mise en œuvre comme interne à un dispositif à semiconducteur. Cependant, s'il est revendiqué une conformité à l'interface DLL-PhL, celle-ci doit satisfaire aux exigences de 5.3.

5.3.2 Symboles M

Les unités de données de l'interface PhL, présentes à l'interface DLL-PhL, doivent être des symboles M, comme présenté dans le Tableau 1. Les symboles M_ND doivent être utilisés pour créer des modèles de données uniques utilisés pour les délimiteurs de début et de fin.

Tableau 1 – Règles de codage des données

Bits de données (nom commun)	Représentation de symbole M
données "zéro"	M_0 ou {0}
données "un"	M_1 ou {1}
"non_data+" (non_données+)	M_ND+ ou {+}
"non_data-" (non_données-)	M_ND- ou {-}

5.3.3 Indication de VERROUILLAGE DE Ph

L'indication de VERROUILLAGE DE PH doit informer s'il y a verrouillage des données ou synchronisation du symbole Ph par les sous-couches MDS. Les états valides pour l'indication de VERROUILLAGE PH doivent être "vrai" et "faux". L'indication de VERROUILLAGE DE PH doit être "vrai" lorsque des symboles Ph valides sont présents à l'interface MDS-MAU et lorsque la synchronisation d'interface DLL-PhL des symboles M est conforme aux exigences de précision d'horloge. Cette indication doit être "faux" entre trames (lorsque aucun symbole Ph n'est présent sur le support) ou lorsque la synchronisation des données est perdue ou que la temporisation n'est pas conforme aux exigences de précision d'horloge. L'indication de VERROUILLAGE DE PH doit être "vrai" avant le commencement du délimiteur de début.

5.3.4 Indication de TRAME PH

L'indication de TRAME PH doit fournir une information de trame de données valide en provenance de la MAU. Les états valides pour l'indication de TRAME PH doivent être "vrai" et "faux". L'indication de TRAME PH doit être "vrai" sur indication de VERROUILLAGE DE PH = "vrai" et sur réception du premier délimiteur de début valide. L'indication de TRAME PH doit être "faux" à la réception du symbole M_ND suivant (à la suite du délimiteur de début) ou sur indication de VERROUILLAGE DE PH = "faux".

NOTE Ce signal fournit une synchronisation des octets vers la DLL.

5.3.5 Indication de PORTEUSE Ph

L'indication de PORTEUSE PH doit représenter la présence d'une porteuse de signal sur le support. L'indication de PORTEUSE PH doit être "vrai" si RXCARRIER (porteuse de réception) à l'interface MDS-MAU était à l'état "vrai" au cours de l'une des 4 dernières durées de symbole M et elle doit être "faux" dans le cas contraire.

5.3.6 Indication de DONNÉES PH

L'indication de DONNÉES PH doit représenter les symboles M définis dans le Tableau 1. Les symboles valides doivent être M_0, M_1, M_ND+ ou M_ND- (ou des symboles M). L'indication de DONNÉES PH doit représenter les symboles M tels que décodés à partir de la MAU si l'indication de VERROUILLAGE DE PH est "vrai".

5.3.7 Indication d'ÉTAT PH

L'indication d'ÉTAT PH doit représenter l'état de la trame qui a été reçue de la MAU, comme illustré au Tableau 2. Les symboles valides sont "Normal", "Abandon" et "Invalide". L'indication d'ÉTAT PH doit être "Normal" après réception d'une trame (Indication de TRAME PH = "vrai") constituée d'un délimiteur de début, de données codées Manchester valides (pas de symboles M_ND) et d'un délimiteur de fin. L'indication d'ÉTAT PH doit être "Abandon" après réception d'une trame (Indication de TRAME PH = "vrai") constituée d'un délimiteur de début, de données codées Manchester valides et d'un second délimiteur de fin. L'indication d'ÉTAT PH doit être "Invalide" après réception d'une trame (Indication de TRAME PH = "vrai") constituée d'un délimiteur de début et détection de tout symbole M_ND qui ne faisait pas partie d'un délimiteur de début ou de fin.

Tableau 2 – Tableau de vérité de l'indication d'ÉTAT PH

Indication d'ÉTAT PH	Indication de TRAME PH	Délimiteurs de début dans une trame unique	Détection de délimiteur de fin	Toute violation de code Manchester non-délimiteur
Normal	Vrai	1	Vrai	Faux
Abandon	Vrai	2	Sans effet	Faux
Invalide	Vrai	1	Sans effet	Vrai

5.3.8 Demande de DONNÉES PH

La demande de DONNÉES PH doit représenter les symboles M à émettre. Les symboles valides doivent être M_0, M_1, M_ND+ ou M_ND- comme présenté dans le Tableau 1. La demande de DONNÉES PH doit indiquer M_0 lorsqu'il n'y a aucune donnée à émettre (et demande de TRAME PH = "Faux").

5.3.9 Demande de TRAME PH

La demande de TRAME PH doit être "vrai" lorsque la demande de DONNÉES PH représente des symboles M à coder en symboles Ph appropriés et à transférer à la MAU; elle doit être "faux" lorsqu'il n'y a pas de symboles M valides à transférer à la MAU.

5.3.10 Indication de BAVARDAGE PH

L'indication de BAVARDAGE PH doit être "vrai" si l'interface MDS-MAU détecte une trame unique (indication de TRAME PH = "vrai") supérieure ou égale à 1 024 octets (8 192 symboles M) et que la demande de TYPE DE BAVARDAGE PH est "vrai". L'indication de BAVARDAGE PH doit être "vrai" si l'interface MDS-MAU détecte une trame unique (indication de TRAME PH = "vrai") supérieure ou égale à 2 048 octets (16 384 symboles M) et que la demande de TYPE DE BAVARDAGE PH est "faux". Dans le cas contraire, l'indication de BAVARDAGE PH doit être "faux". Si l'indication de BAVARDAGE PH devient "vrai", elle doit être verrouillée dans cet état par le MDS jusqu'à ce que la demande de LIBÉRATION DE BAVARDAGE PH soit "vrai" ou que le nœud soit mis hors tension puis de nouveau sous tension ou que le nœud soit initialisé.

5.3.11 Demande de LIBÉRATION DE BAVARDAGE PH

La demande de LIBÉRATION DE BAVARDAGE PH (facultative) doit être "faux" dans des conditions normales de fonctionnement et doit être "vrai" pour réinitialiser une indication de BAVARDAGE PH qui a été verrouillée à l'état "vrai".

5.3.12 Demande de TYPE DE BAVARDAGE PH

Une demande de TYPE DE BAVARDAGE PH doit être "vrai" si le nœud est l'origine des données d'émission ("NŒUD") et doit être "faux" si le nœud réémet des données reçues d'un autre nœud (lorsqu'il agit par exemple comme "RÉPÉTEUR" de données provenant d'un autre nœud; voir l'Annexe G).

Les combinaisons d'indication de BAVARDAGE PH et de demande de TYPE DE BAVARDAGE PH doivent être telles que présentées dans le Tableau 3.

Tableau 3 – Indications de bavardage

Indication de BAVARDAGE PH	Demande de TYPE DE BAVARDAGE PH	Longueur de trame
Vrai	Vrai = "NŒUD"	$\geq 1\,024$ octets
Vrai	Faux = "RÉPÉTEUR"	$\geq 2\,048$ octets
Faux	Vrai = "NŒUD"	$< 1\,024$ octets
Faux	Faux = "RÉPÉTEUR"	$< 2\,048$ octets

5.4 Type 3: Services exigés

5.4.1 Transmission synchrone

Les services définis pour le Type 1 doivent être utilisés (voir 5.2).

5.4.2 Transmission asynchrone

5.4.2.1 Services PhS d'émission et de réception

Le service de données pour émission asynchrone (Ph-ASYN-DATA) comprend deux primitives de service. Une primitive de demande est utilisée pour une demande de service par la DLE; une primitive d'indication est utilisée pour indiquer une réception vers la DLE. Les primitives correspondantes portent les désignations suivantes:

Ph-ASYN-DATA request (demande de données d'émission asynchrones Ph)

Ph-ASYN-DATA indication (indication de données asynchrones Ph)

La relation temporelle entre primitives est présentée en Figure 3.

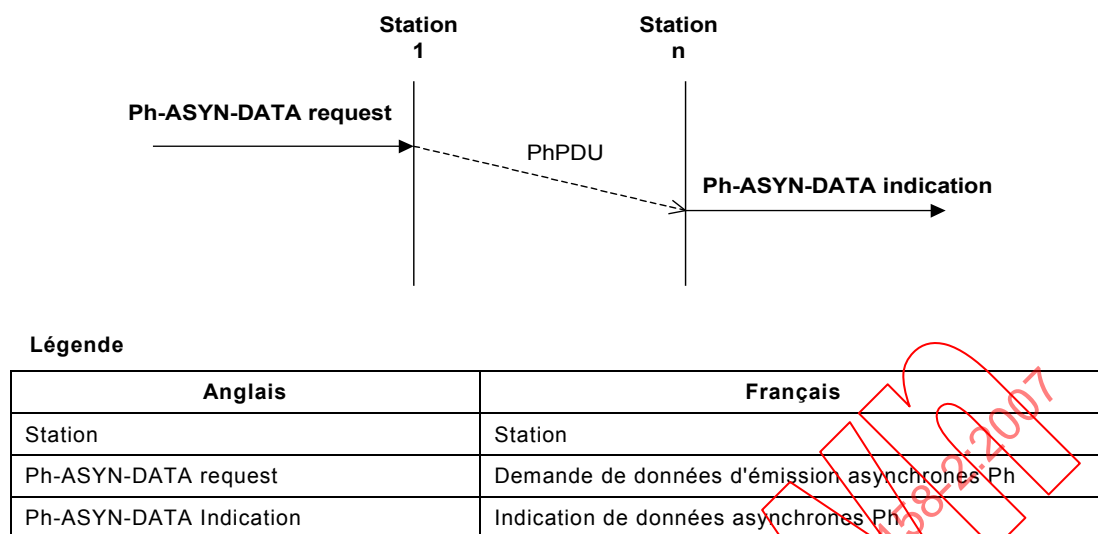


Figure 3 – Service de données pour transmission asynchrone

5.4.2.2 Spécification détaillée du service et interaction

Le présent paragraphe donne une description détaillée des primitives de service et des paramètres correspondants, de manière abstraite. Les paramètres contiennent les données utilisateur PhS échangées au niveau de l'interface PhL-DLL avec une granularité d'un bit.

Paramètres des primitives:

Demande de Ph-ASYN-DATA (DL_symbol: symbole DL)

Le paramètre DL_symbol doit prendre l'une des valeurs suivantes qui spécifient la composante PhID de PhIDU. Ces valeurs doivent être:

- a) ZERO qui correspond à un "0" binaire;
- b) UN qui correspond à un "1" binaire;
- c) SILENCE qui désactive l'émetteur lorsqu'aucun symbole DL n'est à transmettre.

La primitive de demande Ph-ASYN-DATA est transmise de la DLE à la PhE afin de demander que le symbole indiqué soit envoyé au support de bus de terrain.

La réception de cette primitive doit engendrer une tentative de codage et d'émission du symbole DL par la PhE.

La demande de Ph-ASYN-DATA est une primitive qui ne doit être générée qu'une fois par période de symbole DL (t_{BIT}). La PhE peut confirmer cette primitive au moyen d'une primitive de confirmation définie localement.

Indication de Ph-ASYN-DATA (DL_symbol)

Le paramètre DL_symbol doit prendre l'une des valeurs suivantes:

- a) ZERO qui correspond à un "0" binaire;
- b) UN qui correspond à un "1" binaire.

La primitive d'indication de Ph-ASYN-DATA est transmise de la PhE à la DLE pour indiquer qu'un symbole DL a été reçu du support de bus de terrain. L'effet de la réception de cette primitive par la DLE n'est pas spécifié.

L'indication de Ph-ASYN-DATA est une primitive qui ne doit être générée qu'une fois par période de symbole DL reçue (t_{BIT}).

5.5 Type 4: Services exigés

5.5.1 Généralités

Les PhIDU doivent être transférées entre la DLL et la PhL conformément aux exigences de l'ISO 7498.

5.5.2 Primitives du PhS

5.5.2.1 Généralités

La granularité d'émission dans le protocole de bus de terrain est d'un octet. Il s'agit de la granularité des données utilisateur PhS échangées au niveau de l'interface PhL-DLL.

5.5.2.2 Services PhS d'émission et de réception

Le PhS doit fournir les primitives de service suivantes pour l'émission et la réception:

Demande de DONNÉES PH (classe, données)

Indication de DONNÉES PH (classe, données, état)

Confirmation de DONNÉES PH (état)

où

classe – spécifie la composante "informations de commande d'interface de couche physique" (PhICI) de l'unité de données d'interface de couche physique (PhIDU).

Pour une demande de DONNÉES PH, les valeurs possibles sont:

DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ-11 – la PhE doit entamer la transmission en émettant le paramètre de données correspondant, comme un "Caractère d'adresse". La PhE doit effectuer cette opération immédiatement, bien qu'il faille attendre que la valeur du compteur de repos des PhE ait atteint 11. Cette classe s'applique uniquement au mode semi-duplex.

DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ-2 – la PhE doit activer son pilote et lancer la transmission en émettant le paramètre de données correspondant, comme un "Caractère d'adresse". La PhE doit effectuer cette opération immédiatement, bien qu'il faille attendre que la valeur du module 10 du compteur de repos des PhE ait atteint 2, en cas de mode semi-duplex.

DONNÉES – la PhE doit émettre le paramètre de données correspondant, comme un "Caractère de données".

FIN D'ACTIVITÉ – la PhE doit attendre la fin de l'émission de toutes les données précédemment reçues de la DLE puis ensuite mettre fin à l'émission. Le paramètre de données correspondant ne doit pas être émis.

Pour une indication de DONNÉES PH, les valeurs possibles sont:

DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ – la PhE a reçu un "Caractère d'adresse", dont la valeur est indiquée dans le paramètre de données correspondant. Le paramètre d'état correspondant spécifie le succès ou la raison de l'échec, détectée localement.

DONNÉES – la PhE a reçu un "Caractère de données", dont la valeur est indiquée dans le paramètre de données correspondant. Le paramètre d'état correspondant spécifie le succès ou la raison de l'échec, détectée localement.

LIAISON – AU REPOS – la PhE a détecté que le niveau du signal sur la liaison a été "Au repos" pendant 30, 35, 40, 50, 60... périodes binaires. Le paramètre d'état correspondant indique si la liaison a été au repos pendant 30, 35 ou 40 périodes binaires ou plus. Cette classe s'applique uniquement au mode semi-duplex.

données – spécifie la composante de données d'interface Ph (PhID) de la PhIDU. Elle est constituée d'un octet de données utilisateur Ph à émettre (demande de DONNÉES PH) ou d'un octet de données utilisateur Ph qui a été reçu (indication de DONNÉES PH).

état – spécifie soit le succès soit la raison de l'échec détectée localement ou indique si l'indication LIAISON-AU REPOS correspondante est "30", "35", "40 ou plus" périodes binaires de repos après activité de la liaison.

La primitive de confirmation de DONNÉES PH fournit le retour d'informations nécessaire pour permettre à la DLE de rendre compte des échecs tels qu'un court-circuit de la liaison ou du bruit entraînant des erreurs de verrouillage de trame à l'utilisateur DLS; elle fournit également les indications de temps physique critique nécessaires pour éviter que la DLE ne démarre une seconde émission avant que la première ne soit terminée.

5.5.3 Emission de données utilisateur Ph

5.5.3.1 Généralités

Lorsqu'une DLE a une DLPDU à émettre et que le système d'accès à la liaison donne à cette DLE le droit d'émettre, il convient que la DLE envoie la DLPDU, y compris une FCS concaténée. Le résultat d'une séquence de demande de DONNÉES PH est le suivant:

- a) En mode semi-duplex, il convient que la première demande spécifie le DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ 11 si la DLPDU à émettre est un acquittement ou une DLPDU de réponse immédiate ou si l'émission est une réémission immédiate d'une DLPDU confirmée ou non confirmée. Il convient que la première demande spécifie "DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ 2" si l'émission d'une DLPDU confirmée ou non confirmée à partir de la file d'attente a commencé. En mode duplex intégral, il convient que la première demande spécifie toujours "DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ 2".
- b) Il convient que la première demande soit suivie de demandes consécutives spécifiant des DONNÉES et se terminant par une simple demande indiquant la FIN DE L'ACTIVITÉ.

La PhE signale l'achèvement de chaque demande de DONNÉES PH et indique qu'elle est prête à accepter une nouvelle demande de DONNÉES PH au moyen d'une primitive de confirmation de DONNÉES PH. Le paramètre d'état de la primitive de confirmation de DONNÉES PH achemine le résultat, succès ou échec, de la demande de DONNÉES PH correspondante.

5.5.3.2 Réception de données utilisateur Ph

La PhE rend compte d'une émission reçue avec des indications de DONNÉES PH qui doivent être constituées

- soit d'une indication unique spécifiant le DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ,
- soit d'une indication unique spécifiant le DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ; suivie dans ce cas par des indications consécutives spécifiant les DONNÉES.

Chaque indication dispose d'un paramètre d'état correspondant, spécifiant le succès de la réception des données associées ou la raison de l'échec, détectée localement.

5.6 Type 6: *Ce paragraphe a été supprimé*

NOTE Dans la présente édition, ce paragraphe est destiné à maintenir la numérotation des articles et éviter la rupture avec des normes nationales et multinationales ainsi que des documents de consortiums existants qui renvoient à l'édition précédente.

5.7 Type 8: Services exigés

5.7.1 Généralités

Les PhIDU sont échangées entre la DLL (DLL) et la PhL (PhL). Pour le transfert de données, l'interface DL-Ph (interface MAC-MIS) doit mettre à disposition les primitives de service suivantes:

Demande de DONNÉES PH

Confirmation de DONNÉES PH

Indication de DONNÉES PH

5.7.2 Primitives du PhS

5.7.2.1 Demande de DONNÉES PH (PhICI, PhIDU)

Cette primitive de service est utilisée pour transférer une unité de données de la sous-couche MAC à MIS. Le paramètre **PhICI** détermine les composantes d'interface de la PhIDU à émettre et peut contenir les valeurs suivantes:

ID_transfer (transfert d'Identifiant)

Le commencement d'une séquence de données pour la transmission de données d'identification/commande est demandé.

data_transfer (transfert de données)

Le commencement d'une séquence de données pour la transmission de données utilisateur est demandé.

start_ID_cycle (démarrer cycle d'identification)

Le commencement d'un cycle d'identification pour la transmission de données d'identification/commande est demandé par le maître.

start_data_cycle (démarrer cycle de données)

Le commencement d'un cycle de données pour la transmission de données utilisateur est demandé par le maître.

user_data (données utilisateur)

L'émission d'une unité de données utilisateur, définie par le paramètre PhIDU (données d'identification/commande ou données utilisateur) est demandée.

CRC_data (données CRC)

L'émission d'une unité de données de la somme de contrôle définie par le paramètre PhIDU est demandée.

CRC_status (état CRC)

L'émission d'une unité de données d'état de la somme de contrôle définie par le paramètre PhIDU est demandée.

user_data_idle (données utilisateur au repos)

L'émission des messages user_data_idle est demandée.

CRC_data_idle (données CRC au repos)

L'émission des messages CRC_data_idle est demandée.

CRC_status_idle (état CRC au repos)

L'émission des messages CRC_status_idle est demandée.

NOTE Les paramètres start_data_cycle et start_ID_cycle sont pris en charge par la sous-couche MAC d'un maître uniquement.

Le paramètre **PhIDU** définit la composante de données de l'unité de données d'interface à émettre. Elle est constituée d'un bit, uniquement si PhICI = user_data, CRC_data ou CRC_status.

5.7.2.2 Confirmation de DONNÉES PH (état)

Cette primitive de service constitue l'acquiescement d'une primitive de demande de DONNÉES PH et elle est utilisée pour la synchronisation. Le paramètre d'état indique le succès ou l'échec de l'exécution de la primitive de demande de DONNÉES PH correspondante.

5.7.2.3 Indication de DONNÉES PH (PhICI, PhIDU)

Cette primitive de service est utilisée pour transférer une unité de données de la MIS à la sous-couche MAC. Le paramètre **PhICI** définit la composante Interface de la PhIDU à émettre et peut prendre les valeurs suivantes:

ID_transfer

Indique le commencement d'une séquence de données pour la transmission de données d'identification/commande.

data_transfer

Indique le commencement d'une séquence de données pour la transmission de données utilisateur.

user_data

Indique la réception correcte d'une unité de données pour l'émission des données utilisateur (données d'identification/commande ou données utilisateur) définie par le paramètre PhIDU.

CRC_data

Indique la réception correcte d'une unité de données pour émission de la somme de contrôle définie par le paramètre PhIDU.

CRC_status

Indique la réception correcte de l'unité de données pour émission de l'état de la somme de contrôle défini par le paramètre PhIDU.

user_data_idle

Indique la réception de messages user_data_idle.

CRC_data_idle

Indique la réception des messages CRC_data_idle.

CRC_status_idle

Indique la réception des messages CRC_status_idle.

Le paramètre **PhIDU** définit les composantes de données de l'unité de données d'interface reçue. Il est constitué d'un bit.

5.7.3 Aperçu des interactions

NOTE Pour le transfert de données via l'interface DL-Ph, une distinction est faite entre la séquence de données (émission des données utilisateur ou d'identification) et la séquence de contrôle (émission de données de la somme de contrôle).

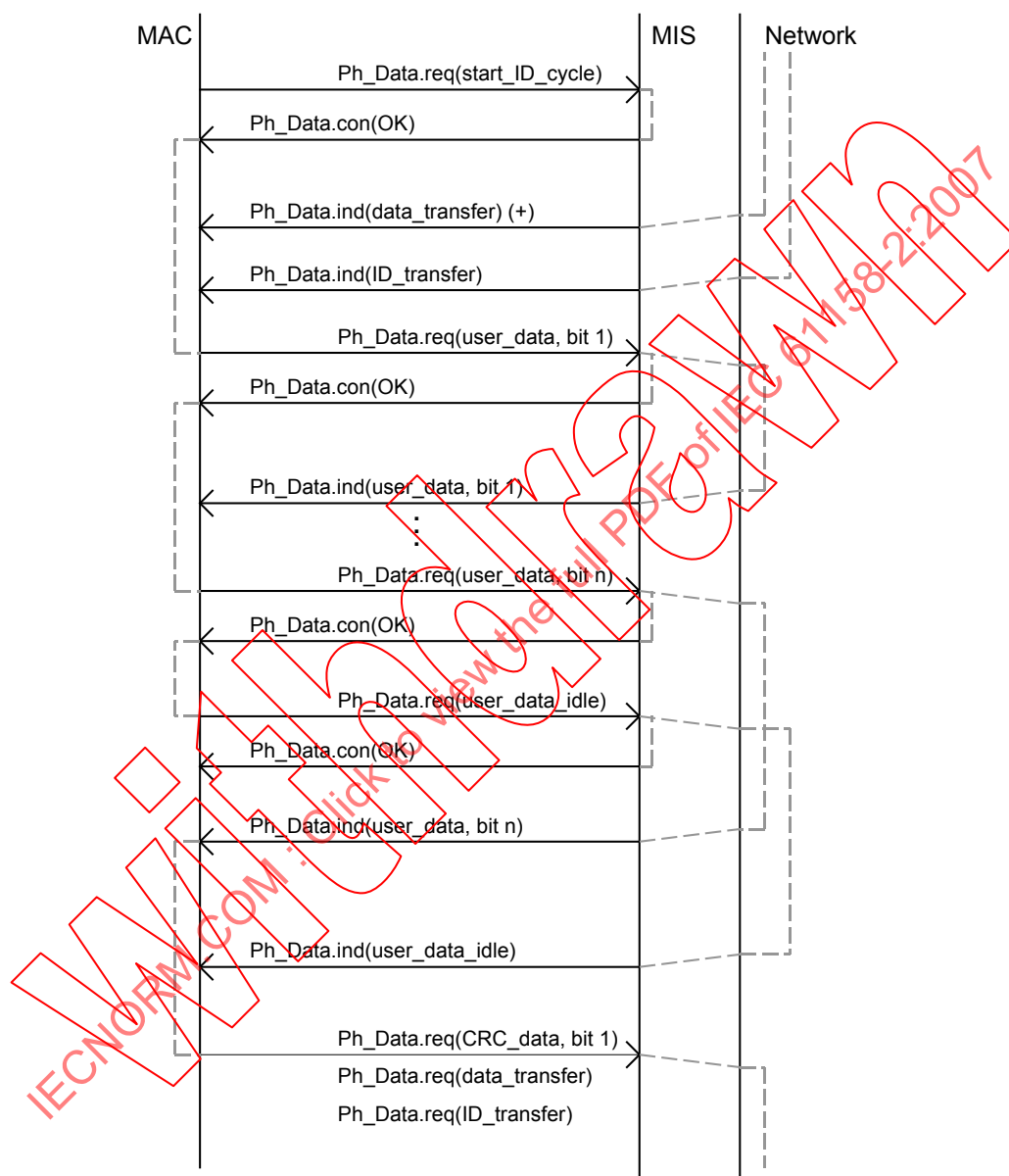
Les points ci-après s'appliquent de la Figure 4 à la Figure 7.

- Si une séquence de données d'un cycle de données est suivie par une séquence de données d'un cycle d'identification, les interactions indiquées par (+) sont omises pour un cycle d'identification.
- Si une séquence de données d'un cycle d'identification est suivie par une séquence de données d'un cycle de données, les interactions indiquées par (+) sont omises pour un cycle de données.

5.7.3.1 Séquence de données

5.7.3.1.1 Maître

La Figure 4 et la Figure 5 présentent les interactions pour une séquence de données (cycle d'identification et cycle de données) au niveau de l'interface DL-Ph d'un maître (carte contrôleur).

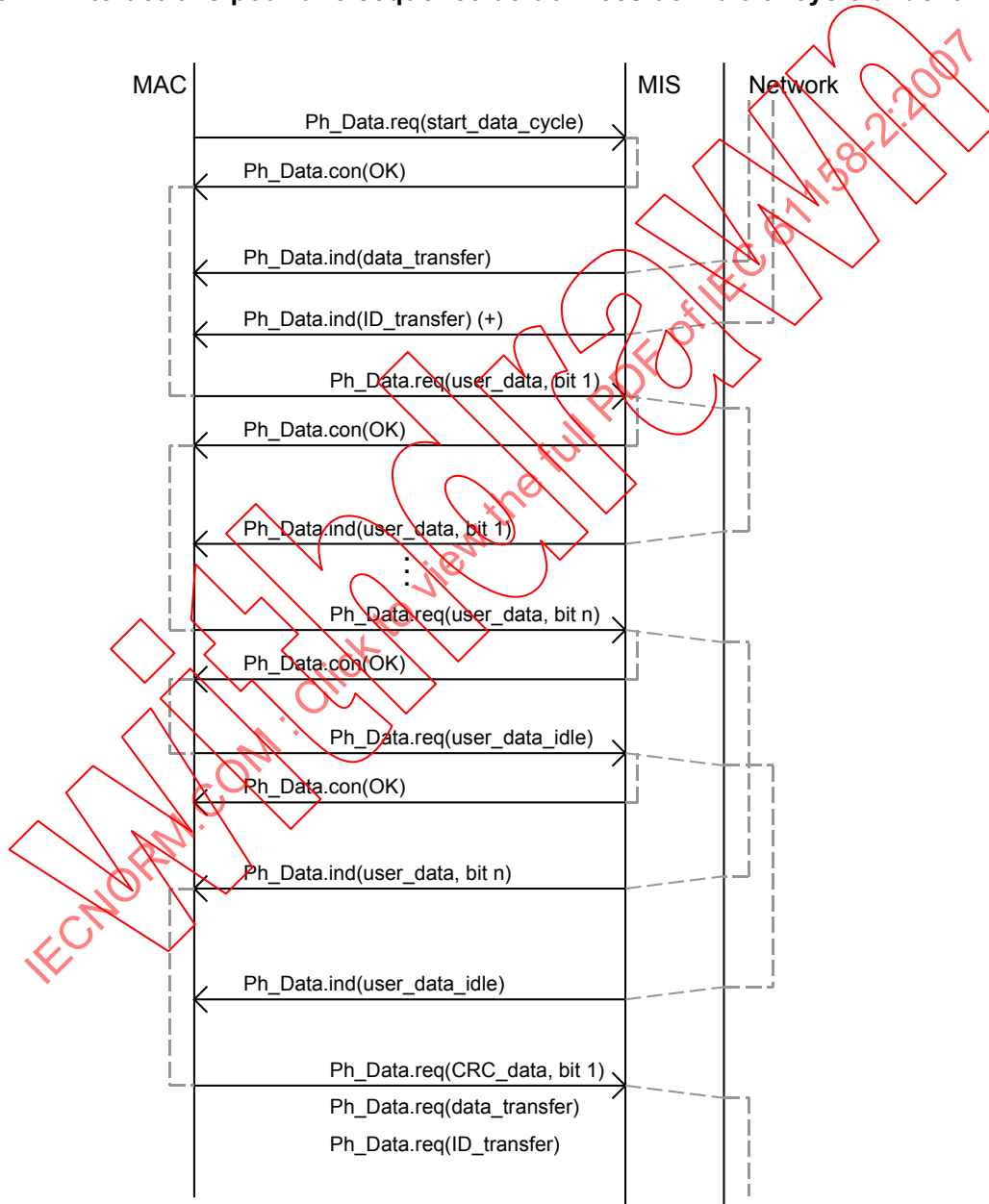


Légende

Anglais	Français
Ph_Data req(start ID cycle)	Demande de données Ph (Démarrer cycle d'identification)
Ph Data con(OK)	Confirmation de données Ph (OK)
Ph_Data ind(data_transfer) (+)	Indication de données Ph (transfert de données) (+)
Ph_Data ind(ID transfer)	Indication de données Ph (transfert d'identifiant)
Ph Data req(user data, bit 1)	Demande de données Ph (données utilisateur, bit 1)
Ph Data con (OK)	Confirmation de données Ph (OK)
Ph_Data ind(user_data, bit 1)	Indication de données Ph (données utilisateur, bit 1)

Anglais	Français
Ph Data req(user_data_idle)	Demande de données Ph (données utilisateur au repos)
Ph Data ind(user data, bit n)	Indication de données Ph (données utilisateur, bit n)
Ph Data ind(user data idle)	Indication de données Ph (données utilisateur au repos)
Ph Data req(CRC Data bit 1)	Demande de données Ph (données CRC, bit 1)
Ph Data req(Data transfer)	Demande de données Ph (transfert de données)
Ph_Data req(ID_Transfer)	Demande de données Ph (transfert d'identifiant)
Network	Réseau

Figure 4 – Interactions pour une séquence de données de maître: cycle d'identification



Légende

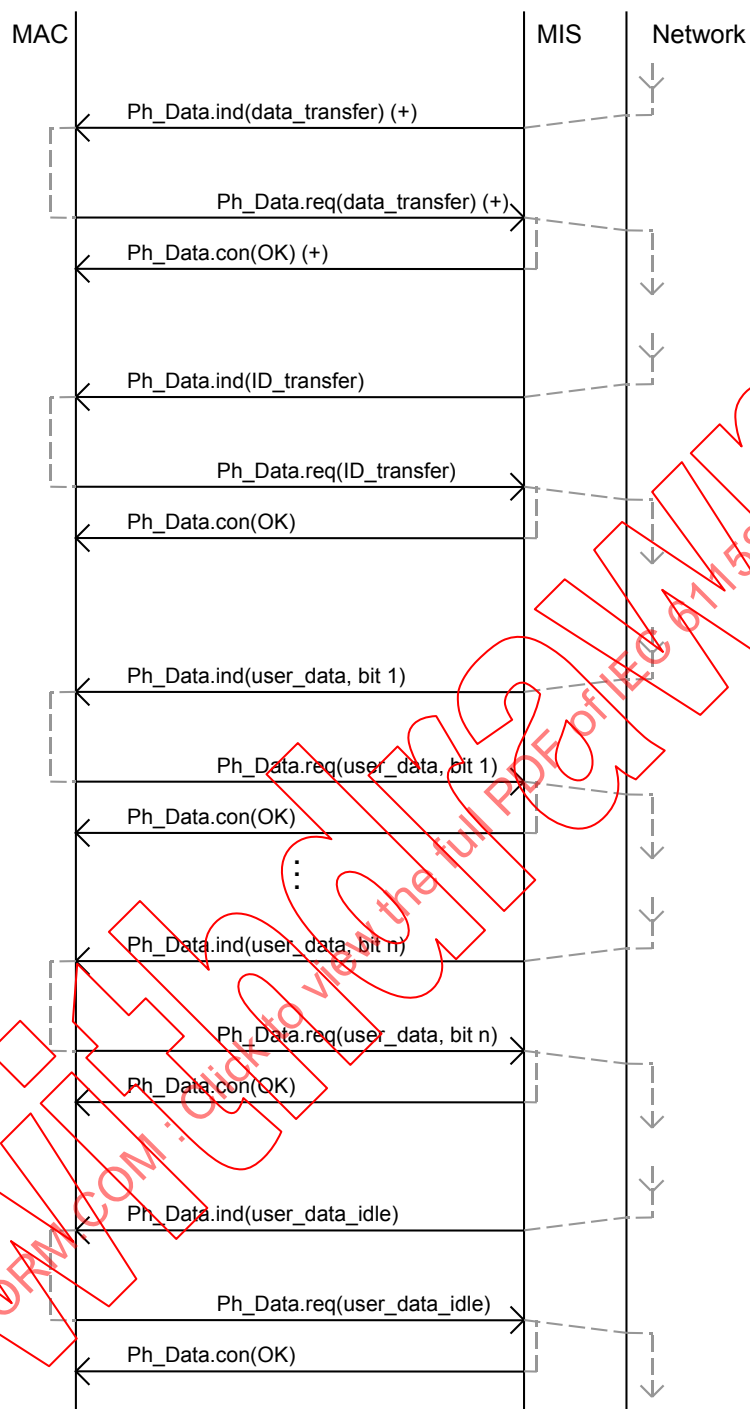
Anglais	Français
Network	Réseau
Ph Data req(start ID cycle)	Demande de données Ph (Démarrer cycle d'identification)

Anglais	Français
Ph Data con(OK)	Confirmation de données Ph (OK)
Ph_Data ind(data_transfer)	Indication de données Ph (transfert de données)
Ph_Data ind(ID transfer) (+)	Indication de données Ph (transfert d'identifiant)(+)
Ph Data req(user data, bit 1)	Demande de données Ph (données utilisateur, bit 1)
Ph_Data ind(user_data, bit 1)	Indication de données Ph (données utilisateur, bit 1)
Ph Data req(user data, bit n)	Demande de données Ph (données utilisateur, bit n)
Ph Data req(user_data_idle)	Demande de données Ph (données utilisateur au repos)
Ph Data ind(user data, bit n)	Indication de données Ph (données utilisateur, bit n)
Ph Data ind(user data idle)	Indication de données Ph (données utilisateur au repos)
Ph Data req(CRC Data bit 1)	Demande de données Ph (données CRC, bit 1)
Ph Data req(Data transfer)	Demande de données Ph (transfert de données)
Ph_Data req(ID_Transfer)	Demande de données Ph (transfert d'identifiant)

Figure 5 – Interactions pour une séquence de données de maître: cycle de données

5.7.3.1.2 Esclave

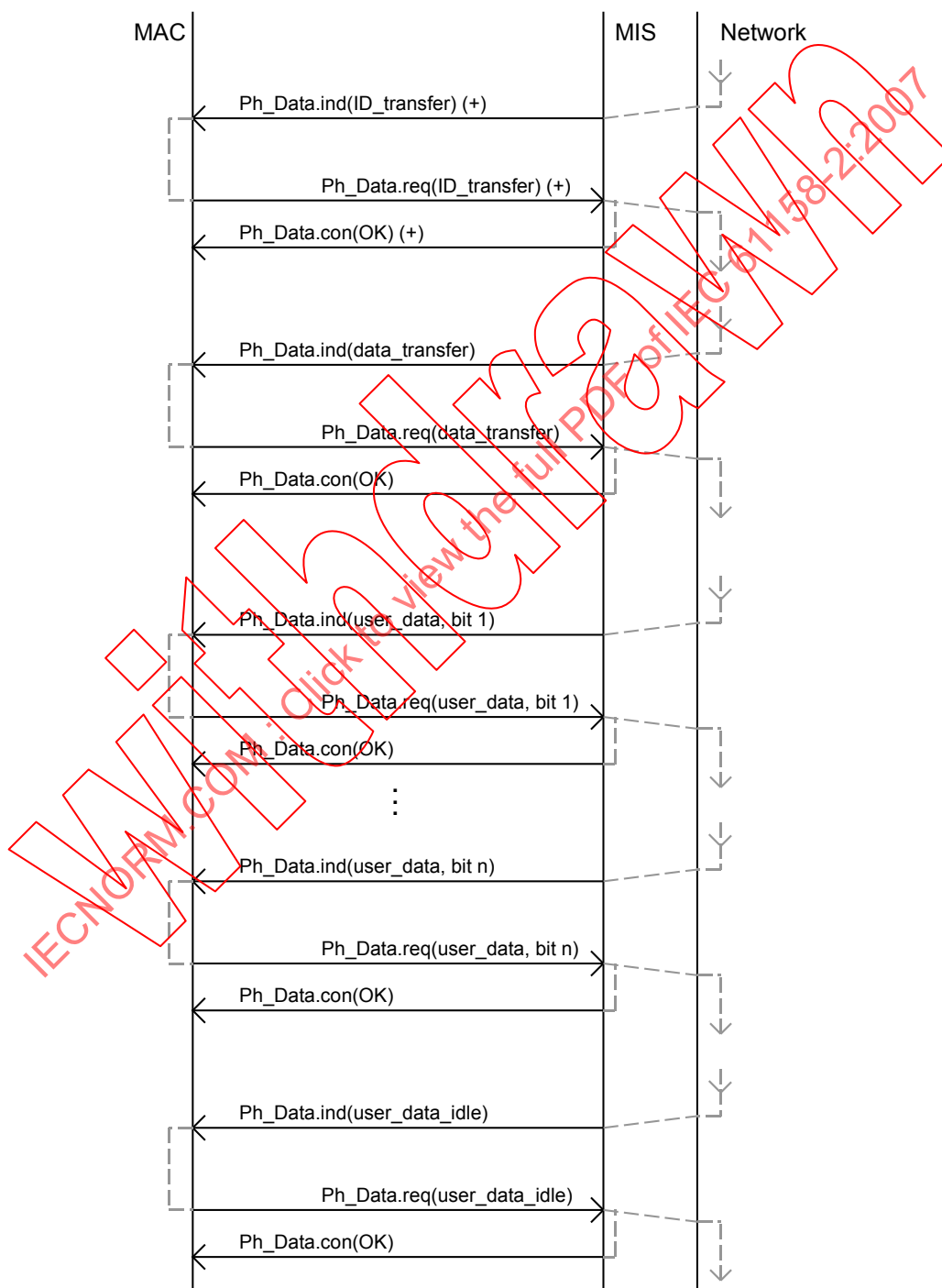
La Figure 6 et la Figure 7 présentent les interactions pour une séquence de données (cycle d'identification et cycle de données) au niveau de l'interface DL-Ph d'un esclave (dispositif de bus distant, dispositif de bus local ou coupleur de bus).



Légende

Anglais	Français
Network	Réseau
Ph_Data ind(data_transfer) (+)	Indication de données Ph (transfert de données) (+)
Ph_Data req(data_transfer) (+)	Demande de données Ph (transfert de données) (+)
Ph Data con(OK) (+)	Confirmation de données Ph (OK) (+)
Ph_Data ind(ID_transfer)	Indication de données Ph (transfert d'identifiant)
Ph_Data req(ID_Transfer)	Demande de données Ph (transfert d'identifiant)
Ph_Data ind(user_data, bit 1)	Indication de données Ph (données utilisateur, bit 1)
Ph Data req(user data, bit 1)	Demande de données Ph (données utilisateur, bit 1)

Anglais	Français
Ph_Data ind(user_data, bit n)	Indication de données Ph (données utilisateur, bit n)
Ph_Data req(user_data, bit n)	Demande de données Ph (données utilisateur, bit n)
Ph_Data ind(user_data idle)	Indication de données Ph (données utilisateur au repos)
Ph_Data req(user_data idle)	Demande de données Ph (données utilisateur au repos)
Ph_Data con(OK)	Confirmation de données Ph (OK)

Figure 6 – Interactions pour une séquence de données d'esclave: cycle d'identification

Légende

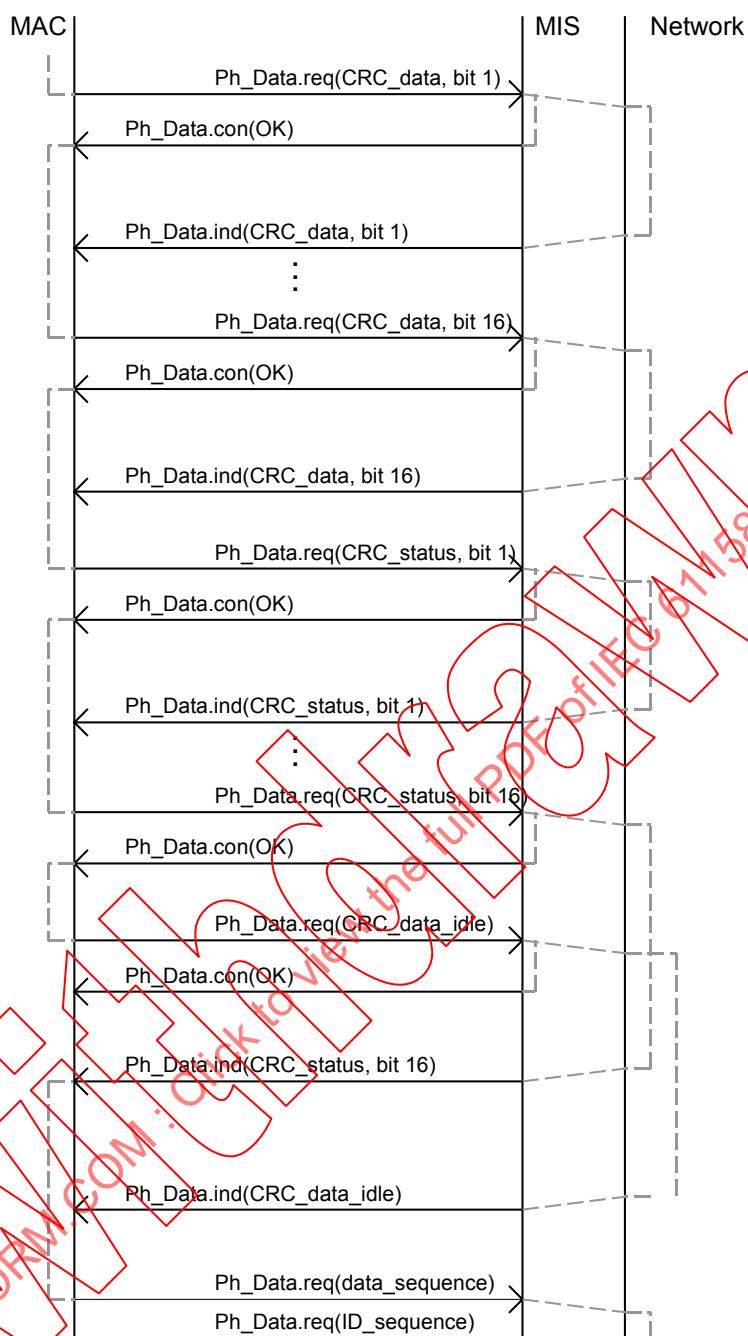
Anglais	Français
Network	Réseau
Ph_Data ind(ID_transfer) (+)	Indication de données Ph (transfert d'identifiant)(+)
Ph_Data req(ID_transfer) (+)	Demande de données Ph (transfert d'identifiant) (+)
Ph_Data con(OK) (+)	Confirmation de données Ph (OK) (+)
Ph_Data ind(data_transfer)	Indication de données Ph (transfert de données)
Ph_Data req(data_transfer)	Demande de données Ph (transfert de données)
Ph_Data ind(user_data, bit 1)	Indication de données Ph (données utilisateur, bit 1)
Ph_Data req(user_data, bit 1)	Demande de données Ph (données utilisateur, bit 1)
Ph_Data ind(user_data, bit n)	Indication de données Ph (données utilisateur, bit n)
Ph_Data req(user_data, bit n)	Demande de données Ph (données utilisateur, bit n)
Ph_Data ind(user_data idle)	Indication de données Ph (données utilisateur au repos)
Ph_Data req(user_data idle)	Demande de données Ph (données utilisateur au repos)
Ph_Data con(OK)	Confirmation de données Ph (OK)

Figure 7 – Interactions pour une séquence de données d'esclave: cycle de données

5.7.3.2 Séquence de contrôle

5.7.3.2.1 Maître

La Figure 8 présente les interactions pour une séquence de contrôle au niveau de l'interface DL-Ph d'un maître.

**Légende**

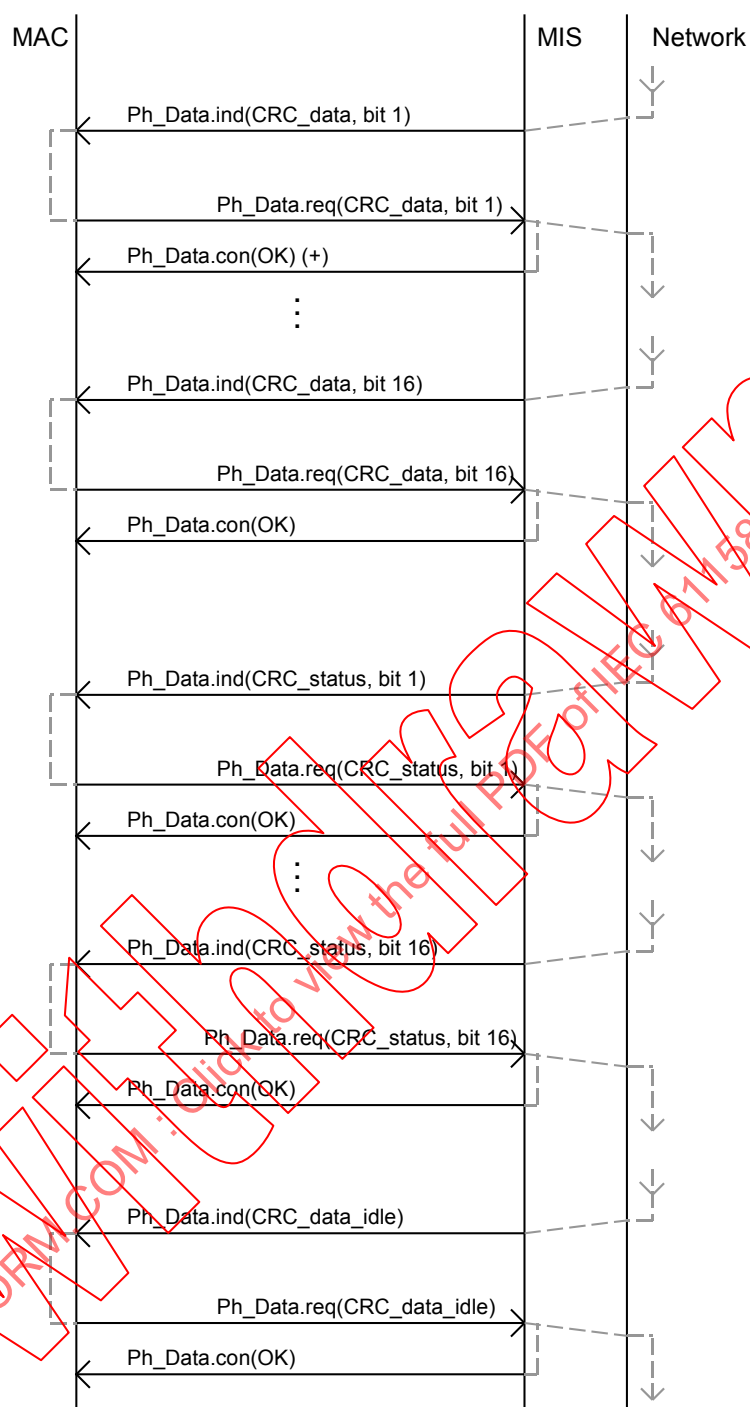
Anglais	Français
Network	Réseau
Ph_Data req(CRC data bit1)	Demande de données Ph (données CRC, bit 1)
Ph Data con(OK)	Confirmation de données Ph (OK)
Ph_Data ind(CRC data bit 1)	Indication de données Ph (données CRC, bit 1)
Ph_Data req(CRC data bit 16)	Demande de données Ph (données CRC, bit 16)
Ph_Data ind(CRC data, bit 16)	Indication de données Ph (données CRC, bit 16)
Ph Data req(CRC status, bit 1)	Demande de données Ph (état CRC, bit 1)
Ph_Data ind(CRC status, bit 1)	Indication de données Ph (état CRC, bit 1)
Ph Data req(CRC_status, bit 16)	Demande de données Ph (état CRC, bit 16)

Anglais	Français
Ph Data req(CRC data idle)	Demande de données Ph (données CRC au repos)
Ph Data con(OK)	Confirmation de données Ph (OK)
Ph Data ind(CRC status, bit 16)	Indication de données Ph (état CRC, bit 16)
Ph Data ind(CRC data idle)	Indication de données Ph (données CRC au repos)
Ph Data req(data_sequence)	Demande de données Ph (séquence de données)
Ph Data req(ID sequence)	Demande de données Ph (séquence d'identification)

Figure 8 – Interactions pour une séquence de contrôle de maître

5.7.3.3 Esclave

La Figure 9 présente les interactions pour une séquence de contrôle au niveau de l'interface DL-Ph d'un esclave.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Network	Réseau
Ph_Data ind(CRC data bit1)	Indication de données Ph (données CRC, bit 1)
Ph_Data req(CRC data bit 1)	Demande de données Ph (données CRC, bit 1)
Ph Data con(OK) (+)	Confirmation de données Ph (OK) (+)
Ph_Data ind(CRC data, bit 16)	Indication de données Ph (données CRC, bit 16)
Ph Data req(CRC status, bit 16)	Demande de données Ph (état CRC, bit 16)
Ph_Data ind(CRC status, bit 16)	Indication de données Ph (état CRC, bit 16)
Ph Data req(CRC_status, bit 16)	Demande de données Ph (état CRC, bit 16)

Anglais	Français
Ph Data ind(CRC data idle)	Indication de données Ph (données CRC au repos)
Ph Data req(CRC data idle)	Demande de données Ph (données CRC au repos)

Figure 9 – Interactions pour une séquence de contrôle d'esclave

5.8 Type 12: Services exigés

5.8.1 Primitives du PhS

5.8.1.1 Généralités

La granularité des données utilisateur PhS échangées au niveau de l'interface PhL-DLL est d'un octet.

5.8.1.2 Indication des CARACTÉRISTIQUES Ph

Le PhS doit fournir la primitive de service suivante afin de rendre compte des caractéristiques essentielles du PhS (qui peuvent être utilisées dans les activités d'émission, de réception et de planification de la DLL):

- Indication des CARACTÉRISTIQUES Ph (débit binaire minimal, surdébit de trame)

où

- le débit binaire minimal doit spécifier le débit minimal d'acheminement des données effectif, en bits par seconde, y compris d'éventuelles tolérances temporelles ;

NOTE 1 Une PhE ayant un débit binaire nominal de 100 Mbit/s $\pm$ 0,01 % indiquerait un débit binaire minimal de 99,99 Mbit/s.

- le surdébit de trame – doit spécifier le nombre maximal de périodes binaires (la période binaire étant l'inverse du débit binaire) utilisées dans toute émission de PhPDU qui n'acheminent pas directement de données (par exemple des PhPDU qui acheminent des délimiteurs de trames, des "silences" inter-trames, etc.).

NOTE 2 Si le surdébit de trame est F et si deux longueurs de messages DL sont L_1 et L_2 , le temps nécessaire à l'envoi d'un message de longueur $L_1 + F + L_2$ sera au moins égal au temps nécessaire pour envoyer deux messages immédiatement consécutifs de longueurs L_1 et L_2 .

5.8.1.3 Services PhS d'émission et de réception

Le PhS doit fournir les primitives de service suivantes pour l'émission et la réception:

- demande de DONNÉES PH (classe, données);
- indication de DONNÉES PH (classe, données);
- confirmation de DONNÉES PH (état).

où

- classe – doit spécifier la composante PhICI de la PhIDU.

Pour une demande de DONNÉES PH, les valeurs possibles doivent être:

- DÉMARRAGE DE TRAME – l'émission des PhPDU qui précèdent les données utilisateur Ph doit commencer;
- DONNÉES – la valeur d'octet unique du paramètre de données correspondant doit être transmise comme partie d'une émission continue correctement formée; et
- FIN DE TRAME – les PhPDU qui mettent fin aux données utilisateur Ph doivent être émises après le dernier octet précédent des données utilisateur Ph.

Pour une indication de DONNÉES PH, les valeurs possibles doivent être:

- DÉMARRAGE DE TRAME – la réception d'une émission apparente d'une ou de plusieurs PhE a commencé;
- DONNÉES – le paramètre de données correspondant a été reçu comme partie d'une réception continue correctement formée;
- FIN DE TRAME – la réception continue correctement formée des données utilisateur Ph en cours s'est terminée par la réception correcte des PHPDU;
- FIN AVEC ERREUR – la réception continue correctement formée des données utilisateur Ph en cours s'est interrompue avec réception formée incorrectement, impliquant une FIN DE TRAME AVEC ERREUR;
- données – doit spécifier la composante PhID de la PhIDU. Elle est constituée d'un octet de données utilisateur Ph à transmettre (demande de DONNÉES PH) ou qui a été reçu avec succès (indication de DONNÉES PH);
- état – doit spécifier soit le succès, soit la raison détectée localement qui a donné lieu à l'échec.

La primitive de confirmation de DONNÉES PH doit fournir le retour d'informations critiques de temporisation physique nécessaires pour empêcher la DLE de démarrer une seconde émission avant que la première ne soit terminée. La confirmation de DONNÉES PH finale d'une émission ne doit pas être initiée avant que la PhE n'ait terminé l'émission.

5.8.2 Notification de caractéristiques PhS

La PhE a la responsabilité d'informer la DLE des caractéristiques du PhS qui peuvent être importantes pour le fonctionnement de la DLE. La PhE doit fournir ces informations à chaque PhE en remettant une primitive unique d'indication de CARACTÉRISTIQUES Ph, au démarrage de la PhE.

5.8.3 Emission de données utilisateur Ph

La PhE doit déterminer la temporisation de toutes les émissions. Lorsqu'une DLE émet une séquence de PhSDU, la DLE doit envoyer la séquence de PhSDU en réalisant une séquence bien formée de demandes de DONNÉES PH, constituée d'une seule demande spécifiant le DÉMARRAGE DE TRAME, suivie de 72 à 1 535 demandes consécutives qui spécifient également les DONNÉES, chacune de ces demandes acheminant une PhSDU et se terminant par une demande unique spécifiant la FIN DE LA TRAME.

La PhE doit signaler l'achèvement de chaque demande de DONNÉES PH et indiquer qu'elle est prête à accepter une nouvelle demande de DONNÉES PH, en lançant une primitive de confirmation de DONNÉES PH; le paramètre d'état de la primitive de confirmation de DONNÉES PH doit acheminer le succès ou l'échec de la demande de DONNÉES PH correspondante. Une seconde demande de DONNÉES PH ne doit être lancée par la DLE qu'après que la PhE a émis la confirmation de DONNÉES PH correspondant à la première demande.

5.8.4 Réception de données utilisateur Ph

La PhE doit rendre compte d'une émission reçue par une séquence bien formée d'indications de DONNÉES PH, qui doit être constituée

- a) d'une indication unique spécifiant le DÉMARRAGE DE TRAME; suivie par des indications consécutives spécifiant les DONNÉES et acheminant chacune une PhSDU; et terminée par une indication unique spécifiant la FIN DE TRAME; ou
- b) d'une indication unique spécifiant le DÉMARRAGE DE TRAME; suivie, en option, par une ou des indications consécutives spécifiant des DONNÉES et acheminant chacune une PhSDU; et terminée par une indication unique spécifiant la FIN AVEC ERREUR.

Cette dernière séquence indique une réception incomplète ou incorrecte. La détection d'une erreur dans la séquence de PHPDU reçues, ou dans le processus de réception des PhE, doit désactiver des indications ultérieures de DONNÉES PH avec un paramètre de classe spécifiant les DONNÉES ou la FIN DE TRAME jusqu'à ce que la fin de la période d'activité courante et le

début d'une période d'activité suivante aient été rapportés par des indications de DONNÉES PH spécifiant la FIN DE TRAME.

5.9 Type 16: Services exigés

5.9.1 Primitives du PhS

5.9.1.1 Généralités

La granularité des données utilisateur PhS échangées au niveau de l'interface PhL-DLL doit être d'un octet.

5.9.1.2 Services PhS d'émission et de réception

Le PhS doit fournir les primitives de service suivantes pour l'émission et la réception:

- demande de données Ph (classe, données);
- indication de données Ph (classe, données);
- confirmation de données Ph (état)

où

- classe – doit spécifier la composante PhICI de la PhIDU.

Pour une demande de données Ph, les valeurs possibles doivent être:

- démarrage d'activité – l'émission des PhPDU qui précèdent les données utilisateur Ph doit commencer;
- données – la valeur d'octet unique du paramètre de données correspondant doit être transmise comme partie d'une émission continue correctement formée; et
- fin de données et d'activité – les PhPDU qui mettent fin aux données utilisateur Ph doivent être émises après le dernier octet précédent des données utilisateur Ph, aboutissant à la cessation de l'émission active.

Pour une indication de données Ph, les valeurs possibles doivent être:

- démarrage d'activité – la réception d'une émission apparente à partir d'une PhE a commencé;
- données – le paramètre de données correspondant a été reçu comme partie d'une réception continue correctement formée;
- fin de données – la réception continue correctement formée des données utilisateur Ph en cours s'est terminée par la réception correcte des PhPDU impliquant la fin des données;
- données – doit spécifier la composante PhID de la PhIDU. Elle est constituée d'un octet de données utilisateur Ph à transmettre (demande de données Ph) ou qui a été reçu avec succès (indication de données Ph);
- état – doit spécifier soit le succès, soit la raison détectée localement qui a donné lieu à l'échec.

La primitive de confirmation de données Ph doit fournir le retour d'informations critiques de temporisation physique nécessaires pour empêcher la DLE de démarrer une seconde émission avant que la première ne soit terminée. La confirmation de données Ph finale d'une émission ne doit pas être initiée avant que la PhE n'ait terminé l'émission.

5.9.2 Emission de données utilisateur Ph

La PhE doit déterminer la temporisation de toutes les émissions. Lorsqu'une DLE transmet une séquence de PhSDU, elle doit envoyer la séquence de PhSDU en réalisant une séquence bien formée de demandes de données Ph, constituée d'une seule demande spécifiant le démarrage d'activité, suivie du nombre requis de demandes consécutives qui spécifient

également les données, chacune de ces demandes acheminant une PhSDU et se terminant par une demande unique spécifiant la fin des données et de l'activité.

La PhE doit signaler l'achèvement de chaque demande de données Ph et indiquer qu'elle est prête à accepter une nouvelle demande de données Ph, en lançant une primitive de confirmation de données Ph; le paramètre d'état de la primitive de confirmation de données Ph doit acheminer le succès ou l'échec de la demande de données Ph correspondante. Une seconde demande de données Ph ne doit être lancée par la DLE qu'après que la PhE a émis la confirmation de données Ph correspondant à la première demande.

5.9.3 Réception de données utilisateur Ph

La PhE doit rendre compte d'une émission reçue par une séquence bien formée d'indications de données Ph, qui doit être constituée

- a) d'une indication unique spécifiant le démarrage d'activité; suivie par des indications consécutives spécifiant les données et acheminant chacune une PhSDU; suivie par une indication unique spécifiant la fin des données; et terminée par une indication unique spécifiant la fin de l'activité; ou
- b) d'une indication unique spécifiant le démarrage d'activité; suivie par des indications consécutives spécifiant les données et acheminant chacune une PhSDU; et suivie par une indication unique spécifiant la fin des données et de l'activité; ou
- c) d'une indication unique spécifiant le démarrage d'activité; suivie, en option, par une ou des indications consécutives spécifiant des données et acheminant chacune une PhSDU; et terminée par une indication unique spécifiant la fin de l'activité.

Cette dernière séquence indique une réception incomplète ou incorrecte. La détection d'une erreur dans la séquence de PhPDU reçues, ou dans le processus de réception des PhE, doit désactiver des indications ultérieures de données Ph avec un paramètre de classe spécifiant les données, la fin des données ou la fin des données et de l'activité jusqu'à ce que la fin de la période d'activité courante et le début d'une période d'activité suivante aient été rapportés par des indications de données Ph spécifiant la fin de l'activité et le démarrage d'activité, respectivement.

5.10 Type 18: Services exigés

5.10.1 Généralités

Il n'est pas nécessaire d'exposer l'interface DLL-PhL lors de la mise en œuvre d'une quelconque variante PhE de type 18. Cette interface peut être interne au nœud et peut être mise en œuvre comme interne à un dispositif à semiconducteur.

5.10.2 Primitives du PhS

5.10.2.1 Généralités

La granularité des données utilisateur PhS échangées au niveau de l'interface DLL-PhL est d'un bit.

5.10.2.2 Services PhS d'émission et de réception

Le PhS doit fournir les primitives de service suivantes pour l'émission et la réception:

- demande de DONNÉES PH (classe, données);
- indication de DONNÉES PH (classe, données);
- confirmation de DONNÉES PH (état).

où:

- **classe** – spécifie la composante "informations de commande d'interface de couche physique" (PhICI) de l'unité de données d'interface de couche physique (PhIDU).

Pour une demande de DONNÉES PH, les valeurs de classe possibles sont:

- DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ – l'émission des PhPDU qui précèdent les données utilisateur Ph doit commencer;
- DONNÉES – la valeur de bit unique du paramètre de données correspondant doit être transmise comme partie d'une émission continue correctement formée; et
- FIN D'ACTIVITÉ – les PhPDU qui mettent fin aux données utilisateur Ph doivent être émises après le dernier bit précédent des données utilisateur Ph, aboutissant à la cessation de l'émission active.

Pour une indication de DONNÉES PH, les valeurs de classe possibles sont:

- DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ – la réception d'une émission apparente d'une ou de plusieurs PhE a commencé;
- DONNÉES – le paramètre de données correspondant a été reçu comme partie d'une réception continue correctement formée;
- FIN D'ACTIVITÉ – la réception en cours (d'une émission apparente provenant d'une ou de plusieurs PhE) s'est achevée avec aucune preuve supplémentaire d'émission PhE; et
- **données** – doit spécifier la composante PhID de la PhIDU. Elle est constituée d'un bit de données utilisateur Ph à émettre (demande de DONNÉES PH) ou qui a été reçu avec succès (indication de DONNÉES PH).

et

- **état** – doit spécifier soit le succès, soit la raison détectée localement qui a donné lieu à l'échec.

La primitive de confirmation de DONNÉES PH doit fournir le retour d'informations critiques de temporisation physique nécessaires pour empêcher l'utilisateur DL de démarrer une seconde émission avant que la première ne soit terminée. La confirmation de DONNÉES PH finale d'une émission ne doit pas être initiée avant que la PhE n'ait terminé l'émission.

5.10.3 Emission de données utilisateur Ph

La PhE doit déterminer la temporisation de toutes les émissions. Lorsqu'une DLE émet une séquence de PhSDU, la DLE doit envoyer la séquence de PhSDU en réalisant une séquence bien formée de demandes de DONNÉES PH, constituée d'une seule demande spécifiant le DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ, suivie d'une série de demandes consécutives qui spécifient également les DONNÉES, chacune de ces demandes acheminant une PhSDU et se terminant par une demande unique spécifiant la FIN D'ACTIVITÉ.

La PhE doit signaler l'achèvement de chaque demande de DONNÉES PH et indiquer qu'elle est prête à accepter une nouvelle demande de DONNÉES PH, en lançant une primitive de confirmation de DONNÉES PH; le paramètre d'état de la primitive de confirmation de DONNÉES PH doit acheminer le succès ou l'échec de la demande de DONNÉES PH correspondante. Une seconde demande de DONNÉES PH ne doit être lancée par la DLE qu'après que la PhE ait émis la confirmation de DONNÉES PH correspondant à la première demande.

5.10.4 Réception de données utilisateur Ph

La PhE doit rendre compte d'une émission reçue par une séquence bien formée d'indications de DONNÉES PH, qui doit être constituée d'une indication unique spécifiant le DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ; suivie par des indications consécutives spécifiant les DONNÉES et acheminant chacune une PhSDU; suivie par une indication unique spécifiant la FIN D'ACTIVITÉ.

6 Interface Gestion systèmes – PhL

6.1 Généralités

Cette interface fournit à la PhL les services nécessaires à l'initialisation et à la sélection des options.

L'un des objectifs de la PhL est de permettre la prise en charge de variantes futures, telles que l'utilisation de radiofréquences, de fibres optiques, de canaux redondants (par exemple des câbles), de techniques de modulation différentes, etc. Il est spécifié un modèle général d'Interface Gestion systèmes – PhL qui fournit les services requis pour la mise en œuvre de ces variantes. Les services fournis par cette interface sont spécifiés de 6.2 à 6.5. La présente norme n'exige pas que cette interface soit exposée.

Le jeu complet de services de gestion ne peut être utilisé que lorsque le dispositif est directement couplé au support. Dans le cas de matériel à couplage actif (par exemple coupleur actif, répéteur, modem radio/téléphonique, dispositifs optoélectroniques, etc.), certains des services peuvent implicitement appartenir au coupleur actif. Par ailleurs, chaque dispositif peut utiliser un sous-ensemble des primitives décrites.

NOTE Un certain nombre de différentes interfaces Gestion systèmes – PhL sont spécifiées, sur la base des pratiques industrielles en la matière.

6.2 Type 1: Interface Gestion systèmes – PhL

6.2.1 Services exigés

La primitive de service minimal pour la gestion PhL (PhL) doit être:

- a) la demande PH-RESET (RÉINITIALISER PH) – réinitialisation de la Couche Ph.

Les services supplémentaires suivants peuvent être fournis:

- b) Demande Ph-SET-VALUE (ETABLIR VALEUR PH) / Confirmation Ph-SET-VALUE – réglage des paramètres;
- c) Demande Ph-GET-VALUE (OBTENIR VALEUR PH) / Confirmation Ph-GET-VALUE – lecture des paramètres;
- d) Indication Ph-EVENT (d'ÉVÉNEMENT PH) – compte-rendu d'événements de la Couche Ph.

6.2.2 Exigences relatives aux primitives de service

6.2.2.1 Demande PH-RESET

Cette primitive n'a pas de paramètre. Sur réception de la primitive, la PhL doit réinitialiser toutes ses fonctions.

6.2.2.2 Demande Ph-SET-VALUE (nom du paramètre, nouvelle valeur)

Si cette primitive est utilisée, elle doit permettre à la Gestion système de modifier les paramètres de la PhL. Le Tableau 4 donne les noms des paramètres et les plages de valeurs normalisés. La valeur que prend chaque paramètre lors de la réinitialisation doit être la première valeur parmi celles indiquées pour le paramètre.

Tableau 4 – Noms et valeurs de paramètres pour la demande Ph-SET-VALUE

Nom du paramètre	Plage de valeurs
Mode d'interface	• FULL_DUPLEX (DUPLEX INTEGRAL) • HALF_DUPLEX (SEMI-DUPLEX)
Mmode Rebouclage	• DISABLED (DÉSACTIVÉ) • dans la MDS à l'interface ETDD – DCE • dans la MAU à proximité de la connexion de la ligne
Extension du préambule	• 0..7 (séquences d'extension du préambule)
Extension du Gap (marque d'intervalle) post-émission	• 0..7 (séquences d'extension du Gap)
Dérive maximale du signal entre canaux	• 0..7 (séquences d'extension du Gap)
Canal de sortie émetteur N ($1 \leq N \leq 8$)	• ENABLED (ACTIVE) • DISABLED (DÉSACTIVÉ)
Canal d'entrée récepteur N ($1 \leq N \leq 8$)	• ENABLED (ACTIVE) • DISABLED (DÉSACTIVÉ)
Canal de réception préférentiel	• NONE (AUCUN) • 1..8

NOTE 1 Toutes les mises en œuvre n'exigent pas chacun des paramètres et certaines mises en œuvre peuvent en nécessiter davantage.

NOTE 2 Chaque norme de DCE spécifie les séquences de base et les séquences d'extension de PhPDU à envoyer comme préambule. Ces séquences d'extension sont toujours munies d'un préfixe qui renvoie à la séquence de base.

NOTE 3 Chaque norme DCE spécifie les longueurs des séquences de base et d'extension du gap post-émission au cours duquel il convient que l'émetteur reste silencieux.

NOTE 4 A partir de ce qui précède, la valeur par défaut lors de la réinitialisation est: un préambule minimal (pas d'extension), un gap post-émission minimal (pas d'extension), un mode d'interface duplex intégral, pas de rebouclage, avec tous les canaux d'émission et de réception activés et sans aucun canal de réception préférentiel.

6.2.2.3 Confirmation Ph-SET-VALUE (état)

Cette primitive a un paramètre unique indiquant l'état de la demande: Succès ou échec. Si cette primitive est utilisée, elle doit acquitter l'achèvement de la demande Ph-SET-VALUE dans la PhL.

6.2.2.4 Demande Ph-GET-VALUE (nom du paramètre)

Si cette primitive est utilisée, elle doit permettre à la Gestion système de lire les paramètres de la PhL. Le paramètre doit prendre l'un des noms donnés dans le Tableau 4.

6.2.2.5 Confirmation Ph-GET-VALUE (valeur courante)

Cette primitive est la réponse de la PhL à la demande Ph-GET-VALUE. Si cette primitive est utilisée, elle doit avoir un paramètre unique indiquant soit l'échec de la demande – Echec – soit la valeur courante du paramètre demandé. La valeur courante doit être l'une de celles autorisées en 6.2.2.2.

6.2.2.6 Indication Ph-EVENT (nom du paramètre)

Si cette primitive est utilisée, elle doit indiquer à la Gestion système la modification d'un paramètre PhL qui n'a pas été demandé par la Gestion système. Ce paramètre doit prendre l'un des noms indiqués dans le Tableau 5, qui repose sur ceux spécifiés en 8.2.

Tableau 5 – Noms de paramètres pour l'indication Ph-EVENT

Nom du paramètre
Défaut ETTD
Défaut DCE

NOTE Il est possible d'ajouter des noms au Tableau 5 si des mises en œuvre spécifiques l'exigent.

6.3 Type 3: Interface Gestion systèmes – PhL

6.3.1 Transmission synchrone

Les services ainsi que les exigences liées aux primitives de service spécifiées pour le Type 1 doivent être utilisés (voir 6.2).

6.3.2 Transmission asynchrone

6.3.2.1 Généralités

Le présent paragraphe ainsi que ceux qui suivent, décrivent l'interface entre la transmission asynchrone PhL et un utilisateur PhMS ainsi que les primitives de service et paramètres correspondants.

Le modèle de service, les primitives de service et les diagrammes séquentiels de temps utilisés sont des descriptions entièrement abstraites; elles ne représentent pas une spécification de mise en œuvre.

Les primitives de service utilisées pour représenter les interactions entre utilisateur de service et fournisseur de service (voir ISO/CEI 10731) acheminent des paramètres qui indiquent les informations disponibles dans l'interaction utilisateur/fournisseur.

Le présent type, tel que décrit dans la présente norme, utilise un format tabulaire pour décrire les paramètres constitutifs des primitives PhMS. Chaque tableau comprend jusqu'à trois colonnes, qui donnent le nom du paramètre de service, ainsi qu'une colonne pour ces primitives et les sens de transfert des paramètres utilisés par le PhMS:

- les paramètres d'entrée de la primitive de demande;
- les paramètres de sortie de la primitive d'indication; et
- les paramètres de sortie de la primitive de confirmation.

Un paramètre (ou partie de ce paramètre) est présenté dans chaque rangée de chaque tableau. Dans les colonnes des primitives de service concernées, un code permet de spécifier le type d'utilisation du paramètre sur la primitive et le sens du paramètre spécifié dans la colonne:

- Le paramètre **M** – est obligatoire pour la primitive.
- Le paramètre (**vide**) – n'est jamais présent.

6.3.2.2 Fonctionnalités du PhMS

La Gestion Ph organise l'initialisation et la configuration de la PhE ainsi que le traitement des événements et des erreurs entre l'utilisateur PhMS et les fonctions logiques dans la PhE. L'utilisateur PhMS dispose des fonctions suivantes.

- a) Réinitialisation de la PhE locale
- b) Demande et modification des paramètres de fonctionnement réels de la PhE locale
- c) Notification des événements inattendus et modification d'état de la PhE locale.

6.3.2.3 Aperçu des services

La Gestion Ph fournit à l'utilisateur PhMS les services suivants:

a) Réinitialisation

L'utilisateur PhMS utilise ce service pour que la Gestion Ph réinitialise la PhE. Une réinitialisation équivaut à une mise sous tension. L'utilisateur PhMS en reçoit confirmation.

b) Etablir valeur

L'utilisateur PhMS utilise ce service pour attribuer une nouvelle valeur aux variables de la PhE. L'utilisateur PhMS reçoit une confirmation indiquant si les variables spécifiées ont été établies à la nouvelle valeur.

c) Obtenir valeur

Ce service permet à la Gestion Ph de lire les variables de la PhE. La réponse de la Gestion Ph renvoie la valeur réelle des variables spécifiées.

d) Evénement

Ce service est utilisé par la Gestion Ph pour informer l'utilisateur PhMS de certains événements ou erreurs dans la PhL.

Les services Réinitialisation et Evénement sont obligatoires. Les services Etablir valeur et Obtenir valeur sont facultatifs.

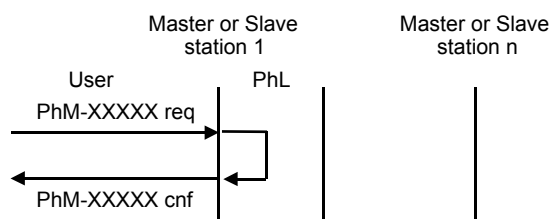
6.3.2.4 Aperçu des interactions

Les services de gestion Ph et leurs primitives sont résumés dans le Tableau 6.

Tableau 6 – Récapitulatif des services et primitives de gestion Ph

Service	Primitive	Possible pour les stations suivantes
Réinitialiser	Demande PhM-RESET Confirmation PhM-RESET	Maître et Esclave
Etablir valeur	Demande PhM-SET-VALUE Confirmation PhM-SET-VALUE	Maître et Esclave
Obtenir valeur	Demande PhM-GET-VALUE Confirmation PhM-GET-VALUE	Maître et Esclave
Evénement	Indication PhM-EVENT	Maître et Esclave

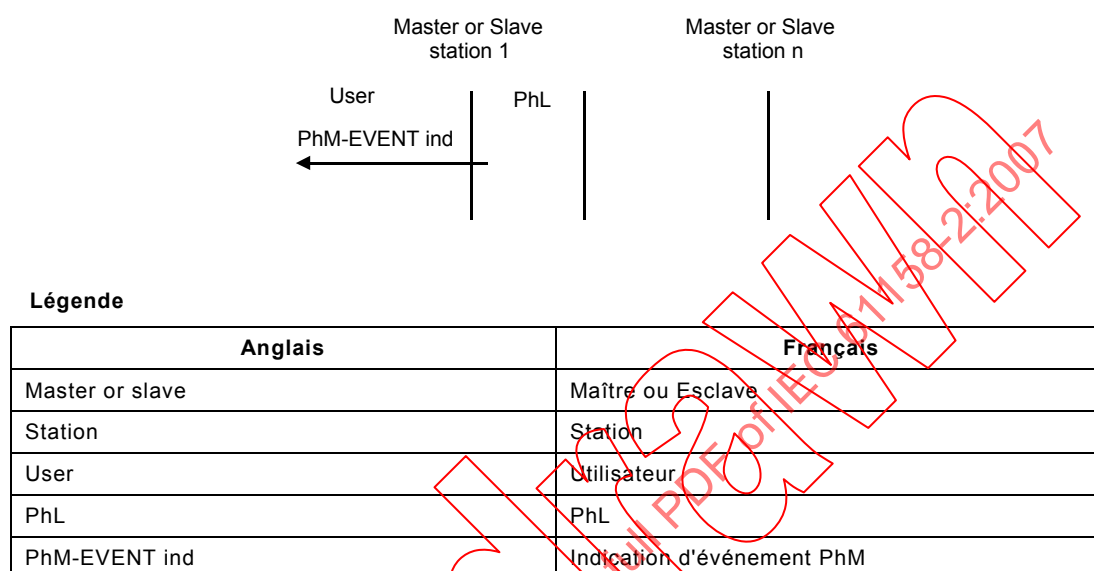
La relation temporelle entre primitives de Gestion Ph est présentée à la Figure 10 et à la Figure 11.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Master or slave	Maître ou Esclave
Station	Station

Anglais	Français
User	Utilisateur
PhL	PhL
PhM-XXXXX req	Demande XXXXX PhM
PhM-XXXXX cnf	Confirmation XXXXX PhM

Figure 10 – Réinitialiser, Etablir valeur, Obtenir valeur**Figure 11 – Service d'événements**

6.3.2.5 Spécification détaillée des services et interactions

6.3.2.5.1 Réinitialiser

6.3.2.5.1.1 Fonction

L'utilisateur PhMS passe une primitive de demande PhM-RESET à la Gestion Ph pour qu'elle réinitialise la PhE. Ceci est réalisé de la même manière que lors de la mise sous tension (Transmitter_output: activée; Receiver_signal_source: primaire; Boucle: désactivée). En conséquence, la Gestion Ph passe une primitive de confirmation PhM-RESET à l'utilisateur PhMS pour lui indiquer le succès ou l'échec de la demande de service correspondante.

6.3.2.5.1.2 Types de primitives et de paramètres

Les primitives et paramètres du service de réinitialisation sont indiquées dans le Tableau 7.

Tableau 7 – Primitives et paramètres "Réinitialiser"

PhM-RESET	Demande	Confirmation
Nom du paramètre	Entrée	Sortie
PhM-STATUS		M
NOTE La méthode de corrélation entre la primitive de confirmation et la primitive de demande correspondante qui la précède est du ressort local.		

PhM-Status (Etat PhM)

Ce paramètre spécifie l'état de l'exécution de la demande de service correspondante. Les valeurs admises pour ce paramètre sont spécifiées dans le Tableau 8.

Tableau 8 – Valeurs d'Etat PhM pour le service de réinitialisation

Nom abrégé	Etat	Définition	Temporaire (t) ou permanent (p)
OK	Succès	La fonction de réinitialisation a été menée avec succès	--
NON	Echec	La fonction de réinitialisation a échoué	t/p
IV	Echec	Paramètres invalides dans la demande	--

6.3.2.5.2 Etablir valeur

6.3.2.5.2.1 Fonction

L'utilisateur PhMS passe une primitive de demande PhM-SET-VALUE à la Gestion Ph pour attribuer la valeur souhaitée à une ou plusieurs variables spécifiées de la PhE. Après réception de cette primitive, la Gestion Ph tente de sélectionner ces variables et d'établir les nouvelles valeurs. Si le service demandé a été exécuté, la Gestion Ph passe une primitive de confirmation PhM-SET-VALUE à l'utilisateur PhMS pour indiquer le succès ou l'échec de la demande de service correspondante.

6.3.2.5.2.2 Types de primitives et de paramètres

Les primitives et paramètres du service Etablir valeur sont indiquées dans le Tableau 9.

Tableau 9 – Primitives et paramètres "Etablir valeur"

PhM-SET-VALUE	Demande	Confirmation
Nom du paramètre	Entrée	Sortie
Variable_name (1 à 3)	M	
Desired_value (1 à 3)	M	
PhM-STATUS (1 à 3)		M
NOTE La méthode de corrélation entre la primitive de confirmation et la primitive de demande correspondante qui la précède est du ressort local.		

Variable_name

Ce paramètre de la matrice spécifie une ou plusieurs variables (1 à 3) auxquelles il faut attribuer des valeurs à partir des éléments correspondants du paramètre Desired_value. Les variables qui peuvent être sélectionnées sont des paramètres de fonctionnement; elles sont spécifiées dans le Tableau 10.

Tableau 10 – Variables PhE obligatoires

Paramètres de fonctionnement	
Nom	Définition
Transmitter_output	Sortie de l'émetteur
Receiver_signal_source	Entrée du récepteur
Loop	La sortie de l'émetteur est dirigée vers l'entrée du récepteur et non vers le support.

Desired_value

Ce paramètre de la matrice spécifie la valeur réelle à attribuer aux variables (1 à 3) qui sont spécifiées par le paramètre Variable_name. Ce paramètre spécifie une liste d'une ou de plusieurs (1 à 3) nouvelles valeurs pour les PhE spécifiées. La valeur admissible ou la plage de valeurs correspondante pour chacune de ces variables est spécifiée dans le Tableau 11.

Tableau 11 – Valeurs admissibles des variables PhE

Paramètres de fonctionnement	
Variable	Plage de valeurs
Transmitter_output	activée ou désactivée
Receiver_signal_source	primaire: câble bus "a" (origine normalisée) autre possibilité: câble bus "b" (origine alternative) aléatoire: soit "a" soit "b"
Loop	activée ou désactivée

PhM-Status

Ce paramètre de la matrice spécifie, pour chaque variable de la demande correspondante, l'état de cette composante du service demandé. Les valeurs admises pour les composantes individuelles de ce paramètre de matrice sont spécifiées dans le Tableau 12.

Tableau 12 – Valeurs d'Etat PhM pour le service Etablir valeur

Nom abrégé	Etat	Définition	Temporaire (t) ou permanent (p)
OK	Succès	La nouvelle valeur de la variable a été établie	--
NON	Echec	La variable n'existe pas ou la nouvelle valeur n'a pas pu être établie	t/p
IV	Echec	Paramètres invalides dans la demande	--

6.3.2.5.3 Obtenir valeur**6.3.2.5.3.1 Fonction**

L'utilisateur PhMS passe une primitive de demande PhM-GET-VALUE à la Gestion Ph pour lire la valeur courante d'une ou de plusieurs variables de la PhE. Après réception de cette primitive, la Gestion Ph tente de sélectionner les variables spécifiées et de remettre leurs valeurs courantes; elle passe à l'utilisateur PhM une primitive de confirmation PhM-GET-VALUE pour indiquer le succès ou l'échec de la demande de service correspondante. Cette primitive renvoie comme paramètre une ou plusieurs des valeurs de variables demandées.

6.3.2.5.3.2 Types de primitives et de paramètres

Les primitives et paramètres du service Obtenir valeur sont indiquées dans le Tableau 13.

Tableau 13 – Primitives et paramètres Obtenir valeur

PhM-GET-VALUE	Demande	Confirmation
Nom du paramètre	Entrée	Sortie
Variable_name (1 à 3)	M	
Current_value (1 à 3)		M
PhM-STATUS		M
NOTE La méthode de corrélation entre la primitive de confirmation et la primitive de demande correspondante qui la précède est du ressort local.		

Variable_name

Ce paramètre de la matrice spécifie une ou plusieurs variables (1 à 3) dont les valeurs sont à lire. Les variables qui peuvent être sélectionnées sont spécifiées dans le Tableau 10.

Current_value

Ce paramètre de la matrice spécifie la valeur réelle des variables (1 à 3) qui ont été spécifiées par le paramètre Variable_name de la demande correspondante. La valeur admissible ou la plage de valeurs correspondante pour chacune de ces variables est spécifiée dans le Tableau 14.

Tableau 14 – Valeurs courantes des variables PhE

Paramètres de fonctionnement	
Variable	Plage de valeurs
Transmitter_output	activée ou désactivée
Receiver_signal_source	primaire ou alternative
Loop	activée ou désactivée

PhM-Status

Ce paramètre de la matrice spécifie, pour chaque variable de la demande correspondante, une confirmation de l'exécution du service. Les valeurs admises pour ce paramètre sont spécifiées dans le Tableau 15.

Tableau 15 – Valeurs d'Etat PhM pour le service Obtenir valeur

Nom abrégé	Etat	Définition	Temporaire (t) ou permanent (p)
)OK	Succès	La variable a pu être lue	--
NON	Echec	La variable n'existe pas ou n'a pas pu être lue. La valeur correspondante de Current_value n'est pas définie	t/p
IV	Echec	Paramètres invalides dans la demande	--

6.3.2.5.4 Événement

6.3.2.5.4.1 Fonction

La PhE informe la Gestion Ph qu'elle a détecté un événement. Ensuite, la Gestion Ph passe une primitive d'indication Ph-EVENT à l'utilisateur PhMS pour l'informer d'événements importants dans la PhE.

6.3.2.5.4.2 Types de primitives et de paramètres

La primitive et les paramètres du service Événement sont indiqués dans le Tableau 16.

Tableau 16 – Primitive et paramètres "Événement"

PhM-EVENT	Indication
Nom du paramètre	Sortie
Variable_Name (1 à 2)	M
New_Value (1 à 2)	M

Variable_Name

Ce paramètre de la matrice spécifie une ou plusieurs variables (1 à 2) dont les valeurs ont été modifiées. Les variables qui peuvent être présentes sont spécifiées dans le Tableau 10.

New_Value

Ce paramètre spécifie la nouvelle valeur de la variable. Les diverses valeurs sont présentées dans le Tableau 17.

Tableau 17 – Nouvelles valeurs des variables PhE

Variable	Plage de valeurs
Transmitter_output	activée ou désactivée
Receiver_signal_source	primaire ou alternative

6.4 Type 4: Interface Gestion systèmes – PhL**6.4.1 Services exigés**

Les services spécifiés en 6.2 sont utilisés.

6.4.2 Exigences relatives aux primitives de service

Les exigences relatives aux primitives de service sont spécifiées en 6.2.2.2, en appliquant la restriction suivante:

Les paramètres spécifiés dans le Tableau 4 ne sont pas pris en charge.

Les paramètres qui peuvent être modifiés et lus par les services de gestion PhL sont présentés dans le Tableau 18. Les valeurs prises en charge ainsi que la valeur par défaut de chaque paramètre dépendent du support et de la mise en œuvre proprement dite.

Tableau 18 – Noms et valeurs de paramètres de gestion

Nom du paramètre	Plage de valeurs
Mode d'interface	HALF_DUPLEX FULL_DUPLEX_RS232 FULL_DUPLEX_UDP
Débit en bauds (kbaud/s)	230 400 76 800 38 400 19 200 9 600

6.5 Type 6: Ce paragraphe a été supprimé

NOTE Dans la présente édition, ce paragraphe est destiné à maintenir la numérotation des articles et éviter la rupture avec des normes nationales et multinationales ainsi que des documents de consortiums existants qui renvoient à l'édition précédente.

6.6 Type 8: Interface Gestion systèmes – PhL**6.6.1 Fonctionnalité de la gestion PhL**

La gestion de la PhL est la partie de la PhL qui produit la fonctionnalité de gestion de la PhL demandée par la PNM1. La gestion de la PhL traite l'initialisation, la surveillance et la récupération d'erreurs dans la PhL.

6.6.2 Interface PhL-PNM1

6.6.2.1 Généralités

Ce paragraphe définit les services de gestion administrative de la PhL qui sont mis à la disposition de la PNM1, ainsi que les primitives de service et paramètres correspondants. La Figure 12 illustre l'interface entre PhL et PNM1 dans le modèle en couches.

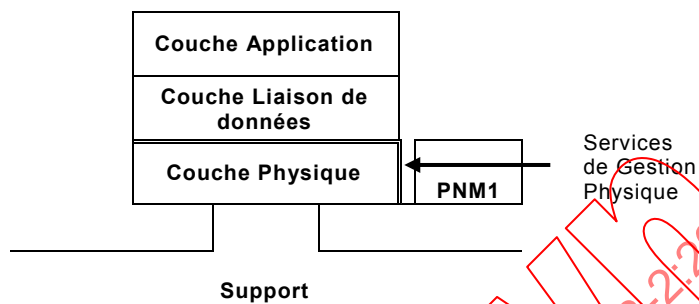


Figure 12 – Interface entre PhL et PNM1 dans le modèle en couches

L'interface de service entre PhL et PNM1 assure les fonctions suivantes:

- Réinitialisation de la PhL
- Demande et modification des paramètres de fonctionnement courants de la PhL
- Indication d'événements inattendus, d'erreurs et de modifications d'état, qui ont eu lieu ou ont été détectés dans la PhL

6.6.2.2 Aperçu des services

La PhL met les services suivants à la disposition de la PNM1:

- Réinitialiser PhL
- Etablir valeur PhL ou Obtenir valeur PhL
- Événement PhL

Réinitialiser PhL (obligatoire)

La PNM1 utilise ce service pour réinitialiser la PhL. La réinitialisation équivaut à une mise sous tension. Après exécution du service, la PNM1 reçoit une confirmation.

Etablir valeur PhL (facultatif)

La PNM1 utilise ce service pour établir de nouvelles valeurs des variables PhL. Après achèvement, la PNM1 de la PhL reçoit une confirmation indiquant si les variables définies ont pris de nouvelles valeurs.

Obtenir valeur PhL (facultatif)

La PNM1 utilise ce service pour lire des variables de la PhL. La valeur courante de la variable définie est renvoyée dans la réponse de la PhL.

Événement PhL (obligatoire)

La PhL utilise ce service pour informer l'utilisateur PNM1 de certains événements ou erreurs dans la PhL.

6.6.2.3 Aperçu des interactions

Les services PhL sont décrits par les primitives suivantes (commençant par Ph-...):

Réinitialiser PhL

Demande PH-RESET

Confirmation PH-RESET

Etablir valeur PhL

Demande Ph-SET-VALUE
Confirmation Ph-SET-VALUE

Obtenir valeur PhL

Demande Ph-GET-VALUE
Confirmation Ph-GET-VALUE

Événement PhL

Indication Ph-Event

La Figure 13 et la Figure 14 présentent les relations temporelles entre primitives de service.

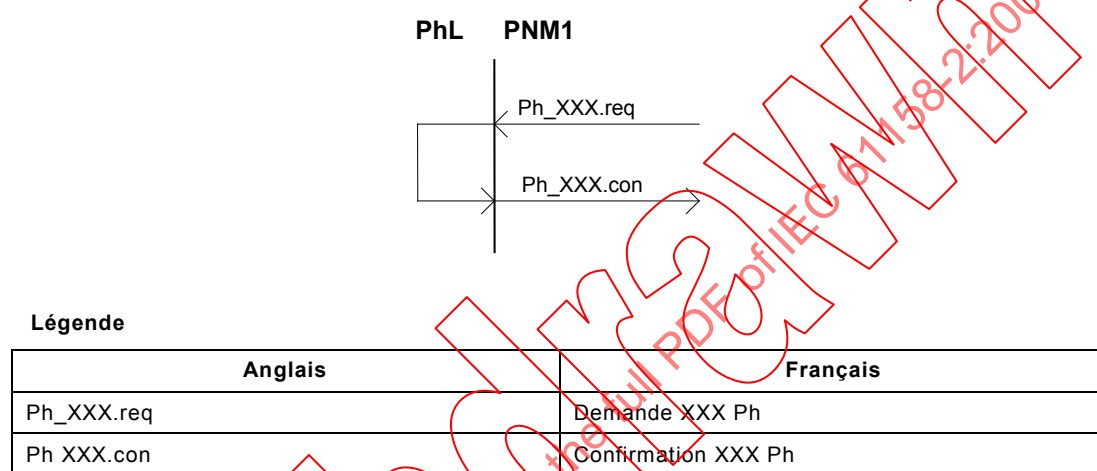


Figure 13 – Services Réinitialiser, Etablir valeur, Obtenir valeur de PhL

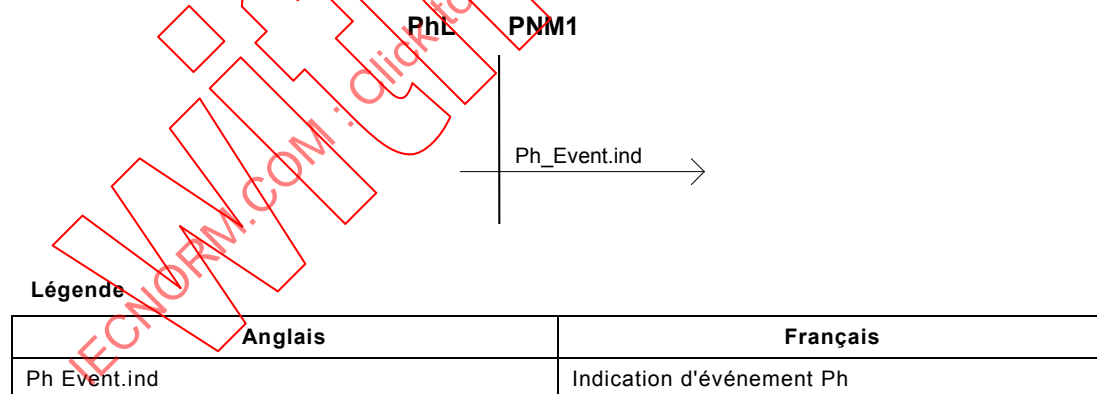


Figure 14 – Service d'événements PhL

6.6.2.4 Définitions détaillées des services et interactions

6.6.2.4.1 PH-RESET

Le service PH-RESET est obligatoire. La PNM1 transfère une primitive de demande PH-RESET à la PhL pour la réinitialiser (Voir le Tableau 19).

Tableau 19 – PH-RESET

Nom du paramètre	Demande	Confirmation
Argument	M	
Résultat(+)		M

6.6.2.4.2 Ph-SET-VALUE

Le service Ph-SET-VALUE est facultatif. La PNM1 transfère une primitive de demande Ph-SET-VALUE à la PhL pour régler une variable Ph définie à une valeur requise. Après réception de cette primitive, la PhL tente de sélectionner la variable et d'établir la nouvelle valeur. Après achèvement, la PhL transmet une primitive de confirmation Ph-SET-VALUE à la PNM1 (voir le Tableau 20).

Tableau 20 – Ph-SET-VALUE

Nom du paramètre	Demande	Confirmation
Argument	M	
Variable_Name	M	
Desired_value	M	
Résultat(+)		M

variable_name:

Ce paramètre définit la variable PhL qui a été établie à une nouvelle valeur.

desired_value:

Ce paramètre déclare la nouvelle valeur de la variable PhL.

Le Tableau 21 fournit des informations permettant de modifier la variable PhL à la nouvelle valeur.

Tableau 21 – Variables PhL

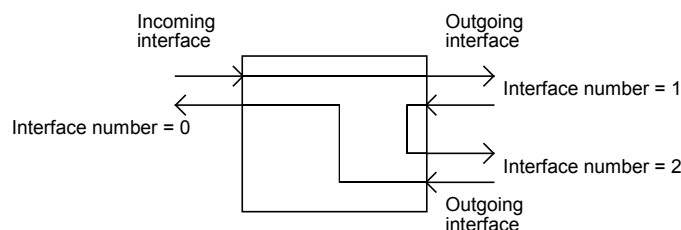
Nom de la variable PhL
Loopback_mode
Medium_attachment
Bus_interfaces
Short_bus_reset_time
Long_bus_reset_time
Data_select

loopback_mode:

Ce paramètre définit si le circuit de réception de la MAU est connecté au circuit d'émission ou au support.

Structure du paramètre:

- numéro d'interface
Définit le numéro de l'interface d'arrivée et de départ (voir Figure 15).
- état
Ce paramètre définit si le circuit de réception de la MAU est connecté (activé) ou non (désactivé). Après mise sous tension, cette valeur est sur "activé".

**Légende**

Anglais	Français
Incoming interface	Interface d'arrivée
Outgoing interface	Interface de départ
Interface number	Numéro d'interface

Figure 15 – Attribution du numéro d'interface

NOTE Un maître a toujours le numéro d'interface = 2.

medium_attachment:

Ce paramètre indique si la MAU est couplée au support de transmission. Cette information est obtenue en détectant la présence d'un connecteur branché à l'interface de départ.

Structure du paramètre:

- numéro d'interface
Déclare le numéro de l'interface du bus (voir Figure 15).
- branchement
Ce paramètre définit si l'interface est branchée au support de transmission.

bus_interfaces:

- numéro d'interface
Déclare le numéro de l'interface du bus (voir Figure 15).
- type d'interface
Définit le type de l'interface physique et du support de transmission:
 - Interface d'arrivée, à 2 conducteurs
 - Interface de départ, à 2 conducteurs

short_bus_reset_time:

Ce paramètre définit la durée de la réinitialisation courte. Après mise sous tension, cette valeur est de 5 ms.

long_bus_reset_time:

Ce paramètre définit la durée de la réinitialisation longue. Après mise sous tension, cette valeur est de 100 ms.

data_select:

Ce paramètre indique qu'une Reset_PhPDU ou une medium_activity_status_PhPDU est envoyée sur le support de transmission pour une MAU passive de départ (mode bouclage = désactivation)

Structure du paramètre:

- numéro d'interface
Définit le numéro de l'interface du bus (voir Figure 15). Plage de valeurs (1 à 2)
- couplage
Désactivation: Une PhPDU de réinitialisation est émise sur le support de transmission;

Activation: La PhPDU d'état d'activité du support est émise sur le support de transmission après "mis sous tension" cette valeur est "désactivation".

6.6.2.4.3 Ph-GET-VALUE

Le service Ph-GET-VALUE est facultatif. La PNM1 transfère une primitive de demande Ph-GET-VALUE à la PhL pour relever la valeur courante d'une variable PhL définie. Une fois que la PhL a reçu cette primitive, elle tente de sélectionner la variable définie et de transférer sa valeur courante à la PNM1 au moyen de la primitive de confirmation Ph-GET-VALUE (voir Tableau 22).

Tableau 22 – Ph-GET-VALUE

Nom du paramètre	Demande	Confirmation
Argument Variable_Name	M M	
Résultat(+) Current_value		M M

variable_name:

Ce paramètre définit la variable PhL dont la valeur est à relever.

Current_value

Ce paramètre contient la valeur relevée de la variable PhL. Les variables PhL à lire sont les variables qui peuvent être modifiées au moyen de Ph-SET-VALUE.

6.6.2.4.4 Ph-EVENT

Le service Ph-EVENT est obligatoire. La PhL transfère une primitive d'indication Ph-EVENT à la PNM1 pour l'informer d'événements importants ou d'erreurs dans la PhL (voir Tableau 23).

Tableau 23 – Ph-EVENT

Nom du paramètre	Indication
Argument event	M M

event:

Ce paramètre définit l'événement qui a eu lieu ou la source de l'erreur dans la PhL et peut prendre les valeurs indiquées dans le Tableau 24:

Tableau 24 – Evénements PhL

Nom	Signification
Stop_bit_error	Une erreur de bit d'arrêt a été détectée dans la sous-couche MDS
Medium_attachment	Le branchement d'un support a changé au niveau d'une MAU de départ

6.7 Type 12: Interface Gestion systèmes – PhL

6.7.1 Service exigé

La primitive de service minimal pour la gestion PhL (PhL) doit être:

la demande PH-RESET – réinitialisation de la Couche Ph.

6.7.2 Primitive de service Demande PH-RESET

Cette primitive n'a pas de paramètre. Sur réception de la primitive, la PhL doit réinitialiser toutes ses fonctions.

6.8 Type 18: Interface Gestion systèmes – PhL

6.8.1 Généralités

Il n'est pas nécessaire d'exposer l'interface Gestion systèmes – PhL lors de la mise en œuvre d'une quelconque variante PhE de type 18. Cette interface peut être interne au nœud et peut être mise en œuvre comme interne à un dispositif à semiconducteur.

6.8.2 Services exigés

La primitive de service minimal pour la gestion PhL doit être:

- a) la demande PH-RESET – réinitialisation de la Couche Ph;
- b) la demande Ph-SET-VALUE – réglage des paramètres.

6.8.3 Exigences relatives aux primitives de service

6.8.3.1 Demande PH-RESET

Cette primitive n'a pas de paramètre. Sur réception de la primitive, la PhL doit réinitialiser toutes ses fonctions.

6.8.3.2 Demande Ph-SET-VALUE (nom du paramètre, nouvelle valeur)

Cette primitive doit permettre à la Gestion système de modifier les paramètres de la PhL. Le Tableau 4 donne les noms des paramètres et les plages de valeurs normalisés.

Toutes les valeurs ne sont pas prises en charge par toutes les variantes de PhE de Type 18. Des limites de débits en bauds sont associées à la variante de MAU de Type 18 mise en œuvre.

Tableau 25 – Noms et valeurs de paramètres pour la demande Ph-SET-VALUE

Nom du paramètre	Plage de valeurs
Débit en bauds (kbaud/s)	10 000
	5 000
	2 500
	625
	156

7 Sous-couche indépendante du DCE (DIS)

7.1 Généralités

L'entité PhL est subdivisée en une composante Equipement terminal de traitement de données (ETTD) et en une composante Equipement de transmission de données (DCE). La composante ETTD est en interface avec l'entité DLL et constitue la DIS (sous-couche indépendante du DCE). Elle échange des unités de données d'interface sur l'interface DL-Ph définie à l'Article 5 et assure les conversions de base entre la perspective "d'une PhIDU à la fois" de l'interface DL-Ph et la perspective "bit série" exigée pour l'émission et la réception physiques.

La sous-couche est indépendante de toutes les variantes PhL, y compris le codage et/ou la modulation, la vitesse, le mode tension/courant/optique, le support, etc. Toutes ces variantes sont regroupées sous la désignation DCE (Equipement de transmission de données).

NOTE Un certain nombre d'entités DIS différentes sont spécifiées, sur la base des pratiques industrielles en la matière.

7.2 Type 1: DIS

La DIS doit ordonner l'émission de la PhID comme une séquence de PhSDU série. De la même manière, la DIS doit constituer la PhID à renvoyer à la DLL à partir de la séquence de PhSDU série reçues.

La PhID doit être convertie en une séquence de PhSDU pour émission série en octets jusqu'à un maximum de 300 octets. Une PhSDU représentant des octets de poids fort de la PhID doit être envoyée avant ou en même temps qu'une PhSDU représentant des octets de poids faible et de façon à ce que, dans chaque octet, une PhSDU représentant un bit de poids fort soit transmise avant ou en même temps qu'une PhSDU représentant un bit de poids faible. A la réception, chaque séquence de PhSDU doit être convertie en PhID de façon à ce que, en l'absence d'erreurs, la PhIDU indiquée à l'entité DLL de réception doit demeurer inchangée par rapport à la PhIDU dont l'émission a été demandée par l'entité DLL d'origine.

NOTE Ceci est une garantie de transparence.

7.3 Type 3: DIS

7.3.1 Transmission synchrone

La Sous-couche indépendante du DCE (DIS) spécifiée pour le Type 1 doit être utilisée (voir 7.2).

7.3.2 Transmission asynchrone

Il n'y a pas de DIS (sous-couche indépendante du DCE) en transmission asynchrone.

7.4 Type 6: ~~Ce paragraphe a été supprimé~~

NOTE Dans la présente édition, ce paragraphe est destiné à maintenir la numérotation des articles et éviter la rupture avec des normes nationales et multinationales ainsi que des documents de consortiums existants qui renvoient à l'édition précédente.

7.5 Type 8: DIS

7.5.1 Généralités

La PhL est subdivisée en une MIS (Sous-couche indépendante du Support), une MDS (Sous-couche dépendante du support) et la MAU (Unité de liaison au Support). La MIS est indépendante de toutes les caractéristiques de la PhL, telles que le codage, la méthode de transmission, la vitesse d'émission et le type de support de transmission. Toutes ces instances sont décrites par les sous-couches MDS et MAU.

7.5.2 Fonction

D'une part, la MIS doit envoyer à la MDS la PhSDU qui a été reçue par la sous-couche MAC par le biais de l'interface DL-Ph sous la forme d'une PhIDU, par l'intermédiaire de l'interface MIS-MDS. D'autre part, elle constitue la PhIDU d'une PhSDU qui a été reçue par l'intermédiaire de l'interface MIS-MDS et la transfère, via l'interface DL-Ph, à la sous-couche MAC.

En outre, la MIS permet l'émission d'une PhSDU entre deux MDS par l'intermédiaire de l'interface MIS-MDS (couplage MDS).

La MIS peut comprendre plusieurs canaux qui sont configurés en conséquence. Un canal est utilisé pour émettre la PhSDU à la MDS et pour émettre une PhSDU par l'intermédiaire d'une PhIDU vers la sous-couche MAC. Tous les autres canaux sont utilisés pour transmettre une PhSDU entre deux sous-couches MDS.

7.5.3 Transmission série

Pour la transmission série, une séquence de PhIDU doit être convertie en une séquence de PhSDU. Une PhSDU qui représente un bit de poids fort est transférée à une PhSDU qui représente un bit de poids faible.

Une fois reçue, chaque séquence de PhSDU doit être convertie en une séquence de PhIDU, de façon à ce que la séquence de PhIDU constituée de cette manière corresponde à celle qui est envoyée de la sous-couche MAC à la PhL.

7.5.4 Couplage MDS

Lorsque des MDS sont couplées par paires et ont des caractéristiques identiques ou différentes (type alternatif d'émission), chaque PhSDU qui est reçue d'une MDS par le biais de l'interface MIS-MDS est envoyée inchangée, via l'interface MIS-MDS, à une autre MDS.

Dans ce cas, il est permis de mettre en tampon une PhSDU reçue.

Les Figures 16, 17 et 18 présentent les configurations possibles pour le maître du bus et les esclaves, en utilisant le support câblé à 2 conducteurs et le type alternatif d'émission.

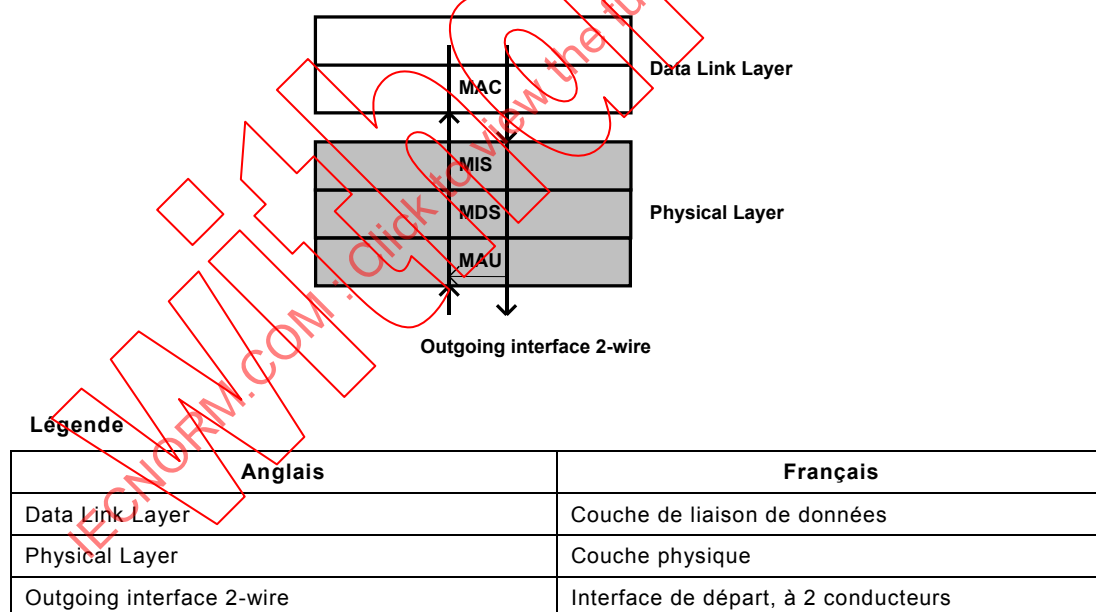
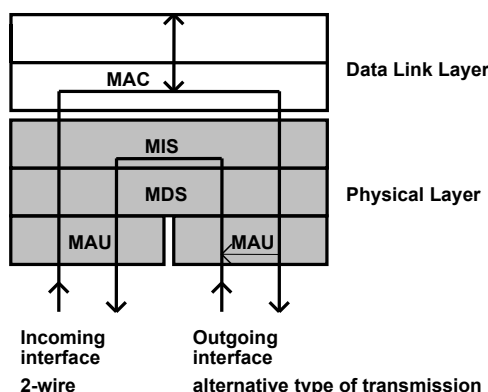


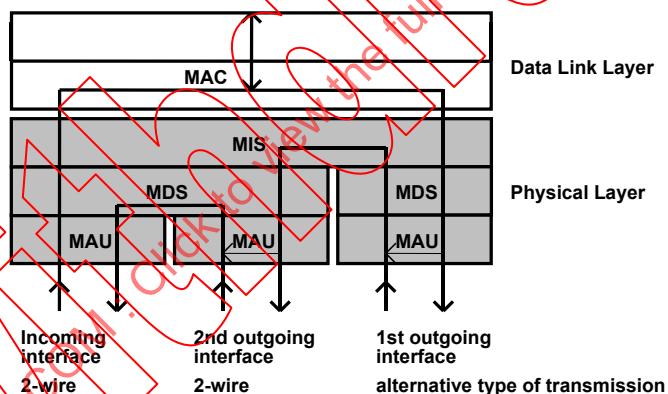
Figure 16 – Configuration d'un maître



Légende

Anglais	Français
Incoming interface 2-wire	Interface d'arrivée, à 2 conducteurs
Outgoing interface	Interface de départ
Alternative type of transmission	type alternatif d'émission
Data link layer	Couche de liaison de données
Physical Layer	Couche physique

Figure 17 – Configuration d'un esclave avec un type alternatif d'émission



Légende

Anglais	Français
Incoming interface 2-wire	Interface d'arrivée, à 2 conducteurs
2 nd outgoing interface 2-wire	2 ^{ème} interface de départ, à 2 conducteurs
1 st outgoing interface	1 ^{ère} interface de départ
Alternative type of transmission	Type alternatif d'émission
Data link layer	Couche de liaison de données
Physical Layer	Couche physique

Figure 18 – Configuration d'un coupleur de bus avec un type alternatif d'émission

7.6 Type 12: DIS

La DIS doit ordonner l'émission de la PhID comme une séquence de PhSDU série. De la même manière, la DIS doit constituer la PhID à renvoyer à la DLL à partir de la séquence de PhSDU série reçues.

La PhID doit être convertie en une séquence de PhSDU pour émission série en octets, d'un minimum de 72 octets à un maximum de 1 535 octets.

Pour la transmission série, une séquence de PhIDU doit être convertie en une séquence de PhSDU. Une PhSDU qui représente un bit de poids fort est transférée à une PhSDU qui représente un bit de poids faible.

Une fois reçue, chaque séquence de PhSDU doit être convertie en une séquence de PhIDU, de façon à ce que la séquence de PhIDU constituée de cette manière corresponde à celle qui est envoyée de la sous-couche MAC à la PhL.

8 Interface ETTD – DCE et fonctions spécifiques à la MIS

8.1 Généralités

L'entité PhL est subdivisée en une composante Equipement terminal de traitement de données (ETTD) contenant la DIS et en une composante Equipement de transmission de données (DCE) contenant la MDS et des sous-couches de niveau inférieur. L'interface ETTD-DCE connecte ces deux composantes physiques et est elle-même contenue dans la MIS (Voir la Figure 1).

NOTE Un certain nombre d'interfaces ETTD-DCE différentes sont spécifiées, sur la base des pratiques industrielles en la matière.

Pour l'interface ETTD-DCE ainsi que pour toute autre interface, l'exposition n'est pas obligatoire.

Pour le mode de transmission synchrone de Type 3, de Type 1 et de Type 7, l'interface ETTD-DCE est une interface fonctionnelle et électrique, mais non mécanique, qui prend en charge un ensemble de services. Chacun de ces services est mis en œuvre par une séquence d'interactions de signalisation définies au niveau de l'interface.

8.2 Type 1: Interface ETTD – DCE

8.2.1 Services

8.2.1.1 Aperçu général

Les services suivants, définis dans le présent paragraphe, doivent être pris en charge par l'interface ETTD-DCE:

- a) Service de réinitialisation ETTD vers DCE;
- b) Service de configuration ETTD vers DCE;
- c) Service d'émission de messages ETTD vers DCE;
- d) Service de notification de défauts DCE vers ETTD;
- e) Service d'indication d'activité des supports DCE vers ETTD;
- f) Service de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETTD.

8.2.1.2 Service de réinitialisation ETTD vers DCE

Ce service doit fournir un moyen permettant à l'ETTD de réinitialiser à tout moment le DCE et de le remettre à son état initial (à la mise sous tension).

8.2.1.3 Service de configuration ETTD vers DCE

Ce service doit fournir un moyen permettant à l'ETTD de configurer diverses caractéristiques du DCE, y compris celles que la gestion système peut régler en utilisant des demandes Ph-SET-VALUE (voir le Tableau 4). Il doit également fournir un moyen facultatif au niveau du

DCE permettant à l'ETTD de lancer des comptes-rendus d'état du DCE par utilisation préemptive du service de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETDD.

8.2.1.4 Service d'émission de messages ETDD vers DCE

Ce service doit fournir un moyen permettant à l'ETTD d'émettre un message à travers le DCE, destiné soit au(x) support(s) connecté(s) soit en retour vers l'ETTD proprement dit ou les deux à la fois, ces options étant déterminées par les valeurs opérationnelles courantes des paramètres spécifiés dans le Tableau 4. La régulation de ce service doit être assurée par le DCE.

Ce service est invoqué sur réception d'une demande de DONNÉES PH spécifiant le DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ à l'interface de service PhL et son exécution se poursuit jusqu'à réception et achèvement de la demande de DONNÉES PH spécifiant la FIN DES DONNÉES ET DE L'ACTIVITÉ.

8.2.1.5 Service de notification de défauts DCE vers ETDD

Ce service doit fournir un moyen permettant à tout moment au DCE de rendre compte d'un défaut. La nature spécifique du défaut n'est pas indiquée par ce service mais peut être déterminée en utilisant le service de configuration ETDD vers DCE pour lancer un rapport d'état, facultatif au niveau du DCE.

8.2.1.6 Service d'indication d'activité des supports DCE vers ETDD

Ce service doit fournir un moyen permettant au DCE de rendre compte de la détection supposée, sur l'un de ses supports connectés pour lesquels la réception est activée (voir le Tableau 4), d'une signalisation provenant de lui-même ou d'autres entités de la couche Ph. Lorsque le rebouclage est activé, ce service rend uniquement compte de la signalisation du DCE lui-même.

Lorsque l'interface ETDD-DCE est en mode semi-duplex et que le rebouclage n'est pas activé, ce service n'a pas besoin de rendre compte de l'activité de support résultant directement du service d'émission de messages ETDD vers DCE.

8.2.1.7 Service de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETDD

Ce service doit fournir un moyen permettant au DCE de rendre compte de la réception d'une séquence de PhPDU provenant de tout support connecté dont la réception est activée. Ce service s'achève par une indication précisant si la séquence de PhPDU reçues était bien formée. Des erreurs dans la séquence, y compris le nombre de PhPDU, laissant supposer une émission incorrecte résultant de l'invocation du service d'émission de messages DCE vers ETDD; doit être rapportée comme étant une séquence mal formée (erronée).

NOTE Il faut que des erreurs d'alignement d'octets d'un délimiteur de fin reçu par rapport au délimiteur de début précédent (c'est-à-dire non séparés par un nombre entier d'octets de bits de données) soient rapportées comme une séquence mal formée.

Lorsque l'interface ETDD-DCE est en mode semi-duplex et que le rebouclage n'est pas activé, ce service n'a pas besoin de rendre compte du message transmis par le service d'émission de messages DCE vers ETDD.

8.2.2 Interfaces de signalisation

8.2.2.1 Aperçu général

Deux interfaces de signalisation sont définies pour les couches PhL de Type 1. La première interface existait dans les éditions précédentes de la présente norme et elle est conservée à des fins de compatibilité, bien qu'il n'y ait pas de mise en œuvre connue. Elle est définie de 8.2.2.2 à 8.2.2.4.

La seconde interface utilise le protocole bien connu SPI (serial peripheral interface – interface périphérique série) ainsi que des signaux, ou équivalent, dont les registres d'octets et les FIFO du DCE sont lus et écrits par l'ETTD, le DCE étant capable d'interrompre l'ETTD.

NOTE Il n'existe pas de norme officielle pour le protocole SPI, bien qu'il soit utilisé par de nombreux fournisseurs de matériel électronique.

8.2.2.2 Signaux d'interface (version historique des éditions précédentes)

8.2.2.2.1 Aperçu général

Si l'interface ETTD-DCE est exposée, elle doit fournir les signaux spécifiés dans le Tableau 26.

Tableau 26 – Signaux à l'interface ETTD-DCE

Signal	Abréviation	Origine
Horloge d'émission	TxC	DCE
Demande pour émettre	RTS	ETTD
Prêt à émettre	CTS	DCE
Données d'émission	TxD	ETTD
Horloge de réception	RxC	DCE
Activité de réception	RxA	DCE
Réception de données et verrouillage de trame	RDF	DCE

Les niveaux de signaux doivent être tels que présentés dans le Tableau 27. En général, les deux côtés de l'interface doivent fonctionner à la même valeur approximative de V_{DD} . Il est cependant admis qu'un ETTD et un DCE ayant des alimentations séparées peuvent ne pas atteindre tous deux la tension opérationnelle V_{DD} de manière simultanée. Il est souhaitable, mais non obligatoire, que le service de réinitialisation ETTD vers DCE soit opérationnel avant que le DCE n'atteigne sa tension opérationnelle V_{DD} . Il est également souhaitable que l'ETTD invoque ce service à chaque fois que sa propre tension V_{DD} est inférieure aux marges opérationnelles.

Tableau 27 – Niveaux de signaux pour une interface ETTD-DCE exposée

Symbole	Paramètre	Condition	Limite	Unité	Remarque
V_{OL}	Tension de sortie de niveau bas maximale	$I_{out} = \pm 100 \mu A$	0,1	V	Voir Note 1
		$I_{out} = +1,6 \text{ mA}$	0,4	V	
V_{OH}	Tension de sortie de niveau haut minimale	$I_{out} = \pm 100 \mu A$	$V_{DD} - 0,1$	V	Voir Note 1
		$I_{out} = -0,8 \text{ mA}$	$V_{DD} - 0,8$	V	Voir Note 2
V_{IL}	Tension d'entrée de niveau bas maximale		$0,2 V_{DD}$	V	
V_{IH}	Tension d'entrée de niveau haut minimale		$0,7 V_{DD}$	V	Voir Note 3

NOTE 1 Donne la capacité d'entraîner deux charges CMOS typiques.

NOTE 2 La compatibilité d'une entrée CMOS avec une sortie TTL nécessite une résistance de polarisation de l'entrée du signal vers V_{DD} .

NOTE 3 La compatibilité d'une sortie CMOS pour $3,0 \text{ V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5,5 \text{ V}$. La compatibilité d'une sortie TTL ($4,75 \text{ V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5,25 \text{ V}$) nécessite une résistance de polarisation de l'entrée du signal vers V_{DD} .

Les caractéristiques temporelles de ces signaux doivent être au moins égales à celles spécifiées pour le DCE concerné dans les exigences de la présente norme. Cependant, le temps de transition entre $0,3 V_{DD}$ et $0,6 V_{DD}$ ne doit en aucun cas être supérieur à 100 ns ou $0,025 P$, selon que l'une ou l'autre valeur est la plus faible. P est défini comme étant la période nominale d'émission d'octet – l'inverse du débit nominal des PhSDU.

Une mise en œuvre de l'interface ETDD-DCE doit fonctionner correctement à des fréquences d'horloge d'émission et de réception (TxC et RxC) comprises entre 1 kHz et 8,8 fois le débit des PhSDU le plus élevé pris en charge dans la mise en œuvre de l'ETDD ou du DCE.

NOTE Le débit des PhSDU et le débit binaire équivalent, disponibles dans une mise en œuvre donnée sont fournis dans la Déclaration de conformité d'une instance de protocole (PICS).

8.2.2.2.2 Horloge d'émission (TxC)

Le signal d'horloge d'émission (TxC) doit fournir à l'ETDD un signal de synchronisation continu, de sorte que huit cycles consécutifs complets de ce signal doivent avoir la même période d'octets que la période d'émission nominale d'un octet de données. Le DCE doit fournir ce signal à deux phases nominales, de façon à ce que chaque phase ait une durée d'au moins $0,04 P$.

NOTE Cette spécification permet à TxC d'être une horloge continue, à période constante, à un débit binaire nominal (8 fois le débit nominal d'octets) avec un facteur d'utilisation de 32 % à 68 % ou d'être une horloge de fréquence plus élevée dont certains cycles sont omis et ayant un facteur d'utilisation proche de 50 %. Ceci permet par exemple une synchronisation simple dans un DCE qui recode chaque 4 bits en 5 bauds; le DCE peut avoir une horloge égale à 10 fois le débit nominal d'octets avec un facteur d'utilisation compris entre 40 % et 60 %, et pourrait omettre (les mêmes) deux cycles à chaque octet.

TxC prend en charge les services de configuration et d'émission de messages ETDD vers DCE.

8.2.2.2.3 Demande pour émettre (RTS)

Le signal RTS (request-to-send – demande pour émettre) prend en charge les services de réinitialisation, de configuration et d'émission de messages ETDD vers DCEE. L'ETDD doit fournir ce signal. L'état initial (à la mise sous tension) et au repos (pas de service ETDD vers DCE actif) de ce signal doit être bas.

Lorsqu'il est référencé à TxC à l'interface ETDD-DCE, ce signal doit avoir un temps minimal de montée de 100 ns ou $0,025 P$ selon que l'une ou l'autre valeur est la plus faible; le temps de maintien doit être d'au moins zéro.

8.2.2.2.4 Prêt à émettre (CTS)

Le signal CTS (clear-to-send – prêt à émettre) prend en charge les services de configuration et d'émission de messages ETDD vers DCE. Le DCE doit fournir ce signal. L'état initial (à la mise sous tension) et au repos (pas de service ETDD vers DCE actif) de ce signal doit être bas.

Lorsqu'il est référencé à TxC à l'interface ETDD-DCE, ce signal doit avoir un temps minimal de montée de 100 ns ou $0,025 P$ selon que l'une ou l'autre valeur est la plus faible; le temps de maintien doit être d'au moins zéro.

8.2.2.2.5 Données d'émission (TxD)

Le signal TxD (Transmit Data – données d'émission) prend en charge les services de réinitialisation, de configuration et d'émission de messages ETDD vers DCE. Les données binaires sont transmises de l'ETDD vers le DCE au cours d'une phase des deux derniers services et au cours de cette phase, un binaire 0 est représenté par un niveau bas sur TxD et un binaire 1 par un niveau haut sur TxD, tous deux étant prélevés sur le front descendant de TxC.

L'ETTD doit fournir ce signal. L'état initial (à la mise sous tension) et au repos (pas de service ETTD vers DCE actif) de ce signal doit être haut.

Lorsqu'il est référencé à Tx_C à l'interface ETTD-DCE, ce signal doit avoir un temps minimal de montée de 100 ns ou 0,025 *P* selon que l'une ou l'autre valeur est la plus faible; le temps de maintien doit être d'au moins zéro.

8.2.2.2.6 Horloge de réception (Rx_C)

Le signal Rx_C (Receive Clock – horloge de réception) doit fournir à l'ETTD un signal de synchronisation à deux phases nominales, intermittent (semi-continu), qui définit la synchronisation des informations notifiées via le signal RDF. Le DCE doit fournir ce signal de façon à ce que lorsque Rx_C est défini pour être significatif (voir 8.2.2.2.7), chaque phase a une durée d'au moins 0,04 *P*.

NOTE Cette spécification permet à Rx_C d'être une horloge récupérée au débit binaire nominal (8 fois le débit nominal d'octets) avec un facteur d'utilisation de 32 % à 68 %; ou d'être une horloge de fréquence plus élevée dont certains cycles sont omis et ayant un facteur d'utilisation proche de 50 %. Ceci permet par exemple une synchronisation simple dans un DCE qui décode 4 bits de chaque 5 bauds reçus; le DCE pourrait avoir une horloge égale à 10 fois le débit nominal d'octets avec un facteur d'utilisation compris entre 40 % et 60 %, et pourrait omettre deux cycles à chaque octet.

Cette spécification permet également au DCE d'omettre des cycles de Rx_C pendant la reconnaissance de séquences longues de délimiteurs de fin de PhPDU, de sorte que le délimiteur peut être notifié en temps réel en utilisant 8 cycles, ou moins, de Rx_C (voir 8.2.2.3.7).

Rx_C doit prendre en charge le service de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETTD.

8.2.2.2.7 Activité de réception (Rx_A)

Le signal Rx_A (Receive Activity – activité de réception) doit prendre en charge les services de notification de défauts, d'indication d'activité des supports et de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETTD. Le DCE doit fournir ce signal. L'état initial (à la mise sous tension) et au repos (pas de service DCE vers ETTD actif) de ce signal doit être bas.

8.2.2.2.8 Réception de données et verrouillage de trame (RDF)

Le signal RDF (Receive Data and Framing – réception de données et verrouillage de trame) doit prendre en charge les services de notification de défauts et de comptes-rendus de messages DCE vers ETTD. Les données binaires sont transmises du DCE vers l'ETTD pendant certaines phases du dernier service et au cours de cette phase, un binaire 0 est représenté par un niveau bas sur RDF et un binaire 1 par un niveau haut sur RDF, tous deux étant prélevés sur le front descendant de Rx_C.

Le DCE doit fournir ce signal. L'état initial (à la mise sous tension) et au repos (pas de service DCE vers ETTD actif) de ce signal doit être haut.

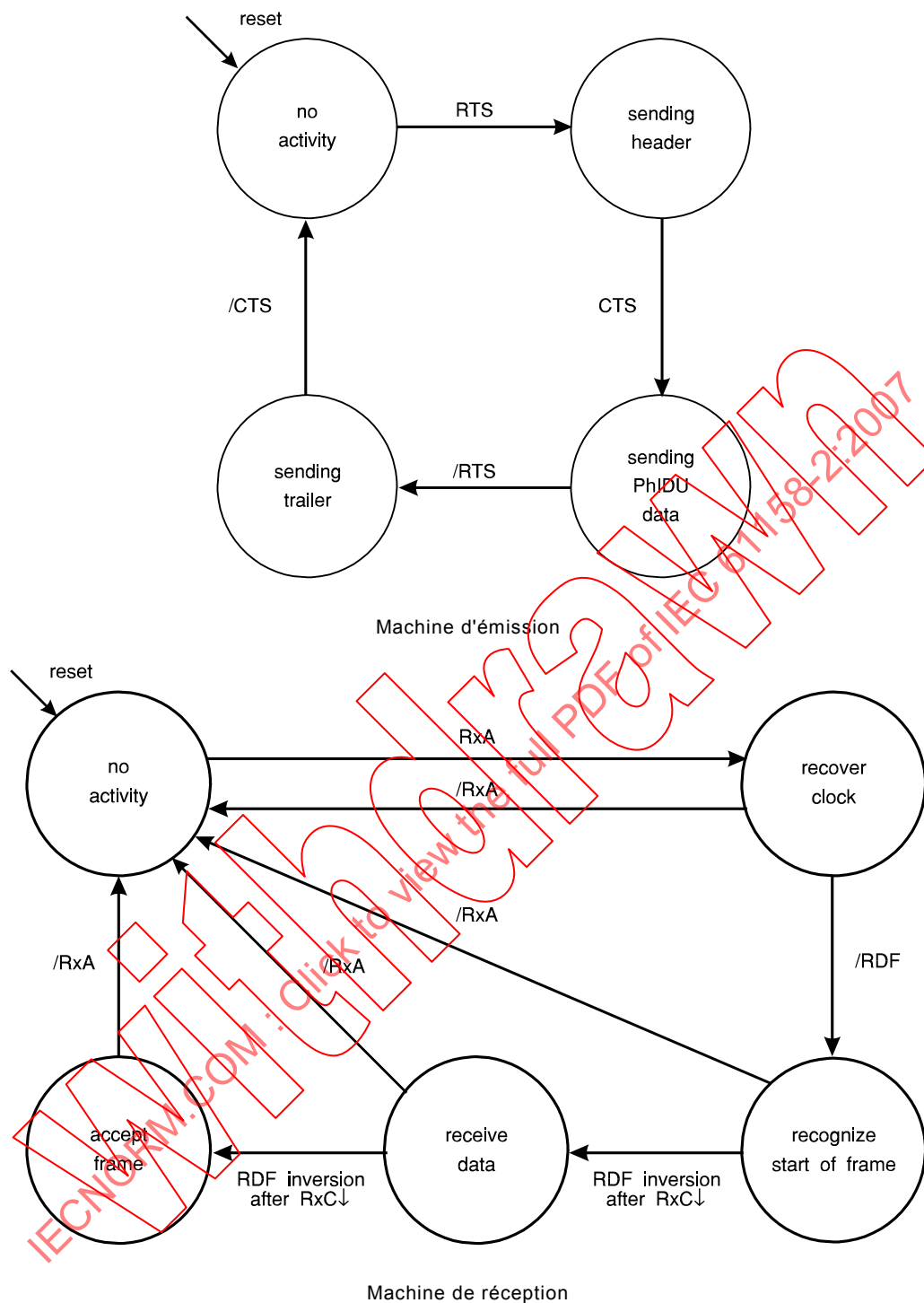
Lorsqu'il est référence sur Rx_C au niveau de l'interface ETTD-DCE, ce signal doit avoir un temps de montée minimal de 100 ns ou 0,025 *P* selon que l'une ou l'autre valeur est la plus faible; le temps de maintien doit être d'au moins zéro.

8.2.2.3 Codage des services dans des signaux

8.2.2.3.1 Récapitulatif

Les services décrits en 8.1 doivent être mis en œuvre par les séquences suivantes et les combinaisons de signaux décrites en 8.2.

NOTE Des machines types de séquençement d'émission et de réception sont illustrées à la Figure 19; cette dernière est incluse dans la présente norme à des fins d'explication et n'implique pas une mise en œuvre spécifique.



Légende

Anglais	Français
reset	Réinitialiser
No activity	Aucune activité
Sending header	Emission d'en-tête
Sending trailer	Emission de postambule
Sending PhIDU data	Emission de données PhIDU
Recover clock	Récupérer horloge
Accept frame	Accepter trame
RDF inversion after Rx C	Inversion de RDF après Rx C

Anglais	Français
Receive data	Données de réception
Recognize start of frame	Reconnaître début de trame

Figure 19 – Machines de séquençement ETTD/DCE**8.2.2.3.2 Service de réinitialisation ETTD vers DCE**

Ce service doit être mutuellement exclusif avec les services de configuration et d'émission de messages ETTD vers DCE; un seul d'entre eux au plus peut être actif à un moment donné. Ce service peut à tout moment préempter les services de configuration et d'émission de messages ETTD vers DCE.

Ce service doit être codé comme un niveau bas simultané à la fois sur RTS et TxD. Lorsqu'il est affirmé par l'ETTD, ce niveau bas simultané doit être maintenu pendant au moins la période d'émission nominale de deux PhSDU (octets).

NOTE 1 Il s'agit d'un service asynchrone et il n'est pas référencé à TxC.

NOTE 2 Lorsqu'un ETTD est lui-même réinitialisé, éventuellement pendant la mise sous tension, il convient qu'il tente de réinitialiser le DCE même lorsque la tension V_{DD} propre aux ETTD est sous les limites opérationnelles normales.

NOTE 3 Cette réinitialisation est sous le contrôle de l'ETTD. Ceci n'exclut pas l'existence d'une broche de réinitialisation séparée sur le DCE.

Si l'ETTD modifie simultanément RTS et TxD au cours de la mise en œuvre du service de configuration ou du service d'émission de messages ETTD vers DCE, l'ETTD doit s'assurer qu'il existe un intervalle égal à au moins le temps de montée minimal exigé entre le passage d'un signal à un niveau haut et par la suite, le passage de l'autre signal à un niveau bas, de manière à éliminer les dangers logiques potentiels liés à la mise en œuvre dans les DCE du service de réinitialisation ETTD vers DCE.

8.2.2.3.3 Service de configuration ETTD vers DCE

Ce service est mutuellement exclusif avec les services de réinitialisation et d'émission de messages ETTD vers DCE; un seul d'entre eux au plus peut être actif à un moment donné. Ce service peut lancer le service de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETTD pour rendre compte de l'état interne du DCE. Le service de réinitialisation ETTD vers DCE peut à tout moment préempter ce service.

Ce service doit être mis en œuvre en trois phases; chacune des deux dernières phases doit suivre immédiatement l'achèvement de la phase précédente.

NOTE 1 Ces phases peuvent être mises en œuvre comme une variation mineure des trois phases spécifiées pour le service d'émission de messages ETTD vers DCE. De ce fait, le service de configuration ETTD vers DCE induit un très léger supplément de complexité pour l'ETTD et le DCE.

- 1) L'ETTD doit affirmer (monter) RTS après le front descendant, et avant le front montant, de TxC. Le DCE doit répondre en anticipant les données de configuration.
- 2) Lorsqu'il est prêt pour les données de configuration en provenance de l'ETTD, le DCE doit monter CTS avant le front descendant de TxC. L'ETTD doit répondre en codant le premier bit des données de configuration (1 pour haut, 0 pour bas) sur TxD avant le front descendant de TxC suivant, et doit poursuivre ce processus sans interruption jusqu'à ce que de 2 à 200 bits de données (voir 8.2.2.4) aient été ainsi codés. L'ETTD doit ensuite affirmer (monter) TxD et inverser (descendre) RTS avant le front descendant de TxC suivant.

NOTE 2 Il convient que l'ETTD s'assure que TxD monte d'au moins une durée de montée avant que RTS ne descende, pour éviter les dangers logiques potentiels liés à la mise en œuvre dans les DCE du service de réinitialisation ETTD vers DCE.

- 3) Le DCE doit achever toute reconfiguration nécessaire avant d'inverser (descendre) CTS; ceci doit avoir lieu entre deux fronts descendants consécutifs de TxC.

Les deux messages de configuration, normalisés et extensibles, sont définis en 8.2.2.4. Les messages normalisés couvrent les gammes d'application de cette interface qui pourraient être les plus sensibles au coût. Les messages extensibles permettent différentes formes de configuration du DCE lorsque cela est nécessaire et peuvent servir à lancer le service de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETDD pour rendre compte de l'état interne du DCE (une option supplémentaire du DCE est décrite en 8.2.2.4).

8.2.2.3.4 Service d'émission de messages ETDD vers DCE

Ce service est mutuellement exclusif avec les services de réinitialisation et de configuration ETDD vers DCE; un seul d'entre eux au plus peut être actif à un moment donné. Le service de réinitialisation ETDD vers DCE peut à tout moment préempter ce service.

Ce service doit être mis en œuvre en trois phases; chacune des deux dernières phases doit suivre immédiatement l'achèvement de la phase précédente.

- a) L'ETDD doit affirmer (monter) RTS après le front montant, et avant le front descendant de TxC. Le DCE doit répondre en générant et en émettant la séquence de longueur appropriée de PhPDU de préambule (synchroniseur initial) et de délimiteur de début.
- b) Lorsqu'il est prêt pour les données transparentes en provenance de l'ETDD, le DCE doit monter CTS avant le front descendant de TxC. L'ETDD doit répondre en codant le premier bit de données transparentes (1 pour haut, 0 pour bas) sur TxD avant le front descendant suivant de TxC, et doit poursuivre ce processus sans interruption jusqu'à ce que de 3 à 300 octets entiers de données aient été ainsi codés. L'ETDD doit ensuite affirmer (monter) TxD et inverser (descendre) RTS avant le front descendant suivant de TxC.

NOTE L'ETDD doit s'assurer que TxD monte d'au moins une durée de montée avant que RTS ne descende, pour éviter les dangers logiques potentiels liés à la mise en œuvre dans les DCE du service de réinitialisation ETDD vers DCE.

- c) Le DCE doit terminer l'émission de toutes les données transparentes codées, reçues de l'ETDD, il doit ensuite générer et émettre la séquence de longueur appropriée de PhPDU de délimiteur de fin et doit alors cesser l'émission. Le DCE doit ensuite attendre pendant une certaine durée égale au gap post-émission minimal configuré (voir Tableau 4) avant d'inverser (descendre) CTS, ce qui doit avoir lieu après un front descendant et avant le front descendant suivant de TxC.

8.2.2.3.5 Service de notification de défauts DCE vers ETDD

Ce service doit être mutuellement exclusif avec les services d'indication d'activité des supports et de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETDD; un seul d'entre eux au plus peut être actif à un moment donné. Ce service peut à tout moment préempter les services d'indication d'activité des supports et de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETDD.

Ce service doit être codé comme un niveau bas simultanément à la fois sur RxA et RDF. Une fois affirmé par le DCE, ce bas niveau simultané doit être maintenu jusqu'à activation de l'un des deux services de réinitialisation ou de configuration ETDD vers DCE.

NOTE Il s'agit d'un service asynchrone et il n'est pas référencé à RxC.

Le DCE peut simultanément modifier à la fois RxA et RDF pendant l'achèvement simultané des services d'indication d'activité des supports et de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETDD. Il incombe à l'ETDD d'éviter les éventuels dangers logiques induits par cette modification concurrente.

8.2.2.3.6 Service d'indication d'activité des supports DCE vers ETDD

Ce service est mutuellement exclusif avec le service de notification de défauts DCE vers ETDD; un seul d'entre eux au plus peut être actif à un moment donné. Le service de notification de défauts DCE vers ETDD peut à tout moment préempter ce service.

Ce service doit être codé comme un niveau haut sur RxA. Une fois affirmé par le DCE, ce haut niveau permet de reconnaître la transition haut vers bas sur RDF afin de lancer le service de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETDD. Toute transition suivante de haut vers bas sur RxA met fin à ce service de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETDD.

NOTE Le service d'indication d'activité des supports DCE vers ETDD est un service asynchrone et n'est pas référencé à RxC.

8.2.2.3.7 Service de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETDD

Ce service est mutuellement exclusif avec le service de notification de défauts DCE vers ETDD; un seul d'entre eux au plus peut être actif à un moment donné. Ce service peut uniquement avoir lieu lorsque le service d'indication d'activité des supports DCE vers ETDD est actif. Le service de notification de défauts DCE vers ETDD peut à tout moment préempter ce service.

8.2.2.3.7.1 Réception non erronée

Ce service doit être mis en œuvre en quatre phases au moment de rendre compte d'un message bien formé; chacune de ces phases doit immédiatement suivre l'achèvement de la phase précédente.

La description suivante s'applique aux DCE qui ont des séquences de délimiteur de fin de huit PhPDU ou moins et qui ne nécessitent pas un temps de décodage supplémentaire pour un code FEC (correction d'erreurs sans voie de retour). Les DCE qui ne satisfont pas à ces conditions peuvent introduire des délais supplémentaires dans leurs processus de décodage et de compte-rendu, de façon à ce que, vis-à-vis de la signalisation sur RxC et RDF, ils puissent effectivement remplir ces conditions.

- a) Après détection de la signalisation reçue, apprentissage relatif à cette signalisation et récupération d'une horloge de données dont la fréquence nominale d'octets est la même que TxC, le DCE doit lancer le service de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETDD en fournissant cette horloge récupérée sur RxC et en inversant (descendant) RDF après le front montant et avant le front descendant suivant de RxC.

NOTE 1 A ce moment-là, RxA est déjà affirmé.

- b) Le DCE doit continuer l'apprentissage et tenter de faire correspondre la signalisation reçue à ses PhPDU de préambule et de délimiteur de début.

Si le DCE prend en charge N canaux de supports redondants, il peut rendre compte sur RDF de l'identité du canal dont la signalisation est reçue en codant ce numéro de canal dans une plage de 0 à $N-1$, comme nombre binaire qui est notifié en envoyant le bit de poids fort en premier lieu, pendant la réception des trois derniers de ces PhPDU de délimiteur de début. Les bits notifiés sur RDF doivent être présentés en série après des fronts montants successifs de RxC et à chaque fois avant le front descendant de RxC qui le suit immédiatement.

Sur détection d'une correspondance exacte entre la signalisation reçue et le délimiteur de début attendu, le DCE doit inverser RDF après le front descendant et avant le front montant suivant de RxC.

NOTE 2 Si l'identité du canal de réception a été notifiée sur RDF, cette inversion aura lieu au cours de la phase de niveau bas de \1,\2 qui suit immédiatement la phase de niveau haut (de \1,\2) au cours de laquelle le dernier bit (d'ordre inférieur) du numéro de canal a été notifié.

- c) Le DCE doit poursuivre la réception et tenter de faire correspondre la signalisation reçue aux données éventuelles et aux PhPDU de délimiteur de fin attendues.

Le DCE doit rendre compte de chaque bit de données décodé à partir de la signalisation reçue sur RDF. Les bits notifiés sur RDF doivent être présentés en série après des fronts montants successifs de $\setminus 1, \setminus 2$, à chaque fois avant le front descendant immédiatement suivant de RxC. En l'absence d'erreurs, ces bits doivent être notifiés dans le même ordre et avec les mêmes valeurs qu'en cas d'émission par une entité PhL homologue.

NOTE 3 Ceci est une garantie de transparence.

Un délimiteur de fin peut être constitué de PhPDU données et non données. Le DCE peut de la même manière rendre compte sur RDF de chaque bit de données décodé à partir d'un délimiteur de fin et peut également rendre compte sur RDF d'un nombre approprié de valeurs de données pour les PhPDU non données décodées à partir d'un délimiteur de fin, à l'exception du fait que

- 1) le nombre total de "bits" ainsi notifié doit être de sept ou moins, et
- 2) sur détection d'une correspondance exacte entre la signalisation reçue et les délimiteurs de fin attendus, le DCE ne doit pas rendre compte sur RDF d'un autre bit correspondant au dernier "bit" du délimiteur de fin mais doit plutôt d'abord affirmer (monter) RDF après le front montant et avant le front descendant suivant de RxC, et doit ensuite inverser (descendre) RDF après le front descendant et avant le front montant suivant de RxC.

NOTE 4 La plupart des applications décodent et notifient, en tant que données, sur RDF, toutes les PhPDU de données initiales dans une séquence de délimiteur de fin reçue. Il n'est pas nécessaire de notifier la première PhPDU non données et les PhPDU suivantes. Cependant, un compte-rendu final sera effectué sur RDF pour indiquer la reconnaissance d'un délimiteur de fin correct.

NOTE 5 Chaque bit notifié, à l'exception du dernier, est maintenu sur RDF pendant un cycle complet de RxC. Le dernier bit est remplacé par une séquence haut-bas, chacune étant maintenue pendant seulement une phase de RxC.

NOTE 6 La séquence haut-bas d'achèvement aura lieu au cours des comptes-rendus du premier "bit" huit qui auront lieu après que le dernier bit de données (pré-délimiteur) ait été notifié. Le dernier bit de données (pré-délimiteur) aura été le $8N^{\text{ème}}$ bit de données ainsi notifié au cours de cette phase et dans ce cas, il convient que N soit au moins égal à trois et ne dépasse pas 300.

- d) Le DCE doit affirmer (monter) RDF avant le front descendant suivant de RxC et ne doit lancer une autre instance du service de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETDD qu'une fois terminé le service d'indication d'activité des supports DCE vers ETDD en cours.

8.2.2.3.7.2 Réception erronée

Une erreur peut être détectée au cours de toute phase du processus de réception décrit en 8.2.2.3.7.1. Lorsque cette détection a lieu, le DCE doit modifier le séquençement de ces phases de la manière suivante:

Si le DCE détecte des PhPDU invalides ou une séquence invalide de PhPDU, ou encore une séquence valide de PhPDU de délimiteur de fin qui n'est pas séparée des PhPDU de délimiteur de début par un nombre entier d'octets de données de PhPDU; et si le DCE peut établir un signal valide sur RxC (par exemple en remplaçant si nécessaire la source d'horloge récupérée par TxC ou par un autre signal local); dans ce cas

- a) si la phase 2 n'a pas encore été lancée, le DCE doit immédiatement lancer la phase 2;
- b) si la phase 2 ne s'est pas encore terminée, le DCE doit immédiatement terminer la phase 2 aussi rapidement que possible, en ignorant l'exigence de correspondance de la séquence de PhPDU de délimiteur de début;
- c) dans le cas contraire, le DCE doit immédiatement inverser (descendre) RDF après le front montant et avant le front descendant suivant de RxC, puis doit affirmer (monter) RDF après le front descendant et avant le front montant suivant de RxC.

NOTE Cette séquence permet au DCE

- d'activer l'utilisation de RxC par l'ETDD;
- d'identifier le canal qui comporte la signalisation erronée; et

– d'indiquer une erreur de réception.

Une fois que le DCE a achevé autant d'étapes a), b) et c) ci-dessus que nécessaire et possible, le DCE doit immédiatement lancer la phase 4.

8.2.2.4 Messages de configuration de DCE

8.2.2.4.1 Récapitulatif

Le présent paragraphe définit les messages de configuration normalisés ainsi que la partie normalisée des messages de configuration extensibles. Les messages normalisés couvrent les gammes d'application de cette interface qui devraient être les plus communément utilisées. Les messages extensibles permettent différentes formes de configuration du DCE, lorsque cela est nécessaire, et peuvent servir à lancer le service de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETTD pour rendre compte de l'état interne du DCE (une option du DCE).

Deux messages normalisés et deux classes de messages extensibles sont définis. Tous les messages sont transmis sur l'interface dans l'ordre de définition des bits. Les entiers sont transmis avec le bit de poids fort (MSB) en premier.

Les deux messages normalisés et les deux classes de messages extensibles sont différenciés par les deux premiers bits de données du message de configuration, de la manière suivante:

- 00 – message de configuration de base;
- 01 – message de commande de diversité de trajectoires;
- 10 – message de configuration extensible;
- 11 – message d'invocation du rapport d'état extensible.

8.2.2.4.2 Message de configuration de base

A la suite de ses deux bits initiaux (00), le message de configuration de base spécifie les aspects opérationnels communs à la plupart des DCE. Les composantes définies de ce message sont, par ordre d'émission:

- a) le mode opérationnel du DCE, codé sur un bit de données comme présenté. La valeur de ce paramètre après activation du service de réinitialisation ETTD vers DCE est 0;
 - 0 Simultané bidirectionnel (duplex intégral), où chaque invocation du Service d'émission de messages ETTD vers DCE active automatiquement les services d'indication d'activité des supports et de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETTD;

NOTE 1 Ce mode est souhaitable pour les supports à double canal, tels que le câblage à paire de fibre optique. Il est possible que certains ETTD ne soient capables de fonctionner que dans ce mode.

- 1 Bidirectionnel à l'alternat (semi-duplex), où une invocation du service d'émission de messages ETTD vers DCE n'active pas automatiquement les services d'indication d'activité des supports et de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETTD;

NOTE 2 Ce mode permet de réduire la consommation d'énergie du DCE et de l'interface ETTD-DCE. Il est possible que certains ETTD ne soient capables de fonctionner que dans ce mode.

- b) la sélection de l'origine des données internes au DCE pour le service de compte-rendu de messages, codé sur deux bits de données comme présenté (voir le Tableau 4). La valeur de ce paramètre après activation du service de réinitialisation ETTD vers DCE est 00. Lorsque la sélection est non zéro, l'émission sur tous les supports connectés doit être désactivée et l'interface ETTD-DCE doit fonctionner en mode bidirectionnel simultané (duplex intégral);
 - 00 signalisation décodée, reçue de l'un des supports connectés, comme spécifié en 8.2.2.4.3 b) et c). Le mode d'interface est tel que spécifié en 8.2.2.4.2 a);
 - 01 compte-rendu d'état interne, voir 8.2.2.5.1 et 8.2.2.6;

- 10 rebouclage aussi proche que possible de l'interface ETDD-DCE, avec aucune émission vers les supports connectés, et dans ce cas, chaque invocation du service d'émission de messages ETDD vers DCE active automatiquement les services d'indication d'activité des supports et de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETDD;

NOTE 3 Ce mode est souhaitable pour le DCE, par rapport à l'ETDD, en ce qui concerne la localisation des défauts d'interconnexion.

- 11 rebouclage aussi proche que possible de la ou des interfaces de support, avec aucune émission vers les supports connectés, et dans ce cas, chaque invocation du service d'émission de messages ETDD vers DCE active automatiquement les services d'indication d'activité des supports et de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETDD.

NOTE 4 Ce mode est souhaitable pour une auto-évaluation avant entrée sur un réseau opérationnel.

- c) il convient d'étendre la valeur du préambule qui est la séquence initiale de PHPDU dans chaque émission. Sa plage est de zéro à sept unités d'extension, codée en trois bits de données comme 0 (000) à 7 (111). La valeur de ce paramètre après activation du service de réinitialisation ETDD vers DCE est 0 (000) (Voir Note 2 de 6.2.2.2);
- d) il convient d'étendre la valeur du gap post-émission obligatoire qui est la période de non-émission entre des séquences successives de PHPDU. Sa plage est de zéro à sept unités d'extension, codée en trois bits de données comme 0 (000) à 7 (111). La valeur de ce paramètre après activation du service de réinitialisation ETDD vers DCE est 0 (000) (Voir Note 3 de 6.2.2.2).

8.2.2.4.3 Message de commande de diversité de trajectoires

A la suite de ses deux bits initiaux de (01), le message de commande de diversité de trajectoires spécifie des données de configuration supplémentaires, généralement requises pour la gestion et l'évaluation de défauts de trajectoires redondantes: les commandes séparées d'émission et de réception pour chacun des supports redondants connectés (canaux et trajectoires). Les composantes définies de ce message sont, par ordre d'émission:

- a) deux bits zéro (00), qui assurent l'alignement des quartets et des octets dans le message pour les champs suivants;
- b) l'algorithme de choix entre supports redondants comme origine de la signalisation reçue lorsque plusieurs supports sont activés pour la réception, codé en quatre bits comme indiqué. La valeur de ce paramètre après activation du service de réinitialisation ETDD vers DCE est 0000;

0000 – Il convient que le support sélectionné pour la réception soit le premier support sur lequel est détectée la signalisation appropriée pour l'apprentissage du récepteur;

1000 à 1111 ($= 7 + N$, $1 \leq N \leq 8$) – Il convient de sélectionner le $N^{\text{ème}}$ support sauf lorsque la signalisation appropriée pour l'apprentissage du récepteur a été détectée sur un autre support pendant une période de temps égale à la période supplémentaire d'extension du gap entre trames, spécifiée en 8.2.2.4.2 d), auquel cas il convient de sélectionner un autre support;

- c) la sélection de l'activation (0) ou de l'inhibition (1) de la réception sur chacun des huit supports redondants, ou moins, codée sur huit bits consécutifs pour les canaux 1 à 8, respectivement (voir le Tableau 4). La valeur de ce paramètre après activation du service de réinitialisation ETDD vers DCE est 0000 0000;
- d) la sélection de l'activation (0) ou de l'inhibition (1) de l'émission sur chacun des huit supports redondants, ou moins, codée sur huit bits consécutifs pour les canaux 1 à 8, respectivement (voir le Tableau 4). La valeur de ce paramètre après activation du service de réinitialisation ETDD vers DCE est 0000 0000;
- e) la valeur d'extension du gap post-émission, due à une éventuelle dérive du signal entre supports redondants. Sa plage est de zéro à sept unités d'extension, codée en trois bits de données comme 0 (000) à 7 (111). La valeur de ce paramètre après activation du service de réinitialisation ETDD vers DCE est 0 (000) (voir 8.2.2.4.2 d), 8.2.2.4.3 b), et Note 3 de 6.2.2.2).

8.2.2.5 Messages de configuration extensibles

A la suite de ses deux bits initiaux (10), le codage des messages de configuration extensibles peut dépendre de l'application. La structure et la forme des messages de configuration extensibles doivent être les mêmes que celles du message de configuration de base spécifiées en 8.2.2.4.2.

8.2.2.5.1 Messages d'invocation du rapport d'état extensible

A la suite de ses deux bits initiaux (11), le codage des messages d'invocation de rapport d'état extensible peut dépendre de l'application. La structure et la forme des messages d'invocation de rapport d'état extensible doivent être les mêmes que celles du message de configuration de base spécifiées en 8.2.2.4.2. Les informations spécifiées doivent sélectionner une source interne au DCE de signalisation reçue et si le mode source de données internes au DCE est "compte-rendu d'état" (voir 8.2.2.4.2 b)), le DCE doit générer un message à octets de données multiples, rempli (bourrage) autant que nécessaire pour obtenir un multiple d'octets et doit le notifier en utilisant les services d'indication d'activité des supports et de compte-rendu de messages DCE vers ETTD.

8.2.2.6 Rapports d'état générés par le DCE

Ces rapports sont générés dans le DCE sur demande et notifiés lorsque la source de données internes au DCE est "rapport d'état interne" (voir 8.2.2.4.2 b)).

8.3 Type 3: Interface ETTD-DCE

8.3.1 Transmission synchrone

L'interface ETTD-DCE spécifiée pour le Type 1 doit être utilisée (voir 8.2).

8.3.2 Transmission asynchrone

L'interface ETTD-DCE n'est pas exposée en transmission asynchrone.

8.4 Type 8: Interface MIS — MDS

8.4.1 Généralités

La PhL est subdivisée en une MIS (Sous-couche indépendante du Support) et une MDS (Sous-couche dépendante du support). Ces deux couches sont connectées par l'interface MIS-MDS.

L'interface MIS-MDS est une interface fonctionnelle qui prend en charge certains services; il n'est pas obligatoire que cette interface soit réalisée électriquement. Chacun de ces services est mis en œuvre par une séquence d'interactions de signaux d'interface.

8.4.2 Services

8.4.2.1 Généralités

L'interface MIS-MDS prend en charge les services décrits ci-dessous:

- le service de demande de cycle d'identification
- le service de demande de cycle de données
- le service de classification de séquences de données
- le service d'identification de séquences de données
- le service d'émission de messages
- le service de réception de messages

– la réinitialisation du bus

8.4.2.2 Service de demande de cycle d'identification

Ce service permet à la MIS de démarrer une séquence de données pour transmettre des données d'identification et de commande (cycle d'identification).

NOTE Ce service est utilisé par un maître uniquement.

8.4.2.3 Service de demande de cycle de données

Ce service permet à la MIS de démarrer une séquence de données pour la transmission de données utilisateur (cycle de données).

NOTE Ce service est utilisé par un maître uniquement.

8.4.2.4 Service de classification de séquences de données

Ce service permet à la MIS de démarrer un cycle d'identification ou de données.

NOTE Ce service est utilisé uniquement par un coupleur de bus ou un esclave.

8.4.2.5 Service d'identification de séquences de données

Ce service permet à la MDS d'indiquer le début d'un cycle d'identification ou de données.

8.4.2.6 Service d'émission de messages

Ce service permet à la MIS d'envoyer un message, via la MDS, soit au support connecté, soit en retour vers une autre MDS. La MDS détermine la vitesse d'exécution de ce service.

NOTE 1 Ce service émet les PhIDU acheminées vers la PhL.

NOTE 2 Ce service est exécuté simultanément au service de réception des messages.

8.4.2.7 Service de réception de messages

Ce service permet à la MDS d'indiquer la réception d'un message à la MIS ou à une autre MDS connectée. Le service se termine par une indication spécifiant si la PhPDU reçue était correctement formée.

NOTE Ce service doit être précédé par un service d'identification de séquences de données.

8.4.2.8 Réinitialisation du bus

Ce service permet d'envoyer et de recevoir une réinitialisation de tous les esclaves. Le Tableau 28 présente les paramètres de réinitialisation du bus MDS.

Tableau 28 – Réinitialisation du bus MDS

Paramètre du service	Demande	Indication
reset_type (type de réinitialisation)	M	M

reset_type (type de réinitialisation):

Ce paramètre de service indique si la réinitialisation est courte ou longue.

Plage de valeurs: courte, longue

NOTE Ce service est utilisé par un maître uniquement.

8.4.3 Signaux d'interface

L'interface MIS-MDS met à disposition les signaux énumérés dans le Tableau 29.

Tableau 29 – Signaux à l'interface MIS-MDS

Signal d'interface	Mnémonique	Origine
Horloge d'émission	TxC	MIS
Demande pour émettre	RTS	MIS
Prêt à émettre	CTS	MDS
Séquence d'émission	TxS	MIS
Ligne de sélection d'émission	TxSL	MIS
Ligne de commande d'émission	TxCR	MIS
Données d'émission	TxD	MIS
Délai de demande 1	RqDly1	MIS
Délai de demande 2	RqDly2	MIS
Occupé	BSY	MDS
Horloge de réception	RxC	MDS
Activité de réception	RxA	MDS
Séquence de réception	RxS	MDS
Ligne de sélection de réception	RxSL	MDS
Ligne de commande de réception	RxCR	MDS
Données de réception	RxD	MDS
Réinitialisation-sortie	RO	MIS
Réinitialisation-entrée	RI	MDS

8.4.4 Conversion des services en signaux d'interface

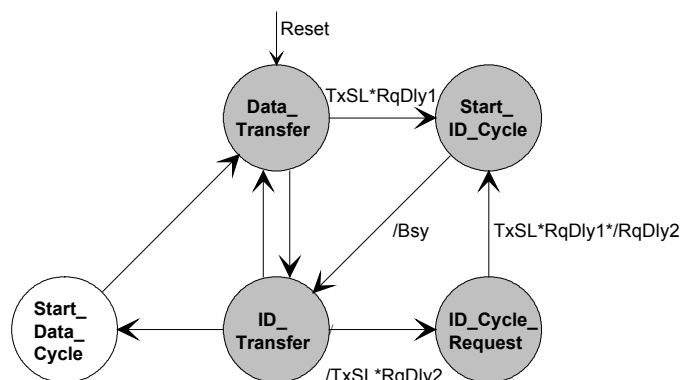
8.4.4.1 Généralités

Les services de l'interface MIS-MDS sont représentés par des machines protocolaires et des séquences de signaux décrites de 8.4.4.1 à 8.4.4.8.

NOTE La convention suivante s'applique aux diagrammes d'état illustrés de la Figure 20 à la Figure 28:
Le symbole "*" correspond au "Et Logique", le symbole "/" correspond à "inversion".

8.4.4.2 Service de demande de cycle d'identification

La Figure 20 décrit ce service avec les quatre services en gris ainsi que leurs transitions.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Reset	Réinitialiser
Data_Transfer	Transfert de données
TxSL * RqDly 1	TxSL * RqDly 1
Start_ID_Cycle	Démarrer cycle d'identification
/Bsy	/Occupation
Start_Data_Cycle	Démarrer cycle de données
ID_Transfer	Transfert d'identifiant
ID_Cycle_Request	Demande de cycle d'identification

Figure 20 – Transitions d'état avec le service de demande de cycle d'identification

NOTE 1 Les transitions qui ne sont pas illustrées en Figure 20 sont utilisées pour d'autres services; voir la Figure 23 et la Figure 25 pour les états et transitions correspondants.

Le cycle d'identification était précédé d'un cycle de données ou d'une réinitialisation:

Etat **Data_Transfer**:

La MIS lance un service de demande de cycle d'identification en modifiant le signal TxSL (de 0 logique à 1 logique) ainsi que, simultanément, le signal RqDly1 (de 0 logique à 1 logique).

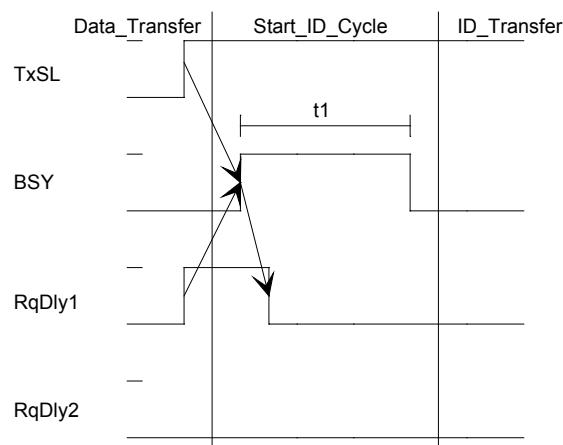
Etat **Start_ID_Cycle**:

Ensuite, la MDS transmet l'état PhPDU correspondant, démarre un temporisateur d'une durée t1 et établit le signal BSY (occupé) en le faisant passer du 0 logique au 1 logique. La MIS réinitialise le signal RqDly1 au 0 logique.

A la fin de la durée t1, la MDS met le signal BSY au 0 logique et achève le service de demande de cycle d'identification. La MIS communique cela à la DLL au moyen d'une primitive de confirmation de DONNÉES PH et prend l'état ID_Transfer.

La durée minimale de t1 est de 5 temps binaires.

La Figure 21 illustre les formes de signaux correspondantes à l'interface MIS-MDS pour un service de demande de cycle d'identification suite à un cycle de données.

**Légende**

Anglais	Français
Data_Transfer	Transfert de données
Start_ID_Cycle	Démarrer cycle d'identification
ID_Transfer	Transfert d'identifiant
BSY	OCCUPÉ

Figure 21 – Interface MIS-MDS: service de demande de cycle d'identification

Le cycle d'identification était précédé d'un cycle d'identification:

Etat ID_Transfer:

La MIS lance un service de demande de cycle d'identification en modifiant le signal TxSL (de 1 logique à 0 logique) ainsi que, simultanément, le signal RqDly2 (de 0 logique à 1 logique).

Etat ID_Cycle_Request:

Ensuite, la MDS transmet l'état PhPDU correspondant, démarre un temporisateur d'une durée t_2 et établit le signal BSY (occupé) en le faisant passer du 0 logique au 1 logique. La MIS réinitialise le signal RqDly2 au 0 logique.

A la fin de la durée t_2 , la MDS met le signal BSY au 0 logique. La sous-couche MIS modifie ensuite le signal TxSL (de 0 logique à 1 logique) ainsi que, simultanément, le signal RqDly1 (de 0 logique à 1 logique).

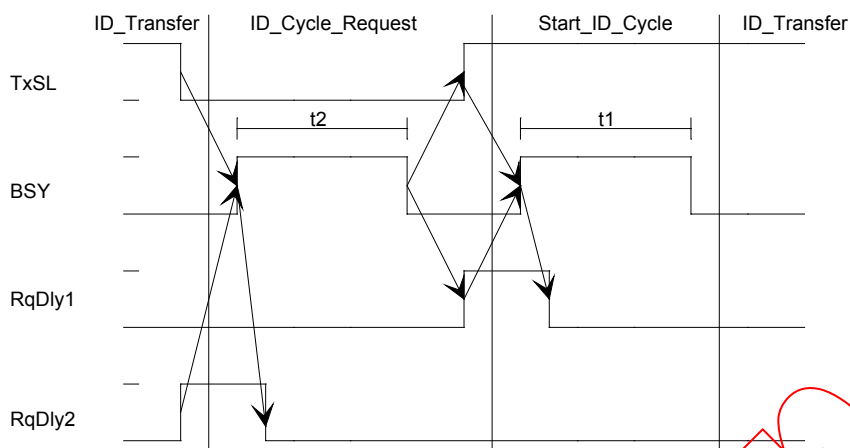
La durée minimale de t_2 est de 25 temps binaires.

Etat Start_ID_Cycle:

Ensuite, la MDS transfère l'état PhPDU correspondant, démarre un temporisateur d'une durée T_1 et établit le signal BSY (occupé) en le faisant passer du 0 logique au 1 logique. La MIS réinitialise alors le signal RqDly1 au 0 logique.

A la fin de la durée t_1 , la MDS met le signal BSY au 0 logique et achève le service de demande de cycle d'identification. La MIS communique cela à la DLL au moyen d'une primitive de confirmation de DONNÉES PH et prend l'état ID_Transfer.

La Figure 22 illustre les formes de signaux correspondantes à l'interface MIS-MDS pour un service de demande de cycle d'identification suite à un cycle d'identification.



Légende

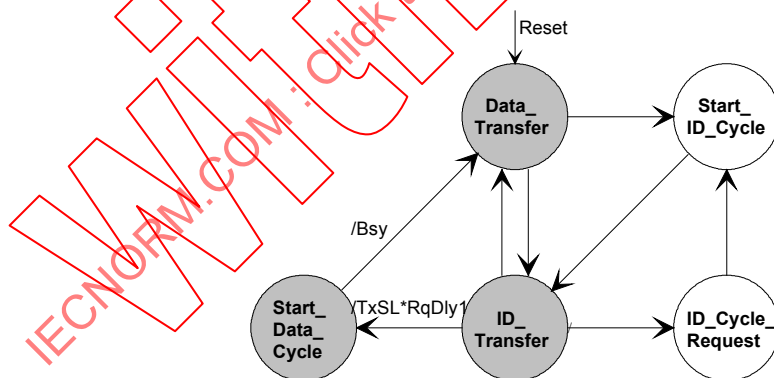
Anglais	Français
ID_Transfer	Transfert d'identifiant
ID_Cycle_Request	Demande de cycle d'identification
Start_ID_Cycle	Démarrer cycle d'identification
ID_Transfer	Transfert d'identifiant
BSY	OCCUPÉ

Figure 22 – Interface MIS-MDS: service de demande de cycle d'identification

NOTE 2 Le service de demande de cycle d'identification est un service asynchrone et n'est pas lié à TxC.

8.4.4.3 Service de demande de cycle de données

La Figure 23 décrit ce service avec les trois états en gris ainsi que leurs transitions.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Reset	Réinitialiser
Data_Transfer	Transfert de données
Start_ID_Cycle	Démarrer cycle d'identification
/Bsy	/Occupation
Start_Data_Cycle	Démarrer cycle de données
ID_Transfer	Transfert d'identifiant
ID_Cycle_Request	Demande de cycle d'identification

Figure 23 – Transitions d'état du service de demande de cycle de données

NOTE 1 Les transitions qui ne sont pas illustrées en Figure 23 sont utilisées pour d'autres services; voir la Figure 20 et la Figure 25 pour les états et transitions correspondants.

Le cycle de données était précédé d'un cycle d'identification:

Etat ID_Transfer:

La MIS lance un service de demande de cycle de données en modifiant le signal TxSL (de 1 logique à 0 logique) ainsi que, simultanément, le signal RqDly1 (de 0 logique à 1 logique).

Etat Start_Data_Cycle:

Ensuite, la MDS transmet l'état PhPDU correspondant, démarre un temporisateur d'une durée t_1 et établit le signal BSY (occupé) en le faisant passer du 0 logique au 1 logique. La MIS réinitialise le signal RqDly1 au 0 logique.

A la fin de la durée t_1 , la MDS met le signal BSY au 0 logique et achève le service de demande de cycle de données. La MIS communique cela à la DLL au moyen d'une primitive de confirmation de DONNÉES PH et prend l'état Data_Transfer.

La Figure 24 illustre les formes de signaux correspondantes à l'interface MIS-MDS pour un service de demande de cycle de données suite à un cycle d'identification.

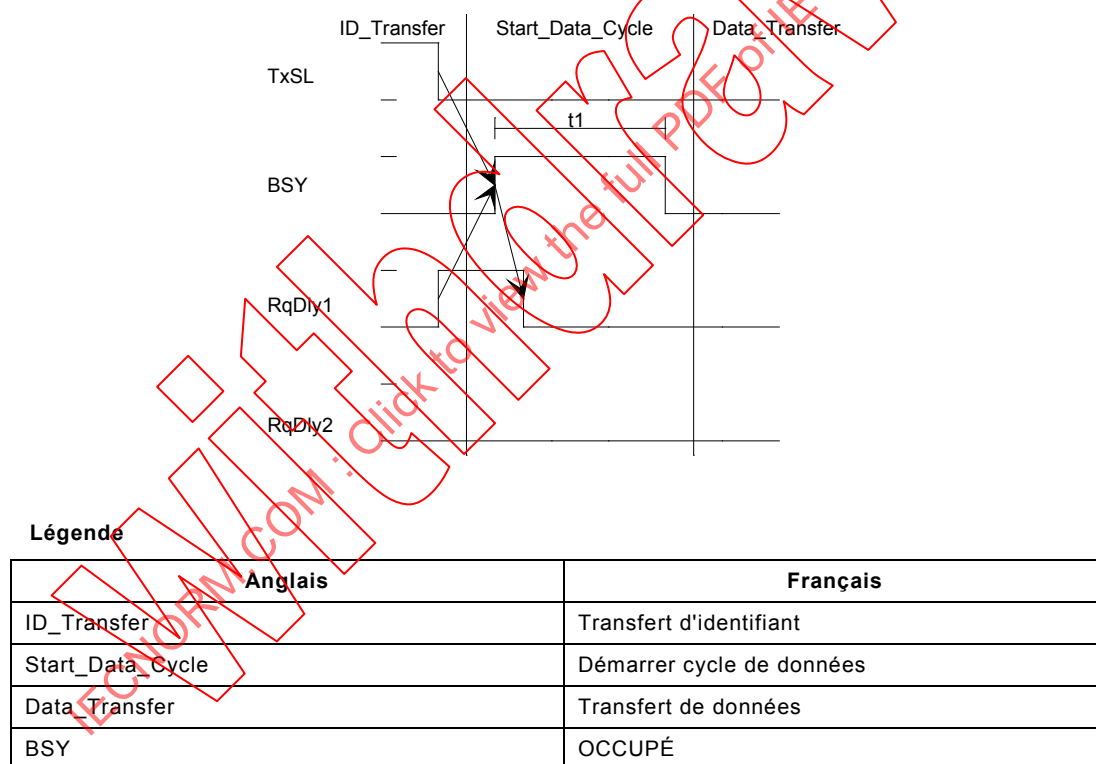


Figure 24 – Interface MIS-MDS: service de demande de cycle de données

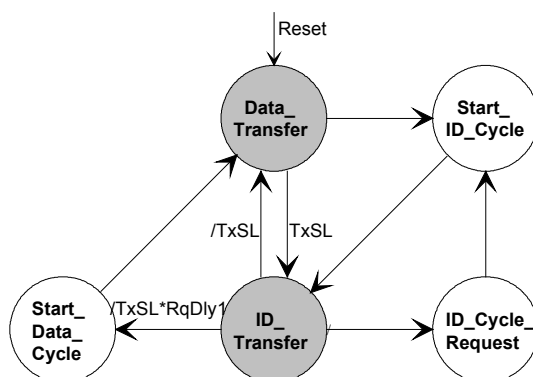
Le cycle de données était précédé d'un cycle de données:

Si la DLL demande le début d'un cycle de données avec une primitive de demande de DONNÉES PH (PhICI=start_data_cycle), et si la DLL n'a pas auparavant demandé le début d'un cycle d'identification au moyen d'une primitive de demande de DONNÉES PH (PhICI=start_ID_cycle), la MIS communique à la DLL la fin du service de demande de cycle de données au moyen d'une primitive de confirmation de DONNÉES PH. L'état des signaux TxSL, RqDly1 et RqDly2 demeure inchangé.

NOTE 2 Le service de demande de cycle de données est un service asynchrone et n'est pas lié à TxC.

8.4.4.4 Service de classification de séquences de données

La Figure 25 décrit ce service avec les deux états en gris ainsi que leurs transitions.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Reset	Réinitialiser
Data_Transfer	Transfert de données
Start_ID_Cycle	Démarrer cycle d'identification
Start_Data_Cycle	Démarrer cycle de données
ID_Transfer	Transfert d'identifiant
ID_Cycle_Request	Demande de cycle d'identification

Figure 25 – Transitions d'état du service de classification de séquences de données

NOTE 1 Les transitions qui ne sont pas illustrées en Figure 25 sont utilisées pour d'autres services; voir la Figure 20 et la Figure 23 pour les états et transitions correspondants.

Etat **Data_Transfer**.

La MIS lance un cycle d'identification (émission de données d'identification et de commande dans la PhpDU) en modifiant le signal TxSL (de 0 logique à 1 logique).

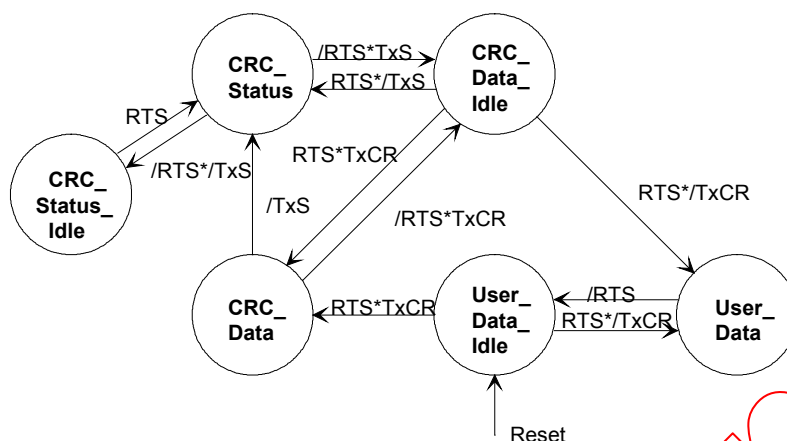
Etat **ID_Transfer**

La MIS lance un cycle de données (émission de données utilisateur dans la PhpDU) en modifiant le signal (de 1 logique à 0 logique).

NOTE 2 Le service de classification de séquences de données est un service asynchrone et n'est pas lié à TxC.

8.4.4.5 Service d'émission de messages

La Figure 26 décrit ce service avec les six états ainsi que leurs transitions.



Légende

Anglais	Français
CRC_Status_Idle	Etat CRC au Repos
CRC_Status	Etat CRC
CRC_Data	Données CRC
CRC_Data_Idle	Données CRC au repos
User_Data_Idle	Données utilisateur au repos
User_Data	Données utilisateur
Reset	Réinitialiser

Figure 26 – Machine protocolaire du service d'émission de messages

NOTE 1 Une séquence de bits de données est émise en multiples d'octets. Une fois que la MIS a établi son signal d'interface RTS au 1 logique au 0 logique, elle attend le front descendant du signal CTS actif à l'état bas provenant de la MDS. La MIS communique cela à la DLL au moyen d'une primitive de confirmation de DONNÉES PH (obligatoire pour le maître uniquement).

Etat CRC_Data_Idle:

La MIS lance un service d'émission de messages en établissant le signal RTS au 1 logique au cours du front montant de TxC, en établissant en même temps le signal TxCR au 0 logique et en émettant avec le signal TxD le premier bit de données dans un octet destiné à la MDS.

NOTE 2 Au lieu de lancer un service d'émission de messages, la MIS peut commencer à émettre l'état de la somme de contrôle en établissant le signal RTS au 1 logique au cours du front montant suivant de TxC, en établissant en même temps le signal TxS au 0 logique et en envoyant à la MDS le premier bit de l'état de la somme de contrôle avec le signal TxD.

Etat User_Data:

La MIS doit continuer l'émission des données en transmettant à la MDS le bit de données suivant dans un octet avec le signal TxD, au cours de chaque front montant de TxC. La MIS achève l'émission des données en établissant le signal RTS au 0 logique, une fois que le dernier bit a été transmis et avant le front descendant suivant de TxC.

NOTE 3 La MIS poursuit l'émission des données en établissant le signal RTS au 1 logique au cours du front montant de TxC, et en émettant en même temps avec le signal TxD le premier bit de données dans un octet destiné à la MDS.

Etat User_Data_Idle:

La MIS démarre la séquence de contrôle en établissant le signal RTS au 1 logique au cours du front montant de TxC, en établissant en même temps le signal TxCR au 1 logique et en envoyant à la MDS le premier bit de la somme de contrôle (données CRC) dans le signal TxD.

NOTE 4 Au lieu de la séquence de contrôle, la MIS peut lancer un nouveau service d'émission de messages en établissant le signal RTS au 1 logique au cours du front montant de TxC et en envoyant en même temps à la MDS, avec le signal TxD, le premier bit de données. Ceci équivaut à une poursuite du service d'émission de messages.

Etat **CRC_Data**:

La MIS doit continuer l'émission des données de somme de contrôle en envoyant le bit de données suivant dans un octet, en même temps que le signal TxD destiné à la MDS, au cours de chaque front montant de TxC.

Une fois terminée l'émission des données de la somme de contrôle, la MIS démarre l'émission de l'état de la somme de contrôle (état CRC) en envoyant le signal TxS au 0 logique au cours du front montant de TxC et en même temps en transmettant à la MDS, avec le signal TxD, le premier bit de l'état de la somme de contrôle.

NOTE 5 La MIS poursuit l'émission de la somme de contrôle en établissant le signal RTS au 1 logique avant le front descendant de TxC et en envoyant en même temps à la MDS, avec le signal TXD, le premier bit de l'octet suivant de la somme de contrôle.

NOTE 6 La MIS commence par émettre l'état de la somme de contrôle en établissant le signal RTS au 1 logique au cours du front montant de TxC, en établissant en même temps le signal TxS au 0 logique, et en envoyant à la MDS le premier bit de l'état de la somme de contrôle.

Etat **CRC_Status**:

La MIS doit continuer l'émission de l'état de la somme de contrôle en transmettant à la MDS le bit suivant dans un octet, avec le signal TxD, au cours de chaque front montant de TxC. La MIS achève l'émission de l'état de la somme de contrôle en établissant le signal RTS au 0 logique et le signal TxS au 1 logique avant le front descendant de TxC et après le dernier bit de l'octet à transmettre.

Etat **CRC_Status_Idle**:

La MIS poursuit l'émission de l'état de la somme de contrôle en établissant le signal RTS au 1 logique au cours du front montant de TxC et en envoyant en même temps à la MDS, avec le signal TXD, le premier bit de l'octet suivant.

8.4.4.6 Service d'identification de séquences de données

La Figure 27 décrit ce service avec les deux états ainsi que leurs transitions.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Reset	Réinitialiser
Data_Transfer	Transfert de données
ID_Transfer	Transfert d'identifiant

Figure 27 – Machine protocolaire du service d'identification de séquences de données

Etat **Data_Transfer**:

Le début d'un cycle d'identification (émission de données d'identification ou de données de commande dans la PhPDU reçue) est indiqué à la MIS par une modification du signal RxSL (passage du 1 logique au 0 logique).

Etat ID Transfer:

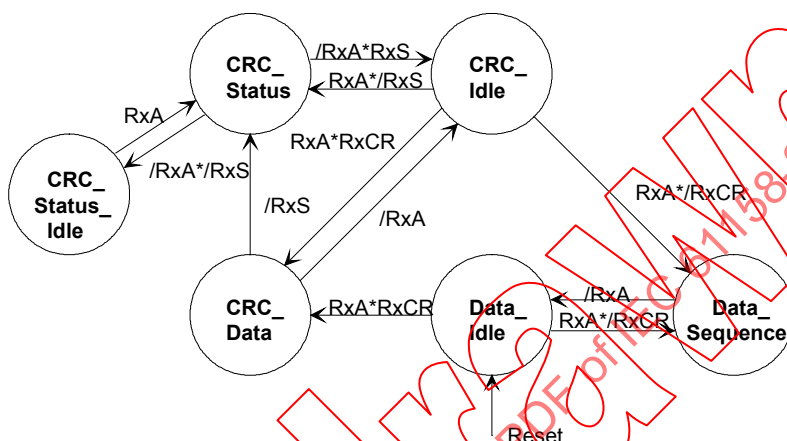
Le début d'un cycle de données (émission de données utilisateur dans la PhPDU reçue) est indiqué à la MIS par une modification du signal RxSL (passage du 1 logique au 0 logique).

NOTE Le service d'identification de séquences de données est un service asynchrone et n'est pas lié à RxC.

8.4.4.7 Service de réception de messages

La Figure 28 décrit ce service avec les six états ainsi que leurs transitions.

NOTE 1 Les données sont reçues en multiples d'octets.



Légende

Anglais	Français
CRC_Status_Idle	Etat_CRC_Au Repos
CRC_Status	Etat CRC
CRC_Data	Données CRC
CRC_Idle	CRC au Repos
Data_Idle	Données_Au Repos
Data_Sequence	Séquence de données
Reset	Réinitialiser

Figure 28 – Machine protocolaire du service de réception de messages

Etat **CRC** Idle:

Si la MDS reconnaît le début d'une PhPDU de séquence de données, elle lance le service de réception de messages en adaptant les impulsions temporelles émises avec le signal RxC à celles qui sont reçues et en établissant en même temps, au cours du front montant du signal RxC, le signal RxA au 1 logique, le signal RxCR au 0 logique, ainsi qu'en envoyant à la MIS le premier bit de données décodé d'un octet avec le signal RxD.

NOTE 2 Si la MDS reconnaît le début d'un état de la somme de contrôle dans une PhPDU de séquence de contrôle au lieu du début d'une PhPDU de séquence de données, elle établit le signal Rx_Au au 1 logique et en même temps le signal Rx_S au 0 logique et envoie à la MIS le premier bit décodé avec le signal Rx_D.

NOTE 3 Tant que la MDS reconnaît l'état CRC_Idle, elle doit conserver le signal RxA au 0 logique et le signal RxCR au 1 logique.

Etat Data Sequence:

La MDS doit continuer à envoyer à la MIS les données reçues et décodées avec le signal RxD, en adaptant en même temps les impulsions temporelles émises à celles qui sont reçues avec le signal RxC. Si la MDS reconnaît l'état Data_Idle après avoir reçu le dernier bit de données dans un octet, elle doit établir le signal RxA au 0 logique au cours du front descendant de RxC.

Etat Data_Idle:

Tant que la MDS reconnaît l'état Data_Idle, elle doit conserver le signal RxA au 0 logique et le signal RxCR au 0 logique.

Si la MDS reconnaît le début d'une PhPDU de séquence de contrôle, elle adapte les impulsions temporelles émises avec le signal RxC à celles qui sont reçues, elle établit le signal RxA au 1 logique au cours du front montant de RxC et établit en même temps le signal RxCR au 1 logique et transmet à la MIS, avec le signal RxD, les premiers bits reçus et décodés de la somme de contrôle (données CRC).

Si la MDS reconnaît le premier bit dans un octet d'une PhPDU de séquence de données au lieu du début d'une séquence de contrôle, elle continue la réception de la séquence de données en adaptant les impulsions temporelles émises à celles qui sont reçues avec le signal RxC et en établissant en même temps le signal RxA au 1 logique, au cours du front montant de RxC, et en envoyant à la MIS le bit de données reçu et décodé avec le signal RxD.

Etat CRC_Data:

La MDS doit continuer à envoyer à la MIS les données reçues et décodées de la somme de contrôle avec le signal RxD et à adapter avec le signal RxC les impulsions temporelles émises à celles qui sont reçues.

Si la MDS reconnaît le premier bit de l'état de la somme de contrôle après avoir entièrement reçu les données de la somme de contrôle, elle doit adapter les impulsions temporelles émises avec le signal RxC, établir au 0 logique le signal RxS au cours du front montant de RxC et envoyer en même temps à la MIS le bit reçu et décodé de l'état de la somme de contrôle avec le signal RxD.

NOTE 4 Si la MDS reconnaît l'état CRC_Idle après avoir reçu le dernier bit de données dans un octet, elle doit établir le signal RxA au 0 logique au cours du front descendant de RxC.

NOTE 5 Si la MDS reconnaît le premier bit dans un octet des données de la somme de contrôle, elle doit poursuivre la réception des données de la somme de contrôle, en adaptant les impulsions temporelles émises à celles qui sont reçues avec le signal RxC et en établissant le signal RxA au 1 logique au cours du front montant de RxC, et en envoyant en même temps à la MIS, avec le signal RxD, le bit reçu et décodé de la somme de contrôle.

Etat CRC_Status:

La MDS doit continuer à envoyer à la MIS l'état de la somme de contrôle reçu et décodé avec le signal RxD, en adaptant en même temps les impulsions temporelles émises à celles qui sont reçues avec le signal RxC. Après avoir entièrement reçu l'état de la somme de contrôle, le MDS établit le signal RxA au 0 logique au cours du front descendant de RxC et établit en même temps le signal RxS au 1 logique.

NOTE 6 Si la MDS reconnaît l'état CRC_Idle après avoir reçu le dernier bit dans un octet, elle doit établir le signal RxA au 0 logique au cours du front descendant de RxC.

Etat CRC_Status_Idle:

Si la MDS reconnaît le premier bit dans un octet des données de la somme de contrôle, elle doit poursuivre la réception de l'état de la somme de contrôle, en adaptant les impulsions temporelles émises à celles qui sont reçues avec le signal RxC et en établissant le signal RxA au 1 logique au cours du front montant de RxC, et en envoyant en même temps à la MIS, avec le signal RxD, le bit reçu et décodé de l'état de la somme de contrôle.

8.4.4.8 Service de réinitialisation

Ce service est envoyé de la MIS à la MDS en établissant le signal RO. La réception d'une réinitialisation est transmise de la MDS à la MIS avec le signal RI. Plage de valeurs: courte, longue

8.5 Type 12: Interface ETTD-DCE

L'interface ETTD-DCE n'est pas exposée en transmission de Type 12.

9 Sous-couche dépendante du support (MDS)

9.1 Généralités

La sous-couche dépendante du support (MDS) fait partie de l'équipement de transmission de données (DCE). (Voir la Figure 1). Elle échange des informations à travers l'interface ETTD – DCE décrite à l'Article 8 et communique des symboles Ph codés à travers l'interface MDS – MAU décrite à l'Article 10. La MDS assure des fonctions logiques de codage et de décodage, respectivement pour l'émission et la réception, d'ajout/retrait de préambule et de délimiteurs ainsi que des fonctions de temporisation et de synchronisation.

NOTE Un certain nombre d'entités sous-couches MDS différentes sont spécifiées, sur la base des pratiques industrielles en la matière.

9.2 Type 1: MDS: Supports câblés et optiques

9.2.1 PhPDU

La MDS doit produire la PhPDU présentée en Figure 29 en ajoutant le préambule et les délimiteurs pour encadrer la séquence série de PhSDU (bits) transférée depuis la DIS par l'intermédiaire de l'interface ETTD-DCE. La séquence d'émission doit aller de gauche à droite comme présenté en Figure 29, c'est-à-dire le préambule en premier lieu, suivi par le délimiteur de début, la séquence de PhSDU et se terminer par le délimiteur de fin.

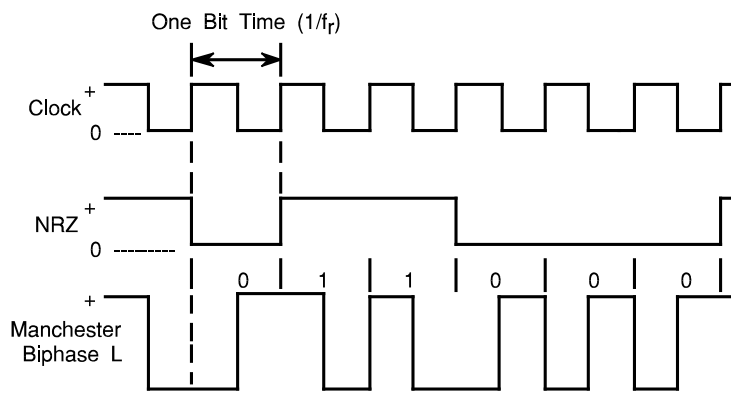
PRÉAMBULE	DÉLIMITEUR DE DÉBUT	SÉQUENCE DE PhSDU	DÉLIMITEUR DE FIN

Figure 29 – Unité de données de protocole (PhPDU)

En revanche, la MDS doit retirer le préambule et les délimiteurs d'une PhPDU reçue pour générer une séquence série correspondante de PhSDU. Si une unité de données non binaires est détectée dans la séquence de PhSDU reçue, la MDS doit immédiatement arrêter de transférer les PhSDU à la DIS, la MDS doit rendre compte d'une erreur et indiquer la fin de l'activité à la DIS au moment où elle a lieu.

9.2.2 Codage et décodage

Les unités de données doivent être codées par la MDS pour application à la MAU en utilisant le code présenté en Figure 31 (Manchester – Biphasé L). Les règles de codage formelles sont données en Figure 31 et dans le Tableau 30.

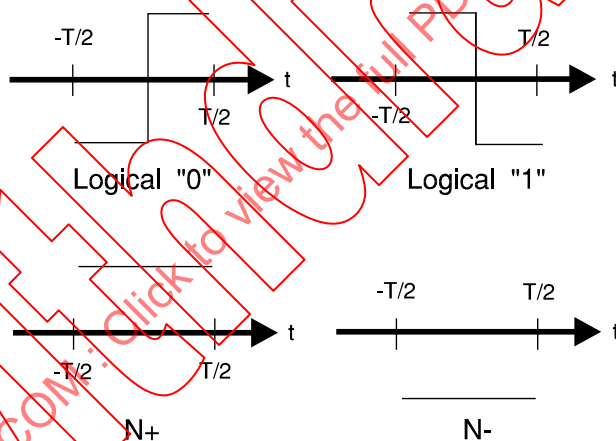


Légende

Anglais	Français
One Bit Time	Un temps binaire
Clock	Horloge
Manchester Biphase L	Manchester Biphase L

Figure 30 – Codage et décodage des PhSDU

NOTE La Figure 30 est incluse à des fins d'explication et n'implique aucune mise en œuvre spécifique.



IEC 1456/2000

Légende

Anglais	Français
Logical "0"	Niveau logique "0"
Logical "1"	Niveau logique "1"

Figure 31 – Règles de codage Manchester

Tableau 30 – Règles de codage Manchester

Symboles	Codage
1 (UN)	Transition Haut-Bas (à mi-bit)
0 (ZÉRO)	Transition Bas-Haut (à mi-bit)
N+ (NON-DONNÉES PLUS)	Haut (Pas de transition)
N- (NON-DONNÉES MOINS)	Bas (Pas de transition)

NOTE On peut voir que les symboles de données (1 et 0, acheminés par des PhSDU) sont codés pour contenir toujours une transition à mi-bit. Les symboles « non-données » (N+ et N-) sont codés de façon à ce qu'il n'y ait jamais de transition à mi-bit. Les délimiteurs de trame (voir 9.2.4 et 9.2.5) sont construits pour que les symboles « non-données » soient acheminés dans des paires de polarité opposée.

Le décodage doit normalement correspondre à l'opposé du codage. A la réception, la MDS doit vérifier que chaque symbole est codé conformément à la Figure 31 et au Tableau 30 et doit détecter les erreurs suivantes:

- a) code Manchester invalide;
- b) erreurs de glissement d'un demi-bit.

Chacune de ces erreurs doit être notifiée comme une indication de DONNÉES PH (PhIDU, erreur).

9.2.3 Détection de polarité

L'option de détection automatique de polarité d'un signal codé Manchester reçu doit être exigée lorsque cela est spécifié dans la MAU correspondante.

9.2.4 Délimiteur de début de trame

La séquence de symboles suivante, présentée de gauche à droite, dans l'ordre d'émission, doit précéder immédiatement la séquence de PhSDU pour délimiter le début d'une trame:

1, N+, N-, 1, 0, N-, N+, 0.

(présenté sous forme d'onde en Figure 32)

La MDS ne doit accepter un train de signaux reçus comme une PhPDU qu'après avoir vérifié cette séquence et doit retirer cette séquence avant de transférer la séquence de PhSDU à la DIS.

9.2.5 Délimiteur de fin de trame

La séquence de symboles suivante, présentée de gauche à droite, dans l'ordre d'émission, doit immédiatement suivre la séquence de PhSDU pour délimiter la fin d'une trame:

1, N+, N-, N+, N-, 1, 0, 1.

(présenté sous forme d'onde en Figure 32)

La MDS doit retirer cette séquence de la PhPDU avant de transférer la séquence de PhSDU à la DIS. La MDS doit rendre compte à l'entité DLL correspondante des éventuelles trames reçues via le support lorsque ces trames ne comprennent pas cette séquence dans les 300 octets à compter du début de la trame (du commencement du délimiteur de début) comme Indication de DONNÉES PH (PhIDU, frame_too_long – trame trop longue). La MDS doit rendre compte à l'entité DLL associée, via la DIS correspondante, des éventuelles trames reçues par l'intermédiaire du support si celles-ci ont un délimiteur de fin qui n'est pas placé à une frontière d'octet, comme une indication de DONNÉES PH (PhIDU, received_timing_error – erreur de temporisation reçue).

9.2.6 Préambule (synchroniseur initial)

Pour synchroniser des temps binaires, un préambule doit être transmis au début de chaque PhPDU; ce préambule est constitué de la séquence suivante de bits, présentée de gauche à droite dans l'ordre d'émission:

1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0.

(présenté sous forme d'onde en Figure 32)

NOTE 1 Le nombre minimal de bits du préambule reçu est de quatre du fait de la perte d'un bit à travers chacun des quatre répéteurs (comme spécifié dans les règles de configuration du réseau pour la MAU).

La période peut être étendue mais non réduite par la Gestion systèmes, comme indiqué dans le Tableau 4. Une séquence d'extension de préambule, comme indiqué dans le Tableau 4, doit être définie comme la séquence suivante de bits, présentée de gauche à droite dans l'ordre d'émission:

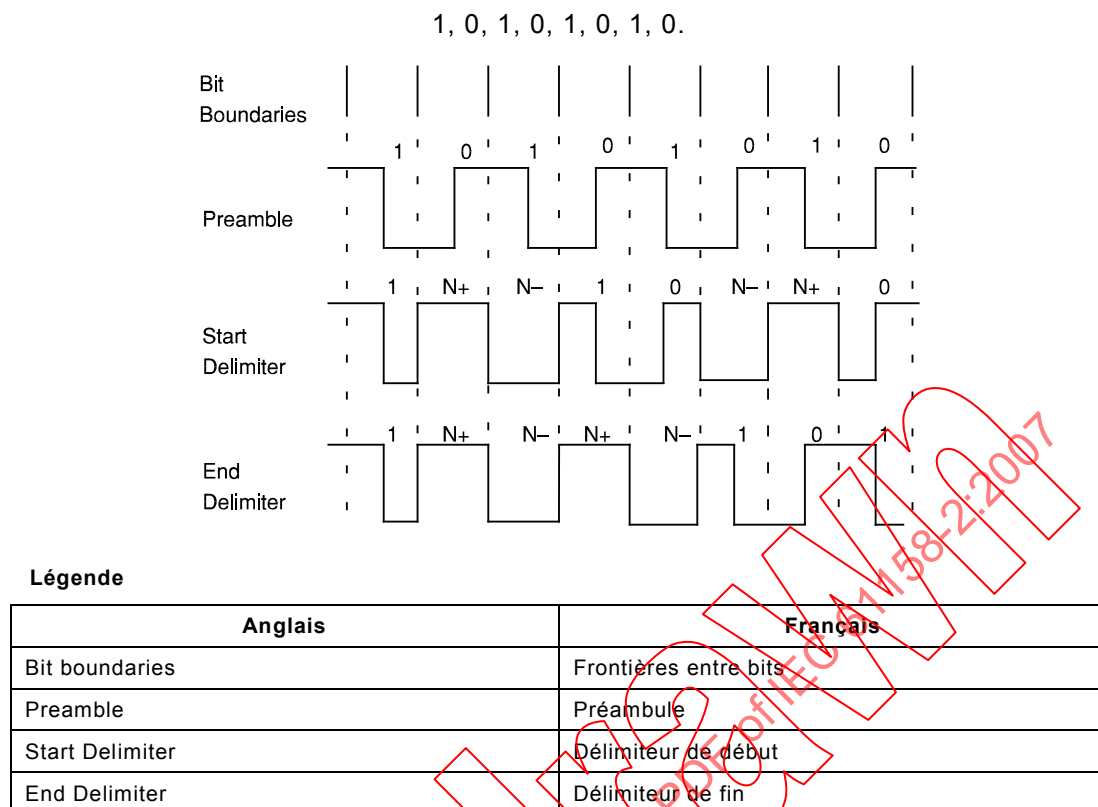


Figure 32 – Préambule et délimiteurs

NOTE 2 Ces formes d'onde n'étendent pas la gamme de fréquences au-delà de la bande requise pour l'émission de PhSDU binaires (acheminant les symboles de données) conformément à la Figure 31 et au Tableau 30.

9.2.7 Synchronisation

Après réception du quatrième bit de la trame et jusqu'à la fin de la trame ou sa terminaison, le récepteur doit détecter et rendre compte des erreurs de glissement d'un demi-bit.

NOTE 1 Cette spécification de synchronisation autorise la perte de 4 bits du préambule.

Après le préambule, les erreurs de glissement d'un demi-bit doivent être rapportées comme Indication de DONNÉES PH (PhPDU, erreur).

NOTE 2 Les erreurs de glissement d'un demi-bit peuvent être détectées comme une instabilité excessive (gigue) de bit élémentaire et/ou une variation excessive de la période binaire.

9.2.8 Gap (marque d'intervalle) post-émission

Après émission d'une PhPDU, il doit y avoir une période minimale au cours de laquelle l'émission suivante ne doit pas commencer. Pendant cette même période minimale, après réception d'une PhPDU, l'entité PhL de réception doit ignorer toute signalisation reçue. Une entité MDS doit établir une période minimale post-émission de quatre temps binaires nominaux. La période peut être étendue mais non réduite par la Gestion systèmes, comme indiqué dans le Tableau 4 ou par une entité MAU associée. Une séquence d'extension du gap, comme présenté dans le Tableau 4, doit être définie comme égale à quatre temps binaires nominaux.

NOTE Le délai d'activation/désactivation d'émission de la MAU peut réduire la durée du silence entre trames.

9.2.9 Dérive du signal entre canaux

Si le dispositif est configuré (par la gestion systèmes) pour recevoir simultanément sur plusieurs canaux, le délai différentiel maximal admissible entre deux canaux actifs, quels qu'ils soient, tel que mesuré à partir de la première PhPDU d'un délimiteur de début, ne doit

pas dépasser cinq temps binaire nominaux. Cette période peut être étendue mais non réduite par la Gestion systèmes, comme indiqué dans le Tableau 4. Une séquence d'extension du gap, comme présenté dans le Tableau 4, doit être définie comme égale à quatre temps binaires nominaux. La valeur du gap post-émission doit être supérieure à la valeur de la dérive entre canaux.

9.3 Type 1: MDS: Supports radioélectriques

NOTE Dans la présente édition, ce paragraphe est destiné à maintenir la numérotation des articles et éviter la rupture avec des normes nationales et multinationales ainsi que des documents de consortiums existants qui renvoient à l'édition précédente. La structure interne et la méthode de fonctionnement d'un DCE radioélectrique de Type 1 ne sont pas spécifiées par la présente norme.

9.4 Type 2: MDS: Supports câblés et optiques

NOTE La sous-couche dépendante du support (MDS) fait partie de l'équipement de transmission de données (DCE). Elle communique des bits codés par le biais de l'interface MDS-MAU spécifiée en 10.3.

9.4.1 Précision d'horloge (clock accuracy)

Les spécifications temporelles de la signalisation PhL doivent être telles que définies dans le Tableau 31.

Tableau 31 – Caractéristiques temporelles de la MDS

Spécification	Limites / caractéristiques	Commentaires
Débit binaire	5 Mbit/s $\pm$ CA	Egalement appelé débit de symboles M (rapidité de modulation), <i>données 'zéro' ou 'un'</i>
Temps binaire	200 ns $\pm$ CA	Egalement appelé durée de symboles M, <i>données 'zéro' ou 'un'</i>
Durée de symboles PhL	100 ns $\pm$ CA	Egalement appelé durée de symboles Ph, voir les règles de codage de données
Précision d'horloge (CA, de l'anglais Clock Accuracy)	$\pm$ 150 ppm max.	Tenant compte de la température ainsi que de la stabilité à long et à court termes

9.4.2 Régénération des données

Les signaux à l'interface DLL-PhL doivent être synchronisés sur le débit binaire local, comme présenté dans le Tableau 31. Chaque application PhL doit prévoir un mécanisme de régénération des données qui récupère ou reconstruit les données reçues à partir du support approprié, de manière à satisfaire aux exigences de temporisation du Tableau 31. Lorsque la synchronisation des données a été atteinte par la MDS, l'Indication de VERROUILLAGE DE PH doit être "vrai".

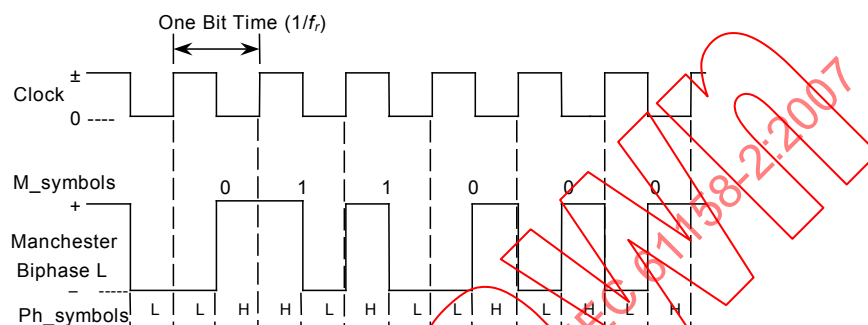
Une partie de la trame des données reçue peut être perdue ou ignorée lors du processus d'obtention de la synchronisation des données. La spécification de temporisation des données présentée dans le Tableau 31 doit être atteinte avant le commencement du délimiteur de début (voir la CEI 61158-4-2).

9.4.3 Règles de codage des données

Les symboles M présents à l'interface DLL-PhL doivent être codés en symboles Ph appropriés comme indiqué dans le Tableau 32 et la Figure 33. Les symboles M_0 et M_1 doivent être codés en symboles Ph qui représentent les règles de codage de données Manchester Biphase L, comme indiqué dans le Tableau 32. Les symboles M_ND doivent être utilisés pour créer des modèles de données uniques utilisés pour les délimiteurs de début et de fin. La forme d'onde de tension du signal (provenant de la MAU) est présentée sous forme idéalisée en Figure 33, de manière à fournir un exemple des règles de codage de données du Tableau 32.

Tableau 32 – Règles de codage des données MDS

Bits de données (nom commun)	Représentation de symbole M	Codé en symbole Ph	Codé Manchester
données 'zéro'	M_0 ou {0}	{L,H}	0
données "un"	M_1 ou {1}	{H,L}	1
'non_data+'	M_ND+ ou {+}	{H,H}	aucune donnée
'non_data-'	M_ND- ou {-}	{L,L}	aucune donnée



Légende

Anglais	Français
One Bit Time	Un temps binaire
Clock	Horloge
M_Symbols	Symboles M
Manchester Biphase L	Manchester Biphase L
Ph_Symbols	Symboles Ph

Figure 33 – Symboles codés Manchester

9.5 Type 3: MDS: Supports câblés et optiques

9.5.1 Transmission synchrone

La sous-couche dépendante du support (MDS) spécifiée pour le Type 1 doit être utilisée (voir 9.2).

9.5.2 Transmission asynchrone

Il n'y a pas de MDS (sous-couche dépendante du support) en transmission asynchrone.

9.6 Type 4: MDS: Support câblé

9.6.1 Semi-duplex

9.6.1.1 Aperçu général

NOTE 1 L'entité PhL est subdivisée en une composante Equipement terminal de traitement de données (ETTD) contenant la MDS et en une composante Equipement de transmission de données (DCE) contenant la MAU.

NOTE 2 La fonctionnalité de la MDS est similaire à la fonctionnalité de ce qu'on appelle communément un UART (Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter: émetteur-récepteur asynchrone universel). En outre, la MDS semi-duplex a une certaine fonctionnalité de temporisation. La fonctionnalité de la MAU est similaire à la fonctionnalité de ce qu'on appelle communément un circuit d'excitation (ou d'attaque).

La MDS semi-duplex doit ordonner l'émission de la PhID comme une séquence de bits. De la même manière, la MDS doit constituer la PhID à renvoyer à la DLL à partir de la séquence de bits reçue. Les bits sont envoyés et reçus en code NRZ (non-retour à zéro).

La PhID doit être convertie en une séquence de bits pour transmission série dans des PhPDU. Dans chaque PhPDU, un bit représentant un bit de poids fort doit être transmis avant un bit représentant un bit de poids faible. A la réception, chaque séquence de bits doit être convertie en PhID de façon à ce que, en l'absence d'erreurs, la PhID indiquée à l'entité DLL de réception demeure inchangée par rapport à la PhID dont l'émission a été demandée par l'entité DLL d'origine.

La MDS reçoit une seule PhID ou une séquence d'octets de PhID à partir de la DLE. Le premier octet est reçu à partir de la DLE par l'un des services **DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ-11** ou **DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ-2**. Les octets restants sont reçus à partir de la DLE par le service **DONNÉES**. La fin d'émission est indiquée par le service **FIN D'ACTIVITÉ**. A partir de chaque octet de PhID, la MDS doit constituer une PhPDU et transmettre à la MAU la PhPDU formée comme une séquence de bits. Chaque PhPDU doit être constituée de 1 bit de départ, de 8 bit de données, de 1 bit d'adresse/données, et finalement de 1 bit d'arrêt. Ceci est représenté en Figure 34.

Départ	Donnée8 ... Donnée1	Adresse/données	Arrêt
0	X....X	1 pour le premier octet, 0 pour le reste	1

Figure 34 – Format d'une PhPDU – semi-duplex

La MDS doit notifier le fait que le niveau du signal sur le support connecté est demeuré au repos pendant 30, 35 et 40 ou plus périodes binaires, par des indications **LINK-IDLE (LIAISON-AU REPOS)** destinées à la DLE.

Le débit binaire émis doit être celui du débit en bauds sélectionné, $\pm 0,2 \%$.

9.6.1.2 Emission

9.6.1.2.1 DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ-11

Les étapes suivantes doivent être réalisées suite à l'émission par la DLE d'une demande de **DONNÉES PH DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ-11**:

- attendre que le compteur de repos atteigne ou dépasse 11;
- constituer la première PhPDU avec bit d'adresse/données = "1" et données = paramètres de données de la demande **DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ-11**;
- confirmer la réception à la DLE pour lui permettre d'émettre la demande d'émission suivante;
- activer TxE (activation de l'émission);
- commencer à transmettre la PhPDU à la MAU.

9.6.1.2.2 DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ-2

Les étapes suivantes doivent être réalisées suite à l'émission par la DLE d'une demande de **DONNÉES PH DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ-2**:

- attendre que le module 10 de compteur de repos atteigne ou dépasse 2;
- constituer la première PhPDU avec bit d'adresse/données = "1" et données = paramètres de données de la demande **DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ-2**;
- confirmer la réception à la DLE pour lui permettre d'émettre la demande d'émission suivante;
- activer TxE (activation de l'émission);
- commencer à transmettre la PhPDU à la MAU.

9.6.1.2.3 DONNÉES

Les étapes suivantes doivent être réalisées suite à l'émission par la DLE d'une demande de **DONNÉES PH DONNÉES**:

- a) attendre que l'émission des PhpDU précédentes soit terminée;
- b) constituer une nouvelle PhpDU avec bit d'adresse/données = "0" et données = paramètres de données de la demande de **DONNÉES**;
- c) confirmer la réception à la DLE pour lui permettre d'émettre la demande d'émission suivante;
- d) commencer à transmettre la PhpDU à la MAU.

On doit s'assurer qu'il n'y a pas de périodes de repos entre émissions de PhpDU. Il convient que la DLE envoie la demande d'émission suivante dans les 11 périodes binaires qui suivent la confirmation de la précédente.

9.6.1.2.4 FIN D'ACTIVITÉ

Les étapes suivantes doivent être réalisées suite à l'émission par la DLE d'une demande de DONNÉES PH **FIN D'ACTIVITÉ**:

- a) attendre que l'émission de la PhpDU précédente soit terminée;
- b) attente d'au minimum 3 et au maximum 10 périodes binaires;
- c) désactiver TxE (activation de l'émission);

9.6.1.3 Réception

9.6.1.3.1 DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ

Suite à la réception d'une trame en provenance de la MAU avec bit d'adresse/données = "1", ou la réception d'une trame dont la valeur du compteur de repos est supérieure ou égale à 11, la MDS doit émettre une indication de DONNÉES PH de classe **DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ**. Le paramètre de données correspondant doit détenir les données reçues. La valeur du paramètre d'état correspondant doit être établie de la manière suivante:

- a) la réception d'une trame avec bit d'adresse/données = "1" et bit d'arrêt = "1", la valeur du compteur de repos étant supérieure ou égale à 11 doit provoquer l'indication **SUCCESS** dans le paramètre d'état correspondant;
- b) la réception d'une trame avec bit d'arrêt = "0" doit provoquer l'indication **FRAMING_ERROR** dans le paramètre d'état correspondant;
- c) la réception d'une trame avec bit d'adresse/données = "1", la valeur du compteur de repos étant inférieure ou égale à 11, doit provoquer l'indication **IDLE_ERROR** dans le paramètre d'état correspondant;
- d) la réception d'une trame avec bit d'adresse/données = "0", la valeur du compteur de repos étant supérieure ou égale à 11, doit provoquer l'indication **ADDRESS_DATA_ERROR** dans le paramètre d'état correspondant.

9.6.1.3.2 DONNÉES

Suite à la réception d'une trame en provenance de la MAU avec bit d'adresse/données = "0", la valeur du compteur de repos étant inférieure à 11, la MDS doit émettre une Indication de DONNÉES PH de classe **DONNÉES**. Le paramètre de données correspondant doit détenir les données reçues. La valeur du paramètre d'état correspondant doit être établie de la manière suivante:

- a) la réception d'une trame avec bit d'arrêt = "1" en provenance de la MAU doit provoquer l'indication **SUCCESS** dans le paramètre d'état correspondant;
- b) la réception d'une trame avec bit d'arrêt = "0" doit provoquer l'indication **FRAMING_ERROR** dans le paramètre d'état correspondant;

9.6.1.4 Compteur de repos

La MDS détient un compteur de repos. Ce compteur est incrémenté de un à chaque période binaire et il est remis à zéro à chaque fois qu'un bit de valeur "0" est envoyé ou reçu de la

MAU. Lorsque le compteur de repos atteint 30, la MDS doit en rendre compte par une Indication de DONNÉES PH de classe LINK-IDLE et l'indication de 30 périodes binaires dans l'état correspondant. 5 périodes binaires plus tard, si la liaison est toujours au repos, la PhE en rend compte au moyen d'une autre indication de DONNÉES PH de classe LINK-IDLE et en indiquant 35 périodes binaires dans l'état correspondant. 5 périodes binaires plus tard, si la liaison est toujours au repos, la PhE en rend compte au moyen d'une autre indication de DONNÉES PH de classe LINK-IDLE et en indiquant 40 périodes binaires ou plus dans l'état correspondant. Ceci continue à chaque 10 périodes binaires avec des indications spécifiant 40 périodes binaires ou plus. La vitesse du compteur de repos doit être celui du débit en bauds sélectionné, $\pm 0,2 \%$.

9.6.2 Duplex intégral

9.6.2.1 Aperçu général

NOTE 1 L'entité PhL est subdivisée en une composante Equipement terminal de traitement de données (ETTD) contenant la MDS et en une composante Equipement de transmission de données (DCE) contenant la MAU.

NOTE 2 La fonctionnalité de la MDS est similaire à la fonctionnalité de ce qu'on appelle communément un UART (Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter: émetteur-récepteur asynchrone universel). En outre, la MDS duplex intégral a une certaine fonctionnalité de "bourrage d'octet". La fonctionnalité de la MAU est similaire à la fonctionnalité de ce qu'on appelle communément un circuit d'excitation (ou d'attaque).

La MDS duplex intégral doit ordonner l'émission de la PhID comme une séquence de bits. De la même manière, la MDS doit constituer la PhID à renvoyer à la DLL à partir de la séquence de bits reçue. Les bits sont envoyés et reçus en code NRZ (non-retour à zéro).

La PhID doit être convertie en une séquence de bits pour transmission série dans des PhPDU. Dans chaque PhPDU, un bit représentant un bit de poids fort doit être transmis avant un bit représentant un bit de poids faible. A la réception, chaque séquence de bits doit être convertie en PhID de façon à ce que, en l'absence d'erreurs, la PhID indiquée à l'entité DLL de réception demeure inchangée par rapport à la PhID dont l'émission a été demandée par l'entité DLL d'origine.

La MDS reçoit une seule PhID ou une séquence d'octets de PhID à partir de la DLE. Le premier octet est reçu de la DLE par le service **DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ-2**. Les octets restants sont reçus à partir de la DLE par le service **DONNÉES**. La fin d'émission est indiquée par le service **FIN D'ACTIVITÉ**. A partir de chaque octet de PhID, la MDS doit constituer une PhPDU et transmettre à la MAU la PhPDU formée comme une séquence de bits. Chaque PhPDU doit être constituée de 1 bit de départ, de 8 bit de données et de 1 bit d'arrêt. Ceci est représenté en Figure 35.

Départ	Donnée8 ... Donnée1	Arrêt
0	X...X	1

Figure 35 – Format d'une PhPDU – duplex intégral

9.6.2.2 Emission

9.6.2.2.1 DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ-2

Les étapes suivantes doivent être réalisées suite à l'émission par la DLE d'une demande de DONNÉES PH **DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ-2**:

- constituer la première PhPDU avec données = \$D7 (hex);
- constituer la seconde PhPDU avec données = paramètre de données de demande de **DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ-2**;
- confirmer la réception à la DLE pour lui permettre d'émettre la demande d'émission suivante;
- activer le signal RTS (demande pour émettre);
- attente de l'activation du signal CTC (prêt à émettre);

- f) commencer à transmettre à la MAU les PHPDU formées.

9.6.2.2.2 DONNÉES

Les étapes suivantes doivent être réalisées suite à l'émission par la DLE d'une demande de DONNÉES PH-DONNÉES:

- a) attendre que l'émission des PHPDU précédentes soit terminée;
- b) attente de l'activation du signal CTC (prêt à émettre);
- c) former une (des) PHPDU(s) nouvelle(s) avec des données selon les indications suivantes:
- d) si la valeur de paramètre de données de la demande **DONNÉES** = \$D7 (hex), constituer une PHPDU ayant la valeur de données \$D9 (hex), suivie par une PHPDU supplémentaire ayant la valeur de données \$00;
- e) si la valeur de paramètre de données de la demande **DONNÉES** = \$D9 (hex), constituer une PHPDU ayant la valeur de données \$D9 (hex), suivie par une PHPDU supplémentaire ayant la valeur de données \$01;
- f) si la valeur de paramètre de données de la demande **DONNÉES** est différente de \$D7 (hex) et \$D9, constituer une PHPDU ayant la valeur de données = paramètre de données de la demande de **DONNÉES**;
- g) confirmer la réception à la DLE pour lui permettre d'émettre la demande de service suivante;
- h) commencer à transmettre la(les) PHPDU à la MAU.

9.6.2.2.3 FIN D'ACTIVITÉ

Les étapes suivantes doivent être réalisées suite à l'émission par la DLE d'une demande de DONNÉES PH FIN D'ACTIVITÉ:

- a) attendre que l'émission des PHPDU précédentes soit terminée;
- b) désactiver le signal RTS (demande pour émettre);

9.6.2.3 Réception

9.6.2.3.1 DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ

Suite à la réception d'une PHPDU en provenance de la MAU, avec une valeur de données de \$D7 (hex), la MDS doit attendre la PHPDU suivante et une fois celle-ci reçue, elle doit émettre une indication de DONNÉES PH de classe **DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ**. Le paramètre de données correspondant doit détenir les données de réception de la PHPDU qui suivent \$D7 (hex). La valeur du paramètre d'état correspondant doit être établie de la manière suivante:

- a) la réception d'une PHPDU avec bit d'arrêt = "1" doit provoquer l'indication SUCCESS dans le paramètre d'état correspondant;
- b) la réception d'une PHPDU avec bit d'arrêt = "0" doit provoquer l'indication FRAMING_ERROR dans le paramètre d'état correspondant.

9.6.2.3.2 DONNÉES

La réception d'une PHPDU en provenance de la MAU, avec une valeur de données différente de \$D7 (hex) doit entraîner ce qui suit:

La réception d'une trame avec bit d'arrêt = "1" et valeur de données = \$D9 (hex) doit provoquer l'attente par la MDS de la PHPDU suivante en provenance de la MAU. Le résultat de la réception de la PHPDU suivante doit être:

- a) si la valeur de données de la PHPDU suivante est \$00 (hex) et si le bit d'arrêt = "1", émission d'une Indication de DONNÉES PH de classe **DONNÉES**. Le paramètre de données correspondant doit détenir la valeur \$D7. La valeur du paramètre d'état correspondant doit indiquer SUCCESS.

- b) si la valeur de données de la PhPDU suivante est \$01 (hex) et si le bit d'arrêt = "1", émission d'une indication de DONNÉES PH de classe **DONNÉES**. Le paramètre de données correspondant doit détenir la valeur \$D9. La valeur du paramètre d'état correspondant doit indiquer SUCCESS.
- c) si la valeur de données de la PhPDU suivante est différente de \$00 (hex) et de \$01 (hex) et si le bit d'arrêt = "1", émission d'une indication de DONNÉES PH de classe **DONNÉES**. Le paramètre de données correspondant doit détenir la valeur des données de réception. La valeur du paramètre d'état correspondant doit indiquer BYTE_STUFFING_ERROR.
- d) si le bit d'arrêt est "0", émission d'une Indication de DONNÉES PH de classe **DONNÉES**. Le paramètre de données correspondant doit détenir la valeur reçue. La valeur du paramètre d'état correspondant doit indiquer FRAMING_ERROR.
- e) la réception d'une PhPDU avec bit d'arrêt = "1" et une valeur de données différente de \$D9 (hex), doit entraîner l'émission par la MDS d'une indication de DONNÉES PH de classe **DONNÉES**. Le paramètre de données correspondant doit détenir la valeur reçue. La valeur du paramètre d'état correspondant doit indiquer SUCCESS;
- f) la réception d'une PhPDU avec bit d'arrêt = "0" doit entraîner dans la MIS l'émission d'une indication de DONNÉES PH de classe **DONNÉES**. Le paramètre de données correspondant doit détenir la valeur reçue. La valeur du paramètre d'état correspondant doit indiquer FRAMING_ERROR.

9.6.3 Duplex intégral UDP

9.6.3.1 Aperçu général

La PhID doit être envoyée conformément à l'ISO/CEI 8802-3.

La MDS reçoit une seule PhID ou une séquence d'octets de PhID à partir de la DLE. Le premier octet est reçu de la DLE par le service **DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ-2**. Les octets restants sont reçus à partir de la DLE par le service **DONNÉES**. La fin d'émission est indiquée par le service **FIN D'ACTIVITÉ**.

9.6.3.2 Emission

9.6.3.2.1 DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ-2

Les étapes suivantes doivent être réalisées suite à l'émission par la DLE d'une demande de DONNÉES PH **DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ-2**:

- a) réserver le paquet de sous-couche MAC;
- b) constituer la PhPDU avec données = paramètre de données de demande de **DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ-2**;
- c) insérer la PhPDU formée au premier emplacement dans le paquet réservé;
- d) confirmer la réception à la DLE pour lui permettre d'émettre la demande d'émission suivante.

Les étapes suivantes doivent être réalisées suite à l'émission par la DLE d'une demande de DONNÉES PH-**DONNÉES**:

- a) constituer la PhPDU avec données = paramètre de données de la demande de **DONNÉES**;
- b) insérer la PhPDU formée à l'emplacement suivant dans le paquet réservé;
- c) confirmer la réception à la DLE pour lui permettre d'émettre la demande d'émission suivante;

9.6.3.2.2 FIN D'ACTIVITÉ

Les étapes suivantes doivent être réalisées suite à l'émission par la DLE d'une demande de DONNÉES PH **FIN D'ACTIVITÉ**:

- a) transférer le paquet réservé à la sous-couche MAC.

9.6.3.3 Réception

9.6.3.3.1 DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ

Suite à la réception d'un paquet de la sous-couche MAC, émettre une indication de DONNÉES PH de classe **DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ**. Le paramètre de données correspondant doit détenir le premier octet du paquet reçu. La valeur du paramètre d'état correspondant doit être établie sur SUCCESS (Succès).

9.6.3.3.2 DONNÉES

Les données suivantes dans le paquet reçu doivent entraîner l'émission par la MDS d'indications de DONNÉES PH de classe **DONNÉES**. Les paramètres de données correspondants doivent détenir les valeurs reçues. La valeur des paramètres d'état correspondants doit indiquer SUCCESS.

9.7 Type 6: Ce paragraphe a été supprimé

NOTE Dans la présente édition, ce paragraphe est destiné à maintenir la numérotation des articles et éviter la rupture avec des normes nationales et multinationales ainsi que des documents de consortiums existants qui renvoient à l'édition précédente.

9.8 Type 8: MDS: Supports câblés et optiques

9.8.1 Fonction

La MDS (sous-couche dépendante du support) échange des séquences PhSDU via l'interface MIS-MDS, comme décrit en 6.5 et transmet la PhPDU via l'interface MDS-MAU comme décrit à l'Article 9. La MDS code et décode la PhSDU, ajoute et retire la trame d'émission (en-tête et bit d'arrêt) des sous-séquences de PhSDU à émettre et à recevoir, elle synchronise l'interface MIS-MDS avec l'interface MDS-MAU et avec les PhPDU ainsi qu'avec les fonctions temporelles et émet directement une PhPDU entre les MAU via l'interface MDS-MAU (couplage MAU).

La MDS peut être constituée de plusieurs canaux. La PhPDU doit générer un canal de la MDS correspondant aux séquences de PhSDU transmises via l'interface MIS-MDS et code les séquences de PhSDU en conséquence. En revanche, ce canal doit reconnaître le format de la PhPDU reçue et transmet à la MIS la séquence de PhSDU décodée via l'interface MIS-MDS. Tous les autres canaux sont utilisés pour transférer directement une PhSDU entre deux MAU.

Le canal de la MDS d'un esclave qui a une interface avec la MIS doit avoir la relation suivante entre les sens d'émission et de réception: Si le signal RTS de l'interface MIS-MDS est à 0, le contenu du DI est transmis sur le signal DO de l'interface MDS-MAU avec un temps de retard d'exactement un temps binaire. Si RTS est à 1, DO est couplé à TxD (applicable uniquement lorsqu'il n'y a aucun couplage MDS).

Dans la MDS d'un maître, il est possible qu'une séquence de 8 PhSDU soit d'abord mise en tampon et ensuite une PhPDU de séquence de données ou de séquence de contrôle correspondante est générée.

9.8.2 Formats de PhPDU

La MDS peut reconnaître et générer les formats de PhPDU suivants: **PhPDU de séquence de données**, **PhPDU de séquence de contrôle**, **PhPDU d'état** et **PhPDU de réinitialisation**.

9.8.2.1 PhPDU de séquence de données

La MDS génère la PhPDU de séquence de données en ajoutant un bit de départ, un en-tête et un bit d'arrêt à l'unité de données. L'unité de données proprement dite est constituée de huit PhSDU qui, en tant que séquence PhSDU, ont été transmises comme partie de la DLPDU de séquence de données via l'interface MIS-MDS, au moyen du service d'émission de messages. La structure de la PhPDU de séquence de données est illustrée en Figure 36.

**Légende**

Anglais	Français
Start bit	Bit de départ
Header	En-tête
Data Unit	Unité de données
Stop bit	Bit d'arrêt
LSB	Bit de poids faible
MSB	Bit de poids fort

Figure 36 – PhPDU de séquence de données

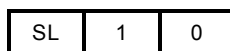
La PhPDU de séquence de données ainsi générée est transmise de gauche à droite, via l'interface MDS-MAU dans l'ordre suivant: bit de départ, en-tête, unité de données, bit d'arrêt. Les PhSDU de l'unité de données sont transmises via l'interface MDS-MAU dans l'ordre dans lequel elles ont été émises à travers l'interface MIS-MDS.

Conformément à la Figure 36, une PhPDU de séquence de données est reçue de gauche à droite et dans l'ordre suivant: bit de départ, en-tête, unité de données, bit d'arrêt. La MDS retire le bit de départ, le bit d'arrêt et l'en-tête et transmet à la MIS la séquence de PhSDU contenue dans l'unité de données avec le service de réception de messages, comme partie d'une DLPDU de séquence de données, par l'intermédiaire de l'interface MIS-MDS. L'émission commence par la première PhSDU qui suit l'en-tête et se termine par la dernière PhSDU avant le bit d'arrêt.

NOTE 1 Chaque PhPDU de séquence de données commence par le bit de départ et se termine par le bit d'arrêt.

NOTE 2 Une DLPDU de séquence de données est transmise par une séquence de PhPDU de séquence de données.

La structure de l'en-tête dans une PhPDU de séquence de données est présentée en Figure 37.

**Figure 37 – Structure de l'en-tête dans une PhPDU de séquence de données**

L'en-tête de la PhPDU de séquence de données est émis et reçu de gauche à droite, via l'interface MDS-MAU, en commençant par le bit SL.

Pour qu'une PhPDU de séquence de données soit envoyée, le symbole logique à transférer dans le bit SL équivaut à l'état logique inversé du signal TxSL de l'interface MIS-MDS au moment où la PhPDU de séquence de données va être transmise à la MAU via l'interface MDS-MAU (voir Tableau 33):

Tableau 33 – Attribution du bit SL et du signal TxSL

Signal TxSL	Bit SL
Niveau logique 1	0
Niveau logique 0	1

Pour une PhPDU de séquence de données reçue, l'état logique du signal RxSL de l'interface MIS-MDS équivaut au symbole logique inversé qui est transmis dans le bit SL (voir Tableau 34).

Tableau 34 – Attribution du bit SL et du signal RxSL

Bit SL	Signal RxSL
0	Niveau logique 1
1	Niveau logique 0

9.8.2.2 PhPDU de séquence de contrôle

La MDS génère la PhPDU de séquence de contrôle en ajoutant un bit de départ, un en-tête et un bit d'arrêt à l'unité de données. L'unité de données proprement dite est constituée de huit PhSDU qui ont été transmises en tant que séquence PhSDU au moyen du service d'émission de messages, comme partie de la DLPDU de séquence de contrôle via l'interface MIS-MDS. La structure de la PhPDU de séquence de contrôle est illustrée en Figure 38.

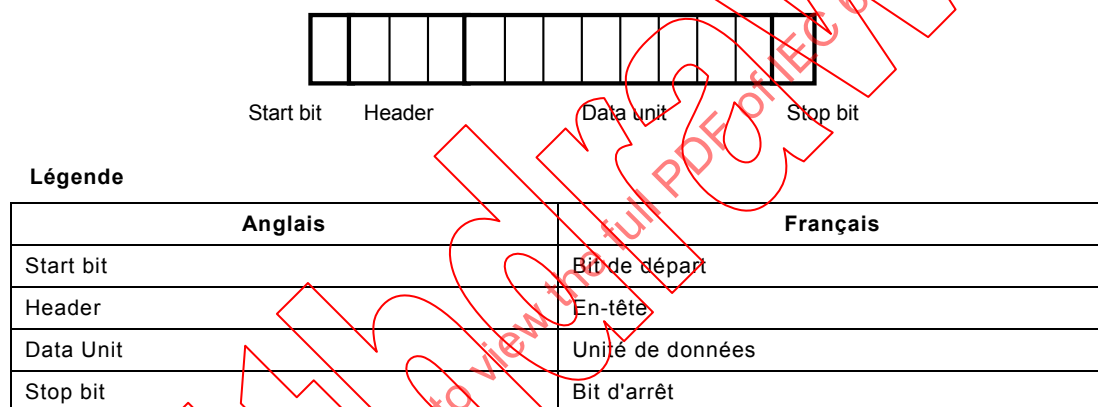


Figure 38 – PhPDU de séquence de contrôle

Une PhPDU de séquence de contrôle ainsi générée est transmise de gauche à droite, via l'interface MDS-MAU dans l'ordre suivant: bit de départ, en-tête, unité de données, bit d'arrêt. Les PhSDU de l'unité de données sont transmises via l'interface MDS-MAU dans l'ordre dans lequel elles ont été émises à travers l'interface MIS-MDS.

Une PhPDU de séquence de contrôle est reçue, conformément à la Figure 38, de gauche à droite et dans l'ordre suivant: bit de départ, en-tête, unité de données, bit d'arrêt. La MDS retire le bit de départ, le bit d'arrêt et l'en-tête et transmet à la MIS la séquence de PhSDU contenue dans l'unité de données avec le service de réception de messages, comme partie d'une DLPDU de séquence de contrôle, via l'interface MIS-MDS. L'émission commence par la première PhSDU qui suit l'en-tête et se termine par la dernière PhSDU avant le bit d'arrêt.

NOTE 1 Chaque PhPDU de séquence de contrôle commence par un bit de départ et se termine par un bit d'arrêt.

NOTE 2 Une DLPDU de séquence de contrôle est transmise avec une série de quatre PhPDU de séquence de contrôle.

La structure de l'en-tête dans une PhPDU de séquence de contrôle est présentée en Figure 39.

SL	0	0

Figure 39 – Structure de l'en-tête dans une PhPDU de séquence de contrôle

L'en-tête de la PhPDU de séquence de contrôle est émis et reçu de gauche à droite, via l'interface MDS-MAU, en commençant par le bit SL.

Pour qu'une PhPDU de séquence de contrôle soit envoyée, le symbole logique à transférer dans le bit SL équivaut à l'état logique inversé du signal TxSL de l'interface MIS-MDS au moment où la PhPDU de séquence de contrôle va être transmise à la MAU via l'interface MDS-MAU (voir Tableau 35).

Tableau 35 – Attribution du bit SL et du signal TxSL

Signal TxSL	Bit SL
Niveau logique 1	0
Niveau logique 0	1

Pour une PhPDU de séquence de contrôle reçue, l'état logique du signal RxSL de l'interface MIS-MDS équivaut au symbole logique inversé qui est transmis dans le bit SL (voir Tableau 36).

Tableau 36 – Attribution du bit SL et du signal RxSL

Bit SL	Signal RxSL
0	Niveau logique 1
1	Niveau logique 0

9.8.2.3 PhPDU d'état

La PhPDU d'état qui est formée par la MDS est constituée d'un bit de départ, de l'en-tête et d'un bit d'arrêt. La structure de la PhPDU d'état est présentée en Figure 40.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Start bit	Bit de départ
Header	En-tête
Stop bit	Bit d'arrêt

Figure 40 – Structure de la PhPDU d'état

La PhPDU d'état est émise et reçue de gauche à droite, via l'interface MDS-MAU, en commençant par le bit d'arrêt, suivi par l'en-tête et se terminant par le bit d'arrêt.

La structure de l'en-tête d'une PhPDU d'état est présentée en Figure 41.

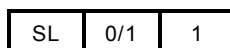


Figure 41 – Structure de l'en-tête dans une PhPDU d'état

Conformément à la Figure 41, l'en-tête est émis et reçu de gauche à droite, via l'interface MDS-MAU, en commençant par le bit SL. L'état du bit qui suit le bit SL n'est pas défini et peut prendre les valeurs "0" ou "1".

Pour qu'une PhPDU d'état soit envoyée, le symbole logique à transférer dans le bit SL équivaut à l'état logique inversé des signaux TxSL de l'interface MIS-MDS au moment où la PhPDU d'état va être transmise à la MAU via l'interface MDS-MAU (voir Tableau 37).

Tableau 37 – Attribution du bit SL et du signal TxSL

Signal TxSL	Bit SL
Niveau logique 1	0
Niveau logique 0	1

Pour une PhPDU d'état reçue, l'état logique du signal RxSL de l'interface MIS-MDS équivaut au symbole logique inversé qui est transmis dans le bit SL (voir Tableau 38).

Tableau 38 – Attribution du bit SL et du signal RxSL

Bit SL	Signal RxSL
0	Niveau logique 1
1	Niveau logique 0

NOTE 1 Chaque PhPDU d'état commence par un bit de départ et se termine par un bit d'arrêt.

NOTE 2 Si aucune des séquences de PhSDU n'est transmise à la MDS via l'interface MIS-MDS, la MDS commence automatiquement à émettre des PhPDU d'état successives. Des états de repos peuvent être générés entre deux PhPDU d'état successives. L'émission des PhPDU d'état se termine de manière synchrone avec le message dès que la première PhSDU d'une PhPDU de séquence de données ou de séquence de contrôle a été transmise de la MIS à la MDS.

NOTE 3 Les PhPDU d'état sont transmises après une PhPDU de réinitialisation si aucune PhPDU de séquence de contrôle ou de séquence de données n'est à émettre.

NOTE 4 La réception d'une PhPDU d'état ne modifie pas l'état logique du signal RxCR de l'interface MIS-MDS.

9.8.2.4 PhPDU d'état d'activité du support

La PhPDU d'état d'activité du support qui est formée par la MDS est constituée d'un bit de départ, de l'en-tête et d'un bit d'arrêt. La structure de la PhPDU d'état d'activité du support est présentée en Figure 42.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Start bit	Bit de départ
Header	En-tête
Stop bit	Bit d'arrêt

Figure 42 – Structure de la PhPDU d'état d'activité du support

La structure de l'en-tête d'une PhPDU d'état d'activité du support est présentée en Figure 43.

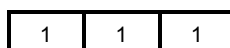


Figure 43 – Structure de l'en-tête d'une PhPDU d'état d'activité du support

Conformément à la Figure 43, l'en-tête est émis et reçu de gauche à droite, via l'interface MDS-MAU. La PhpDU d'état d'activité du support n'est transmise via une MAU passive de départ (mode de rebouclage = désactivé) que si la Gestion systèmes établit la variable "sélection de données" = activé.

9.8.2.5 Codage et décodage

Le codage et le décodage sont effectués conformément aux règles du Tableau 39.

Tableau 39 – Règles de codage et de décodage

Bit de symbole logique	Codage DO, DI
1	Niveau haut
0	Niveau bas

NOTE 1 Les niveaux haut et bas doivent être prélevés du début d'un bit pendant la durée d'un temps binaire.

NOTE 2 Pour le codage, les symboles logiques sont convertis en l'état correspondant du signal DO de l'interface MDS-MAU.

NOTE 3 Pour le décodage, l'état du signal DI de l'interface MDS-MAU est converti en symbole logique correspondant.

9.8.2.6 Bit de départ

Le bit de départ correspond au symbole logique "1".

NOTE La MDS doit synchroniser son horloge de réception avec le début des bits de départ (transitions bas-haut).

9.8.2.7 Bit d'arrêt

Le bit d'arrêt correspond au symbole logique "0".

NOTE La MDS ne peut synchroniser son horloge de réception sur un bit de départ nouvel arrivant qu'après un bit d'arrêt (transition bas-haut).

9.8.3 Etats de repos

L'émetteur du maître bus peut générer des états de repos au cours des transitions des PhpDU d'état en PhpDU de séquence de données ou en PhpDU de séquence de contrôle. Les états de repos ont toujours un niveau bas sur DO. La longueur maximale des états de repos ne doit pas dépasser 26 temps binaires. Les règles de décodage pour les états de repos reconnus sur le support sont données dans le Tableau 40.

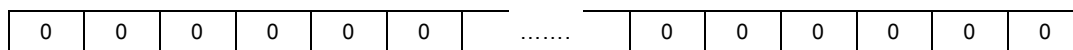
Tableau 40 – Règles de décodage pour les états de repos

Etat de repos	Etat RxCR	Décodage DI
Data_Idle	Niveau logique 0	Niveau bas
CRC_Idle	Niveau logique 1	Niveau bas
CRC_Status_Idle	Niveau logique 1	Niveau bas

9.8.4 PhpDU de réinitialisation

9.8.4.1 Structure de la PhpDU de réinitialisation

La PhpDU de réinitialisation transmet les symboles logiques "réinitialisation courte" ou "réinitialisation longue". La structure de la PhpDU de réinitialisation est illustrée en Figure 44.



Réinitialisation courte ou réinitialisation longue

Figure 44 – PhPDU de réinitialisation

NOTE Les symboles "réinitialisation courte" et "réinitialisation longue" ne diffèrent qu'en termes de durée d'émission d'un niveau bas par les signaux DO ou DI de l'interface MDS-MAU.

9.8.4.2 Codage et décodage

Les règles de codage de la PhPDU de réinitialisation sont données dans le Tableau 41 et le Tableau 42.

Tableau 41 – Règles de codage de la PhPDU de réinitialisation

Symbole logique	Intervalle de temps	Codage DO
Réinitialisation courte du bus	$2 \text{ ms} \leq T_{\text{Rst}} < 25,6 \text{ ms}$	Niveau bas
Réinitialisation longue du bus	$T_{\text{Rst}} \geq 25,6 \text{ ms}$	Niveau bas

Tableau 42 – Règles de décodage de la PhPDU de réinitialisation

DI	Intervalle de temps	Symbole logique
Niveau bas	$2 \text{ ms} \leq T_{\text{Rst}} < 25,6 \text{ ms}$	Réinitialisation courte du bus
Niveau bas	$T_{\text{Rst}} \geq 25,6 \text{ ms}$	Réinitialisation longue du bus

NOTE 1 Une PhPDU de réinitialisation se termine par le bit de départ d'une PhPDU de séquence de données, d'une PhPDU de séquence de contrôle ou d'une PhPDU d'état.

NOTE 2 Au cours du codage, les symboles logiques sont convertis en l'état correspondant du signal DO de l'interface MDS-MAU pendant le temps T_{Rst} .

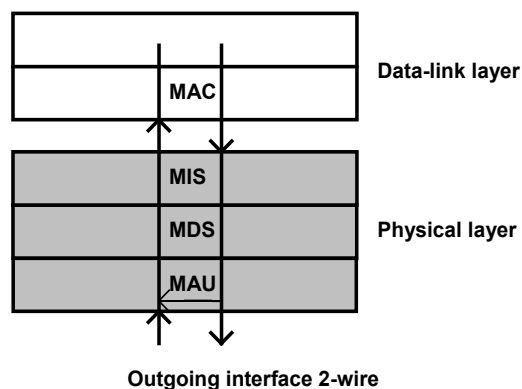
NOTE 3 Au cours du décodage, pendant le temps T_{Rst} , l'état du signal DI de l'interface MDS-MAU est converti en symbole logique correspondant.

NOTE 4 Les temps donnés dans le Tableau 41 et le Tableau 42 ne s'appliquent pas à l'émetteur du maître. Pour l'émetteur du maître du bus, la PhPDU de réinitialisation correspondante doit être générée sur demande du service RO, conformément aux définitions spécifiées dans les variables PhL "durée de réinitialisation courte du bus" et "durée de réinitialisation longue du bus".

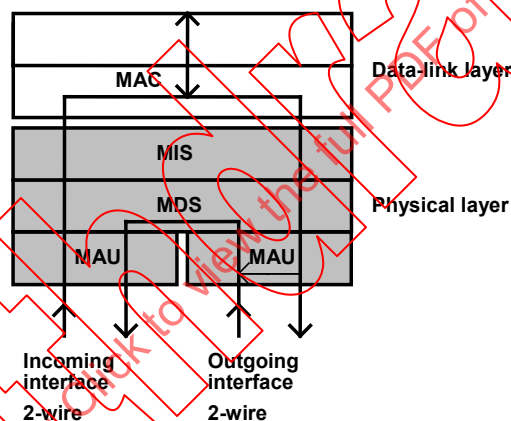
NOTE 5 Les règles de codage pour la PhPDU de réinitialisation s'appliquent uniquement à un couplage MDS dans la MIS.

9.8.5 Couplage des MAU

Lorsque des MAU du même type ont des paires couplées, chaque PhPDU ainsi que tous les états Au repos sont transmis sans aucune modification entre deux MAU. La Figure 45, la Figure 46 et la Figure 47 présentent des configurations possibles des dispositifs de bus lorsque le support câblé à 2 conducteurs est utilisé.

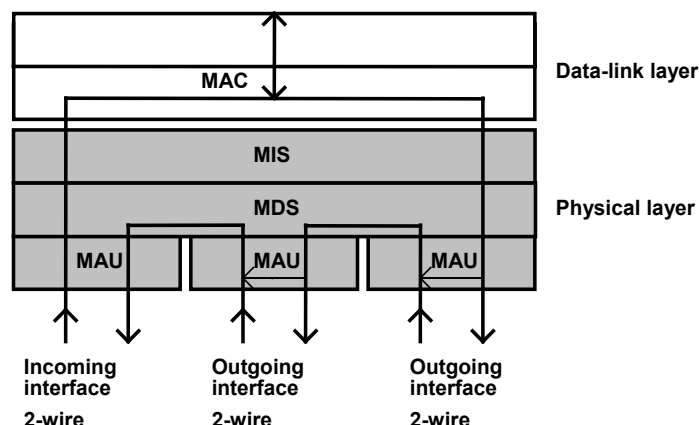
**Légende**

Anglais	Français
Data Link Layer	Couche de liaison de données
Physical Layer	Couche Physique
Outgoing Interface 2-wire	Interface de départ, à 2 conducteurs

Figure 45 – Configuration d'un maître**Légende**

Anglais	Français
Data Link Layer	Couche de liaison de données
Physical Layer	Couche Physique
Incoming Interface 2-wire	Interface d'arrivée, à 2 conducteurs
Outgoing Interface 2-wire	Interface de départ, à 2 conducteurs

Figure 46 – Configuration d'un esclave



Légende

Anglais	Français
Data Link Layer	Couche de liaison de données
Physical Layer	Couche Physique
Incoming Interface 2-wire	Interface d'arrivée, à 2 conducteurs
Outgoing Interface 2-wire	Interface de départ, à 2 conducteurs

Figure 47 – Configuration d'un coupleur de bus

NOTE Lorsque deux MAU sont directement couplées, il peut être utilisé des répéteurs transparents au code pour la régénération temporelle.

9.9 Type 12: MDS: Supports câblés

9.9.1 PhPDU

La MDS doit produire la PhPDU présentée en Figure 29 en ajoutant des délimiteurs et des séquences de repos minimales pour encadrer la séquence série de PhSDU (bits) transférée depuis la DIS par l'intermédiaire de l'interface ETDD-DCE. La séquence d'émission doit aller de gauche à droite comme présenté en Figure 29, c'est-à-dire le SOF en premier lieu, suivi par la séquence de PhSDU et finalement EOF.

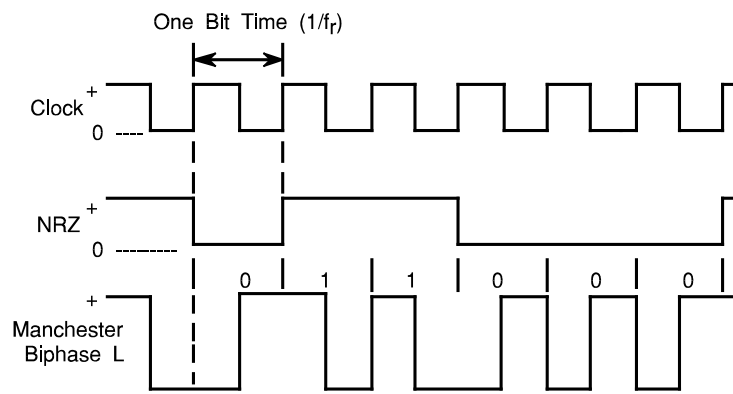
Repos	SOF	SÉQUENCE DE PhSDU	EOF	Repos

Figure 48 – Unité de données de protocole

En revanche, la MDS doit retirer le Repos, SOF et EOF d'une PhPDU reçue pour générer une séquence série correspondante de PhSDU. Si une unité de données non binaires est détectée dans la séquence de PhSDU reçue, la MDS doit immédiatement arrêter de transférer les PhSDU à la DIS, la MDS doit rendre compte d'une erreur et indiquer la fin de l'activité à la DIS au moment où elle a lieu.

9.9.2 Codage et décodage

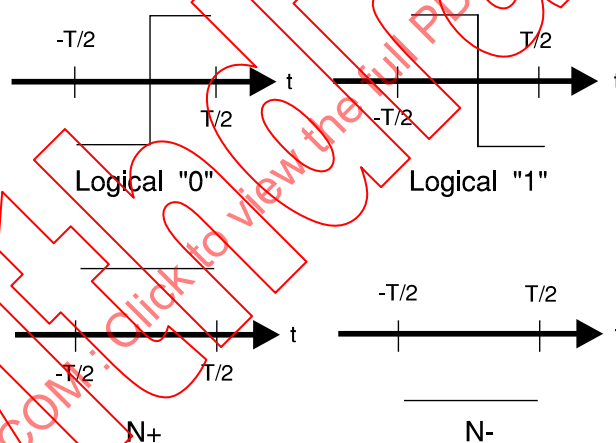
Les unités de données doivent être codées par la MDS pour application à la MAU en utilisant le code présenté en Figure 49 (Manchester – Biphasé L). Les règles de codage formelles sont données en Figure 50 et dans le Tableau 43.

**Légende**

Anglais	Français
One Bit Time	Un temps binaire
Clock	Horloge
Manchester Biphase L	Manchester Biphase L

Figure 49 – Codage et décodage des PhSDU

NOTE La Figure 49 est incluse à des fins d'explication et n'implique aucune mise en œuvre spécifique.



IEC 1456/2000

Légende

Anglais	Français
Logical "0"	Niveau logique "0"
Logical "1"	Niveau logique "1"

Figure 50 – Règles de codage Manchester**Tableau 43 – Règles de codage Manchester**

Symboles	Codage
1 (UN)	Transition Haut-Bas (à mi-bit)
0 (ZERO)	Transition Bas-Haut (à mi-bit)
N+ (NON-DONNÉES PLUS)	Haut (Pas de transition)
N- (NON-DONNÉES MOINS)	Bas (Pas de transition)

NOTE On peut voir que les symboles de données (1 et 0, acheminés par des PhSDU) sont codés pour contenir toujours une transition à mi-bit. Les symboles non données (N+ et N-) sont codés de façon à ce qu'il n'y ait jamais de transition à mi-bit.

Le décodage doit normalement correspondre à l'opposé du codage. A la réception, la MDS doit vérifier que chaque symbole est codé conformément à la Figure 50 et au Tableau 43 et doit détecter les erreurs suivantes:

- a) code Manchester invalide;
- b) erreurs de glissement d'un demi-bit;
- c) défaut d'alignement de EOF (le nombre de bits n'est pas un multiple de 8).

Toute erreur de ce type doit être notifiée comme:

indication de DONNÉES PH (classe=END-W-ERROR – FIN AVEC ERREUR, données=erreur).

9.9.3 Détection de polarité

Il n'y a pas de détection automatique de la polarité du signal reçu codé Manchester Biphase L.

9.9.4 SOF

La séquence de symboles suivante, présentée de gauche à droite, dans l'ordre d'émission, doit précéder immédiatement la séquence de PhSDU pour délimiter le début d'une trame:

0, N+

La MDS ne doit accepter un train de signaux reçus comme une PhPDU qu'après avoir vérifié cette séquence et doit retirer cette séquence avant de transférer la séquence de PhSDU à la DIS.

9.9.5 EOF

La séquence de symboles suivante, présentée de gauche à droite, dans l'ordre d'émission, doit immédiatement suivre la séquence de PhSDU pour délimiter la fin d'une trame:

N-, 0

La MDS doit retirer cette séquence de la PhPDU avant de transférer la séquence de PhSDU à la DIS. La MDS doit rendre compte à l'entité DLL correspondante des éventuelles trames reçues via le support lorsque ces trames ne comprennent pas cette séquence dans les 1 535 octets à compter du début de la trame (à partir de la fin de SOF) sous la forme:

indication de DONNÉES PH (classe=END-W-ERROR – FIN AVEC ERREUR, données=frame_too_long – trame trop longue).

La MDS doit rendre compte à l'entité DLL associée, via la DIS correspondante, des éventuelles trames reçues par l'intermédiaire du support si celles-ci ont un délimiteur de fin qui n'est pas placé à une frontière d'octet, sous la forme:

indication de DONNÉES PH (classe=END-W-ERROR – FIN AVEC ERREUR, données=alignement_error – erreur d'alignement).

9.9.6 Repos

Pour synchroniser les temps binaires, une séquence de repos doit être envoyée si aucune PhSDU ou SOF/EOF n'est transmise:

0

Une séquence de Repos est toujours alignée sur les bits.

NOTE Une série de 1 dans une PhSDU peut être interprétée comme repos. Les symboles "0" suivants ou EOF réajusteront la détection de bit élémentaire.

9.9.7 Synchronisation

Après activation et réception d'un nombre suffisant de signaux, le récepteur doit détecter et rendre compte des erreurs de glissement d'un demi-bit.

NOTE 1 Cette spécification de synchronisation autorise la perte de 4 bits du préambule.

Après SOF, les erreurs de glissement d'un demi-bit doivent être notifiées sous la forme:

indication de DONNÉES PH (classe=END-W-ERROR – FIN AVEC ERREUR, données=half_bit_slip_error – erreur de glissement d'un demi-bit).

NOTE 2 Les erreurs de glissement d'un demi-bit peuvent être détectées comme une instabilité excessive (gigue) de bit élémentaire et/ou une variation excessive de la période binaire.

9.9.8 Intervalle (Gap) entre trames

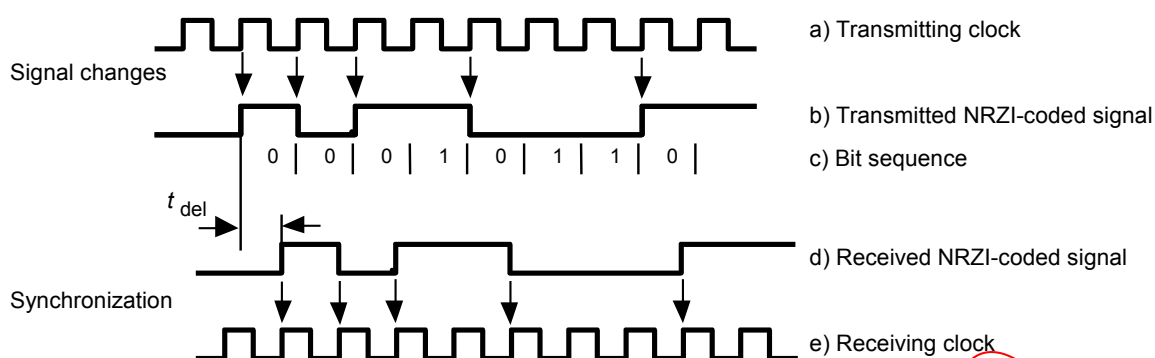
Après émission d'une PhPDU, il doit y avoir une période minimale au cours de laquelle l'émission suivante ne doit pas commencer. Pendant cette même période minimale, après réception d'une PhPDU, l'entité PhL de réception doit ignorer toute signalisation reçue. Une entité MDS doit établir une période minimale post-émission de 92 temps binaires nominaux (96 avec SOF, EOF). La période peut être étendue mais non réduite par la Gestion systèmes.

9.10 Type 16: MDS: Supports optiques

9.10.1 Règles de codage des données

Les signaux sur les lignes d'émission doivent être codés NRZI. Les variations des signaux sont uniquement possibles en synchronisation avec l'horloge d'émission. A chaque fois qu'un "0" est transmis, le signal doit modifier son état en synchronisation avec l'horloge d'émission, tandis qu'il doit rester inchangé lorsqu'un "1" est émis.

L'émetteur doit s'assurer, par une méthode appropriée (c'est-à-dire insertion binaire) qu'un nombre suffisant de zéros est présent dans le train binaire transmis. Cela engendre des variations supplémentaires du signal. De cette manière, on crée des conditions qui rendent possible l'extraction d'une horloge de réception à partir du signal reçu. L'horloge de réception récupérée doit également avoir une position de phase fixe par rapport à l'horloge de l'émetteur. L'horloge doit pouvoir être récupérée au moyen d'une boucle numérique à verrouillage de phase (DPLL) qui doit être synchronisée sur la variation du signal reçu transformé en signal électrique. La Figure 51d) donne un exemple de signal codé NRZI. Par conséquent, l'horloge d'émission fournit la configuration de synchronisation du système par l'intermédiaire des changements d'états (transitions) du signal.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Signal changes	Variations des signaux
Synchronization	Synchronisation
a) Transmitting clock	a) Horloge d'émission
b) Transmitted NRZI-coded signal	b) Signal codé NRZI émis
c) Bit sequence	c) Séquence binaire
d) Received NRZI-coded signal	d) Signal codé NRZI reçu
e) Receiving clock	e) Horloge de réception

Figure 51 – Exemple de signal codé en NRZI

9.10.2 Télégrammes et caractères de remplissage

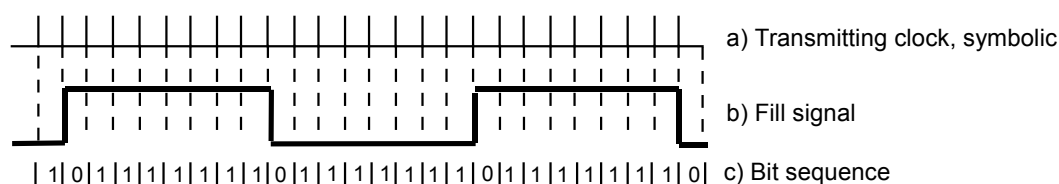
Au niveau physique, il suffit de savoir qu'un télégramme doit commencer et se terminer par la séquence binaire 0111 1110. Cette séquence binaire est également connue sous le nom de délimiteur. En raison de l'insertion binaire, cette séquence binaire ne peut pas se produire à l'intérieur du télégramme.

D'autres zones du télégramme appartiennent à des couches de protocole supérieures et sont discutées ailleurs.

Lorsqu'une unité ne place pas son propre télégramme sur le réseau, deux possibilités se présentent:

- le maître doit émettre un signal dit "de remplissage" (bits de remplissage) entre ses propres télégrammes. Il doit être composé d'une séquence de un "0" binaire et de 7 "1" binaires (c'est-à-dire 0111 1111). Ceci génère un signal de remplissage symétrique dont la période est égale à 16 fois la période de l'horloge d'émission, en raison du codage NRZI (voir Figure 52);
- entre ses propres télégrammes, un esclave doit transmettre, avec l'horloge locale synchronisée, des signaux reçus, régénérés physiquement (mode répéteur).

Pendant la transition d'un télégramme à un signal de remplissage (maître) ou d'un télégramme au mode répéteur (esclave), les variations du signal doivent suivre la configuration de l'impulsion d'horloge en cours.

**Légende**

Anglais	Français
a) Transmitting clock, symbolic	a) Horloge d'émission symbolique
b) Fill signal	b) Signal de remplissage
c) Bit sequence	c) Séquence binaire

Figure 52 – Signal de remplissage

NOTE En raison de l'insertion binaire et de a), l'esclave situé physiquement en premier sur le réseau peut, à tout instant, déduire son horloge locale à partir de son signal reçu. En raison de b), c'est également le cas pour toutes les unités suivantes, et ainsi de suite jusqu'au récepteur du maître. De cette manière, les boucles numériques à verrouillage de phase, qui peuvent en fin de compte être utilisées pour obtenir l'horloge locale, restent verrouillées, empêchant ainsi une perte de temps liée à la synchronisation avant le début du message proprement dit.

9.11 Type 18: MDS: Supports câblés**9.11.1 Aperçu général**

La MDS de type 18 doit être capable de détecter le lancement et l'achèvement ultérieur d'une réception de données; les moyens utilisés pour cela ne relèvent pas du domaine d'application de la présente spécification.

9.11.2 Emission

La transmission de données commence dès réception d'une demande (DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ) de DONNÉES PH provenant de l'utilisateur DL. Cette demande est traduite par la MDS en une affirmation de signal D'ACTIVATION D'ÉMISSION, avec la valeur spécifiée dans le champ de DONNÉES à transmettre sur le SIGNAL D'ÉMISSION.

La MDS doit émettre une confirmation (SUCCESS) de DONNÉES PH et doit recevoir la demande (DONNÉES) de DONNÉES PH suivante avant l'expiration du compteur de temps binaire de débit en bauds de la MDS. La confirmation (SUCCESS) de DONNÉES PH qui en résulte ne se produit qu'après réaction à cette demande. De cette manière, le compteur de temps binaire de débit en bauds de la MDS peut réguler le débit de données.

Sur réception d'une demande (FIN D'ACTIVITÉ) de DONNÉES PH de la part de l'utilisateur DL, la MDS achève l'émission en cours et conclut par une infirmation du signal D'ACTIVATION D'ÉMISSION.

9.11.3 Réception

Sur réception d'une activité de données, la MDS émet une indication (DÉMARRAGE D'ACTIVITÉ) de DONNÉES PH avec la valeur de DONNÉES reçue. Chaque donnée suivante reçue donne lieu à une indication (DONNÉES) de DONNÉES PH avec la valeur de DONNÉES reçue. Une fois terminée la réception des données, la MDS émet une indication (FIN D'ACTIVITÉ) de DONNÉES PH à l'utilisateur DL.

10 Interface MDS-MAU

10.1 Généralités

La MAU (unité de liaison au support) est une partie optionnellement séparée d'un élément de communication qui relie le support directement ou par l'intermédiaire de composants passifs. (Voir la Figure 1). Pour des variantes de signalisation électrique, la MAU est l'émetteur-récepteur qui fournit le changement de niveau et la forme d'onde des signaux émis et reçus. L'interface MDS – MAU relie la MAU à la MDS. Les services sont définis comme des signaux physiques afin de faciliter l'éventuelle exposition facultative de cette interface. Les paragraphes ci-après spécifient pour chaque type l'ensemble minimal de services exigés au niveau de l'interface MDS – MAU. Pour les services de gestion, voir l'Article 6.

NOTE Un certain nombre d'interfaces MDS-MAU différentes sont spécifiées, sur la base des pratiques industrielles en la matière.

10.2 Type 1: Interface MDS-MAU: Supports câblés et optiques

10.2.1 Services

Si l'interface MDS – MAU est exposée, elle doit prendre en charge au moins l'ensemble des services exigés indiqués dans le Tableau 44 et spécifiés en 10.2.2.

Tableau 44 – Ensemble minimal de services à l'interface MDS-MAU

Service	Abréviation	Sens
Exigé:		
Signal d'émission	TxS	Vers la MAU
Signal de réception	RxS	De la MAU
Activation d'émission	TxE	Vers la MAU
Facultatif		
Activation du rebouclage	LbE	Vers la MAU

10.2.2 Spécifications de services

10.2.2.1 Signal d'émission (TxS)

Le service de signal d'émission (TxS) doit transférer à la MAU la séquence de signaux PhPDU codée à travers l'interface MDS-MAU, la séquence doit être transmise sur le support si TxE (activation de l'émission) est mis au niveau logique "1" (niveau haut).

10.2.2.2 Signal de réception (RxS)

Le service de signal de réception (RxS) doit transférer à la MDS la séquence de signaux PhPDU codée ou un silence, à travers l'interface MAU – MDS. Le signal RxS doit renvoyer en écho le signal transmis via TxS en recevant simultanément les émissions en provenance du support.

10.2.2.3 Activation de l'émission (TxE)

Le service TxE (activation de l'émission) doit fournir à la MDS la fonction qui permet d'activer la MAU pour qu'elle émette. TxE doit être mis au niveau "1" logique (niveau haut) au début de l'émission du préambule puis au niveau "0" logique (niveau bas) après que le dernier bit du délimiteur de fin ait été transmis.

Si des supports redondants sont utilisés et si la méthode de mise en œuvre de la redondance est de recevoir sur tous les canaux mais de ne transmettre que sur un seul, le canal (câble) qui est en cours d'utilisation pour l'émission doit être sélectionné en mettant son signal TxE

au "1" logique (niveau haut). Tous les canaux qui ne sont pas en cours d'utilisation pour l'émission doivent être désactivés en établissant le signal TxE au "0" logique (niveau bas).

10.2.2.4 Activation du rebouclage (LbE)

Si le service facultatif LbE (activation du rebouclage) présenté dans le Tableau 44 est utilisé, il doit désactiver l'étage de sortie finale du circuit d'émission de la MAU, connecter la sortie de l'étage précédent du circuit d'émission de la MAU au circuit de réception de la MAU et déconnecter le circuit de réception de la MAU du support. L'état du service activation du rebouclage ne doit pas être modifié pendant que la MAU émet ou reçoit.

NOTE Ce service de confirmation n'a qu'une importance locale et permet à un dispositif de vérifier par des essais l'intégrité et la fonctionnalité des circuits de la PhL, à l'exception du support.

10.2.3 Caractéristiques des signaux

Les caractéristiques temporelles doivent être compatibles avec celles spécifiées dans les exigences de la présente norme pour la MDS correspondante.

Si l'interface MDS – MAU est exposée, elle doit fonctionner avec des niveaux de signaux numériques, comme présenté dans le Tableau 45. Les deux côtés de l'interface doivent fonctionner à la même valeur de V_{DD} .

Tableau 45 – Niveaux de signaux pour une interface MDS-MAU exposée

Symbole	Paramètre	Conditions	Limites	Unités	Remarques
V_{OL}	Tension de sortie de niveau bas maximale	$I_{out} = \pm 100 \mu A$	0,1	V	Voir Note 1
		$I_{out} = +1,6 \text{ mA}$	0,4	V	
V_{OH}	Tension de sortie de niveau haut minimale	$I_{out} = \pm 100 \mu A$	$V_{DD} - 0,1$	V	Voir Note 1
		$I_{out} = -0,8 \text{ mA}$	$V_{DD} - 0,8$	V	Voir Note 2
V_{IL}	Tension d'entrée de niveau bas maximale		$0,2 V_{DD}$	V	
V_{IH}	Tension d'entrée de niveau haut minimale		$0,7 V_{DD}$	V	Voir Note 3

NOTE 1 Donne la capacité d'entraîner deux charges CMOS typiques.

NOTE 2 La compatibilité d'une entrée CMOS avec une sortie TTL nécessite une résistance de polarisation de l'entrée du signal vers V_{DD} .

NOTE 3 La compatibilité d'une sortie CMOS pour $3,0 \text{ V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5,5 \text{ V}$. La compatibilité d'une sortie TTL ($4,75 \text{ V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5,25 \text{ V}$) nécessite une résistance de polarisation de l'entrée du signal vers V_{DD} .

10.2.4 Mode de communication

A cette interface, le mode de communication doit permettre une émission et une réception simultanées.

10.2.5 Caractéristiques temporelles

L'interface MDS – MAU doit fonctionner correctement à un débit binaire de PhSDU compris entre 1 kbit/s et 1,1 fois le débit binaire MAU déclaré le plus élevé.

NOTE Les débits binaires disponibles dans une mise en œuvre donnée sont fournis dans la déclaration de conformité d'une instance de protocole (PICS).

10.3 Type 1: Interface MDS-MAU: Signalisation radioélectrique

Lorsque cette interface est exposée, il convient qu'elle utilise le protocole et les signaux SPI normalisés dans l'industrie ou équivalents, dont les registres d'octets et les FIFO dans la MAU sont lus et écrits par la MDS, la MAU étant capable d'interrompre la MDS.

10.4 Type 2: Interface MDS-MAU: Supports câblés et optiques

10.4.1 Interface MDS-MAU: Généralités

10.4.1.1 Conformité

Un nœud peut inclure n'importe quelle (ou plusieurs) variantes de PhL mais, pour chaque variante de PhL mise en œuvre, l'interface de support appropriée doit être fournie.

Il n'est pas nécessaire d'exposer l'interface MDS-MAU lors de la mise en œuvre d'une quelconque variante de PhL. Cette interface peut être interne au nœud et à un dispositif à semiconducteur. Cependant, s'il est revendiqué une conformité à l'interface MDS-MAU, l'application doit satisfaire aux exigences du présent paragraphe.

10.4.1.2 Délai du support à l'interface MDS-MAU

Pour toutes les applications conformes à l'interface MDS-MAU, le délai de réception du support à l'interface MDS-MAU doit être inférieur à 200 ns et le délai d'émission de l'interface MDS-MAU au support doit être inférieur 200 ns.

10.4.2 Interface MDS-MAU: support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension

10.4.2.1 Définitions des signaux

Le présent paragraphe énumère les signaux définis pour l'interface MDS-MAU à support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension, comme présenté dans le Tableau 46.

Tableau 46 – Définitions de l'interface MDS-MAU: support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension

TxDATAOUT	TxDATABAR	NETENABLE	RxDATA	RxCARRIER	Symbole Ph
x	x	0	indéfini	0	Pas d'émission MAU_FRAME_REQUEST = faux
0	0	1	indéfini	0	Pas d'émission MAU_FRAME_REQUEST = faux
1	0	1	1	1	H
0	1	1	0	0	L
1	1	1	-	-	Non autorisé, risque d'endommagement de l'émetteur

10.4.2.2 TxDataOut

TxDATAOUT doit être "vrai" pour représenter le niveau haut (H) à partir de la MAU et doit être "faux" pour représenter le niveau bas (L), comme présenté dans le Tableau 46. TxDATAOUT doit être "faux" lorsqu'il n'y a pas de données de symbole Ph à transmettre (MAU_FRAME_REQUEST = false – demande de trame MAU = faux)

10.4.2.3 TxDataBar

TxDATABAR doit être "vrai" pour représenter le niveau bas (L) à partir de la MAU et doit être "faux" pour représenter le niveau haut (H), comme présenté dans le Tableau 46. TxDataBar

doit être "faux" lorsqu'il n'y a pas de données de symbole Ph à transmettre (MAU_FRAME_REQUEST = false)

10.4.2.4 NetEnable

NETENABLE doit être "vrai" pour permettre à la MAU d'émettre les données de symboles Ph TxDATAOUT et TxATABAR sur le support à câble coaxial. NETENABLE sur "faux" doit empêcher la transmission de données de symboles Ph TxDATAOUT et TxATABAR, comme présenté dans le Tableau 46.

10.4.2.5 RxData

RxData doit représenter les symboles Ph (H ou L) bruts, déformés et non synchronisés, tels que récupérés du support à câble coaxial. Ce signal doit être "vrai" ou "faux" selon les exigences du Tableau 84. Après récupération des données et resynchronisation pour répondre aux exigences de temporisation de la MDS (du Tableau 31), ces symboles Ph doivent être décodés en symboles M appropriés de la MDS, comme présenté dans le Tableau 32.

10.4.2.6 RxCarrier

RxCARRIER doit être "vrai" lorsque le niveau du signal sur le support à câble coaxial dépasse la tension du seuil de détection de porteuse, comme présenté dans le Tableau 85; dans le cas contraire, il doit être "faux". Ce signal doit être utilisé pour générer l'indication de PORTEUSE PH à l'interface DLL-PhL définie en 5.3.5.

10.4.3 Support optique 5 Mbit/s d'interface MDS-MAU

10.4.3.1 Définitions des signaux

Ce paragraphe énumère les signaux définis pour l'interface MDS-MAU à support à fibre optique de 5 Mbit/s, comme présenté dans le Tableau 47.

Tableau 47 – Support à fibre optique 5 Mbit/s d'interface MDS-MAU

TxDATAOUT	NETENABLE	RxDATA	RxCARRIER	Symbole Ph
Sans effet	0	0	0	L (bas) ou 'lumière inactive'
1	1	1	1	H (haut) ou 'lumière active'
0	1	0	0	L (bas) ou 'lumière inactive'

10.4.3.2 TxDataOut

TxDATAOUT doit être "vrai" pour représenter le niveau haut (H) à partir de la MAU et doit être "faux" pour représenter le niveau bas (L), comme présenté dans le Tableau 92. Un signal "vrai" doit être représenté sur le support à fibre optique comme 'lumière active'. Un signal "faux" doit être représenté sur le support à fibre optique comme 'lumière inactive'. Les exigences de niveau d'émission de la fibre qui définissent 'lumière active' (ou puissance couplée, PT on) et 'lumière inactive' (ou puissance couplée, PT off) doivent être telles que définies en 19.6.

10.4.3.3 NetEnable

NETENABLE doit être "vrai" pour indiquer que la sous-couche MDS a des symboles Ph valides à transmettre sur le support à fibre optique. NETENABLE doit permettre à la MAU d'émettre des niveaux de lumière TxDATAOUT sur le support à fibre optique. NETENABLE sur "faux" doit empêcher l'émission de signaux TxDATAOUT, comme présenté dans le Tableau 47.

10.4.3.4 RxData

RxDATA doit représenter les symboles Ph (H ou L) bruts, déformés et non synchronisés, tels que récupérés du support à fibre optique. Ce signal doit être "vrai" lorsque le niveau de lumière sur le support satisfait aux exigences de 'lumière active' définies en 19.6; autrement ce signal doit être "faux". Après récupération des données et resynchronisation pour répondre aux exigences de temporisation de la MDS (du Tableau 31), ces symboles Ph doivent être décodés en symboles M appropriés d'indication PLS_DATA_INDICATION comme présenté dans le Tableau 32. RxDATA doit indiquer "faux" si le support est défectueux, manquant ou si l'alimentation est retirée de l'extrémité émission de la fibre.

10.4.3.5 RxCarrier

RXCARRIER doit être "vrai" lorsque le niveau de lumière sur le support satisfait aux exigences de 'lumière active' définies en 19.6; autrement ce signal doit être "faux". Ce signal doit être directement utilisé pour générer l'indication PLS_CARRIER_INDICATION à l'interface DLL-PhL. Si l'émetteur-récepteur à fibre optique ne prend pas en charge un mécanisme d'indication de porteuse, ce signal d'interface doit être connecté au signal d'interface RxDATA. RXCARRIER doit indiquer "faux" si le support est défectueux, manquant ou si l'alimentation est retirée de l'extrémité émission de la fibre.

10.4.4 Port d'accès au réseau (NAP) de l'interface MDS-MAU

Les signaux suivants doivent être exigés pour l'interface MDS-MAU du port NAP (network access port):

- a) /TxPTC doit être "faux" pour représenter le niveau haut (H) des données d'émission à partir de la MAU, et doit être "vrai" pour représenter le niveau bas (L);
- b) /RxPTC doit être "faux" pour représenter le niveau haut (H) des données de réception à partir de la MDS, et doit être "vrai" pour représenter le niveau bas (L). Ce signal doit être "vrai" si le support NAP est retiré, défectueux, en court-circuit ou si l'émetteur d'origine est désactivé.

10.5 Type 3: Interface MDS-MAU: Supports câblés et optiques

10.5.1 Transmission synchrone

L'interface MDS-MAU spécifiée pour le Type 1 doit être utilisée (voir 10.12).

10.5.2 Transmission asynchrone

On doit utiliser, en lieu et place de l'interface MDS-MAU décrite en 10.2, l'interface DL-Ph pour la transmission asynchrone (voir 5.1 et 5.4.2).

10.6 Type 8: Interface MDS-MAU: Supports câblés et optiques

10.6.1 Aperçu des services

L'interface MDS-MAU met à disposition des services permettant de connecter la MDS à une MAU correspondante. Les services sont définis comme des signaux logiques que la sous-couche MAU convertit directement en signaux physiques (voir Tableau 48).

Tableau 48 – Services de l'interface MDS-MAU

Service	Mnémonique	Sens
Données out (sortantes)	DO	De la MDS
Données In (entrantes)	DI	De la MAU
Connecteur de bus	BC	De la MAU
Activation du rebouclage	LbE	De la MDS
Sélection de données	DS	De la MDS
Activité du support	MA	De la MDS
NOTE Les services connecteur de bus, activation du rebouclage, sélection de données et activité du support sont uniquement pris en charge par la MAU d'une interface de départ.		

10.6.2 Description des services

10.6.2.1 Data-out (DO): Sortie de données

Ce service transmet la PHPDU de la MDS à la MAU.

10.6.2.2 Data-in (DI): Entrée de données

Ce service transmet la PHPDU de la MAU à la MDS.

10.6.2.3 Connecteur de bus (BC – bus connector)

Ce service indique à une MDS si un support d'émission est connecté à la MAU d'une interface de départ. Si le support d'émission n'est pas connecté à la MAU d'une interface de départ, la Gestion systèmes doit, pour cette MAU, déconnecter le circuit de réception du support au moyen du service activation du rebouclage (LbE) et connecter le circuit d'émission au circuit de réception.

NOTE 1 Le service connecteur de bus est uniquement pris en charge par la MAU d'une interface de départ. Il n'est pas lié aux autres services de l'interface MDS-MAU.

NOTE 2 Il s'agit d'un service de gestion local qui indique si un autre dispositif de bus est connecté à l'interface de départ de la MAU, ce qui permet à la Gestion systèmes de fermer ou d'ouvrir l'anneau d'émission au moyen du service d'activation du rebouclage.

NOTE 3 La détection d'un autre dispositif de bus connecté est réalisée par un signal qui est conduit par l'intermédiaire d'un pont dans le connecteur du câble de départ (voir la définition du câble).

10.6.2.4 Activation du rebouclage (LbE – loopback enable)

Ce service permet à la Gestion systèmes de désaccoupler le circuit de réception du support d'émission pour une MAU d'interface de départ et de connecter le circuit d'émission au circuit d'entrée.

NOTE 1 Le service activation du rebouclage est uniquement pris en charge par la MAU d'une interface de départ et n'est pas lié aux autres services de l'interface MDS-MAU.

NOTE 2 Il s'agit d'un service de gestion local qui permet à la Gestion systèmes de fermer l'anneau d'émission si aucun autre esclave de bus n'est connecté à la MAU d'une interface de départ.

10.6.2.5 Activité du support (MA- medium activity)

Ce service émet une PHPDU d'état spéciale de la MDS à la MAU si l'anneau actif a été désaccouplé du support et si les circuits d'émission et de réception ont été connectés mais une activité contrôlée est à générer sur le support.

NOTE 1 Ce service est utilisé par un esclave uniquement.

NOTE 2 Le service activité du support est uniquement pris en charge par la MAU d'une interface de départ et n'a aucune relation temporelle avec les autres services de l'interface MDS-MAU.

10.6.2.6 Data select (DS): Sélection de données

La Gestion systèmes utilise ce service pour émettre sur le support désaccouplé d'une MAU de départ soit une PHPDU de réinitialisation soit, au moyen du service activité du support, certaines PHPDU d'état.

NOTE 1 Ce service est utilisé par un esclave uniquement.

NOTE 2 Le service sélection de données est uniquement pris en charge par la MAU d'une interface de départ et n'est pas lié aux autres services de l'interface MDS-MAU.

10.6.3 Réponse temporelle

La MDS doit être capable de décoder correctement un bit ayant une instabilité du signal binaire, comme spécifié dans la Figure 53. La variation de l'horloge d'échantillonnage doit s'inscrire dans une plage de $\pm 0,1$ %.

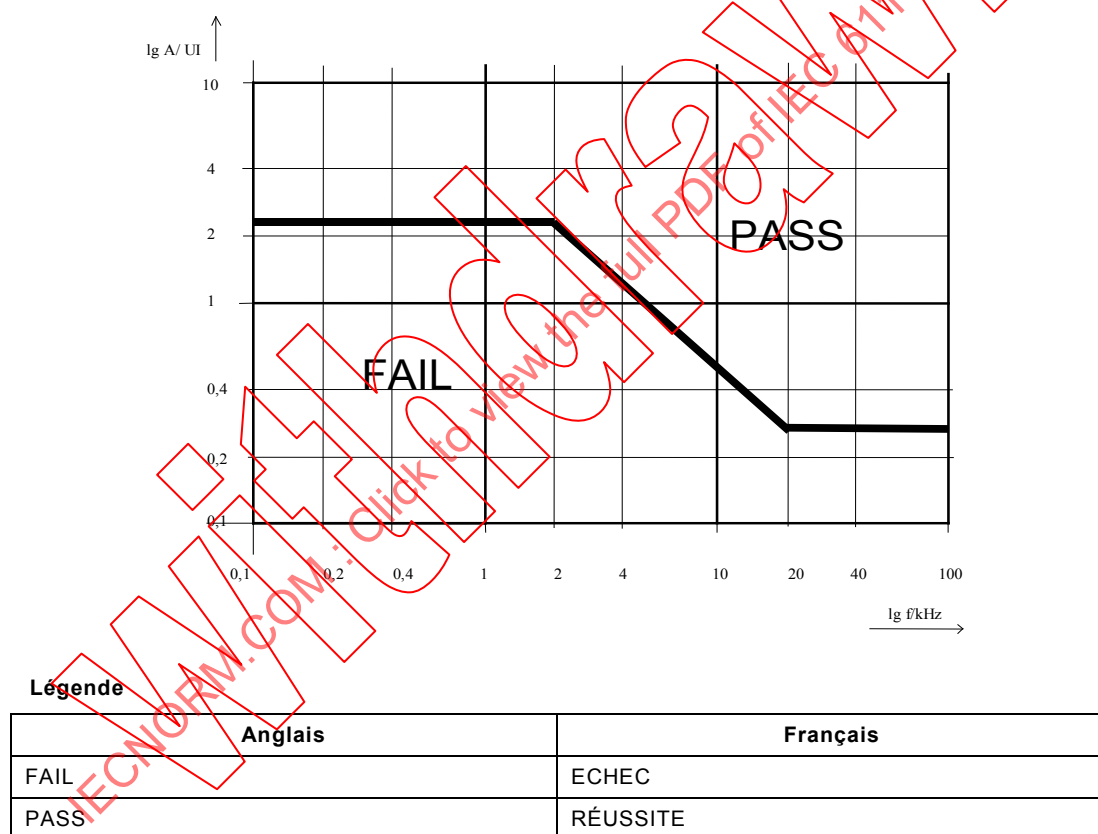


Figure 53 – Tolérance à l'instabilité (gigue)

10.6.4 Mode d'émission

L'interface MDS-MAU doit permettre une émission et une réception simultanées et indépendantes.

10.7 Type 18: Interface MDS-MAU: Supports câblés

10.7.1 Généralités

La granularité des PHPDU échangées au niveau de l'interface MAU est d'un bit.

10.7.2 Services

Si l'interface MDS-MAU est exposée, elle doit prendre en charge au moins l'ensemble des services exigés indiqués dans le Tableau 49 et spécifiés en 10.2.2.

Tableau 49 – Ensemble minimal de services à l'interface MAU

Service	Abréviation	Sens
Signal d'émission	TxS	Vers la MAU
Signal de réception	RxS	De la MAU
Activation d'émission	TxE	Vers la MAU

10.7.3 Spécifications de services

10.7.3.1 Signal d'émission (TxS)

Le service de signal d'émission (TxS) doit transférer la séquence de signaux PhPDU codée à travers l'interface vers la MAU, la séquence doit être transmise sur le support si TxS (activation de l'émission) est mis au niveau logique "1" (niveau haut).

10.7.3.2 Signal de réception (RxS)

Le service de signal de réception (RxS) doit transférer la séquence de signaux PhPDU codée ou un silence, à travers l'interface vers la MDS. Le signal RxS doit renvoyer en écho le signal transmis via TxS en recevant simultanément les émissions en provenance du support.

10.7.3.3 Activation de l'émission (TxS)

Le service TxS (activation de l'émission) doit fournir la fonction qui permet d'activer la MAU pour qu'elle émette. TxS doit être mis au niveau "1" logique (niveau haut) au début de l'émission du préambule puis au niveau "0" logique (niveau bas) après que le dernier bit du délimiteur de fin ait été transmis.

10.7.4 Caractéristiques des signaux

Si l'interface MAU est exposée, elle doit fonctionner avec des niveaux de signaux numériques, comme présenté dans le Tableau 50. Les deux côtés de l'interface doivent fonctionner à la même valeur de V_{DD} .

Tableau 50 – Niveaux de signaux pour une interface MAU exposée

Symbole	Paramètre	Conditions	Limites	Unités	Remarques
V_{OL}	Tension de sortie de niveau bas maximale	$I_{out} = \pm 100 \mu A$	0,1	V	Voir la note 1
		$I_{out} = +1,6 \text{ mA}$	0,4	V	
V_{OH}	Tension de sortie de haut niveau minimale	$I_{out} = \pm 100 \mu A$	$V_{DD} - 0,1$	V	Voir la note 1
		$I_{out} = -0,8 \text{ mA}$	$V_{DD} - 0,8$	V	Voir la note 2
V_{IL}	tension d'entrée de niveau bas maximale		$0,2 V_{DD}$	V	
V_{IH}	tension d'entrée de haut niveau minimale		$0,7 V_{DD}$	V	Voir la note 3
NOTE 1 Donne la capacité d'entraîner deux charges CMOS typiques. NOTE 2 La compatibilité d'une entrée CMOS avec une sortie TTL nécessite une résistance de polarisation de l'entrée du signal vers V_{DD}. NOTE 3 La compatibilité d'une sortie CMOS pour $3,0 \text{ V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5,5 \text{ V}$. La compatibilité d'une sortie TTL ($4,75 \text{ V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5,25 \text{ V}$) nécessite une résistance de polarisation de l'entrée du signal vers V_{DD}.					

10.7.5 Mode de communication

A cette interface, le mode de communication doit permettre une émission et une réception simultanées.

10.7.6 Caractéristiques temporelles

L'interface MAU doit fonctionner correctement à un débit binaire de PhSDU compris entre 1 kbit/s et 1,1 fois le débit binaire MAU déclaré le plus élevé. La précision de la fréquence de synchronisation doit être autour de 150 ppm du taux spécifié.

11 Types 1 et 7: Unité de liaison au Support: mode tension, topologie de bus linéaire, support câblé à paire torsadée 150 Ω

11.1 Généralités

Ces exigences applicables à la MAU ne sont pas spécifiquement destinées à faciliter les options de

- distribution de l'alimentation par le biais des conducteurs de signaux ;
- et à permettre la certification de la sécurité intrinsèque.

Le support réseau est constitué d'un câble à paire torsadée blindé. Indépendamment de la topologie, tous les dispositifs connectés, sauf éventuellement le dispositif d'émission, présentent une impédance élevée pour éviter une surcharge importante du réseau. Des formes d'onde trapézoïdales sont utilisées pour réduire les émissions électromagnétiques et la distorsion des signaux.

Une topologie de bus linéaire est prise en charge, comme le sont également certaines topologies acycliques à dérivations. Un réseau comporte un câble de ligne principale, disposant de terminaisons à ses extrémités.

11.2 Grandeurs dépendantes du débit binaire

Six débits binaires sont définis pour une MAU (unité de liaison au support) à paire torsadée en mode tension. Une MAU donnée doit prendre en charge au moins un de ces débits binaires.

Le Tableau 51 indique les débits binaires pris en charge et définit les symboles relatifs aux grandeurs dépendantes du débit binaire utilisés dans la suite du présent article.

Tableau 51 – Grandeurs dépendantes du débit binaire de réseaux en mode tension

Grandeur		Symbole	Unité	Valeur					
Débit binaire nominal		Br	Mbit/s	0,031 25	1	2,5	5	10	25
Ecart maximal par rapport à BR		ΔBR		0,2 %	0,01 %				
Durée binaire nominale		T_{bit}	μs	32	1,0	0,4	0,2	0,1	0,04
Ecart maximal par rapport à T_{bit}		ΔT_{bit}	-	0,9 μs	0,025 %				
Fréquences de signalisation	Nominale pour une répétition de bit	f_r	MHz	0,031 25	1	2,5	5	10	25
	Nominale minimale = $0,25 f_r$	f_{min}	MHz	0,007 8	0,25	0,625	1,25	2,5	6,25
	Nominale maximale = $1,25 f_r$	f_{max}	MHz	0,039	1,25	3,125	6,25	12,5	31,25
Nombre maximal de dispositifs		N_{max}		32			16		
Distance maximale entre dispositifs		L_{max}	m	4 000	750	500	400	200	100
Affaiblissement maximal entre dispositifs		A_{max}	dB	15	17	18			
Distorsion d'affaiblissement maximale entre dispositifs		AD_{max}	dB	8			10		
Distorsion de désadaptation maximale entre dispositifs		MD_{max}	dB	0,2			0,4	0,6	
temps de croissance ou de décroissance de signal maximal		T_{rf}	ns	8 000	200	80	40	20	8
Espacement maximal des coupleurs pour former une grappe		CS_{max}	m	4		2	1	0,5	0,25
Impédance d'entrée minimale d'un dispositif		D_{inmin}	k Ω	8			4	2	1
Sortie maximale d'émetteur passif		QTO_{max}	mV eff.	1	5	10	20	40	80
Fréquence maximale pour la mesure de QTO_{max}		f_{QTOmax}	MHz	0,1	$4 f_r$				

Le débit binaire moyen doit être $BR \pm \Delta BR$, moyenné sur une trame ayant une longueur minimale de 16 octets. Le temps binaire instantané doit être $T_{bit} \pm \Delta T_{bit}$.

11.3 Spécifications du réseau

11.3.1 Composants

Une MAU en mode tension fonctionne sur un réseau constitué des composants suivants:

- un câble à paire torsadée;
- des dispositifs (comportant au moins un élément de communication);
- des connecteurs;
- des coupleurs;
- des terminateurs.

11.3.2 Topologies

Une MAU câblée doit fonctionner sur un réseau de topologie de bus linéaire nominale acyclique, constitué d'une ligne principale, terminée à chaque extrémité comme spécifié en 11.8.5 et à laquelle des éléments de communication sont connectés par l'intermédiaire de coupleurs. Chaque élément de communication doit être connecté en parallèle au câble de ligne principale.

NOTE 1 Le coupleur et l'élément de communication sont en général intégrés dans un dispositif.

NOTE 2 Des répéteurs actifs peuvent être utilisés pour constituer des dérivations ou étendre la longueur de la ligne principale au-delà d'un segment unique si cela est autorisé par les règles de configuration du réseau. Les dérivations doivent être considérées comme des segments, et peuvent rendre le bus non linéaire. Les cycles (boucles fermées) ne sont jamais autorisés.

11.3.3 Règles de configuration du réseau

Une MAU qui revendique la conformité au présent article de la présente norme doit satisfaire aux exigences du présent article lorsqu'elle est utilisée sur un réseau qui satisfait aux présentes règles.

Règle 1: Un bus de terrain doit être capable d'assurer la communication entre deux et $N_{\max}$ dispositifs, fonctionnant tous au même débit binaire.

NOTE 1 Cette règle n'exclut pas l'utilisation d'un nombre de dispositifs supérieur à $N_{\max}$ dans un système installé.

Règle 2: Un segment de bus de terrain à pleine charge (comportant le nombre maximal de dispositifs connectés) doit avoir une longueur totale de câble, y compris les dérivations, entre deux dispositifs quelconques, allant jusqu'à $L_{\max}$.

NOTE 2 La prise en charge de cette longueur maximale du câble est une exigence pour que la MAU soit conforme au présent article de la présente norme, mais n'exclut pas l'utilisation de longueurs supérieures dans un système installé.

Règle 3: Le nombre total de régénérations de forme d'onde par des répéteurs et des coupleurs actifs entre deux dispositifs quelconques dépend de la mise en œuvre du répéteur concerné.

NOTE 3 Ce nombre total était limité à quatre dans les éditions précédentes de la présente norme.

Règle 4: Le délai maximal de propagation entre deux dispositifs quelconques ne doit pas dépasser $40 T_{\text{bit}}$.

NOTE 4 Pour que le réseau fonctionne efficacement, il convient que cette partie du temps de retournement de tout dispositif du réseau, générée par une PhE entre la fin d'une trame reçue et le début d'une trame émise contenant une réponse immédiate associée, ne dépasse pas 30 temps binaires, dont il convient qu'au maximum 2 temps binaires soient dus à la MAU. Sachant qu'il n'est pas obligatoire d'exposer l'interface DLL – PhL ou l'interface MDS – MAU, cette partie du temps de retournement d'un dispositif de bus de terrain due à la PhL ou à la MAU ne peut pas être spécifiée ou soumise à des essais de conformité.

Règle 5: Le bus de terrain doit pouvoir continuer à fonctionner lorsqu'un dispositif y est connecté ou déconnecté. Les erreurs de données générées lors de la connexion ou de la déconnexion doivent être détectées.

Règle 6: Pour un bus de terrain qui n'est pas alimenté par l'intermédiaire de conducteurs de signaux, la défaillance unique de tout élément de communication (y compris un court circuit mais à l'exception des bavardages) ne doit pas interférer avec les transactions entre d'autres éléments de communication pendant plus de 1 ms.

Règle 7: Dans des systèmes polarisés, les paires de conducteurs du support doivent être distinctement repérées de manière à identifier de manière unique chaque conducteur individuel. Une polarisation homogène doit être maintenue en tout point de raccordement.

Règle 8: La dégradation des caractéristiques électriques du signal, entre deux dispositifs quelconques, due à l'affaiblissement, à la distorsion d'affaiblissement et à la distorsion de désadaptation doit être limitée aux valeurs indiquées ci-dessous.

- a) Affaiblissement du signal: La configuration du bus (la longueur de ligne principale, le nombre de dispositifs, et les éventuels dispositifs d'adaptation) doit être telle que l'affaiblissement entre deux dispositifs quelconques, à une fréquence f_r , ne doit pas dépasser $A_{\max}$;

- b) Distorsion d'affaiblissement: La configuration du bus (les longueurs de la ligne principale et des lignes secondaires ainsi que le nombre de dispositifs) doit être telle qu'entre deux dispositifs quelconques:

$$0 \leq [\text{Affaiblissement}(f_{\max}) - \text{Affaiblissement}(f_{\min})] \leq AD_{\max}$$

L'affaiblissement doit être monotonique, non décroissant, pour toutes les fréquences de $f_{\min}$ à $f_{\max}$;

- c) Distorsion de désadaptation: La désadaptation (due à un effet quelconque) sur le bus, en tout point sur la ligne principale et dans la bande de fréquence $f_{\min}$ à $f_{\max}$, doit être:

$$|Z - Z_{fr}| / |Z + Z_{fr}| \leq MD_{\max}$$

où Z_{fr} est l'impédance caractéristique du câble de ligne principale à la fréquence f_r et Z est la combinaison parallèle de Z_{fr} et de l'impédance de charge au niveau du coupleur.

NOTE 5 Cette règle permet de réduire les restrictions, en termes de longueurs de la ligne principale et des lignes secondaires ainsi qu'en termes de nombre de dispositifs, etc. en ne spécifiant que des limites d'émission imposées par des combinaisons de ces facteurs. Différentes combinaisons peuvent être utilisées en fonction des besoins de l'application.

NOTE 6 En général, la cause d'une désadaptation importante est la concentration de plusieurs coupleurs sur une courte longueur de ligne principale.

Si la distance entre deux coupleurs consécutifs est inférieure à $CS_{\max}$, le temps de propagation entre ces deux coupleurs est inférieur à T_{rf} et la concentration apparaît comme un seul élément désadapté, induisant des réflexions importantes des transitions de signaux.

Une concentration de coupleurs dont la distance entre deux coupleurs consécutifs est inférieure à $CS_{\max}$ est définie comme une grappe. Afin de satisfaire à la règle 8c lorsqu'il est utilisé des dispositifs ayant une impédance d'entrée de valeur minimale $Din_{\min}$ et des lignes secondaires de longueur zéro, il est recommandé qu'une grappe ne comprenne pas plus de 4 coupleurs.

L'utilisation de dispositifs ayant une impédance d'entrée notablement plus élevée que la valeur minimale $Din_{\min}$ permet d'utiliser des grappes constituées d'un plus grand nombre de coupleurs. L'utilisation de lignes secondaires de longueur non égale à zéro pourrait exiger que les grappes soient constituées de moins de 4 coupleurs.

NOTE 7 Il est possible de réduire la désadaptation due à une grappe de la manière suivante:

- en utilisant des coupleurs multivoies actifs;
- en insérant des dispositifs d'adaptation (atténuateurs passifs) de chaque côté de la grappe tout en se conformant à la règle 8.

Règle 9: Les règles suivantes doivent s'appliquer aux systèmes mis en œuvre avec des supports redondants:

- a) chaque canal (câble) doit satisfaire aux règles de configuration du réseau;
- b) il ne doit pas y avoir de segment non redondant entre deux segments redondants;
- c) les répéteurs doivent également être redondants;
- d) si les dispositifs du système sont configurés (par la Gestion systèmes) pour émettre sur plusieurs canaux simultanément, la différence de délai de propagation entre deux dispositifs quelconques sur deux canaux quelconques ne doit pas dépasser cinq temps binaires;

NOTE 8 Cette période peut être étendue mais non réduite par la Gestion systèmes, comme indiqué dans le Tableau 4 (voir 6.2.2.2 et 9.2.9).

- e) les numéros de canaux et leur association aux supports de transmission physiques doivent être maintenus de manière cohérente sur l'ensemble des bus de terrain, c'est-à-dire que les canaux 1, 2, 3... en provenance de la gestion systèmes doivent toujours être connectés aux canaux physiques 1, 2, 3....

11.3.4 Règles de distribution de l'alimentation pour la configuration du réseau

Le blindage du câble ne doit pas être utilisé comme conducteur de l'alimentation.

11.4 Spécification du circuit d'émission de la MAU

11.4.1 Récapitulatif

Les Tableaux 52 à 54 résument les exigences applicables à la MAU.

Tableau 52 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du niveau d'émission de la MAU

Caractéristiques du niveau d'émission, valeurs en référence à la ligne principale (mais mesurées en utilisant la charge d'essai présentée en Figure 54)	Limites
Niveau de sortie (crête à crête, voir la Figure 55) Avec charge d'essai ($0,5$ de Z_0 nominale du câble de ligne principale à la fréquence f_r)	$5,5 \text{ V à } 9,0 \text{ V}$ $75 \Omega \pm 1 \%$
Différence d'amplitude positive et négative maximale (biais de la signalisation) telle qu'illustrée en Figure 56	$\pm 0,45 \text{ V}$
Niveau de sortie, un terminateur retiré (crête à crête) Avec charge d'essai (impédance nominale du câble de ligne principale à f_r)	$5,5 \text{ V à } 11,0 \text{ V}$ $150 \Omega \pm 1 \%$
Niveau maximal de sortie; circuit ouvert (crête à crête)	$5,5 \text{ V à } 30,0 \text{ V}$
Distorsion maximale du signal de sortie; c'est-à-dire surtension, suroscillation et statisme (voir la Figure 55)	$\pm 10 \%$
Sortie d'émetteur passif c'est-à-dire le bruit de l'émetteur (mesuré sur la bande de fréquence de 1 kHz à f_{QTOmax})	$\leq QTO_{max} \text{ (eff.)}$

Tableau 53 – Récapitulatif de la spécification de la synchronisation de l'émission de la MAU pour un fonctionnement à $31,25 \text{ kbit/s}$

Caractéristiques de synchronisation de l'émission, valeurs en référence à la ligne principale (mais mesurées en utilisant la charge d'essai présentée en Figure 54)	Limites
Débit binaire d'émission	$BR \pm \Delta BR$
Temps binaire instantané	$T_{bit} \pm \Delta T_{bit}$
Temps de croissance et de décroissance (10% à 90% du signal crête à crête, voir la Figure 55)	$\leq 25 \%$ T_{bit}
Taux de dérive (en tout point de 10% à 90% du signal crête à crête)	$\leq 0,2 \text{ V}/\mu\text{s}$
Instabilité maximale de bit élémentaire émis (écart du point de passage par zéro, voir la Figure 56)	$\pm 2,5 \%$ T_{bit}
Le délai d'activation/désactivation d'émission (c'est-à-dire la durée pendant laquelle la forme d'onde de sortie peut ne pas satisfaire aux exigences d'émission)	$\leq 2,0 T_{bit}$

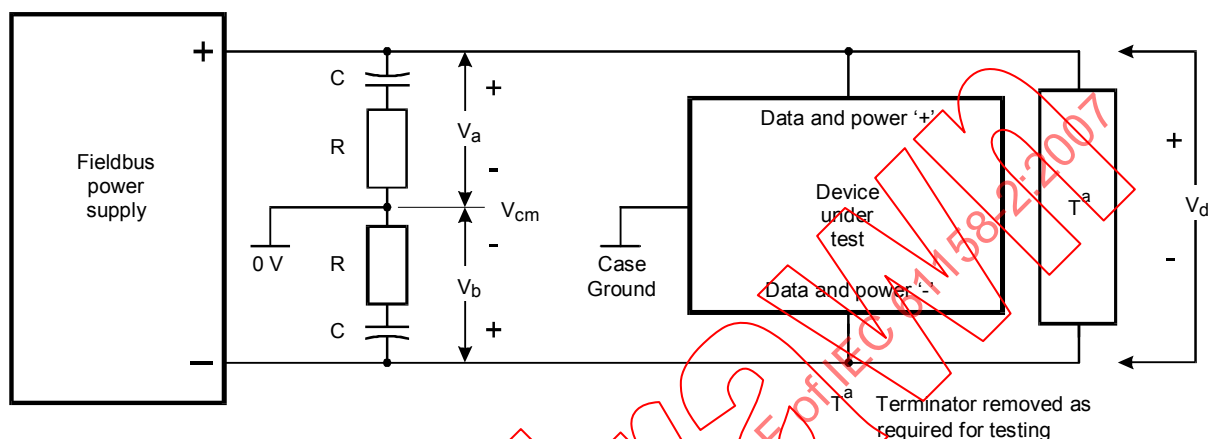
Tableau 54 – Récapitulatif de la spécification de la synchronisation de l'émission de la MAU pour un fonctionnement à $\geq 1 \text{ Mbit/s}$

Caractéristiques de synchronisation de l'émission, valeurs en référence à la ligne principale (mais mesurées en utilisant la charge d'essai présentée en Figure 54)	Limites
Débit binaire d'émission	$BR \pm \Delta BR$
Temps binaire instantané	$T_{bit} \pm \Delta T_{bit}$
Temps de croissance et de décroissance (10% à 90% du signal crête à crête, voir la Figure 55)	$\leq 20 \%$ T_{bit}
Taux de dérive (en tout point de 10% à 90% du signal crête à crête)	$\leq 100 \text{ V}/\mu\text{s} \times (f_r/\text{MHz})$
Instabilité maximale de bit élémentaire émis (écart du point de passage par zéro, voir la Figure 56)	$\pm 2,5 \%$ T_{bit}
Le délai d'activation/désactivation d'émission (c'est-à-dire la durée pendant laquelle la forme d'onde de sortie peut ne pas satisfaire aux exigences d'émission)	$\leq 2,0 T_{bit}$

11.4.2 Configuration d'essai de la MAU

La Figure 54 illustre la configuration qui doit être utilisée pour les essais de MAU:

- Tension de signal en mode différentiel: $V_d = V_a - V_b$
- Résistance de la charge d'essai $R = 75 \, \Omega$ (0,5 impédance nominale du câble de ligne principale à f_r) et $C = 0,15 \, \mu\text{F}$, sauf spécification contraire dans une exigence particulière.
- Borne "+" des données raccordée à la borne "+" de l'alimentation et borne "-" des données raccordée à la borne "-" de l'alimentation.



Légende

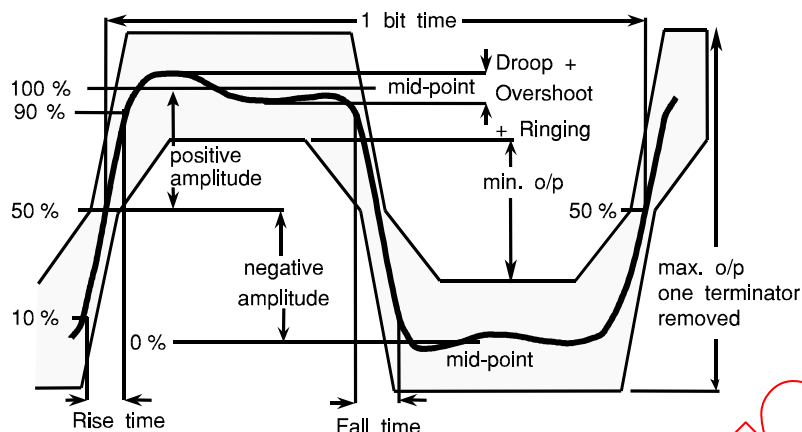
Anglais	Français
Fieldbus power supply	Alimentation du bus de terrain
Case ground	Masse du boîtier
Data and power "+"	Données et alim "+"
Device under test	Dispositif en essai
Data and power "-"	Données et alim "-"
Terminator removed as required for testing	Terminateur retiré selon les exigences d'essai

Figure 54 – Configuration d'essai du circuit d'émission

11.4.3 Exigences de niveau de sortie de la MAU

La Figure 55 décrit la forme de sortie du signal compte tenu des exigences de niveau de sortie en tension de la paire torsadée.

NOTE La Figure 55 présente un exemple de la composante alternative d'un cycle de forme d'onde de bus de terrain, illustrant certains éléments-clés de la spécification du circuit d'émission. Seules les tensions des signaux sont indiquées; ce schéma ne tient aucunement compte des tensions d'alimentation.



Légende

Anglais	Français
1 bit time	1 temps binaire
Positive amplitude	Amplitude positive
Negative amplitude	Amplitude négative
Rise time	Temps de croissance
Fall time	Temps de décroissance
Mid-point	Point médian
Droop + Overshoot Ringing	Statisme + suroscillation de dépassement
Min. o/p	Min. o/p
Max. o/p one terminator removed	Max. o/p un terminateur retiré

Figure 55 – Forme d'onde de sortie

Le circuit d'émission de la MAU doit être conforme aux exigences de niveau de sortie suivantes, toutes les amplitudes étant mesurées au point médian estimé entre toute crête ou creux en haut et en bas de la forme d'onde ("point médian" en Figure 55):

- la tension de sortie sur la charge d'essai après élévation/abaissement par le transformateur (le cas échéant), doit être comprise entre 5,5 V et 9,0 V crête à crête avec une résistance de charge de $75 \Omega \pm 1 \%$ ("min. o/p." en Figure 55);
- la tension de sortie au niveau de la ligne principale ou aux bornes d'émission, avec une résistance de charge de $150 \Omega \pm 1 \%$ (c'est-à-dire l'un des terminateurs de la ligne principale étant retiré) doit être comprise entre 5,5 V et 11,0 V crête à crête ("max. o/p un terminateur retiré" dans la Figure 55);
- la tension de sortie au niveau de la ligne principale ou aux bornes d'émission, avec toute charge comprenant un circuit ouvert, doit être comprise entre 5,5 V et 30,0 V crête à crête. Aux fins de l'essai, un circuit ouvert est défini comme étant une charge ayant une résistance de 100 k Ω en parallèle avec une capacité de 15 pF;
- au cours d'une émission, un dispositif donné ne doit pas subir de défaillance permanente lorsqu'une résistance de charge de $\leq 1 \Omega$ est appliquée pendant 1 s;
- la différence entre amplitude positive et amplitude négative, mesurée comme présenté dans la Figure 55, ne doit pas dépasser $\pm 0,45$ V crête;
- le bruit en sortie d'une MAU en réception ou non alimentée ne doit pas dépasser $QTO_{\max}$ eff., mesuré de manière différentielle sur la bande de fréquence de 1 kHz à $f_{QTO_{\max}}$, en référence à la ligne principale;
- la tension différentielle sur la charge d'essai doit donner une modification monotonique de la tension, entre 10 % et 90 % de la valeur crête à crête. Par la suite, la tension du signal ne doit pas varier de plus de $\pm 10 \%$ de la valeur crête à crête jusqu'à ce que la transition

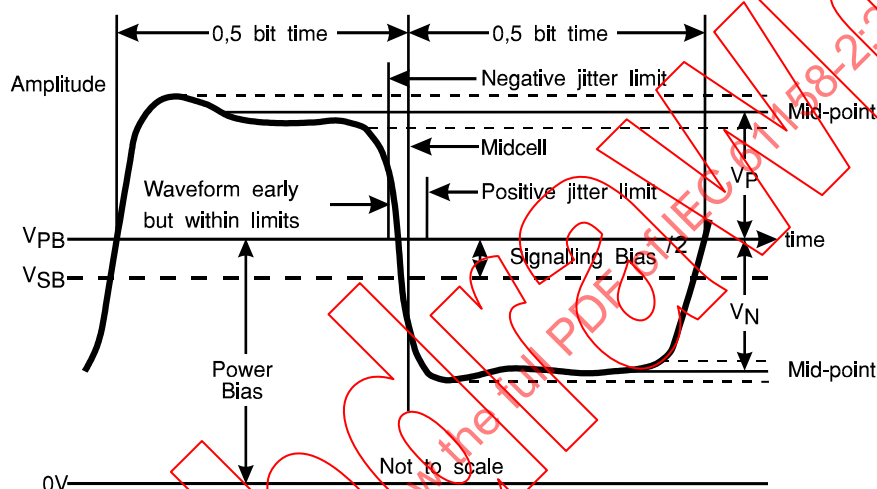
suivante ait lieu. Cette variation admissible doit inclure toutes les formes de distorsion de signal de sortie, c'est-à-dire la surtension, la suroscillation et le statisme.

11.4.4 Exigences de synchronisation des sorties de la MAU

11.4.4.1 Exigences communes de synchronisation des sorties pour tous les débits de données

Le circuit d'émission d'une MAU doit être conforme aux exigences suivantes de synchronisation des sorties:

- a) l'instabilité de bit élémentaire émis ne doit pas dépasser ΔT_{bit} par rapport au point de passage par zéro idéal, mesuré en fonction du point de passage par zéro précédent (voir Figure 56);



Légende

Anglais	Français
0,5 bit time	0,5 temps binaire
Amplitude	Amplitude
Negative Jitter Limit	Limite d'instabilité négative
Mid-point	Point médian
Waveform early but within limits	Forme d'onde précoce mais dans les limites
Mid-cell	A mi-cellule (bit élémentaire)
Positive Jitter Limit	Limite d'instabilité positive
Signalling Bias	Biais de la signalisation
Time	Temps
Power Bias	Biais de l'alimentation
Mid-point	Point médian
Not to scale	Non à l'échelle

**Figure 56 – Instabilité de bit élémentaire émis et reçu
(écart du point de passage par zéro)**

- b) le circuit d'émission doit s'activer, ce qui signifie que le signal doit monter d'un niveau inférieur au bruit de sortie maximal du circuit d'émission, comme spécifié en 11.4.3f), jusqu'au niveau de pleine puissance, en moins de $2,0 T_{\text{bit}}$. La forme d'onde correspondant au troisième temps binaire et au-delà, doit être telle que spécifiée dans la Figure 55;
- c) le circuit d'émission doit se désactiver, ce qui signifie que le signal doit tomber, en moins de $2,0 T_{\text{bit}}$, du niveau de pleine puissance à un niveau inférieur au bruit de sortie maximal

du circuit d'émission, comme spécifié en 11.4.3f). La durée nécessaire pour que le circuit d'émission revienne à son impédance d'état "non actif" ne doit pas dépasser $4,0 T_{bit}$. Aux fins des essais, cette exigence doit être satisfaite dans la configuration d'essai du circuit d'émission de la Figure 54, avec la capacité équivalente d'une longueur de câble maximale entre les bornes du dispositif en essai.

NOTE Cette exigence permet de s'assurer que la capacité de la ligne a été pleinement déchargée lors de la transition du circuit d'émission de l'état actif à l'état passif.

11.4.4.2 Exigences supplémentaires de synchronisation des sorties pour un fonctionnement à 31,25 kbit/s

Le circuit d'émission de la MAU doit être conforme aux exigences supplémentaires suivantes de synchronisation des sorties:

- a) les temps de croissance et de décroissance, mesurés de 10 % à 90 % de l'amplitude du signal crête à crête, ne doivent pas dépasser $0,25 T_{bit}$ (voir la Figure 55);
- b) le taux de dérive, mesuré en tout point dans une plage de 10 % à 90 % de l'amplitude du signal crête à crête, ne doit pas dépasser $0,2 V/\mu s$ (voir la Figure 55).

NOTE Les exigences a) et b) génèrent une forme d'onde trapézoïdale à la sortie du circuit d'émission. L'exigence b) limite le niveau des émissions de perturbation qui peuvent être couplées aux circuits adjacents, etc. L'exigence b) est calculée à partir de la formule suivante:

$$\text{taux de dérive max.} = 2 \times \text{taux de dérive min.} = 2 \times 0,8 V_o / 0,25 T_{bit} = 6,4 \times V_o / T_{bit},$$

où V_o est la tension de sortie maximale crête à crête (9,0 V) avec une charge normalisée.

11.4.4.3 Exigences supplémentaires de synchronisation des sorties pour un fonctionnement à ≥ 1 Mbit/s

Le circuit d'émission de la MAU doit être conforme aux exigences supplémentaires suivantes de synchronisation des sorties:

- a) les temps de croissance et de décroissance, mesurés de 10 % à 90 % de l'amplitude du signal crête à crête, ne doivent pas dépasser $0,2 T_{bit}$ (voir la Figure 55);
- b) le taux de dérive, mesuré en tout point dans une plage de 10 % à 90 % de l'amplitude du signal crête à crête, ne doit pas dépasser $100 V/\mu s \times (f_r/MHz)$ (voir la Figure 55).

NOTE Les exigences a) et b) génèrent une forme d'onde trapézoïdale à la sortie du circuit d'émission. L'exigence b) limite le niveau des émissions de perturbation qui peuvent être couplées aux circuits adjacents, etc. L'exigence b) est calculée à partir de la formule suivante:

$$\text{taux de dérive max.} = 36 \times \text{taux de dérive min.} = 3 \times 0,8 V_o / 0,2 T_{bit} = 12 \times V_o / T_{bit},$$

où V_o est la tension de sortie maximale crête à crête (9,0 V) avec une charge normalisée.

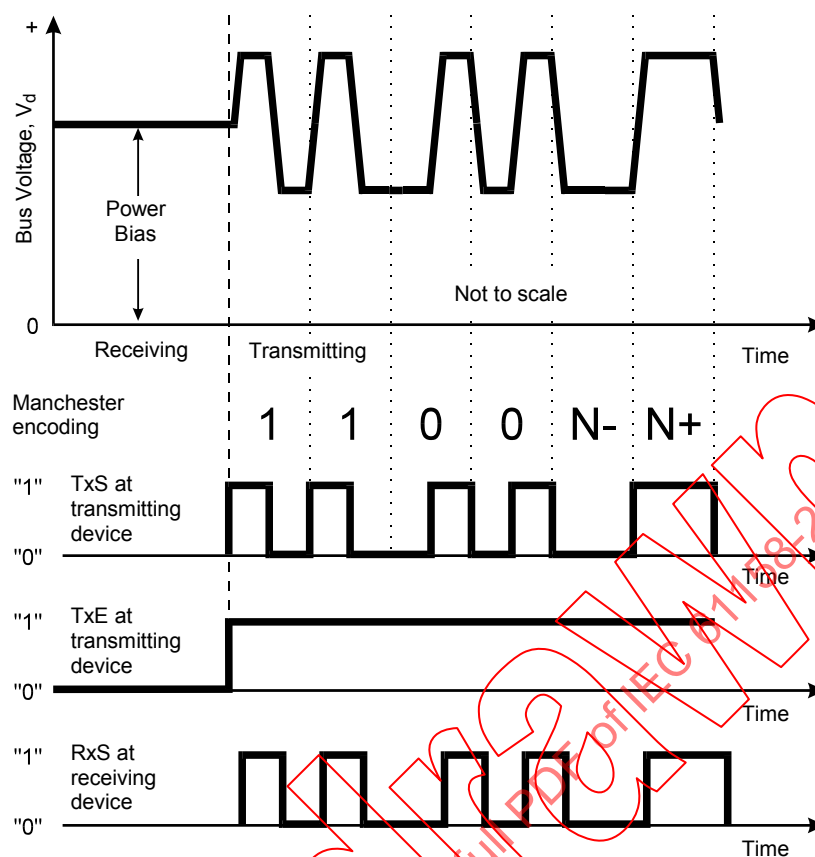
11.4.5 Polarité du signal

Pour un dispositif alimenté par le bus, la borne "+" des données, doit être connectée à la borne "+" de l'alimentation et la borne "-" des données doit être connectée à la borne "-" de l'alimentation. Voir la Figure 54.

Lorsque l'émission est activée, une transition du haut vers le bas du signal codé Manchester doit entraîner une transition du haut vers le bas de la tension V_d sur le bus. Une transition du bas vers le haut du signal codé Manchester doit entraîner une transition du bas vers le haut de la tension V_d sur le bus. La polarité du signal est définie dans la Figure 57.

Pendant la réception, une transition du haut vers le bas de la tension V_d sur le bus, doit entraîner une transition du haut vers le bas du signal codé Manchester. Une transition du bas vers le haut de la tension V_d sur le bus doit entraîner une transition du bas vers le haut du signal codé Manchester.

NOTE 1 Le codage Manchester est défini en 9.2.2.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Bus voltage, Vd	Tension de bus, Vd
Power bias	Biais de l'alimentation
Receiving	Réception
Transmitting	Emission
Not to scale	Non à l'échelle
Time	Temps
Manchester encoding	Codage Manchester
TxS at transmitting device	TxS au niveau du dispositif d'émission
TxE at transmitting device	TxE au niveau du dispositif d'émission
RxS at receiving device	RxS au niveau du dispositif de réception

Figure 57 – Polarité du signal

NOTE 2 La forme d'onde de la Figure 57 donne un exemple des symboles "1", "0", "N+" et "N-". Cette forme d'onde ne représente pas une PhPDU réelle. Voir 9.2.2 pour les règles de codage.

NOTE 3 Les formes d'onde TxS et RxS de la Figure 57 sont indéterminées au cours de la période de temps marquée "réception".

NOTE 4 Les signaux à l'interface MDS-MAU sont définis à l'Article 10. Les signaux TxS, TxE et RxS de la Figure 57 sont uniquement accessibles si l'interface MDS-MAU est exposée.

11.5 Spécification du circuit de réception de la MAU

11.5.1 Récapitulatif

Le Tableau 55 résume la spécification.

Tableau 55 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du circuit de réception de la MAU

Caractéristiques du circuit de réception (valeurs en référence à la ligne principale)	Limites
Impédance d'entrée, mesurée sur la gamme de fréquences $f_{\min}$ à $f_{\max}$	$\geq 8 \text{ k}\Omega$
Sensibilité; signal min. crête à crête dont l'acceptation est exigée (voir la Figure 58)	700 mV
Suppression du bruit; bruit max. crête à crête dont le rejet est exigé (voir la Figure 58)	280 mV
Instabilité maximale de bit élémentaire reçu (écart du point de passage par zéro, voir la Figure 55)	$\pm 0,10 T_{\text{bit}}$

11.5.2 Impédance d'entrée

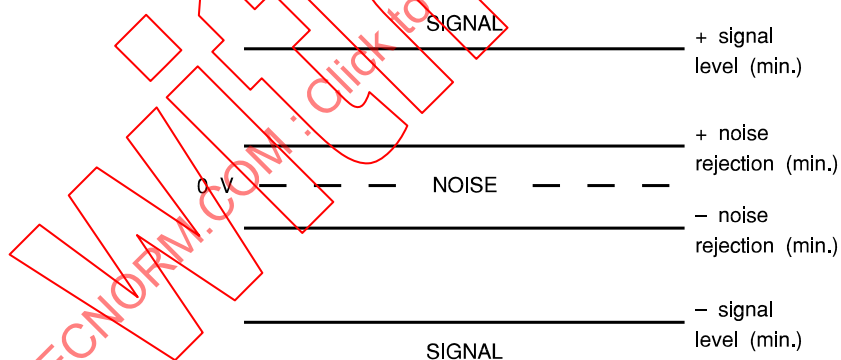
L'impédance d'entrée différentielle du circuit de réception d'une MAU ne doit pas être inférieure à $D_{\text{in min}}$ sur la gamme de fréquences $f_{\min}$ à $f_{\max}$. Cette exigence doit être satisfaite à l'état hors tension et sous tension (sans émission) ainsi que pendant la transition entre ces états. L'impédance doit être mesurée aux bornes de l'élément de communication en utilisant une onde sinusoïdale d'une amplitude de signal supérieure au seuil de sensibilité du récepteur et inférieure à 9,0 V crête à crête.

NOTE L'exigence d'une impédance d'entrée $\geq D_{\text{in min}}$ pendant la mise sous tension et hors tension peut être satisfaite par désactivation automatique de l'émetteur au cours de ces périodes.

11.5.3 Sensibilité du récepteur et suppression du bruit

Un circuit de réception de MAU doit être capable de recevoir un signal d'entrée d'une amplitude d'au moins 700 mV crête à crête, y compris la surtension et l'oscillation (voir "niveau du signal" ainsi que "amplitude positive" et "amplitude négative" dans la Figure 58).

Le circuit de réception d'une MAU ne doit pas répondre à un signal d'entrée d'amplitude crête à crête non supérieure à 280 mV (voir "suppression du bruit" dans la Figure 58).



Anglais	français
SIGNAL	Signal
signal level (min.)	niveau du signal (min.)
NOISE	Bruit
noise rejection (min.)	suppression du bruit (min.)

Figure 58 – Sensibilité du récepteur et suppression du bruit

11.5.4 Instabilité de bit élémentaire reçu

Le circuit de réception doit accepter un signal codé Manchester émis conformément à 11.2 et à 11.4. En outre, le récepteur doit fonctionner correctement à des signaux ayant des variations temporelles, entre deux points adjacents quelconques de transition des signaux (passage par zéro) d'au maximum $\pm 0,10 T_{\text{bit}}$ ou moins. Voir Figure 56.

NOTE 1 Cette spécification n'exclut pas l'utilisation de récepteurs dont les performances sont supérieures à la présente spécification.

NOTE 2 En fonction de la configuration du symbole, la durée nominale entre passages par zéro peut être de un demi-temps binaire ou de un temps binaire.

NOTE 3 Il n'y a aucune exigence quant au rejet d'un signal donné ayant une valeur de variation temporelle spécifiée. Le récepteur rend compte d'une erreur lorsque l'instabilité de bit élémentaire reçu excède l'aptitude du récepteur à décoder la signalisation de manière fiable.

11.5.5 Susceptibilité au brouillage et taux d'erreurs

NOTE 1 Lorsqu'un bus de terrain fonctionne dans divers environnements de bruit normalisés, il convient que la probabilité qu'une unité de données utilisateur de couche Application contienne une erreur non détectée, du fait du fonctionnement des entités physiques et DLL d'acheminement, soit inférieure à 1 sur 10^{12} (1 erreur en 20 années à 1 600 messages/s). Un élément de communication est considéré conforme à cette exigence théorique lorsqu'il satisfait aux exigences suivantes de susceptibilité au brouillage. Ces exigences sont spécifiées sur la base d'un taux d'erreur de trame détecté obtenu en utilisant un rapport d'erreurs détectées/ non détectées de 10%. Il convient que ceci soit facilement réalisable au moyen d'une séquence de contrôle de trame de 16 bits au niveau de la DLL.

Un élément de communication qui inclut une MAU, utilisant des trames contenant 64 bits de données utilisateur aléatoires, à un débit de trame maximal et avec des signaux d'une amplitude de 1,4 V crête à crête, ne doit pas produire plus de trois erreurs de trame détectées sur 3×10^6 trames pendant son fonctionnement en présence d'une tension en mode commun ou de bruit gaussien comme décrit ci-après:

- a) un signal sinusoïdal en mode commun à toute fréquence de 63 Hz à $2 f_r$, d'une amplitude de 4 V eff. et de 47 Hz à 63 Hz avec une amplitude de 250 V eff.;
- b) un signal c.c. en mode commun de ± 10 V;
- c) un bruit blanc gaussien différentiel additionnel dans la bande de fréquences de 1 kHz à $4 f_r$, avec une densité de bruit de $30 \mu\text{V}/\sqrt{\text{Hz}}$ eff.

NOTE 2 Les valeurs spécifiées pour la tension en mode commun et le bruit gaussien correspondent à des essais de conformité de circuit de réception avec des charges symétriques et ne sont pas représentatives d'une quelconque pratique d'installation de système.

Un élément de communication qui inclut une MAU, utilisant des trames contenant 64 bits de données utilisateur aléatoires, à une moyenne de 1 600 messages/s, avec des signaux d'une amplitude de 1,4 V crête à crête, ne doit pas produire plus de six erreurs de trame détectées sur 100 000 trames, lorsqu'il est utilisé dans des environnements de perturbations électromagnétiques ou électriques comme décrit ci-après:

- 1) champ électromagnétique de 10 V/m, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-3 au niveau de sévérité 3;
- 2) transitoires électriques rapides, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-4 au niveau de sévérité 3.

Le taux d'erreur spécifié ci-dessus doit également être réalisé après, mais non pendant le fonctionnement dans les environnements de bruit suivants:

- i) décharge électrostatique de 8 kV sur une structure métallique exposée, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-2, au niveau de sévérité 3. Si le dispositif subit une perte temporaire de fonctions ou de performances suite à cet essai, il doit récupérer de cette perte éventuelle sans intervention de l'opérateur, dans les 3 s qui suivent la fin de l'essai;
- ii) essais de perturbation à haute fréquence, comme spécifié dans la CEI 60255-22-1:1988, classe III de tension d'essai (2,5 kV et 1 kV de valeurs crêtes de la première demi-alternance, respectivement en mode longitudinal et transversal). Si le dispositif subit une perte temporaire de fonctions ou de performances du fait de cet essai, il doit récupérer de cette perte éventuelle sans intervention de l'opérateur, dans les 3 s qui suivent la fin de l'essai.

11.6 Inhibition du bavardage

La MAU doit comporter une capacité d'interruption automatique pour empêcher les signaux émis d'atteindre le support. Le matériel dans la MAU (sans message extérieur autre que la détection des signaux de sortie ou de fuite par la fonction d'émission) doit fournir une fenêtre d'une durée comprise entre 5 000 T_{bit} et 15 000 T_{bit} au cours de laquelle une trame normale peut être émise. Si la longueur de trame dépasse cette durée, la fonction d'inhibition du bavardage doit empêcher d'autres signaux en sortie d'atteindre le support et doit désactiver l'écho sur la ligne RxS (voir 10.2.2.2) pour indiquer à la MDS la détection de bavardage.

Pour un débit binaire de 31,25 kbit/s, la MAU doit réinitialiser la fonction d'interruption automatique après une période de $3 \pm 50 \%$.

NOTE 1 Ceci inhibe le trafic sur le bus pendant au maximum 8 % ($\approx 1/12,5$) du temps disponible.

Pour un débit binaire de 1 Mbit/s ou plus, la MAU doit réinitialiser la fonction d'interruption automatique après une période de $500\,000\ T_{bit} \pm 50 \%$.

NOTE 2 Ceci inhibe le trafic sur le bus pendant au maximum 3 % ($\approx 1/32$) du temps disponible.

11.7 Distribution de l'alimentation

11.7.1 Aperçu général

Les MAU en mode tension fonctionnant à un débit binaire de $\leq 2,5$ Mbit/s peuvent, au choix, recevoir leur alimentation par l'intermédiaire de conducteurs de signaux ou être alimentées séparément. Les MAU en mode tension fonctionnant à un débit binaire de $> 2,5$ Mbit/s sont alimentées séparément. Un dispositif à alimentation séparée peut être connecté à un bus de terrain alimenté.

Pour faciliter le renvoi aux textes correspondants, les exigences de 11.7 pour les dispositifs alimentés par le réseau et les alimentations du réseau sont respectivement résumées dans le Tableau 56 et dans le Tableau 57.

Tableau 56 – Caractéristiques des dispositifs alimentés par le réseau

Caractéristiques des dispositifs alimentés par le réseau	Limites		
	31,25 kbit/s	1 Mbit/s	> 1 Mbit/s
Le taux de variation maximal du courant passif (pas d'émission);	1 mA/ μ s	0,05 mA/ μ s	0,1 mA/ μ s
Tension de service	9,0 V à 32,0 V c.c.		
Tension de tenue minimale, quelle que soit la polarité, sans dommages	35 V		

Tableau 57 – Exigences d'alimentation réseau

Exigences d'alimentation réseau	Limites
Tension de sortie	≤ 32 V c.c.
Ondulation de sortie et bruit	Voir Figure 59
Impédance de sortie, mesurée sur la gamme de fréquences f_{min} à f_{max}	$\geq D_{inmin}$

11.7.2 Tension d'alimentation

Un dispositif de bus de terrain revendiquant la conformité au présent article doit pouvoir fonctionner dans une plage de tensions de 9 V à 32 V c.c. entre les deux conducteurs, y compris l'ondulation. Le dispositif doit supporter sans aucun dommage une tension minimale de ± 35 V c.c.

Un dispositif de bus de terrain qui revendique la conformité au présent article doit satisfaire aux exigences correspondantes lorsqu'il est alimenté par une source ayant les spécifications suivantes:

- a) La tension de sortie maximale de l'alimentation doit être de 32 V c.c., y compris l'ondulation.

NOTE 1 Il convient que la tension de l'alimentation ajoutée à la tension de sortie de l'émetteur en circuit ouvert soit inférieure à la limite spécifiée par l'organisme de réglementation local pour la mise en œuvre particulière.

- b) L'impédance de sortie de l'alimentation doit être $\geq 8 \text{ k}\Omega$ sur la gamme de fréquences $f_{\min}$ à $f_{\max}$.
- c) Les exigences relatives au claquage pour l'isolation du circuit de signaux et du circuit de distribution de l'alimentation par rapport à la masse et par rapport à l'autre circuit doivent être conformes à la CEI 61131-2.

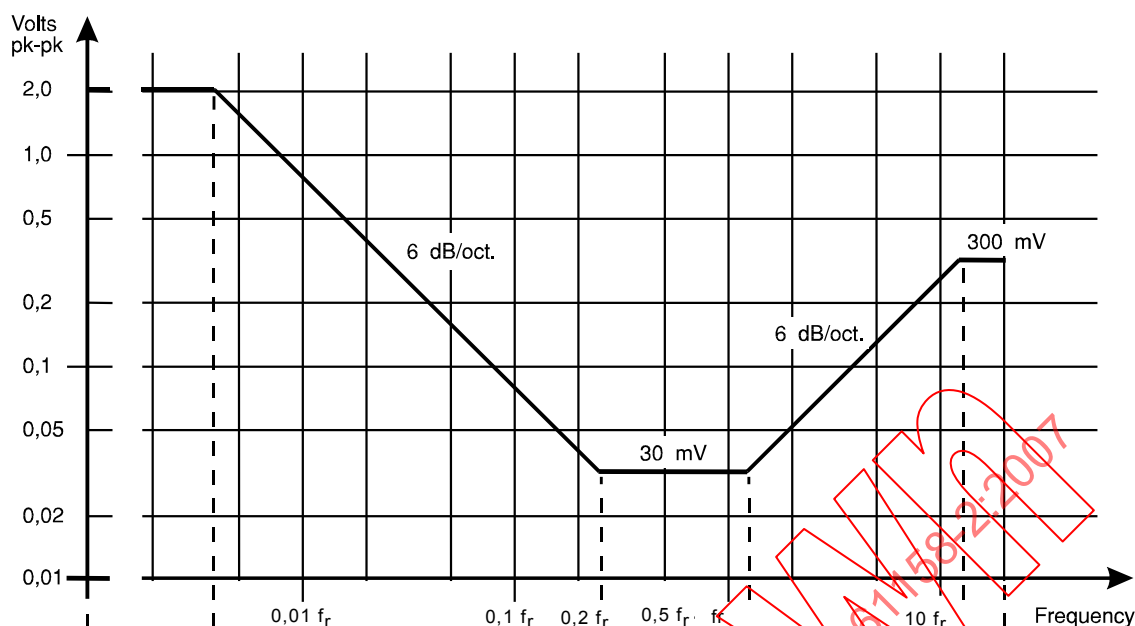
NOTE 2 La tension d'essai équivalente est à appliquer entre circuits isolés indépendants ou entre circuits isolés et parties conductrices accessibles. Pour des circuits de tension nominale $\leq 50 \text{ V c.c.}$ ou efficace, les tensions d'essai équivalentes au niveau de la mer correspondent à des essais de choc de 444 V eff., 635 V c.c. et 635 V crête. Pour des circuits de tension nominale comprise entre 150 V et 300 V eff., les tensions d'essai équivalentes au niveau de la mer correspondent à des essais de choc de 2 260 V eff., 3 175 V c.c. et 3 175 V crête.

- d) Lorsqu'une source donnée alimente deux ou plusieurs segments, l'impédance de l'isolation de chaque segment doit être partagée $\pm 10 \%$ entre les deux conducteurs de signaux du segment.

11.7.3 Alimentation par l'intermédiaire de conducteurs de signaux

Un dispositif de bus de terrain revendiquant la conformité au présent article qui est alimenté via les conducteurs de signaux doit satisfaire aux exigences du présent article lorsqu'il fonctionne à des valeurs maximales d'ondulation et de bruit de l'alimentation, de la manière suivante:

- a) 30 mV crête à crête sur la gamme de fréquences $f_{\min}$ à $f_{\max}$;
- b) 2 V crête à crête sur la gamme de fréquences de 47 Hz à 63 Hz;
- c) 300 mV crête à crête à des fréquences supérieures à $12,5 f_r$, jusqu'à une fréquence maximale de 50 MHz;
- d) des niveaux à des fréquences intermédiaires généralement conformes à la Figure 59, qui donnent le niveau et les fréquences pour une alimentation via des conducteurs de signaux.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Volts pk-pk	Volts, crête à crête
Frequency	Fréquence

Figure 59 – Ondulation et bruit de l'alimentation

Le dispositif doit avoir un taux de variation maximal du courant passif, à l'état de non-émission, de 0,1 mA/μs.

NOTE Cette exigence limite les effets des transitoires d'alimentation sur les signaux.

11.7.4 Alimentation séparée des conducteurs de signaux

NOTE La distribution de l'alimentation pour des dispositifs de bus de terrain non alimentés par le bus s'effectue au moyen de conducteurs séparés fournissant l'énergie à des alimentations locales ou des régulateurs. Ces conducteurs peuvent être contenus dans un câble séparé ou dans le même câble que les conducteurs de signaux.

Un dispositif de bus de terrain alimenté séparément, revendiquant la conformité au présent article, ne doit pas prélever plus de 100 μA en courant continu des conducteurs de signaux et ne doit pas fournir plus de 100 μA en courant continu aux conducteurs de signaux, lorsqu'il n'y a pas d'émission.

11.7.5 Isolation électrique

Tous les dispositifs de bus de terrain, alimentés séparément ou par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de signaux, doivent assurer une isolation basse fréquence entre la masse et le câble de ligne principale du bus de terrain.

NOTE 1 Ceci peut être réalisé en isolant l'ensemble du dispositif de la masse ou au moyen d'un transformateur, d'un optocoupleur ou de tout autre organe d'isolation entre le câble de ligne principale et le dispositif.

Une alimentation et un élément de communication combinés ne doivent pas nécessiter d'isolation électrique.

Pour les installations électriques disposant de mises à la terre différentes, l'impédance d'isolation mesurée entre le blindage du câble de bus de terrain et la masse du dispositif de bus de terrain doit être supérieure à 250 kΩ à toutes les fréquences inférieures à 63 Hz.

L'isolation doit être contournée par une capacité à des fréquences élevées, de façon à ce que l'impédance mesurée entre le blindage du câble du bus de terrain et la masse du dispositif de bus de terrain soit inférieure à 15Ω entre 3 MHz et 100 MHz.

NOTE 2 La capacité entre la masse et le blindage du câble de ligne principale nécessaire pour satisfaire à ces exigences peut prendre toute valeur comprise entre 3,5 nF et 10,6 nF.

Pour des installations électriques disposant d'une masse commune, conformément à la CEI 60364-4-41 et à la CEI 60364-5-54, le blindage du câble de bus de terrain et la masse du dispositif de bus de terrain peuvent être directement connectés.

La capacité dissymétrique maximale par rapport à la masse de toute borne d'entrée d'un dispositif ne doit pas dépasser 250 pF.

Les exigences relatives au claquage pour l'isolation du circuit de signaux et du circuit de distribution de l'alimentation par rapport à la masse et par rapport à l'autre circuit doivent être conformes à la CEI 61131-2.

NOTE 3 La tension d'essai équivalente est appliquée entre circuits isolés indépendants ou entre circuits isolés et parties conductrices accessibles. Pour des circuits alimentés à partir d'une source de tension assignée de ≤ 50 V c.c. ou efficace, les tensions d'essai équivalentes au niveau de la mer correspondent à des tensions d'essai de choc de 444 V eff., 635 V c.c. et 635 V crête. Pour un dispositif alimenté à partir d'une source de tension assignée comprise entre 150 V et 300 V eff., les tensions d'essai équivalentes au niveau de la mer correspondent à des tensions d'essais de choc de 2 260 V eff., 3 175 V c.c. et 3 175 V crête.

11.8 Spécifications du support

11.8.1 Connecteur

Si des connecteurs de câbles sont utilisés, ils doivent être conformes à la présente norme (voir l'Annexe A). Il est également admis d'utiliser des techniques de terminaison sur le terrain, par exemple les bornes à vis ou à lames ainsi que les terminaisons permanentes (épissures).

11.8.2 Câble d'essai normalisé

Le câble utilisé pour les essais de dispositifs de bus de terrain avec une MAU en mode tension de 150Ω , destinés à vérifier la conformité aux exigences du présent article de la présente norme, doit être un câble unique à paire torsadée, à blindage global, conforme aux exigences minimales suivantes, à une température de 25°C :

- $Z_0 = 150 \Omega \pm 10\%$ dans la gamme de fréquences de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$;
- affaiblissement maximal à une fréquence de $25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$, comme spécifié dans le Tableau 58;
- déséquilibre capacitif maximal par rapport au blindage = $1,5 \text{ nF/km}$
- résistance maximale en courant continu (par conducteur) = $57,1 \Omega/\text{km}$;
- aire de la section des conducteurs (dimension des fils) = $0,33 \text{ mm}^2$, valeur nominale;
- la résistivité minimale entre chacun des conducteurs et le blindage = $16 \text{ G}\Omega \text{ km}$;
- la couverture minimale du blindage doit être de 95 %.

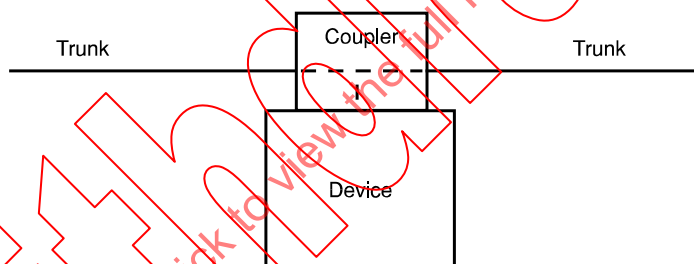
Tableau 58 – Limites d'affaiblissement du câble d'essai

Débit binaire	Affaiblissement maximal à	
	0,25 f_r	1,25 f_r
31,25 kbit/s	1,5 dB	3 dB
1 Mbit/s	6,5 dB	13 dB
2,5 Mbit/s	10 dB	20 dB
5 Mbit/s	13 dB	26 dB
10 Mbit/s	17 dB	37 dB
25 Mbit/s	26 dB	60 dB

NOTE La spécification ci-dessus concerne les essais de conformité d'une MAU. D'autres types de câbles peuvent être utilisés dans les installations réelles (voir l'Annexe B). Les câbles à spécifications améliorées peuvent permettre de plus grandes longueurs de lignes principales ou une meilleure immunité aux perturbations ou encore il peut être exigé qu'ils satisfassent à des conditions d'environnement ou d'installation. En revanche, les câbles ayant des spécifications inférieures peuvent être utilisés, sous réserve d'une limitation des longueurs utilisées, tant pour les lignes principales que secondaires, auxquels s'ajoute une éventuelle non-conformité aux exigences de susceptibilité aux perturbations radioélectriques (RFI) et électromagnétiques (EMI).

11.8.3 Coupleur

Le coupleur, comme illustré en Figure 60, doit fournir un ou plusieurs points de connexion à la ligne principale. Il est en général intégré à un dispositif de bus de terrain.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Trunk	Ligne principale
Coupleur	Coupleur
Device	Dispositif

Figure 60 – Coupleur de bus de terrain

Un coupleur passif peut inclure un ou tous les éléments facultatifs décrits ci-dessous:

- un transformateur assurant l'isolation galvanique et la transformation de l'impédance entre la ligne principale et le dispositif;
- des connecteurs facilitant le branchement à la ligne principale.

Les coupleurs actifs qui nécessitent une alimentation externe, comportent des composantes d'amplification et de réémission des signaux. Le niveau d'émission et les exigences de synchronisation doivent être conformes à 11.4.

11.8.4 Epissures

NOTE Une épissure est toute partie du réseau dans laquelle l'impédance caractéristique du câble de réseau n'est pas maintenue. Ceci peut être dû à la séparation des conducteurs du câble, au retrait de blindage du câble, au changement de calibre ou de type de fil, à la fixation à des barrettes à bornes, etc. Une définition pratique d'une épissure est par conséquent toute partie du réseau qui n'est pas une longueur continue du support spécifié.

La continuité de tous les conducteurs du câble doit être maintenue dans une épissure.

11.8.5 Terminateur

Un terminateur doit être placé aux deux extrémités du câble de ligne principale et connecté d'un conducteur de signal à l'autre. Il ne doit y avoir aucune connexion entre terminateur et blindage du câble.

Pour les besoins de l'essai, en utilisant le câble spécifié en 11.8.2, le terminateur doit avoir une valeur d'impédance de $150 \Omega \pm 2 \%$ sur la gamme de fréquences globale de 625 kHz à 31,25 MHz.

NOTE Dans des applications pratiques, la valeur choisie serait environ égale à la valeur de l'impédance caractéristique moyenne du câble aux fréquences pertinentes afin de réduire les réflexions de la ligne d'émission.

Le courant continu de fuite à travers le terminateur ne doit pas dépasser 100 μ A. Le terminateur doit être non polarisé.

11.8.6 Règles de blindage

Pour être pleinement conforme aux exigences d'immunité au bruit de 11.5.3, il est nécessaire d'assurer l'intégrité du blindage sur toute la longueur du câblage, dans les connecteurs et dans les coupleurs, de la manière suivante:

- a) la couverture du blindage doit être supérieure à 95 % de la longueur totale du câble;
- b) le blindage doit couvrir complètement les circuits électriques des connecteurs, des coupleurs et des épissures.

NOTE Toute dérogation à ces règles de blindage peut dégrader l'immunité au bruit.

11.8.7 Règles de mise à la masse (mise à la terre)

NOTE 1 Mise à la masse (à la terre) signifie une connexion permanente à la terre par l'intermédiaire d'une impédance suffisamment basse et ayant un courant admissible suffisant pour prévenir un amorçage en tension qui pourrait entraîner des dangers excessifs pour le matériel connecté ou les personnes. Les lignes de tension zéro (commun) peuvent être reliées à la masse lorsqu'elles sont galvaniquement isolées de la ligne principale du bus de terrain.

Les dispositifs de bus de terrain doivent fonctionner conformément aux exigences du présent article, le point médian d'un terminateur ou d'un coupleur inductif étant directement connecté à la masse.

Les dispositifs de bus de terrain ne doivent pas raccorder l'un des conducteurs de la paire torsadée à la masse quel que soit le point du réseau. Les signaux doivent être appliqués et préservés de manière différentielle sur l'ensemble du réseau.

NOTE 2 Il est habituel dans la pratique de mettre effectivement à la masse le blindage du câble de ligne principale de bus de terrain (le cas échéant) en un point sur la longueur du câble. De ce fait, il convient que les dispositifs de bus de terrain permettent une isolation c.c. du blindage du câble par rapport à la masse. La pratique courante est également de raccorder les conducteurs de signaux à la masse de manière symétrique, au même point, en utilisant par exemple la prise médiane d'un terminateur ou d'un transformateur de couplage. Pour des systèmes alimentés par le bus, il convient que la mise à la masse du blindage et des conducteurs de signaux équilibrés soit proche de l'unité d'alimentation. Il est admis d'avoir un couplage capacitif entre le blindage ou les conducteurs de signaux équilibrés et la mise à la masse locale du dispositif pour une meilleure immunité aux interférences électromagnétiques.

11.8.8 Code de couleur des câbles

NOTE Il convient que le choix des couleurs de câble tienne compte des pratiques régionales.

En Amérique du Nord, il convient d'attribuer les couleurs des conducteurs intérieurs du câble et de la gaine extérieure du câble, comme spécifié dans le Tableau 59.

Tableau 59 – Code de couleur recommandé pour les câbles en Amérique du Nord

Couleur des conducteurs intérieurs	
Conducteur intérieur '+' (tension positive)	Orange ou rouge/orange/marron, à l'extrémité du spectre
Conducteur intérieur '-' (tension négative)	Bleu ou bleu/violet, à l'extrémité du spectre
Conducteur du blindage (qui peut être relié à la terre)	Nu, incolore ou vert
Couleur de la gaine extérieure	
Règles de construction d'usage général	Orange
Règles de construction non incendiaire	Bande orange/bleue
Règles de construction en sécurité intrinsèque (IS)	Bleu ou bande bleue/orange ou bande bleue/noire

12 Types 1 et 3: Unité de liaison au Support: 31,25 kbit/s, mode tension avec option basse puissance, topologie bus et arborescente, support câble 100 Ω

NOTE Le Type 3 utilise cette MAU uniquement pour la transmission synchrone.

12.1 Généralités

La MAU 31,25 kbit/s en mode tension de 100 Ω fournit simultanément l'accès à un réseau de communication et à un réseau de distribution d'énergie optionnel. Les dispositifs raccordés au réseau communiquent par l'intermédiaire du support et peuvent ou non être alimentés par ce support. Si l'alimentation s'effectue par le bus, elle est distribuée en tension directe et en courant continu et des signaux de communication sont superposés sur l'alimentation c.c. Dans les applications de sécurité intrinsèque, la puissance disponible peut limiter le nombre de dispositifs.

Le support du réseau est constitué d'un câble d'une seule paire, qui est en général mais pas toujours, une paire torsadée. Indépendamment de la topologie, tous les dispositifs connectés, sauf éventuellement le dispositif d'émission, présentent une impédance élevée pour éviter une surcharge importante du réseau. Les formes d'onde trapézoïdales sont utilisées pour réduire les émissions électromagnétiques.

Des topologies en bus et arborescentes sont prises en charge. Quelle que soit la topologie, un réseau comporte un câble de ligne principale disposant de terminaisons à ses extrémités. Dans la topologie de bus linéaire, les lignes secondaires sont réparties sur la longueur de la ligne principale. Dans la topologie arborescente, les lignes secondaires sont concentrées à une extrémité de la ligne principale. Une ligne secondaire peut connecter plusieurs dispositifs au réseau et le nombre maximal de dispositifs sur une ligne secondaire donnée dépend de la longueur de cette ligne.

A fréquence industrielle (c.c.), les dispositifs apparaissent pour le réseau comme des absorbeurs de courant avec un taux de variation limité du courant d'alimentation prélevé du support. Ceci permet d'éviter que les modifications transitoires du courant de charge n'interfèrent avec les signaux de communication.

Le présent article spécifie une option à faible puissance qui permet de réduire le courant prélevé du réseau par les dispositifs lorsqu'ils ne sont pas en émission.

Pour réduire les oscillations et les suroscillations sur le réseau, l'impédance de l'alimentation est spécifiée en fonction de l'impédance du terminateur de bus, de façon à ce que la réactance totale du réseau soit réduite au minimum sur la gamme de fréquences de 50 Hz à 39 kHz.

12.2 Débit binaire d'émission

Le débit binaire moyen, BR, doit être de $31,25 \text{ kbit/s} \pm 0,2 \%$, moyenné sur une trame ayant une longueur minimale de 16 octets. Le temps binaire instantané, T_{bit} , doit être de $32 \mu\text{s} \pm 0,9 \mu\text{s}$.

12.3 Spécifications du réseau

12.3.1 Composants

Une MAU fonctionne sur un réseau constitué des composants suivants:

- a) un câble à conducteurs;
- b) des dispositifs (comportant au moins un élément de communication);
- c) des coupleurs;
- d) des terminateurs.

Le réseau peut inclure les composants optionnels suivants:

- e) des connecteurs;
- f) des alimentations;
- g) des dispositifs comprenant des alimentations;
- h) des barrières de sécurité intrinsèque.

12.3.2 Topologies

Une MAU câblée doit fonctionner sur un réseau de topologie de bus linéaire ou arborescente nominalement acyclique constituée d'une ligne principale, terminée à chaque extrémité comme spécifié en 12.8.5 et à laquelle des éléments de communication sont connectés par l'intermédiaire de coupleurs. Une topologie arborescente dont tous les éléments de communication sont placés aux extrémités de la ligne principale est considérée comme un cas particulier de bus aux fins du présent article. Chaque élément de communication doit être connecté en parallèle au câble de ligne principale.

Le coupleur et l'élément de communication peuvent être intégrés en un dispositif (c'est-à-dire une ligne secondaire de longueur zéro). Plusieurs éléments de communication peuvent être connectés à la ligne principale en un point donné, en utilisant un coupleur multivoies. Un coupleur actif peut être utilisé pour étendre une ligne secondaire sur une longueur qui nécessite une terminaison afin d'éviter les réflexions et distorsions. Des répéteurs actifs peuvent être utilisés pour étendre la longueur de la ligne principale au-delà d'un segment unique si cela est autorisé par les règles de configuration du réseau. Les dérivations doivent être considérées comme des segments, et peuvent rendre le bus non linéaire. Les cycles (boucles fermées) ne sont jamais autorisés.

12.3.3 Règles de configuration du réseau

Une MAU qui revendique la conformité au présent article doit satisfaire aux exigences du présent article lorsqu'elle est utilisée sur un réseau qui satisfait aux présentes règles.

Règle 1: Un bus de terrain doit être capable d'assurer la communication entre les nombres de dispositifs indiqués ci-après, fonctionnant tous au même débit binaire.

- a) pour un bus de terrain non IS sans alimentation par les conducteurs de signaux: entre deux et 32 dispositifs;
- b) pour un bus non IS avec alimentation par l'intermédiaire de conducteurs de signaux: entre deux et le nombre de dispositifs qui peuvent être alimentés par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de signaux, en supposant qu'un minimum de 120 mA (au total) doit être mis à

la disposition des dispositifs à l'extrémité distante de l'alimentation et en sachant que la communication avec un dispositif à l'extrémité de l'alimentation consomme 10 mA;

- c) pour un bus de terrain IS: entre deux et le nombre de dispositifs qui peuvent être alimentés par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de signaux, en supposant qu'au minimum 40 mA (au total) doivent être mis à la disposition des dispositifs dans la zone dangereuse.

NOTE 1 Cette règle n'exclut pas l'utilisation d'un nombre de dispositifs supérieur à celui spécifié dans un système installé. Etant donné que la consommation d'énergie du dispositif n'est pas spécifiée, le nombre de dispositifs alimentés par le bus ne peut pas être spécifié.

Le point b) suppose que la tension minimale d'alimentation est de 20 V c.c.

Le point c) suppose que la barrière IS fonctionne avec une sortie de 19 V c.c.

Règle 2: Un segment de bus de terrain à pleine charge (comportant le nombre maximal de dispositifs connectés) doit avoir une longueur totale de câble, y compris les lignes secondaires, entre deux dispositifs quelconques, allant jusqu'à 1 900 m.

NOTE 2 Cette longueur maximale du câble est une exigence de conformité au présent article mais n'exclut pas l'utilisation de longueurs supérieures dans un système installé.

Règle 3: Le nombre total de régénérations de forme d'onde par des répéteurs et des coupleurs actifs entre deux dispositifs quelconques dépend de la mise en œuvre du répéteur concerné.

NOTE 3 Ce nombre total était limité à quatre dans les éditions précédentes de la présente norme.

Règle 4: Le délai maximal de propagation entre deux dispositifs quelconques ne doit pas dépasser $20 T_{\text{bit}}$.

NOTE 4 Pour que le réseau fonctionne efficacement, il convient que cette partie du temps de retournement de tout dispositif du réseau, générée par une PhE entre la fin d'une trame reçue et le début d'une trame émise contenant une réponse immédiate associée, ne dépasse pas cinq temps binaires, dont il convient qu'au maximum deux temps binaires soient dus à la MAU. Sachant qu'il n'est pas obligatoire d'exposer l'interface DLL – PhL ou l'interface MDS – MAU, cette partie du temps de retournement d'un dispositif de bus de terrain due à la PhL ou à la MAU ne peut pas être spécifiée ou soumise à des essais de conformité.

Règle 5: Le bus de terrain doit pouvoir continuer à fonctionner lorsqu'un dispositif y est connecté ou déconnecté. Les erreurs de données générées lors de la connexion ou de la déconnexion doivent être détectées.

Règle 6: La défaillance d'un quelconque élément de communication ou d'une ligne secondaire (à l'exception d'un court-circuit, d'une faible impédance ou d'un bavardage) ne doit pas interférer avec des transactions entre d'autres éléments de communication pendant plus de 1 ms.

Règle 7: Dans des systèmes polarisés, les paires de conducteurs du support doivent être distinctement repérées de manière à identifier de manière unique chaque conducteur individuel. Une polarisation homogène doit être maintenue en tout point de raccordement.

Règle 8: La dégradation des caractéristiques électriques du signal, entre deux dispositifs quelconques, due à l'affaiblissement, à la distorsion d'affaiblissement et à la distorsion de désadaptation doit être limitée aux valeurs indiquées ci-dessous.

- a) Affaiblissement du signal: La configuration du bus (les longueurs de la ligne principale et des lignes secondaires ainsi que le nombre de dispositifs, les barrières IS, les sectionneurs galvaniques, et les éventuels dispositifs d'adaptation) doit être telle que l'affaiblissement entre deux dispositifs quelconques, à une fréquence f_r (31,25 kHz), ne doit pas dépasser 10,5 dB.
- b) Distorsion d'affaiblissement: La configuration du bus (longueurs de ligne principale et de lignes secondaires, nombre de dispositifs, barrières IS et sectionneurs galvaniques) doit être telle qu'entre deux dispositifs quelconques:

$$0 \leq [\text{Affaiblissement}(1,25 f_r) - \text{Affaiblissement}(0,25 f_r)] \leq 6 \text{ dB}$$

L'affaiblissement doit être monotonique, non décroissant pour toutes les fréquences de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz à 39 kHz).

- c) Distorsion de désadaptation: La désadaptation (due à n'importe quel effet, y compris une ligne secondaire en circuit ouvert de longueur maximale) sur le bus doit être telle qu'en tout point sur la ligne principale dans la bande de fréquences comprise entre $0,25 f_r$ et $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz à 39 kHz):

$$|Z - Z_{fr}| / |Z + Z_{fr}| \leq 0,2$$

où Z_{fr} est l'impédance du câble de ligne principale à la fréquence f_r (31,25 kHz) et Z est la combinaison parallèle de Z_{fr} et de l'impédance de charge au niveau du coupleur.

La concentration des coupleurs doit être inférieure à 15 pour 250 m.

NOTE 5 Cette règle permet de réduire les restrictions, en termes de longueurs de la ligne principale et des lignes secondaires ainsi qu'en termes de nombre de dispositifs, etc. en ne spécifiant que des limites d'émission imposées par des combinaisons de ces facteurs. Différentes combinaisons peuvent être utilisées en fonction des besoins de l'application.

Règle 9: Les règles suivantes doivent s'appliquer aux systèmes mis en œuvre avec des supports redondants:

- a) chaque canal (câble) doit satisfaire aux règles de configuration du réseau;
- b) il ne doit pas y avoir de segment non redondant entre deux segments redondants;
- c) les répéteurs doivent également être redondants;
- d) si les dispositifs du système sont configurés (par la Gestion systèmes) pour émettre sur plusieurs canaux simultanément, la différence de délai de propagation entre deux dispositifs quelconques sur deux canaux quelconques ne doit pas dépasser cinq temps binaires;

NOTE 6 Cette période peut être étendue mais non réduite par la Gestion systèmes, comme indiqué dans le Tableau 4 (voir 6.2.2 et 9.2.9).

- e) les numéros de canaux et leur association aux supports de transmission physiques doivent être maintenus de manière cohérente sur l'ensemble des bus de terrain, c'est-à-dire que les canaux 1, 2, 3... en provenance de la gestion systèmes doivent toujours être connectés aux canaux physiques 1, 2, 3...;

Règle 10: Pour un segment de bus de terrain alimenté par le bus, la tension mise à la disposition de tous les dispositifs, y compris l'ondulation et la composante continue de la chute de tension due à la signalisation, doit s'inscrire dans une plage de 9,0 V à 32,0 V c.c.

NOTE 7 La composante continue de la chute de tension due à la signalisation dépend de la configuration du réseau. La composante continue est due à la variation en échelon du courant du dispositif à travers la résistance du réseau (résistance du câble, résistance de la barrière IS, etc.).

12.3.4 Règles de distribution de l'alimentation pour la configuration du réseau

Voir 11.3.4.

12.4 Spécification du circuit d'émission de la MAU

12.4.1 Récapitulatif

Pour faciliter le renvoi aux textes correspondants, les exigences définies en 12.2 et 12.4 sont résumées dans le Tableau 60 et dans le Tableau 61.

Tableau 60 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du niveau d'émission de la MAU

Caractéristiques du niveau d'émission, valeurs en référence à la ligne principale (mais mesurées en utilisant la charge d'essai présentée dans la Figure 54)	Limites
Niveau de sortie (crête à crête, voir la Figure 55) Avec charge d'essai (0,5 de l'impédance nominale du câble de ligne principale à une fréquence f_r de 31,25 kHz)	0,75 V à 1 V 50 $\Omega \pm 1$ %
Différence d'amplitude positive et négative maximale (biais de la signalisation) telle qu'illustrée dans la Figure 56	± 50 mV
Niveau de sortie; avec un terminateur retiré (crête à crête) avec charge d'essai (impédance nominale du câble de ligne principale à une fréquence f_r de 31,25 kHz)	0,75 V à 2,0 V 100 $\Omega \pm 1$ %
Niveau maximal de sortie; circuit ouvert (crête à crête)	35 V
Distorsion maximale du signal de sortie; c'est-à-dire surtension, suroscillation et statisme (voir la Figure 55)	± 10 %
Sortie d'émetteur passif, c'est-à-dire le bruit de l'émetteur (mesuré sur la bande de fréquence de 1 kHz à 100 kHz)	≤ 1 mV (eff.)

Tableau 61 – Récapitulatif de la spécification de synchronisation d'émission de la MAU

Caractéristiques de synchronisation de l'émission, valeurs en référence à la ligne principale (mais mesurées en utilisant la charge d'essai présentée dans la Figure 54)	Limites pour 31,25 kbit/s (alimentation par le bus et/ou IS)
Débit binaire d'émission	31,25 kbit/s $\pm 0,2$ %
Temps binaire instantané	32 μ s $\pm 0,9$ μ s
Temps de croissance et de décroissance (10 % à 90 % du signal crête à crête, voir la Figure 55)	≤ 25 % T_{bit}
Taux de dérive (en tout point de 10 % à 90 % du signal crête à crête)	$\leq 0,2$ V/ μ s
Instabilité maximale de bit élémentaire émis (écart du point de passage par zéro, voir la Figure 56)	$\pm 2,5$ % T_{bit}
Le délai d'activation/désactivation d'émission (c'est-à-dire la durée pendant laquelle la forme d'onde de sortie peut ne pas satisfaire aux exigences d'émission)	$\leq 2,0$ T_{bit}

12.4.2 Configuration d'essai de la MAU

La Figure 54 illustre la configuration qui doit être utilisée pour les essais de MAU.

Tension de signal en mode différentiel: $V_d = V_a - V_b$.

Sauf spécification contraire dans une exigence particulière, la résistance de la charge d'essai $R = 50 \Omega$ (0,5 de l'impédance nominale du câble de ligne principale à une fréquence f_r (de 31,25 kHz)) et $C = 2 \mu$ F ($2 \times$ la capacité d'un terminateur).

Borne "+" des données raccordée à la borne "+" de l'alimentation et borne "-" des données raccordée à la borne "-" de l'alimentation.

NOTE Voir 12.7 concernant la spécification de l'alimentation et 12.8.5 concernant la spécification du terminateur.

12.4.3 Exigences de niveau de sortie de la MAU

La Figure 55 décrit la forme de sortie du signal compte tenu des exigences de niveau de sortie en tension de la paire torsadée.

NOTE 1 La Figure 55 présente un exemple de la composante alternative d'un cycle de forme d'onde de bus de terrain, illustrant certains éléments-clés de la spécification du circuit d'émission. Seules les tensions des signaux sont indiquées; ce schéma ne tient aucunement compte des tensions d'alimentation.

Le circuit d'émission de la MAU doit être conforme aux exigences de niveau de sortie suivantes, toutes les amplitudes étant mesurées au point médian estimé entre toute crête ou creux en haut et en bas de la forme d'onde ("point médian" dans la Figure 55):

- a) la tension de sortie sur la charge d'essai après élévation/abaissement par le transformateur (le cas échéant), doit être comprise entre 0,75 V et 1,0 V crête à crête avec une résistance de charge de $50 \Omega \pm 1 \%$ ("min o/p" dans la Figure 55);
- b) la tension de sortie au niveau de la ligne principale ou aux bornes d'émission, avec une résistance de charge de $100 \Omega \pm 1 \%$ (c'est-à-dire l'un des terminateurs de la ligne principale étant retiré) doit être comprise entre 0,75 V et 2,0 V crête à crête ("max. o/p un terminateur retiré" dans la Figure 55);
- c) la tension de sortie au niveau de la ligne principale ou aux bornes d'émission, avec toute charge comprenant un circuit ouvert, ne doit pas dépasser 35 V quelle que soit la polarité. Aux fins de l'essai, un circuit ouvert doit être défini comme étant une charge ayant une résistance de 100 k Ω en parallèle avec une capacité de 15 pF;
- d) au cours d'une émission, un dispositif donné ne doit pas subir de défaillance permanente lorsqu'une résistance de charge de $\leq 1 \Omega$ est appliquée pendant 1 s;
- e) la différence entre amplitude positive et amplitude négative, mesurée comme présenté dans la Figure 55, ne doit pas dépasser ± 50 mV crête;
- f) le bruit en sortie d'une MAU en réception ou non alimentée ne doit pas dépasser 1 mV eff., mesuré de manière différentielle sur une bande de fréquences de 1 kHz à 100 kHz, en référence à la ligne principale;
- g) la tension différentielle sur la charge d'essai doit donner une modification monotonique de la tension, entre 10 % et 90 % de la valeur crête à crête. Par la suite, la tension du signal ne doit pas varier de plus de $\pm 10 \%$ de la valeur crête à crête jusqu'à ce que la transition suivante ait lieu. Cette variation admissible doit inclure toutes les formes de distorsion de signal de sortie, c'est-à-dire la surtension, la suroscillation et le statisme.

NOTE 2 En cours d'émission, la tension de sortie présente aux bornes du dispositif peut augmenter de manière substantielle par rapport à celle spécifiée dans le présent paragraphe, mais toujours dans les limites spécifiées en 12.4.3 c), du fait des effets combinés de l'impédance série du dispositif, du câble de ligne secondaire et de tout dispositif de protection du bus, comme décrit en 12.8.3 c).

12.4.4 Exigences de synchronisation des sorties

Le circuit d'émission d'une MAU doit être conforme aux exigences suivantes de synchronisation des sorties:

- a) l'instabilité de bit élémentaire émis ne doit pas dépasser $\pm 0,025 T_{bit}$ par rapport au point de passage par zéro idéal, mesuré en fonction du point de passage par zéro précédent (voir la Figure 56);
- b) le circuit d'émission doit s'activer, ce qui signifie que le signal doit monter d'un niveau inférieur au bruit de sortie maximal du circuit d'émission, comme spécifié en 12.4.3f), jusqu'au niveau de pleine puissance, en moins de $2,0 T_{bit}$. La forme d'onde correspondant au troisième temps binaire et au-delà, doit être telle que spécifiée dans la Figure 55;
- c) le circuit d'émission doit se désactiver, ce qui signifie que le signal doit tomber depuis le niveau de pleine puissance jusqu'à un niveau inférieur au bruit de sortie maximal du circuit d'émission, comme spécifié en 12.4.3f), en moins de $2,0 T_{bit}$. La durée nécessaire pour que le circuit d'émission revienne à son impédance d'état "non actif" ne doit pas dépasser $4 T_{bit}$. Aux fins des essais, les exigences doivent être satisfaites dans la configuration d'essai du circuit d'émission de 12.4.2, avec la capacité équivalente d'une longueur de câble maximale entre les bornes du dispositif en essai.

NOTE 1 Cette exigence permet de s'assurer que la capacité de la ligne a été pleinement déchargée lors de la transition du circuit d'émission de l'état actif à l'état passif.

- d) les temps de croissance et de décroissance, mesurés de 10 % à 90 % de l'amplitude du signal crête à crête, ne doivent pas dépasser $0,25 T_{bit}$ (voir la Figure 55);
- e) le taux de dérive, mesuré en tout point dans une plage de 10 % à 90 % de l'amplitude du signal crête à crête, ne doit pas dépasser $0,2 \text{ V}/\mu\text{s}$ (voir la Figure 55).

NOTE 2 Les exigences d) et e) génèrent une forme d'onde trapézoïdale à la sortie du circuit d'émission. L'exigence d) limite le niveau des émissions de perturbation qui peuvent être couplées aux circuits adjacents, etc. L'exigence d) est calculée à partir de la formule suivante:

$$\text{taux de dérive max.} = 2 \times \text{taux de dérive min.} = 2 \times 0,8 V_o / 0,25 T_{\text{bit}} = 6,4 \times V_o / T_{\text{bit}}$$

où V_o est la tension de sortie maximale crête à crête (1,0 V) avec une charge normalisée.

12.4.5 Polarité du signal

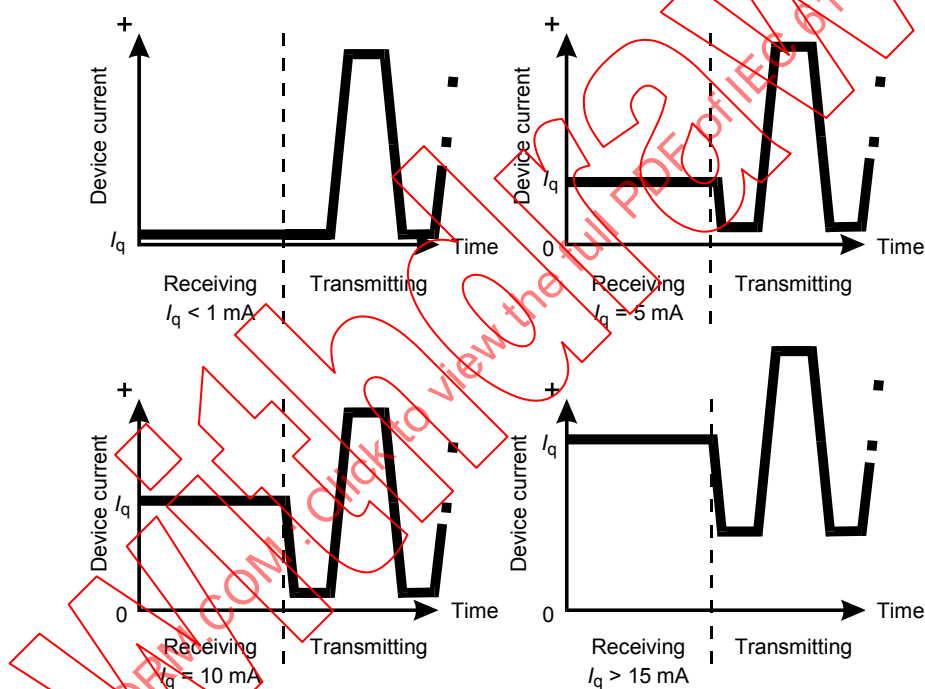
Voir 11.4.5.

12.4.6 Transition de la réception à l'émission

Lorsqu'un dispositif commence à émettre, la forme d'onde de sortie doit immédiatement satisfaire aux exigences de 12.4.3.

NOTE Il n'y a aucune exigence pour le passage du courant du dispositif de sa valeur de réception à sa valeur d'émission.

La Figure 61 présente quatre exemples de différentes valeurs du courant passif du dispositif.



NOTE Cette figure est incluse dans la présente norme à des fins d'explication et n'implique aucune mise en œuvre spécifique.

Légende

Anglais	Français
Device current	Courant du dispositif
Receiving	Réception
Transmitting	Emission
Time	Temps

Figure 61 – Transition de la réception à l'émission

12.5 Spécification du circuit de réception de la MAU

12.5.1 Récapitulatif

Le Tableau 62 résume la spécification.

Tableau 62 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du circuit de réception de la MAU

Caractéristiques du circuit de réception (valeurs en référence à la ligne principale)	Limites (alimentation par le bus et/ou IS)
Impédance d'entrée, mesurée sur la gamme de fréquences $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$	$\geq 3 \text{ k}\Omega$
Sensibilité; signal min. crête à crête dont l'acceptation est exigée (voir la Figure 58)	150 mV
Suppression du bruit; bruit max. crête à crête dont le rejet est exigé (voir la Figure 58)	75 mV
Instabilité maximale de bit élémentaire reçu (écart du point de passage par zéro, voir la Figure 55)	$\pm 0,10 T_{\text{bit}}$

12.5.2 Impédance d'entrée

L'impédance d'entrée différentielle d'un circuit de réception de MAU ne doit pas être inférieure à $3 \text{ k}\Omega$ sur la gamme de fréquences de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz à 39 kHz). Cette exigence doit s'appliquer après une période de démarrage de 20 ms suite à la connexion au réseau ou à la mise sous tension du réseau. Les dispositifs alimentés séparément et les dispositifs alimentés par le réseau qui peuvent être mis hors tension lorsqu'ils sont connectés au réseau, doivent satisfaire aux exigences en état sous tension et hors tension ainsi que lors des transitions entre ces états. Cette impédance doit être mesurée aux bornes de l'élément de communication en utilisant une onde sinusoïdale d'une amplitude de signal supérieure au seuil de sensibilité du récepteur et inférieure à 2,0 V crête à crête.

NOTE 1 L'exigence d'une impédance d'entrée de $\geq 3 \text{ k}\Omega$ pendant la mise sous tension et hors tension peut être satisfaite par désactivation automatique de l'émetteur au cours de ces périodes.

NOTE 2 Les dispositifs disposant de circuits électroniques de déconnexion en cas de défaut peuvent avoir des impédances inférieures à la valeur spécifiée dans des conditions de défaut.

12.5.3 Sensibilité du récepteur et suppression du bruit

Un circuit de réception de MAU doit être capable de recevoir un signal d'entrée d'une amplitude d'au moins 150 mV crête à crête, y compris la surtension et l'oscillation (voir "niveau du signal" ainsi que "amplitude positive" et "amplitude négative" dans la Figure 58).

Le circuit de réception de MAU ne doit pas répondre à un signal d'entrée d'amplitude crête à crête non supérieur à 75 mV (voir "suppression du bruit" dans la Figure 58).

12.5.4 Instabilité de bit élémentaire reçu

Le circuit de réception doit accepter un signal codé Manchester émis conformément à 12.2 et à 12.4. En outre, le récepteur doit fonctionner correctement à des signaux ayant des variations temporelles, entre deux points adjacents quelconques de transition des signaux (passage par zéro) d'au maximum $\pm 0,10 T_{\text{bit}}$. Voir Figure 56.

NOTE 1 Cette spécification n'exclut pas l'utilisation de récepteurs dont les performances sont supérieures à la présente spécification.

NOTE 2 En fonction de la configuration du symbole, la durée nominale entre passages par zéro peut être de $0,5 T_{\text{bit}}$ ou $1,0 T_{\text{bit}}$.

NOTE 3 Il n'y a aucune exigence quant au rejet d'un signal donné ayant une valeur de variation temporelle spécifiée. Le récepteur rend compte d'une erreur lorsque l'instabilité du bit élémentaire reçu excède l'aptitude du récepteur à décoder la signalisation de manière fiable.

12.5.5 Susceptibilité au brouillage et taux d'erreurs

NOTE 1 Lorsqu'un bus de terrain fonctionne dans divers environnements de bruit normalisés, il convient que la probabilité qu'une unité de données utilisateur de couche d'Application contienne une erreur non détectée, du fait du fonctionnement des entités physiques et DLL d'acheminement, soit inférieure à $1 \text{ sur } 6 \times 10^9$ (1 erreur en 20 années à 10 messages/s). Un élément de communication est considéré conforme à cette exigence théorique

lorsqu'il satisfait aux exigences suivantes de susceptibilité au brouillage. Ces exigences sont spécifiées sur la base d'un taux d'erreur de trame détecté obtenu en utilisant un rapport d'erreurs détectées/non détectées de 10^6 . Il convient que ceci soit facilement réalisable au moyen d'une séquence de contrôle de trame de 16 bits au niveau de la DLL.

Un élément de communication qui inclut une MAU, utilisant des trames contenant 32 bits de données utilisateur aléatoires, à un débit de trame maximal et avec des signaux d'une amplitude de 375 mV crête à crête, ne doit pas produire plus de 10 erreurs de trame détectées sur 60 000 trames pendant son fonctionnement en présence d'une tension en mode commun ou de bruit gaussien comme décrit ci-après:

- a) un signal sinusoïdal en mode commun à toute fréquence de 63 Hz à 2 MHz, d'une amplitude de 4 V eff. et de 47 Hz à 63 Hz avec une amplitude de 250 V eff.;
- b) un signal c.c. en mode commun de ± 10 V;
- c) un bruit blanc gaussien différentiel additionnel dans la bande de fréquences de 1 kHz à 100 kHz, avec une densité de bruit de 70 $\mu\text{V}/\sqrt{\text{Hz}}$ eff.

NOTE 2 Les valeurs spécifiées pour la tension en mode commun et le bruit gaussien correspondent à des essais de conformité de circuit de réception avec des charges symétriques et ne sont pas représentatives d'une quelconque pratique d'installation de système.

Un élément de communication qui inclut une MAU, utilisant des trames contenant 32 bits de données utilisateur aléatoires, à une moyenne de 10 messages/s, avec des signaux d'une amplitude de 375 mV crête à crête, ne doit pas produire plus de 10 erreurs de trame détectées sur 1000 trames, lorsqu'il est utilisé dans des environnements de perturbations électromagnétiques ou électriques comme décrit ci-après:

- 1) champ électromagnétique de 10 V/m, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-3 au niveau de sévérité 3;
- 2) transitoires électriques rapides, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-4 au niveau de sévérité 3.

Le taux d'erreur spécifié ci-dessus doit également être réalisé après, mais non pendant le fonctionnement dans les environnements de bruit suivants:

- i) décharge électrostatique de 8 kV sur une structure métallique exposée, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-2, au niveau de sévérité 3. Si le dispositif subit une perte temporaire de fonctions ou de performances suite à cet essai, il doit récupérer de cette perte éventuelle sans intervention de l'opérateur, dans les 3 s qui suivent la fin de l'essai;
- ii) essais de perturbation à haute fréquence, comme spécifié dans la CEI 60255-22-1:1988, Annexe E, classe III de tension d'essai (2,5 kV et 1 kV de valeurs crêtes de la première demi-alternance, respectivement en mode longitudinal et transversal). Si le dispositif subit une perte temporaire de fonctions ou de performances du fait de cet essai, il doit récupérer de cette perte éventuelle sans intervention de l'opérateur, dans les 3 s qui suivent la fin de l'essai.

12.6 Inhibition du bavardage

La MAU doit comporter une capacité d'interruption automatique pour empêcher les signaux émis d'atteindre le support. Le matériel dans la MAU (sans message extérieur autre que la détection des signaux de sortie ou de fuite par la fonction d'émission) doit fournir une fenêtre d'une durée comprise entre 120 ms et 240 ms au cours de laquelle une trame normale peut être émise. Si la longueur de trame dépasse cette durée, la fonction d'inhibition du bavardage doit empêcher d'autres signaux en sortie d'atteindre le support et doit désactiver l'écho sur la ligne RxS (voir 10.2.2.2) pour indiquer à la MDS la détection de bavardage.

La MAU doit réinitialiser la fonction d'interruption automatique après une période de $3,0 \text{ s} \pm 50 \%$.

NOTE Ceci inhibe le trafic sur le bus pendant au maximum 16 % ($\approx 240 \text{ ms} / 1,5 \text{ s}$) du temps disponible.

12.7 Distribution de l'alimentation

12.7.1 Aperçu général

Un dispositif peut recevoir son alimentation par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de signaux ou être alimenté de manière séparée.

Un dispositif peut être certifié comme étant de sécurité intrinsèque quelle que soit la méthode d'alimentation.

NOTE 1 La présente norme n'inclut pas d'exigences pour la certification IS mais cherche à exclure des conditions ou situations qui pourraient empêcher la certification IS.

NOTE 2 Un dispositif à alimentation séparée peut être connecté à un bus de terrain alimenté.

Pour faciliter le renvoi aux textes correspondants, les exigences de 12.7 pour les dispositifs alimentés par le réseau et les alimentations du réseau sont respectivement résumées dans le Tableau 63 et dans le Tableau 64.

Tableau 63 – Caractéristiques des dispositifs alimentés par le réseau

Caractéristiques des dispositifs alimentés par le réseau	Limites pour 31,25 kbit/s
Tension de service	0,0 V à 32,0 V c.c.
Tension de tenue minimale, quelle que soit la polarité, sans dommages	35 V
Le taux de variation maximal du courant passif (pas d'émission); cette exigence ne s'applique pas au cours des premières 20 ms après connexion du dispositif à un réseau opérationnel ou dans les premières 20 ms après mise sous tension du réseau	1,0 mA/ms
Courant maximal; cette exigence s'applique au cours de l'intervalle de temps de 500 μ s à 20 ms après connexion du dispositif à un réseau opérationnel ou 500 μ s à 20 ms après mise sous tension du réseau (voir note).	Courant passif assigné plus 20 mA
NOTE 1 Les premières 500 μ s sont exclues pour permettre le chargement des filtres RFI et autres capacités du dispositif. La spécification du taux de variation s'applique au bout de 20 ms.	
NOTE 2 Il convient que le courant maximal au cours de ces premières 500 μ s ne soit pas supérieur à deux fois le courant maximal spécifié ci-dessus, afin de réduire les effets d'appels de courant sur les autres composantes du réseau de bus de terrain connecté.	
NOTE 3 Ces exclusions permettent de générer un "délestage" au niveau des dispositifs alimentés par la même source au cours de cet intervalle d'exclusion.	
NOTE 4 Ces exclusions peuvent augmenter de manière substantielle les exigences en courant de l'alimentation au cours de l'intervalle d'exclusion qui a lieu immédiatement après mise sous tension du segment PHL.	

Tableau 64 – Exigences d'alimentation réseau

Exigences d'alimentation réseau	Limites pour 31,25 kbit/s
Tension de sortie, non IS	≤ 32 V c.c.
Tension de sortie, IS	En fonction des caractéristiques assignées de la barrière
Ondulation de sortie et bruit	Voir Figure 62
Impédance de sortie	Voir 12.7.4
NOTE Il convient que les alimentations soient conçues de manière à tenir compte du courant de choc lors de la connexion du dispositif ou à la mise sous tension, comme défini dans le Tableau 63.	

12.7.2 Tension d'alimentation

Un dispositif de bus de terrain revendiquant la conformité au présent article doit pouvoir fonctionner dans une plage de tensions de 9 V à 32 V c.c. entre les deux conducteurs, y compris l'ondulation. Le dispositif doit supporter sans aucun dommage une tension minimale de ± 35 V c.c.

12.7.3 Alimentation par l'intermédiaire de conducteurs de signaux

Un dispositif de bus de terrain qui revendique la conformité au présent article doit satisfaire aux exigences correspondantes lorsqu'il est alimenté par une source ayant les spécifications suivantes:

- a) La tension de sortie maximale de l'alimentation, pour des réseaux non IS, doit être de 32 V c.c., y compris l'ondulation.

NOTE 1 Pour des systèmes IS, la tension de service peut être limitée par les exigences de certification. Dans ce cas, l'alimentation sera placée dans la zone de sécurité et sa tension de sortie sera atténuée par une barrière de sécurité ou composante équivalente.

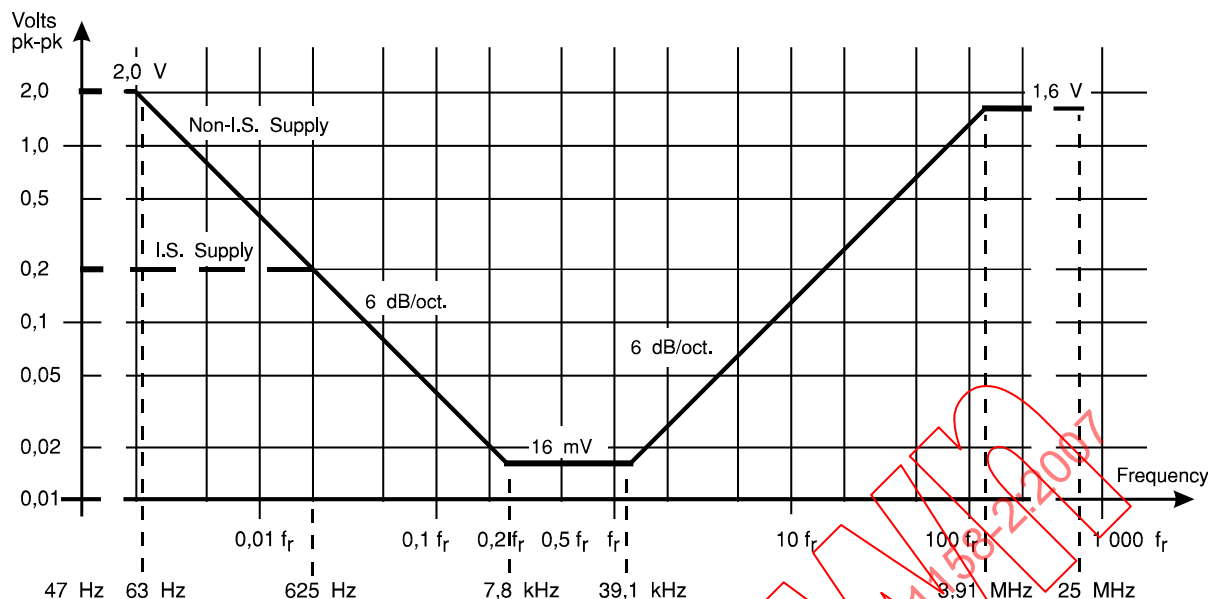
- b) Les exigences relatives au claquage pour l'isolation du circuit de signaux et du circuit de distribution de l'alimentation par rapport à la masse et par rapport à l'autre circuit doivent être conformes à la CEI 61131-2.

NOTE 2 Voir 11.7.5, note 3.

- c) Lorsqu'une source donnée alimente deux ou plusieurs segments, l'impédance de l'isolation de chaque segment doit être partagée ± 10 % entre les deux conducteurs de signaux du segment.

Un dispositif de bus de terrain revendiquant la conformité au présent article qui est alimenté via les conducteurs de signaux doit satisfaire aux exigences du présent article lorsqu'il fonctionne à des valeurs maximales d'ondulation et de bruit de l'alimentation, de la manière suivante:

- d) 16 mV crête à crête sur la gamme de fréquences de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz à 39 kHz);
- e) 2,0 V crête à crête sur la gamme de fréquences de 47 Hz à 63 Hz pour des applications non IS;
- f) 0,2 V crête à crête sur la gamme de fréquences de 47 Hz à 625 Hz pour des applications IS;
- g) 1,6 mV crête à crête à des fréquences supérieures à $125 f_r$, jusqu'à une fréquence maximale de 25 MHz;
- h) des niveaux, à des fréquences intermédiaires, généralement conformes à la Figure 62.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Volts pk-pk	Volts, crête à crête
Non IS supply	Alimentation non IS
IS supply	Alimentation IS
Frequency	Fréquence

Figure 62 – Ondulation et bruit de l'alimentation

Un dispositif de bus de terrain qui revendique la conformité au présent article et qui est alimenté par les conducteurs de signaux, doit présenter un taux maximal de variation du courant prélevé du réseau de 1 mA/ms. Cette exigence ne s'applique pas:

- 1) en cours d'émission,
- 2) au cours des premières 20 ms après connexion du dispositif à un réseau opérationnel,
- 3) au cours des premières 20 ms après mise sous tension du réseau, ou
- 4) lors de la déconnexion du réseau ou de la mise hors tension du réseau.

Un dispositif doit porter un marquage indiquant son courant passif assigné. Un dispositif ne doit pas prélever du réseau plus de 20 mA au-dessus de son courant assigné au cours de l'intervalle de temps de 500 μ s à 20 ms après connexion du dispositif à un réseau opérationnel ou 500 μ s à 20 ms après mise sous tension du réseau.

NOTE 3 Les premières 500 μ s sont exclues pour permettre le chargement des filtres RFI et autres capacités du dispositif. La spécification du taux de variation s'applique au bout de 20 ms.

NOTE 4 Il convient que le courant maximal au cours de ces 500 μ s initiales ne soit pas supérieur à deux fois le courant maximal spécifié ci-dessus, afin de réduire les effets d'appels de courant sur les autres composants du réseau de bus de terrain connecté.

NOTE 5 Ces exclusions permettent de générer un "délestage" au niveau des dispositifs alimentés par la même source au cours de cet intervalle d'exclusion.

NOTE 6 Ces exclusions peuvent augmenter de manière substantielle les exigences en courant de l'alimentation au cours de l'intervalle d'exclusion qui a lieu immédiatement après mise sous tension du segment PhL.

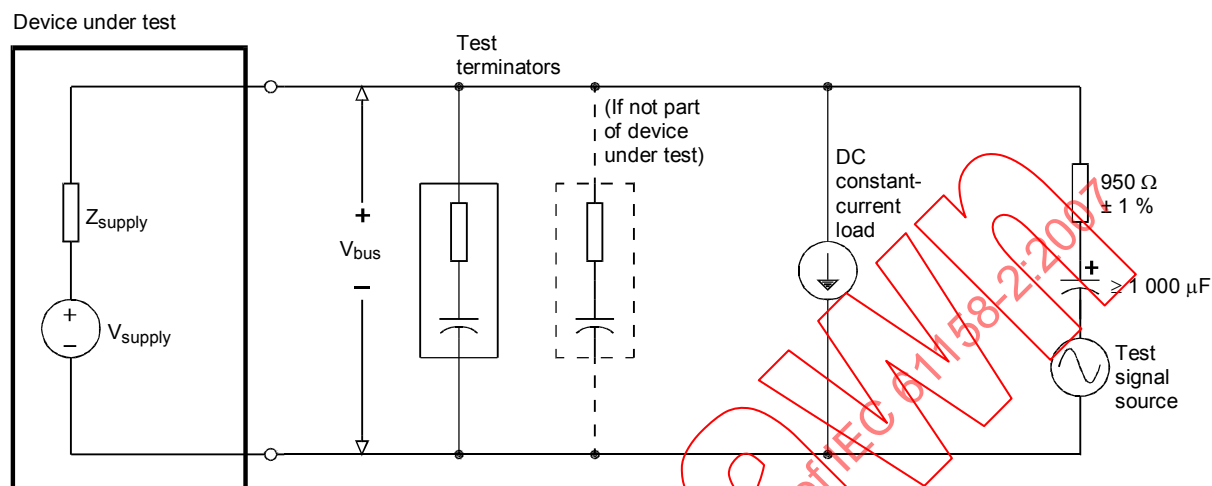
12.7.4 Impédance d'alimentation

L'alimentation utilisée pour fournir de l'énergie aux conducteurs de signaux doit être conforme aux valeurs d'impédance spécifiées en 12.7.4.1, 12.7.4.2 ou 12.7.4.3.

NOTE Il convient que les alimentations soient conçues de manière à tenir compte du courant de choc lors de la connexion du dispositif ou à la mise sous tension, comme défini en 12.7.3.

12.7.4.1 Impédance des alimentations à sortie unique

L'impédance des alimentations à sortie unique doit être mesurée au moyen du circuit d'essai de la Figure 63.



Device under test	Dispositif en essai
Z supply	Z alimentation
V supply	V alimentation
V bus	V bus
Test terminators	Termineurs d'essai
(if not part of device under test)	(s'il ne fait pas partie du dispositif en essai)
DC constant-current load	Charge de courant constant c.c.
Test signal source	Source de signal d'essai

Figure 63 – Circuit d'essai pour des alimentations à sortie unique

Les terminateurs d'essai présentés en Figure 63 doivent chacun avoir une valeur de $100 \Omega \pm 1 \%$ en série, avec $1 \mu F \pm 5 \%$. Deux terminateurs d'essai doivent être utilisés dans le circuit d'essai si l'alimentation soumise à l'essai ne comporte pas un terminateur interne. Si l'alimentation soumise à l'essai comporte un terminateur interne qui est toujours connecté, un seul terminateur d'essai doit être utilisé dans le circuit d'essai. Si l'alimentation soumise à l'essai comporte un terminateur interne qui peut être facultativement connecté au circuit, l'alimentation doit être soumise à l'essai a) avec le terminateur interne et un terminateur d'essai, et b) avec deux terminateurs d'essai et pas de terminateur interne.

S'il est prévu d'utiliser l'alimentation avec un réseau externe à détermination de l'impédance (par exemple cela pourrait être le cas d'alimentations conçues pour être utilisées en redondance), l'alimentation doit être soumise à l'essai avec le réseau externe connecté.

L'alimentation doit être soumise à l'essai à 20 %, 50 % et 80 % de son courant de sortie assigné (ou 20 mA, selon que l'une ou l'autre valeur est la plus grande), avec application d'une charge à courant continu constante ayant une conformité d'au moins 1 mA/V (c'est-à-dire une impédance de $\geq 1 \text{ k}\Omega$).

L'alimentation doit être soumise à l'essai en surveillant la tension alternative du bus, V_{BUS} , tout en appliquant une onde sinusoïdale de $10 V_{\text{crête à crête}}$ à partir d'une source de signal d'essai, à travers une résistance de $950 \Omega \pm 1 \%$ et un condensateur de couplage d'au moins 1 000 μF .

La tension alternative du bus mesurée, V_{BUS} , doit être conforme aux valeurs suivantes.

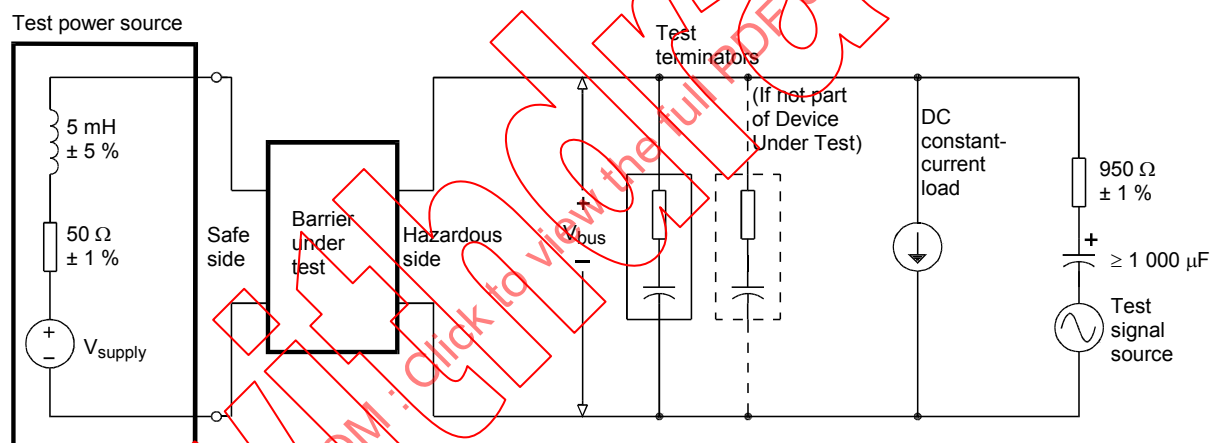
- a) **Pour des alimentations non IS conçues pour fournir l'énergie à des barrières IS:** V_{BUS} doit être comprise entre $0,40 V_{\text{crête à crête}}$ et $0,60 V_{\text{crête à crête}}$ à toute fréquence de 50 Hz à 39 kHz.
- b) **Pour des alimentations IS ainsi que pour des alimentations non IS qui ne sont pas destinées à fournir de l'énergie à des barrières IS:** V_{BUS} doit être comprise entre $0,40 V_{\text{crête à crête}}$ et $0,60 V_{\text{crête à crête}}$, pour des fréquences de 3 kHz à 39 kHz, et elle ne doit pas croître ou décroître à un taux supérieur à 20 dB par décade, à toute fréquence de 50 Hz à 3 kHz.

NOTE Il est acceptable que les fonctions de l'alimentation et du terminateur soient combinées, à condition que la combinaison résultante soit électriquement équivalente aux dispositifs indépendants qui satisfont aux exigences du présent article et si les règles de configuration du réseau de 12.3 sont respectées.

Les alimentations qui ne sont pas conçues pour fournir de l'énergie à des barrières IS doivent porter un marquage indiquant "Ne pas utiliser avec des barrières IS".

12.7.4.2 Distribution de l'alimentation par l'intermédiaire d'une barrière IS

L'impédance de sortie de barrières de sécurité intrinsèque doit être définie en termes de caractéristiques en fonction de la fréquence lorsque la barrière est connectée au circuit d'essai de la Figure 64.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Test power source	Source d'alimentation d'essai
V supply	V alimentation
Safe side	Côté sûr
Barrier under test	Barrière en essai
Hazardous side	Côté dangereux
V bus	V bus
Test terminators	Termineurs d'essai
(if not part of device under test)	(s'il ne fait pas partie du dispositif en essai)
DC constant-current load	Charge de courant constant c.c.
Test signal source	Source de signal d'essai

Figure 64 – Circuit d'essai pour distribution de l'alimentation par l'intermédiaire d'une barrière IS

La source d'alimentation d'essai présentée en Figure 64 est constituée d'une source de tension continue de faible impédance en série avec $5 \text{ mH} \pm 5 \%$ et $50 \Omega \pm 1 \%$. Les

terminateurs d'essai doivent avoir chacun une valeur de $100 \Omega \pm 1 \%$ en série, avec $1 \mu\text{F} \pm 5 \%$. Si la barrière comporte un terminateur interne, elle doit être soumise aux essais avec un terminateur d'essai. Dans le cas contraire, la barrière doit être soumise aux essais avec deux terminateurs d'essai.

La barrière doit être soumise à l'essai à 20 %, 50 % et 80 % du courant de sortie assigné (ou 20 mA, selon que l'une ou l'autre valeur est la plus grande), avec application d'une charge à courant continu constante ayant une conformité d'au moins 1 mA/V (c'est-à-dire une impédance de $\geq 1 \text{ k}\Omega$).

La barrière doit être soumise à l'essai en surveillant la tension du bus, V_{BUS} , tout en appliquant une onde sinusoïdale de $10 V_{\text{crête à crête}}$ à partir d'une source de signal d'essai, à travers une résistance de $950 \Omega \pm 1 \%$ et un condensateur de couplage d'au moins $1\,000 \mu\text{F}$.

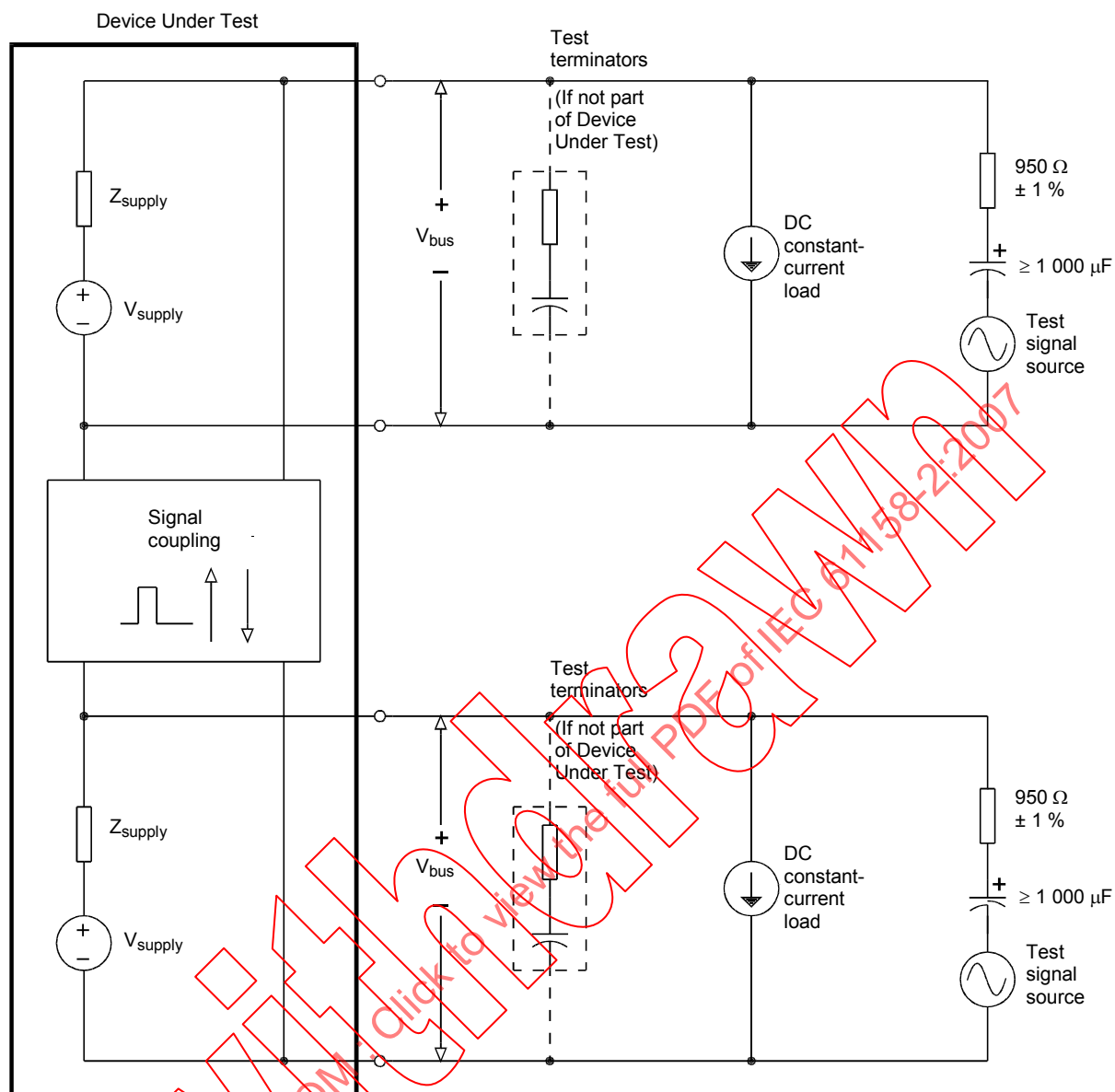
La tension alternative du bus V_{BUS} mesurée du côté dangereux de la barrière doit être comprise entre $0,40 V_{\text{crête à crête}}$ et $0,60 V_{\text{crête à crête}}$, pour des fréquences de 3 kHz à 39 kHz, et elle ne doit pas croître ou décroître à un taux supérieur à 20 dB par décade à toute fréquence de 50 Hz à 3 kHz.

NOTE Il est acceptable que les fonctions de l'alimentation, de la barrière IS et du terminateur soient combinées de diverses manières, à condition que la combinaison obtenue soit électriquement équivalente aux dispositifs indépendants qui satisfont aux exigences du présent article et si les règles de configuration du réseau de 12.3 sont respectées.

12.7.4.3 Impédance des alimentations à sorties multiples avec couplage du signal entre sorties

NOTE 1 Ce paragraphe est applicable aux sectionneurs galvaniques, aux coupleurs actifs et aux autres dispositifs munis de plusieurs ports d'alimentation et de signaux.

Pour des alimentations à sorties multiples avec couplage du signal de communication du bus de terrain entre sorties, l'impédance d'alimentation doit être mesurée au moyen du circuit d'essai de la Figure 65.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Device under test	Dispositif en essai
Z supply	Z alimentation
V supply	V alimentation
V bus	V bus
Test terminators	Terminateurs d'essai
(if not part of device under test)	(s'il ne fait pas partie du dispositif en essai)
DC constant-current load	Charge de courant constant c.c.
Test signal source	Source de signal d'essai
Signal coupling	Couplage du signal

Figure 65 – Circuit d'essai pour des alimentations à sorties multiples avec couplage du signal

Les terminateurs d'essai présentés en Figure 65 doivent chacun avoir une valeur de $100 \Omega \pm 1 \%$ en série, avec $1 \mu F \pm 5 \%$. Deux terminateurs d'essai doivent être utilisés dans le circuit d'essai si le dispositif soumis à l'essai ne comporte pas un terminateur interne. Si le dispositif

soumis à l'essai comporte un terminateur interne qui est toujours connecté, un seul terminateur d'essai doit être utilisé dans le circuit d'essai. Si le dispositif soumis à l'essai comporte un terminateur interne qui peut être facultativement connecté au circuit, le dispositif doit être soumis à l'essai a) avec le terminateur interne et un terminateur d'essai, et b) avec deux terminateurs d'essai et pas de terminateur interne.

S'il est prévu d'utiliser le dispositif soumis à l'essai avec un réseau externe à détermination de l'impédance (par exemple cela pourrait être le cas d'alimentations conçues pour être utilisées en redondance), l'alimentation doit être soumise à l'essai avec le réseau externe connecté.

Le dispositif doit être soumis à l'essai à 20 %, 50 % et 80 % de son courant de sortie assigné (ou 20 mA, selon que l'une ou l'autre valeur est la plus grande) à chaque sortie, avec application d'une charge à courant continu constante ayant une conformité d'au moins 1 mA/V (c'est-à-dire une impédance de $\geq 1 \text{ k}\Omega$).

La tension alternative du bus V_{BUS} mesurée doit être comprise entre $0,40 V_{\text{crête à crête}}$ et $0,60 V_{\text{crête à crête}}$, pour des fréquences de 3 kHz à 39 kHz, et elle ne doit pas croître ou décroître à un taux supérieur à 20 dB par décade à toute fréquence de 50 Hz à 3 kHz.

NOTE 2 Il est acceptable que les fonctions de l'alimentation, du sectionneur ou du coupleur et du terminateur soient combinées de diverses manières, à condition que l'impédance de la combinaison obtenue soit équivalente à l'impédance parallèle de dispositifs indépendants qui satisfont aux exigences du présent article et si les règles de configuration du réseau de 12.3 sont respectées.

12.7.5 Alimentation séparée à partir des conducteurs de signaux

NOTE La distribution de l'alimentation pour des dispositifs de bus de terrain non alimentés par le bus s'effectue au moyen de conducteurs séparés fournissant l'énergie à des alimentations locales, des régulateurs ou des barrières de sécurité. La certification IS peut exiger que ces conducteurs soient dans un câble séparé de celui des conducteurs de signaux et peut également imposer des exigences de niveau de courant plus strictes que celles qui sont spécifiées.

Un dispositif de bus de terrain alimenté séparément ne doit pas prélever des conducteurs de signaux plus de 10 mA en courant continu et ne doit pas fournir plus de 100 μA en courant continu aux conducteurs de signaux, lorsqu'il n'y a pas d'émission. Un dispositif doit porter un marquage indiquant son courant passif assigné prélevé du réseau.

12.7.6 Isolation électrique

Tous les dispositifs de bus de terrain, alimentés séparément ou par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de signaux, doivent assurer une isolation basse fréquence entre la masse et le câble de ligne principale du bus de terrain.

NOTE 1 Ceci peut être réalisé en isolant l'ensemble du dispositif de la masse au moyen d'un transformateur, d'un optocoupleur ou de tout autre organe d'isolation entre le câble de ligne principale et le dispositif.

Une alimentation et un élément de communication combinés ne doivent pas nécessiter d'isolation électrique.

Pour les câbles blindés, l'impédance d'isolation mesurée entre le blindage du câble de bus de terrain et la masse du dispositif de bus de terrain doit être supérieure à 250 $\text{k}\Omega$ à toutes les fréquences inférieures à 63 Hz.

La capacité dissymétrique maximale par rapport à la masse de toute borne d'entrée d'un dispositif ne doit pas dépasser 250 pF.

Les exigences de claquage de l'isolation du circuit de signaux et du circuit de distribution de l'alimentation par rapport à la masse et par rapport à l'autre circuit doivent être conformes à la CEI 61131-2.

NOTE 2 Voir 11.7.5, note 3.

12.8 Spécifications du support

12.8.1 Connecteur

Les éventuels connecteurs de câbles doivent être conformes à la présente norme (pour la transmission synchrone de Type 1, voir l'Annexe A et pour la transmission synchrone de Type 3, voir l'Annexe I). Les techniques de terminaison sur le terrain, par exemple les bornes à vis ou à lames ainsi que les terminaisons permanentes, peuvent également être utilisées.

12.8.2 Câble d'essai normalisé

Le câble utilisé pour les essais de dispositifs de bus de terrain revendiquant la conformité aux exigences du présent article, doit être un câble unique à paire torsadée, à blindage global, conforme aux exigences minimales suivantes, à une température de 25 °C:

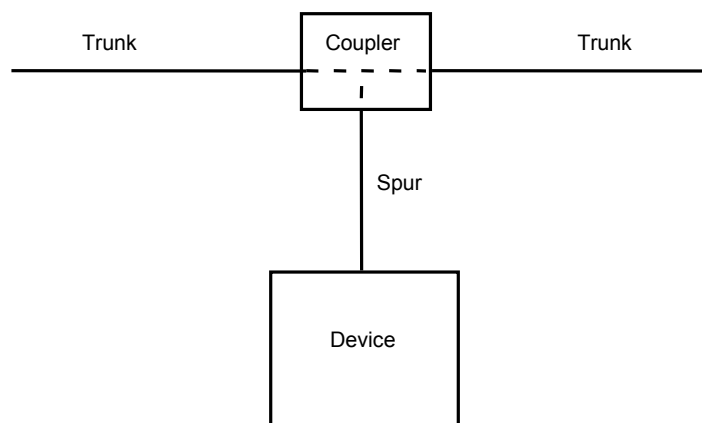
- a) impédance à une fréquence f_r (31,25 kHz) = $100 \Omega \pm 20 \%$;
- b) affaiblissement maximal à une fréquence $1,25 f_r$ (39 kHz) = 3,0 dB/km;
- c) déséquilibre capacitif maximal par rapport au blindage = 4 nF/km, soumis à l'essai au moyen d'un échantillon d'une longueur minimale de 30 m;
- d) résistance maximale en courant continu (par conducteur) = 24 Ω /km;
- e) variation du délai maximal de propagation à une fréquence de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ = 1,7 μ s/km;
- f) aire de la section des conducteurs (dimension des fils) = 0,8 mm², valeur nominale;
- g) couverture minimale du blindage: 90 %.

NOTE 1 La spécification ci-dessus concerne les essais de conformité d'une MAU. D'autres types de câbles peuvent être utilisés dans les installations réelles. (Voir l'Annexe B). Les câbles à spécifications améliorées peuvent permettre de plus grandes longueurs de lignes principales ou une meilleure immunité aux perturbations ou encore il peut être exigé qu'ils satisfassent à des conditions d'environnement ou d'installation. En revanche, les câbles ayant des spécifications inférieures peuvent être utilisés, sous réserve d'une limitation des longueurs utilisées, tant pour les lignes principales que secondaires, auxquels s'ajoute une éventuelle non-conformité aux exigences de susceptibilité aux perturbations radioélectriques (RFI) et électromagnétiques (EMI).

NOTE 2 Pour des applications de sécurité intrinsèque, il convient que le rapport inductance/résistance (L/R) soit inférieur à la limite spécifiée par l'organisme de réglementation local pour la mise en œuvre particulière.

12.8.3 Coupleur

Le coupleur doit fournir un ou plusieurs points de connexion à la ligne principale. Il peut être intégré au dispositif de bus de terrain, auquel cas il n'y a pas de ligne secondaire. Dans le cas contraire, il dispose d'au moins trois points d'accès comme présenté en Figure 66: un pour la ligne secondaire et un pour chaque côté de la ligne principale.



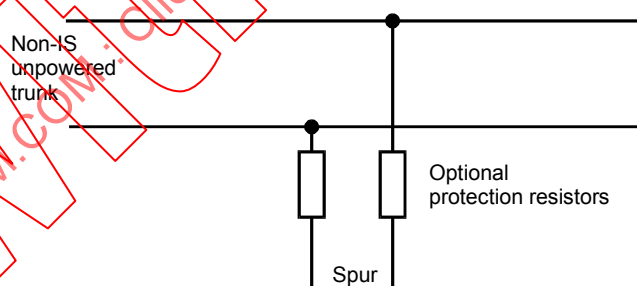
Légende

Anglais	Français
Trunk	Ligne principale
Coupler	Coupleur
Spur	Ligne secondaire
Device	Dispositif

Figure 66 – Coupleur de bus de terrain

Un coupleur passif peut inclure un ou tous les éléments facultatifs décrits ci-dessous:

- un transformateur assurant l'isolation galvanique et la transformation de l'impédance entre la ligne principale et la ligne secondaire;
- des connecteurs facilitant le branchement à la ligne secondaire et/ou à la ligne principale.
- des résistances de protection, comme illustré en Figure 67, pour protéger le trafic sur le bus entre d'autres dispositifs, des effets d'une ligne secondaire en court-circuit sur une ligne principale non alimentée et non de sécurité intrinsèque.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Non-IS unpowered trunk	Ligne principale non alimentée et non IS
Spur	Ligne secondaire
Optional protection resistors	Résistances de protection facultatives

Figure 67 – Résistances de protection

NOTE Ces résistances série augmentent de manière inhérente la tension aux bornes du dispositif lorsqu'il est en émission. Ceci affecte la tension aux bornes de réception des dispositifs électriquement "voisins". Voir 12.4.3 pour la tension de tenue maximale exigée de tous ces dispositifs.

Les coupleurs actifs qui nécessitent une alimentation externe, comportent des composantes d'amplification et de réémission des signaux. Le niveau d'émission et les exigences de synchronisation doivent être conformes à 12.3.

12.8.4 Epissures

NOTE 1 Une épissure est toute partie du réseau dans laquelle l'impédance caractéristique du câble de réseau n'est pas maintenue. Ceci peut être dû à la séparation des conducteurs du câble, au retrait de blindage du câble, au changement de calibre ou de type de fil, à la connexion de lignes secondaires, à la fixation à des barrettes à bornes, etc. Une définition pratique d'une épissure est par conséquent toute partie du réseau qui n'est pas une longueur continue du support spécifié.

Pour des réseaux d'une longueur de câblage totale (ligne principale et lignes secondaires) supérieure à 400 m, la somme des longueurs de toutes les épissures ne doit pas dépasser 2,0 % de la longueur totale du câble. Pour des longueurs de câblage de 400 m ou moins, la somme des longueurs de toutes les épissures ne doit pas dépasser 8 m.

NOTE 2 Cette spécification est motivée par le fait qu'il est nécessaire de préserver la qualité de transmission en exigeant que le réseau soit presque entièrement constitué du support spécifié.

La continuité de tous les conducteurs du câble doit être maintenue dans une épissure.

12.8.5 Terminateur

Un terminateur doit être placé aux deux extrémités du câble de ligne principale et connecté d'un conducteur de signal à l'autre. Il ne doit y avoir aucune connexion entre terminateur et blindage du câble.

La valeur de l'impédance du terminateur doit être de $100 \Omega - 2 \Omega / + 6 \Omega$ sur la gamme de fréquences de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz à 39 kHz). L'impédance du terminateur doit être équivalente à une résistance en série de 100Ω avec une capacité de $1,0 \mu F$. Les tolérances maximales des composants doivent être de $100 \Omega \pm 2 \Omega$ et $1,0 \mu F \pm 0,2 \mu F$.

NOTE 1 Cette valeur d'impédance correspond approximativement à la valeur moyenne de l'impédance caractéristique du câble, pour les câbles appropriés, aux fréquences pertinentes, et elle est choisie pour réduire autant que possible les réflexions de la ligne d'émission.

NOTE 2 Il convient que les composants du terminateur soient choisis de manière à satisfaire aux valeurs spécifiées sur la plage de températures indiquée et pendant toute la durée de vie et de fonctionnement de l'installation. Il est recommandé que les caractéristiques assignées des composants à $25^\circ C$ soient de $100 \Omega \pm 1 \Omega$ et $1 \mu F \pm 0,1 \mu F$.

Le courant continu de fuite à travers le terminateur ne doit pas dépasser $100 \mu A$. Le terminateur doit être non polarisé.

Tous les terminateurs utilisés pour les applications IS doivent être conformes aux exigences d'isolation (lignes de fuite et distances d'isolement) en fonction de l'homologation IS requise. L'homologation IS ne doit pas être exigée pour des terminateurs destinés à des applications non IS.

NOTE 3 Il est acceptable que les fonctions de l'alimentation, de la barrière de sécurité et du terminateur soient combinées de diverses manières, à condition que l'impédance de la combinaison obtenue soit équivalente à l'impédance parallèle de dispositifs indépendants qui satisfont aux exigences du présent Article et si les règles de configuration du réseau de 12.3.3 sont respectées.

12.8.6 Règles de blindage

Lorsque la conformité aux exigences d'immunité au bruit de 12.5 est à réaliser au moyen d'un blindage, il est nécessaire d'assurer l'intégrité du blindage sur toute la longueur du câblage, dans les connecteurs et dans les coupleurs. Les règles suivantes peuvent aider au respect de ces exigences, mais ne constituent pas en soi une exigence:

- a) il convient que le câble soit blindé sur plus de 90 % de sa longueur totale;
- b) il convient que le blindage couvre complètement les circuits électriques des connecteurs, des coupleurs et des épissures.

NOTE 1 Toute dérogation à ces règles de blindage peut dégrader l'immunité au bruit.

NOTE 2 Du fait des longueurs d'onde importantes, en général, il convient que les éventuelles ruptures de la couverture du blindage sur 25 cm à peu près au niveau des connecteurs, des coupleurs et des épissures, y compris les points de fixation des lignes secondaires, ne posent pas de problèmes, à condition que la continuité du blindage soit maintenue.

NOTE 3 Les enveloppes de connecteurs, de coupleurs et d'épissures utilisant des boîtes de jonction métalliques peuvent assurer un blindage de protection contre les sources de bruit hors de la boîte de jonction.

12.8.7 Règles de mise à la masse (mise à la terre)

NOTE 1 Mise à la masse (à la terre) signifie une connexion permanente à la terre par l'intermédiaire d'une impédance suffisamment basse et ayant un courant admissible suffisant pour prévenir un amorçage en tension qui pourrait entraîner des dangers excessifs pour le matériel connecté ou les personnes. Les lignes de tension zéro (commun) peuvent être reliées à la masse lorsqu'elles sont galvaniquement isolées de la ligne principale du bus de terrain.

Les dispositifs de bus de terrain doivent fonctionner conformément aux exigences du présent article, le point médian d'un terminateur ou d'un coupleur inductif étant directement connecté à la masse.

Les dispositifs de bus de terrain ne doivent pas raccorder l'un des conducteurs de la paire torsadée à la masse quel que soit le point du réseau. Les signaux doivent être appliqués et préservés de manière différentielle sur l'ensemble du réseau.

NOTE 2 Il est habituel dans la pratique de mettre effectivement à la masse le blindage du câble de ligne principale de bus de terrain (le cas échéant) en un point sur la longueur du câble. De ce fait, il convient que les dispositifs de bus de terrain permettent une isolation c.c. du blindage du câble par rapport à la masse. La pratique courante est également de raccorder les conducteurs de signaux à la masse de manière symétrique, au même point, en utilisant par exemple la prise médiane d'un terminateur ou d'un transformateur de couplage. Pour des systèmes alimentés par le bus, il convient que la mise à la masse du blindage et des conducteurs de signaux équilibrés soit proche de l'unité d'alimentation. Pour les systèmes IS, il convient que la mise à la masse soit effectuée au niveau de la connexion à la terre de la barrière de sécurité. Il est admis, sous réserve de conformité aux exigences IS, d'avoir un couplage capacitif entre le blindage ou les conducteurs de signaux équilibrés et la mise à la masse locale du dispositif pour une meilleure immunité aux interférences électromagnétiques.

12.8.8 Code de couleur des câbles

Voir 11.8.8.

Si les pratiques locales, telles que celles spécifiées en 11.8.8, le permettent, il est recommandé d'utiliser les couleurs de câble suivantes pour les systèmes de Type 3, comme présenté dans le Tableau 65.

Tableau 65 – Spécification des couleurs de câbles pour le Type 3

Paramètres du câble	Couleur
Couleur de gaine non IS	Noire
Couleur de gaine IS	Bleue ou bande bleue/noire
Couleur du conducteur intérieur du câble A (PA-)	Vert
Couleur du conducteur intérieur du câble B (PA+)	Rouge

12.9 Sécurité intrinsèque

12.9.1 Généralités

La présente norme n'a pas pour ambition d'énumérer les exigences permettant de certifier un équipement comme étant de sécurité intrinsèque et n'exige pas non plus que l'équipement soit de sécurité intrinsèque. Elle cherche plutôt à exclure les conditions ou situations qui pourraient empêcher la certification IS.

12.9.2 Barrière de sécurité intrinsèque

L'impédance de la barrière doit être supérieure à 460Ω , à toute fréquence dans une gamme de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz à 39 kHz). La spécification de l'impédance de la barrière IS doit s'appliquer à toutes les barrières utilisées comme parties de PhL, qu'elles soient installées comme un élément séparé de matériel de réseau ou intégrées dans une carte d'alimentation. L'impédance de la barrière doit être mesurée entre les bornes des deux côtés de la barrière. L'impédance de la barrière doit être mesurée avec l'alimentation réseau réglée à la tension de service assignée (et non la tension de sécurité) de la barrière.

NOTE Il est acceptable que les fonctions de l'alimentation, de la barrière de sécurité et du terminateur soient combinées de diverses manières, à condition que l'impédance de la combinaison obtenue soit équivalente à l'impédance parallèle de dispositifs indépendants qui satisfont aux exigences du présent article et si les règles de configuration du réseau de 12.3.3 sont respectées.

A la tension de service assignée de la barrière et à toute fréquence dans une gamme de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz à 39 kHz), la capacité mesurée à la borne positive du réseau "+" (côté dangereux) et la masse ne doit pas s'écarter de plus de 250 pF par rapport à la capacité mesurée entre la borne négative du réseau "-" (côté dangereux) et la masse.

12.9.3 Mise en place de barrières et de terminateurs

Une barrière doit être séparée du terminateur le plus proche d'au maximum 100 m de câble.

12.10 Sectionneurs galvaniques

Les caractéristiques de communication des sectionneurs galvaniques utilisés sur le bus de terrain doivent satisfaire aux spécifications données en 12.4, 12.5 et 12.9. Les sectionneurs galvaniques alimentant les dispositifs de bus de terrain doivent également satisfaire aux spécifications d'alimentation de 12.7.

13 Type 1: Unité de liaison au support: mode courant, support câblé à paire torsadée

13.1 Généralités

La MAU en mode courant de 1,0 Mbit/s fournit simultanément l'accès à un réseau de communication et à un réseau de distribution d'énergie. Les dispositifs raccordés au réseau communiquent par l'intermédiaire du support et peuvent ou non être alimentés par ce support. L'alimentation est distribuée comme un courant alternatif constant. Les signaux de communication sont superposés à l'alimentation en c.a.

Le support réseau est constitué d'un câble à paire torsadée blindé.

Des formes d'onde trapézoïdales sont utilisées pour réduire les émissions électromagnétiques et la distorsion des signaux.

Dans les applications de sécurité intrinsèque, la puissance disponible peut limiter le nombre de dispositifs.

Les dispositifs sont connectés en série sur le bus tandis que dans les variantes en mode tension, les dispositifs sont connectés au bus en parallèle.

13.2 Débit binaire d'émission

Le débit binaire moyen, $BR \pm \Delta BR$, doit être de 1,0 Mbit/s $\pm 0,01 \%$, moyenné sur une trame ayant une longueur minimale de 16 octets. Le temps binaire instantané, $T_{bit} \pm \Delta T_{bit}$, doit être de 1,0 $\mu s \pm 0,025 \mu s$.

13.3 Spécifications du réseau

13.3.1 Composants

Une MAU fonctionne sur un réseau constitué des composants suivants:

- a) câble;
- b) terminateurs;
- c) coupleurs;
- d) dispositifs (comportant au moins un élément de communication).

Un réseau filaire en mode courant peut en outre inclure les composants suivants:

- e) des connecteurs;
- f) des alimentations;
- g) des dispositifs qui comprennent les alimentations;
- h) des barrières de sécurité intrinsèque.

Le support réseau est constitué d'un câble à paire torsadée blindé. Indépendamment de la topologie, tous les dispositifs connectés, sauf éventuellement le dispositif d'émission, présentent une faible impédance pour éviter une surcharge importante du réseau.

13.3.2 Topologies

Une MAU câblée doit fonctionner sur un réseau de topologie de bus linéaire constitué d'une ligne principale, terminée à chaque extrémité comme spécifié en 13.8.5 et à laquelle des éléments de communication sont connectés par l'intermédiaire de coupleurs et de lignes secondaires.

Le coupleur et l'élément de communication peuvent être intégrés en un dispositif (c'est-à-dire une ligne secondaire de longueur zéro).

Une topologie arborescente dont tous les éléments de communication sont placés aux extrémités de la ligne principale est considérée comme un cas particulier de bus aux fins du présent article.

Plusieurs éléments de communication peuvent être connectés à la ligne principale en un point donné, en utilisant un coupleur multivoies. Un coupleur actif peut être utilisé pour étendre une ligne secondaire sur une longueur qui nécessite une terminaison afin d'éviter les réflexions et distorsions. Des répéteurs actifs peuvent être utilisés pour étendre la longueur de la ligne principale au-delà d'un segment unique si cela est autorisé par les règles de configuration du réseau.

13.3.3 Règles de configuration du réseau

Une MAU qui revendique la conformité au présent article doit satisfaire aux exigences du présent article lorsqu'elle est utilisée sur un réseau qui satisfait aux présentes règles.

Règle 1: Un bus de terrain doit être capable de prendre en charge la communication d'un nombre de dispositifs compris entre deux et 32, fonctionnant tous au même débit binaire, qu'il s'agisse d'un bus alimenté ou non alimenté et dans une zone dangereuse utilisant des barrières distribuées.

NOTE 1 L'utilisation d'une barrière unique dans la zone de sécurité peut limiter le nombre de dispositifs dans une zone dangereuse.

NOTE 2 Cette règle n'exclut pas l'utilisation d'un nombre de dispositifs supérieur à celui spécifié dans un système installé. Le nombre de dispositifs a été calculé en supposant qu'un dispositif alimenté par le bus prélève 100 mW.

Règle 2: Un segment de bus de terrain à pleine charge (comportant le nombre maximal de dispositifs connectés) en mode courant doit avoir une longueur totale de câble, entre deux dispositifs quelconques, allant jusqu'à 750 m.

NOTE 3 Cette longueur maximale du câble de 750 m est l'exigence de conformité au présent article, mais n'exclut pas l'utilisation de longueurs supérieures dans un système installé.

Règle 3: Le nombre total de régénérations de forme d'onde par des répéteurs et des coupleurs actifs entre deux dispositifs quelconques dépend de la mise en œuvre du répéteur concerné.

NOTE 4 Ce nombre total était limité à quatre dans les éditions précédentes de la présente norme.

Règle 4: Le délai maximal de propagation entre deux dispositifs quelconques ne doit pas dépasser $40 T_{\text{bit}}$.

NOTE 5 Pour que le réseau fonctionne efficacement, il convient que cette partie du temps de retournement de tout dispositif du réseau, générée par une PhE entre la fin d'une trame reçue et le début d'une trame émise contenant une réponse immédiate associée, ne dépasse pas 5 temps binaires, dont il convient qu'au maximum 2 temps binaires soient dus à la MAU. Sachant qu'il n'est pas obligatoire d'exposer l'interface DLL – PhL ou l'interface MDS – MAU, cette partie du temps de retournement d'un dispositif de bus de terrain due à la PhL ou à la MAU ne peut pas être spécifiée ou soumise à des essais de conformité.

Règle 5: Le bus de terrain doit pouvoir continuer à fonctionner lorsqu'un dispositif y est connecté ou déconnecté. Les erreurs de données générées lors de la connexion ou de la déconnexion doivent être détectées.

Règle 6: La défaillance de tout élément de communication ou de ligne secondaire (y compris un court-circuit, ou un circuit ouvert mais à l'exception des bavardages) ne doit pas interférer avec les transactions entre d'autres éléments de communication pendant plus de 1 ms.

Règle 7: Le réseau ne doit pas être sensible à la polarité, avec ou sans énergie injectée sur la ligne.

Règle 8: La dégradation des caractéristiques électriques du signal, entre deux dispositifs quelconques, due à l'affaiblissement, à la distorsion d'affaiblissement et à la désadaptation doit être limitée aux valeurs indiquées ci-dessous.

- a) Affaiblissement du signal. L'affaiblissement du signal dû à chaque dispositif ne doit pas dépasser 0,2 dB. La configuration du bus (longueurs de la ligne principale et des lignes secondaires, nombre de dispositifs, barrières IS, sectionneurs galvaniques et éventuels dispositifs d'adaptation) doit être telle que l'affaiblissement entre deux dispositifs quelconques, à la fréquence correspondant au débit binaire, ne doit pas dépasser 16 dB.
- b) Distorsion d'affaiblissement: La configuration du bus (les longueurs de la ligne principale et des lignes secondaires ainsi que le nombre de dispositifs) doit être telle qu'entre deux dispositifs quelconques:

$$[\text{Affaiblissement}(1,25 f_r) - \text{Affaiblissement}(0,25 f_r)] \leq 6 \text{ dB}$$

$$\text{Affaiblissement}(1,25 f_r) \geq \text{Affaiblissement}(0,25 f_r)$$

où f_r est la fréquence correspondant au débit binaire. L'affaiblissement doit être monotonique pour toutes les fréquences de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz à 1,25 MHz).

- c) Distorsion de désadaptation: La désadaptation (due à des lignes secondaires ou à tout autre effet, y compris une ligne secondaire de longueur maximale en circuit ouvert) sur le bus doit être telle qu'en tout point sur la ligne principale, dans la bande de fréquences comprise entre $0,25 f_r$ et $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz à 1,25 MHz):

$$|Z - Z_{fr}| / |Z + Z_{fr}| \leq 0,2$$

où

Z_0 est l'impédance caractéristique du câble de ligne principale;

Z est la combinaison parallèle de Z_0 et de l'impédance de charge au niveau du coupleur.

NOTE 6 Cette règle permet de réduire les restrictions, en termes de longueurs de la ligne principale et des lignes secondaires ainsi qu'en termes de nombre de dispositifs, etc. en ne spécifiant que des limites d'émission imposées par des combinaisons de ces facteurs. Différentes combinaisons peuvent être utilisées en fonction des besoins de l'application.

Règle 9: Les règles suivantes doivent s'appliquer aux systèmes mis en œuvre avec des supports redondants:

- a) chaque canal (câble) doit satisfaire aux règles de configuration du réseau;
- b) il ne doit pas y avoir de segment non redondant entre deux segments redondants;
- c) les répéteurs doivent également être redondants;
- d) si le système est configuré (par la Gestion systèmes) pour émettre sur plusieurs canaux simultanément, la différence de délai de propagation entre deux dispositifs quelconques sur deux canaux quelconques ne doit pas dépasser cinq temps binaires;
- e) les numéros de canaux doivent être maintenus sur l'ensemble des bus de terrain, c'est-à-dire que les canaux 1, 2, 3... en provenance de la gestion systèmes doivent toujours être connectés aux canaux physiques 1, 2, 3...

13.3.4 Règles de distribution de l'alimentation pour la configuration du réseau

Voir 13.3.4.

13.4 Spécification du circuit d'émission de la MAU

Les exigences de ce paragraphe sont résumées dans le Tableau 66 et dans le Tableau 67.

Tableau 66 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du niveau d'émission de la MAU

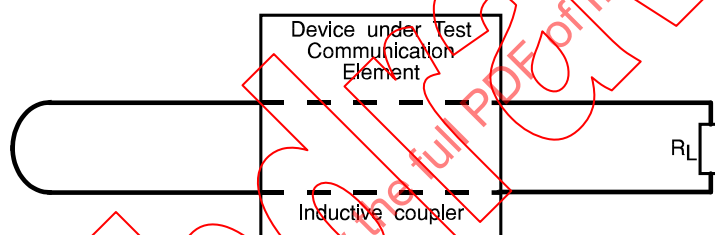
Caractéristiques du niveau d'émission, valeurs en référence à la ligne principale (mais mesurées en utilisant la charge d'essai présentée dans la Figure 66)	Limites (alimentation par le bus et/ou IS)
Niveau de sortie (crête à crête, voir la Figure 55) Avec charge d'essai ($>2 \times$ de Z_0 nominale du câble de ligne principale)	$\geq 2,5 \text{ V}$ $320 \Omega \pm 1 \%$
Différence d'amplitude positive et négative maximale (biais de la signalisation) telle qu'illustrée dans la Figure 56	$\pm 0,2 \text{ V}$
Niveau de sortie; circuit ouvert (crête à crête)	$\leq 4,0 \text{ V}$
Distorsion maximale du signal de sortie; c'est-à-dire surtension, suroscillation et statisme (voir la Figure 55)	$\pm 10 \%$
Sortie d'émetteur passif, c'est-à-dire le bruit de l'émetteur (mesuré sur la bande de fréquences de 1 kHz à 4 MHz)	$\leq 1 \text{ mV (eff.)}$

Tableau 67 – Récapitulatif de la spécification de synchronisation d'émission de la MAU

Caractéristiques de synchronisation de l'émission, valeurs en référence à la ligne principale (mais mesurées en utilisant la charge d'essai présentée dans la Figure 68)	Limites (alimentation par le bus et/ou IS)
Débit binaire d'émission	1 Mbit/s $\pm$ 0,01 %
Temps binaire instantané	1 μ s $\pm$ 0,025 μ s
Temps de croissance et de décroissance (10 % à 90 % du signal crête à crête, voir la Figure 55)	$\leq$ 20 % T_{bit}
Taux de dérive (en tout point de 10 % à 90 % du signal crête à crête)	$\leq$ 40,0 V/ μ s
Instabilité maximale de bit élémentaire émis (écart du point de passage par zéro, voir la Figure 56)	$\pm$ 2,5 % T_{bit}
Le délai d'activation/désactivation d'émission (c'est-à-dire la durée pendant laquelle la forme d'onde de sortie peut ne pas satisfaire aux exigences d'émission)	$\leq$ 2,0 T_{bit}

13.4.1 Configuration d'essai

La Figure 68 illustre la configuration qui doit être utilisée pour les essais.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Device Under test communication element	Dispositif à l'essai Élément de communication
Inductive coupler	Coupleur inductif

Figure 68 – Configuration d'essai d'une MAU en mode courant

La configuration d'essai dans cet article doit être comme présentée en Figure 68 sauf spécification contraire dans une exigence particulière.

NOTE Résistance de la charge d'essai $R = 320 \, \Omega$ (deux fois la valeur Z_0 maximale du câble) la sortie étant chargée par une boucle série de la ligne principale.

13.4.2 Exigences de niveau de sortie

NOTE La Figure 55 présente un exemple de cycle de forme d'onde de bus de terrain, illustrant certains éléments-clés de la spécification du circuit d'émission. Seules les tensions des signaux sont indiquées; ce schéma ne tient aucunement compte des tensions d'alimentation.

Un circuit d'émission de MAU en mode courant doit être conforme aux exigences de niveau de sortie suivantes, toutes les amplitudes étant mesurées au point médian estimé entre toute crête ou creux en haut et en bas de la forme d'onde ("point médian" dans la Figure 55):

- la tension de sortie sur la charge d'essai après élévation/abaissement par le transformateur ne doit pas être inférieure à 2,5 V crête à crête avec une résistance de charge de $320 \, \Omega \pm 1 \, \%$ ("min o/p" dans la Figure 55);
- la tension de sortie au niveau de la ligne principale ou aux bornes d'émission, avec toute charge comprenant un circuit ouvert, ne doit pas dépasser 4,0 V crête à crête ("max. o/c ligne principale" dans la Figure 55). Aux fins de l'essai, un circuit ouvert doit être défini

comme étant une charge ayant une résistance de 100 k Ω en parallèle avec une capacité de 15 pF;

- c) au cours d'une émission, un dispositif donné ne doit pas subir de défaillance permanente lorsqu'une résistance de charge de $\leq 1 \Omega$ est appliquée pendant 1 s;
- d) la différence entre amplitude positive et amplitude négative, mesurée comme présenté dans la Figure 55, ne doit pas dépasser $\pm 0,2$ V crête;
- e) le bruit en sortie d'une MAU en mode courant qui est en réception ou non alimentée ne doit pas dépasser 1 mV eff., mesuré de manière différentielle sur la bande de fréquences de 1 kHz à 4 MHz, en référence à la ligne principale;
- f) la tension différentielle sur la charge d'essai doit donner une modification monotonique de la tension, entre 10 % et 90 % de la valeur crête à crête. Par la suite, la tension du signal ne doit pas varier de plus de ± 10 % de la valeur crête à crête jusqu'à ce que la transition suivante ait lieu. Cette variation admissible doit inclure toutes les formes de distorsion de signal de sortie, c'est-à-dire la surtension, la suroscillation et le statisme.

13.4.3 Exigences de synchronisation des sorties

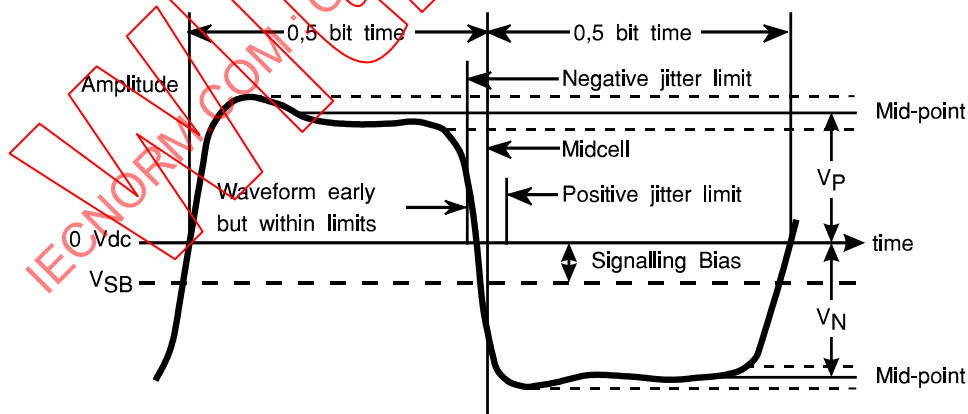
Le circuit d'émission d'une MAU en mode courant doit être conforme aux exigences suivantes de synchronisation des sorties:

- a) les temps de croissance et de décroissance, mesurés de 10 % à 90 % de l'amplitude du signal crête à crête, ne doivent pas dépasser $0,2 T_{\text{bit}}$ (voir la Figure 55);
- b) le taux de dérive, mesuré en tout point dans une plage de 10 % à 90 % de l'amplitude du signal crête à crête, ne doit pas dépasser 40 V/ μ s (voir la Figure 55).

NOTE 1 Les exigences a) et b) génèrent une forme d'onde trapézoïdale à la sortie du circuit d'émission. L'exigence b) limite le niveau des émissions de perturbation qui peuvent être couplées aux circuits adjacents, etc. L'exigence b) est calculée à partir de la formule suivante:

Taux de dérive max = $3 \times$ taux de dérive min = $3 \times 0,8 V_o / 0,2 T = 12 \times V_o / T_{\text{bit}}$,
où V_o est une estimation de la tension de sortie maximale crête à crête avec une charge normalisée (3,3 V).

- c) l'instabilité de bit élémentaire émis ne doit pas dépasser $\pm 0,025$ du temps binaire nominal par rapport au point de passage par zéro idéal, mesuré en fonction du point de passage par zéro précédent (voir la Figure 69);



Légende

Anglais	Français
0,5 bit time	0,5 temps binaire
Amplitude	Amplitude
Negative Jitter Limit	Limite d'instabilité négative
Mid-point	Point médian
Waveform early but within limits	Forme d'onde précoce mais dans les limites
Midcell	à mi-cellule (bit élémentaire)

Anglais	Français
Positive Jitter Limit	Limite d'instabilité positive
Signalling Bias	Biais de la signalisation
Time	Temps

**Figure 69 – Instabilité de bit élémentaire émis et reçu
(écart du point de passage par zéro)**

- d) le circuit d'émission doit s'activer, ce qui signifie que le signal doit monter d'un niveau inférieur au bruit de sortie maximal du circuit d'émission, comme spécifié en 13.4.2e), jusqu'au niveau de pleine puissance, en moins de $2,0 T_{bit}$. La forme d'onde correspondant au troisième temps binaire et au-delà, doit être telle que spécifiée dans d'autres paragraphes de 13.4;
- e) le circuit d'émission doit se désactiver, ce qui signifie que le signal doit tomber, en moins de $2,0 T_{bit}$, du niveau de pleine puissance à un niveau inférieur au bruit de sortie maximal du circuit d'émission, comme spécifié en 13.4.2e). La durée nécessaire pour que le circuit d'émission revienne à son impédance d'état "non actif" ne doit pas dépasser $4,0 T_{bit}$. Aux fins des essais, cette exigence doit être satisfaite dans la configuration d'essai du circuit d'émission de 13.4.1, avec la capacité équivalente d'une longueur de câble maximale entre les bornes du dispositif en essai.

NOTE 2 Cette exigence permet de s'assurer que la capacité de la ligne a été pleinement déchargée lors de la transition du circuit d'émission de l'état actif à l'état passif.

13.5 Spécification du circuit de réception de la MAU

13.5.1 Généralités

Pour faciliter le renvoi aux textes correspondants, les exigences définies en 13.4 sont résumées dans le Tableau 68.

Tableau 68 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du circuit de réception

Caractéristiques du circuit de réception (valeurs en référence à la ligne principale)	Limites (alimentation par le bus et/ou IS)
Impédance d'entrée, mesurée sur la gamme de fréquences $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$	$\leq 2,5 \Omega$
Sensibilité; signal min. crête à crête dont l'acceptation est exigée (voir la Figure 58)	1,3 mA
Suppression du bruit; bruit max. crête à crête dont le rejet est exigé (voir la Figure 58)	0,8 mA
Instabilité maximale de bit élémentaire reçu (écart du point de passage par zéro, voir la Figure 69)	$\pm 0,10 T_{bit}$

13.5.2 Impédance d'entrée

L'impédance d'entrée différentielle d'un circuit de réception de MAU en mode courant ne doit pas dépasser $2,5 \Omega$ en série avec la phase sur la gamme de fréquences de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz à 1,25 MHz). Cette exigence doit être satisfaite à l'état hors tension et sous tension (sans émission) ainsi que pendant la transition entre ces états. L'impédance doit être mesurée au niveau du coupleur inductif au moyen d'une forme d'onde de courant sinusoïdale d'une amplitude de signal supérieure au seuil de sensibilité du récepteur et inférieure à 20 mA crête à crête.

NOTE L'exigence d'une impédance d'entrée $\leq 2,5 \Omega$ pendant la mise sous tension et hors tension doit être satisfaite par désactivation automatique de l'émetteur au cours de ces périodes.

13.5.3 Sensibilité du récepteur et suppression du bruit

Un circuit de réception de MAU doit être capable de recevoir un signal d'entrée de 1,3 mA crête à crête à 20,0 mA crête à crête, y compris la surtension et l'oscillation (voir "niveau du signal" ainsi que "amplitude positive" et "amplitude négative" dans la Figure 55).

Le circuit de réception de MAU ne doit pas répondre à un signal d'entrée ayant une amplitude crête à crête de courant de ligne ne dépassant pas 0,8 mA (voir "suppression du bruit" dans la Figure 58).

13.5.4 Instabilité de bit élémentaire reçu

Le circuit de réception doit accepter un signal codé Manchester émis conformément à 13.2 et à 13.4. En outre, le récepteur doit fonctionner correctement à des signaux ayant des variations temporelles, entre deux points adjacents quelconques de transition des signaux (passage par zéro) d'au maximum $\pm 0,10 T_{\text{bit}}$. Voir Figure 69.

NOTE 1 Ceci n'exclut pas l'utilisation de récepteurs dont les performances sont supérieures à la présente spécification.

NOTE 2 En fonction de la configuration du symbole, la durée nominale entre passages par zéro peut être d'un demi-temps binaire ou d'un temps binaire.

NOTE 3 Il n'y a aucune exigence quant au rejet d'un signal donné ayant une valeur de variation temporelle spécifiée. Le récepteur rend compte d'une erreur lorsque l'instabilité de bit élémentaire reçu excède l'aptitude du récepteur à décoder la signalisation de manière fiable.

13.5.5 Susceptibilité au brouillage et taux d'erreurs

NOTE 1 Lorsque le bus de terrain fonctionne dans divers environnements de bruit normalisés, il convient que la probabilité qu'une unité de données utilisateur de couche Application contienne une erreur non détectée, du fait du fonctionnement des entités physiques et DLL d'acheminement, soit inférieure à 1 sur 10^{12} (1 erreur en 20 années à 1 600 messages/s). Un élément de communication est considéré conforme à cette exigence théorique lorsqu'il satisfait aux exigences suivantes de susceptibilité au brouillage. Ces exigences sont spécifiées sur la base d'un taux d'erreur de trame détecté obtenu en utilisant un rapport d'erreurs détectées/ non détectées de 10^6 . Il convient que ceci soit facilement réalisable au moyen d'une séquence de contrôle de trame de 16 bits au niveau de la DLL.

Un élément de communication qui inclut une MAU en mode courant, utilisant des trames contenant 64 bits de données utilisateur aléatoires, à un débit de trame maximal et avec des signaux d'une amplitude de 4,0 mA crête à crête, ne doit pas produire plus de trois erreurs de trame détectées sur 3×10^6 trames pendant son fonctionnement en présence d'une tension en mode commun ou de bruit gaussien comme décrit ci-après:

- a) un signal sinusoïdal en mode commun à toute fréquence de 63 Hz à 2 MHz, d'une amplitude de 4 V eff. et de 47 Hz à 63 Hz avec une amplitude de 250 V eff.;
- b) un signal c.c. en mode commun de ± 10 V;
- c) un bruit blanc gaussien différentiel additionnel dans la bande de fréquences de 1 kHz à 4 MHz, avec une densité de bruit de $0,09 \mu\text{A}/\sqrt{\text{Hz}}$ eff. en utilisant le circuit d'essai de la Figure 70.

NOTE 2 Les valeurs spécifiées pour la tension en mode commun et le bruit gaussien correspondent à des essais de conformité de circuit de réception avec des charges symétriques et ne sont pas représentatives d'une quelconque pratique d'installation de système.

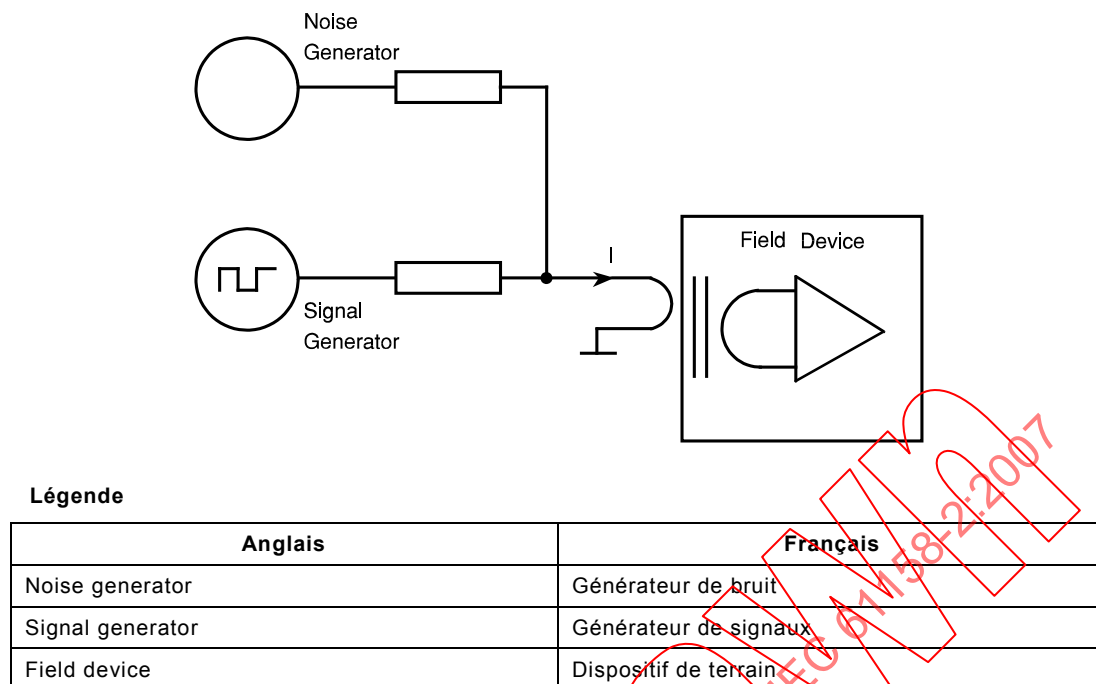


Figure 70 – Circuit d'essai du bruit d'une MAU en mode courant

Un élément de communication qui inclut une MAU en mode courant, utilisant des trames contenant 64 bits de données utilisateur aléatoires, à une moyenne de 1 600 messages/s, avec des signaux d'une amplitude de 4,0 mA crête à crête, ne doit pas produire plus de six erreurs de trame détectées sur 100 000 trames, lorsqu'il est utilisé dans des environnements de perturbations électromagnétiques ou électriques comme décrit ci-après:

- 1) champ électromagnétique de 10 V/m, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-3 au niveau de sévérité 3;
- 2) transitoires électriques rapides, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-4 au niveau de sévérité 3.

Le taux d'erreur spécifié ci-dessus doit également être réalisé après, mais non pendant le fonctionnement dans les environnements de bruit suivants:

- i) décharge électrostatique de 8 kV sur une structure métallique exposée, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-2, au niveau de sévérité 3. Si le dispositif subit une perte temporaire de fonctions ou de performances suite à cet essai, il doit récupérer de cette perte éventuelle sans intervention de l'opérateur, dans les 3 s qui suivent la fin de l'essai;
- ii) essais de perturbation à haute fréquence, comme spécifié dans la CEI 60255-22-1:1988, classe III de tension d'essai (2,5 kV et 1 kV de valeurs crêtes de la première demi-alternance, respectivement en mode longitudinal et transversal). Si le dispositif subit une perte temporaire de fonctions ou de performances du fait de cet essai, il doit récupérer de cette perte éventuelle sans intervention de l'opérateur, dans les 3 s qui suivent la fin de l'essai.

13.6 Inhibition du bavardage

La MAU doit comporter une capacité d'interruption automatique pour empêcher les signaux émis d'atteindre le support. Le matériel dans la MAU (sans message extérieur autre que la détection des signaux de sortie ou de fuite par la fonction d'émission) doit fournir une fenêtre d'une durée comprise entre 5 ms et 15 ms au cours de laquelle une trame normale peut être émise. Si la longueur de trame dépasse cette durée, la fonction d'inhibition du bavardage doit empêcher d'autres signaux en sortie d'atteindre le support et doit désactiver l'écho sur la ligne RxS (voir 10.2.2.2) pour indiquer à la MDS la détection de bavardage.

La MAU doit réinitialiser la fonction d'interruption automatique après une période de 500 ms $\pm$ 50 %.

NOTE Ceci inhibe le trafic sur le bus pendant au maximum 6 % (= 15/250) du temps disponible.

13.7 Distribution de l'alimentation

13.7.1 Généralités

Un dispositif peut, en option, recevoir son alimentation par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de signaux ou être alimenté de manière séparée.

Un dispositif peut être certifié comme étant de sécurité intrinsèque quelle que soit la méthode d'alimentation.

La présente norme n'inclut pas d'exigences pour la certification IS mais cherche à exclure des conditions ou situations qui pourraient empêcher la certification IS.

Un dispositif à alimentation séparée peut être connecté à un bus de terrain alimenté.

Pour faciliter le renvoi aux textes correspondants, les exigences définies en 13.7 sont résumées dans le Tableau 69.

Tableau 69 – Exigences d'alimentation réseau

Exigences d'alimentation réseau	Limites
Courant de sortie	50 mA à 200 mA eff.
Fréquence de sortie	16 kHz $\pm$ 0,5 %
Tension de sortie maximale, IS	En fonction des caractéristiques assignées de la barrière
Taux d'harmoniques du courant d'alimentation	$\leq 0,2$ %
Impédance de sortie, mesurée sur la gamme de fréquences 0,25 f_r à 1,25 f_r	$\leq 5 \Omega$

13.7.2 Alimentation par l'intermédiaire de conducteurs de signaux

Un dispositif doit fonctionner sur une plage de courant constante de 50 mA à 200 mA.

NOTE La tension de sortie de l'alimentation dépend des pertes dues au câble et de la puissance consommée par chaque dispositif. Un dispositif de bus de terrain peut être conçu pour consommer une ou plusieurs charges normalisées. Une charge normalisée est égale à 100 mW.

La tension de sortie en circuit ouvert de l'alimentation doit être inférieure à la limite spécifiée par l'organisme de réglementation local pour la mise en œuvre particulière. L'impédance de sortie de l'alimentation doit être $\leq 5 \Omega$ sur la gamme de fréquences de 0,25 f_r à 1,25 f_r (250 kHz à 1,25 MHz).

La fuite de tension dans le coupleur de signaux doit être inférieure à 0,1 V à une fréquence de 16 kHz.

La fuite de tension dans les terminaisons doit être inférieure à 0,3 V à une fréquence de 16 kHz.

La forme d'onde d'alimentation doit être une sinusoïde pure d'une fréquence de 16 kHz $\pm$ 0,5 % et ayant un taux d'harmoniques maximal de 0,2 %.

Le dispositif ne doit pas introduire, dans la ligne principale, de composantes harmoniques de la fréquence industrielle supérieure à 1,0 mV crête à crête entre phases.

13.7.3 Alimentation séparée des signaux

NOTE La distribution de l'alimentation pour des dispositifs de bus de terrain non alimentés par le bus s'effectue au moyen de conducteurs séparés fournissant l'énergie à des alimentations locales, des régulateurs ou des barrières de sécurité. La certification IS peut exiger que ces conducteurs soient dans un câble séparé de celui des conducteurs de signaux et peut également imposer des exigences de niveau de courant plus strictes que celles qui sont spécifiées.

Un dispositif de bus de terrain alimenté séparément, revendiquant la conformité au présent article, ne doit pas provoquer de chute de tension supérieure à 1 mV eff, à la fréquence industrielle sur les conducteurs de signaux, et ne doit pas fournir un courant de plus de 100 μ A eff. aux conducteurs de signaux, lorsqu'il n'y a pas d'émission.

13.7.4 Isolation électrique

Tous les dispositifs de bus de terrain, alimentés séparément ou par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de signaux, doivent assurer une isolation basse fréquence entre la masse et le câble de ligne principale du bus de terrain.

NOTE 1 Ceci peut être réalisé en utilisant un coupleur inductif ayant une isolation suffisante, en isolant l'ensemble du dispositif de la masse ou au moyen d'un transformateur, d'un optocoupleur ou de tout autre organe d'isolation entre le câble de ligne principale et le dispositif.

Une alimentation et un élément de communication combinés ne doivent pas nécessiter d'isolation électrique.

L'impédance d'isolation mesurée entre le blindage du câble de bus de terrain et la masse du dispositif de bus de terrain doit être supérieure à 250 k Ω à toutes les fréquences inférieures à 63 Hz.

L'isolation doit être contournée par une capacité à des fréquences élevées, de façon à ce que l'impédance mesurée entre le blindage du câble du bus de terrain et la masse du dispositif de bus de terrain soit inférieure à 15 Ω entre 3 MHz et 30 MHz.

NOTE 2 La capacité entre la masse et le blindage du câble de ligne principale nécessaire pour satisfaire à ces exigences peut prendre toute valeur comprise entre 3,5 nF et 10,6 nF.

La capacité dissymétrique maximale par rapport à la masse de toute borne d'entrée d'un dispositif ne doit pas dépasser 250 pF.

Les exigences de claquage de l'isolation du circuit de signaux et du circuit de distribution de l'alimentation par rapport à la masse et par rapport à l'autre circuit doivent être conformes à la CEI 61131-2.

NOTE 3 La tension d'essai équivalente est à appliquer entre circuits isolés indépendants ou entre circuits isolés et parties conductrices accessibles. Pour des circuits de tension nominale ≤ 50 V c.c. ou efficace, les tensions d'essai équivalentes au niveau de la mer correspondent à des essais de choc de 444 V eff., 635 V c.c. et 635 V crête. Pour des circuits de tension nominale comprise entre 150 V et 300 V eff., les tensions d'essai équivalentes au niveau de la mer correspondent à des essais de choc de 2 260 V eff., 3 175 V c.c. et 3 175 V crête.

13.8 Spécifications du support

13.8.1 Connecteur

Si des connecteurs de câbles sont utilisés, ils doivent être conformes à la norme de bus de terrain correspondante de la CEI (voir l'Annexe A). Les techniques de terminaison sur le terrain, par exemple les bornes à vis ou à lames ainsi que les terminaisons permanentes, peuvent également être utilisées.

13.8.2 Câble d'essai normalisé

Le câble utilisé pour les essais de dispositifs de bus de terrain avec une MAU en mode courant, destinés à vérifier la conformité aux exigences du présent article, doit être un câble unique à paire torsadée, à blindage global, conforme aux exigences minimales suivantes, à une température de 25 °C:

- a) Z_0 à une fréquence de $0,25 f_r$ (250 kHz) = $150 \Omega \pm 10 \%$;
- b) Z_0 à une fréquence de $1,25 f_r$ (1,25 MHz) = $150 \Omega \pm 10 \%$;
- c) affaiblissement maximal à une fréquence de $0,25 f_r$ (250 kHz) = 6,5 dB/km;
- d) affaiblissement maximal à une fréquence de $1,25 f_r$ (1,25 MHz) = 13 dB/km;
- e) déséquilibre capacitif maximal par rapport au blindage = 1,5 nF/km
- f) résistance maximale en courant continu (par conducteur) = 57,1 Ω /km;
- g) aire de la section des conducteurs (dimension des fils) = 0,33 mm² valeur nominale;
- h) résistivité minimale entre chaque conducteur et le blindage = 16 G Ω /km;
- i) la couverture minimale du blindage doit être de 95 %.

NOTE 1 La spécification ci-dessus concerne les essais de conformité d'une MAU. D'autres types de câbles peuvent être utilisés dans les installations réelles. (Voir l'Annexe B). Les câbles à spécifications améliorées peuvent permettre l'utilisation de longueurs de ligne principale plus importantes et/ou une meilleure immunité aux perturbations. En revanche, les câbles ayant des spécifications inférieures peuvent être utilisés, sous réserve d'une limitation des longueurs utilisées, tant pour les lignes principales que secondaires, auxquels s'ajoute une éventuelle non-conformité aux exigences de susceptibilité aux perturbations radioélectriques (RFI) et électromagnétiques (EMI).

NOTE 2 Pour des applications de sécurité intrinsèque, il convient que le rapport inductance/résistance (L/R) soit inférieur à la limite spécifiée par l'organisme de réglementation local pour la mise en œuvre particulière.

13.8.3 Coupleur

Un coupleur inductif connecte un dispositif ou une ligne secondaire à la ligne principale. Il assure l'échange des signaux de données avec le dispositif et peut transférer l'alimentation au dispositif. Le câble de ligne principale fonctionne comme une spire primaire unique du transformateur du coupleur inductif. Les options suivantes sont admises:

- a) le couplage peut être réalisé sans violation de l'isolation du câble;
- b) le coupleur inductif peut être utilisé comme connecteur;
- c) un élément de barrière IS peut être inclus comme partie intégrante du coupleur inductif.

Le coupleur doit faire partie intégrante de la MAU si le dispositif est connecté à la ligne principale. L'impédance d'entrée du coupleur doit avoir une valeur maximale de 2,5 Ω en série avec la phase.

13.8.4 Epissures

NOTE Une épissure est toute partie du réseau dans laquelle l'impédance caractéristique du câble de réseau n'est pas maintenue. Ceci peut être dû à la séparation des conducteurs du câble, au retrait de blindage du câble, au changement de calibre ou de type de fil, à la connexion de lignes secondaires, etc. Une définition pratique d'une épissure est par conséquent toute partie du réseau qui n'est pas une longueur continue du support spécifié.

La continuité de tous les conducteurs du câble doit être maintenue dans une épissure.

13.8.5 Terminateur

Un terminateur doit être placé aux deux extrémités du câble de ligne principale et connecté d'un conducteur de signal à l'autre. Il ne doit y avoir aucune connexion entre terminateur et blindage du câble.

Pour les besoins de l'essai, en utilisant le câble spécifié en 13.8.2, le terminateur doit avoir une valeur d'impédance de $120 \Omega \pm 2 \%$ sur la gamme de fréquences de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz à 1,25 MHz).

NOTE 1 La valeur de la résistance du terminateur a été choisie pour être inférieure à la valeur de l'impédance caractéristique du câble d'essai car les dispositifs en mode courant ajoutent des impédances série au terminateur. La valeur a été choisie pour réduire les réflexions de la ligne d'émission pour un bus de terrain comportant 2 à 32 dispositifs.

NOTE 2 Dans des applications pratiques, lorsque l'alimentation est fournie via les conducteurs de signaux, le terminateur serait contourné aux fréquences industrielles afin de réduire les pertes de puissance.

Le courant continu de fuite à travers le terminateur ne doit pas dépasser 100 μ A. Le terminateur doit être non polarisé.

Tous les terminateurs utilisés pour les applications IS doivent être conformes aux exigences d'isolation (lignes de fuite et distances d'isolement) en fonction de l'homologation IS requise. L'homologation IS ne doit pas être exigée pour des terminateurs destinés à des applications non IS.

13.8.6 Règles de blindage

Pour être pleinement conforme aux exigences d'immunité au bruit de 13.5, il est nécessaire d'assurer l'intégrité du blindage sur toute la longueur du câblage, dans les connecteurs et dans les coupleurs, de la manière suivante:

- a) la couverture du blindage doit être supérieure à 95 % de la longueur complète du câble;
- b) le blindage doit couvrir complètement les circuits électriques des connecteurs, des coupleurs et des épissures.

NOTE Toute dérogation à ces règles de blindage peut dégrader l'immunité au bruit.

13.8.7 Règles de mise à la masse

NOTE 1 Mise à la masse signifie une connexion permanente à la terre par l'intermédiaire d'une impédance suffisamment basse et ayant un courant admissible suffisant pour prévenir un amorçage en tension qui pourrait entraîner des dangers excessifs pour le matériel connecté ou les personnes. Les lignes de tension zéro (commun) peuvent être reliées à la masse lorsqu'elles sont galvaniquement isolées de la ligne principale du bus de terrain.

Les dispositifs de bus de terrain doivent fonctionner conformément aux exigences du présent article, le point médian d'un terminateur ou d'un coupleur inductif étant directement connecté à la masse.

Les dispositifs de bus de terrain ne doivent pas raccorder l'un des conducteurs de la paire torsadée à la masse quel que soit le point du réseau. Les signaux doivent être appliqués et préservés de manière différentielle sur l'ensemble du réseau.

NOTE 2 Il est habituel dans la pratique de mettre effectivement à la masse le blindage du câble de ligne principale de bus de terrain (le cas échéant) en un point sur la longueur du câble. De ce fait, il convient que les dispositifs de bus de terrain permettent une isolation c.c. du blindage du câble par rapport à la masse. Pour des systèmes alimentés par le bus, il convient que la mise à la masse du blindage et des conducteurs de signaux équilibrés soit proche de l'unité d'alimentation. Pour les systèmes IS, il convient que la mise à la masse soit effectuée au niveau de la connexion à la terre de la barrière de sécurité. Il est admis, sous réserve de conformité aux exigences IS, d'avoir un couplage capacitif entre le blindage ou les conducteurs de signaux équilibrés et la mise à la terre locale du dispositif pour une meilleure immunité aux interférences électromagnétiques.

13.8.8 Code de couleur des câbles

Voir 11.8.8.

14 Type 1: Unité de liaison au support: mode courant (1 A), support câblé à paire torsadée

14.1 Généralités

Une MAU en mode courant de 1,0 Mbit/s fournit simultanément l'accès à un réseau de communication et à un réseau de distribution d'énergie ayant une capacité d'alimentation étendue. Les dispositifs raccordés au réseau communiquent par l'intermédiaire du support et peuvent ou non être alimentés par ce support. L'alimentation est distribuée comme un courant alternatif constant d'une fréquence bien inférieure à la fréquence des signaux. Les signaux de communication sont superposés à l'alimentation en c.a.

Le support réseau est constitué d'un câble à paire torsadée blindé.

Dans des applications de zone dangereuse, un bus non IS peut disposer de barrières IS intégrées aux dispositifs connectés, ce qui permet d'augmenter le nombre de dispositifs autorisés dans la zone dangereuse sur une configuration de barrière unique.

Les dispositifs sont connectés en série sur le bus tandis que dans les variantes en mode tension, les dispositifs sont connectés au bus en parallèle.

14.2 Débit binaire d'émission

Voir 13.2.

14.3 Spécifications du réseau

14.3.1 Composants

Une MAU fonctionne sur un réseau constitué des composants suivants:

- a) câble;
- b) terminateurs;
- c) coupleurs;
- d) montages pour coupleurs;
- e) dispositifs (comportant au moins un élément de communication).

Un réseau filaire en mode courant peut en outre inclure les composants suivants:

- f) des connecteurs;
- f) des alimentations;
- h) des dispositifs comprenant des alimentations;
- h) des barrières de sécurité intrinsèque (IS).

Le support réseau est constitué d'un câble à paire torsadée blindé. Indépendamment de la topologie, tous les dispositifs connectés, sauf éventuellement le dispositif d'émission, présentent une faible impédance pour éviter une surcharge importante du réseau.

Un montage de coupleur est un élément du réseau qui permet de connecter un coupleur au support réseau. Il peut être considéré comme un enroulement primaire de transformateur (coupleur inductif) et, en tant que tel, il a des caractéristiques électriques qui affectent le réseau.

14.3.2 Topologies

Une MAU câblée doit fonctionner sur un réseau de topologie de bus linéaire constitué d'une ligne principale, terminée à chaque extrémité comme spécifié en 14.8.5 et à laquelle des éléments de communication sont connectés par l'intermédiaire de coupleurs.

Le coupleur et l'élément de communication peuvent être intégrés en un dispositif (par exemple une ligne secondaire de longueur zéro).

Plusieurs éléments de communication peuvent être connectés à la ligne principale en un point donné, en utilisant un coupleur multivoies. Un coupleur actif peut être utilisé pour étendre une ligne secondaire sur une longueur qui nécessite une terminaison afin d'éviter les réflexions et distorsions. Des répéteurs actifs peuvent être utilisés pour étendre la longueur de la ligne principale au-delà d'un segment unique si cela est autorisé par les règles de configuration du réseau.

14.3.3 Règles de configuration du réseau

Une MAU qui revendique la conformité au présent article doit satisfaire aux exigences du présent article lorsqu'elle est utilisée sur un réseau qui satisfait aux présentes règles.

Règle 1: Un bus de terrain doit être capable de prendre en charge la communication d'un nombre de dispositifs compris entre deux et trente, fonctionnant tous au même débit binaire, qu'il s'agisse d'un bus alimenté ou non alimenté et dans une zone dangereuse utilisant des barrières distribuées.

NOTE 1 Cette règle n'exclut pas l'utilisation d'un nombre de dispositifs supérieur à celui spécifié dans un système installé. Le nombre de dispositifs a été calculé en supposant qu'un dispositif alimenté par le bus prélève 1,0 W.

Règle 2: Un segment de bus de terrain à pleine charge (comportant le nombre maximal de dispositifs connectés) en mode courant doit avoir une longueur totale de câble, entre deux dispositifs quelconques, allant jusqu'à 400 m.

NOTE 2 Cette longueur maximale du câble de 400 m représente l'exigence de conformité au présent article, mais n'exclut pas l'utilisation de longueurs supérieures dans un système installé.

Règle 3: Le nombre total de régénérations de forme d'onde par des répéteurs et des coupleurs actifs entre deux dispositifs quelconques dépend de la mise en œuvre du répéteur concerné.

NOTE 3 Ce nombre total était limité à cinq dans les éditions précédentes de la présente norme.

Règle 4: Le délai maximal de propagation entre deux dispositifs quelconques ne doit pas dépasser 40 Tbit.

NOTE 4 Pour que le réseau fonctionne efficacement, il convient que cette partie du temps de retournement de tout dispositif du réseau, générée par une PhE entre la fin d'une trame reçue et le début d'une trame émise contenant une réponse immédiate associée, ne dépasse pas cinq temps binaires, dont il convient qu'au maximum deux temps binaires soient dus à la MAU. Sachant qu'il n'est pas obligatoire d'exposer l'interface DLL – PhL ou l'interface MDS – MAU, cette partie du temps de retournement d'un dispositif de bus de terrain due à la PhL ou à la MAU ne peut pas être spécifiée ou soumise à des essais de conformité.

Règle 5: Le bus de terrain doit pouvoir continuer à fonctionner lorsqu'un dispositif y est connecté ou déconnecté. Les erreurs de données générées lors de la connexion ou de la déconnexion doivent être détectées.

Règle 6: La défaillance de tout élément de communication ou de ligne secondaire (y compris un court-circuit, ou un circuit ouvert mais à l'exception des bavardages) ne doit pas interférer avec les transactions entre d'autres éléments de communication pendant plus de 1 ms.

Règle 7: Le réseau ne doit pas être sensible à la polarité, avec ou sans énergie injectée sur la ligne.

Règle 8: La dégradation des caractéristiques électriques du signal, entre deux dispositifs quelconques, due à l'affaiblissement, à la distorsion d'affaiblissement et à la désadaptation doit être limitée aux valeurs indiquées ci-dessous.

- a) Affaiblissement du signal: l'affaiblissement du signal dû à chaque dispositif ne doit pas dépasser 0,35 dB. L'affaiblissement du signal dû à chaque montage de coupleur, qu'il soit plein ou vide, ne doit pas dépasser 0,6 dB. La configuration du bus (longueurs de la ligne principale et des lignes secondaires, nombre de dispositifs, barrières IS, sectionneurs galvaniques et éventuels dispositifs d'adaptation) doit être telle que l'affaiblissement entre deux dispositifs quelconques, à la fréquence correspondant au débit binaire, ne dépasse pas 10 dB.

NOTE 5 L'affaiblissement du signal dû à un dispositif est calculé avec un câble d'une impédance caractéristique de 80 Ω. Si un câble d'impédance plus faible est utilisé, l'affaiblissement par dispositif augmentera.

NOTE 6 Il sera exigé que les dispositifs soient connectés au bus au moyen d'un montage pour atteindre le nombre maximal de dispositifs connectés.

- b) Distorsion d'affaiblissement: La configuration du bus (les longueurs de la ligne principale et des lignes secondaires ainsi que le nombre de dispositifs) doit être telle qu'entre deux dispositifs quelconques:

$$[\text{Affaiblissement}(1,25 f_r) - \text{Affaiblissement}(0,25 f_r)] \leq 6 \text{ dB}$$

$$\text{Affaiblissement}(1,25 f_r) \geq \text{Affaiblissement}(0,25 f_r)$$

où f_r est la fréquence correspondant au débit binaire. L'affaiblissement doit être monotone pour toutes les fréquences de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz à 1,25 MHz).

- c) Distorsion de désadaptation: La désadaptation (due à des lignes secondaires ou à tout autre effet, y compris une ligne secondaire de longueur maximale en circuit ouvert) sur le bus doit être telle qu'en tout point sur la ligne principale, dans la bande de fréquences comprise entre $0,25 f_r$ et $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz à 1,25 MHz):

$$|Z - Z_{fr}| / |Z + Z_{fr}| \leq 0,2$$

où

Z_0 est l'impédance caractéristique du câble de ligne principale;

Z est la combinaison série de Z_0 et de l'impédance de charge au niveau du coupleur.

NOTE 7 Cette règle permet de réduire les restrictions, en termes de longueurs de la ligne principale et des lignes secondaires ainsi qu'en termes de nombre de dispositifs, etc. en ne spécifiant que des limites d'émission imposées par des combinaisons de ces facteurs. Différentes combinaisons peuvent être utilisées en fonction des besoins de l'application.

Règle 9: Les règles suivantes doivent s'appliquer aux systèmes mis en œuvre avec des supports redondants:

- chaque canal (câble) doit satisfaire aux règles de configuration du réseau;
- il ne doit pas y avoir de segment non redondant entre deux segments redondants;
- les répéteurs doivent également être redondants;
- si le système est configuré (par la Gestion systèmes) pour émettre sur plusieurs canaux simultanément, la différence de délai de propagation entre deux dispositifs quelconques sur deux canaux quelconques ne doit pas dépasser cinq temps binaires;

NOTE 8 Ce délai est égal à la valeur par défaut de la dérive du signal entre canaux (voir 9.2.9). La différence de temps de propagation peut être plus importante si le paramètre de dérive du signal entre canaux est établi de manière à correspondre à cette différence.

- les numéros de canaux doivent être maintenus sur l'ensemble des bus de terrain, c'est-à-dire que les canaux 1, 2, 3... en provenance de la gestion systèmes doivent toujours être connectés aux canaux physiques 1, 2, 3...

14.3.4 Règles de distribution de l'alimentation pour la configuration du réseau

Voir 11.3.4.

14.4 Spécification du circuit d'émission de la MAU

Les exigences de ce paragraphe sont résumées dans le Tableau 70 et dans le Tableau 71.

Tableau 70 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du niveau d'émission de la MAU en mode courant

Caractéristiques du niveau d'émission, valeurs en référence à la ligne principale (mais mesurées en utilisant la charge d'essai présentée dans la Figure 68)	Limites (alimentation par le bus et/ou IS)
Niveau de sortie (crête à crête, voir la Figure 55) Avec charge d'essai ($>2 \times$ de Z_0 nominale du câble de ligne principale)	$\geq 2,25 \text{ V}$ $160 \Omega \pm 1 \%$
Distorsion maximale du signal de sortie; c'est-à-dire surtension, suroscillation et statisme (voir la Figure 55)	$\pm 10 \%$
Sortie d'émetteur passif, c'est-à-dire le bruit de l'émetteur (mesuré sur la bande de fréquences de 1 kHz à 4 MHz)	$\leq 1 \text{ mV (eff.)}$

Tableau 71 – Récapitulatif de la spécification de la synchronisation de l'émission de la MAU en mode courant

Caractéristiques du niveau d'émission, valeurs en référence à la ligne principale (mais mesurées en utilisant la charge d'essai présentée dans la Figure 68)	Limites (alimentation par le bus et/ou IS)
Débit binaire d'émission	$1 \text{ Mbit/s} \pm 0,01 \%$
Temps binaire instantané	$1 \mu\text{s} \pm 0,025 \mu\text{s}$
Temps de croissance et de décroissance (10 % à 90 % du signal crête à crête, voir la Figure 55)	$\leq 20 \% T_{\text{bit}}$
Taux de dérive (en tout point de 10 % à 90 % du signal crête à crête)	$\leq 200,0 \text{ V}/\mu\text{s}$
Instabilité maximale de bit élémentaire émis (écart du point de passage par zéro, voir la Figure 71)	$\pm 2,5 \% T_{\text{bit}}$
Le délai d'activation/désactivation d'émission (c'est-à-dire la durée pendant laquelle la forme d'onde de sortie peut ne pas satisfaire aux exigences d'émission)	$\leq 2,0 T_{\text{bit}}$

14.4.1 Configuration

La Figure 68 illustre la configuration qui doit être utilisée pour les essais.

La configuration d'essai dans cet article doit être comme présentée en Figure 68 sauf spécification contraire dans une exigence particulière.

NOTE Résistance de la charge d'essai $R_L = 160 \Omega \pm 1 \%$, la sortie étant chargée par une boucle série de la ligne principale.

14.4.2 Exigences de niveau de sortie

NOTE La Figure 55 présente un exemple de cycle de forme d'onde de bus de terrain, illustrant certains éléments-clés de la spécification du circuit d'émission. Seules les tensions des signaux sont indiquées; ce schéma ne tient aucunement compte des tensions d'alimentation.

Un circuit d'émission de MAU en mode courant doit être conforme aux exigences de niveau de sortie suivantes, toutes les amplitudes étant mesurées au point médian estimé entre toute crête ou creux en haut et en bas de la forme d'onde ("point médian" dans la Figure 55):

- la tension de sortie sur la charge d'essai après élévation/abaissement par le transformateur ne doit pas être inférieure à 2,25 V crête à crête avec une résistance de charge de $160 \Omega \pm 1 \%$ ("min o/p" dans la Figure 55);
- au cours d'une émission, un dispositif donné ne doit pas subir de défaillance permanente lorsqu'une résistance de charge de $\leq 1 \Omega$ est appliquée pendant 1 s;

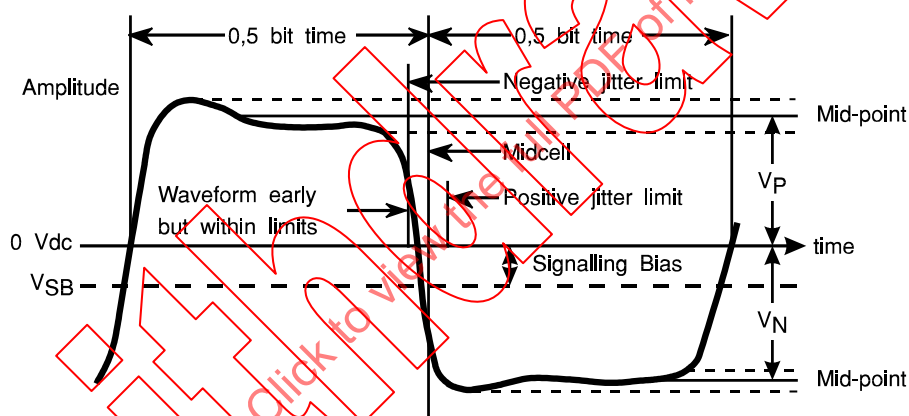
- c) le bruit en sortie d'une MAU en mode courant qui est en réception ou non alimentée ne doit pas dépasser 1 mV (efficace), mesuré de manière différentielle sur la bande de fréquences de 100 kHz à 4 MHz, en référence à la ligne principale;
- d) la tension différentielle sur la charge d'essai doit donner une modification monotonique de la tension, entre 10 % et 90 % de la valeur crête à crête. Par la suite, la tension du signal ne doit pas varier de plus de ± 10 % de la valeur crête à crête jusqu'à ce que la transition suivante ait lieu. Cette variation admissible doit inclure toutes les formes de distorsion de signal de sortie, telles que la surtension, la suroscillation et le statisme.

14.4.3 Exigences de synchronisation des sorties

Le circuit d'émission de MAU doit être conforme aux exigences suivantes de synchronisation des sorties:

- a) les temps de croissance et de décroissance, mesurés de 10 % à 90 % de l'amplitude du signal crête à crête, ne doivent pas dépasser 0,2 (voir la Figure 55);
- b) le taux de dérive, mesuré en tout point dans une plage de 10 % à 90 % de l'amplitude du signal crête à crête, ne doit pas dépasser 200,0 V/ μ s (voir la Figure 55).

L'instabilité de bit élémentaire émis ne doit pas dépasser $\pm 0,025$ Tbit par rapport au point de passage par zéro idéal, mesuré en fonction du point de passage par zéro précédent (voir la Figure 71);



Légende

Anglais	Français
0,5 bit time	0,5 temps binaire
Amplitude	Amplitude
Negative Jitter Limit	Limite d'instabilité négative
Mid-point	Point médian
Waveform early but within limits	Forme d'onde précoce mais dans les limites
Midcell	A mi-cellule (bit élémentaire)
Positive Jitter Limit	Limite d'instabilité positive
Signalling Bias	Biais de la signalisation
Time	Temps

**Figure 71 – Instabilité de bit élémentaire émis et reçu
(écart du point de passage par zéro)**

- d) le circuit d'émission doit s'activer, ce qui signifie que le signal doit monter d'un niveau inférieur au bruit de sortie maximal du circuit d'émission, comme spécifié en 14.4.2c), jusqu'au niveau de pleine puissance, en moins de 2,0 Tbit. La forme d'onde correspondant au troisième temps binaire et au-delà, doit être telle que spécifiée dans d'autres paragraphes de 14.4;

- e) le circuit d'émission doit se désactiver, ce qui signifie que le signal doit tomber, en moins de 2,0 Tbit, du niveau de pleine puissance à un niveau inférieur au bruit de sortie maximal du circuit d'émission, comme spécifié en 14.4.2 c). La durée nécessaire pour que le circuit d'émission revienne à son impédance d'état "non actif" ne doit pas dépasser 4,0 Tbit. Aux fins des essais, cette exigence doit être satisfaite dans la configuration d'essai du circuit d'émission décrite en 14.4.1.

NOTE Cette exigence permet de s'assurer que la capacité de la ligne a été pleinement déchargée lors de la transition du circuit d'émission de l'état actif à l'état passif.

14.5 Spécification du circuit de réception de la MAU

14.5.1 Généralités

Les exigences de ce paragraphe sont résumées dans le Tableau 72.

Il est admis que l'impédance d'entrée du circuit de réception soit inductive. Pour éviter que la partie résistive de l'impédance devienne trop élevée, l'impédance d'entrée totale maximale et la résistance d'entrée maximale sont spécifiées dans le Tableau 72.

Tableau 72 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du circuit de réception de la MAU en mode courant

Caractéristiques du circuit de réception (valeurs en référence à la ligne principale)	Limites en mode courant (alimentation par le bus et/ou IS)
Résistance d'entrée, mesurée sur la gamme de fréquences de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz à 1,25 MHz)	$\leq 0,5 \Omega$
Sensibilité; signal min. crête à crête dont l'acceptation est exigée (voir la Figure 58)	4,0 mA
Suppression du bruit; bruit max. crête à crête dont le rejet est exigé (voir la Figure 58)	2,0 mA
Instabilité maximale de bit élémentaire reçu (écart du point de passage par zéro, voir la Figure 69)	$\pm 0,10 T_{bit}$
Impédance d'entrée, mesurée sur la gamme de fréquences de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz à 1,25 MHz)	$\leq 4,0 \Omega$

14.5.2 Impédance d'entrée

La résistance d'entrée différentielle d'un circuit de réception de MAU en mode courant ne doit pas dépasser $0,5 \Omega$, et l'impédance d'entrée différentielle d'un circuit de réception de MAU en mode courant ne doit pas dépasser $4,0 \Omega$ en série avec la phase sur la fréquence de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz à 1,25 MHz). Cette exigence doit être satisfaite à l'état hors tension et sous tension (sans émission) ainsi que pendant la transition entre ces états. L'impédance doit être mesurée au niveau du coupleur inductif, au moyen d'une forme d'onde de courant sinusoïdale d'une amplitude de signal supérieure au seuil de sensibilité du récepteur et inférieure à 20 mA crête à crête.

14.5.3 Sensibilité du récepteur et suppression du bruit

Un circuit de réception de MAU doit être capable de recevoir un signal d'entrée de 4,0 mA crête à crête à 20,0 mA crête à crête, y compris la surtension et l'oscillation (voir "niveau du signal" ainsi que "amplitude positive" et "amplitude négative" dans la Figure 55).

Le circuit de réception de MAU ne doit pas répondre à un signal d'entrée ayant une amplitude crête à crête de courant de ligne ne dépassant pas 2,0 mA (voir "suppression du bruit" dans la Figure 58).

14.5.4 Instabilité de bit élémentaire reçu

Le circuit de réception doit accepter un signal codé Manchester émis conformément à 14.2 et à 14.4. En outre, le récepteur doit fonctionner correctement à des signaux ayant des variations temporelles, entre deux points adjacents quelconques de transition des signaux (passage par zéro) d'au maximum $\pm 0,10$ Tbit. Voir la Figure 71.

NOTE 1 Ceci n'exclut pas l'utilisation de récepteurs dont les performances sont supérieures à la présente spécification.

NOTE 2 En fonction de la configuration du symbole, la durée nominale entre passages par zéro peut être d'un demi-temps binaire ou d'un temps binaire.

NOTE 3 Il n'y a aucune exigence quant au rejet d'un signal donné ayant une valeur de variation temporelle spécifiée. Le récepteur rend compte d'une erreur lorsque l'instabilité de bit élémentaire reçu excède l'aptitude du récepteur à décoder la signalisation de manière fiable.

14.5.5 Susceptibilité au brouillage et taux d'erreurs

Voir 13.5.5.

14.6 Inhibition du bavardage

Voir 13.6.

14.7 Distribution de l'alimentation

14.7.1 Généralités

NOTE 1 Un dispositif peut, en option, recevoir son alimentation par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de signaux ou être alimenté de manière séparée.

NOTE 2 Un dispositif peut être certifié comme étant de sécurité intrinsèque quelle que soit la méthode d'alimentation.

NOTE 3 La présente norme n'inclut pas d'exigences pour la certification de la sécurité intrinsèque mais cherche à exclure des conditions ou situations qui pourraient empêcher la certification de la sécurité intrinsèque.

NOTE 4 Un dispositif à alimentation séparée peut être connecté à un bus de terrain alimenté.

NOTE 5 Pour faciliter le renvoi aux textes correspondants, les exigences définies en 14.7 sont résumées dans le Tableau 73.

Tableau 73 – Exigences d'alimentation réseau

Exigences d'alimentation réseau	Limites
Courant de sortie	1,0 A eff. ± 5 %
Fréquence de sortie	16 kHz $\pm 0,5$ %
Taux d'harmoniques et bruit du courant d'alimentation	Voir Figure 72
Impédance de sortie, mesurée sur la gamme de fréquences de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz à 1,25 MHz)	$\leq 5 \Omega$

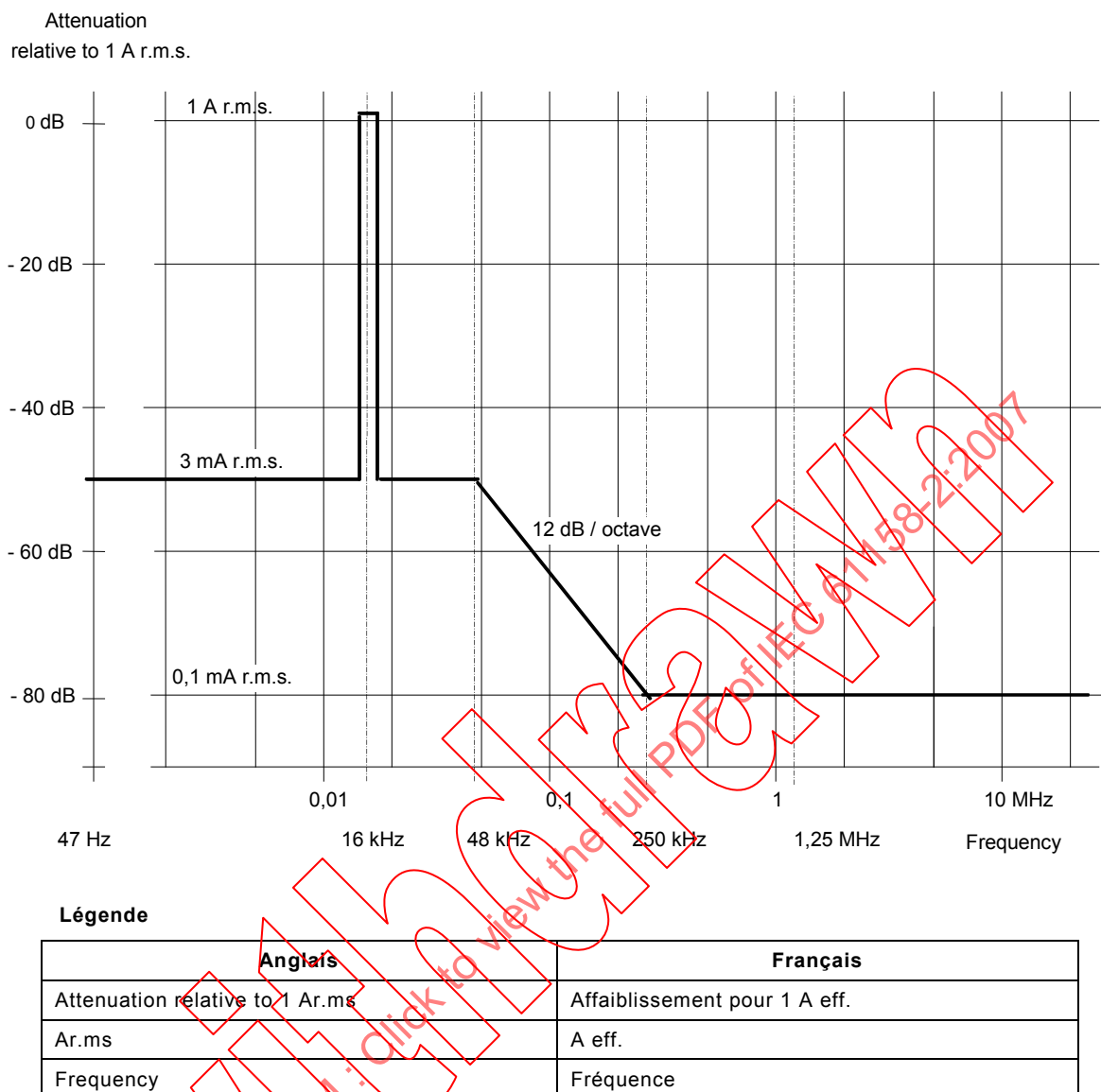


Figure 72 – Taux d'harmoniques et bruit de l'alimentation

14.7.2 Alimentation par l'intermédiaire de conducteurs de signaux

Un dispositif de bus de terrain qui revendique la conformité au présent article et qui est alimenté via les conducteurs de signaux doit satisfaire aux exigences correspondantes lorsqu'il est alimenté par une source ayant les spécifications suivantes:

- a) Le courant de sortie de l'alimentation doit être de 1,0 A eff. $\pm 5\%$.

NOTE 1 La tension de sortie de l'alimentation dépend des pertes dues au câble et de la puissance consommée par chaque dispositif. Un dispositif de bus de terrain peut être conçu pour consommer une ou plusieurs charges normalisées. Une charge normalisée est égale à 1,0 W.

NOTE 2 La tension de sortie en circuit ouvert de l'alimentation sera inférieure à la limite spécifiée par l'organisme de réglementation local pour la mise en œuvre particulière.

- b) L'impédance de sortie de l'alimentation doit être $\leq 5 \Omega$ sur la gamme de fréquences de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz à 1,25 MHz).
- c) La forme d'onde de l'alimentation doit être une sinusoïde dont la fréquence ainsi que le taux d'harmoniques maximal et le bruit sont les suivants:
- 1) 0,1 mA eff. sur la gamme de fréquences de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz à 1,25 MHz);
 - 2) 3,0 mA eff. sur la gamme de fréquences de 47 Hz à 48 kHz, à l'exception de 16 kHz $\pm 0,5\%$;

3) des niveaux, à d'autres fréquences, conformément à la Figure 72.

Le dispositif ne doit pas introduire, dans la ligne principale, de composantes harmoniques de la fréquence industrielle supérieures à 15 μA eff.

14.7.3 Alimentation séparée des signaux

NOTE La distribution de l'alimentation pour des dispositifs de bus de terrain non alimentés par le bus s'effectue au moyen de conducteurs séparés fournissant l'énergie à des alimentations locales, des régulateurs ou des barrières de sécurité. La certification IS peut exiger que ces conducteurs soient dans un câble séparé de celui des conducteurs de signaux et peut également imposer des exigences de niveau de courant plus strictes que celles qui sont spécifiées.

Un dispositif de bus de terrain alimenté séparément, revendiquant la conformité au présent article, ne doit pas provoquer de chute de tension supérieure à 200 mV eff, à la fréquence industrielle sur les conducteurs de signaux, et ne doit pas fournir un courant de plus de 100 μA eff. aux conducteurs de signaux, lorsqu'il n'y a pas d'émission.

14.7.4 Isolation électrique

Voir 13.7.4.

14.8 Spécifications du support

14.8.1 Connecteur

Voir 13.8.1.

14.8.2 Câble d'essai normalisé

Le câble utilisé pour les essais de dispositifs de bus de terrain avec une MAU en mode courant, destinés à vérifier la conformité aux exigences du présent article, doit être un câble unique à paire torsadée, à blindage global, conforme aux exigences minimales suivantes, à une température de 25 °C:

- a) Z_0 à une fréquence de $0,25 f_r$ (250 kHz) = $80 \Omega \pm 10 \%$;
- b) Z_0 à une fréquence de $1,25 f_r$ (1,25 MHz) = $80 \Omega \pm 10 \%$;
- c) affaiblissement maximal à une fréquence de $0,25 f_r$ (250 kHz) = 11,0 dB/km;
- d) affaiblissement maximal à une fréquence de $1,25 f_r$ (1,25 MHz) = 20,0 dB/km;
- e) résistance maximale en courant continu (par conducteur) = 15,0 Ω/km ;
- f) aire de la section des conducteurs (dimension des fils) = 1,5 mm² valeur nominale.

NOTE La spécification ci-dessus concerne les essais de conformité d'une MAU. D'autres types de câbles peuvent être utilisés dans les installations réelles. (Voir l'Annexe B). Les câbles à spécifications améliorées peuvent permettre l'utilisation de longueurs de ligne principale plus importantes et/ou une meilleure immunité aux perturbations. En revanche, les câbles ayant des spécifications inférieures peuvent être utilisés, sous réserve d'une limitation des longueurs utilisées, tant pour les lignes principales que secondaires, auxquels s'ajoute une éventuelle non-conformité aux exigences de susceptibilité aux perturbations radioélectriques (RFI) et électromagnétiques (EMI).

14.8.3 Coupleur

Voir 13.8.3.

14.8.4 Epissures

Voir 13.8.4.

14.8.5 Terminateur

Un terminateur doit être placé aux deux extrémités du câble de ligne principale et connecté d'un conducteur de signal à l'autre. Il ne doit y avoir aucune connexion entre terminateur et blindage du câble.

Pour les besoins de l'essai, en utilisant le câble spécifié en 14.8.2, le terminateur doit avoir une valeur d'impédance de $80 \Omega \pm 2 \%$ sur la gamme de fréquences de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (250 kHz à 1,25 MHz).

La fuite de tension dans les terminaisons doit être inférieure à 0,3 V à une fréquence de 16 kHz.

NOTE Dans des applications pratiques, lorsque l'alimentation est fournie via les conducteurs de signaux, le terminateur serait contourné aux fréquences industrielles afin de réduire les pertes de puissance.

Le terminateur doit être non polarisé.

Tous les terminateurs utilisés pour des atmosphères explosibles doivent satisfaire à des exigences conformes aux documents d'homologation requis.

14.8.6 Règles de blindage

Pour être pleinement conforme aux exigences d'immunité au bruit de 14.5, il est nécessaire d'assurer l'intégrité du blindage sur toute la longueur du câblage, dans les connecteurs et dans les coupleurs, de la manière suivante:

- a) la couverture du blindage doit être supérieure à 95 % de la longueur complète du câble;
- b) le blindage doit couvrir complètement les circuits électriques des connecteurs, des coupleurs et des épissures.

NOTE Toute dérogation à ces règles de blindage peut dégrader l'immunité au bruit.

14.8.7 Règles de mise à la masse

Voir 13.8.7.

14.8.8 Code de couleur des câbles

Voir 11.8.8.

15 Types 1 et 7: Unité de liaison au support: supports à fibre optique double

15.1 Généralités

Le support réseau est constitué d'une paire de guides d'onde à fibre optique assurant la bidirectionnalité par séparation des fibres pour chaque sens de propagation du signal. Ces supports sont connus sous l'appellation générale de chemin optique élémentaire.

Dans tous les réseaux comportant plusieurs dispositifs, les guides d'onde à fibre optique qui acheminent les signaux en provenance des dispositifs sont associés à un coupleur en étoile, actif ou passif, qui rediffuse sur tous les guides d'onde acheminant des signaux aux dispositifs. Une liaison point à point entre une paire de dispositifs utilisant un seul chemin optique élémentaire est également possible.

Ces fibres optiques doubles sont connectées au CPIC d'un dispositif de bus de terrain. Le système de transmission à fibre optique est en soi de sécurité intrinsèque.

15.2 Grandeurs dépendantes du débit binaire

Il est défini six débits binaires pour une MAU (Unité de liaison au support) de supports de réseau à fibre optique double, constitués d'une paire de guides d'onde à fibre optique unidirectionnels. Une MAU donnée doit prendre en charge au moins un de ces débits binaires. Le Tableau 74 indique les débits binaires pris en charge et définit les symboles relatifs aux grandeurs dépendantes du débit binaire utilisés dans la suite du présent paragraphe.

Tableau 74 – Grandeurs dépendantes du débit binaire de réseaux à fibre optique double à grande vitesse (≥ 1 Mbit/s)

Grandeur	Symbole	Unité	Valeur					
			0,031 25	1	2,5	5	10	25
Débit binaire nominal	Br	Mbit/s						
Ecart maximal par rapport à BR	ΔBR		0,2 %			0,01 %		
Durée binaire nominale	T_{bit}	μs	32,0	1,0	0,4	0,2	0,1	0,04
Ecart maximal par rapport à T_{bit}	ΔT_{bit}	-	0,025 %			0,015 %		
Délai maximal de propagation	PD_{max}	T_{bit}	20			40		

Le débit binaire moyen doit être $BR \pm \Delta BR$, moyenné sur une trame ayant une longueur minimale de 16 octets. Le temps binaire instantané doit être $T_{bit} \pm \Delta T_{bit}$.

15.3 Spécifications du réseau

15.3.1 Composants

Une MAU à fibre optique fonctionne sur un réseau constitué des composants suivants:

- un câble à fibre optique;
- des dispositifs (comportant au moins un élément de communication);
- des connecteurs;
- des étoiles passives optiques;
- des étoiles actives optiques.

15.3.2 Topologies

Une MAU à fibre optique doit fonctionner sur un réseau à topologie en étoile ou sur un réseau point à point. Les dispositifs sont connectés aux étoiles optiques ou aux dispositifs homologues par des chemins optiques élémentaires. Les étoiles optiques sont interconnectées par des chemins optiques élémentaires.

15.3.3 Règles de configuration du réseau

Une MAU qui revendique la conformité au présent article doit satisfaire aux exigences du présent article lorsqu'elle est utilisée sur un réseau qui satisfait aux présentes règles.

Règle 1: Tous les dispositifs du réseau fonctionnent au même débit binaire.

Règle 2: Il ne doit pas y avoir plus de quatre étoiles actives optiques entre deux dispositifs quelconques.

Règle 3: Le délai maximal de propagation entre deux dispositifs quelconques ne doit pas dépasser les valeurs indiquées au Tableau 74.

NOTE Pour que le réseau fonctionne efficacement, il convient que cette partie du temps de retournement de tout dispositif du réseau, générée par une PhE entre la fin d'une trame reçue et le début d'une trame émise contenant

une réponse immédiate associée, ne dépasse pas cinq temps binaires, dont il convient qu'au maximum deux temps binaires soient dus à la MAU. Sachant qu'il n'est pas obligatoire d'exposer l'interface DLL – PhL ou l'interface MDS – MAU, cette partie du temps de retournement d'un dispositif de bus de terrain due à la PhL ou à la MAU ne peut pas être spécifiée ou soumise à des essais de conformité.

Règle 4: Le bus de terrain doit pouvoir fonctionner en continu lorsqu'un dispositif y est connecté ou déconnecté. Les erreurs de données générées lors de la connexion ou de la déconnexion doivent être détectées.

Règle 5: Le réseau doit être acyclique, avec un seul chemin entre deux dispositifs quelconques.

Règle 6: Les règles suivantes doivent s'appliquer aux systèmes mis en œuvre avec des supports redondants:

- chaque canal doit satisfaire aux règles de configuration du réseau;
- il ne doit pas y avoir de segment ou d'équipement non redondant entre deux segments redondants;
- si les dispositifs du système sont configurés (par la Gestion systèmes) pour émettre sur plusieurs canaux simultanément, la différence de délai de propagation entre deux dispositifs quelconques sur deux canaux quelconques ne doit pas dépasser cinq temps binaires;
- les numéros de canaux et leur association aux supports de transmission physiques doivent être maintenus de manière cohérente sur l'ensemble des bus de terrain, c'est-à-dire que les canaux 1, 2, 3, ... en provenance de la gestion systèmes doivent toujours être connectés aux canaux physiques 1, 2, 3, ...

15.4 Spécifications du circuit d'émission de la MAU

NOTE Pour faciliter le renvoi aux textes correspondants, les exigences définies en 15.4 sont résumées dans le Tableau 75 et le Tableau 76.

15.4.1 Configuration d'essai

Le niveau de sortie ainsi que les spécifications de spectre et de synchronisation sont mesurés à l'extrémité d'une fibre d'essai normalisée de 1 m connectée au CPIC.

15.4.2 Spécification du niveau de sortie

Un circuit d'émission de MAU à fibre optique doit être conforme au niveau de sortie et aux exigences spectrales suivantes. Le niveau et les caractéristiques spectrales sont mesurés à une température de 25 °C. Le niveau de sortie est la puissance d'injection effective d'un niveau élevé. Le niveau de sortie est spécifié dans le Tableau 75.

Tableau 75 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du niveau d'émission et des caractéristiques spectrales

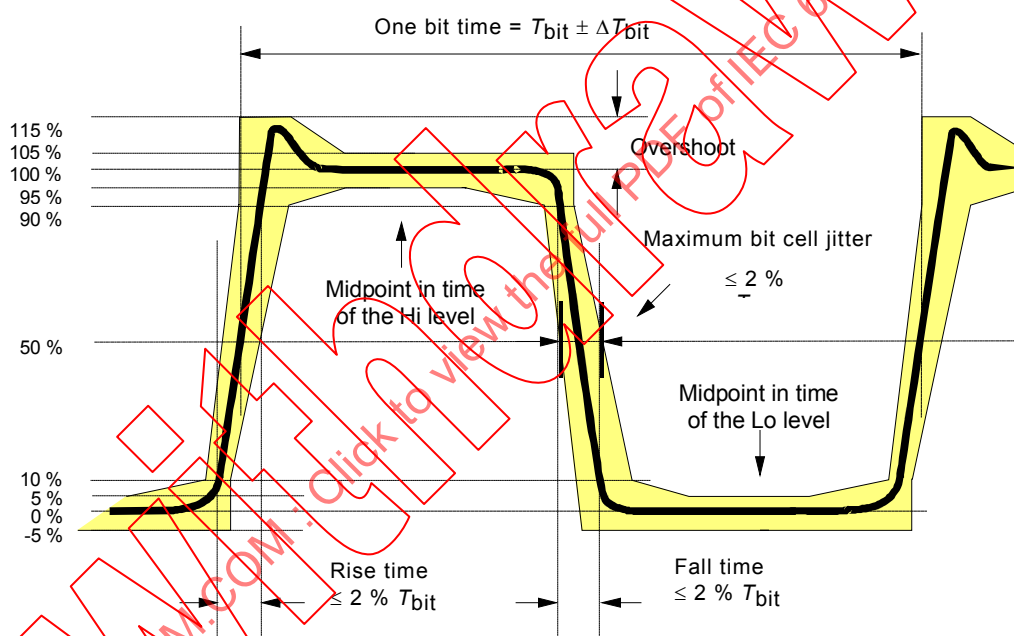
Niveau d'émission et caractéristiques spectrales (valeurs en référence au CPIC avec fibre d'essai normalisée)	Limites, avec une fibre de 62,5/125 µm
Longueur d'onde d'émission crête (λ_p)	(850 ± 30) nm
Longueur d'onde type de demi-intensité ($\Delta\lambda$)	≤ 50 nm
Niveau haut de la puissance d'injection effective	(-11,5 ± 1,5) dBm
Dépassement de transitions	≤ 15 % de la puissance effective
Rapport d'extinction	≥ 20:1

15.4.3 Spécification de synchronisation des sorties

Un circuit d'émission de MAU à fibre optique doit être conforme aux exigences suivantes de synchronisation des sorties (Voir la Figure 73). Les caractéristiques de synchronisation sont mesurées à une température de 25 °C. La spécification de synchronisation des sorties est présentée dans le Tableau 76.

Tableau 76 – Récapitulatif de la spécification de synchronisation d'émission

Caractéristiques de synchronisation d'émission (valeurs en référence au CPIC avec fibre d'essai normalisée)	Limites
Débit binaire d'émission	$BR \pm \Delta BR$
Temps binaire instantané	$T_{bit} \pm \Delta T_{bit}$
Temps de croissance et de décroissance (10 % à 90 % du signal crête à crête)	$\leq 2,0 \% T_{bit}$
Différence entre les temps de croissance et de décroissance	$\leq 0,5 \% T_{bit}$
Instabilité maximale de bit élémentaire émis	$\pm 2,0 \% T_{bit}$



NOTE 0 % effective power is the Lo level state power level.

100 % effective power is the Hi level state power level.

Légende

Anglais	Français
One bit time	Un temps binaire
Overshoot	Suroscillation
Midpoint in time of the Hi level	Point médian dans la durée du niveau Haut
Maximum bit cell jitter	Instabilité maximale de bit élémentaire
Midpoint in time of the Lo level	Point médian dans la durée du niveau Bas
Rise time	Temps de croissance
Fall time	Temps de décroissance
Note: 0% effective power is the Lo level state power level	NOTE 0% de puissance effective correspond au niveau de puissance à l'état bas
100% effective power is the Hi level state power	100% de puissance effective correspond au

Anglais	Français
level	niveau de puissance à l'état haut

Figure 73 – Modèle de forme d'onde optique

15.5 Spécifications du circuit de réception de la MAU

15.5.1 Généralités

Les exigences de ce paragraphe sont résumées dans le Tableau 77.

Tableau 77 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du circuit de réception

Caractéristiques du circuit de réception (valeurs en référence au CPIC avec fibre d'essai normalisée)	Limites	
	Système à faible sensibilité	Système à sensibilité élevée
Domaine de fonctionnement du récepteur	-30,0 dBm à -10,0 dBm	-40,0 dBm à -20,0 dBm
Instabilité maximale de bit élémentaire reçu	$\pm 14 \% \text{ Tbit}$	

15.5.2 Domaine de fonctionnement du récepteur

La plage de sensibilité spécifiée pour le récepteur est la suivante

- puissance effective de -30,0 dBm à -10,0 dBm pour une faible sensibilité ;
- puissance effective de -40,0 dBm à -20,0 dBm pour une sensibilité élevée.

15.5.3 Instabilité maximale de bit élémentaire reçu

Le circuit de réception doit accepter un signal codé Manchester émis conformément à 15.4. En outre, le récepteur doit accepter des signaux ayant des variations temporelles, entre deux points adjacents quelconques de transition des signaux (passage par 50 %) d'au maximum $\pm 14,0 \text{ Tbit}$.

NOTE 1 Ceci n'exclut pas l'utilisation de récepteurs ayant des performances supérieures à la présente spécification mais conformes aux tolérances relatives à l'instabilité de bit élémentaire reçu de la MDS (voir 9.2.6).

NOTE 2 En fonction de la configuration du symbole, la durée nominale entre passages par 50 % peut être de 1,0 Tbit ou 0,5 Tbit.

15.5.4 Susceptibilité au brouillage et taux d'erreurs

15.5.4.1 Basse vitesse (31,25 kbit/s)

NOTE Lorsque le bus de terrain fonctionne dans divers environnements de bruit normalisés, il convient que la probabilité qu'une unité de données utilisateur de couche Application contienne une erreur non détectée, du fait du fonctionnement des entités physiques et DLL d'acheminement, soit inférieure à 1 sur 6×10^9 (une erreur en 20 années à 10 messages/s). Un élément de communication est considéré conforme à cette exigence théorique lorsqu'il satisfait aux exigences suivantes de susceptibilité au brouillage. Ces exigences sont spécifiées sur la base d'un taux d'erreur de trame détecté obtenu en utilisant un rapport d'erreurs détectées/non détectées de 10^6 .

Un élément de communication qui inclut une MAU à fibre optique fonctionnant à 31,25 kbit/s et utilisant des trames de 32 bits de données utilisateur aléatoires, à une moyenne de 10 messages/s, avec des signaux de -25 dBm, ne doit pas produire plus de dix erreurs de trame détectées sur 60 000 trames, lorsqu'il est utilisé dans des environnements de perturbations électromagnétiques ou électriques comme décrit ci-après:

- champ électromagnétique de 10 V/m, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-3 au niveau de sévérité 3;
- transitoires électriques rapides, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-4 au niveau de sévérité 3.

15.5.4.2 Vitesse élevée (≥ 1 Mbit/s)

NOTE Lorsque le bus de terrain fonctionne dans divers environnements de bruit normalisés, il convient que la probabilité qu'une unité de données utilisateur de couche Application contienne une erreur non détectée, du fait du fonctionnement des entités physiques et DLL d'acheminement, soit inférieure à 1 sur 10^{12} (une erreur en 20 années à 1 600 messages/s). Un élément de communication est considéré conforme à cette exigence théorique lorsqu'il satisfait aux exigences suivantes de susceptibilité au brouillage. Ces exigences sont spécifiées sur la base d'un taux d'erreur de trame détecté obtenu en utilisant un rapport d'erreurs détectées/non détectées de 10^6 .

Un élément de communication qui inclut une MAU à fibre optique fonctionnant à ≥ 1 Mbit/s et utilisant des trames de 64 bits de données utilisateur aléatoires, à une moyenne de 1 600 messages/s, avec des signaux de -25 dBm, ne doit pas produire plus de six erreurs de trame détectées sur 100 000 trames, lorsqu'il est utilisé dans des environnements de perturbations électromagnétiques ou électriques comme décrit ci-après:

- a) champ électromagnétique de 10 V/m, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-3 au niveau de sévérité 3;
- b) transitoires électriques rapides, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-4 au niveau de sévérité 3.

15.5.4.3 Commun

Les taux d'erreur spécifiés doivent également être réalisés après, mais non pendant le fonctionnement dans les environnements de bruit suivants:

- a) décharge électrique de 8 kV sur une structure métallique exposée, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-2, au niveau de sévérité 3. Si le dispositif subit une perte temporaire de fonctions ou de performances suite à cet essai, il doit récupérer de cette perte éventuelle sans intervention de l'opérateur, dans les 3 s qui suivent la fin de l'essai;
- b) essais de perturbation à haute fréquence, comme spécifié en 3.1 de la CEI 60255-22-1:1988 (classe III de tension d'essai, 2,5 kV et 1 kV de valeurs crêtes de la première demi-alternance, respectivement en mode longitudinal et transversal). Si le dispositif subit une perte temporaire de fonctions ou de performances du fait de cet essai, il doit récupérer de cette perte éventuelle sans intervention de l'opérateur, dans les 3 s qui suivent la fin de l'essai.

15.6 Inhibition du bavardage

La MAU doit comporter une capacité d'interruption automatique pour empêcher les signaux émis d'atteindre le support. Le matériel dans la MAU (sans message extérieur autre que la détection des signaux de sortie ou de fuite par la fonction d'émission) doit fournir une fenêtre d'une durée comprise entre 3 750 Tbit et 7 500 Tbit au cours de laquelle une trame normale peut être émise. Si la longueur de trame dépasse cette durée, la fonction d'inhibition du bavardage doit empêcher d'autres signaux en sortie d'atteindre le support et doit désactiver l'écho sur la ligne RxS (voir 10.2.2.2) pour indiquer à la MDS la détection de bavardage.

Pour un débit binaire de 31,25 kbit/s, la MAU doit réinitialiser la fonction d'interruption automatique après une période de $3 \text{ s} \pm 50 \%$.

NOTE 1 Ceci inhibe le trafic sur le bus pendant au maximum 8 % ($\approx 1/12,5$) du temps disponible.

Pour un débit binaire de 1 Mbit/s ou plus, la MAU doit réinitialiser la fonction d'interruption automatique après une période de $500\,000 \text{ Tbit} \pm 50 \%$.

NOTE 2 Ceci inhibe le trafic sur le bus pendant au maximum 3 % ($\approx 1/32$) du temps disponible.

15.7 Spécifications du support

15.7.1 Connecteur

Si des connecteurs de câbles sont utilisés, ils doivent être conformes à la présente norme (voir l'Annexe A). Des terminaisons permanentes (épissures) peuvent également être utilisées.

15.7.2 Fibre d'essai normalisée

Le câble utilisé pour les essais de dispositifs de bus de terrain ou d'étoiles actives optiques avec une MAU à fibre optique, destiné à vérifier la conformité aux exigences du présent article, doit être un câble à fibre optique d'une longueur de 1 m comportant deux guides d'onde à fibre de silice. Les caractéristiques de ces guides d'onde doivent être compatibles avec la CEI 60793 [type de fibre: A1b (62,5/125 µm)], pour ce qui concerne:

- le diamètre du cœur (µm): $62,5 \pm 3$
- le diamètre de la gaine (µm): 125 ± 3
- la concentricité cœur/gaine (%): ≤ 6
- la non-circularité du cœur (%): ≤ 6
- la non-circularité de la gaine (%): ≤ 2
- le diamètre extérieur du revêtement primaire (µm): 250 ± 15
- l'ouverture numérique: $0,275 \pm 0,015$
- l'affaiblissement pour 850 nm (dB/km): $\leq 3,0$
- la largeur de bande pour 850 nm (MHz x km): ≥ 200

NOTE D'autres types de fibres d'essai sont autorisés. L'Annexe E décrit un fonctionnement avec utilisation d'une fibre d'essai alternative de 50 µm ou 100 µm.

15.7.3 Etoile passive optique

NOTE Pour de plus amples informations, voir l'Annexe C.

15.7.4 Etoile active optique

15.7.4.1 Définition

Un dispositif ou un module optoélectronique dans un système de communication à fibre optique qui reçoit un signal, l'amplifie et le retransmet (la resynchronisation est facultative).

15.7.4.2 En service

Trois types de liaisons doivent être pris en compte.

a) La liaison entre deux étoiles actives optiques

Toute trame provenant directement d'une étoile active optique qui atteint un accès optique d'une autre étoile active optique est retransmise sans retour d'information (l'accès qui reçoit la trame ne retransmet pas cette trame).

b) La liaison entre une étoile active optique et un dispositif de bus de terrain

Toute trame en provenance d'une étoile active optique qui atteint un dispositif de bus de terrain est reçue et non retransmise. Toute trame provenant d'un dispositif de bus de terrain qui atteint une étoile active optique est retransmise sans retour d'information.

c) La liaison entre une étoile passive optique et une étoile active optique

Toute trame provenant d'une étoile passive optique qui atteint une étoile active optique est retransmise sans retour d'information. De par sa conception, une étoile passive reflète toutes les trames. Une étoile active optique ne doit pas réémettre les signaux de retour d'information d'une étoile passive optique.

Fonctions régénératrices

Une étoile active optique rétablit les signaux à des niveaux de puissance d'émission normalisés. Les caractéristiques de synchronisation (gigue) peuvent ou non être régénérées; cette fonction est facultative.

15.7.4.3 Caractéristiques d'émission et de réception

Les caractéristiques suivantes sont indiquées:

a) Caractéristiques de niveau

Les spécifications de niveau d'émission et de réception sont identiques à celles d'une MAU à fibre optique (15.4.2 et 15.5.2). Le niveau et les caractéristiques spectrales sont mesurés à une température de 25 °C. Ces spécifications sont résumées dans le Tableau 78.

Tableau 78 – Spécifications du niveau d'émission et de réception et des caractéristiques spectrales d'une étoile active optique

Niveau d'émission et caractéristiques spectrales (valeurs en référence au CPIC avec fibre d'essai normalisée)	Limites, avec une fibre de 62,5/125 µm	
Longueur d'onde d'émission crête (λ_p)	(850 ± 30) nm	
Longueur d'onde type de demi-intensité ($\Delta\lambda$)	≤ 50 nm	
Rapport d'extinction	≥ 20:1	
Niveau haut de la puissance d'injection effective	(-11,5 ± 1,5) dBm	
Domaine de fonctionnement du récepteur (puissance effective)	Système à faible sensibilité	Système à sensibilité élevée
	-30,0 dBm à -10,0 dBm	-40,0 dBm à -20,0 dBm

c) Caractéristiques de synchronisation

Les spécifications de synchronisation d'émission et de réception d'une étoile active optique concernent (voir Tableau 79).

- les temps de croissance et de décroissance du signal émis;
- la déformation temporelle des signaux, due à une étoile active optique.

Les caractéristiques de synchronisation sont mesurées à une température de 25 °C. Pour des étoiles actives optiques qui ont une fonction de régénération de la synchronisation, les caractéristiques de synchronisation sont identiques à celles d'une MAU à fibre optique.

Tableau 79 – Caractéristiques de synchronisation d'une étoile active optique

Caractéristiques de synchronisation (valeurs en référence au CPIC)	Limites
Temps de croissance et de décroissance des signaux émis (10 % à 90 % du signal crête à crête)	≤ 2 % Tbit
Déformation temporelle maximale entre accès d'entrée optiques et accès de sortie optiques (voir la Note 1)	± 3 % Tbit
Temps de propagation d'un bit de données entre un accès d'entrée optique et tout accès de sortie pour une étoile active ayant une fonction de régénération de la synchronisation (voir la NOTE 2)	≤ 2 Tbit
Instabilité maximale de bit élémentaire émis pour une étoile active optique avec fonction de régénération de la synchronisation (voir Note 2)	± 2,0 % Tbit
NOTE 1 La déformation temporelle due à une étoile active optique est la différence temporelle de largeur d'un même bit physique, configuration binaire, forme d'onde ou autre terme approprié.	
NOTE 2 Uniquement pour des étoiles actives optiques ayant une fonction de régénération de la synchronisation.	

16 Type 1: Unité de liaison au support: support optique monofibre 31,25 kbit/s,

16.1 Généralités

Le support réseau est constitué d'un ensemble de guides d'onde bidirectionnels monofibre, chaque guide étant appelé chemin optique élémentaire.

Dans tous les réseaux comportant plusieurs dispositifs, les guides d'onde à fibre optique qui acheminent les signaux en provenance des dispositifs sont associés à un coupleur en étoile réfléchissant passif, d'où tous les signaux reçus sont retransmis sur tous les guides d'onde à fibre optique vers les dispositifs. Une liaison point à point entre une paire de dispositifs utilisant un seul chemin optique élémentaire est également possible.

Ces monofibres bidirectionnelles sont connectées au CPIC d'un dispositif de bus de terrain. Le système de transmission à fibre optique est en soi de sécurité intrinsèque.

16.2 Débit binaire d'émission

Le débit binaire d'émission, $BR \pm \Delta BR$, doit être de $31,25 \text{ kbit/s} \pm 0,2 \%$, moyenné sur une trame ayant une longueur minimale de 16 octets. Le temps binaire instantané, $T_{bit} \pm \Delta T_{bit}$, doit être de $32 \mu\text{s} \pm 0,025 \%$.

16.3 Spécifications du réseau

16.3.1 Composants

Voir 15.3.1.

16.3.2 Topologies

Voir 15.3.2.

16.3.3 Règles de configuration du réseau

Une MAU qui revendique la conformité au présent article doit satisfaire aux exigences du présent article lorsqu'elle est utilisée sur un réseau qui satisfait aux présentes règles.

Les règles sont identiques à 15.3.3, à l'exception de ce qui suit.

16.4 Spécifications du circuit d'émission de la MAU

NOTE Pour faciliter le renvoi aux textes correspondants, les exigences définies en 16.4 sont résumées dans le Tableau 80 et le Tableau 76.

16.4.1 Configuration d'essai

Voir 15.4.1.

16.4.2 Spécification du niveau de sortie

Un circuit d'émission de MAU à fibre optique doit être conforme au niveau de sortie et aux exigences spectrales suivantes. Le niveau et les caractéristiques spectrales sont mesurés à une température de 25°C . Le niveau de sortie est la puissance d'injection effective d'un niveau élevé. Le niveau de sortie est spécifié dans le Tableau 80.

Tableau 80 – Récapitulatif de la spécification du niveau d'émission et des caractéristiques spectrales

Niveau d'émission et caractéristiques spectrales (valeurs en référence au CPIC avec fibre d'essai normalisée)	Limites pour 31,25 kbit/s (fibre 100/140 µm)
Longueur d'onde d'émission crête (λ_p)	(850 ± 30) nm
Longueur d'onde type de demi-intensité ($\Delta\lambda$)	≤ 50 nm
Niveau haut de la puissance d'injection effective	(-13,5 ± 1,0) dBm
Dépassement de transitions	≤ 15 % de la puissance effective
Rapport d'extinction	≥ 20:1

16.4.3 Spécification de synchronisation des sorties

Un circuit d'émission de MAU à fibre optique doit être conforme aux exigences suivantes de synchronisation des sorties (Voir la Figure 73). Les caractéristiques de synchronisation sont mesurées à une température de 25 °C. La spécification de synchronisation des sorties est présentée dans le Tableau 76.

16.5 Spécifications du circuit de réception de la MAU

16.5.1 Généralités

Les exigences de 16.5 sont résumées dans le Tableau 77, qui concerne cependant la fibre d'essai normalisée 100/140 µm du présent article.

16.5.2 Domaine de fonctionnement du récepteur

Le domaine de sensibilité spécifié pour le récepteur est la suivante

- a) puissance effective de -30,0 dBm à -12,5 dBm pour une faible sensibilité;
- b) puissance effective de -40,0 dBm à -20,0 dBm pour une sensibilité élevée.

16.5.3 Instabilité maximale de bit élémentaire reçu

Voir 15.5.3.

16.5.4 Susceptibilité au brouillage et taux d'erreurs

Voir 15.5.4.1 et 15.5.4.3.

16.6 Inhibition du bavardage

L'exigence est identique à 15.6, à l'exception de ce qui suit.

La MAU doit réinitialiser la fonction d'interruption automatique après une période de 3 s ± 50 %.

NOTE Ceci inhibe le trafic sur le bus pendant au maximum 8 % ($\approx 1/12,5$) du temps disponible.

16.7 Spécifications du support

16.7.1 Connecteur

Voir 15.7.1.

16.7.2 Fibre d'essai normalisée

Guide d'onde à fibre de silice dont les caractéristiques nominales sont compatibles avec la CEI 60793 [type de fibre: A1d (100/140 μm)].

Le câble utilisé pour les essais de dispositifs de bus de terrain ou d'étoiles actives optiques avec une MAU à fibre optique, destiné à vérifier la conformité aux exigences du présent article, doit être un câble à fibre optique d'une longueur de 1 m comportant un guide d'onde à fibre et ayant les caractéristiques suivantes:

- le diamètre du cœur (μm): 100 ± 5
- le diamètre de la gaine (μm): 140 ± 4
- la concentricité cœur/gaine (%): ≤ 6
- la non-circularité du cœur (%): ≤ 6
- la non-circularité de la gaine (%): ≤ 4
- l'ouverture numérique: $0,26 \pm 0,03$
- l'affaiblissement pour 850 nm (dB/km): $\leq 4,0$
- la largeur de bande pour 850 nm (MHz x km): ≥ 100

NOTE D'autres types de fibres d'essai sont autorisés. L'Annexe E décrit un fonctionnement avec utilisation de fibres d'essai alternatives de 50 μm ou 62,5 μm .

16.7.3 Etoile passive optique

NOTE Pour de plus amples informations, voir l'Annexe C.

16.7.4 Etoile active optique

16.7.4.1 Définition

Le paragraphe 15.7.4.1 s'applique.

16.7.4.2 En service

Le paragraphe 15.7.4.2 s'applique.

16.7.4.3 Caractéristiques d'émission et de réception

16.7.4.3.1 Caractéristiques de niveau

Les spécifications de niveau d'émission et de réception sont identiques à celles d'une MAU à fibre optique (voir 16.4.2 et 16.5.2). Le niveau et les caractéristiques spectrales sont mesurés à une température de 25 °C. Ces spécifications sont résumées dans le Tableau 81.

Tableau 81 – Spécifications du niveau d'émission et de réception et des caractéristiques spectrales d'une étoile active optique

Niveau d'émission et caractéristiques spectrales (valeurs en référence au CPIC avec fibre d'essai normalisée)	Limites, avec une fibre de 100/140 µm	
Longueur d'onde d'émission crête (λ_p)	(850 ± 30) nm	
Longueur d'onde type de demi-intensité ($\Delta\lambda$)	≤ 50 nm	
Rapport d'extinction	≥ 20:1	
Niveau haut de la puissance d'injection effective	(-13,5 ± 1,0) dBm	
Domaine de fonctionnement du récepteur (puissance effective)	Système à faible sensibilité	Système à sensibilité élevée
	-30,0 dBm à -12,5 dBm	-40,0 dBm à -20,0 dBm

16.7.4.3.2 Caractéristiques de synchronisation

Les caractéristiques de synchronisation de 15.7.4.3 s'appliquent.

17 Type 1: Unité de liaison au support: signalisation radioélectrique

17.1 Généralités

Le concept de MAU radioélectrique correspond approximativement aux parties analogiques et radiofréquences de systèmes radioélectriques réels, y compris les aspects relatifs à la porteuse et aux fréquences intermédiaires, aux types de modulation, aux indices de modulation, au filtrage et à la mise en forme des signaux d'émission, au filtrage des signaux de réception, à l'évaluation de la force du signal, à l'évaluation de la qualité du signal et à la récupération de l'horloge et des données de la signalisation reçue. Il inclut également tous les aspects numériques concernant la configuration de ces éléments du monde analogique. Il ne couvre pas les aspects de données strictement numériques d'un système radioélectrique, telles que le codage qui nécessite une interprétation binaire de la signalisation, même si les fonctions de récupération de l'horloge et des données de la MAU peuvent utiliser des aspects prévus de ce codage (par exemple, les transitions prévues entre codage Manchester ou codage 8b/10b et la symétrie c.c) dans le processus de récupération.

L'environnement radioélectrique est variable en termes d'espace et de temps, ce qui rend presque impossible la prédiction des propriétés à long terme. Les protocoles réels qui coordonnent l'émission et la réception peuvent s'adapter à cette variabilité en temps réel en modifiant de manière dynamique les modes de fonctionnement (mais également de manière coordonnée) pour réaliser leurs objectifs de communication. Par conséquent, la présente spécification fournit les exigences minimales sous une forme qui convient à cette adaptation.

17.2 Vitesse de signalisation en émission

La MAU radioélectrique doit être capable d'émettre à une vitesse de signalisation (c'est-à-dire, symbole Ph) qui s'inscrit à plus ou moins 1 % de toute vitesse de signalisation nominale configurée dans sa plage de conception, avec une variation réelle de cette synchronisation des symboles d'au maximum 0,1 % entre deux symboles quelconques choisis de manière arbitraire et mesurés sur n'importe quelle émission, non compris cependant les quatre premiers ou quatre derniers symboles de l'émission.

La relation entre vitesse de signalisation (en bauds) et le débit binaire maximal du système radioélectrique peut varier d'une émission à l'autre car les entités qui utilisent le protocole s'adaptent à l'environnement radioélectrique ainsi qu'à la criticité, à l'urgence et à d'autres aspects QoS des informations à communiquer ainsi qu'aux besoins de ces entités de protocole. Le débit binaire réel peut varier au sein du message, comme cela est le cas dans les normes DECT de l'ETSI où la partie initiale du message utilise uniquement la constellation

de signalisation 1 bit/bd tandis que la dernière partie du message peut utiliser une constellation plus riche qui repose sur les données contenues dans l'en-tête du message.

Dans des modems, les rapports normaux de débit binaire en bauds qui déterminent la constellation de signalisation requise, sont les suivants

- 1 bit/bd, également appelée signalisation 2-aire et qui est historiquement la plus commune
- 2 bit/bd, également appelée signalisation 4-aire (par exemple, QPSK, Modulation par déplacement de phase en quadrature)
- 3 bit/bd, également appelée signalisation 8-aire (par exemple, 8PSK)
- 4 bit/bd, également appelée signalisation 16-aire (par exemple, QAM, Modulation d'amplitude en quadrature)

Le précodage des informations numériques avant émission, par exemple pour le codage FEC (Forward Error Correction: correction d'erreurs sans voie de retour), Manchester, biphase ou 8 bits/10 bd, peut réduire le débit binaire efficace de l'entité Ph, mais n'affecte pas en soi la constellation de signalisation du système radioélectrique.

17.3 Modulation

17.3.1 Généralités

La MAU radioélectrique doit au moins prendre en charge l'un des types de modulation suivants:

- a) FSK (modulation par déplacement de fréquence);
- b) GFSK (FSK avec mise en forme gaussienne pour réduire la répartition spectrale du signal);
- c) MSK (modulation par déphasage minimal);
- d) GMSK (MSK avec mise en forme gaussienne pour réduire la répartition spectrale du signal);

La MAU radioélectrique peut également prendre en charge d'autres types de modulation, tels que:

- d) OOK (Modulation par tout ou rien, une forme de modulation d'amplitude).

17.3.2 Mise en forme gaussienne (filtrage)

De nombreuses méthodes de modulation utilisent un filtre gaussien passe-bas avant l'émission pour faire glisser des transitions abruptes entre différents états de signalisation, réduisant ainsi l'énergie des composantes de fréquence plus élevée du spectre de modulation, ce qui permet d'améliorer sa répartition spectrale en contrepartie d'une limitation des perturbations entre symboles.

La réponse impulsionnelle $h(t)$ non tronquée d'un filtre gaussien est:

$$h(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi \times \delta \times T}} e^{-\frac{t^2}{2 \times \delta^2 \times T^2}},$$

où

$$\delta = \frac{\sqrt{\ln(2)}}{2\pi \times B \times T};$$

B est la largeur de bande 3 dB du filtre;

T est la durée de symbole;
en considérant **BT** comme étant la largeur de bande normalisée du filtre (en Hz.s).

Les impulsions telles que celles produites par un filtre gaussien passe-bas ont une durée infinie (malgré une énergie infinitésimale pour la plupart de cette durée). Pour que des communications au moyen de ces impulsions soient réalisables, elles sont convolutionnées au moyen d'un filtre rectangulaire qui tronque leur étendue:

$$g(t) = \text{rect}\left(\frac{t}{T}\right) \otimes h(t)$$

$$\text{où } \text{rect}\left(\frac{t}{T}\right) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{T} & \text{for } |t| < \frac{T}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

pour
sinon

et $\otimes$ représente la convolution.

17.3.3 FSK (Modulation par déplacement de fréquence)

En modulation par déplacement de fréquence, une fréquence 'centrale' nominale de porteuse f_{carrier} est modulée avant émission en soustrayant ou en ajoutant un écart de fréquence (Δf) qui est une fraction spécifiée de la vitesse de signalisation. L'écart maximal, entre limites (c'est-à-dire, $2 \times \max \Delta f$), lorsqu'il est divisé par la vitesse de signalisation, est appelé *indice de modulation*, h .

Une MAU radioélectrique qui prend en charge FSK doit accepter une modulation 2-aire ayant un indice de modulation de

$h = \frac{2 \times \Delta f}{\text{SR}} = 1,0 \pm 10\%$. D'autres indices de modulation, supérieurs ou inférieurs, peuvent également être pris en charge. Il est admis que d'autres modulations ayant un nombre de bits par baud plus important, comme la modulation FSK 4-aire et 8-aire, soient également prises en charge.

NOTE 1 Cet indice de modulation correspond à l'estimation conventionnelle de capacité de canal de 1 bit/s/Hz.

Pour une modulation FSK 2-aire, un symbole '0' de MDS-MAU doit être représenté par la fréquence ($f_{\text{carrier}} - \Delta f$) et un symbole '1' de MDS-MAU doit être représenté par la fréquence ($f_{\text{carrier}} + \Delta f$), où $\Delta f = h/2$.

NOTE 2 Si d'autres parties de la couche Ph assurent un codage transparent, de façon à ce que des bits de données à l'interface DL-Ph demeurent inchangés à l'interface DCE-MAU, un bit de données '1' sera considéré comme une fréquence plus importante qu'un bit de données '0'.

17.3.4 GFSK (Modulation par déplacement de fréquence avec filtrage gaussien)

En modulation par déplacement de fréquence avec filtrage gaussien, la modulation FSK de 17.3.3 est mise en forme par le filtre gaussien de 17.3.2 avant émission afin de réduire sa répartition spectrale (en d'autres termes pour rendre plus étroite la partie du spectre où la plupart des informations sont acheminées). Les valeurs types de BT pour le filtre gaussien sont les suivantes:

- $BT = 0,5 \pm 10\%$, et
- $BT = 1,0 \pm 10\%$

Une MAU radioélectrique qui prend en charge la modulation FSK doit accepter au moins une de ces deux valeurs de BT. D'autres largeurs de bande normalisées peuvent également être prises en charge.

17.3.5 PSK (Modulation par déplacement de phase)

En modulation par déplacement de phase, une porteuse nominale de fréquence f_{carrier} est modulée en phase avant émission en avançant un écart de phase ($\Delta\phi$) qui est une fraction spécifiée de la vitesse de signalisation et du symbole à émettre. L'écart maximal (c'est-à-dire, $\max \Delta\phi$), est appelé *indice de modulation*, h .

Une MAU radioélectrique qui prend en charge PSK doit accepter une modulation 2-aire ayant des indices de modulation de

- $h = \max \Delta\phi = \pi$ radians

où un "un" est signalé par l'avance de phase maximale et un zéro par la moitié de cette avance de phase. D'autres étendues, supérieures ou inférieures, de l'avance de phase maximale, peuvent également être prises en charge. Il est admis que d'autres modulations ayant un nombre de bits par baud plus important, comme la modulation PSK 4-aire et 8-aire, soient également prises en charge.

Pour une modulation PSK 2-aire, un symbole '0' de DCE-MAU doit être représenté par la fréquence ($\Phi_{\text{carrier}} + \min \Delta\phi$) et un symbole '1' de DCE-MAU doit être représenté par la fréquence ($\Phi_{\text{carrier}} + \max \Delta\phi$).

NOTE Si d'autres parties de la couche Ph assurent un codage transparent, de façon à ce que des bits de données à l'interface DL-Ph demeurent inchangés à l'interface DCE-MAU, un bit de données '1' sera considéré comme une avance de phase plus importante qu'un bit de données '0'.

17.3.6 GMSK (Modulation par déphasage minimal avec filtrage gaussien)

En modulation par déphasage minimal avec filtrage gaussien, la modulation PSK de 17.3.5 est mise en forme par le filtre gaussien de 17.3.2 avant émission afin de réduire sa répartition spectrale (en d'autres termes pour rendre plus étroite la partie du spectre où la plupart des informations sont acheminées).

Les valeurs types de BT pour le filtre gaussien sont les suivantes:

- $BT = 0,3 \pm 10\%$,
- $BT = 0,5 \pm 10\%$, et
- $BT = 1,0 \pm 10\%$

Une MAU radioélectrique qui prend en charge la modulation GMSK doit accepter au moins une de ces trois valeurs de BT. D'autres largeurs de bande normalisées peuvent également être prises en charge.

17.4 Spécification du réseau

17.4.1 Composants

Une MAU radioélectrique fonctionne sur un réseau constitué des composants suivants:

- a) des dispositifs (comportant au moins un élément de communication);
- b) des antennes et d'éventuels câbles de connexion.

NOTE Une antenne peut être intégrée dans un dispositif.

17.4.2 Topologies

Le concept de topologie de connexion ne s'applique pas à la structure espace-temps à travers laquelle se propagent les ondes électromagnétiques. Par conséquent, il n'y a aucune contrainte liée à la MAU en termes de configuration des communications de la MAU autres que celles qui résultent de sa nature et qui sont quelquefois désignées par le terme "lois de la physique". Parmi ces lois, les plus importantes sont l'affaiblissement et les réflexions (à trajectoires multiples), ainsi que les effets induits par la proximité d'autres sources radioélectriques voisines.

17.4.3 Règles de configuration du réseau

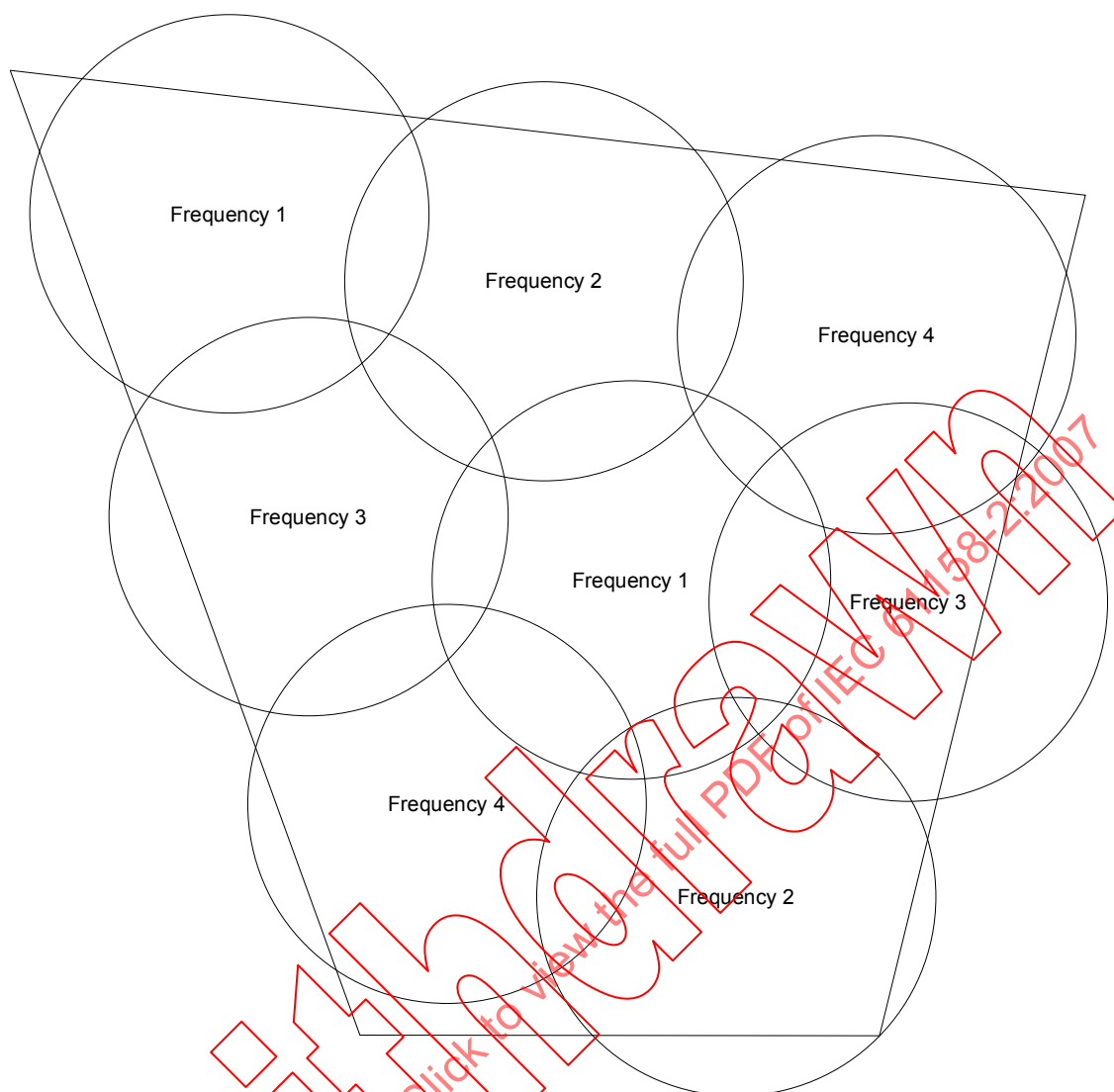
Une MAU radioélectrique à faible vitesse doit satisfaire aux exigences du présent article lorsqu'elle est utilisée sur un réseau qui satisfait aux présentes règles.

Règle 1: Tous les éléments de communication sur un bus de terrain utilisant un support radioélectrique doivent pouvoir fonctionner à un débit en bauds commun et doivent utiliser le même canal de radiofréquence physique ou logique.

Règle 2: Plusieurs supports radioélectriques indépendants peuvent fonctionner en un même lieu physique mais dans ce cas, chaque réseau séparé doit fonctionner sur un canal de radiofréquence physique ou logique différent.

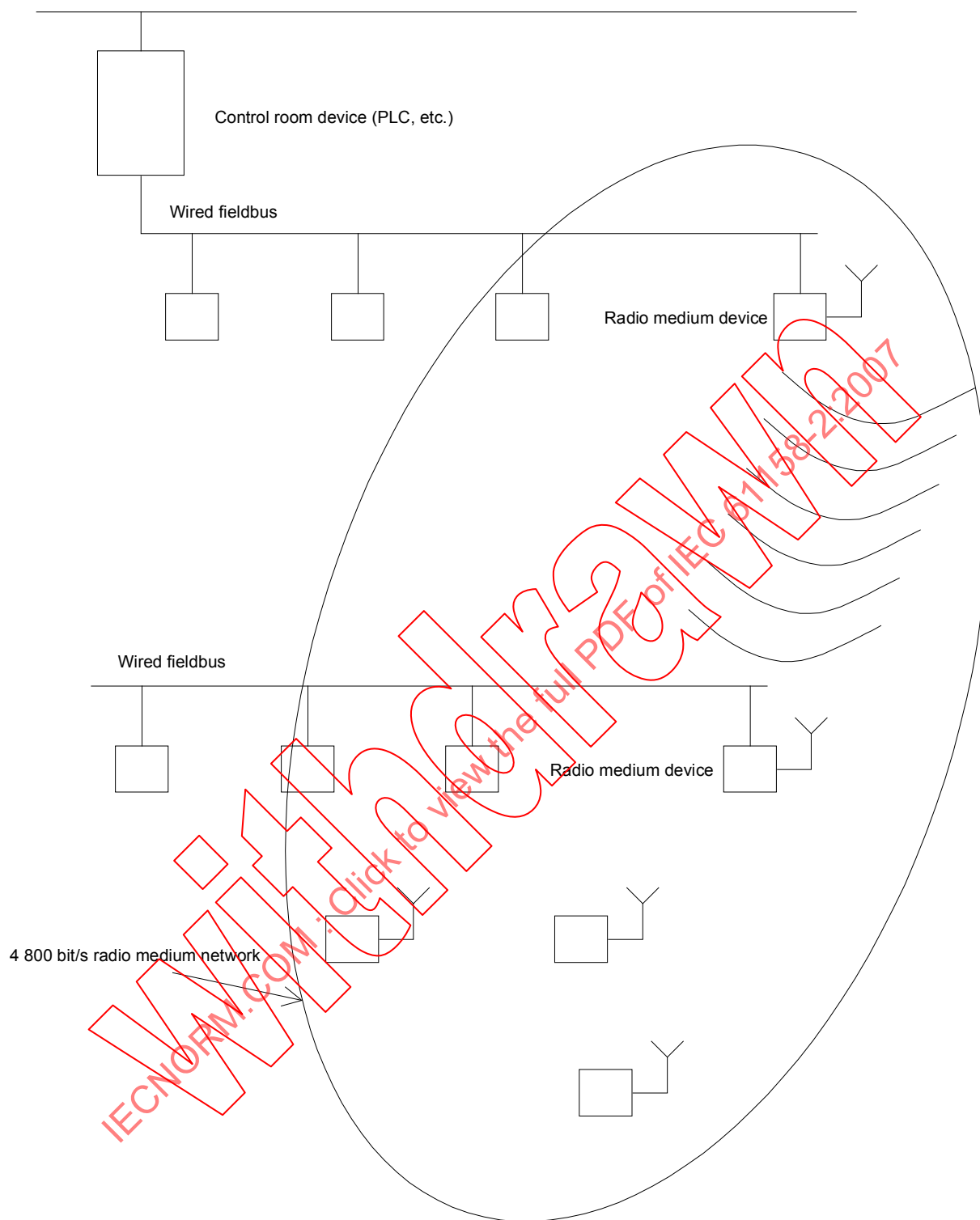
Règle 3: Un canal de radiofréquence de bus de terrain à support radioélectrique spécifique doit définir une zone géographique (ou "CELLULE") sur laquelle ce réseau fonctionnera et aucun autre réseau utilisant le même canal de radiofréquence ne doit fonctionner dans cette cellule. Les réseaux de cellule adjacents doivent utiliser des canaux de radiofréquence différents et il doit être possible de mettre en œuvre des réseaux dans des cellules non adjacentes utilisant la même fréquence. Il convient que des cellules non adjacentes utilisant des récepteurs de classe 1 dont les centres géographiques sont séparés de moins de 40 m utilisent des canaux de radiofréquences différents. Il convient que des cellules non adjacentes utilisant des récepteurs de classe 2 dont les centres géographiques sont séparés de moins de 400 m utilisent des canaux de radiofréquences différents. Il convient que des cellules non adjacentes utilisant des récepteurs de classe 3 dont les centres géographiques sont séparés de moins de 4 000 m utilisent des canaux de radiofréquences différents.

NOTE 1 Voir la Figure 74 pour ce qui concerne la structure cellulaire utilisant des réseaux de bus de terrain à support radioélectrique couvrant un grand site industriel. Des exemples de topologies sont donnés dans la Figure 75 et dans la Figure 76. Les trois figures sont fournies à des fins d'explication et n'impliquent aucune mise en œuvre spécifique.

**Légende**

Anglais	Français
Frequency	Fréquence

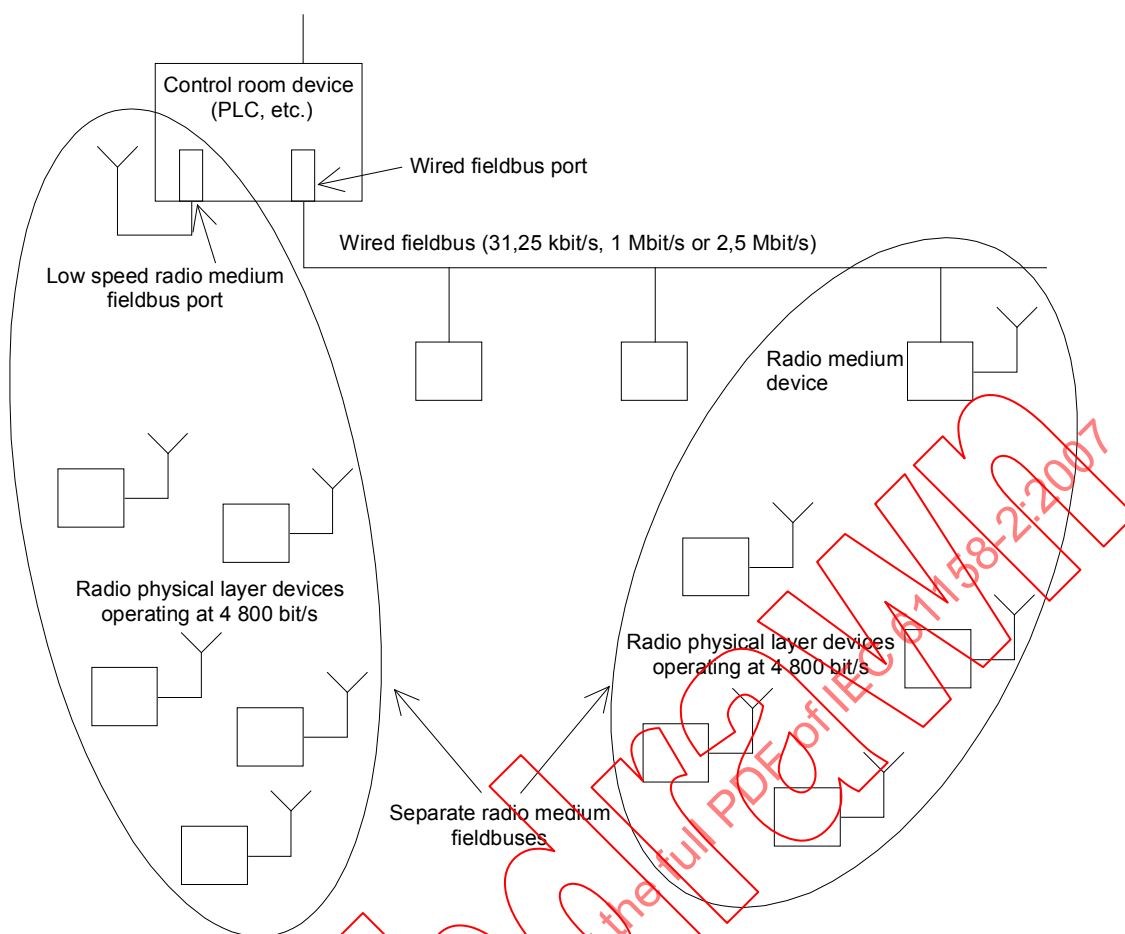
Figure 74 – Topologie de radiocommunication cellulaire et réutilisation de fréquences



Légende

Anglais	Français
Control room device (PLC, etc.)	Dispositif de salle de commande (automate programmable, etc.)
Wired fieldbus	Bus de terrain câblé
Radio medium device	Dispositif de support radioélectrique
4800 bit/s radio medium network	Réseau à support radioélectrique de 4800 bit/s

Figure 75 – Topologie de segment de radiocommunication entre des segments câblés



Légende

Anglais	Français
Control room device (PLC, etc.)	Dispositif de salle de commande (automate programmable, etc.)
Wired fieldbus port	Port de bus de terrain câblé
Wired fieldbus (31,25 kbit/s, 1 Mbit/s or 2,5 Mbit/s)	Bus de terrain câblé (31,25 kbit/s, 1 Mbit/s ou 2,5 Mbit/s)
Low speed Radio medium fieldbus port	Port de bus de terrain à support radioélectrique basse vitesse
Radio medium device	Dispositif de support radioélectrique
Radio physical layer devices operating at 4800 bit/s	Dispositifs radioélectriques de couche physique fonctionnant à 4800 bit/s
Separate radio medium fieldbuses	Bus de terrain à supports radioélectriques séparés

Figure 76 – Topologie de bus de terrain mixte à supports câblés et radioélectriques

NOTE 2 Le nombre de canaux et leurs fréquences disponibles dépendent des attributions de fréquences de chaque pays et, au sein de chaque pays, de l'utilisation du spectre radioélectrique dans la localité de l'installation spécifique. Du fait de l'utilisation historique du spectre radioélectrique, il ne sera pas possible, pendant un certain temps, d'harmoniser les fréquences internationales d'utilisation des bus de terrain, notamment aux fréquences inférieures nécessaires, pour des raisons techniques, dans les industries de transformation; par conséquent, il n'est pas possible, dans la présente norme, de spécifier les canaux de radiofréquences. Il convient que les ingénieurs d'application contactent leur organisme local de réglementation du spectre radioélectrique pour obtenir une copie de la documentation pertinente en matière de disponibilité des canaux et les spécifications d'utilisation de ces canaux.

NOTE 3 La présente norme ne définit pas la manière dont la porteuse est générée, modifiée ou communiquée, car cela dépend de chaque application spécifique, de la portée, des exigences d'alimentation et de la réglementation locale.

NOTE 4 Il convient que la conception du réseau tienne compte des différentes vitesses auxquelles les dispositifs de bus de terrain à supports radioélectriques basse vitesse et les dispositifs de bus de terrain utilisant d'autres supports fonctionnent dans une mise en œuvre particulière.

Règle 4: Il doit être possible d'utiliser des répéteurs radioélectriques pour étendre la portée d'une installation spécifique. Ces répéteurs peuvent utiliser différents canaux radioélectriques, physiques ou logiques, ou des fonctionnalités d'enregistrement et de retransmission sur le même canal après réception complète du message à réémettre.

17.5 Antennes

La MAU de bus de terrain à support radioélectrique doit pouvoir être utilisée avec une seule connexion d'antenne combinée à la fois pour le récepteur et l'émetteur.

NOTE Tout type d'antenne peut être utilisé, sous réserve des réglementations locales du spectre radioélectrique en vigueur à une installation donnée. Ceci comprend les antennes directionnelles, les antennes distantes et les antennes montées sur mât. La réglementation locale peut établir la limite supérieure de puissance apparente rayonnée (PAR) dans une quelconque direction qui peut être violée si des antennes directionnelles sont utilisées. Une antenne peut être partagée par plusieurs dispositifs ou services, à condition qu'elle traite de manière appropriée toutes les fréquences requises.

17.6 Inhibition du bavardage

La MAU doit comporter une capacité d'interruption automatique pour empêcher les signaux émis d'atteindre le support. Le matériel dans la MAU (sans message extérieur autre que la détection des signaux de sortie ou de fuite par la fonction d'émission) doit fournir une fenêtre d'une durée d'au moins 4 000 bd au cours de laquelle une trame normale peut être émise. Si la longueur de trame dépasse cette durée, la fonction d'inhibition du bavardage doit empêcher d'autres signaux en sortie d'atteindre le support et doit indiquer la détection de bavardage à la MDS ou à l'ETTD.

La MAU doit réinitialiser la fonction d'interruption automatique après une période de 400 kbd $\pm$ 50 %.

NOTE Ceci inhibe le trafic sur le bus pendant au maximum 1 % du temps disponible.

17.7 Interface radioélectrique commune

17.7.1 Fréquences des canaux

Les fréquences de porteuse des canaux à utiliser pour le bus de terrain à support radioélectrique doivent être définies par la réglementation et les documents d'homologation du pays d'utilisation final des applications spécifiques et par conséquent ne font pas partie du domaine d'application de la présente norme; cependant, elles pourraient être ajoutées comme rapport technique séparé résumant les exigences pour des pays spécifiques. Lorsqu'il est utilisé des techniques d'étalement de spectre en saut de fréquence, elles doivent satisfaire aux mêmes réglementations et documents d'homologation.

La précision en fréquence du canal sera telle que spécifiée par la réglementation locale en matière de spectre radioélectrique ou en indiquant une valeur delta inférieure ou égale à $\pm 0,002$ % de la fréquence centrale nominale entre cette fréquence et la fréquence centrale réelle sur les plages d'alimentation et de température de l'application et en sélectionnant la méthode qui donne la meilleure précision. Il est admis d'utiliser le contrôle automatique de fréquence au niveau du récepteur.

17.7.2 Caractéristiques de l'émetteur

Ces caractéristiques doivent dépendre de la réglementation locale et des spécifications d'homologation en vigueur dans le pays d'utilisation final. Il doit être possible de limiter la puissance apparente rayonnée par l'antenne au maximum admissible en vertu de la réglementation locale.

NOTE Ceci est exigé pour s'assurer qu'un dispositif radioélectrique voisin, qu'il soit ou non similaire, mais qui fonctionne, en vertu de la réglementation locale en matière de radiofréquences, sur une fréquence proche et à la puissance maximale autorisée, n'altère pas un signal de moindre puissance d'un dispositif de bus de terrain.

17.7.3 Performances du récepteur

NOTE 1 La sensibilité exigée du récepteur dépendra de la réglementation locale en matière de radiofréquences pour une installation donnée; cependant, cette spécification fournit les exigences minimales.

Un récepteur dans un dispositif qui satisfait à la présente norme doit être conforme à l'une des classes suivantes de performances des récepteurs.

NOTE 2 Ces classes permettent de s'assurer que le fournisseur indique clairement aux utilisateurs l'applicabilité d'un dispositif ou d'un ensemble de dispositifs particuliers à un usage spécifique.

NOTE 3 Le présent paragraphe couvre les performances d'un sous-système de récepteur radioélectrique uniquement en termes de perturbations radioélectriques types imposées via l'étage d'entrée du récepteur. Il ne concerne pas les performances du dispositif de bus de terrain dans son ensemble en matière de CEM.

Classe 1

Il doit être utilisé un montage d'essai constitué d'une portée de 40 m en visibilité de l'émetteur au récepteur. La puissance apparente rayonnée (PAR) de l'antenne de l'émetteur doit être réglée au maximum admissible par la réglementation locale pour le canal utilisé et une perte totale de 20 dB doit être réglée sur l'antenne de réception au niveau du connecteur d'antenne du récepteur.

- a) Avec cette configuration, un élément de communication utilisant des trames contenant 80 bits de données utilisateur aléatoires à un débit de trame maximal ne doit pas produire plus de 10 erreurs détectées dans 1 000 trames après toute correction d'erreurs sans voie de retour, dans les conditions suivantes d'environnement de bruit imposées sur le canal.
- 1) champ électromagnétique de 10 V/m, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-3, à un niveau de sévérité 3, mais sans utiliser une fréquence qui s'inscrit à plus ou moins 25 kHz de la fréquence centrale du canal du réseau de bus de terrain à support radioélectrique soumis à l'essai.
 - 2) transitoires électriques rapides, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-4 au niveau de sévérité 3.

Le taux d'erreur spécifié ci-dessus doit également être réalisé après, mais non pendant, les environnements de bruit suivants:

- i) décharge électrostatique de 8 kV sur une structure métallique exposée, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-2, au niveau de sévérité 3. Si le dispositif subit une perte temporaire de fonctions suite à cet essai, il doit récupérer de cette perte éventuelle sans intervention de l'opérateur, dans les 3 s qui suivent la fin de l'essai;
 - ii) essais de perturbation à haute fréquence, comme spécifié dans la CEI 60255-22-1:1988, classe III de tension d'essai (2,5 kV et 1 kV de valeurs crêtes de la première demi-alternance, respectivement en mode longitudinal et transversal).
- b) Avec cette même configuration, un élément de communication utilisant des trames contenant 80 bits de données utilisateur aléatoires à un débit de trame maximal ne doit pas produire plus de 10 erreurs détectées dans 60 000 trames dans les conditions suivantes: après application de toute correction d'erreur sans voie de retour, lorsqu'un signal à onde porteuse perturbatrice, non modulé ou modulé de manière asynchrone, à toute fréquence dans les gammes établies et aux intensités de champ correspondantes, comme présenté dans le Tableau 82.

Classe 2

Il doit être utilisé un montage d'essai constitué d'une portée de 400 m en visibilité de l'émetteur au récepteur. La puissance apparente rayonnée (PAR) de l'antenne de l'émetteur doit être réglée au maximum admissible par la réglementation locale pour le canal utilisé et une perte totale de 20 dB doit être réglée sur l'antenne de réception au niveau du connecteur d'antenne de réception.

- a) Avec cette configuration, un élément de communication utilisant des trames contenant 80 bits de données utilisateur aléatoires à un débit de trame maximal ne doit pas produire plus de 10 erreurs détectées dans 1 000 trames après toute correction d'erreurs sans voie de retour, dans les conditions suivantes d'environnement de bruit imposées sur le canal.
- 1) Champ électromagnétique de 10 V/m, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-3, à un niveau de sévérité 3, mais sans utiliser une fréquence qui s'inscrit à plus ou moins 25 kHz de la fréquence centrale du canal du réseau de bus de terrain à support radioélectrique soumis à l'essai;
 - 2) Transitoires électriques rapides, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-4 au niveau de sévérité 3.

Le taux d'erreur spécifié ci-dessus doit également être réalisé après, mais non pendant, les environnements de bruit suivants:

- i) décharge électrostatique de 8 kV sur une structure métallique exposée, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-2, au niveau de sévérité 3. Si le dispositif subit une perte temporaire de fonctions suite à cet essai, il doit récupérer de cette perte éventuelle sans intervention de l'opérateur, dans les 3 s qui suivent la fin de l'essai;
 - ii) essais de perturbation à haute fréquence, comme spécifié dans la CEI 60255-22-1:1988, classe III de tension d'essai (2,5 kV et 1 kV de valeurs crêtes de la première demi-alternance, respectivement en mode longitudinal et transversal).
- b) Avec cette même configuration, un élément de communication utilisant des trames contenant 80 bits de données utilisateur aléatoires à un débit de trame maximal ne doit pas produire plus de 10 erreurs détectées dans 60 000 trames dans les conditions suivantes: après application de toute correction d'erreur sans voie de retour, lorsqu'un signal à onde porteuse perturbatrice, non modulé ou modulé de manière asynchrone, à toute fréquence dans les gammes établies et aux intensités de champ correspondantes, comme présenté dans le Tableau 82.

Classe 3

Il doit être utilisé un montage d'essai constitué d'une portée de 4 km en visibilité directe de l'émetteur au récepteur. La puissance apparente rayonnée (PAR) de l'antenne de l'émetteur doit être réglée au maximum admissible par la réglementation locale pour le canal utilisé et une perte totale de 20 dB doit être réglée sur l'antenne de réception au niveau du connecteur d'antenne du récepteur.

- a) Avec cette configuration, un élément de communication utilisant des trames contenant 32 bits de données utilisateur aléatoires à un débit de trame maximal ne doit pas produire plus de 10 erreurs détectées dans 1 000 trames après toute correction d'erreurs sans voie de retour, dans les conditions suivantes d'environnement de bruit imposées sur le canal.
- 1) Champ électromagnétique de 10 V/m, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-3, à un niveau de sévérité 3, mais sans utiliser une fréquence qui s'inscrit à plus ou moins 25 kHz de la fréquence centrale du canal du réseau de bus de terrain à support radioélectrique soumis à l'essai.
 - 2) Transitoires électriques rapides, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-4 au niveau de sévérité 3.

Le taux d'erreur spécifié ci-dessus doit également être réalisé après, mais non pendant, les environnements de bruit suivants:

- i) décharge électrostatique de 8 kV sur une structure métallique exposée, comme spécifié dans la CEI 61000-4-2, au niveau de sévérité 3. Si le dispositif subit une perte temporaire de fonctions suite à cet essai, il doit récupérer de cette perte éventuelle sans intervention de l'opérateur, dans les 3 s qui suivent la fin de l'essai;
 - ii) essais de perturbation à haute fréquence, comme spécifié dans la CEI 60255-22-1:1988, classe III de tension d'essai (2,5 kV et 1 kV de valeurs crêtes de la première demi-alternance, respectivement en mode longitudinal et transversal).
- b) Avec cette même configuration d'essai, un élément de communication utilisant des trames contenant 32 bits de données utilisateur aléatoires à un débit de trame maximal ne doit

pas produire plus de 10 erreurs détectées dans 60 000 trames dans les conditions suivantes: après application de toute correction d'erreur sans voie de retour, lorsqu'un signal à onde porteuse perturbatrice, non modulé ou modulé de manière asynchrone, à toute fréquence dans les gammes établies et aux intensités de champ correspondantes, comme présenté dans le Tableau 82.

Tableau 82 – Fréquences perturbatrices pour les essais de performances des récepteurs

Gamme de fréquences en MHz	Intensité de champ en dB ($\mu\text{V/m}$)
25 à 800	120
800 à 4 000	110
Sauf si l'on se trouve dans la bande suivante autour de la fréquence centrale	Où l'intensité de champ perturbateur doit être
± 60	100
$\pm 0,3$	80
$\pm 0,2$	75
$\pm 0,1$	65
$< \pm 0,1$	20

NOTE Les valeurs indiquées dans ce tableau sont considérées suffisantes pour assurer le fonctionnement en présence de transmissions de radiodiffusion connues, de sources de puissance élevées, telles que les transmissions télévisuelles; il est cependant possible d'observer des niveaux bien plus élevés à proximité immédiate de certains émetteurs. Le signal de l'élément d'émission MAU de bus de terrain à support radioélectrique et la porteuse perturbatrice sont supposés avoir la même polarisation.

17.7.4 Post-traitement

NOTE Les performances des récepteurs peuvent être améliorées par un post-traitement, et, pour réduire le taux d'erreur sur les bits des PMPDU acheminées à la couche MDS des bus de terrain à support radioélectrique, les applications de récepteurs de MAU de bus de terrain à support radioélectrique peuvent inclure des algorithmes de post-traitement qui utilisent les caractéristiques connues et la structure des formes d'onde radioélectriques brutes exigées par la présente norme, à condition qu'il soit démontré que, dans le cas le plus défavorable, ces fonctions de post-traitement n'entraînent aucune violation de la synchronisation.

Le post-traitement, s'il est utilisé, ne doit enfreindre aucune contrainte de synchronisation exigée par la présente norme.

17.7.5 Temps de retournement émission/réception

Le temps de retournement de l'émission à la réception et de la réception à l'émission ne doit pas être supérieur à 10 ms.

17.7.6 Rejet de données aléatoires et circuit de détection de porteuse

La MAU de bus de terrain à support radioélectrique ne doit pas permettre la réception de données aléatoires en l'absence de porteuse.

NOTE Cette exigence peut être assurée par un circuit de détection de porteuse ou par des méthodes redondantes de détection de bits.

18 Type 2: Unité de liaison au support: support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s, en mode tension

18.1 Généralités

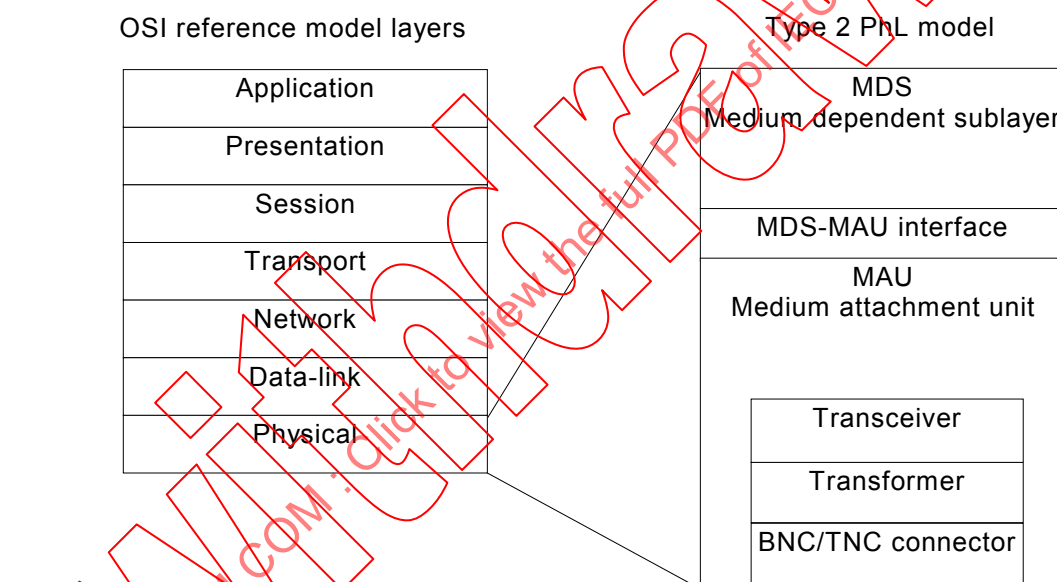
Une seule méthode de connexion est spécifiée pour le support câblé coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension. Il est admis d'utiliser d'autres méthodes mais elles doivent être conformes aux mêmes caractéristiques de signalisation et de performance. Si la méthode de connexion à support câblé coaxial spécifiée est utilisée, elle doit intégrer un couplage par transformateur

au niveau du nœud et il doit être utilisé une prise passive pour connexion au support. La prise doit inclure une ligne secondaire de 1 m.

La variante de PhL à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension, doit être connectée au support câblé coaxial avec des segments de réseaux allant jusqu'à 1 km de long et comprenant jusqu'à 48 nœuds (voir 18.5).

NOTE La couche physique peut être mise en œuvre de manière à permettre une certification pour un fonctionnement dans des atmosphères explosives sans sacrifier la distance ou réduire le nombre de nœuds. La présente norme n'inclut pas d'exigence pour la certification de la sécurité intrinsèque mais cherche à exclure des conditions ou situations qui pourraient empêcher la certification de la sécurité intrinsèque.

La MAU doit comprendre un émetteur-récepteur, un transformateur et un connecteur comme illustré en Figure 77. L'émetteur-récepteur doit utiliser les signaux définis dans l'interface MDS-MAU pour générer ceux qui sont nécessaires pour piloter le transformateur. La connexion au support doit être effectuée par l'intermédiaire de connecteurs BNC ou TNC, comme spécifié en Annexe F. L'isolation de la masse doit être assurée par l'intermédiaire du transformateur, comme spécifié en 18.3.



Légende

Anglais	Français
OSI reference model layers	Couches du modèle de référence OSI
Application	Application
Presentation	Présentation
Session	Session
Transport	Transport
Network	Réseau
Data-Link	Liaison de données
Physical	Physique,
Type 2 PhL model	Modèle de PhL de Type 2
MDS Medium Dependent Sublayer	MDS:Sous-couche dépendante du support
MDS-MAU interface	Interface MDS – MAU
MAU Medium Attachment Unit	MAU: Unité de liaison au Support

Anglais	Français
Transceiver	Émetteur-récepteur
Transformer	Transformateur
BNC/TNC Connector	Connecteur BNC/TNC

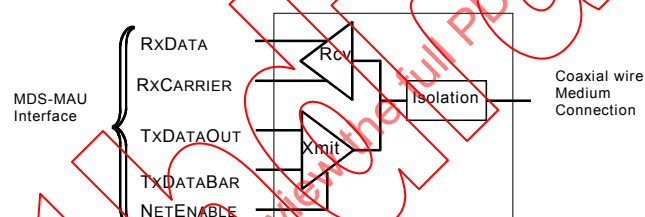
Figure 77 – Composantes de la variante de PhL à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension

18.2 Émetteur-récepteur: support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension

Lorsqu'il est utilisé un support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension, l'émission et la réception des signaux L (bas) et H (haut) doivent être effectuées au moyen d'un émetteur-récepteur à câble coaxial. La partie émettrice de l'émetteur-récepteur doit obtenir de l'interface MDS-MAU des signaux d'émission représentant des symboles H et L. Elle doit émettre sur le câble, via le transformateur d'isolation, un signal à extrémité unique et isolé à la masse. Le complément de cette fonction doit être réalisé dans le récepteur qui doit fournir à l'interface MDS-MAU les indications RXDATA et RXCARRIER.

Un synoptique fonctionnel décrivant les composantes de la sous-couche MAU est présenté en Figure 78.

NOTE 1 La Figure H.3 présente un exemple d'émetteur-récepteur redondant et la Figure H.4 un exemple d'émetteur-récepteur à un seul canal.



NOTE Ensemble, les blocs marqués Xmit et Isolation représentent l'émetteur.

Légende

Anglais	Français
MDS-MAU Interface	Interface MDS – MAU
Rcv	Récept.
Xmit	Emiss.
Isolation	Isolation
Coaxial wire Medium connection	Connexion du support à câble coaxial

Figure 78 – Synoptique de MAU à câble coaxial

La Figure 79 illustre un schéma fonctionnel simplifié de l'émetteur.

NOTE 2 Pour plus de détails, se reporter aux schémas donnés pour exemple en Figure H.3 et en Figure H.4.

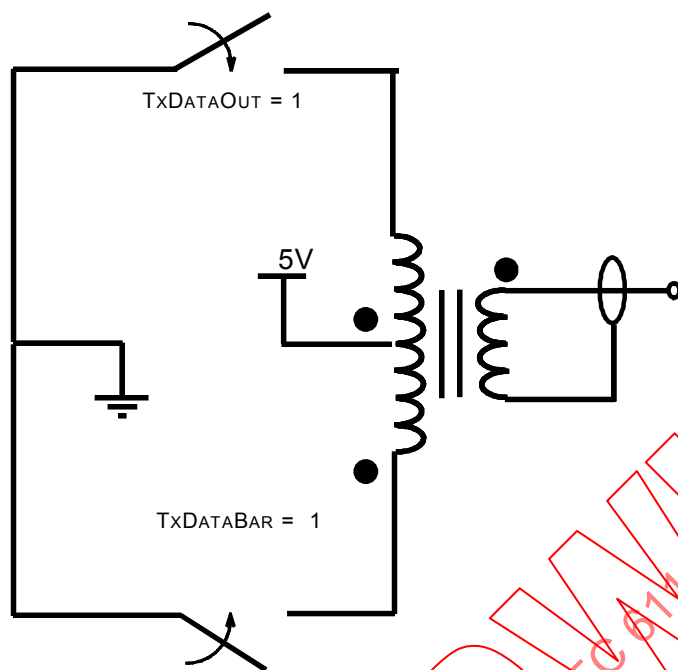
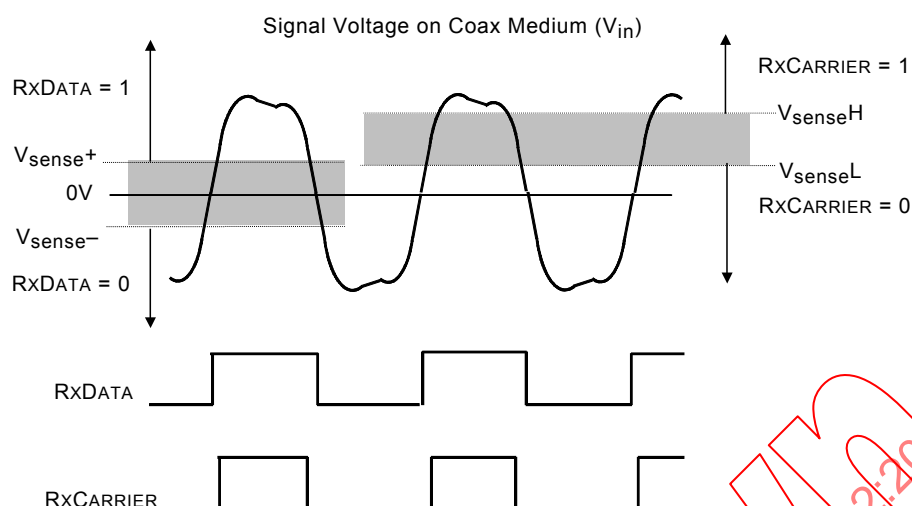


Figure 79 – Emetteur-récepteur de MAU à câble coaxial

Trois signaux doivent être disponibles à l'interface MDS-MAU pour contrôler l'émission sur le support: TxDATAOUT, TxDATABAR et NETENABLE. Ces trois signaux d'émission, lorsqu'ils sont connectés à l'émetteur-récepteur, doivent définir les symboles physiques présents sur le câble. La relation entre ces lignes de demande de l'émetteur-récepteur et les signaux sur le support, doit être telle que spécifiée dans le Tableau 83.

Tableau 83 – Définition des lignes de commande d'émission – support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension

TxDataOut	TxDataBar	NetEnable	Symbole physique	Signal sur le support
sans effet (x)	sans effet (x)	faux (0)	aucun	Emetteur non actif, voir Tableau 86.
faux (0)	faux (0)	vrai (1)	aucun	Emetteur non actif, voir Tableau 86.
vrai (1)	faux (0)	vrai (1)	H	Tension + (positive), voir Tableau 86.
faux (0)	vrai (1)	vrai (1)	L	Tension – (négative), voir Tableau 86.
vrai (1)	vrai (1)	vrai (1)	non autorisé (voir note)	Non autorisé (voir note)
NOTE Cet état risque d'endommager les circuits de l'émetteur.				



NOTE Les parties grisées ci-dessus ne sont pas définies.

Légende

Anglais	Français
Signal voltage on coaxial medium (V_{in})	Tension du signal sur support à câble coaxial (V_{in})

Figure 80 – Fonctionnement du récepteur avec MAU à câble coaxial

Deux signaux d'indication doivent être fournis au niveau de l'interface MDS-MAU à partir de la MAU, avec RxDATA et RxCARRIER, comme présenté dans le Tableau 83. La relation entre la tension du signal sur le câble et ces deux signaux pour les seuils nominaux, doit être telle que présentée dans le Tableau 84 et dans le Tableau 85. Les valeurs indiquées dans le Tableau 84 et dans le Tableau 85 sont définies dans le Tableau 87. Le niveau d'entrée (V_{in}), comme illustré en Figure 80, doit être défini comme étant la tension mesurée entre le conducteur central du câble coaxial et le blindage du câble coaxial. Toutes les polarités doivent être définies en termes de tension sur le conducteur central du câble coaxial (V_{in+} ou V_{in-}), en référence au blindage du câble coaxial.

Tableau 84 – Définitions des sorties de données du récepteur: support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension

Niveau d'entrée au support	RxDATA	Commentaires
V_{in} est plus positif que la limite positive de sensibilité des données (V_{sense+})	vrai (1)	Voir Tableau 87
V_{in} est plus négatif que la limite négative de sensibilité des données (V_{sense-})	faux (0)	Voir Tableau 87
V_{in} se trouve entre les limites de sensibilité négative et positive des données	indéfini	Tient compte de l'hystérésis et de la tolérance

**Tableau 85 – Définitions des sorties de porteuses du récepteur:
support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension**

Niveau d'entrée au support	RxCARRIER	Commentaires
V_{in} est plus positif que la limite haute de sensibilité de la porteuse (V_{senseH})	vrai (1)	Voir Tableau 87
V_{in} est inférieur à la limite basse (ou négative) de sensibilité de la porteuse (V_{senseL})	faux (0)	Voir Tableau 87
V_{in} se trouve entre les limites haute et basse de sensibilité de la porteuse	indéfini	Tient compte de l'hystérésis et de la tolérance

L'interface du support doit être conforme aux exigences données dans le Tableau 86, le Tableau 87 et le Tableau 88.

Tableau 86 – Interface du support à câble coaxial – Spécifications d'émission

Spécification	Limites / caractéristiques	Commentaires
Niveau d'émission (niveau Tx) crête à crête	$8,2 \text{ V} \pm 1,3 \text{ V}^{a, b, c}$	Voir Figure 81
Asymétrie du niveau d'émission (entre 0 et 1)	$< 450 \text{ mV max}^{b, d}$	
Distorsion du signal d'émission (surtension, statisme, suroscillation)	$\pm 10 \%^{a, e}$	Voir Figure 81
Instabilité d'émission totale (gigue Tx)	$< 5 \text{ ns}$	Voir Figure 81
Impédance de sortie de l'émetteur	$20 \Omega \text{ max}$	
Niveau de bruit maximal de l'émetteur à l'arrêt	5 mV max^a	
Temps depuis NETENABLE "faux" au niveau de bruit d'émetteur "non actif"	400 ns^a	
Limite de dérive	1 V/ns max^a	Voir Figure 81
Limite de croissance/décroissance (10 % à 90 % du signal crête à crête)	30 ns max^a	Voir Figure 81

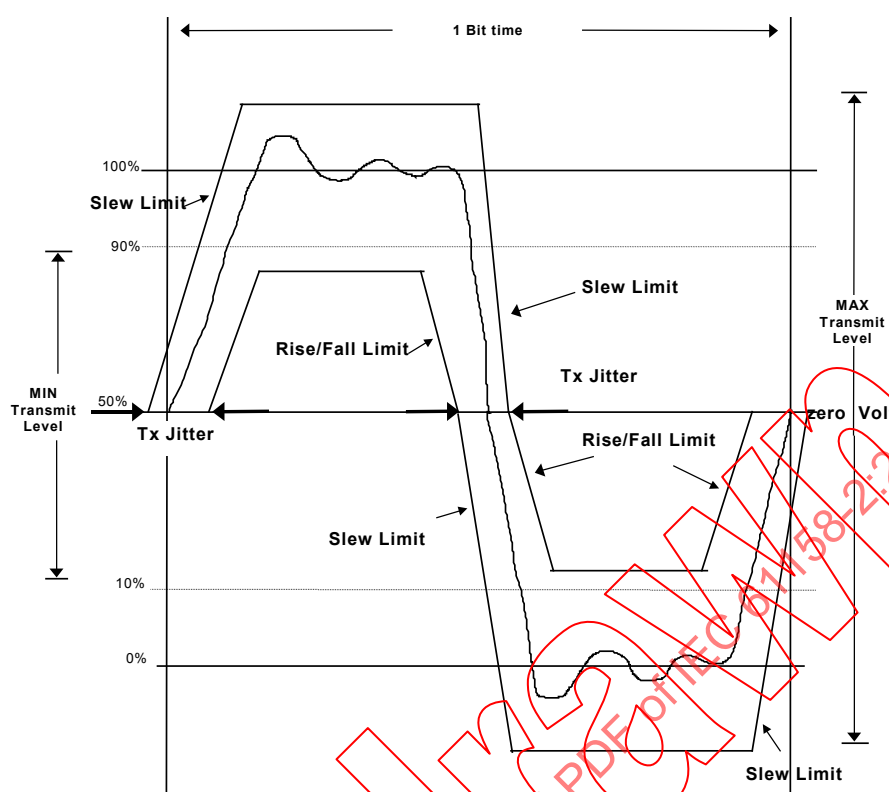
^a Il doit s'agir d'une tension crête à crête mesurée sur une charge de $37,5 \Omega$ de 0 MHz à 20 MHz.

^b Le niveau d'émission doit être mesuré au point médian estimé entre toute crête ou creux, tant à la partie supérieure qu'à la partie inférieure de la forme d'onde.

^c Ce niveau doit être inférieur de 0,5 V lorsqu'il est mesuré dans un diagramme en œil relatif au pilotage d'une prise pour un signal minimal de 6,4 V (crête à crête).

^d Cette valeur doit être mesurée comme la différence absolue entre la valeur absolue du niveau d'émission pour 1 (tension +) et la valeur absolue du niveau d'émission pour 0 (tension -), mesurée sur une charge de $37,5 \Omega$ de 0 MHz à 20 MHz.

^e Les niveaux doivent être calculés en fonction de la tension d'émission réelle mesurée.



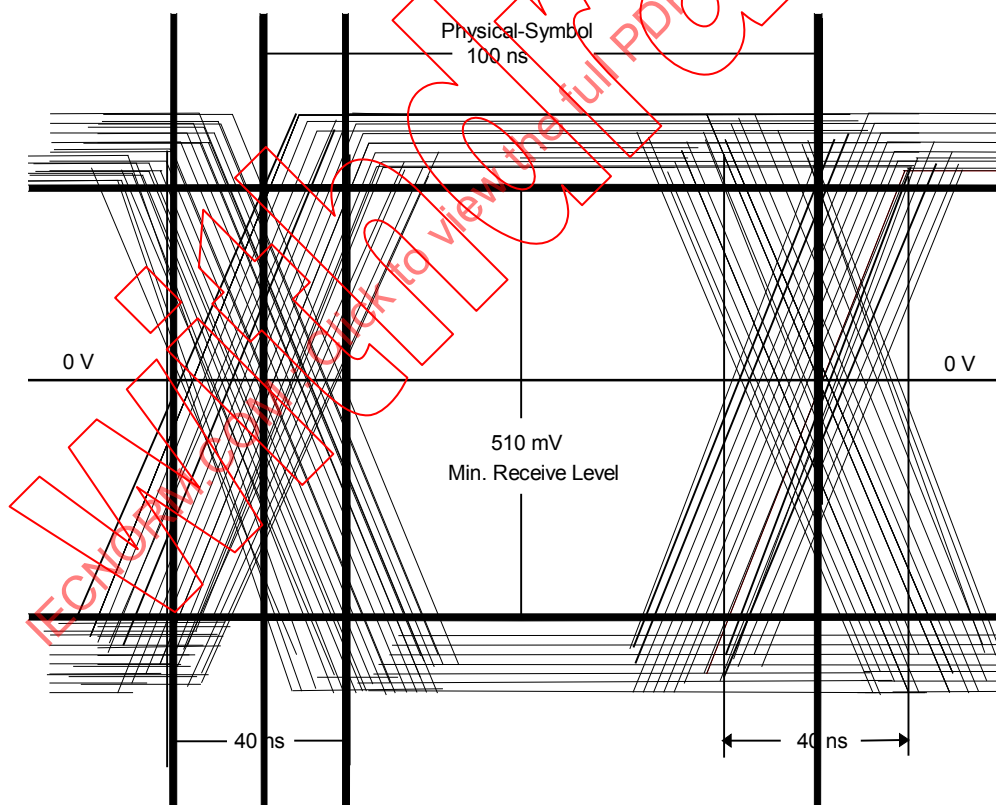
Légende

Anglais	Français
1 Bit time	1 temps binaire
Slew limit	Limite de dérive
Min transmit level	Niveau d'émission min.
Tx Jitter	Gigue Tx
Rise/Fall limit	Limite de croissance/décroissance
Max transmit level	Niveau d'émission max.
Zero volts	Zéro volt

Figure 81 – Masque d'émission de MAU à câble coaxial

Tableau 87 – Interface du support à câble coaxial – Réception

Spécification	Limites / caractéristiques	Commentaires
Niveau minimal du signal de réception (crête à crête)	510 mV	Dans le diagramme en œil de la Figure 82
Tension de seuil de données	zéro V	Les limites négatives et positives de sensibilité tiennent compte de l'hystérésis et de la tolérance
Limites négatives de sensibilité des données (V_{sense-})	- 140 mV	Tient compte de l'hystérésis et de la tolérance
Limites positives de sensibilité des données (V_{sense+})	+140 mV	Tient compte de l'hystérésis et de la tolérance
Limite basse de sensibilité de la porteuse (V_{senseL})	+ 23 mV	Tient compte de l'hystérésis et de la tolérance
Limite haute de sensibilité de la porteuse (V_{senseH})	+ 255 mV	Tient compte de l'hystérésis et de la tolérance
Instabilité du modèle de signal RxData (crête à crête) pour $V_{in} > 510$ mV	< 40 ns	Dans le diagramme en œil de la Figure 82 doit être "vrai" si $V_{in} >$ niveau minimal du signal de réception



Légende

Anglais	Français
Physical symbol	Symbole physique
Min. receive level	Niveau de réception min.

Figure 82 – Masque de réception de MAU à câble coaxial

Tableau 88 – Interface du support à câble coaxial – Aspects généraux

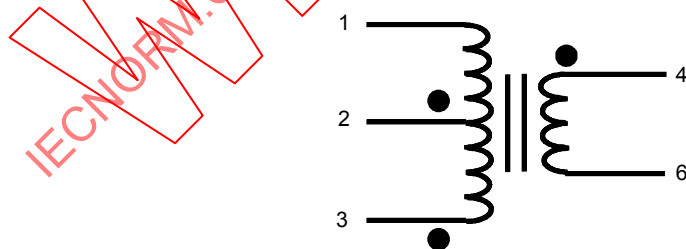
Spécification	Limites / caractéristiques	Commentaires
Couplage	Couplage par transformateur	Masse isolée
Isolation à 0 Hz	500 k Ω min ^a	Le blindage doit être couplé par R/C à la terre locale
Impédance d'entrée (Emission non active)	0,2 dB de perte due à la prise	(Voir la Figure 86) Alternative au modèle d'impédance
Modèle d'impédance (Emission non active)		Alternative à l'impédance d'entrée
Inductance série	0,56 μ H $\pm$ 20 % ^b	Mise sous tension
Inductance parallèle	425 μ H $\pm$ 20 % ^b	Mise sous tension
Capacité parallèle	50 pF max ^b 55 pF max ^b	Sous tension Hors tension
Résistance parallèle	3,9 k Ω $\pm$ 20 % ^b 3,4 k Ω $\pm$ 20 % ^b	Sous tension Hors tension
Connecteur	BNC ou TNC	Voir l'Annexe F pour plus d'informations
^a La valeur minimale du condensateur doit être de 0,01 μ F/500 V. Cette exigence s'applique à toutes les interfaces de supports connectés au réseau. ^b Toutes les impédances spécifiées doivent être satisfaites, l'émetteur étant à l'état non actif et avec mise sous tension ou hors-tension, comme indiqué. Toutes les impédances spécifiées doivent être satisfaites sur l'ensemble de la plage dynamique du récepteur, du niveau de réception minimal au niveau d'émission maximal.		

NOTE 3 Un exemple de conception de référence pour un émetteur-récepteur avec MAU à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension est présenté en H.1.1.

18.3 Transformateur pour support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension

NOTE 1 Le transformateur assure le couplage des signaux d'émission et de réception vers et en provenance du support. Une caractéristique importante du transformateur est qu'il assure l'isolation galvanique ou l'isolation à la terre entre nœuds. Ceci prévient des tensions en mode commun importantes dues aux différences de tension par rapport à la masse entre nœuds. Le transformateur évite également les boucles de masse importantes qui peuvent être sensibles au couplage magnétique à basse fréquence.

La Figure 83 illustre la représentation schématique du transformateur.

**Figure 83 – Schéma du transformateur**

Les transformateurs de couplage doivent être conformes aux exigences spécifiées dans le Tableau 89.

Tableau 89 – Spécifications électriques de transformateur pour support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension

Spécification	Min.	Type	Max.
Inductance (mesurée à 40 kHz et 100 mV)	350 μ H	750 μ H	
Capacité d'enroulement (mesurée à 10 MHz)	16,0 pF	24,8 pF	29,5 pF
Résistance parallèle (pertes dans le fer)	8,0 k Ω	9,1 k Ω	11,2 k Ω
Inductance de fuite	255 nH	441 nH	625 nH
Isolation galvanique (à 47-63 Hz, inférieure à 1,0 mA)	500 V _{eff} . pendant 60 s 600 V _{eff} pendant 1 s		
Fréquence de résonance	1,0 MHz	1,4 MHz	1,8 MHz

L'inductance de fuite doit être mesurée entre les broches 1 et 2, les broches 4 et 6 étant reliées ensemble. L'isolation galvanique doit être mesurée au moyen des broches 1, 2 et 3 reliées ensemble et les broches 4 et 6 reliées ensemble. L'isolation galvanique exigée doit être satisfaite de la broche 1 à la broche 4, de la broche 1 au noyau et de la broche 4 au noyau. Toutes les autres mesures doivent être effectuées entre les broches 4 et 6, la broche 2 étant reliée à la masse de l'instrument.

NOTE 2 Un exemple de conception de référence pour un transformateur de MAU à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension est présenté en H.1.2.

18.4 Connecteur de support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension

Le connecteur utilisé sur un nœud donné doit être une prise jack de type BNC ou TNC, conformément aux exigences de la présente norme (voir l'Annexe F).

18.5 Topologie pour un support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension

Un segment doit être constitué d'une architecture ligne principale-ligne secondaire. La ligne principale doit être réalisée en câble coaxial et terminée aux deux extrémités par une résistance de $75 \Omega \pm 5 \%$.

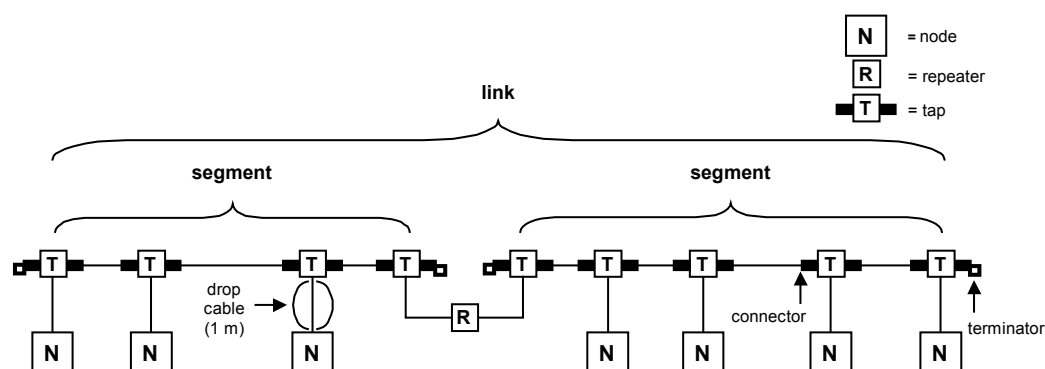
NOTE 1 Ceci permet de limiter les réflexions des signaux émis aux extrémités du câble de ligne principale.

Les nœuds doivent être connectés au réseau par des câbles de dérivation. Les câbles de dérivation doivent être connectés à la ligne principale au moyen de prises spécifiées. Ces prises doivent comprendre des circuits passifs permettant la connexion à la ligne principale tout en réduisant les réflexions dues aux charges de connexion.

Les nœuds connectés à un réseau à commande déterministe ne doivent pas terminer directement à la masse le blindage du câble de dérivation. La terminaison du blindage doit être réalisée conformément au Tableau 88. Pour terminer correctement le blindage de chaque câble de dérivation, on doit utiliser une résistance connectée en parallèle à un condensateur de 0,01 μ F. La R/C en parallèle doit être connectée du blindage à la masse.

Un exemple de topologie est présenté en Figure 84.

NOTE 2 Dans cet exemple, deux segments sont connectés par un répéteur pour constituer une liaison à sept nœuds.



Légende

Anglais	Français
N = node	N = nœud
R = repeater	R = répéteur
T = tap	T = prise
Link	Liaison
segment	segment
Drop cable (1 m)	Câble de dérivation (1 m)
connector	Connecteur
terminator	Terminateur

Figure 84 – Exemple de topologie de câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension

Les limites de cette topologie sont présentées en Figure 85. Il est possible de connecter jusqu'à 48 nœuds à un segment d'une longueur allant jusqu'à 1 km, comme illustré en Figure 85. Le compromis entre distance et nombre de nœuds est illustré en Figure 85. S'il est requis une combinaison de nœuds et de distances qui dépasse les limites du segment, on doit utiliser un dispositif répéteur de PhL (voir l'Annexe G). Pour ce qui concerne le support, un dispositif répéteur de PhL doit être similaire, du point de vue électrique et mécanique, à un nœud. Le dispositif répéteur de PhL doit nécessiter une prise pour chaque segment auquel il est connecté et il peut par conséquent être connecté n'importe où sur chaque segment. Les répéteurs ne doivent pas être placés de sorte à nécessiter plusieurs connexions entre segments.

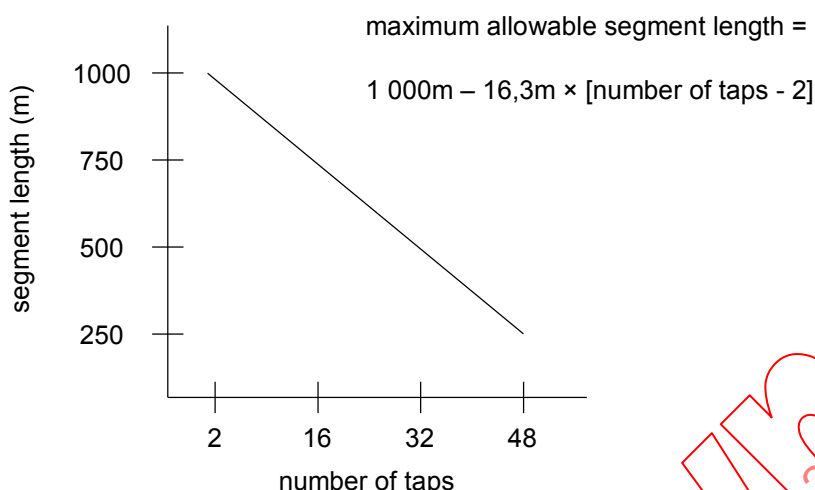
Toute topologie qui prend en charge un chemin unique entre deux entités PhL quelconques doit pouvoir être mise en œuvre. Les trajectoires multiples entre des entités PhL ne doivent pas être autorisées par une application qui revendique la conformité au présent article.

Cette variante de PhL peut être associée à d'autres variantes de PhL sur le même nœud, ou sur des nœuds différents, en utilisant la RM (machine répéteur) et/ou des dispositifs répéteurs de PhL (Voir l'Annexe G).

NOTE 3 Pour plus d'informations sur les répéteurs, voir l'Annexe G.

NOTE 4 Ces limites reposent sur les spécifications de câblage de 18.7.1.

La Figure 85 doit s'appliquer lorsqu'il est utilisé des prises comme spécifié en 18.6 et le câble coaxial de ligne principale, comme spécifié dans le Tableau 91. Les câbles ayant des caractéristiques d'affaiblissement autres que celles données dans le Tableau 91 peuvent être utilisés si un multiplicateur de longueur de segment approprié est mis en œuvre conformément à la Figure 85.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Segment length (m)	Longueur de segment (m)
Maximum allowable segment length	Longueur de segment maximale admissible
Number of taps	Nombre de prises

Figure 85 – Limites de topologie d'un support à câble coaxial

18.6 Prises pour un support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension

18.6.1 Description

La prise doit comporter des circuits passifs qui compensent les surcharges supplémentaires du nœud connecté.

NOTE 1 De cette manière, on obtient une perte d'émission moindre plutôt qu'une discontinuité de l'impédance et par conséquent une réflexion sur la ligne principale pour chaque nœud.

Une prise doit être utilisée pour tous les nœuds qui satisfont à la méthode de connexion spécifiée du support à câble coaxial.

NOTE 2 Un exemple de conception de référence pour une prise de MAU à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension est présenté en H.1.3.

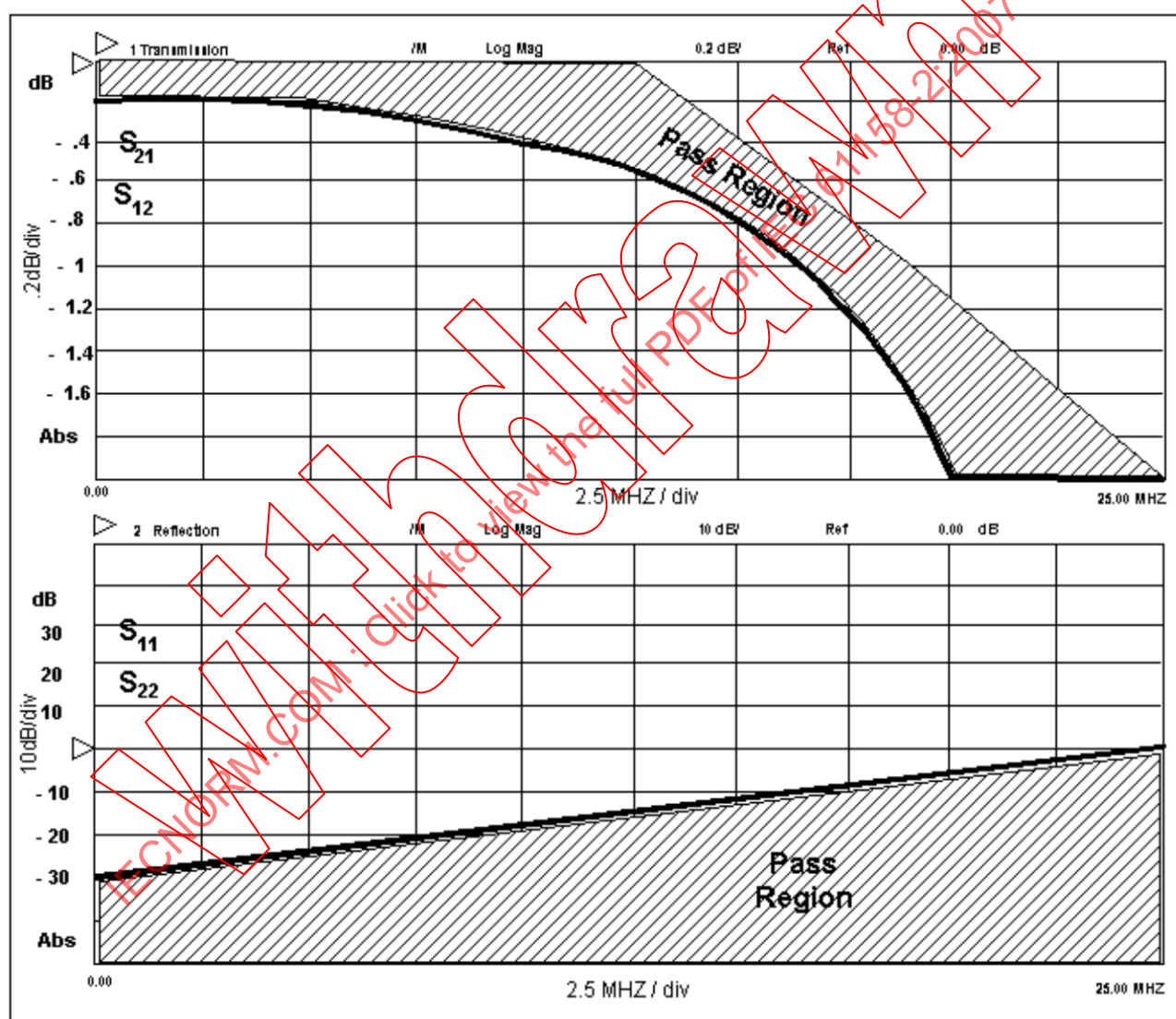
18.6.2 Exigences

La variante de prise normalisée doit permettre des connexions au moyen de prises jack BNC au niveau de la ligne principale et d'une fiche BNC au niveau du nœud; la variante de prise étanche IP67 doit permettre des connexions de prise jack TNC au niveau de la ligne principale et d'une fiche TNC ou BNC au niveau du nœud, conformément aux exigences de la présente norme (voir l'Annexe F). Un câble de ligne secondaire de 1 m de longueur, du type spécifié, doit être utilisé dans la prise pour compenser correctement le câble de ligne secondaire.

NOTE 1 Les exigences électriques de la prise sont définies par les caractéristiques émises et reflétées telles que perçues par la ligne principale lorsque l'accès de la prise est correctement connecté par la ligne secondaire requise et une charge équivalente au nœud. Bien que la prise dispose de trois accès, elle peut être perçue comme un dispositif à deux accès lorsqu'elle est configurée de cette manière. Le terme "charge équivalente au nœud" signifie une charge qui représente l'impédance nominale d'un nœud. Une charge équivalente au nœud peut être constituée à partir de composants discrets à condition que la charge équivalente remplisse l'ensemble des exigences du présent article.

Les exigences d'émission et de réflexion doivent être telles que présentées en Figure 86. Les paramètres de dispersion (S_{11} , S_{22} , S_{12} et S_{21}) doivent être utilisés pour définir les exigences électriques de la prise. S_{11} et S_{22} doivent être utilisés pour définir les caractéristiques de réflexion du connecteur de ligne principale d'une prise lorsque la ligne secondaire est terminée par une charge équivalente au nœud et que l'autre connecteur de ligne principale est terminé par un terminateur de ligne principale ($75 \Omega \pm 5 \%$). S_{12} et S_{21} doivent être utilisés pour définir les caractéristiques d'émission de la prise d'un connecteur de ligne principale à l'autre, le câble de dérivation étant terminé par une charge équivalente au nœud. Les caractéristiques d'émission et de réflexion de toutes les prises doivent s'inscrire dans la zone d'acceptation définie en Figure 86.

NOTE 2 La prise est un dispositif réciproque ($S_{11}=S_{22}$, $S_{12}=S_{21}$), de sorte que l'orientation des accès de ligne principale est arbitraire.



Légende

Anglais	Français
1 Transmission	1 Emission
Log mag	Log mag
Pass region	Zone d'acceptation
Reflection	Réflexion

Figure 86 – Caractéristiques électriques d'une prise de support à câble coaxial

18.6.3 Ligne secondaire

Le câble de ligne secondaire doit être conforme aux limites et caractéristiques indiquées dans le Tableau 90.

Tableau 90 – Spécifications du câble coaxial de ligne secondaire

Spécification	Limites / caractéristiques
Blindage	Blindage à double tresse, chaque tresse ayant une couverture de 95 %
Impédance	$75 \Omega \pm 3 \Omega$
Retard	$4,1 \text{ ns/m} \pm 0,1 \text{ ns/m}$
Affaiblissement (dB/100 m) à	
1 MHz	1,25
5 MHz	3,01
10 MHz	4,33
25 MHz	6,89
50 MHz	10,1
Affaiblissement de réflexion de structure	23 dB au moins, de 5 MHz à 50 MHz
Résistance en courant continu du conducteur	92 Ω /km nominal
Résistance en courant continu du blindage	10,5 Ω /km nominal
Capacité nominale	54,13 pF/m

18.7 Ligne principale pour un support à câble coaxial de 5 Mbit/s en mode tension

18.7.1 Câble de ligne principale

Le câble de ligne principale doit satisfaire aux spécifications du Tableau 91.

Tableau 91 – Spécifications du câble coaxial de ligne principale

Spécification	Limites / caractéristiques
Blindage	Blindage quadruple
Impédance	$75 \Omega \pm 3 \Omega$
Retard	$4,1 \text{ ns/m} \pm 0,1 \text{ ns/m}$
Affaiblissement (dB/100 m) à	
1 MHz	1,15
2 MHz	1,25
5 MHz	1,48
10 MHz	1,94
20 MHz	2,82
50 MHz	4,49
Affaiblissement de réflexion de structure	23 dB au moins, de 5 MHz à 50 MHz
Résistance en courant continu du conducteur	92 Ω /km nominal
Résistance en courant continu du blindage	24 Ω /km nominal
Capacité nominale	53,15 pF/m

Le câble de ligne secondaire spécifié dans le Tableau 90 peut également être utilisé comme câble de ligne principale sur des longueurs limitées (jusqu'à 10 m par segment).

18.7.2 Connecteurs

La connexion à la ligne principale doit utiliser une fiche BNC ou TNC, conformément aux exigences de la présente norme (voir l'Annexe F).

19 Type 2: Unité de liaison au support: support optique 5 Mbit/s

19.1 Généralités

NOTE 1 Le présent paragraphe spécifie la variante de support optique et de PhL. Des informations importantes concernant la conception de la connexion de la PhL sont fournies.

NOTE 2 La méthode de connexion du support à fibre optique définit trois variantes de supports à fibre optique et de PhL. La première variante concerne les supports à fibre optique et PhL exigés pour un système de courte portée, pour des distances (nominales) allant jusqu'à 300 m, la seconde variante concerne des supports à fibre optique et PhL exigés pour un système de moyenne portée, pour des distances (nominales) allant jusqu'à 7 km et la dernière variante concerne des supports à fibre optique et PhL exigés pour un système de longue portée, pour des distances (nominales) allant jusqu'à 20 km.

La méthode de connexion du support à fibre optique doit comporter une topologie point à point ou annulaire en duplex intégral, utilisant un émetteur et un récepteur à chaque extrémité d'une paire de fibres.

Pour toutes les variantes, les méthodes de connexion du support à fibre optique doivent être définies comme étant soit une liaison point à point, soit une topologie annulaire. La liaison point à point doit relier des nœuds d'extrémité entre eux, des nœuds d'extrémité et des dispositifs répéteurs de PhL ou des répéteurs de PhL entre eux. La topologie annulaire doit connecter entre eux deux ou plusieurs nœuds ou dispositifs qui utilisent la machine répéteur d'anneau (RRM – ring repeater machine), décrite en Annexe G. Le passage entre support et topologies doit exiger l'utilisation de dispositifs répéteurs de PhL. La mise en œuvre doit utiliser soit un concentrateur actif, une étoile active ou un anneau actif. Un concentrateur actif ou une étoile active doivent comprendre au minimum deux ports d'accès.

NOTE 3 La couche physique peut être mise en œuvre de manière à permettre une certification pour un fonctionnement dans des atmosphères explosives sans sacrifier la distance ou réduire le nombre de nœuds. La présente norme n'inclut pas d'exigences pour la certification de la sécurité intrinsèque mais cherche à exclure des conditions ou situations qui pourraient empêcher la certification de la sécurité intrinsèque.

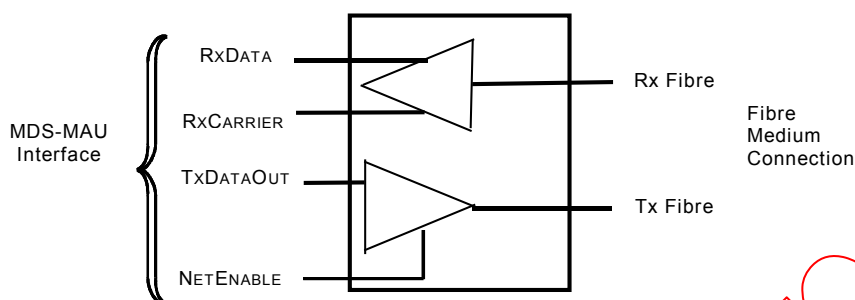
La MAU à support à fibre optique doit comprendre l'émetteur-récepteur à fibre optique et le connecteur à fibre optique. L'émetteur-récepteur doit utiliser les signaux définis dans l'interface MDS-MAU pour générer ceux qui sont nécessaires pour piloter l'émetteur-récepteur. La connexion au support doit être effectuée par l'intermédiaire de connecteurs à fibre optique.

19.2 Emetteur-récepteur de support optique de 5 Mbit/s

Pour prendre en charge un support à fibre optique, un émetteur à fibre optique doit émettre et recevoir de la MDS des signaux L (bas) et H (haut). La partie émetteur de l'émetteur-récepteur doit obtenir des signaux d'émission de l'interface MDS-MAU, représentant les symboles H et L, et émet, au moyen d'un émetteur-récepteur directement couplé, des signaux 'lumière active' (pour H) ou 'lumière inactive' (pour L). Ceci signifie que l'émetteur-récepteur doit être capable d'émettre et de recevoir la signalisation PhL à des fréquences allant de zéro (pas de transitions de symbole Ph) à 10 MHz minimum.

NOTE Les émetteurs-récepteurs directement couplés sont nécessaires, car les sous-couches MDS et MAU, telles que spécifiées, ne permettent pas l'insertion et la suppression d'une séquence de repos lorsqu'il n'y a pas de données L ou H à envoyer, c'est-à-dire au cours des périodes où il n'y a aucune activité de symbole Ph.

Cette fonction doit être complétée dans le récepteur, qui doit fournir les indications RxDATA et RxCARRIER à l'interface MDS-MAU, comme présenté en Figure 87, qui est un synoptique fonctionnel décrivant les composants de la MAU.



Légende

Anglais	Français
MDS-MAU interface	Interface MDS – MAU
Rx Fibre	Fibre Rx
Tx Fibre	Fibre Tx
Fibre medium connection	Connexion de support à fibre optique

Figure 87 – Synoptique de MAU, support à fibre optique de 5 Mbit/s

Les signaux d'émission doivent être tels que présentés dans le Tableau 92.

Tableau 92 – Définitions des lignes de commande d'émission – Support à fibre optique de 5 Mbit/s

TxDATAOUT	NETENABLE	Symbole physique	Signal sur support à fibre optique
sans effet (x)	faux (0)	sans effet (x)	lumière inactive
faux (0)	vrai (1)	L	lumière inactive
vrai (1)	vrai (1)	H	lumière active

Les limites d'émission et de réception de l'interface à fibre optique doivent être conformes au Tableau 93.

Tableau 93 – Interface de support à fibre optique de 5,0 Mbit/s

Spécification	Limites / caractéristiques	Commentaires
Instabilité du modèle d'entrée	40 ns crête à crête max.	Mesurée SUR RxDATA
Instabilité totale en émission	< 5 ns crête à crête	

19.3 Topologie de support optique de 5 Mbit/s

La topologie des supports définie pour une variante de connexion de support à fibre optique, doit être une liaison point à point ou une topologie annulaire. La topologie point à point doit être utilisée entre deux entités PhL quelconques conformes aux exigences du présent article et qui n'utilisent pas la RRM. La topologie annulaire doit être utilisée entre deux entités PhL quelconques conformes aux exigences du présent article qui utilisent la RRM (voir l'Annexe G). Le passage entre ces deux topologies doit nécessiter l'utilisation d'un répéteur PhL ou de tout dispositif utilisant la fonction RRM et une PhL de répéteur. Dans les deux cas, les nœuds et les répéteurs doivent pouvoir être connectés en cascade, à condition que chaque liaison soit conforme aux exigences du présent article. Le temps total de propagation

du signal doit être utilisé pour le calcul de la durée de créneau, comme décrit dans la CEI 61158-4-2.

Toute topologie qui prend en charge un chemin unique entre deux entités PhL quelconques doit pouvoir être mise en œuvre. Les trajectoires multiples entre des entités PhL ne doivent pas être autorisées par une application qui revendique la conformité au présent article.

Cette variante de PhL peut être associée à d'autres variantes de PhL sur le même nœud, ou sur des nœuds différents, en utilisant la RM (machine répéteur) et/ou des dispositifs répéteurs de PhL (Voir l'Annexe G).

19.4 Support à fibre optique de ligne principale de 5 Mbit/s

La fibre optique de la ligne principale doit satisfaire aux exigences spécifiées en 19.6 pour la variante correspondante de PhL à fibre optique.

19.5 Connecteurs de ligne principale de support à fibre optique de 5 Mbit/s

Les connecteurs de ligne principale doivent être conformes aux exigences de la présente norme (voir l'Annexe F) pour les différentes variantes de PhL à fibre optique.

19.6 Spécifications de fibre optique de support de 5 Mbit/s

Les caractéristiques des signaux pour les supports à fibre optique et la variante de PhL correspondante, à 25 °C, doivent être telles que présentées dans les Tableaux 94, 95 et 96.

Tableau 94 – Spécification des signaux de support à fibre optique de 5 Mbit/s de courte portée

Spécification	Min.	Nominal	Max.
Fibre			
Distance	0 m	300 M	
Affaiblissement de la fibre à λ		6 dB/km	
Technologie de fibre optique	A saut d'indice, silice gainée en dur (HCS)		
Cœur/gaine	200/230 μm		
Ouverture numérique	0,5		
Système			
BER	10^{-9}		
Bilan de puissance	3,9 dB	9,5 dB	
Émetteur			
Longueur d'onde λ	640 nm	650 nm	660 nm
Largeur spectrale	21 nm		
Puissance couplée, $P_{T\text{ on}}$ (lumière émission active)	-16,1 dBm, crête	-12,5 dBm, crête	-8,5 dBm, crête
Puissance couplée, $P_{T\text{ off}}$ (lumière émission inactive)			-44 dBm, crête
Temps de croissance optique T_{rise}			
Temps de décroissance optique T_{fall}			
Récepteur			

Spécification	Min.	Nominal	Max.
$P_{R\ MIN}$ (lumière réception active)		-25 dBm, crête	-23 dBm, crête
$P_{R\ MAX}$ (lumière réception active)	-1,0 dBm	+3,0 dBm	
Distorsion de la largeur d'impulsion			30 ns

Tableau 95 – Spécification des signaux de support à fibre optique de 5 Mbit/s de moyenne portée

Spécification	Min.	Nominal	Max.
Fibre			
Distance	0 m	7 km	
Affaiblissement de la fibre à λ		1,5 dB/km	
Technologie de fibre optique	à gradient d'indice, multimodale		
Cœur/gaine	62,5/125 μm		
Ouverture numérique	0,275		
Système			
BER	10^{-9}		
Bilan de puissance	11,3 dB	16,4 dB	
Émetteur			
Longueur d'onde λ	1 270 nm	1 300 nm	1 370 nm
Largeur spectrale		130 nm	185 nm
Puissance couplée, $P_{T\ on}$ (lumière émission active)	-15,5 dBm, crête	-13,5 dBm, crête	-12,0 dBm, crête
Puissance couplée, $P_{T\ off}$ (lumière émission inactive)			- 40 dBm, crête
Temps de croissance optique T_{rise}		1,8 ns	4,0 ns
Temps de décroissance optique T_{fall}		2,2 ns	4,0 ns
Récepteur			
$P_{R\ MIN}$ (lumière réception active)	-33,5 dBm, crête	-31,8 dBm, crête	-28,8 dBm, crête
$P_{R\ MAX}$ (lumière réception active)			
Distorsion de la largeur d'impulsion			2 ns

Tableau 96 – Spécification des signaux de support à fibre optique de 5 Mbit/s de longue portée

Spécification	Min.	Nominal	Max.
Fibre			
Distance			20 km
Affaiblissement de la fibre à λ		0,5 dB/km	
Technologie de fibre optique	A gradient d'indice, unimodale		
Cœur/gaine	10/125 μm		
Ouverture numérique	0,1		
Système			
BER	10^{-9}		
Bilan de puissance	10 dB		
Émetteur			
Longueur d'onde λ	1 270 nm	1 300 nm	1 370 nm
Largeur spectrale		70 nm	
Puissance couplée, $P_{T\text{ on}}$ (lumière émission active)	-18 dBm, crête	-15 dBm, crête	-10 dBm, crête
Puissance couplée, $P_{T\text{ off}}$ (lumière émission inactive)			-40 dBm crête
Temps de croissance optique T_{rise}		2 ns	4,0 ns
Temps de décroissance optique T_{fall}		2,2 ns	4,0 ns
Récepteur			
$P_{R\text{ MIN}}$ (lumière réception active)		-32 dBm, crête	-30 dBm, crête
$P_{R\text{ MAX}}$ (lumière réception active)	-10 dBm		
Distorsion de la largeur d'impulsion			2 ns

20 Type 2: Unité de liaison au support: port d'accès au réseau (NAP)

20.1 Généralités

La Figure 88 montre l'emplacement de la PhL du port d'accès au réseau (NAP) et du support dans le modèle de référence ISO/OSI.

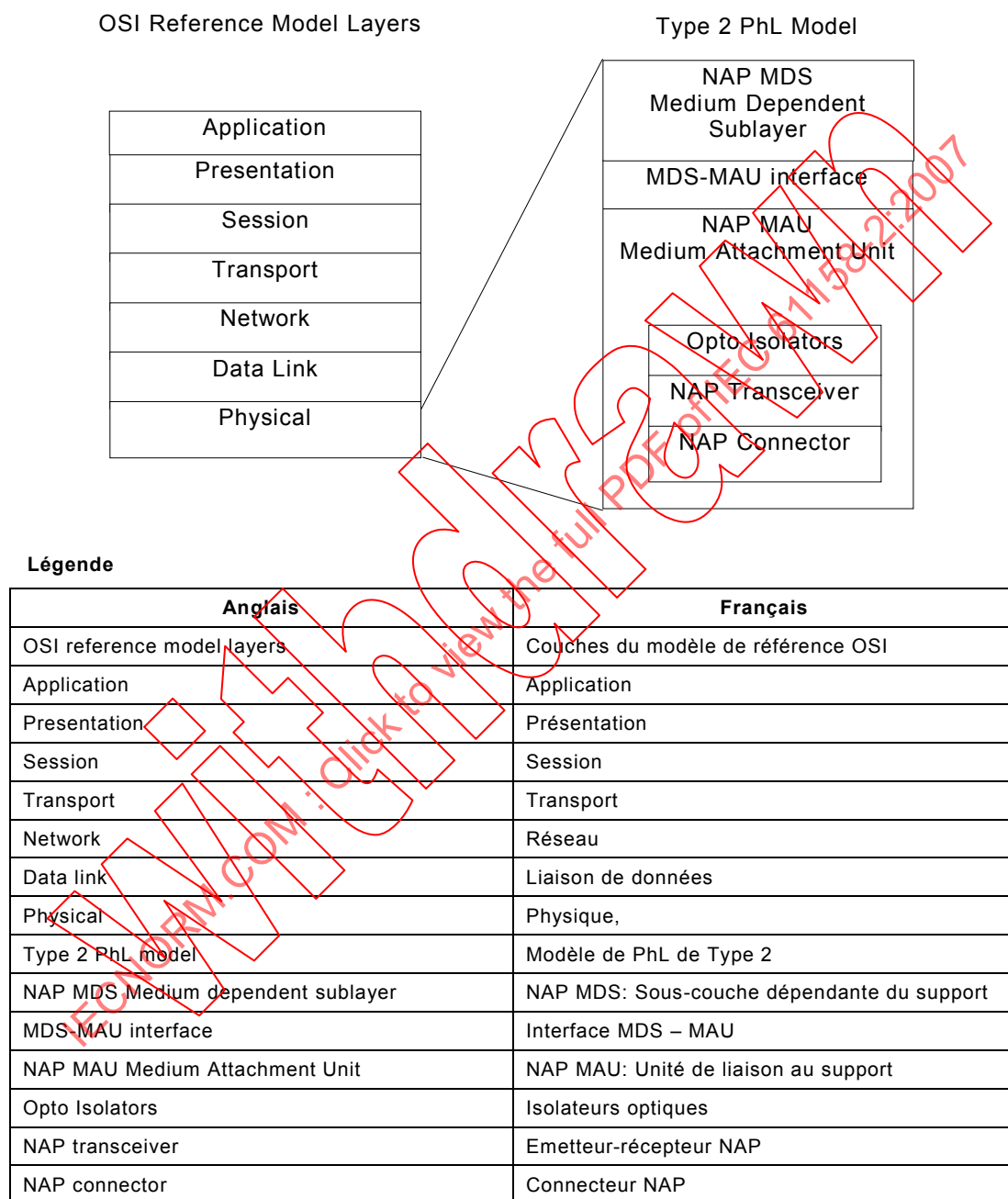


Figure 88 – Modèle de référence NAP

La connexion locale à un ordinateur (de bureau ou portable), à un appareil de programmation portatif ou toute autre connexion temporaire au réseau, doit être effectuée par l'intermédiaire de l'émetteur-récepteur NAP en utilisant le protocole et les débits de données spécifiés pour la ligne principale. L'émetteur-récepteur NAP doit obtenir une ligne d'émission unique de l'interface MDS-MAU, envoyer des données et en recevoir d'un autre nœud à l'autre extrémité du câble NAP et fournir une seule ligne de réception en retour vers l'interface MDS-MAU.

S'agissant de lignes uniques, aucune représentation de l'activation/désactivation de la porteuse ne doit être présente. A tout moment, ces signaux doivent être soit un "zéro" logique soit un "un" logique. Le support doit à tout instant être piloté par la ligne d'émission unique.

La PhL du NAP doit prendre en charge une connexion point à point entre deux nœuds. Il ne doit pas y avoir une topologie de liaison multipoints prenant en charge plus de deux nœuds.

Toute topologie qui prend en charge un chemin unique entre deux entités PhL quelconques doit pouvoir être mise en œuvre. Les trajectoires multiples entre des entités PhL ne doivent pas être autorisées par une application qui revendique la conformité au présent article.

Un nœud, dont la connexion principale à la liaison s'effectue par le biais de la variante de PhL du NAP, doit être considéré comme un nœud réseau transitoire. Un nœud, dont la connexion principale à la liaison s'effectue via une autre variante de PhL du NAP, doit être considéré comme un nœud de réseau permanent. Un nœud transitoire doit communiquer avec un autre nœud transitoire ou permanent en utilisant le support NAP. Le nœud permanent doit utiliser la fonctionnalité machine répéteur (RM) (voir l'Annexe G) contenue dans la DLL de ce nœud pour permettre au nœud transitoire de communiquer avec d'autres nœuds permanents, comme illustré en Figure 89. Un nœud permanent doit fonctionner comme un nœud transitoire lorsque aucun support PhL n'est connecté, comme présenté en Figure 89.

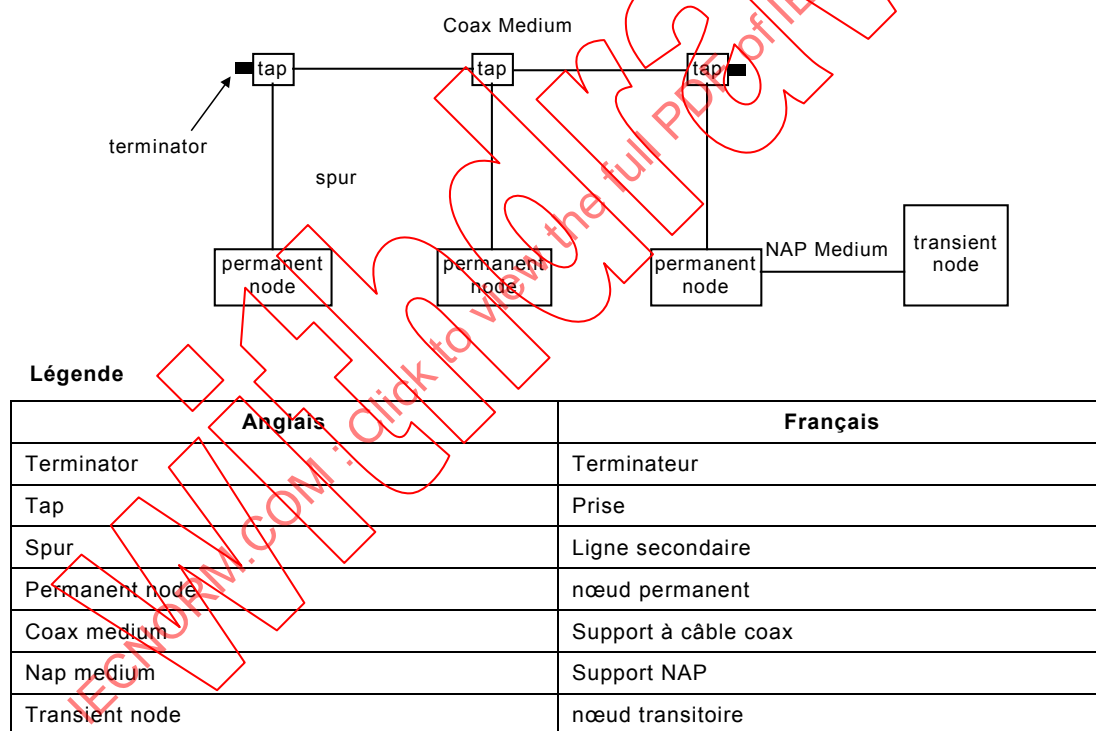


Figure 89 – Exemples de nœuds transitoires et permanents

Cette variante de PhL peut être associée à d'autres variantes de PhL sur le même nœud, ou sur des nœuds différents, en utilisant la RM (machine répéteur) et/ou des dispositifs répéteurs de PhL (Voir l'Annexe G).

20.2 Signalisation

Les exigences de signalisation pour le port d'accès NAP doivent être telles que présentées au Tableau 97.

Tableau 97 – Exigences du NAP

Spécification d'interface NAP	Spécification de conception	Commentaires
Interface NAP – Généralités		
Couplage	CC	Isolateur optique exigé pour la programmation des nœuds
Configuration de la liaison	Deux, paire RS-422 unidirectionnelle	Une Rx, une Tx
Connecteur	RJ-45 blindé	Voir Annexe F
Terminaison	100 Ω interne, uniquement sur /RxPTC	
NAP – Emission		
Niveau de sortie au niveau du support NAP avec /TxPTC = vrai	2,5 V min.	Mesuré entre Tx_H et broche GND REF, avec une charge de réception NAP connectée de 100 Ω (Voir le Tableau F.2)
Niveau de sortie au niveau du support NAP avec /TxPTC = faux	2,5 V min.	Mesuré entre Tx_L et broche GND REF, avec une charge de réception NAP connectée de 100 Ω (Voir le Tableau F.2)
Niveau de sortie au niveau du support NAP avec /TxPTC = vrai	0,5 V max.	Mesuré entre Tx_L et broche GND REF, avec une charge de réception NAP connectée de 100 Ω (Voir le Tableau F.2)
Niveau de sortie au niveau du support NAP avec /TxPTC = faux	0,5 V max.	Mesuré entre Tx_H et broche GND REF, avec une charge de réception NAP connectée de 100 Ω (Voir le Tableau F.2)
Niveau de sortie au niveau du support NAP avec /TxPTC = données	4,0 V min.	(Tx_H – Tx_L) mesuré de crête à crête, avec une charge de 100 Ω (Voir le Tableau F.2)
Instabilité totale en émission	± 5 ns max.	
Terminaison	Aucune	
NAP – Réception		
Niveau de réception au niveau du support NAP avec /TxPTC = données	2,5 V min.	(Rx_H – Rx_L) mesuré de crête à crête (Voir le Tableau F.2)
Instabilité en réception	± 15 ns max.	
Terminaison	100 $\Omega \pm 10$ %	Entre lignes différentielles
Signal de réception de défauts	/RxPTC = vrai	Si le support est déconnecté, en court-circuit, si le récepteur est hors-tension ou désactivé, /RxPTC doit être "vrai"

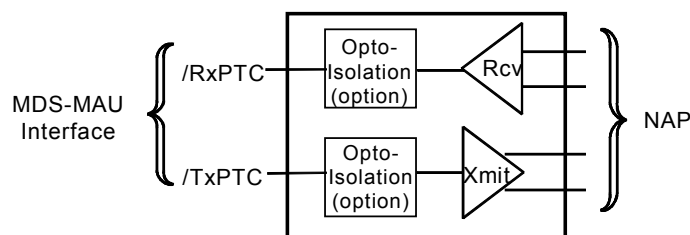
20.3 Émetteur-récepteur

Le synoptique de la MAU du NAP en Figure 90 représente les applications isolées et non isolées. Le NAP isolé doit être utilisé sur des nœuds transitoires. L'isolation optique doit être assurée pour éviter que des courants de boucle de masse ne circulent entre nœuds ayant des potentiels de terre différents. L'isolation optique ne doit pas être exigée si le nœud est autoalimenté et qu'il n'est pas mis à la masse. Le NAP non isolé doit être utilisé sur des nœuds permanents.

NOTE 1 Un nœud transitoire est défini comme étant un nœud ayant une connexion principale et ordinaire au réseau par l'intermédiaire du NAP d'un autre nœud. Ceci comprend, de manière non limitative, des cartes d'interface informatiques, des nœuds de configuration ainsi que d'autres nœuds qui sont des connexions transitoires ou temporaires au réseau.

NOTE 2 Un nœud permanent est défini comme étant une connexion principale et ordinaire au réseau par l'intermédiaire d'une PhL autre que le NAP. Ceci comprend, de manière non limitative: les automates programmables, les adaptateurs de châssis E/S, les appareils de commande, les robots, les soudeuses et autres nœuds qui sont connectés au réseau de manière quasi-permanente.

Si un nœud peut être utilisé à la fois comme nœud transitoire et permanent, il doit inclure une isolation optique dans la conception du NAP (à moins qu'il ne soit autoalimenté et qu'il ne puisse pas être mis à la terre).



Légende

Anglais	Français
MDS-MAU interface	Interface MDS – MAU
Opto Isolation (option)	Isolation optique (facultative)
Rcv	Récept.
Xmit	Emiss.

Figure 90 – Emetteur-récepteur NAP

NOTE 3 Un exemple de modèle de référence d'une MAU de port d'accès au réseau est présenté en H.2.

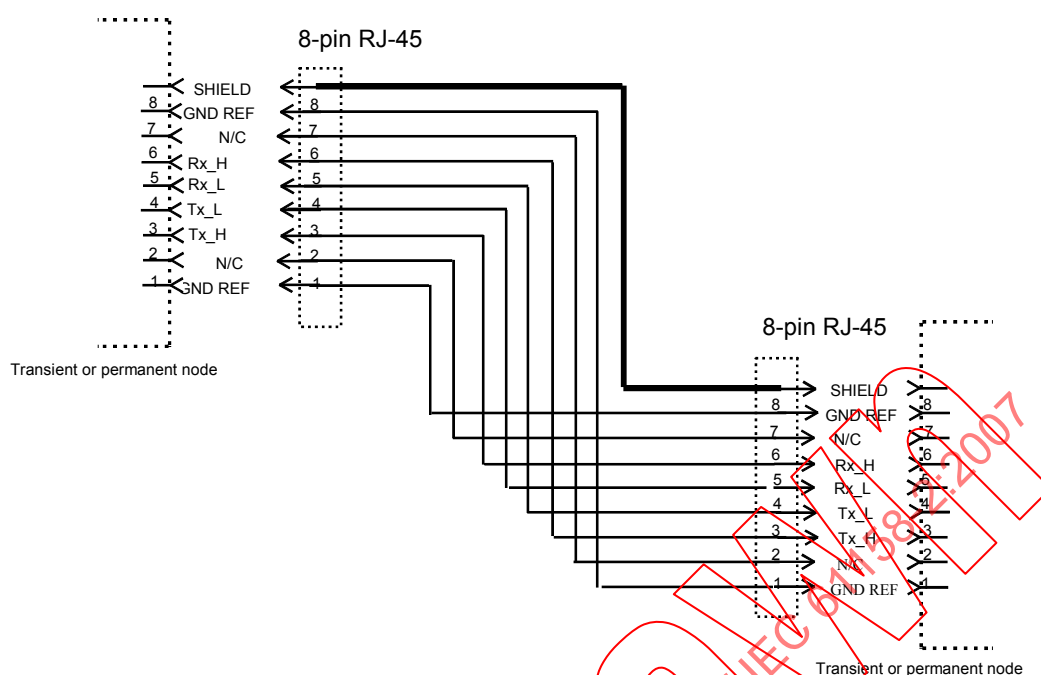
20.4 Connecteur

Le connecteur utilisé aux deux extrémités d'une connexion NAP doit être du type RJ-45 à 8 broches, blindé, comme spécifié dans l'Annexe F.

20.5 Câble

Le câble NAP doit contenir 8 conducteurs et un blindage global. Le blindage doit être conçu de manière à réduire les perturbations électromagnétiques. Les broches du connecteur du câble doivent être telles que présentées dans le Tableau F.2.

Sachant que le connecteur du NAP et les connexions des broches sont identiques pour les nœuds transitoires et permanents, le câble doit être conçu de manière à permettre les connexions correctes des données d'émission et de réception. Ceci doit être obtenu en inversant la connexion à une extrémité du câble NAP, comme présenté en Figure 91.



NOTE Les connecteurs du câble NAP sont montés de façon à ce que les lignes de signaux soient inversées pour permettre une connexion correcte. De cette manière, l'équipement utilise la même configuration de broches indépendamment de la fonction.

Légende

Anglais	Français
8-Pin RJ-45	RJ-45 à 8 broches
Shield	Blindage
GND REF	REF MASSE
Transient or permanent node	Nœud transitoire ou permanent

Figure 91 – Câble de NAP

Le câble de NAP doit satisfaire aux exigences suivantes:

- caractéristiques des paires de lignes = 100 Ω ;
- résistance (à 0 Hz) = 0,122 Ω /m;
- calibre du fil = 26 (7 brins, diamètre 0,16 mm);
- conducteurs = 8 plus blindage global;
- longueur maximale du câble = 10 m.

21 Type 3: Unité de liaison au support: transmission synchrone, 31,25 kbit/s, mode tension, support câblé

21.1 Généralités

La MAU 31,25 kbit/s en mode tension fournit simultanément l'accès à un réseau de communication et à un réseau de distribution d'énergie optionnel. Les dispositifs raccordés au réseau communiquent par l'intermédiaire du support et peuvent ou non être alimentés par ce support. Si l'alimentation s'effectue par le bus, elle est distribuée en tension directe et en courant continu et des signaux de communication sont superposés sur l'alimentation c.c. Dans les applications de sécurité intrinsèque, la puissance disponible peut limiter le nombre de dispositifs.

Le support réseau est constitué d'un câble à paire torsadée. Indépendamment de la topologie, tous les dispositifs connectés, sauf éventuellement le dispositif d'émission, présentent une haute impédance pour éviter une surcharge importante du réseau. Les formes d'onde trapézoïdales sont utilisées pour réduire les émissions électromagnétiques.

Des topologies en bus et arborescentes sont prises en charge. Quelle que soit la topologie, un réseau comporte un câble de ligne principale disposant de terminaisons aux deux extrémités. Dans la topologie de bus, les lignes secondaires sont réparties sur la longueur de la ligne principale. Dans la topologie arborescente, les lignes secondaires sont concentrées à une extrémité de la ligne principale. Une ligne secondaire peut connecter plusieurs dispositifs au réseau et le nombre de dispositifs sur une ligne secondaire donnée dépend de la longueur de cette ligne.

A fréquence industrielle (c.c.), les dispositifs apparaissent pour le réseau comme des absorbeurs de courant avec un taux de variation limité du courant d'alimentation prélevé du support. Ceci permet d'éviter que les modifications transitoires du courant de charge n'interfèrent avec les signaux de communication.

21.2 Débit binaire d'émission

Voir 12.2.

21.3 Spécifications du réseau

21.3.1 Composants

Le paragraphe 12.3.1 s'applique.

Lors de la sélection des différentes composantes, il faut s'assurer qu'elles satisfont toutes aux exigences du modèle FISCO. Seules les composantes identifiées comme étant du matériel électrique de sécurité intrinsèque ou du matériel électrique associé, conformément à la CEI 60079-11, peuvent être installées sur des segments de bus de terrain de sécurité intrinsèque. Pour satisfaire aux exigences de 12.2.5.1 de la CEI 60079-14, les valeurs admissibles des paramètres d'entrée U_i , I_i et P_i d'un matériel de sécurité intrinsèque (par exemple, des dispositifs de terrain) ne doivent pas être inférieures aux valeurs maximales certifiées des paramètres de sortie U_o , I_o et P_o du dispositif d'alimentation correspondant. Des restrictions supplémentaires, applicables aux composantes individuelles (par exemple, limitation de la puissance d'alimentation à $\leq 1,2$ W) sont également à prendre en compte.

Le Tableau 98 énumère les combinaisons possibles de dispositifs de différentes catégories de systèmes.

Tableau 98 – Combinaison de dispositifs de différentes catégories

Protection du segment de bus contre l'explosion	Protection du dispositif d'alimentation contre l'explosion	Protection du dispositif de terrain contre l'explosion					
		EEx ia			EEx ib		
		IIC	IIB	IIC/IIB	IIC	IIB	IIC/IIB
EEx ia IIC (Groupe IIC)	[EEx ia] IIC	x		x			
EEx ia IIB (Groupe IIB)	[EEx ia] IIB	x	x	x			
	[EEx ia] IIC	x	x	x			
EEx ib IIC (Groupe IIC)	[EEx ib] IIC	x		x	x		x
	[EEx ia] IIC	x		x	x		x
EEx ib IIB (Groupe IIC)	[EEx ib] IIB	(x) ¹⁾	x	x	(x) ¹⁾	x	x
	[EEx ib] IIC	x	x	x	x	x	x
	[EEx ia] IIB	(x) ¹⁾	x	x	(x) ¹⁾	x	x
	[EEx ia] IIC	x	x	x	x	x	x
¹⁾ Ces combinaisons sont possibles en théorie, mais elles ne sont pas pertinentes en pratique, car les différents dispositifs de bus de terrain peuvent être certifiés pour le groupe IIC et pour le groupe IIB également (voir la colonne IIC/IIB). Quelle que soit la combinaison choisie, il faut s'assurer que les valeurs maximales absolues des caractéristiques assignées d'entrée du dispositif de terrain correspondent aux caractéristiques de sortie du dispositif d'alimentation: $U_i \geq U_o$ $I_i \geq I_o$ $P_i \geq P_o$							

La connexion de dispositifs alimentés par le bus et de dispositifs alimentés localement sur un bus de terrain de sécurité intrinsèque est autorisée si les dispositifs alimentés localement sont munis d'une isolation appropriée conforme à la CEI 60079-11.

Bien que la connexion d'une station de bus de terrain (par exemple, un dispositif de terrain, un terminal portatif et un coupleur pour le maître du bus) avec inversion des pôles n'affecte pas la fonctionnalité des autres dispositifs connectés au bus de terrain, une station de bus installée de manière incorrecte et qui n'est pas équipée d'une détection automatique de la polarité ne sera pas alimentée en énergie ou sera incapable d'émettre et de recevoir. Les stations disposant d'une détection automatique de polarité fonctionnent correctement quelle que soit l'attribution des bornes d'entrée aux conducteurs.

21.3.2 Topologies

Une MAU câblée doit fonctionner sur un réseau de topologie de bus linéaire constitué d'une ligne principale, terminée à chaque extrémité comme spécifié en 21.8.5 et à laquelle des éléments de communication sont connectés par l'intermédiaire de coupleurs et de lignes secondaires.

Le coupleur et l'élément de communication peuvent être intégrés en un dispositif (c'est-à-dire une ligne secondaire de longueur zéro).

Une topologie arborescente dont tous les éléments de communication sont placés aux extrémités de la ligne principale est considérée comme un cas particulier de bus aux fins du présent article de la CEI 61158-2.

Plusieurs éléments de communication peuvent être connectés à la ligne principale en un point donné, en utilisant un coupleur multivoies. Un coupleur actif peut être utilisé pour étendre une ligne secondaire sur une longueur qui nécessite une terminaison afin d'éviter les réflexions et

distorsions. Des répéteurs actifs peuvent être utilisés pour étendre la longueur de la ligne principale au-delà d'un segment unique si cela est autorisé par les règles de configuration du réseau.

21.3.3 Règles de configuration du réseau

Une MAU de 31,25 kbit/s en mode tension doit satisfaire aux exigences du présent article lorsqu'elle est utilisée sur un réseau qui satisfait aux présentes règles.

Règle 1: Un bus de terrain doit être capable d'assurer la communication entre les nombres de dispositifs indiqués ci-après, fonctionnant tous au même débit binaire.

- a) pour un bus de terrain non IS sans alimentation par les conducteurs de signaux: entre deux et 32 dispositifs;
- b) pour un bus non IS avec alimentation par l'intermédiaire de conducteurs de signaux: entre deux et le nombre de dispositifs qui peuvent être alimentés par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de signaux, en supposant qu'un minimum de 120 mA doit être mis à la disposition des dispositifs à l'extrémité distante de l'alimentation et en sachant que la communication avec un dispositif à l'extrémité de l'alimentation consomme 10 mA;
- c) pour un bus de terrain IS: entre deux et le nombre de dispositifs qui peuvent être alimentés par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de signaux, en supposant qu'au minimum 40 mA doivent être mis à la disposition des dispositifs dans la zone dangereuse.

NOTE 1 La règle 1 n'exclut pas l'utilisation d'un nombre de dispositifs supérieur à celui spécifié dans un système installé. Etant donné que la consommation d'énergie du dispositif n'est pas spécifiée, le nombre de dispositifs alimentés par le bus ne peut pas être spécifié. Le point b) suppose que la tension minimale d'alimentation est de 20 V c.c. Le point c) suppose que la barrière IS fonctionne avec une sortie de 19 V c.c.

Règle 2: La longueur totale de câble entre deux dispositifs quelconques, y compris les lignes secondaires, d'un segment de bus de terrain de 31,25 kbit/s en mode tension, à pleine charge (comportant le nombre maximal de dispositifs connectés) doit être de 1 900 m au maximum.

NOTE 2 Cette longueur maximale du câble de 1 900 m est l'exigence de conformité au présent article, mais n'exclut pas l'utilisation de longueurs supérieures dans un système installé.

Règle 3: Le nombre total de régénérations de forme d'onde par des répéteurs et des coupleurs actifs entre deux dispositifs quelconques ne doit pas être supérieur à quatre.

Règle 4: Le délai maximal de propagation entre deux dispositifs quelconques ne doit pas dépasser 20 Tbit.

NOTE 3 Pour que le réseau fonctionne efficacement, il convient que cette partie du temps de retournement de tout dispositif du réseau, générée par une PhE entre la fin d'une trame reçue et le début d'une trame émise contenant une réponse immédiate associée, ne dépasse pas 5 temps binaires, dont il convient qu'au maximum 2 temps binaires soient dus à la MAU. Sachant qu'il n'est pas obligatoire d'exposer l'interface DLL – PhL ou l'interface MOS – MAU, cette partie du temps de retournement d'un dispositif de bus de terrain due à la PhL ou à la MAU ne peut pas être spécifiée ou soumise à des essais de conformité.

Règle 5: Le bus de terrain doit pouvoir continuer à fonctionner lorsqu'un dispositif y est connecté ou déconnecté. Les erreurs de données générées lors de la connexion ou de la déconnexion doivent être détectées.

Règle 6: La défaillance d'un quelconque élément de communication ou d'une ligne secondaire (à l'exception d'un court-circuit, d'une faible impédance ou d'un bavardage) ne doit pas interférer avec des transactions entre d'autres éléments de communication pendant plus de 1 ms.

Règle 7: Dans des systèmes polarisés, les paires torsadées du support doivent être distinctement repérées de manière à identifier de manière unique chaque conducteur individuel. La polarisation doit être maintenue en tout point de raccordement.

Règle 8: La dégradation des caractéristiques électriques du signal, entre deux dispositifs quelconques, due à l'affaiblissement, à la distorsion d'affaiblissement et à la désadaptation doit être limitée aux valeurs indiquées ci-dessous.

- a) Affaiblissement du signal: La configuration du bus (longueurs de la ligne principale et des lignes secondaires, nombre de dispositifs, barrières IS, sectionneurs galvaniques et éventuels dispositifs d'adaptation) doit être telle que l'affaiblissement entre deux dispositifs quelconques, à la fréquence correspondant au débit binaire, ne dépasse pas 10,5 dB.
- b) Distorsion d'affaiblissement: La configuration du bus (longueurs de ligne principale et de lignes secondaires, nombre de dispositifs, barrières IS et sectionneurs galvaniques) doit être telle qu'entre deux dispositifs quelconques:

$$[\text{Affaiblissement}(1,25 f_r) - \text{Affaiblissement}(0,25 f_r)] \leq 6 \text{ dB}$$

$$\text{Affaiblissement}(1,25 f_r) \geq \text{Affaiblissement}(0,25 f_r)$$

où f_r est la fréquence correspondant au débit binaire. L'affaiblissement doit être monotonique pour toutes les fréquences de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz à 39 MHz).

- c) Distorsion de désadaptation: La désadaptation (due à des lignes secondaires ou à tout autre effet, y compris une ligne secondaire de longueur maximale en circuit ouvert) sur le bus doit être telle qu'en tout point sur la ligne principale, dans la bande de fréquences comprise entre $0,25 f_r$ et $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz à 39 MHz):

$$|Z - Z_0| / |Z + Z_0| \leq 0,2$$

où Z_0 est l'impédance caractéristique du câble de ligne principale et Z est la combinaison parallèle de Z_0 et de l'impédance de charge au niveau du coupleur.

La concentration des coupleurs doit être inférieure à 15 pour 250 m.

NOTE 4 La règle 8 permet de réduire les restrictions, en termes de longueurs de la ligne principale et des lignes secondaires ainsi qu'en termes de nombre de dispositifs, etc. en ne spécifiant que des limites d'émission imposées par des combinaisons de ces facteurs. Différentes combinaisons peuvent être utilisées en fonction des besoins de l'application.

Règle 9: Les règles suivantes doivent s'appliquer aux systèmes mis en œuvre avec des supports redondants:

- a) chaque canal (câble) doit satisfaire aux règles de configuration du réseau;
- b) il ne doit pas y avoir de segment non redondant entre deux segments redondants;
- c) les répéteurs doivent également être redondants;
- d) si le système est configuré (par la Gestion systèmes) pour émettre sur plusieurs canaux simultanément, la différence de délai de propagation entre deux dispositifs quelconques sur deux canaux quelconques ne doit pas dépasser cinq temps binaires;
- e) les numéros de canaux doivent être maintenus sur l'ensemble des bus de terrain, c'est-à-dire que les canaux 1, 2, 3... en provenance de la gestion systèmes doivent toujours être connectés aux canaux physiques 1, 2, 3...

21.3.4 Règles de distribution de l'alimentation pour la configuration du réseau

Voir 12.3.4.

21.4 Spécification du circuit d'émission pour la MAU 31,25 kbit/s en mode tension

21.4.1 Récapitulatif

Pour faciliter le renvoi aux textes correspondants, les exigences définies en 21.2 et 21.4 sont résumées dans le Tableau 60 et dans le Tableau 61 (voir 12.4.1).

21.4.2 Configuration d'essai

La Figure 54 (voir 11.4.2) illustre la configuration qui doit être utilisée pour les essais.

Tension de Signal en mode différentiel: $V_d = V_a - V_b$.

Résistance de la charge d'essai $R = 50 \, \Omega$ (Z_0 du câble = 0,5) et $C = 10 \, \mu F$, sauf spécification contraire dans une exigence particulière.

21.4.3 Impédance

Pour les interfaces du bus (c'est-à-dire la MAU – unité de liaison au support) des dispositifs de terrain et des éléments d'accouplement ainsi que pour les alimentations, le point 11.4 exige que l'impédance d'entrée (mesurable à partir de la ligne de bus) dans la gamme de fréquences des signaux (7,8 kHz à 39 kHz) ne descende pas sous une valeur minimale en fonctionnement normal. A l'exception des premières 10 ms qui suivent la connexion d'un dispositif de terrain à une alimentation, cette exigence s'applique à tous les aspects du fonctionnement. Le Tableau 99 donne les impédances d'entrée des interfaces de bus et des alimentations.

Tableau 99 – Impédances d'entrée des interfaces de bus et des alimentations

	Impédance	Plage de tensions	Plage de courants
Interface de bus (par exemple, dispositif de terrain)	$\geq 3 \, k\Omega$	9 V à 32 V	Pour le courant de service
Alimentation de bus de sécurité intrinsèque	$\geq 400 \, \Omega$	Pour une tension de service	0 à I_{Max}
Alimentation de bus non de sécurité intrinsèque	$\geq 3 \, k\Omega$	Pour une tension de service	0 à I_{Max}

L'impédance d'entrée de l'interface de bus doit être mesurée avec un signal sinusoïdal dont l'amplitude doit être supérieure à la sensibilité du récepteur et toujours inférieure à 2 V_{ss}.

NOTE Aucun signal de mesure n'est défini pour l'alimentation.

L'impédance du dispositif de terrain et de l'alimentation doit être déterminée en utilisant le circuit de mesure présenté dans la Figure 92.

L'impédance X du dispositif à l'essai est calculée à partir du rapport des deux tensions U_D et U_R .

$$X = R_M \times \frac{U_D}{U_R}$$

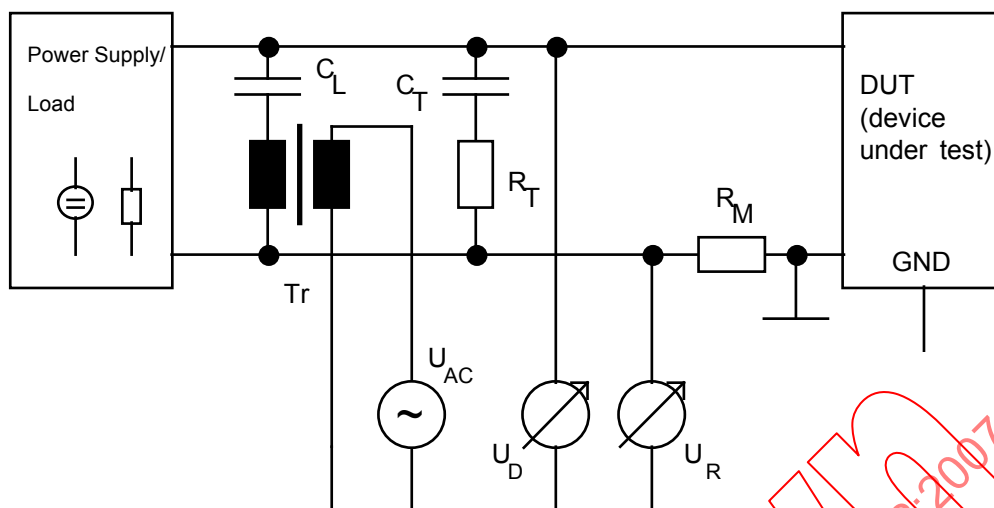
Les deux tensions mesurées représentent des valeurs complexes dont le déphasage est inclus dans le résultat. Si U_R est utilisée comme référence:

$$X = R_M \times \frac{|U_D|}{|U_R|} \times e^{j\varphi}$$

où

φ est le décalage angulaire $\varphi(U_D) - \varphi(U_R)$

Ceci réduit la mesure de l'impédance à une mesure du rapport des deux tensions et à une mesure du déphasage.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Power Supply/Load	Alimentation /charge
DUT (device under test)	DUT (dispositif en essai)

Figure 92 – Schéma de principe de la mesure de l'impédance

Exemple

$CL = CT = 2 \mu F$, $RT = RM = 100 \Omega$

Le décalage angulaire peut également être négatif. Dans ce cas, l'objet à mesurer représente une charge négative qui donne une amplification plutôt qu'une atténuation. Elle peut être omise (elle a même des effets positifs) pour la gamme de fréquences des signaux de 7,9 kHz à 39 kHz tant que $|X|$ demeure dans la plage spécifiée.

NOTE Il n'y a aucune spécification concernant l'impédance. Elle peut prendre n'importe quelle valeur faible. Si elle est associée à des conditions de circuit extérieur défavorables (par exemple de longues lignes d'adaptation), une impédance négative peut créer un circuit oscillant non atténué qui transforme le système de bus en un oscillateur même si l'objet à mesurer demeure stable dans le circuit de mesure.

Les sources d'erreurs suivantes peuvent affecter le résultat de la mesure de l'impédance.

- Distorsions non linéaires. Correction: Utiliser une méthode de mesure sélective en fréquence (c'est-à-dire évaluer uniquement l'onde fondamentale) et surveiller le signal de mesure au moyen d'un oscillographe.
- Asymétries du montage de mesure. Correction: Utiliser un transformateur symétrique Tr et éviter les capacités de mise à la masse. Laisser ouverte toute connexion à la masse de l'objet d'essai (due par exemple au filtre CEM) lors de la mesure de l'impédance.
- Signaux de bruit générés par l'objet d'essai. Correction: Mesurer le bruit de fond. Il doit être $\leq 1 \text{ mV}_{\text{eff}}$ (mesuré à 50Ω). Si cette condition est remplie, il est possible de ne pas tenir compte de l'effet sur la mesure de l'impédance.

21.4.4 Symétrie

Toutes les interfaces du bus doivent être isolées de la terre. La capacité dissymétrique entre les deux bornes de bus et la terre ne doit pas dépasser 250 pF. Ceci est également exigé pour les barrières et les alimentations.

A condition que l'impédance entre chacune des deux bornes de bus et la terre ne comporte qu'une composante capacitive, la mesure des deux capacités de terre effectives et le calcul de la différence peuvent déterminer l'asymétrie. Des composantes inductives significatives

sont présentes, notamment lorsqu'il est utilisé des interfaces de bus qui ne sont pas de sécurité intrinsèque et qui peuvent être couplées au bus par l'intermédiaire d'un transformateur. Même lorsqu'il est utilisé des éléments de couplage qui ne comportent pas des composantes d'inductivité, le comportement inductif dû à des effets parasites peut être détecté, notamment aux fréquences supérieures. Au mieux, il est possible de supposer uniquement une asymétrie purement capacitive dans une gamme de fréquences limitée. De ce fait, il est recommandé de déterminer le rapport de réjection en mode commun (CMRR – common mode rejection ratio) comme défini dans la Figure 93 pour évaluer les caractéristiques de symétrie.

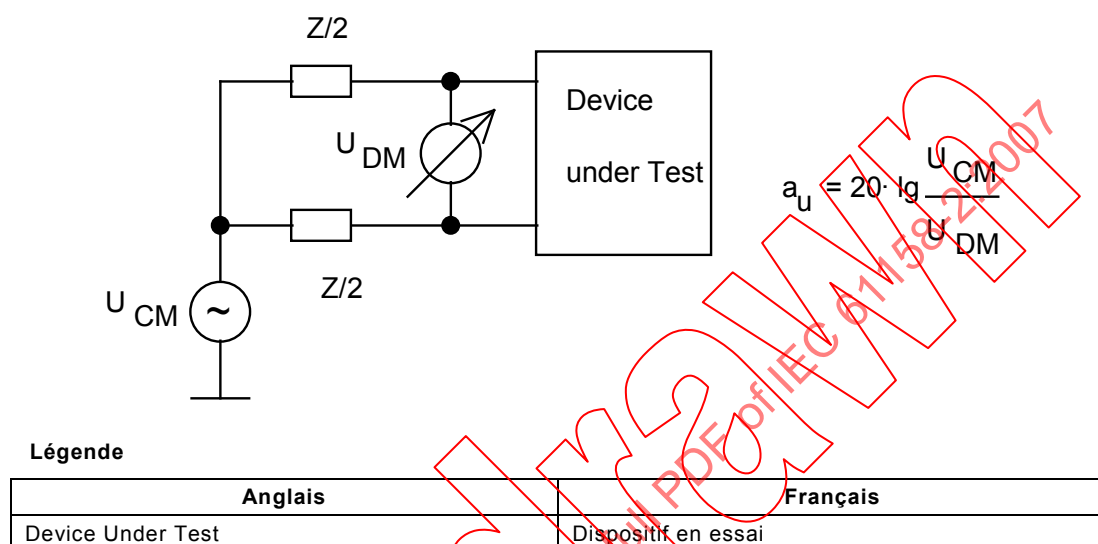


Figure 93 – Définition du CMRR

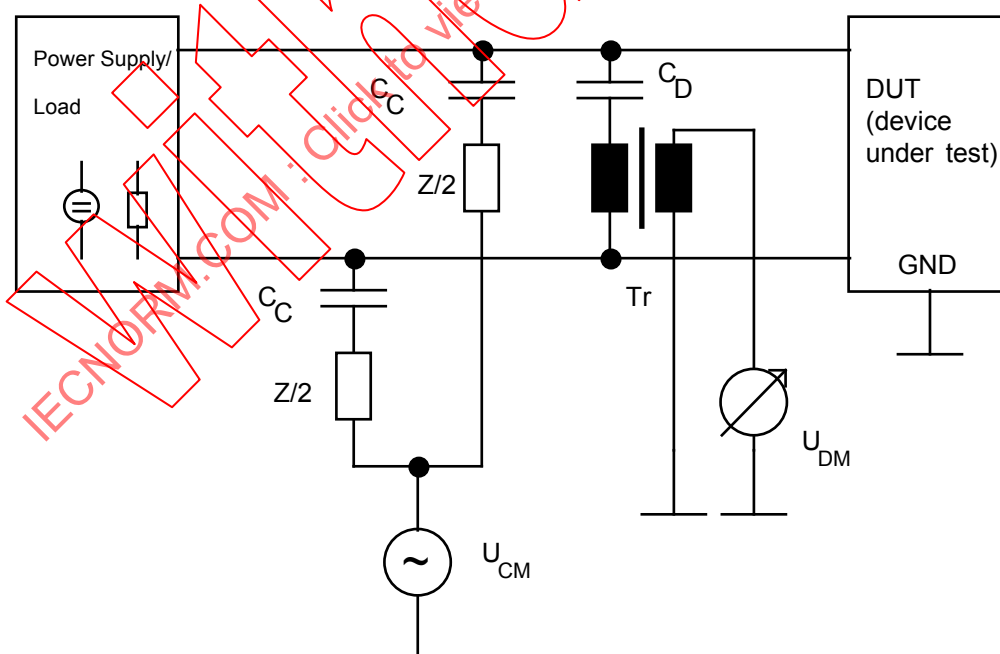


Figure 94 – Schéma de principe de mesure du CMRR

Exemple

$C_C = C_D = 2 \mu F$, $Z/2 = 25 \Omega \pm 0,1 \%$.

Le dispositif de terrain, la barrière ou l'alimentation doit satisfaire au CMRR exigé dans le Tableau 100. En ce qui concerne la capacité dissymétrique, le CMRR doit être plus élevé que les valeurs énumérées dans le Tableau 100. Le CMRR de l'instrument de mesure (par exemple comme illustré en Figure 94) sans le dispositif en essai (DUT – Device under test) doit être d'au moins 10 dB supérieur aux valeurs indiquées.

Tableau 100 – CMRR exigé

Fréquence	kHz	≤ 40	120	400	1 200
CMRR	dB	≥ 50	≥ 40	≥ 30	≥ 20

21.4.5 Exigences de niveau de sortie

Voir 12.4.3.

21.4.6 Exigences de synchronisation des sorties

Voir 12.4.4.

21.4.7 Polarité du signal

Voir 11.4.5.

21.5 Spécification du circuit de réception pour la MAU 31,25 kbit/s en mode tension

Voir 12.5.

21.6 Inhibition du bavardage

Voir 12.6.

21.7 Distribution de l'alimentation

21.7.1 Généralités

Un dispositif peut, en option, recevoir son alimentation par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de signaux ou être alimenté de manière séparée.

Un dispositif peut être certifié comme étant de sécurité intrinsèque quelle que soit la méthode d'alimentation.

NOTE La présente norme n'inclut pas d'exigences pour la certification IS mais cherche à exclure des conditions ou situations qui pourraient empêcher la certification IS.

Un dispositif à alimentation séparée peut être connecté à un bus de terrain alimenté.

Pour faciliter le renvoi aux textes correspondants, les exigences définies en 21.7 sont résumées dans les Tableaux 101 et 102.

Tableau 101 – Caractéristiques des dispositifs alimentés par le réseau pour la MAU de 31,25 kbit/s en mode tension

Caractéristiques des dispositifs alimentés par le réseau	Limites pour 31,25 kbit/s
Tension de service	9,0 V c.c. à 32,0 V c.c.
Tension de tenue minimale, quelle que soit la polarité, sans dommages	35 V
Le taux de variation maximal du courant passif (pas d'émission); cette exigence ne s'applique pas au cours des premières 10 ms après connexion du dispositif à un réseau opérationnel ou dans les premières 10 ms après mise sous tension du réseau	1,0 mA/ms
Courant maximal; cette exigence s'applique au cours de l'intervalle de temps de 100 μ s à 10 ms après connexion du dispositif à un réseau opérationnel ou 100 μ s à 10 ms après mise sous tension du réseau (voir note)	Courant passif assigné plus 10 mA
NOTE Les premières 100 μ s sont exclues pour permettre le chargement des filtres RFI et autres capacités dans le dispositif. La spécification du taux de variation s'applique au bout de 10 ms.	

Tableau 102 – Exigences d'alimentation réseau pour la MAU de 31,25 kbit/s en mode tension

Exigences d'alimentation réseau	Limites pour 31,25 kbit/s
Tension de sortie, non IS	≤ 32 V c.c.
Tension de sortie, IS	En fonction des caractéristiques assignées de la barrière
Ondulation de sortie et bruit	Voir Figure 95
Impédance de sortie, non IS, mesurée sur la gamme de fréquences de 0,25 f_r à 1,25 f_r	≥ 3 k Ω
Impédance de sortie, IS, mesurée sur la gamme de fréquences de 0,25 f_r à 1,25 f_r	≥ 400 Ω (Voir la note)
NOTE L'alimentation IS est supposée comprendre une barrière IS.	

21.7.2 Tension d'alimentation

Un dispositif de bus de terrain qui comprend une MAU de 31,25 kbit/s en mode tension, doit pouvoir fonctionner dans une plage de tensions de 9 V à 32 V c.c. entre les deux conducteurs, y compris l'ondulation. Le dispositif doit supporter sans aucun dommage une tension minimale de ± 35 V c.c.

NOTE 1 Pour des systèmes IS, la tension de service peut être limitée par les exigences de certification. Dans ce cas, l'alimentation sera placée dans la zone de sécurité et sa tension de sortie sera atténuée par une barrière de sécurité ou composante équivalente.

Un dispositif de bus de terrain qui comprend une MAU de 31,25 kbit/s en mode tension doit satisfaire aux exigences correspondantes lorsqu'il est alimenté par une source ayant les spécifications suivantes:

- La tension de sortie maximale de l'alimentation, pour des réseaux non IS, doit être de 32 V c.c., y compris l'ondulation.
- L'impédance de sortie de l'alimentation, pour des réseaux non IS, doit être ≥ 3 k Ω sur la gamme de fréquences de 0,25 f_r à 1,25 f_r (7,8 kHz à 39 kHz). Cette exigence ne s'applique pas dans les 10 ms après connexion ou retrait d'un dispositif de terrain.
- L'impédance de sortie d'une alimentation IS doit être ≥ 400 Ω sur la gamme de fréquences de 0,25 f_r à 1,25 f_r (7,8 kHz à 39 kHz).

NOTE 2 L'alimentation IS est supposée inclure une barrière IS.

- d) Les exigences relatives au claquage pour l'isolation du circuit de signaux et du circuit de distribution de l'alimentation par rapport à la masse et par rapport à l'autre circuit doivent être conformes à la CEI 61131-2.

NOTE 3 La tension d'essai équivalente est à appliquer entre circuits isolés indépendants ou entre circuits isolés et parties conductrices accessibles. Pour des circuits de tension nominale ≤ 50 V c.c. ou efficace, les tensions d'essai équivalentes au niveau de la mer correspondent à des essais de choc de 444 V eff., 635 V c.c. et 635 V crête. Pour des circuits de tension nominale comprise entre 150 V eff. et 300 V eff., les tensions d'essai équivalentes au niveau de la mer correspondent à des essais de choc de 2 260 V eff., 3 175 V c.c. et 3 175 V crête.

21.7.3 Alimentation par l'intermédiaire de conducteurs de signaux

Un dispositif de bus de terrain qui comprend une MAU de 31,25 kbit/s en mode tension et qui est alimenté via les conducteurs de signaux doit satisfaire aux exigences du présent article lorsqu'il fonctionne à des valeurs maximales d'ondulation et de bruit de l'alimentation, de la manière suivante:

- 16 mV crête à crête sur la gamme de fréquences de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz à 39 kHz);
- 2,0 V crête à crête sur la gamme de fréquences de 47 Hz à 63 Hz pour des applications non IS;
- 0,2 V crête à crête sur la gamme de fréquences de 47 Hz à 625 Hz pour des applications non IS;
- 1,6 mV crête à crête à des fréquences supérieures à $125 f_r$, jusqu'à une fréquence maximale de 25 MHz;
- des niveaux, à des fréquences intermédiaires, généralement conformes à la Figure 95.



Légende

Anglais	Français
Volts pk-pk	Volts, crête à crête
Non IS Supply	Alimentation non IS
IS supply	Alimentation IS
Frequency	Fréquence

Figure 95 – Ondulation et bruit de l'alimentation

Un dispositif de bus de terrain qui comprend une MAU de 31,25 kbit/s en mode tension et qui est alimenté via les conducteurs de signaux doit présenter un taux maximal de variation du courant prélevé du réseau de 1 mA/ms. Cette exigence ne s'applique pas:

- pendant l'émission;
- au cours des premières 10 ms après connexion du dispositif à un réseau opérationnel,
- au cours des premières 10 ms après mise sous tension du réseau;
- lors de la déconnexion du réseau ou de la mise hors tension du réseau.

Un dispositif doit porter un marquage indiquant son courant passif assigné. Un dispositif ne doit pas prélever du réseau plus de 10 mA au-dessus de son courant assigné au cours de l'intervalle de temps de 100 μ s à 10 ms après connexion du dispositif à un réseau opérationnel ou 100 μ s à 10 ms après mise sous tension du réseau.

NOTE Les premières 100 μ s sont exclues pour permettre le chargement des filtres RFI et autres capacités dans le dispositif. La spécification du taux de variation s'applique au bout de 10 ms.

21.7.4 Isolation électrique

Tous les dispositifs de bus de terrain utilisant un support câblé, qu'ils soient alimentés séparément ou par l'intermédiaire des conducteurs de signaux, doivent assurer une isolation basse fréquence entre la masse et le câble de ligne principale du bus de terrain.

NOTE 1 Ceci peut être réalisé en isolant l'ensemble du dispositif de la masse au moyen d'un transformateur, d'un optocoupleur ou de tout autre organe d'isolation entre le câble de ligne principale et le dispositif.

Une alimentation et un élément de communication combinés ne doivent pas nécessiter d'isolation électrique.

Pour les câbles blindés, l'impédance d'isolation mesurée entre le blindage du câble de bus de terrain et la masse du dispositif de bus de terrain doit être supérieure à 250 k Ω à toutes les fréquences inférieures à 63 Hz.

La capacité dissymétrique maximale par rapport à la masse de toute borne d'entrée d'un dispositif ne doit pas dépasser 250 pF.

Les exigences de claquage de l'isolation du circuit de signaux et du circuit de distribution de l'alimentation par rapport à la masse et par rapport à l'autre circuit doivent être conformes à la CEI 61131-2.

NOTE 2 La tension d'essai équivalente est à appliquer entre circuits isolés indépendants ou entre circuits isolés et parties conductrices accessibles. Pour des circuits de tension nominale ≤ 50 V c.c. ou efficace, les tensions d'essai équivalentes au niveau de la mer correspondent à des essais de choc de 444 V eff., 635 V c.c. et 635 V crête. Pour des circuits de tension nominale comprise entre 150 V eff. et 300 V eff., les tensions d'essai équivalentes au niveau de la mer correspondent à des essais de choc de 2 260 V eff., 3 175 V c.c. et 3 175 V crête.

21.8 Spécifications du support

21.8.1 Connecteur

Le connecteur est spécifié à l'Article I.1.

21.8.2 Câble d'essai normalisé

Le câble utilisé pour les essais de dispositifs de bus de terrain avec une MAU de 31,25 kbit/s en mode tension, destinés à vérifier la conformité aux exigences du présent article, doit être un câble unique à paire torsadée, à blindage global, conforme aux exigences minimales suivantes, à une température de 25 °C:

- Z_0 à f_r (31,25 kHz) = 100 $\Omega \pm 20 \Omega$;
- affaiblissement maximal à une fréquence 1,25 f_r (39 kHz) = 3,0 dB/km;
- déséquilibre capacitif maximal par rapport au blindage = 2 nF/km;

- d) résistance maximale en courant continu (par conducteur) = $24 \Omega/\text{km}$;
- e) variation du délai maximal de propagation à une fréquence de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r = 1,7 \mu\text{s}/\text{km}$;
- f) aire de la section des conducteurs (dimension des fils) = $0,8 \text{ mm}^2$ valeur nominale;
- g) la couverture minimale du blindage doit être de 90 %.

NOTE 1 La spécification ci-dessus concerne les essais de conformité d'une MAU. D'autres types de câbles peuvent être utilisés dans les installations réelles. (Voir l'Annexe B). Les câbles à spécifications améliorées peuvent permettre l'utilisation de longueurs de ligne principale plus importantes et/ou une meilleure immunité aux perturbations. En revanche, les câbles ayant des spécifications inférieures peuvent être utilisés, sous réserve d'une limitation des longueurs utilisées, tant pour les lignes principales que secondaires, auxquels s'ajoute une éventuelle non-conformité aux exigences de susceptibilité aux perturbations radioélectriques (RFI) et électromagnétiques (EMI).

NOTE 2 Pour les applications de sécurité intrinsèque, il convient de respecter des exigences particulières, telles que spécifiées par les normes de sécurité intrinsèque pertinentes, par exemple la CEI/TS 60079-27 (FISCO).

21.8.3 Coupleur

Voir 12.8.3.

21.8.4 Epissures

Voir 12.8.4.

21.8.5 Terminateur

Un terminateur doit être placé aux deux extrémités du câble de ligne principale et connecté d'un conducteur de signal à l'autre. Il ne doit y avoir aucune connexion entre terminateur et blindage du câble.

La valeur de l'impédance du terminateur doit être de $100 \Omega \pm 2 \Omega$ sur la gamme de fréquences de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz à 39 kHz).

NOTE 1 Cette valeur correspond approximativement à la valeur moyenne de l'impédance caractéristique du câble, pour les câbles appropriés, aux fréquences pertinentes, et elle est choisie pour réduire autant que possible les réflexions de la ligne d'émission.

Le courant continu de fuite à travers le terminateur ne doit pas dépasser $100 \mu\text{A}$. Le terminateur doit être non polarisé.

Tous les terminateurs utilisés pour les applications IS doivent être conformes aux exigences d'isolation (lignes de fuite et distances d'isolement) en fonction de l'homologation IS requise. L'homologation IS ne doit pas être exigée pour des terminateurs destinés à des applications non IS.

NOTE 2 Il est acceptable que les fonctions de l'alimentation, de la barrière de sécurité et du terminateur soient combinées de diverses manières, à condition que l'impédance de la combinaison obtenue soit équivalente à l'impédance parallèle de dispositifs indépendants qui satisfont aux exigences du présent article de la CEI 61158-2 et que les règles de configuration du réseau définies en 21.3.3 soient respectées.

21.8.6 Règles de blindage

Voir 12.8.6.

21.8.7 Règles de mise à la masse

NOTE 1 Mise à la masse signifie une connexion permanente à la terre par l'intermédiaire d'une impédance suffisamment basse et ayant un courant admissible suffisant pour prévenir un amorçage en tension qui pourrait entraîner des dangers excessifs pour le matériel connecté ou les personnes. Les lignes de tension zéro (commun) peuvent être reliées à la masse lorsqu'elles sont galvaniquement isolées de la ligne principale du bus de terrain.

Les dispositifs de bus de terrain doivent fonctionner conformément aux exigences du présent article de la CEI 61158-2, le point médian d'un terminateur ou d'un coupleur inductif étant directement connecté à la masse.

Les dispositifs de bus de terrain ne doivent pas raccorder l'un des conducteurs de la paire torsadée à la masse quel que soit le point du réseau. Les signaux doivent être appliqués et préservés de manière différentielle sur l'ensemble du réseau.

NOTE 2 Il est meilleur, dans la pratique, de mettre effectivement à la masse le blindage du câble de ligne principale de bus de terrain (le cas échéant) en plusieurs points sur la longueur du câble. Il convient néanmoins que les dispositifs de bus de terrain permettent une isolation c.c. du blindage du câble par rapport à la masse. La pratique courante est également de raccorder les conducteurs de signaux à la masse de manière symétrique, en un point central de mise à la masse, en utilisant par exemple la prise centrale d'un terminateur ou d'un transformateur de couplage. Pour des systèmes alimentés par le bus, il convient que la mise à la masse du blindage et des conducteurs de signaux équilibrés soit proche de l'unité d'alimentation. Pour les systèmes IS, il convient que la mise à la masse soit conforme aux normes de sécurité intrinsèque correspondantes, telles qu'élaborées par le TC 31, SC31G, WG2 de la CEI.

21.8.8 Couleurs du câblage

Voir 12.8.8.

21.9 Sécurité intrinsèque

21.9.1 Généralités

La présente norme n'a pas pour ambition d'énumérer les exigences permettant de certifier un équipement comme étant de sécurité intrinsèque et n'exige pas non plus que l'équipement soit de sécurité intrinsèque. Elle cherche plutôt à exclure les conditions ou situations qui pourraient empêcher la certification IS.

21.9.2 Barrière de sécurité intrinsèque

L'impédance de la barrière doit être supérieure à 460Ω , à toute fréquence dans une plage de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz à 39 kHz). La spécification de l'impédance de la barrière IS doit s'appliquer à toutes les barrières utilisées comme parties de PhL, qu'elles soient installées comme un élément séparé de matériel de réseau ou intégrées dans une carte d'alimentation. L'impédance de la barrière doit être mesurée entre les bornes des deux côtés de la barrière. L'impédance de la barrière doit être mesurée avec l'alimentation réseau réglée à la tension de service assignée (et non la tension de sécurité) de la barrière.

NOTE Il est acceptable que les fonctions de l'alimentation, de la barrière de sécurité et du terminateur soient combinées de diverses manières, à condition que l'impédance de la combinaison obtenue soit équivalente à l'impédance parallèle de dispositifs indépendants qui satisfont aux exigences du présent article de la CEI 61158-2 et que les règles de configuration du réseau définies en 21.3.3 soient respectées.

A la tension de service assignée de la barrière et à toute fréquence dans une gamme de $0,25 f_r$ à $1,25 f_r$ (7,8 kHz à 39 kHz), la capacité mesurée à la borne positive du réseau "+" (côté dangereux) et la masse ne doit pas s'écarter de plus de 250 pF par rapport à la capacité mesurée entre la borne négative du réseau "-" (côté dangereux) et la masse.

21.9.3 Mise en place de barrières et de terminateurs

Une barrière doit être séparée du terminateur le plus proche par au maximum 100 m de câble.

NOTE La barrière peut apparaître comme une impédance en dérivation de valeur aussi faible que 460Ω aux fréquences de signalisation. La résistance du terminateur est suffisamment basse pour que, lorsqu'elle est mise en parallèle avec l'impédance de la barrière, l'impédance résultante soit presque totalement résistive (non réactive).

21.10 Sectionneurs galvaniques

Les caractéristiques de communication des sectionneurs galvaniques utilisés sur le bus de terrain doivent satisfaire aux spécifications données en 21.9.

21.11 Éléments de couplage

21.11.1 Généralités

Les éléments de couplage sont utilisés pour connecter différents segments de Type 3 à la même PhL ou à une PhL différente.

A l'exception des niveaux de signaux, le présent document ne décrit pas les caractéristiques exigées d'un élément de couplage. En d'autres termes, il incombe au planificateur de système de s'assurer que la norme relative aux "Règles de configuration du réseau" est respectée lorsque des éléments de couplage sont utilisés. Les spécifications suivantes sont importantes.

- Retard maximal du signal
- Ecart maximal par rapport au passage par zéro du signal nominal (instabilité du signal).

Deux types d'éléments de couplage peuvent être utilisés:

- des répéteurs MBP-IS
- des coupleurs de signaux MBP-IS/RS 485

21.11.2 Répéteur MBP-IS

Un répéteur MBP-IS est connecté à deux segments MBP-IS. Il dispose d'une MAU sur chaque segment et d'une isolation galvanique entre les deux MAU. Les caractéristiques électriques présentées dans le Tableau 103 sont obligatoires pour les deux interfaces de bus de terrain. Les exigences concernant la MAU de l'Article 12 et de 21.1 à 21.10 s'appliquent également aux répéteurs.

Tableau 103 – Caractéristiques électriques des interfaces de bus de terrain

Paramètre	Valeurs	Paragraphe de la présente norme
Codage du signal	Manchester II	9.2.2
Délimiteur de début	1, N+, N-, 1, 0, N-, N+, 0 (Note 1)	9.2.4
Délimiteur de fin	1, N+, N-, N+, N-, 1, 0, 1 (Note 1)	9.2.5
Préambule	1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0	9.2.6
Débit de transmission de données	31,25 kbit/s $\pm$ 0,2 %	21.2
Niveau de sortie (crête à crête)	0,75 V à 1 V	21.4.5
Différence max. entre amplitudes d'émission positive et négative	$\pm$ 50 mV	21.4.5
Distorsion max. du signal d'émission (surtension, suroscillation et statisme)	$\pm$ 10 %	21.4.5
Bruit de l'émetteur	1 mV (EFF) (Note 2)	21.4.5
Impédance de sortie	$\geq$ 3 k Ω (Note 3)	21.7.1
Tension de service	9 V à 32 V (Note 4)	21.7.1
Rapport de réjection en mode commun (CMRR)	$\geq$ 50 dB (Note 5)	
Courant de fuite (Note 6)	50 μ A	
NOTES 1 N+ et N- sont des symboles de non-données. 2 Dans la gamme de fréquences de 1 kHz à 100 kHz. 3 Dans la gamme de fréquences de 7,8 kHz à 39 kHz. 4 Plage de tensions de service. Peut être limitée de 9 V à 17,5 V ou de 9 V à 24 V pour des dispositifs de sécurité intrinsèque. 5 Correspond à une capacité dissymétrique de 250 pF à une fréquence de 39 kHz. 6 Uniquement pour sécurité intrinsèque.		

Des répéteurs connectés à des segments de bus de sécurité intrinsèque doivent être certifiés comme matériel de sécurité intrinsèque. Le certificat doit inclure une déclaration stipulant que les dispositifs sont conformes au modèle FISCO. Les spécifications de la CEI 60079-11 doivent être respectées pour ce qui concerne l'isolation galvanique.

Pour la détermination de la conformité aux règles de configuration du réseau de 21.3.3, le planificateur de système nécessite des informations concernant le retard du signal dû aux répéteurs et l'écart maximal par rapport au passage par zéro du signal nominal (c'est-à-dire l'instabilité du signal). Ces informations doivent être indiquées dans la fiche technique.

Un répéteur peut être associé à une alimentation et à des terminateurs de lignes.

21.11.3 Coupleur de signaux MBP-IS/RS 485

Un coupleur de signaux MBP-IS/RS 485 connecte un segment MBP-IS à un segment RS 485. Il dispose d'une MAU sur chaque segment, d'une isolation galvanique entre les deux MAU et d'un codage/décodage Manchester.

Les caractéristiques électriques présentées dans le Tableau 103 sont obligatoires pour l'interfaces MBP-IS. Les exigences concernant la MAU de l'Article 12 et de 21.1 à 21.10 sont également applicables. L'Article 22 s'applique à la conception de l'interface de bus RS 485.

Des coupleurs de signaux connectés à des segments de bus de sécurité intrinsèque doivent être certifiés comme matériel de sécurité intrinsèque. Le certificat doit inclure une déclaration stipulant que les dispositifs sont conformes au modèle FISCO. Les spécifications de la CEI 60079-11 doivent être respectées pour ce qui concerne l'isolation galvanique (voir 21.10).

Pour la détermination de la conformité aux règles de configuration du réseau de 21.3.3, le planificateur de système nécessite des informations concernant le retard du signal dû aux répéteurs et l'écart maximal par rapport au passage par zéro du signal nominal (c'est-à-dire l'instabilité du signal). Ces informations doivent être indiquées dans la fiche technique du coupleur de signaux.

Un coupleur de signaux peut être associé à une alimentation et à un terminateur de bus.

NOTE Un tel dispositif est généralement appelé coupleur de segment.

21.12 Alimentation

21.12.1 Généralités

Une alimentation doit être connectée au bus pour fournir de l'énergie aux dispositifs de terrain. La tension d'alimentation dépend des exigences de l'application particulière.

L'alimentation d'un bus de sécurité intrinsèque peut être fournie soit par une alimentation à sortie de sécurité intrinsèque, soit par une alimentation qui n'est pas de sécurité intrinsèque complétée par une barrière.

Pour éviter tout effet sur l'émission des données, les caractéristiques électriques de l'Article 21 de la présente norme, énumérées dans le Tableau 104, sont obligatoires pour toutes les alimentations.

Les bornes de sortie d'une alimentation doivent être clairement marquées "+" et "-".

Même si une alimentation isolée par rapport à la terre n'est pas spécifiquement exigée, une mise à la masse asymétrique des conducteurs du câble de bus n'est pas admise. Il est essentiel que toute connexion entre les conducteurs et la terre soit symétrique. Pour plus de détails, voir 21.8.7.

Tableau 104 – Caractéristiques électriques des alimentations

	Non de sécurité intrinsèque	Sécurité intrinsèque, IIC FISCO 1)	Sécurité intrinsèque, IIB FISCO 1)	Sécurité intrinsèque, IIC barrière linéaire 2)
Selon modèle FISCO	non	oui	oui	
Tension max. d'alimentation en c.c. U_0	$\leq 32 \text{ V}$	$\leq 17,5 \text{ V}$	$\leq 17,5 \text{ V}$	$\leq 24 \text{ V}$
Courant max. de court-circuit en c.c. I_0		$\leq 360 \text{ mA}$	$\leq 380 \text{ mA}$ 7)	$\leq 250 \text{ mA}$
Puissance de sortie max. P_0		$\leq 2,52 \text{ W}$	$\leq 5,32 \text{ W}$	$\leq 1,2 \text{ W}$
Ondulation, bruit	$\leq 16 \text{ mV}$ 3)	$\leq 16 \text{ mV}$ 3)	$\leq 16 \text{ mV}$ 3)	$\leq 16 \text{ mV}$ 3)
Impédance de sortie 7)	$\geq 3 \text{ k } \Omega$ 3) 4)	$\geq 400 \text{ } \Omega$ 3) 4)	$\geq 400 \text{ } \Omega$ 3) 4)	$\geq 400 \text{ } \Omega$ 3) 4) 5)
Ondulation, bruit	$\leq 16 \text{ mV}$ 3)			
Affaiblissement par asymétrie	$\geq 50 \text{ dB}$ 6)			$\geq 50 \text{ dB}$ 5) 6)
1) Alimentation à caractéristique rectangulaire ou trapézoïdale, conformément au modèle FISCO. 2) Alimentation ou barrière à caractéristique linéaire. 3) Dans la gamme de fréquences de 7,8 kHz à 39 kHz. Autrement, voir la Figure 95. 4) Avec terminateur de ligne intégré: $100 \text{ } \Omega \pm 2 \%$. Il est recommandé de munir chaque alimentation d'une résistance de terminaison. 5) Y compris une barrière si nécessaire. 6) Aucune spécification obligatoire dans la présente norme, mais exigé du point de vue fonctionnel. 7) La limite de courant résulte d'une caractéristique rectangulaire.				

Les alimentations utilisées pour fournir de l'énergie aux dispositifs de terrain situés dans des zones explosibles doivent être certifiées en tant que matériel associé de sécurité intrinsèque destiné à une utilisation dans des lieux dangereux.

21.12.2 Alimentation de sécurité non intrinsèque

Les alimentations qui ne sont pas de sécurité intrinsèque doivent avoir les caractéristiques techniques définies dans le Tableau 104.

Les alimentations qui ne sont pas de sécurité intrinsèque peuvent être utilisées avec une barrière homologuée pour fournir de l'énergie à un bus de sécurité intrinsèque.

21.12.3 Alimentation de sécurité intrinsèque

Pour alimenter des dispositifs de terrain dans des zones explosibles, une alimentation à sortie de sécurité intrinsèque peut être connectée au bus en lieu et place d'une combinaison d'alimentation de sécurité non intrinsèque et de barrière. Ce dispositif est en général placé à l'extérieur de la zone dangereuse, dans la salle de commande. Il s'agit de ce qu'on appelle, au sens de la CEI 60079-11, le matériel associé car, même s'il n'est pas protégé contre l'explosion proprement dite, il génère effectivement un circuit électrique de sécurité intrinsèque qui mène à la zone explosible.

Outre les exigences de l'Article 21, notamment dans le Tableau 104, des alimentations de sécurité intrinsèque doivent satisfaire aux exigences de sécurité établies dans la CEI 60079-14 et dans la CEI 60079-11.

Si l'alimentation est placée dans la zone dangereuse, un type de protection normalisée supplémentaire doit être prévu (par exemple, installation dans un boîtier de protection de type "à enveloppe antidéflagrante d").

Des alimentations de sécurité intrinsèque peuvent faire partie d'autres composantes de bus de terrain (par exemple, des coupleurs de segments, voir 21.11).

Le modèle FISCO repose sur une tension continue assignée de 13,5 V. Les courbes d'inflammation des alimentations à caractéristique rectangulaire indiquent que la puissance maximale admissible augmente considérablement si la tension augmente. Par ailleurs, une alimentation basse tension peut ne pas convenir à cause de la chute de tension due à la ligne d'émission. Par conséquent, la tension de 13,5 V semble être un compromis acceptable.

Du fait des tolérances et afin de disposer d'une marge d'amplitude du signal, la tension de sortie maximale U_0 d'un dispositif d'alimentation doit être supérieure à la tension de sortie assignée. L'amplitude du signal est $\leq 1 V_c$ à c ; par conséquent une marge de 0,5 V est nécessaire. Si on suppose que les tolérances sont $\leq 1 V$, le calcul donne une tension de sortie maximale garantie $U_0 = 15 V$. Le courant de sortie maximal admissible (courant de court circuit), en fonction du groupe de gaz, peut être extrait des courbes d'inflammation disponibles ou peut être déduit à partir d'essais d'inflammation. Dans le groupe IIC, le courant de sortie admissible est $I_0 = 128 \text{ mA}$. D'autres combinaisons tension/courant, conformes au FISCO, peuvent être sélectionnées.

La conception et la mise en œuvre de tensions relatives à la sécurité et de limiteurs du courant dépendent de la catégorie choisie de circuit de sécurité intrinsèque ("ia" ou "ib"). Les valeurs maximales des paramètres de sortie sont tenues de satisfaire aux exigences du FISCO.

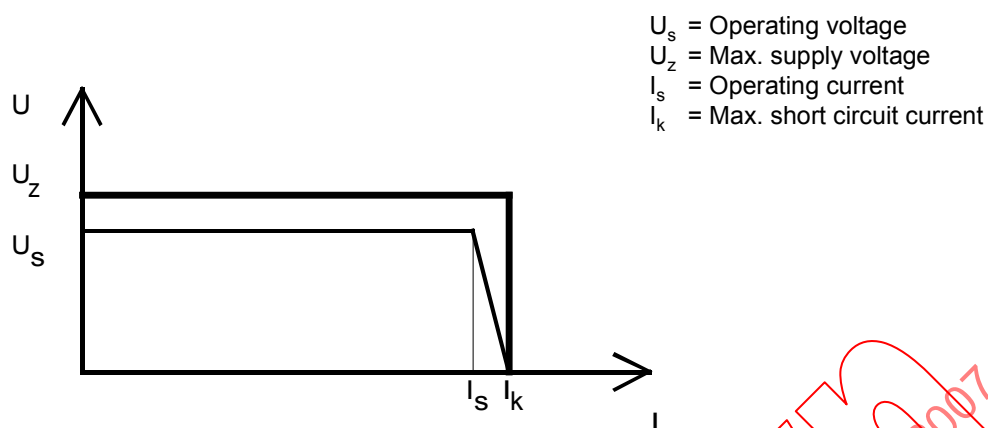
Un certificat de contrôle doit être obtenu pour l'alimentation du bus en tant que "matériel associé", au sens de la CEI 60079-11. Ce certificat doit déclarer que l'alimentation est conforme au modèle FISCO.

NOTE Outre les données habituelles (c'est-à-dire les valeurs maximales des paramètres de sortie), le certificat peut également contenir des spécifications fondamentales applicables à la configuration de bus de terrain admissible. En général, les valeurs limites d'inductance L_a et de capacité C_a externes maximales admissibles ne sont pas exigées. Si ces valeurs avaient été incluses, elles donneraient l'impression que L_a et C_a sont présents dans le circuit de sécurité intrinsèque en tant qu'inductivité et capacité non protégées, ce qui n'est pas le cas pour le modèle FISCO. Le câble n'est pas considéré ici comme une inductivité et une capacité concentrées tant que les paramètres du système demeurent dans la plage des limites définies du modèle FISCO.

21.12.4 Alimentation de catégorie "ib"

NOTE Etant donné qu'il convient que le circuit du courant de sortie de l'alimentation ait une résistance interne faible en courant continu, l'utilisation de l'alimentation avec un régulateur de tension et une commande de courant active (c'est-à-dire une limitation électronique du courant) vient à l'esprit. Une résistance interne $\geq 400 \Omega$ dans la gamme de fréquences des signaux conformément au Tableau 104 peut être obtenue en utilisant par exemple une contre-réaction en fonction de la fréquence.

La courbe de sortie caractéristique idéale d'une alimentation (c'est-à-dire la caractéristique courant/tension) est rectangulaire (voir la Figure 96). Lorsque le courant de sortie augmente, la tension de sortie reste constante jusqu'à ce que le courant atteigne certaines limites. La CEI 60079-11 permet d'utiliser une telle solution dans l'hypothèse où il est établi une limitation redondante du courant et de la tension, ainsi qu'une isolation galvanique (facultative) fiable par rapport aux circuits électriques qui ne sont pas de sécurité intrinsèque.



Légende

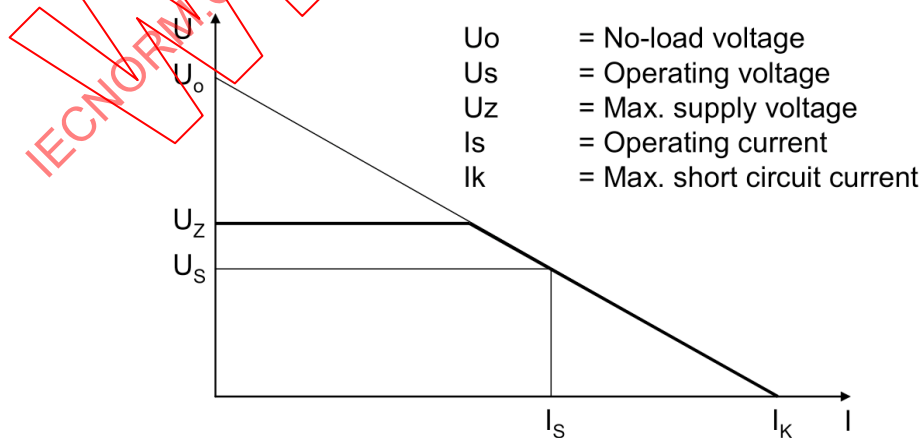
Anglais	Français
U_s = Operating voltage	U_s = Tension de service
U_z = Max. supply voltage	U_z = Tension max. d'alimentation
I_s = Operating current	I_s = Courant de service
I_k = Max. short circuit current	I_k = Courant max. de court-circuit

Figure 96 – Courbe de sortie caractéristique d'une alimentation de catégorie EEx ib

NOTE Une tension de 13,5 V en courant continu semble réaliste, sachant que des tensions plus élevées pourraient restreindre la puissance disponible. Les courbes de limite d'explosivité pour des sources ayant des courbes caractéristiques de sortie carrées montrent que la puissance admissible décroît de manière significative lorsque la tension augmente.

21.12.5 Alimentation de catégorie "ia"

Les alimentations disposant d'une limitation électronique de courant doivent être certifiées conformément à la CEI 60079-11 pour la catégorie "ib".



Légende

Anglais	Français
U_o = Non load voltage	U_o = Tension hors charge
U_s = Operating voltage	U_s = Tension de service

Anglais	Français
U _z = Max. supply voltage	U _z = Tension max. d'alimentation
I _s = Operating current	I _s = Courant de service
I _k = Max. short circuit current	I _k = Courant max. de court-circuit

Figure 97 – Courbe de sortie caractéristique d'une alimentation de catégorie EEx ia

L'alimentation ia doit être conforme au modèle FISCO. Le courant de sortie maximal I_K de la Figure 96 correspond au courant I_{Zul} (à U = U_z) de la Figure 97.

Exemple

Un exemple d'alimentation appropriée pour la catégorie "ia" comporte les éléments de sécurité suivants: Source de tension U_o = 34 V, résistance fixe R = 158 Ω et diodes Zener U_{ZD} = 15 V (valeur maximale). Un tel circuit a une courbe de sortie caractéristique trapézoïdale, comme présenté en Figure 97. Les valeurs opérationnelles approchées qui peuvent être obtenues pour l'alimentation sont énumérées ci-dessous.

$$U = 13,5 \text{ V}$$

$$I = 120 \text{ mA}$$

$$P = 1,7 \text{ W}$$

$$P_{v\max} = \frac{U_o^2}{R_v} = 7,32 \text{ W}$$

NOTE 1 Ainsi, les valeurs opérationnelles sont comparables à celles du concept "ib" avec limitation électronique du courant. Ceci présente cependant un inconvénient: l'exigence d'une contrainte thermique relativement élevée de la résistance série et la perte de puissance de la résistance série qui est toujours présente dans des conditions opérationnelles.

Si l'on applique un facteur de sécurité de 1,5, la puissance dissipée admissible de la résistance doit être de 11 W.

NOTE 2 L'utilisation de deux résistances en série peut aider à pallier ce problème.

La puissance dissipée maximale des diodes Zener est de 1,8 W.

$$P_{v\max} = \frac{U_o - U_z}{R_v} \times 15 \text{ V} = \frac{34 \text{ V} - 15 \text{ V}}{158 \Omega} \times 15 \text{ V} = 1,8 \text{ W}$$

En tenant compte du facteur de sécurité, les diodes Zener doivent permettre une puissance dissipée maximale de 2,7 W.

NOTE 3 L'utilisation de deux diodes série est également possible dans ce cas.

La CEI 60079-14 et la CEI 60079-11 s'appliquent.

21.12.6 Retour de puissance

A l'exception d'une alimentation par segment, le modèle FISCO ne permet pas à des dispositifs connectés au bus de terrain de sécurité intrinsèque de retourner l'alimentation vers le bus de terrain, même en cas de court-circuit sur la ligne de bus de terrain. Ceci est en général assuré en connectant en série deux (pour la catégorie EEx ib) ou trois (pour la catégorie EEx ia) diodes au silicium ou Schottky dans le circuit électrique d'entrée. Le dispositif de terrain est conforme au modèle FISCO lorsque le courant de fuite de ces diodes (jusqu'à la valeur maximale de tension inverse dans la plage de températures admissible) ne dépasse pas 50 μA. Ici, outre un facteur de sécurité, les spécifications des fabricants de diodes (c'est-à-dire les valeurs types des fiches techniques) s'appliquent également.